# Platform Documentation

## ProVision

Application Version 7.2.0 / 7.2.1

Covering:

- Installation Guide
- Getting Started
- User Guide
- Admin Guide
- Developer Tools
- Help & Support

For additional information, please visit https://docs.6connect.com or contact 6connect at support@6connect.com

1. Home . . . 3
1.1 ProVision Installation Guide . . . 6
1.1.1 Hosted Instances Guide . . . 7
1.1.2 Local / VM Installation Guide . . . 8
1.1.2.1 System Requirements . . . 9
1.1.2.2 Backup and Redundancy: Local / VM . . . 11
1.1.2.3 ProVision Local Installation For CentOS 6 . . . 12
1.1.2.4 ProVision Local Installation For CentOS 7 . . . 18
1.1.2.5 ProVision Local Installation For Debian 7/8 . . . 24
1.1.2.6 ProVision Local Installation For Ubuntu . . . 28
1.1.2.7 6connect Local Software Upgrades . . . 34
1.1.2.8 Local Installations - Peering Setup . . . 35
1.1.3 ESXi VM Image Setup . . . 37
1.2 ProVision Getting Started . . . 39
1.2.1 First Steps . . . 40
1.2.2 Resource Concepts . . . 46
1.2.3 Workflow Concepts . . . 50
1.3 ProVision User Guide . . . 69
1.3.1 The Dashboard . . . 70
1.3.1.1 Customizing the Dashboard . . . 74
1.3.1.2 Working with Dashboard Widgets . . . 78
1.3.2 Working with Resources . . . 91
1.3.2.1 Working with Entries . . . 93
1.3.2.2 Customizing Sections . . . 101
1.3.2.3 Customizing Fields . . . 104
1.3.2.4 Gadgets . . . 108
1.3.2.4.1 XML Specifications . . . 131
1.3.2.5 Contact Manager . . . 133
1.3.3 DNS Tab . . . 144
1.3.3.1 Working with DNS Groups . . . 149
1.3.3.2 Editing DNS Zones . . . 166
1.3.3.3 Working with DNS Zones - Common Tasks . . . 175
1.3.3.4 Working with DNS Records . . . 186
1.3.4 DHCP Tab . . . 193
1.3.4.1 Working with DHCP Groups . . . 195
1.3.4.2 Working with DHCP Pools . . . 207
1.3.4.3 Working with DHCP Gadgets . . . 220
1.3.5 IPAM Tab . . . 233
1.3.5.1 Working with IP Aggregates . . . 244
1.3.5.2 Working with IP Blocks . . . 253
1.3.5.3 Working with IP Rules . . . 277
1.3.6 Peering v2 . . . 283
1.3.6.1 Peering Exchanges . . . 292
1.3.6.2 Peering Routers . . . 298
1.3.6.3 Peering Sessions . . . 302
1.3.6.4 Managing Peers . . . 306
1.3.6.5 Peering Emails . . . 313
1.3.7 Reporting . . . 320
1.3.8 User Preferences . . . 323
1.4 ProVision Admin Guide . . . 324
1.4.1 Admin Preferences . . . 325
1.4.2 Authentication Options . . . 341
1.4.2.1 LDAP Authentication . . . 342
1.4.2.2 LDAP Authentication on Windows Server . . . 345
1.4.2.3 RADIUS Authentication . . . 349
1.4.3 IPAM Administration . . . 351
1.4.3.1 IPAM Parameters . . . 353
1.4.3.2 IPAM Rules . . . 364
1.4.3.3 Holding Tank Management . . . 369
1.4.3.4 RIR Integration: SWIP/RPSL . . . 371
1.4.3.5 LIR Management and Use . . . 375
1.4.3.5.1 ARIN LIR Setup and Use . . . 380
1.4.3.5.2 RIPE LIR Setup and Use . . . 385
1.4.4 VLAN Administration . . . 389
1.4.4.1 Working with the VLAN Manager . . . 395
1.4.5 DNS Administration . . . 412
1.4.5.1 Working with DNS Servers . . . 420
1.4.5.2 Configuring ISC BIND Support . . . 430
1.4.5.3 Configuring PowerDNS Support . . . 434
1.4.5.4 Configuring Secure64 Support . . . 438
1.4.5.5 Configuring Split Horizon/Views . . . 444
1.4.5.6 Configuring DNSSEC . . . 449
1.4.6 DHCP Administration . . . 453
1.4.6.1 Working with DHCP Servers . . . 456
1.4.7 Importing Your Data . . . 466

1.4.7.1 Resource Import from CSV . . . 471
1.4.7.2 Resource Import Tool . . . 477
1.4.7.2.1 Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 1 . . . 480
1.4.7.2.2 Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 2 . . . 482
1.4.7.2.3 Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 3 . . . 484
1.4.7.2.4 Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 4 . . . 485
1.4.7.2.5 Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 5 . . . 489
1.4.7.2.6 Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 6 . . . 490
1.4.7.3 Import Sessions . . . 491
1.4.7.4 IP Import from CSV . . . 493
1.4.7.5 Import Aggregate Blocks . . . 500
1.4.7.6 Import DNS Zones . . . 503
1.4.7.6.1 BIND DNS Zone Upload / Import . . . 505
1.4.7.6.2 PowerDNS Zone Import . . . 510
1.4.7.6.3 InfoBlox Zone Import . . . 512
1.4.7.6.4 NS One Zone Import . . . 515
1.4.7.6.5 Dyn DNS Zone Import . . . 518
1.4.7.6.6 DNSMadeEasy Zone Import . . . 521
1.4.7.6.7 IPPLAN Zone Import . . . 524
1.4.8 Users & Permissions . . . 526
1.4.8.1 Global Permissions . . . 529
1.4.8.2 Resource Permissions . . . 531
1.4.8.3 Users and Groups . . . 533
1.4.8.4 Verifying Permissions . . . 539
1.4.9 API Tab . . . 541
1.4.9.1 Reverse API 1 . . . 543
1.4.10 Scheduler . . . 546
1.4.11 Log . . . 553
1.4.12 Approvals . . . 557
1.4.12.1 Pending Approvals . . . 570
1.4.12.2 Approval Permission Groups . . . 579
1.5 ProVision Developer Tools . . . 591
1.5.1 APIv2 . . . 594
1.5.2 API v1 . . . 599
1.5.2.1 API Module - Admin and Audit . . . 603
1.5.2.1.1 Authentication Testing . . . 604
1.5.2.1.2 Backup . . . 606
1.5.2.1.3 Log Management . . . 607
1.5.2.1.4 Scheduler 1 . . . 609
1.5.2.1.5 Zone Templates . . . 613
1.5.2.2 API Module - DHCP . . . 615
1.5.2.2.1 API Module - DHCPv2 . . . 620
1.5.2.3 API Module - DNS . . . 630
1.5.2.4 API Module - IPAM . . . 653
1.5.2.5 API Module - LIR . . . 673
1.5.2.6 API Module - Peering . . . 680
1.5.2.7 API Module - Resource . . . 689
1.5.2.8 API Module - VLAN . . . 698
1.5.2.9 How Do I... . . . 706
1.5.3 3 - SDK . . . 716
1.5.4 Portable Gadgets . . . 718
1.5.4.1 Getting Started With Portable Gadgets . . . 726
1.5.4.2 Portable Gadget Customization . . . 729
1.5.5 Reverse API . . . 731
1.5.5.1 Reverse API - Detail . . . 733
1.5.6 Toolkit . . . 737
1.5.6.1 IPPlan Importer . . . 741
1.5.7 CLI (Alpha) . . . 744
1.5.8 Resource Concepts 1 . . . 745
1.5.8.1 Resource Classes Doc . . . 746
1.5.8.2 Database Layout 1 . . . 748
1.5.8.3 Asset System . . . 750
1.6 Help & Support . . . 752
1.6.1 Tutorials . . . 753
1.6.1.1 Common Tasks . . . 754
1.6.1.2 UI Tours . . . 755
1.6.2 FAQ . . . 757
1.6.3 Additional Resources . . . 760
1.6.3.1 Import Templates . . . 761
1.6.3.2 List of Abbreviations . . . 762
1.6.4 Feedback and Feature Requests . . . 763

# Home

# ProVision Support Documentation

Documentation provided is for the most current release. For previous versions, see "Documentation for Previous Versions" below.

Expand all  Collapse all

# Documentation for Previous Versions

## Confluence Spaces

The links below provide archive online snapshots of final documentation for previous major versions, as well as the most recent prior version.

**Documentation v7.1.0 / 7.1.1**

**Documentation v7.0.0 / 7.0.1**

**Documentation v6.0.0 / 6.1.1**

**Documentation v5.3.0**

**Documentation v5.2.0**

**Documentation v5.1.0**

Additional Confluence documentation for minor releases may be available upon request for limited time periods.

For assistance, contact our support team at support@6connect.com with your request.

## PDF Documentation

The links below provide compressed .pdf's of archive documentation snapshots for all available versions, major and minor.

Expand the link below and click on the desired version number to being downloading the file. Once downloaded, be sure to extract / unzip the file to your desired save location.

| File | Modified |
|---|---|
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v7.1.0-7.1.1_Manual.pdf.zip 7.1.0 / 7.1.1 Release | Apr 19, 2019 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v7.0.0-7.0.1_Manual.pdf.zip 7.0.0/7.0.1 Release - 2018-07-20 | Jul 23, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v6.1.1_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |

| | |
|---|---|
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v6.0.2_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v6.0.1_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v6.0.0_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.3.2_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.3.1_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.3.0_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.2.2_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.2.1_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.2.0_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.1.4_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.1.3_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.1.2_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.1.1_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.1.0_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.0.4_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.0.3_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v5.0.1_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect-ProVision-v4.2.1_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect_ProVision-v4.1.6_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect_ProVision-v4.1.15_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect_ProVision-v4.1.0_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect_ProVision-v4.0.7_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect_ProVision-v4.0.0_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |
| ZIP Archive 6connect_ProVision-v3.9.3_Manual.pdf.zip | Jun 14, 2018 by The Force |

## Download All

Please keep in mind that as the provided pdfs are snapshots, documentation changes are not retroactively applied. Edits and corrections to documentation may exist in subsequent versions.

## Recent space activity

The Force
Working with DHCP Gadgets updated 37 minutes ago view change
ProVision 7.2.1 created Sep 11, 2019
Gadgets created Sep 11, 2019
Coming Soon created Aug 21, 2019

## Space contributors

- The Force (37 minutes ago)
- Pete Sclafani (485 days ago)

Import Aggregate Blocks created Aug 21, 2019

# ProVision Installation Guide

# Installing ProVision

You have 6connect ProVision and now it's time to set it up! 6connect offers both cloud hosted instances and local installations of ProVision. Follow the links below for specific instructions on each instance type.

For setup assistance or additional information, you can contact our support team at support@6connect.com.

## Table of Contents


- Hosted Instances Guide
- Local / VM Installation Guide
- ESXi VM Image Setup

# Hosted Instances Guide

# Hosted Instances Guide

With a cloud hosted instance of ProVision, all you need is one of the following web browsers with an internet connection and login credentials!

Once you have confirmed that you have a supported browser and valid login, you can proceed to ProVision Getting Started, the ProVision User Guide, or the ProVision Admin Guide to learn more about ProVision.


- Hosted Instances Guide
    - 6connect Cloud Hosted Instance: Browser Requirements
    - Backup and Redundancy


## 6connect Cloud Hosted Instance: Browser Requirements

6connect makes every effort to maintain broad compatibility across browser vendors and versions.
Web Browsers Supported:

- Firefox, Safari, Chrome, Microsoft Edge (current versions).

## Backup and Redundancy

**Backup Schedule**

Both local and hosted instances are provided with a default Scheduler task to perform a backup every 24 hours, with a 1 month retention policy.

**Restoration**
Is a phone call or email away. We can spin up a new instance with your preferred data set.

# Local / VM Installation Guide

# Installing ProVision

Local and VM installs of ProVision have specific requirements and configuration settings. Please follow the links below for detailed instructions on how to set up your local installation of ProVision.

For setup assistance or additional information, you can contact our support team at support@6connect.com.

Previous versions of this installation documentation contained a dedicated page, "6connect Local Software Installation" for the ProVision-only section of the installation process. This information is now available under each OS-specific installation page as the last section ("Install 6connect ProVision Software:").

## Table of Contents


- System Requirements
- Backup and Redundancy: Local / VM
- ProVision Local Installation For CentOS 6
- ProVision Local Installation For CentOS 7
- ProVision Local Installation For Debian 8
- ProVision Local Installation For Ubuntu
- 6connect Local Software Upgrades
- Local Installations - Peering Setup

# System Requirements

# ProVision System Requirements


- ProVision System Requirements
  - 6connect Locally Hosted Instance
    - Hardware Requirements:
    - Software Requirements:
    - Port Requirements:


## 6connect Locally Hosted Instance

Initial application installation is included with the purchase of a license from 6connect. If modifications need to be made, we recommend contacting 6connect prior to any changes to ensure there is no negative impact to production systems or product functionality.

### Hardware Requirements:

The optimum resource mix will be based on page views/refreshes. A larger concurrent user base with constant editing may benefit from additional RAM.
The minimum recommended hardware is:

| | Minimum | Recommended |
|---|---|---|
| Processor | Dual-core Xeon class processor or equivalent | Quad-core Xeon |
| RAM | 2GB RAM | 4GB RAM |
| Storage | 20 GB | 100GB |

*Virtual instances are also acceptable. We have confirmed functionality with Citrix Xen Essentials, VMware, KVM, etc.

6connect, Inc. will support customers who run 6connect ProVision products on supported Operating Systems, irrespective of whether they are running in VMware environments or not. 6connect, Inc. supports Operating Systems, not specific hardware configurations. Accordingly, VMware operates as a hardware abstraction layer.

VMware supports a set of certified Operating Systems and Hardware, and the customer and VMware will be responsible for any interactions or issues that arise at the Hardware or Operating System layer as a result of their use of VMware.

6connect, Inc. will not require clients to recreate and troubleshoot every issue in a non-VMware environment; however, 6connect, Inc. does reserve the right to request our customers to diagnose certain issues in a native certified Operating System environment, operating without the virtual environment. 6connect, Inc. will only make this request when there is reason to believe that the virtual environment is a contributing factor to the issue.

Any time spent on investigation of problems that may, in the sole opinion of 6connect, Inc. be related to VMware, will be handled in the following fashion:

1) 6connect, Inc. will provide standard support to all 6connect ProVision products.

2) If a problem is encountered while 6connect ProVision is/are running in a VMware environment, the client may be required to recreate the problem on a non-VMware server unit, at which time 6connect, Inc. will provide regular support.

3) The client can authorize 6connect, Inc. to investigate the VMware related items at normal time and materials rates. If such investigation shows that the problem is VMware related, the client may contract 6connect, Inc. to provide a software change to resolve the issue if such a resolution is possible.

4) Regardless of the problem type or source, if the problem is determined to be a non VMware related issue - time spent on investigation and resolution will be covered as part of regular maintenance, and support will be provided as usual.

### Software Requirements:

Base Software Needed:

| | Required | Link |
|---|---|---|
| Operating System | Linux/BSD/OSX | |
| Apache | Apache 2.4 | http://httpd.apache.org/ |
| PHP | PHP 7.1.x | http://php.net/downloads.php |
| MySQL | MySQL 5.7 | http://www.mysql.com/downloads/ |

MySQL Triggers

6connect does not support custom MySQL triggers at this time - please email support@6connect.com if you have any questions.
MySQL Packet Size Configuration

We recommend increasing the max_allowed_packet setting in the MySQL configuration file to 128MB (or similar) to account for the typical dataset size handled in ProVision.

## Port Requirements:

Open outbound ports 443 and port 80

- cloud.6connect.com is used for license check
- checkip.dyndns.org validates the IP address of the machine to communicate with the licensing server

The ProVision DNS Module also supports zone checks on attached DNS Server(s) as an external user. Port 53 will need to be open and usable for ProVision to query the servers. If not, zone error checking and verification will not work as intended.

Depending on the Connectors in use, there may be other port requirements needed. Port 22 (SSH) is used extensively for control of downstream devices.

# Backup and Redundancy: Local / VM

# Backup and Redundancy

## Local/VM Instance

**Backup Schedule**
Both local and hosted instances are provided with a default Scheduler task to perform a backup every 24 hours, with a 1 month retention policy.

**Restoration**
Is a phone or email away. We can spin up a new instance with your preferred data set, or send you a link to download your database. Optionally, we can even help you set it up and import your data to your new instance or assist with redundant configuration options depending on your RPO /RTO guidelines.

Backup your Data

For local customers, you should be backing up the following items:

mysqldump

And system folders off the 6connect root:

/scans

/zones

/keys

/archive

/data

# ProVision Local Installation For CentOS 6

# CentOS 6


- CentOS 6
- Before You Begin
- Install Requirements
  - 1) Upgrade your current packages
  - 2) Install Required Packages
    - PHP
    - MySQL
    - DNS and Additional Utilities
  - 3) Configuring the requirements:
    - SSL
    - Apache
    - MySQL
  - 4) Optional configurations:
    - Configure SELinux
    - Configure IPTables
    - Radius (Optional)
    - SSH
  - 4) Install 6connect ProVision Software:


# Before You Begin

Ensure that System Requirements have been met prior to proceeding with the CentOS Configuration Guide.

# Install Requirements

## 1) Upgrade your current packages

Upgrade your current packages.

```
yum update
```

## 2) Install Required Packages

### PHP

Installations of ProVision 7.x and newer require  PHP 7.1 (and related extensions). CentOS 6 comes with PHP 5.3 by default. You can either add a repository which provides PHP 7.1 or install PHP manually.

Repository & Syntax

The Webtatic and Remi repos both have versions of PHP which are newer than those in the official repos. For this example, we'll be using Webtatic.

If using a different repo or installing manually, your installation syntax may be different from what is listed here.

Add the repository:

```
rpm -Uvh https://mirror.webtatic.com/yum/el6/latest.rpm
```

Update:

```
yum update
```

Install:

PHP 7.x / Apache2 / extensions

- httpd
- php71w
- php71w-opcache
- php71w-mysqlnd
- php71w-pdo
- php71w-ldap
- php71w-pecl-memcache
- php71w-bcmath
- php71w-devel
- php71w-pear
- php71w-cli
- php7.1-imap

Development tools for pecl / additional system packages:

- curl
- openssl
- memcached
- mod_ssl

```
yum install httpd php71w php71w-opcache php71w-mysqlnd php71w-pdo php71w-ldap php71w-pecl-memcache php71w-
bcmath php71w-devel php71w-pear php71w-cli php7.1-imap curl openssl memcached mod_ssl
```

## MySQL

Install MySQL 5.7 to use a local database.
MySQL is included with most CentOS installs, check for it with:

```
yum list installed | grep mysql
```

The default MySqL version included with most CentOS installs will need to be upgraded to the latest version:

```
rpm -Uvh https://mirror.webtatic.com/yum/el6/latest.rpm
```

If you have an existing installation, you can replace it with:

```
yum install mysql.`uname -i` yum-plugin-replace
yum replace mysql --replace-with mysql57w
```

For a fresh install:

```
    yum install mysql57w mysql57w-server
```

Then, re-start and configure.

```
    service mysqld start      chkconfig mysqld on
```

If a new install, set the MySQL root password:

```
     /usr/bin/mysqladmin -u root password 'new-password'
```

For an existing install / upgrade, you will need to upgrade the existing tables after the restart.

```
mysql_upgrade -u root -p
```

This will issue a password prompt for the user. If you don't have a root user password, remove the "-p".

## DNS and Additional Utilities

5. Install the DNS and other remaining utilities:

- curl
- openssl
- nmap
- bind-utils
- bind
- expect

```
    yum install curl openssl nmap bind-utils bind expect
```

# 3) Configuring the requirements:

## SSL

Self signed certificates in CentOS 6 by default have been already installed.

If you want to change it, follow the steps below:

Note: For production install, it is **HIGHLY RECOMMENDED** to use organization signed certs

Generate private key, CSR, and temporary key if one hasn't been provided.

```
openssl genrsa -out ca.key 1024    openssl req -new -key ca.key -out ca.csr
openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in ca.csr -signkey ca.key -out ca.crt
```

Copy the files to the correct locations

```
   cp ca.crt /etc/pki/tls/certs    cp ca.key /etc/pki/tls/private/ca.key    cp ca.csr /etc/pki/tls/private
/ca.csr
```

Make sure that you copy the files and do not move them if SELinux is enabled (which it is by default)

Edit the apache ssl config and put in the appropriate options:
(shown using the vi editor, though you may use the editor of your choice)

```
vi /etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf
```

Find the lines that start with SSHCertificateFile and change them to be like:

```
SSLCertificateFile /etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.crt
SSLCertificateKeyFile /etc/pki/tls/private/ca.key
```

Then restart

```
/etc/init.d/httpd restart
```

Add 443 virtual hosts as needed in httpd.conf.

## Apache

Allow overwrites in the apache vhosts

```
sed -i 's/AllowOverride None/AllowOverride All/g' /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
```

Start Apache and make it to start on boot

```
    chkconfig httpd on     service httpd start
```

mod rewrite REQUIRED

Please note that mod_rewrite is required! If it is not enabled in Apache, key elements will not work as expected.

## MySQL

Set the MySQL Configuration:

```
mysql -p -e "SET GLOBAL sql_mode='NO_ENGINE_SUBSTITUTION';SET SESSION sql_mode='NO_ENGINE_SUBSTITUTION';"
```

then enter the MySQL root password when prompted.

MySQL Packet Size Configuration

We recommend setting the max_allowed_packet setting in the MySQL configuration file to 128MB (or similar) to account for the typical dataset size handled in ProVision.

# 4) Optional configurations:

## Configure SELinux

READ THIS BEFORE YOU USE SELINUX

SELinux is a very powerful method of securing the CentOS environment, but it is not "turn key" and requires expertise to configure it correctly. If you do not know how to configure SELinux, please do not use it. A badly configured SELinux install will not work well and result in frustration. If you have any questions or concerns about this - please contact 6connect Support at support@6connect.com.

RE-IP WARNING

Please remember - if you change the IP address of the your server, then you will need to update SELinux functions accordingly

Most CentOS install have SELinux enabled by default. One of its protections is to not allow httpd daemon to make network connections, we need to disable this for license checks.

To view the SELinux configuration for http:

```
/usr/sbin/getsebool -a | grep httpd
```

To turn protection off for the httpd daemon for creating network connections:

```
    /usr/sbin/setsebool -P httpd_can_network_connect 1
```

## Configure IPTables

IPTables is enabled by default on CentOS. Add a new rule to allow 443 from anywhere. Make sure that this rule is in the chain BEFORE any blanket reject rule:

To list all current IPTable rules:

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/iptables status
```

To add a rule for 443:

```
/sbin/iptables  RH-Firewall-1-INPUT -I 5 -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 443 -j ACCEPT
```

Note

The -I 5 is what adds the rule to the 5th chain position.  You might need to change this depending on existing rules.  Look at what rules are there before running.

To save the new config:

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/iptables save
```

OR (some versions of centOS have different iptables names, so the above won't work)

```
vi /etc/sysconfig/iptables
```

With the file open for editing, add:

```
-A RH-Firewall-1-INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 443 -j ACCEPT
```

Once complete - restart the iptables service:

```
/etc/init.d/iptables restart
```

Customers can alter this post install to allow only their IP space, plus the 6connect management space.

## Radius (Optional)

This section only needs to be followed if the customer will be using Radius for authentication.

Install radius module:

```
    pecl install radius     echo extension=radius.so > /etc/php.d/radius.ini
```

## SSH

Install ssh module:

```
    yum install libssh2-devel     pecl install -f ssh2     echo extension=ssh2.so > /etc/php.d/ssh2.ini
```

# 4) Install 6connect ProVision Software:

1. Remove the current contents in the ProVision web folder (currently the www root) and after extract the archive contents (where 7.x.x is the version number for the ProVision, and php7.x is the required php version build) :

```
 tar -xf productionBuild-7.x.x-php7.x.tar -C /var/www/html
```

2. Change the permissions to be the web user permissions

```
chown -R apache.apache /var/www/html
```

3. Go to http://<web root>/install/configTest.php.  Follow the provided instructions, correcting any configuration errors if they occur. Once all steps are completed, you are ready to use your ProVision instance!

# ProVision Local Installation For CentOS 7

# CentOS 7


- CentOS 7
- Before You Begin
- Install Requirements
  - 1) Upgrade your current packages
  - 2) Install Required Packages
    - PHP
    - MySQL
    - DNS and Additional Utilities
  - 3) Configuring the requirements:
    - SSL
    - Apache
    - MySQL
  - 4) Optional configurations:
    - Configure SELinux
    - Configure IPTables
    - Radius (Optional)
    - SSH
  - 5) Install 6connect ProVision Software:


# Before You Begin

Ensure that System Requirements have been met prior to proceeding with the CentOS Configuration Guide.

# Install Requirements

## 1) Upgrade your current packages

Upgrade your current packages.

```
yum update
```

## 2) Install Required Packages

### PHP

Installations of ProVision 7.x and newer require  PHP 7.1 (and related extensions). CentOS 6 comes with PHP 5.3 by default. You can either add a repository which provides PHP 7.1 or install PHP manually.

Repository & Syntax

The Webtatic and Remi repos both have versions of PHP which are newer than those in the official repos. For this example, we'll be using Webtatic.

If using a different repo or installing manually, your installation syntax may be different from what is listed here.

Add the repository:

```
rpm -Uvh https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
rpm -Uvh https://mirror.webtatic.com/yum/el7/webtatic-release.rpm
```

Install PHP and extensions:

PHP 7.x / Apache2 / extensions

- httpd
- php71w
- php71w-opcache
- php71w-mysqlnd
- php71w-pdo
- php71w-ldap
- php71w-pecl-memcache
- php71w-bcmath
- php71w-devel
- php71w-pear
- php71w-cli
- php7.1-imap

Development tools for pecl / additional system packages:

- curl
- openssl
- memcached
- mod_ssl

```
yum install httpd php71w php71w-opcache php71w-mysqlnd php71w-pdo php71w-ldap php71w-pecl-memcache php71w-
bcmath php71w-devel php71w-pear php71w-cli php7.1-imap curl openssl memcached mod_ssl
```

## MySQL

Install MySQL 5.7 / MariaDB to use a local database.
MySQL is included with most CentOS installs, check for it with:

```
yum list installed | grep mysql
```

If it is not installed:

```
    rpm -Uvh http://repo.mysql.com/mysql-community-release-el7-5.noarch.rpm
    yum install mysql-server
    service mysqld start
    chkconfig mysqld on
```

Set the MySQL root password:

```
     /usr/bin/mysqladmin -u root password 'new-password'
```

If you prefer to install MariaDB:

```
    yum install mariadb-server mariadb
    systemctl start mariadb
```

Set the root password, as currently it is not set, just hit ENTER on the current password:

```
mysql_secure_installation
```

Set so that it starts on boot:

```
systemctl enable mariadb.service
```

## DNS and Additional Utilities

5. Install the DNS and other remaining utilities:

- curl
- openssl
- nmap
- bind-utils
- bind
- expect
- wget
- bzip2

```
yum install curl openssl nmap bind-utils bind expect wget bzip2
```

# 3) Configuring the requirements:

## SSL

1. Self signed certificates in CentOS 7 by default have been already installed.

If you want to change it, follow the steps below:

Note: For production install, it is **HIGHLY RECOMMENDED** to use organization signed certs

Generate private key, CSR, and temporary key if one hasn't been provided.

```
openssl genrsa -out ca.key 1024
openssl req -new -key ca.key -out ca.csr
openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in ca.csr -signkey ca.key -out ca.crt
```

Copy the files to the correct locations

```
cp ca.crt /etc/pki/tls/certs
cp ca.key /etc/pki/tls/private/ca.key
cp ca.csr /etc/pki/tls/private/ca.csr
```

Make sure that you copy the files and do not move them if SELinux is enabled (which it is by default)

Edit the apache ssl config and put in the appropriate options:
(shown using the vi editor, though you may use the editor of your choice)

```
vi /etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf
```

Find the lines that start with SSHCertificateFile and change them to be like:

```
SSLCertificateFile /etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.crt
SSLCertificateKeyFile /etc/pki/tls/private/ca.key
```

Then restart.

```
/etc/init.d/httpd restart
```

Add 443 virtual hosts as needed in httpd.conf.

## Apache

Allow overwrites in the apache vhosts

```
sed -i 's/AllowOverride None/AllowOverride All/g' /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
```

Start Apache and make it start on boot

```
    systemctl start httpd.service
    systemctl enable httpd.service
```

mod rewrite REQUIRED

Please note that mod_rewrite is required! If it is not enabled in Apache, key elements will not work as expected.

## MySQL

Set the MySQL Configuration:

```
mysql -p -e "SET GLOBAL sql_mode='NO_ENGINE_SUBSTITUTION';SET SESSION sql_mode='NO_ENGINE_SUBSTITUTION';"
```

Then enter the MySQL root password when prompted.

MySQL Packet Size Configuration

We recommend setting the max_allowed_packet setting in the MySQL configuration file to 128MB (or similar) to account for the typical dataset size handled in ProVision.

# 4) Optional configurations:

## Configure SELinux

READ THIS BEFORE YOU USE SELINUX

SELinux is a very powerful method of securing the CentOS environment, but it is not "turn key" and requires expertise to configure it correctly. If you do not know how to configure SELinux, please do not use it. A badly configured SELinux install will not work well and result in frustration. If you have any questions or concerns about this - please contact 6connect Support at support@6connect.com.

RE-IP WARNING

Please remember - if you change the IP address of the your server, then you will need to update SELinux functions accordingly

Most CentOS install have SELinux enabled by default. One of its protections is to not allow httpd daemon to make network connections, we need to disable this for license checks.

To view the SELinux configuration for http:

```
/usr/sbin/getsebool -a | grep httpd
```

To turn protection off for the httpd daemon for creating network connections:

```
/usr/sbin/setsebool -P httpd_can_network_connect 1
```

## Configure IPTables

IPTables is enabled by default on CentOS.  Add a new rule to allow 443 from anywhere.  Make sure that this rule is in the chain BEFORE any blanket reject rule:

To list all current IPTable rules:

```
iptables -L
```

To add a rule for 443:

```
/sbin/iptables  RH-Firewall-1-INPUT -I 5 -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 443 -j ACCEPT
```

Note

The -I 5 is what adds the rule to the 5th chain position.  You might need to change this depending on existing rules.  Look at what rules are there before running.

To save the new config:

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/iptables save
```

OR (some versions of centOS have different iptables names, so the above won't work)

```
vi /etc/sysconfig/iptables
```

With the file open for editing, add:

```
-A RH-Firewall-1-INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 443 -j ACCEPT
```

Once complete - restart the iptables service:

```
/etc/init.d/iptables restart
```

Customers can alter this post install to allow only their IP space, plus the 6connect management space.

## Radius (Optional)

This section only needs to be followed if the customer will be using Radius for authentication.

Install radius module:

```
    pecl install radius
    echo extension=radius.so > /etc/php.d/radius.ini
```

## SSH

Install ssh module:

```
yum install libssh2-devel
pecl install -f ssh2
echo extension=ssh2.so > /etc/php.d/ssh2.ini
```

## 5) Install 6connect ProVision Software:

1. Remove the current contents in the ProVision web folder (currently the www root) and after extract the archive contents (where 7.x.x is the version number for the build) :

```
tar -xf productionBuild-7.x.x-php7.x.tar -C /var/www/html
```

2. Change the permissions to be the web user permissions

```
chown -R apache.apache /var/www/html
```

3. If enabled SELinux you must execute the following command:

```
chcon -R -t httpd_sys_rw_content_t /var/www/html

chcon -R -t httpd_sys_rw_content_t /tmp
```

You must also execute the same command for the 6c secure path created from **configSecureKeys.sh**

4. Go to http://<web root>/install/configTest.php.  Follow the provided instructions, correcting any configuration errors if they occur. Once all steps are completed, you are ready to use your ProVision instance!

# ProVision Local Installation For Debian 7/8

# Debian 8


- Debian 8
- Before You Begin
- Install Requirements
  - 1) Upgrade your current packages
  - 2) Install Required Packages
    - PHP
    - MySQL
    - DNS and Additional Utilities
  - 3) Configuring the requirements:
    - SSL
    - Apache
    - MySQL
  - 4) Optional configurations:
    - Radius (Optional)
  - 5) Install 6connect ProVision Software:


# Before You Begin

Ensure that System Requirements have been met prior to proceeding with the Installation Guide.

# Install Requirements

## 1) Upgrade your current packages

Upgrade your current packages.

```
apt-get update
apt-get upgrade
```

## 2) Install Required Packages

### PHP

Installations of ProVision 7.x and newer require  PHP 7.1 (and related extensions). ProVision 7.x installations using Debian versions prior to Stretch 9 require updating to PHP 7.1. Debian Wheezy comes with PHP 5.4 by default. You can either add a repository which provides PHP 7.1 or install PHP manually.
For this example, we are using Debian/Ubuntu installation instructions from:

https://ayesh.me/Ubuntu-PHP-7.1 , using  Ondej Surý's PPA.

Another reference containing instructions for Debian 7, 8, CentOS / RHEL, MacOS X, and Windows is available here:

https://www.colinodell.com/blog/201612/installing-php-71

Depending on what repository you choose, installation instructions and syntax may differ.

**Debian 8 Install Package**

```
sudo apt install apt-transport-https lsb-release ca-certificates
sudo wget -O /etc/apt/trusted.gpg.d/php.gpg https://packages.sury.org/php/apt.gpg
sudo sh -c 'echo "deb https://packages.sury.org/php/ $(lsb_release -sc) main" > /etc/apt/sources.list.d/php.
list'
sudo apt update
```

And update the packages list:

```
    apt-get update
```

Install Apache2/PHP7/MySQL and development tools for pecl:

PHP 7.x / Apache2 / extensions

- httpd
- php7.1w
- php7.1w-opcache
- php7.1w-mysqlnd
- php7.1w-pdo
- php7.1w-ldap
- php7.1w-pecl-memcache
- php7.1w-bcmath
- php7.1w-devel
- php7.1w-pear
- php7.1w-cli
- php7.1-imap

Development tools for pecl / additional system packages:

- curl
- openssl
- memcached
- mod_ssl

```
    apt-get install apache2 libapache2-mod-php7.1 php7.1 php7.1-cgi php7.1-cli php7.1-gd php7.1-curl php7.1-
ldap php7.1-mysqlnd php7.1-ssh2 php-pear php7.1-dev php7.1-imap curl openssl memcached php7.1-memcache
```

While installing you will be asked to set the MySQL root password.

## MySQL

Install MySQL 5.7 to use a local database.

```
apt-get install mysql-server
```

You will be asked to enter a root password for the mysql server.

## DNS and Additional Utilities

Install the DNS and other utilities:

- curl
- openssl
- memcached
- php7.1-memcache
- nmap
- dnsutils
- bind9utils
- expect

```
apt-get install curl openssl memcached php7.1-memcache nmap dnsutils bind9utils expect
```

# 3) Configuring the requirements:

## SSL

Enable the necessary apache modules with the following command:

```
a2enmod php7 ssl rewrite
```

In order to create self signed certificates and to work properly, the hostname must be resolved properly.
Open the hosts file for editing:

```
vi /etc/hosts
```

Add a record for your hostname

```
yourhostname X.X.X.X
```

Create self signed certificate:

```
make-ssl-cert generate-default-snakeoil --force-overwrite
```

## Apache

mod rewrite REQUIRED

⚠️
Please note that mod_rewrite is required! If it is not enabled in Apache, key elements will not work as expected.
Enable the default vhost for apache

```
a2ensite default-ssl
```

Allow overwrites in the apache vhosts

```
sed -i 's/AllowOverride None/AllowOverride All/g' /etc/apache2/sites-available/default*
```

6. Reload apache

```
service apache2 reload
```

## MySQL

MySQL Configuration:

```
mysql -p -e "SET GLOBAL sql_mode='NO_ENGINE_SUBSTITUTION';SET SESSION sql_mode='NO_ENGINE_SUBSTITUTION';"
```

Then, enter the MySQL root password when prompted.

MySQL Packet Size Configuration

⚠️
We recommend setting the max_allowed_packet setting in the MySQL configuration file to 128MB (or similar) to account for the typical dataset size handled in ProVision.

# 4) Optional configurations:

## Radius (Optional)

This section only needs to be followed if the customer will be using Radius for authentication.

1. Install radius module:
Debian 7:

**Debian 7:**

```
pecl install radius
```

Debian 8:

**Debian 8:**

```
apt-get install php7-radius
```

Create module loading configuration:
(shown using the vi editor, though you may use the editor of your choice)

```
vi /etc/php5/mods-available/radius.ini
```

Add the following lines to radius.ini:

```
; configuration for php radius module
; priority=20
extension=radius.so
```

To enable the radius module, type the following command:

```
php7enmod radius
```

# 5) Install 6connect ProVision Software:

1. Remove the current contents in the ProVision web folder (currently the www root) and after extract the archive contents (where 7.x.x is the version number for the build):

```
tar -xf productionBuild-7.x.x-php7.x.tar -C /var/www/
```

2. Change the permissions to be the web user permissions

```
chown -R www-data.www-data /var/www
```

3. Go to http://<web root>/install/configTest.php.  Follow the provided instructions, correcting any configuration errors if they occur. Once all steps are completed, you are ready to use your ProVision instance!

# ProVision Local Installation For Ubuntu

# Ubuntu 14.04 LTS


- Ubuntu 14.04 LTS
- Before You Begin
- Install Requirements
  - 1) Upgrade your current packages
  - 2) Install Required Packages
    - PHP
    - MySQL
    - DNS and Additional Utilities
  - 3) Configuring the requirements:
    - SSL
    - Apache
    - MySQL
  - 4) Optional configurations:
    - Radius (Optional)
    - SSH
  - 5) Install 6connect ProVision Software:


# Before You Begin

Ensure that System Requirements have been met prior to proceeding with the Installation Guide.

Permissions

Before installing, verify that you have appropriate install permissions. Depending on your permissions and system setup, commands may need to be run as superuser by prepending "sudo" to the listed commands.

# Install Requirements

## 1) Upgrade your current packages

Upgrade your current packages.

```
apt-get update
apt-get upgrade
```

## 2) Install Required Packages

### PHP

Installations of ProVision 7.x and newer require  PHP 7.1 (and related extensions). You can either add a repository which provides PHP 7.1 or install PHP manually. In this example, we use the default package sources for Ubuntu 14.04 to install Apache 2.4 and PHP 7.1. We also provide an option to install PHP 5.7 through a third-party repository.

If you are installing ProVision 7.x, or after, make sure that your build archive has "php7.x" as part of its name. For example "productionBuild-7.0.0-php7.1.tar".

1. Add PHP 7.1 package sources to your system:

```
add-apt-repository ppa:ondrej/php
```

and confirm with ENTER to continue.

If you get an error here, you may need to install python-software-properties first and then repeat the repository add as follows:

```
apt-get update
apt-get install python-software-properties

add-apt-repository ppa:ondrej/php
```

2. Update packages:

```
apt-get update
```

3. Install PHP:

```
apt-get install php7.1
```

and confirm with “y” and ENTER.

You’ll now see “PHP 7.1.x” in the scrolling installation logs.

To verify the installed version of PHP, run:

```
php7 -v
```

Install Apache2/PHP 7.x/MySQL 5.7 and development tools for pecl:

PHP 7.x / Apache2 / extensions

- httpd
- php7.1w
- php7.1w-opcache
- php7.1w-mysqlnd
- php7.1w-pdo
- php7.1w-ldap
- php7.1w-pecl-memcache
- php7.1w-bcmath
- php7.1w-devel
- php7.1w-pear
- php7.1w-cli
- php7.1-imap

Development tools for pecl / additional system packages:

- curl
- openssl
- memcached
- mod_ssl

```
apt-get install apache2 libapache2-mod-php7.1 php7.1 php7.1-cgi php7.1-cli php7.1-gd php7.1-curl php7.1-ldap
php7.1-mysqlnd php7.1-ssh2 php-pear php7.1-dev php7.1-imap curl openssl memcached php7.1-memcache
```

## MySQL

ProVision 7.x and above require MySQL 5.7 and above.
Add new repository for MySQL 5.7 distribution.

```
apt-key adv --keyserver pgp.mit.edu --recv-keys 5072E1F5
echo "deb http://repo.mysql.com/apt/ubuntu/ trusty mysql-5.7" >> /etc/apt/sources.list.d/mysql.list
```

Update current packages.

```
apt-get update
```

Install MySQL 5.7 to use a local database.

```
apt-get install mysql-server-5.7
```

You will be asked to enter a root password for the mysql server.

MySQL is now installed. You can proceed to next section DNS And Additional Utilities

Install MySQL to use a local database.

```
apt-get install mysql-server
```

You will be asked to enter a root password for the mysql server.

## DNS and Additional Utilities

Install the DNS and other utilities:

- curl
- openssl
- nmap
- dnsutils
- bind9utils
- expect

```
apt-get install curl openssl nmap dnsutils bind9utils expect
```

# 3) Configuring the requirements:

## SSL

Enable the necessary apache modules with the following command:

```
a2enmod php7 ssl rewrite headers
```

In order to create self signed certificates and to work properly, the hostname must be resolved properly.
Open the hosts file for editing:

```
    vi /etc/hosts
```

Add a record for your hostname

```
    X.X.X.X yourhostname
```

Create self signed certificate:

```
    make-ssl-cert generate-default-snakeoil --force-overwrite
```

## Apache

mod rewrite REQUIRED

⚠️

Please note that mod_rewrite is required! If it is not enabled in Apache, key elements will not work as expected.
Enable the default vhost for apache

```
a2ensite default-ssl
```

Allow overwrites in the apache vhosts

```
sed -i 's/AllowOverride None/AllowOverride All/g' /etc/apache2/apache2.conf
```

Update site configurations to use /var/www for docroot

```
sed -i 's/\/var\/www\/html/\/var\/www/' /etc/apache2/sites-available/000-default.conf
sed -i 's/\/var\/www\/html/\/var\/www/' /etc/apache2/sites-available/default-ssl.conf
```

Restart apache

```
service apache2 restart
```

## MySQL

MySQL Configuration:

```
mysql -p -e "SET GLOBAL sql_mode='NO_ENGINE_SUBSTITUTION';SET SESSION sql_mode='NO_ENGINE_SUBSTITUTION';"
```

Then, enter the MySQL root password when prompted.

MySQL Packet Size Configuration

⚠️

We recommend setting the max_allowed_packet setting in the MySQL configuration file to 128MB (or similar) to account for the typical dataset size handled in ProVision.

# 4) Optional configurations:

## Radius (Optional)

This section only needs to be followed if the customer will be using Radius for authentication.

Install radius module:

**Debian 8:**

```
apt-get install php7-radius
```

Create module loading configuration:
(shown using the vi editor, though you may use the editor of your choice)

```
vi /etc/php5/mods-available/radius.ini
```

Add the following lines to radius.ini:

```
; configuration for php radius module
; priority=20
extension=radius.so
```

To enable the radius module, type the following command:

```
php7enmod radius
```

## SSH

Install ssh module:

```
apt-get install libssh2-1-dev
```

then run

```
pecl install ssh2-1.1.2
```

Create module loading configuration:
(shown using the vi editor, though you may use the editor of your choice)

```
vi /etc/php7/mods-available/ssh2.ini
```

Add the following lines to ssh2.ini (adding extension=ssh2.so to your ssh2.ini):

```
; configuration for php ssh2 module
; priority=20
extension=ssh2.so
```

To enable, type the following command:

```
phpenmod ssh2
```

Reload apache

```
service apache2 reload
```

# 5) Install 6connect ProVision Software:

The latest version of ProVision can be found at https://cloud.6connect.com/Download/Latest/ and downloaded using the credentials provided to you!

If you need credentials provided to you, or any other assistance, please contact our support team atsupport@6connect.com.

1. Remove the current contents in the ProVision web folder location (currently the www root) and after extract the archive contents (where 7.x.x is the version number for the build):

```
tar -xf productionBuild-7.x.x-php7.x.tar -C /var/www/
```

2. Change the permissions to be the web user permissions

```
chown -R www-data.www-data /var/www
```

3. Go to http://<web root>/install/configTest.php.  Follow the provided instructions, correcting any configuration errors if they occur. Once all steps are completed, you are ready to use your ProVision instance!

# 6connect Local Software Upgrades

# Local Software Upgrades


- Local Software Upgrades
  - Upgrade Methods for Local Installs of 6connect Provision
    - Manual Upgrade (Recommended)


## Upgrade Methods for Local Installs of 6connect Provision

The recommended upgrade method for local installations of ProVision is a manual download of the latest version and running the associated upgrade script.

For upgrades consisting of multiple versions, ensure that each version upgrade is performed in order. If you have a particularly complicated upgrade or special concerns, contact our support team, and 6connect engineers can recommend an upgrade strategy tailored to your situation and assist as needed.

If you have questions, need assistance, or wish to schedule an upgrade to the latest version, contact support@6connect.com.

### Manual Upgrade (Recommended)

A manual upgrade is the recommended route for local installations, providing the highest level of control and oversight, and may be performed in installation scenarios where company policies restrict automatic downloads / script executions :

1. Download the latest 6connect tar file from https://cloud.6connect.com/Download/Latest/
2. Extract into web root.
3. Run configDir.sh <web user> from the command line as root in the web root.  This will setup the directories apache user needs read /write access to.

```
cd /var/www/html /var/www/html/configDir.sh <web user>
```

4. Run the upgrade scripts located in the upgrade/scripts directory in order of version number via:

```
php <upgrade-script.php> -v
```

The following local upgrade options are available, but are not generally recommended - differences in installation setup and access levels may result in these options being less reliable than the manual upgrade option.

#### GUI

In the 6connect tool, navigate to Admin  Admin Preferences page.  If there is a new version available, an Upgrade button will be available.  Click on the Upgrade Now button to go to the upgrade page.  It will automatically download the latest version available, run all upgrade scripts, and create a log of the upgrade process.

#### Command Line

In upgrade/scripts run 'php upgrade.php -h' to get the help and full usage of upgrade.php.  This script will automatically get the latest tar file, create a backup, and run all the necessary upgrades between the current and latest version.  The most common usage of upgrade will look like this 'php upgrade.php -v -b </path/to/store/backup>'

# Local Installations - Peering Setup

# Peering Setup - Local Installations:

## ProVision versions 5.3.0 to 6.1.2

ProVision uses a locally-hosted mirror of the PeeringDB database in order to perform non-edit Peering functions. There are a few steps to take in order to set up your locally hosted instance to coordinate with PeeringDB information.

As of PeeringDB 2.0, SQL dump files are no longer provided. If you are using ProVision 5.3.0 or higher, you must follow this new install process. If you are using a lower version of ProVision, then please follow the instructions in the previous version of this page.

1) Create a new database to store the PeeringDB data. This **must** be on the same server as the database which is used by ProVision.

2) Download, install, and use the PeeringDB Python Client to populate the database.

The PeeringDB documentation is available here: http://peeringdb.github.io/peeringdb-py/

3) Once this has been done, edit the ProVision global configuration file located here:

```
[ProVision Root]/data/globals.php
```

It must be updated with the following variables to inform ProVision of the location of this new install. The username and password fields correspond to the username and password of the MySQL account which has access to the database (Not the username and password to your PeeringDB account).

This can, but does not have to be, the same MySQL user which is used for the ProVision database. However, the ProVision MySQL user **must** have at least READ access to the PeeringDB database.

```
$peeringdb_host = 'localhost';          // Database host must be the same for provision and peering
$peeringdb_username = 'username';       // username for the MySQL user
$peeringdb_password = 'password';       // password for the MySQL user
$peeringdb_db_name = 'peeringdb';       // name of the database in MySQL
```

4) Periodically sync with the PeeringDB server to get the latest updates. This can be done manually, or there are instructions in the PeeringDB documentation on how to automatically schedule syncs using cron (http://peeringdb.github.io/peeringdb-py/cli/#sync).

## ProVision versions 7.x and newer

For ProVision versions 7.x and later, ProVision directly interfaces with PeeringDB's API to update exchange and peering data, caching the data for a default time of 12 hours.

This requires a PeeringDB account, and for the account credentials to be set in ProVision. The credentials may either be hard coded into globals.php, or set into the database via the Admin/Peering GUI. See Admin Preferences and Peering for detailed information.

Additional Peering constants may be added into globals.php to change the PeeringDB URL between the main and beta site (some users may find the beta site to have faster response times), and to adjust the PeeringDB cache TTL.

For real-time updates, TTL may be set to 0. However, some users may experience severe lag with a TTL = 0; we recommend using a 10 to 15 minute or greater TTL if this occurs.

### Peering Constants

In globals.php, the following constants can be defined to tweak the Peering internals:

## PEERINGDB_USERNAME

```
define('PEERINGDB_USERNAME', 'username');
```

Default value: none

The username for the account used to connect to the PeeringDB API

Instead of saving the username and password in the database, the values can be hard coded into globals.php

## PEERINGDB_PASSWORD

```
define('PEERINGDB_PASSWORD', 'mypass');
```

Default value: none

The password for the account used to connect to the PeeringDB API

## PEERINGDB_URL

```
define('PEERINGDB_URL', 'https://peeringdb.com/api/');
```

Default value: https://peeringdb.com/api/

The URL of the PeeringDB API. Alternate value: https://beta.peeringdb.com/api/

## PEERINGDB_CACHE_TTL

```
define('PEERINGDB_CACHE_TTL', 43200);
```

Default value: 43200 (12 hours)

How often (in seconds) to purge the cached PeeringDB API calls. If a customer wants real time access, this can be set to 0.

If experiencing major lag issues with real time access, it is recommended to increase to increase the cache TTL from 0 to 5, 10, or 15 minutes.

# Additional Information:

For additional information on working with Peering, see the following documentation sections:

Peering

Import Peering Sessions

# ESXi VM Image Setup

## Step 0

Ensure that you have the root user information for the VM and a license key - please contact 6connect Support (support@6connect.com) or your Reseller/VAR for more information.

## Step 1

Download OVF and VMDK files from 6connect (or approved) download area. If you do not have this information, please contact 6connect Support (support@6connect.com) or your Reseller/VAR for more information.

## Step 2

**Option 1:** Import OVF and VMDK to your ESXi VM environment (VMware ESXi 6.5 or later).

**Option 2:** If you do not have ESXi 6.5 or later, then you can create a new VM (CentOS, 64-bit, 4GB RAM) and use the VMDK disk image that you downloaded in Step 1.

## Step 3

Power on the VM and login using the root user account information from Step 0

## Step 4

Customize the VM environment for the following items:

1. Change the root user password from its default
2. edit /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-ens192 with your IP information
3. edit /etc/hostname
4. edit /etc/resolv.conf
5. Optional - add SSL certs (non self signed) per normal CentOS7 installation
6. Reboot the VM

## Step 5a

Finish setup of ProVision for your organization:

1. Go to https://<hostname or IP address>/install/configTest.php in a web browser
2. Scroll to the bottom to complete Step 13 (see image below). The Registration Email is your License Email that would have been sent to you by 6connect or ProVision VAR. If your VM is in an "offline" or SCIF environment please go to Step 5b.

3. You should now be able to go to your Instance URL and login with the credentials generated for your user/registration email address.

## Step 5b

For an "offline" license, you will be emailed a license file and path to place it. Without this file, you will not be able to login to ProVision. One the license file is applied, you should now be able to go to your Instance URL and login with the credentials generated for your user/registration email address.

Please note that the offline license file is version specific, so before you upgrade to a new version of ProVision, you will also need to make sure you update the license file after the upgrade.

# ProVision Getting Started

# Welcome to ProVision!

Our Getting Started documents provide a high-level overview to orient you to working in ProVision.

If you need setup assistance or additional information, you can contact our support team at support@6connect.com.


- Welcome to ProVision!
    - ProVision Getting Started
    - ProVision User Guide
    - ProVision Admin Guide
    - ProVision Developer Tools
    - Additional Resources


## ProVision Getting Started

First Steps - Not sure where to begin? Here are some key items to consider when setting up your first ProVision instance, high level overviews of Resources, Permissions, and Importing data into ProVision.

Resource Concepts - The Resource Management System is a key component of ProVision. This system supports a variety of hierarchies and metadata - understanding how these pieces can be used is important prior to importing data or setting up the application.

Workflow Concepts - ProVision has two distinct interfaces depending on the user level and task. It is important to understand how these interfaces work together from the centralized data. This is important for user on-boarding and training of internal operations staff, developers or engineering teams.

UI Element Legend - ProVision has some UI elements that you should be familiar with for easy day to day operation.

## ProVision User Guide

The user guide gives you an overview on the standard UI functions of ProVision and installed Modules.

## ProVision Admin Guide

The Admin Guide provides an overview of administrative functions of the different functional areas of ProVision.

## ProVision Developer Tools

The Developer Tools section has details on our API and related information - including code samples.

## Additional Resources

You can also browse the Tutorials and FAQ, if you have any questions, please contact our support team at support@6connect.com.

# First Steps

# ProVision First Steps


- ProVision First Steps
  - Overview Video: First Steps - Part 1
  - Before you Begin
    - 1) What type of physical and non-physical components do you wish to track?
    - 2) What is your current data structure? What is your ideal data structure?
    - 3) Who needs access to what data?
  - Overview Video: First Steps - Part 2
  - Getting your Data into ProVision
    - 1) Gather and Prep your data
    - 2) Import or Manually Add Data
      - A) Resources
      - B) IP Aggregates and Blocks
      - C) Add DNS servers and zones
    - 3) Add Users and Groups
  - Working In Provision


## Overview Video: First Steps - Part 1

This video gives a high level overview of the "Before you Begin" content on this page, as well as an introduction to ProVision's Resource System.

*Note: Recorded in ProVision v5.1.x, newer versions may have interface updates.*

This video may also be viewed at https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=apJRcQv3ZQ0.

## Before you Begin

We recommend that new users work through the following questions with their internal team to plan their ProVision instance:

Need Help?

Remember that 6connect's engineers are here to help. If you have questions, or want to test out some ideas, our team has worked with a variety of data sets and can help get you started on the right path. You can reach us any time at support@6connect.com.

### 1) What type of physical and non-physical components do you wish to track?

**Impacts: What Sections and Resources are created**

An important first step is determining what items you currently are, or will be, tracking, and what relationship they have with each other. ProVision's flexible Resource system allows you create and customize detailed entries for any type of item you may want to track: Customers, Contacts, Data Centers, Routers, VMs, and more. These types of resources are labeled as "Sections" in ProVision. Once a section is made, individual items (resources) may be created as a part of that Section. Each Section may have different Gadgets selected, which then provide additional functionality on a resource entry page.

See: Resources, Customizing Sections, Gadgets

### 2) What is your current data structure? What is your ideal data structure?

**Impacts: Resource Hierarchy, Assignment Behavior**

The resource hierarchy structure in ProVision allows for "child" resources to be created under a parent resource (for example: servers as children under a datacenter resource entry, or subsidiaries under a parent company, who then share IP aggregates). The structure decided upon will influence how resources are set up in ProVision, as well as the behaviors of functions while working with items such as IP blocks or DNS zones.

See: Resources, The Resource System

## 3) Who needs access to what data?

**Impacts: User and Group Permissions**

In ProVision, standard user permissions are set by resource and functional area (IPAM, Resource, Peering, etc). Global Admin permissions give access to additional functions such as configuration settings, importing, and Scheduler tasks. Determine which users will require administrative access, and which will have access to only specific resources or functional areas. You will need to get more specific later, but having some high level groups to work with is a great start.

See: Users & Permissions

# Overview Video: First Steps - Part 2

This video gives a high level overview of the "Getting your Data into ProVision" content on this page.

*Note: Recorded in ProVision v5.1.x, newer versions may have interface updates.*

This video may also be viewed at https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2e0H1H4rTTs.

# Getting your Data into ProVision

After determining your internal goals and processes, it's time to get your data into ProVision!

Start Small

When importing data into ProVision, data validation is a key step to ensure that everything is accurate. Upon importing your data, you may see some errors that result in a stop in the import process! It is recommended that you break up your imports to both keep them manageable and give you a chance to normalize your data prior to importing.

## 1) Gather and Prep your data

Determine where your data will be from:

**Excel / Spreadsheets:**

May be used to import: Resources, IP Aggregates/ Blocks, DNS BIND Zones

If you currently use Excel or other spreadsheet program for tracking, you will need to verify that your spreadsheets are "cleaned up" according to the information on the Importing Your Data page under "Preparing for Data Import":

- Make sure that you use UTF-8 encoding, remove extraneous blank rows, and compare your data to the data fields available in ProVision, shown under "Which Import Tool Should I Use?".
- Review sample files if desired to see example formats.
- If you plan to track custom types of Resources by creating Sections, you will need to create a Section with custom fields, and verify that your spreadsheet contains the same fields.

Once your verification / cleanup is complete, export your spreadsheet as a .csv file.

See: Importing Your Data, Resources, Import DNS Zones

**RIR**

May be used to import: IP Aggregates

No advance preparation is needed for aggregates imported from RIR. ProVision's built-in importer will ask for your ORGID or an IP, and then populate an aggregate list from that information. Simply choose which aggregates you wish to import.

See: Import Aggregate Blocks

**DNS Servers**

May be used to import: DNS Zones

ProVision provides automated tools for importing DNS zones from the following server types: BIND, PowerDNS, InfoBlox, NS One, Dyn DNS, and DNSMadeEasy servers, as well as IPPlan MySQL Databases.

Before importing DNS zones, it is recommended that a DNS Group be created to hold the zones being imported, and that the DNS server be added into ProVision so that zone updates may be pushed.

For general DNS taks, see: DNS Administration, DNS Tab, Working with DNS Groups, Working with DNS Servers

For specific DNS zone import instructions for each DNS server type, see: Import DNS Zones

**Manually Adding Data**

ProVision allows manual adding of data at any time. We recommend verifying that the item has not already been added beforehand (to prevent duplicates), and keeping your desired data structure in mind.

# 2) Import or Manually Add Data

The order in which items are added will depend on what ProVision functional area (Resources, IPAM, DNS) you will be using, and what the current / desired data structure is. In general, the following order is recommended:

## A) Resources

Importing or creating your resources first allows subsequent items to be associated with those resources.

Note: If you already have "Resource" data associated with your IP block data (ie, as fields in a spreadsheet with Resource Name and Resource ID), you may choose not to create those resources ahead of time. The IP Import from CSV tool will give you an option to create those Resources during the IP import process.

Import customers, physical devices, locations, and so forth through the Resource Import from CSV tool. If you wish for additional customization, you may create a custom Section, add the desired fields, and import resources under that Section through the Resource Import Tool.

Adding resources manually may be done at any time under the **Resources** Tab, by clicking the "Add Entry" button.

See: Resources, Importing Your Data

## B) IP Aggregates and Blocks

Import your IP Aggregates through the Import from RIR tool, or from a .csv file via IP Import from CSV.

The Import from CSV tool will create Top-Level Aggregates and place blocks under those aggregates based on the following method:

> First, the importer will parse through the provided data, order all blocks from largest to smallest, then attempt to split the largest block out of an existing block matching the IP space and RIR. If that fails (no larger block exists), then that block is added in the system as its own Top-Level-Aggregate. Subsequent blocks will undergo the same process.

This method ensures that your list of IP blocks does not need to be organized in any particular order.

If your import includes a large number of small blocks (/30s, /32s), be sure you've included at least one large block which encompasses them (/24, /22). This will ensure that the smaller blocks are neatly organized under the larger block, rather than imported as their own Top-Level Aggregates.

See: Importing Your Data

## C) Add DNS servers and zones

If using the DNS Module in ProVision, you will need to add your servers prior to importing zones.

**Add DNS Severs**

Adding DNS Servers requires administrative access.

Servers are added under the DNS Tab of ProVision, under "DNS Servers". Click on "Add Server" and fill out the server information.

See: Working with DNS Servers

Information for specific server types and options is available under the following sections:

Configuring ISC BIND Support

Configuring PowerDNS Support

Configuring Secure64 Support

Configuring ACLs/Views

Configuring DNSSEC

**Import DNS Zones**

After creating the applicable servers in ProVision, you may import or manually add DNS zones.

ProVision offers multiple DNS zone import options, available under the Data Import tab in the Admin section. For more information on importing DNS zones, see Importing your Data and Import DNS Zones.

**BIND Zone Import**

- Imports using the named.conf configuration file tied to the zones you are uploading, a .zip or .tar file of the zones themselves, and an optional .csv file mapping zones to customers.

**PowerDNS Zone Import**

- Option is available after configuring a PowerDNS server with a MySQL backend. Connects to the selected server and imports all zones.

**InfoBlox Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using a provided Host, Username, and Password. The InfoBlox import pulls all zones on the InfoBlox LOCAL grid and adds them to a designated Group. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**NS One Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using a NS One API Key. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**Dyn DNS Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using a Dyn DNS Customer Name, Username, and Password. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**DNSMadeEasy Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using a DNSMadeEasy API Key and API Secret. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**IPPlan Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using IPPlan MySQL database options. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

Manually adding zones may be done at any time from the **DNS** Tab. See Working with DNS Zones and DNS Zones Overview.

## 3) Add Users and Groups

In ProVision, the permissions structure is handled by assigning users to groups, then setting specific resource-level C/R/U/D permissions for that group. It is designed to give you as much flexibility as you need to accommodate most use cases. When mapping out the permissions structure for your organization, keep in mind who you want to access to application:

- Internal Users and Roles (Admins, Read Only, etc.)
- Partners related to multiple specific Resources/Accounts
- Customers/Departments with limited view to only their respective Resources/Accounts

See: Users & Permissions, Working With Users and Groups

Users and Groups may be added at any time. However, assigning permissions to users and groups is best done after the applicable resource hierarchy has been added into ProVision.

# Working In Provision

With the basic data now imported, and users set up, you (and your team) are ready to work in ProVision!

Refer to our User Guide and Admin Guide for details on standard user and admin level areas of ProVision. Or, follow the links below for additional details grouped by specific task areas:

**Concepts:**

Resource Concepts

Workflow Concepts

**Resources:**

Resources

Customizing Sections

Customizing Fields

Gadgets

**IPAM:**

IPAM Tab

Working with IP Blocks

Working with IP Rules

IPAM Administration

**DNS:**

DNS Tab

Working with DNS Groups

Working with DNS Zones

DNS Zones Overview

DNS Administration

Working with DNS Servers

**DHCP:**

DHCP Tab

Working with DHCP Groups

Working with DNS Zones

Working with DHCP Gadgets

DHCP Administration

**Peering:**

Peering

Peering Exchanges

Peering Routers

Peering Sessions

Import Peering Sessions

# Resource Concepts

# The Resource System

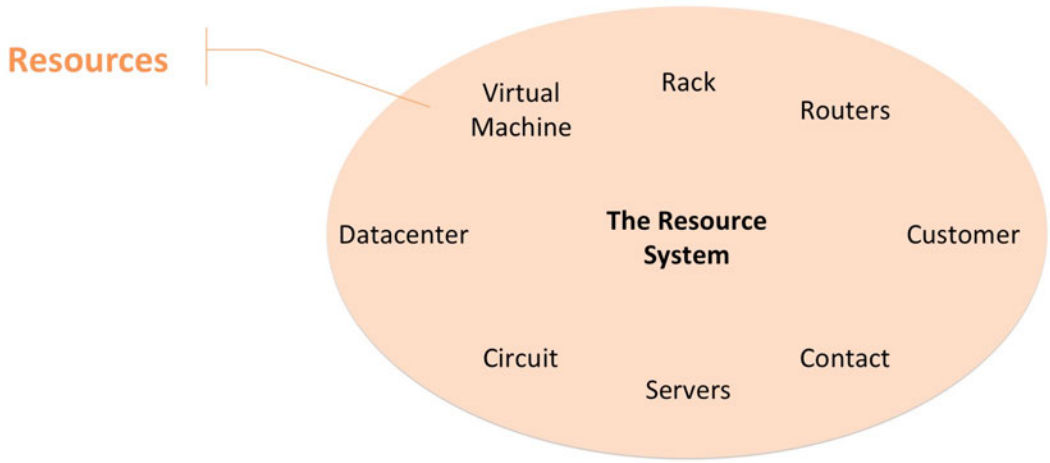

- The Resource System
  - Resource System Components
    - Resources
    - Section
    - Entry
    - Category
  - Resource Hierarchy
    - Additional Information:


## Resource System Components

### Resources

In ProVision, a “Resource” is simply an umbrella term for the components that you are tracking. Resources may be:

- Physical assets such as servers and routers
- Virtual assets such as DNS Zones or VMs
- Individual people or companies (customers)
- Places holding your assets, such as datacenters

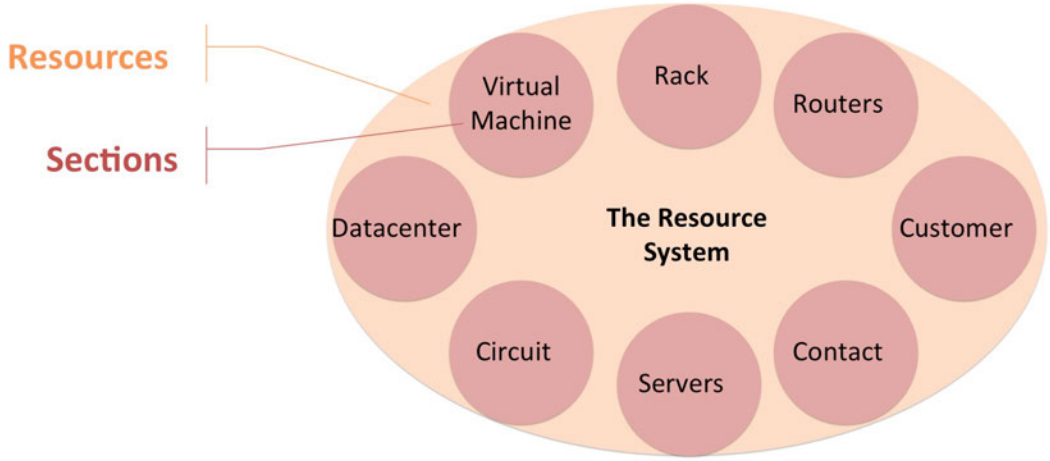



### Section

The generic type of a resource is called a Section. General terms such as Rack, Routers, Customer, Servers, and Datacenters would be considered "Sections" in ProVision.

Example: You might have an individual server named "Test Server", but its generic type of resource is that of a “Server” – so we would associate “Test Server” with the Section “Server”.

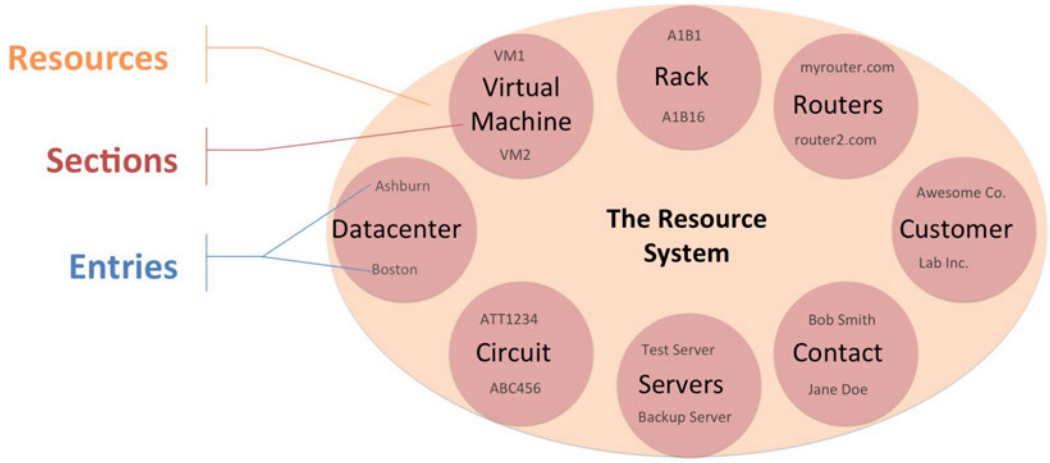
Think of Sections as templates for your resources. When a Section is created, you can associate specific fields and gadgets with that Section. In the case of our "Server" section, we would want to associate fields that are common server properties, such as Make, Model, Operating System, and Domain.  Then, anytime we looked up a specific server in ProVision, we can see and update the Make, Model, OS, and Domain information.




## Entry

Think of an Entry as the individual item you are tracking – it has a specific name, it might have an IP Address, a physical address, or additional descriptive data that is associated with it.

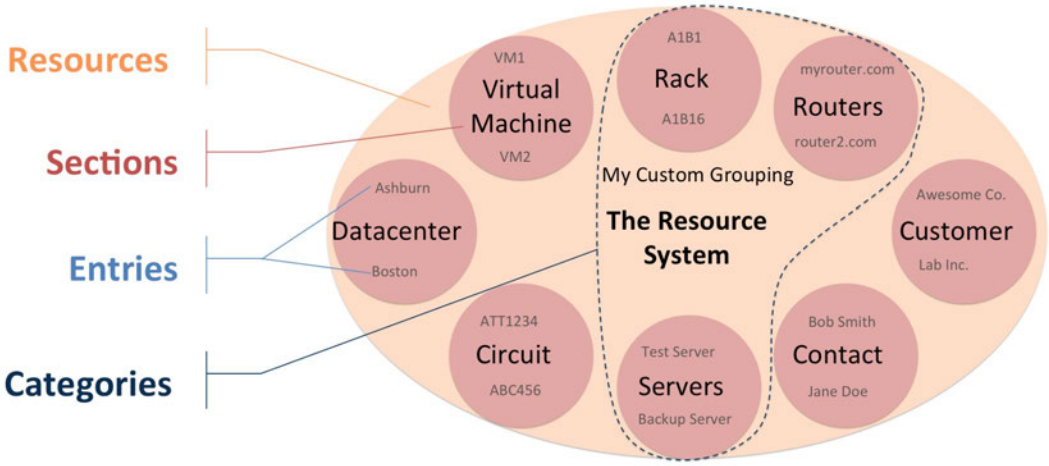
Our "Test Server" resource is an Entry under the "Server" Section.




Here, we can see that under the “Datacenter” section, we have two entries – one is the Ashburn Datacenter, the other is the Boston Datacenter. Under “Servers”, we have entries for “Test Server” and “Backup Server”.

## Category

Another part of ProVision's resource system is "Categories". Categories allow you to group resources together under a name of your choosing to further organize your resources. A category that is often used is "Customer", grouping customer resources together

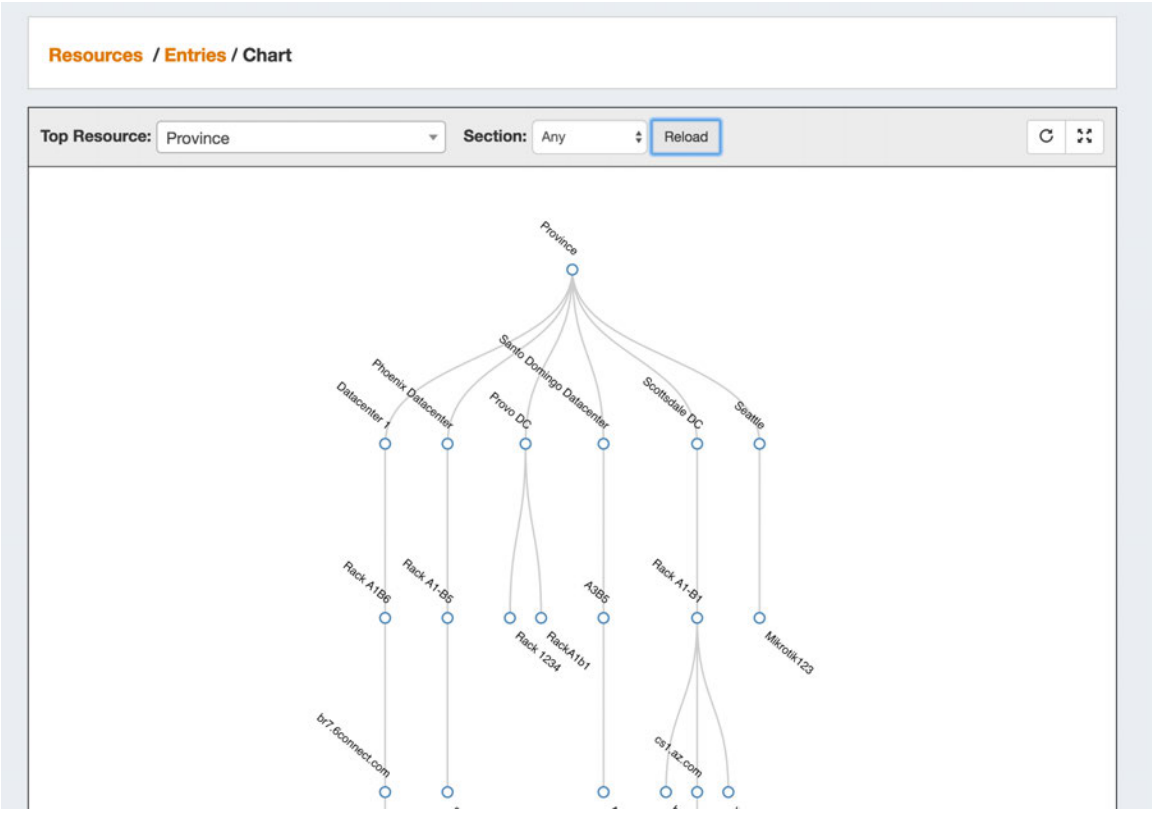



In this example, we are grouping Racks, Servers, and Routers under the "My Custom Grouping" Category.

Creating categories is entirely optional, so you can decide internally if the additional organization is needed in your instance.

## Resource Hierarchy

In ProVision, "Child" Resources can be created underneath a "Parent" resource. This functionality allows for hierarchies to be created to match the desired organizational structure. An example of this would be to create racks and servers as children under a datacenter entry. Chart View, available from the **Resources** Tab, lets you see this structure graphically.




The structure decided upon will influence how resources are set up in ProVision, as well as behaviors of functions while working with items such as IP Blocks or DNS zones.

## Additional Information:

Resources

Working with Entries

Customizing Sections

Customizing Fields

Gadgets

# Workflow Concepts

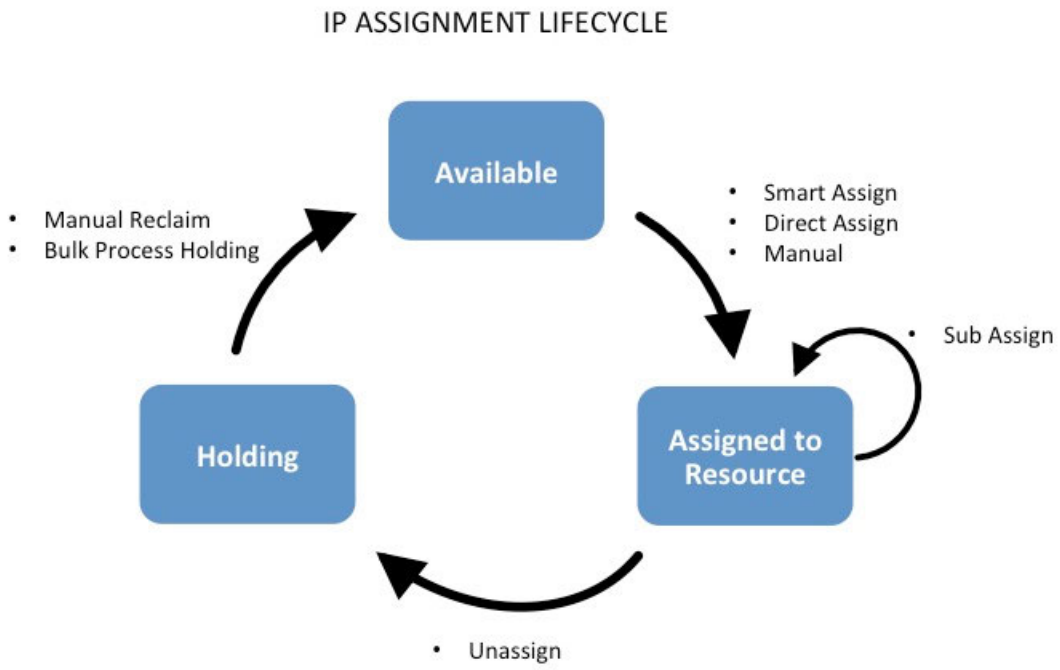
# Workflow Concepts


- Workflow Concepts
- IP Assignment Lifecycle
  - IP Management
- Peering
- VLAN Manager
  - Standard flow (without VLAN tags):
  - Optional flow (with VLAN tags):
- DHCP
- DNSv3 Workflow
- Approvals Workflows
  - Initial Setup
    - Step 1 - Review Existing User Groups and Process Needs
    - Step 2 - Add or Edit ProVision User Groups
    - Step 3 - Assign Approval Action Settings to Groups
    - Step 4 - Enable Notifications (Optional)
    - Step 6 - Add Scheduler Task: "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month"
  - Daily Use


# IP Assignment Lifecycle

In ProVision, the IP assignment lifecycle starts with an available block which is free to be assigned to any IPAM-enabled resource holder.  There are multiple methods that may be used to assign a block to a resource holder: Smart Assign, Direct Assign, or Manual Assign (Smart Browse).

Once an IP block is assigned, blocks can be further subassigned via the same methods if desired. When an assigned block is un-assigned it proceeds into the Holding Tank: a special resource where blocks are held until either a set time has elapsed or until they are manually reclaimed to 'available' status.




For more information on performing tasks in this IP Assignment Lifecycle, see the following documentation sections:

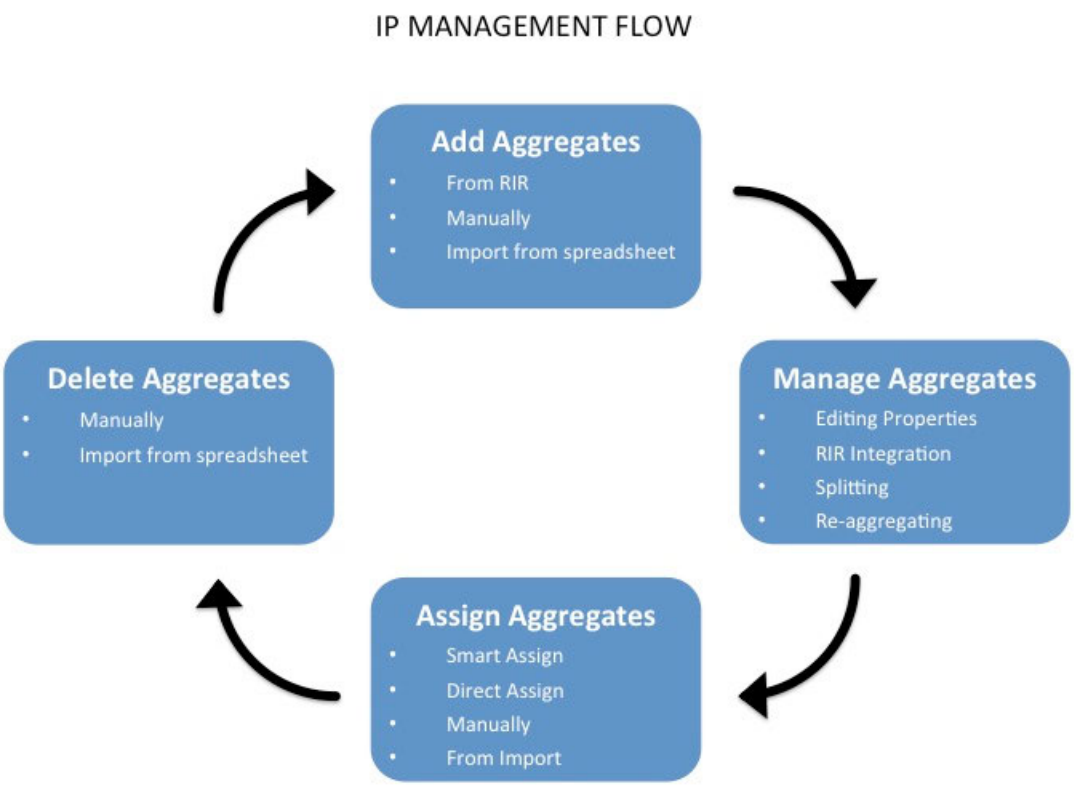
Working with IP Blocks

IPAM Administration

# IP Management

IP Management is comprised of four basic functions: adding aggregates into ProVision, managing those aggregate blocks, assigning them to a resource, and deleting the aggregates.

ProVision provides multiple ways for you to achieve each step, depending on your needs. For example, if your organization currently uses spreadsheet data to track aggregates, ProVision provides tools that can import your existing spreadsheets for bulk updates, saving you time. Need to just quickly assign a single IP? Direct Assign will allow you to do so with just a few clicks.




For more information on performing tasks in this IP Management Flow, see the following documentation sections:

Working with IP Blocks

IPAM Administration

Importing Your Data

Import Aggregate Blocks

# Peering

**ProVision versions 7.0.0 and later:**

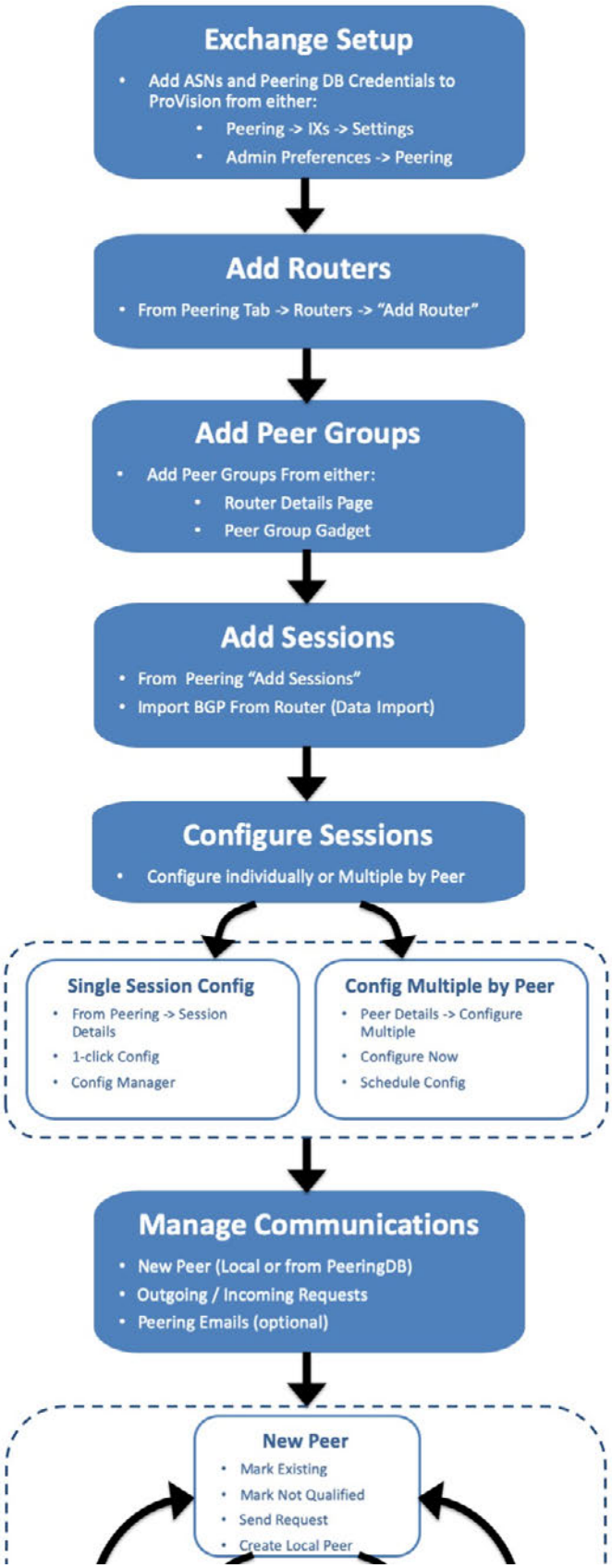
Initially, ASNs and Peering DB information will need to be entered into ProVision to enable Peering functionality. After the, Peering starts with designating Routers. Routers may be added from the "Add Router" button under the Peering Tab Routers sub-tab. Once a router has been created, Peer Groups may be added from the Router Details page or the Peer Group Gadget.

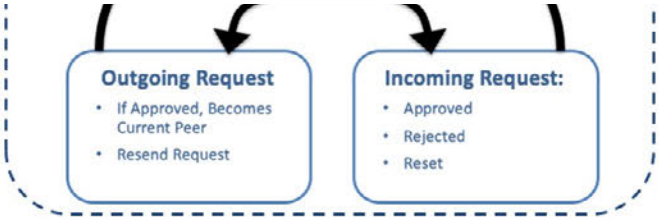
After the router(s) and Peer Groups have been created in ProVision, Sessions need to be added. Sessions may be added manually through the "Add Session" dialog in the Peering tab, or Imported from a router (requires ProVision Admin permissions).

Once a session has been created, it can be configured and managed through the Sessions list and Session details page (using 1-click Config or Config Management), or multiple sessions may be configured for a specific Peer via the "Configure Multiple Sessions" option, which will provide options to either "Config Now" or "Schedule Config" for a later time.

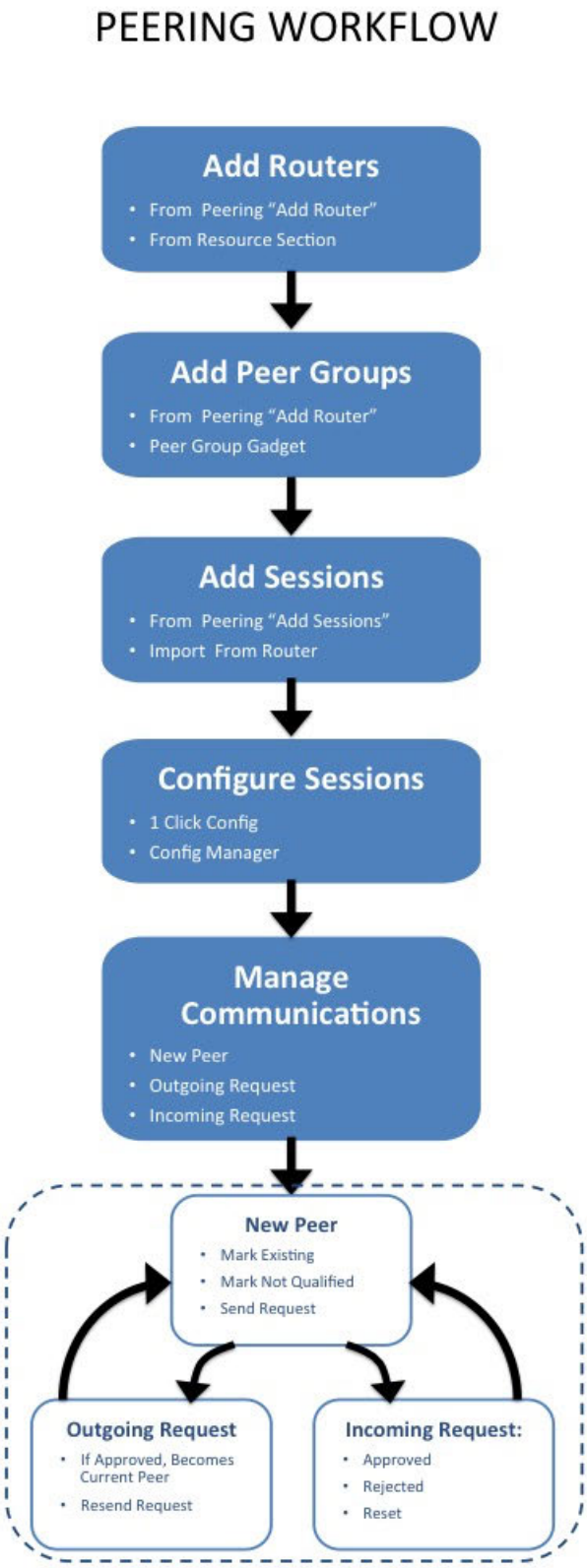
Managing Peer Communications is done primarily from the Exchange  Communications menu, sending requests and marking peers as existing / not qualified / approved, etc. If desired, a corporate Peering email account may be associated with ProVision under the Peering  Emails subtab, allowing for peering requests to be viewed from ProVision and associated with Peers.

# PEERING WORKFLOW






**ProVision versions 6.2.1 and earlier:**




For more information on performing tasks under Peering, see the following documentation sections:

**Peering:**

Peering

Peering Exchanges

Peering Routers

Peering Sessions

Import Peering Sessions

# VLAN Manager

The VLAN Manager allows Admin users to add domains and VLANs to their ProVision instance, and associate them with IP Blocks. Optionally, VLAN tags may be associate with ranges or individual VLANs under a domain, to help limit VLAN search results when enabling VLANs.

## Standard flow (without VLAN tags):

The workflow starts with creating a domain in the VLAN Admin section of ProVision. During creation, domains may be selected as "standard" or "extended" domains, declaring the size of the VLAN pool from which VLANs are available to be enabled. Next, VLANs must be enabled and added to the domain. This is done under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision. Add VLANs to the domains by clicking "Add", searching for the desired range of VLANs to enable from the standard / extended pool, and selecting the desired VLANs to enable. Once enabled, VLANs may be edited or have IP blocks associated with that VLAN. Editing VLANs and Direct / Smart Browse / Search IPs functions for adding blocks to VLANs are available from the Domain/ VLAN list under under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision by expanding the desired domain and clicking on the VLAN link. IP blocks may also be edited individually through the IPAM gadget, IPAM Manage, and VLAN Manage areas to add domain and VLAN information to the block.

## Optional flow (with VLAN tags):

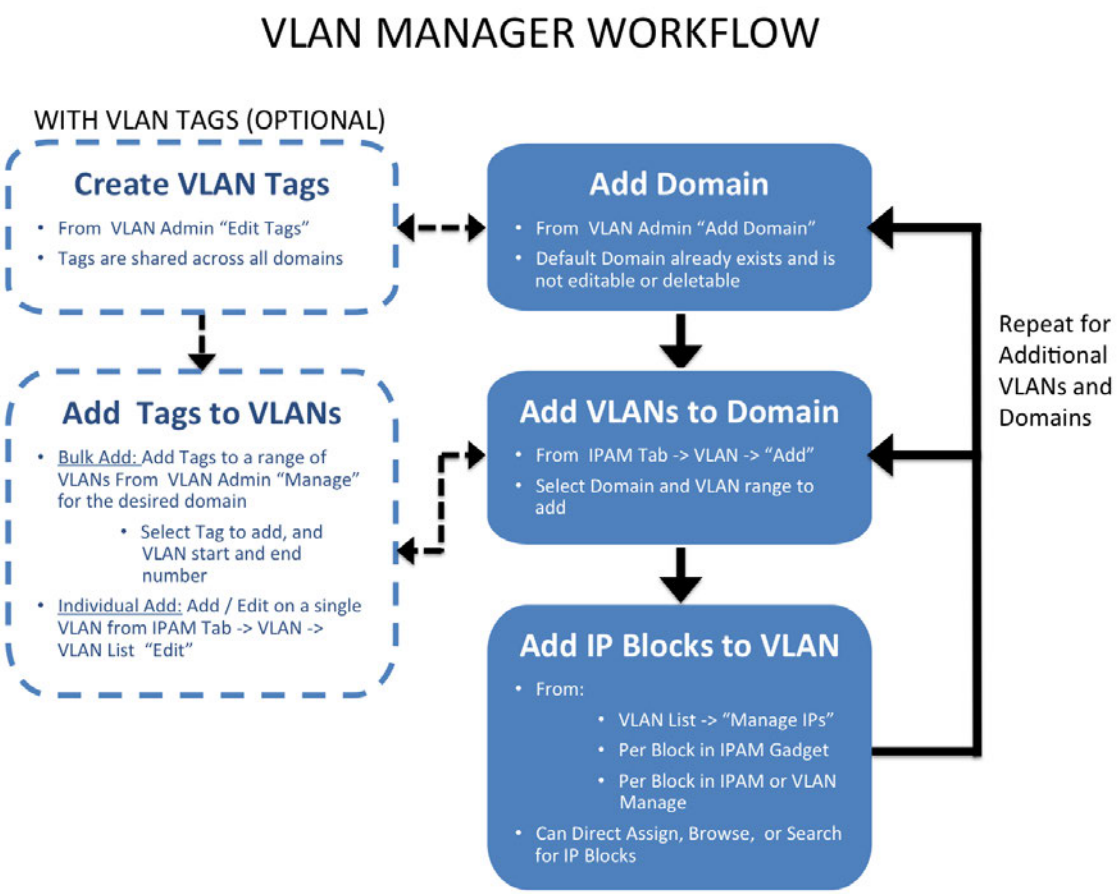
The workflow starts with creating a domain in the VLAN Admin section of ProVision. During creation, domains may be selected as "standard" or "extended" domains, declaring the size of the VLAN pool from which VLANs are available to be enabled. VLAN tags may be added (from the VLAN Admin Tab -> Edit Tags submenu) before or after domain creation. Tags created in this area are available to all domains and VLANs.

If the tags created need to be added to a large range of VLANs, the next step would be to add tags to the desired range(s) of VLANs from the VLAN Admin -> Domain "Manage" button. Domain Manage allows you to select an existing tag, type in the numeric VLAN start and end point, and assign that tag to that entire range of VLANs under the current domain.

Once a bulk range of tags is associated with VLANs, you can use the tag as a search criteria when adding VLANs to a domain. This is done under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision. Add VLANs to the domains by clicking "Add", using the tag name as a search field for the desired range of VLANs, and then selecting the desired VLANs to enable.

If tags are only desired for individual VLANs, they may be added when editing a VLAN after the VLAN has already been added/enabled for the domain. Editing VLANs may be accessed from the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section, then expanding the desired domain and clicking on the VLAN link, selecting "Edit".

Next, VLANs must be enabled and added to the domain. This is done under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision. Add VLANs to the domains by clicking "Add", searching for the desired range of VLANs to enable from the standard / extended pool, and selecting the desired VLANs to enable. Once enabled, VLANs may be edited or have IP blocks associated with that VLAN. Editing VLANs and Direct / Smart Browse / Search IPs functions for adding blocks to VLANs are available from the Domain/ VLAN list under under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision. IP blocks may also be edited individually through the IPAM gadget, IPAM Manage, and VLAN Manage areas to add domain and VLAN information to the block.




# DHCP

**ProVision versions 7.0.0 and later:**

ProVision 7.0.0+ includes many updates to the DHCP module, including the introduction of DHCP Groups, updated interface, improved permissions control, and simplified pool management. The DHCP Tab contains areas for managing both admin and non-admin tasks together for DHCP Groups, DHCP Servers, and DHCP Pools.

DHCP Groups allow you to create, view, and manage groups of DHCP Servers and Pools. Using groups, you can configure and push selected combinations of zones at one time. DHCP pools may be gathered under DHCP Groups, and servers attached to those Groups. Pools, attached servers, and failovers are managed at a per-Group level. Users can then view and manage Groups, individual pools, failover values, attach servers, and perform pushes all on the same page.

Additionally, starting in ProVision 7.0.0, any IPAM aggregate or block may be used for DHCP pools - provided it meets the specified criteria when creating a DHCP Pool. If assigning a pool out from a specific resource, ensure ahead of time that the resource contains suitable blocks with subassignments enabled.

The DHCP Workflow begins with adding DHCP Servers into ProVision and creating an additional DHCP Groups as needed.

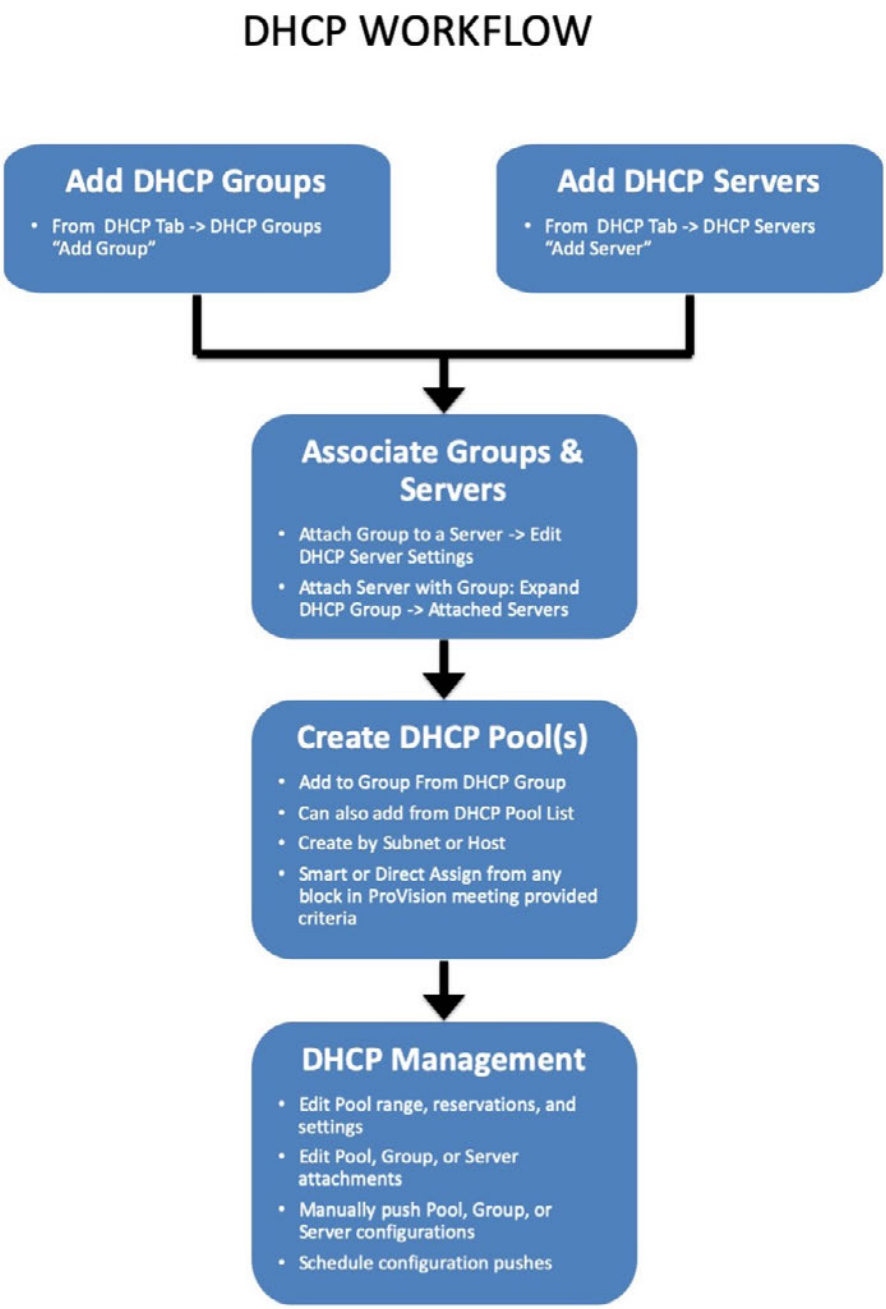
New DHCP servers may be added from the DHCP Tab - DHCP Servers subtab by clicking "Add Server" (requires Admin access). Type in the server information, select the service, and choose the resource to which the DHCP server belongs if applicable. This creates a hierarchical relationship, with the server as a child resource under the selected parent, and affects how permissions are handled for the server and pools. Then, enter any service-specific or advanced settings for the server. You may also choose which DHCP group to associate with the server if the group already exists, but you may also add that setting later.

If desired, you may create additional DHCP Groups to organize certain pools and associated DHCP servers together to push concurrently, with the option of a common failover value. A common scenario is using separate DHCP Groups per server, or separate Groups for IPv4 vs. IPv6 pools. A new DHCP Group may be created from the DHCP Groups subtab "Add Group" button. Enter the Group Name and parent resource. Once created, you may attach a DHCP server to the Group, associate a failover, and add pools to it.

Next, you may add/assign DHCP pools. Before assigning pools, ensure that you have suitable IP aggregates created in ProVision meeting your desired parameters to assign to the pool (such as desired RIR, region, VLAN, or allocated to a specific Resource). If assigning a pool out from a specific resource, ensure ahead of time that the resource contains suitable blocks that have subassignments enabled.

To add a pool to a DHCP Group, click the "Add Pool" button for that group. You may also add a pool from the DHCP Pools subtab without associating the pool with a DHCP Group. From the "Create New Pool" dialog, select the pool type ("Subnet" or "Host), enter in the relevant information, and select to either Direct Assign a specific block, or have ProVision Smart Assign a block based on provided filter criteria - such as assigned resource, region, rule, or VLAN. Click "Save" to complete the Pool assignment.

Once servers, groups, and pools have been created, you may complete management tasks such as pushing configs on either a server, group, or individual pool level, schedule pushes, update reservations or assignment ranges, and change group/server associations as needed.



**For ProVision versions 6.2.1 and earlier:**

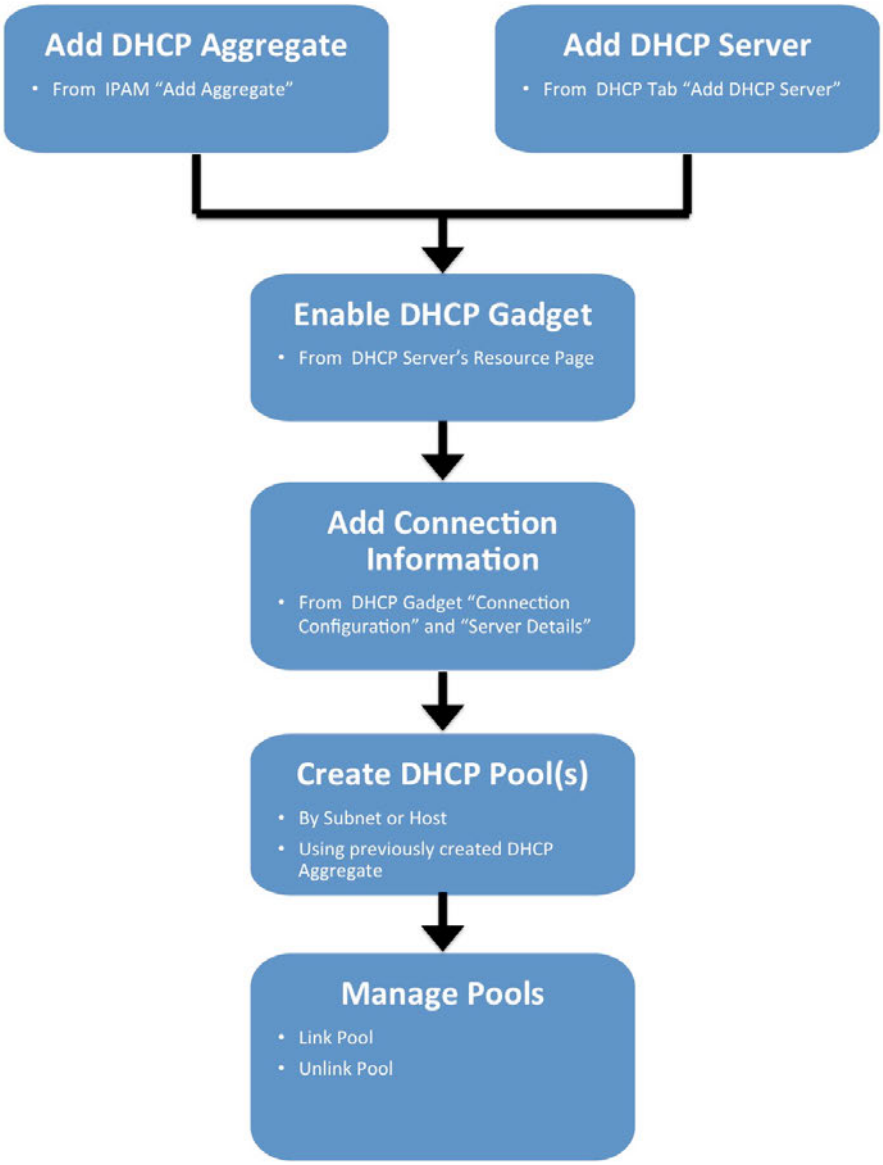
The DHCP Workflow in ProVision begins with denoting the DHCP IP Aggregate(s) from the IPAM Tab -> "Add Aggregate".  When creating DHCP aggregates, ensure that the block is designated as 1918 space, and has the check boxes next to "DHCP Aggregate" and "Allow Sub-assignment" selected. This will ensure the block is automatically added to the DHCP Available Resource, and is usable when defining DHCP Pools.

Separately, ensure that the DHCP server is added into ProVision. New DHCP servers may be added from the DHCP Tab "Add DHCP Server" button. Type the server name, then choose the resource to which the DHCP server belongs. This creates a hierarchical relationship, with the server as a child resource under the selected parent.

Once the server has been created in ProVision, click on the server name in the DHCP server list to go to the server's Entry Page. If the server was created through the DHCP Tab, the DHCP Management Gadget will already be enabled for the DHCP server. If created elsewhere, the DHCP Gadget may need to be enabled by simply selecting the "On" radio toggle next to "DHCP Services", and clicking the "Update" button. Next, add in the connection configuration and server details for the DHCP server in the DHCP Gadget.

Now that the DHCP server is set up and DHCP aggregates created, DHCP Pools may be created and managed. Pools may be created by subnet or host. Creating by subnet allows for a block to either be directly assigned manually, or for ProVision to SmartAssign a block based on the provided criteria. Creating by host requires providing a host and MAC address, and then likewise may have an IP directly assigned or Smart Assigned. DHCP Pools, once created, are managed by linking or unlinking to the DHCP server. IP assignments and pool details may be changed at any time by clicking on the pool name, editing the details as desired, then clicking "Save".

# DHCP WORKFLOW



For more information on working with DHCP in ProVision, see the DHCP Tab documentation.

For more information on DHCP tasks, see the following sections:

DHCP Tab

Working with DHCP Groups

Working with DHCP Pools

Working with DHCP Gadgets

DHCP Administration

Working with DHCP Servers

# DNSv3 Workflow

DNSv3 revolves around Groups. Zones are gathered under Groups, servers attached to Groups, and pushes may be done on a per Group level. Thus, the first workflow step in DNSv3 is to set up one or more DNS Groups. A "Default Group" is automatically provided in ProVision, but other Groups may be desired to organize zones and default values.

To create a new DNS Group, click the "Add Group" button from the **DNS Groups** tab. Enter the desired default values for the Group, and save. If only using the Default Group, ensure the default parameter values are set as needed. For more information, see Working with DNS Groups.

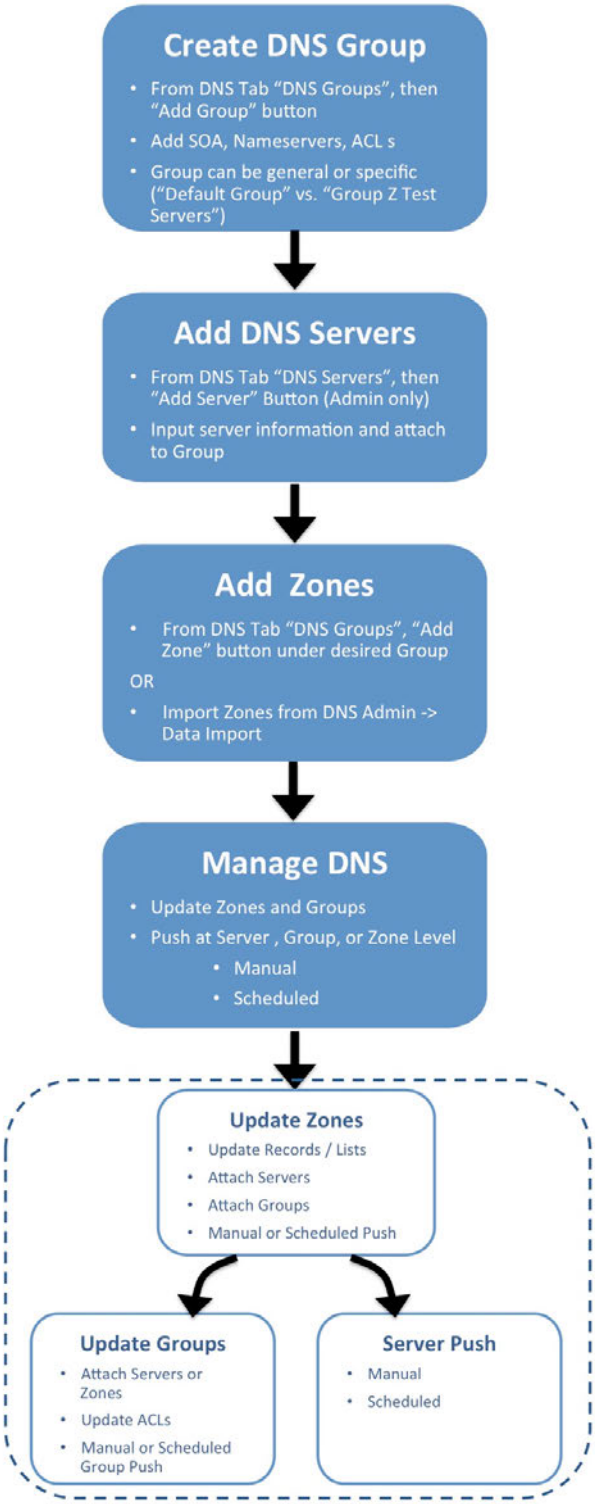
After Groups have been set up, DNS servers should be added or settings verified. Admin users may add DNS servers from the **DNS Servers** tab "Add Server" button. Input the server information and save. Existing servers may be reviewed and edited by clicking on the server name in the DNS Server List. Once a server is created in ProVision, it may be attached to any DNS Group under the Group's "Attached Servers" module. Attaching a server to a Group will allow for zones in that group to be pushed to the attached server(s). See Working with DNS Servers.

Next, add zones to your groups. Zones may be manually added under each group by clicking the "Add Zone" button, or it may be imported via DNS Importers into a selected Group. Add the zone and record information, and save. See Working with DNS Zones for additional information.

Zones may be only exist once per Group, but may be duplicated under multiple Groups. Zones may also be moved from Group to Group as needed.

At this point, all major components of the ProVision DNS system have been added - from here management tasks take over. Zones may be updated and moved to or from Groups; Groups may be edited with different default values or servers, and pushes maybe be performed for an individual zone, a full Group, or for an entire server. Pushes may be manual or scheduled for a future time through the Scheduler.

# DNS WORKFLOW



For more information on DNSv3 tasks, see the following sections:

DNS Tab

Working with DNS Groups

Working with DNS Zones

DNS Administration

Working with DNS Servers

Import DNS Zones

# Approvals Workflows

## Initial Setup

The high level process to use when first setting up approvals is as follows:

1. Review User Groups and Approval Process Needs

### Step 1 - Review Existing User Groups and Process Needs

When setting up Approvals for the first time, review the information in the previous section under "Approvals Fundamentals" to ensure a basic understanding of how Policies, Actions, and User Groups relate together in Approvals.

Then, take a few minutes to think about the following questions to get a better sense of how to use Approvals with your specific organization:

Who are the users that perform DNS tasks, and at what level?

*Affects which users should be included in what User Groups*

What ProVision User Group(s) are they in?

*Approvals settings are applied to the User Group, not individuals - ensure users with similar oversight needs are grouped together*

What actions made by a certain user group should be automatically denied, if any?

*Assign the "Deny" policy to that Action/User Group combination*

What actions made by a certain user group should require oversight (admin approval / rejection)?

*Assign "Action to be approved" to that Action/User Group combination*

Who is the admin / User Group that will make the final approval on a change?

*Ensure the approver(s) is in a User Group with the "Must Approve" policy assigned for the actions requiring approval*

Should any changes require multiple admins / User Groups to approve it in order to execute?

*A single user from every group assigned with "Must Approve" for the action must approve the action for it to succeed*

*If two admins are required to both separately agree on a change, they should be under two separate User Groups assigned "Must Approve"*

What User Groups would need to receive email Approval Status notifications, and on what type of actions?

*Affects whether to enable notifications and set up the scheduler task to send the notifications, and to what User Groups. When enabled, all users of the relevant group(s) will receive the email(s)*

Once your User Groups are optimized for use with Approvals, you may want to write down a quick note on which Action Types and policies are planned for each group.

2. Edit User Groups / Create Approvals-Specific User Groups, if needed

## Step 2 - Add or Edit ProVision User Groups

From here, depending on the answers to the questions in step 1, you may need to do one or more of the following from the **Users** tab:

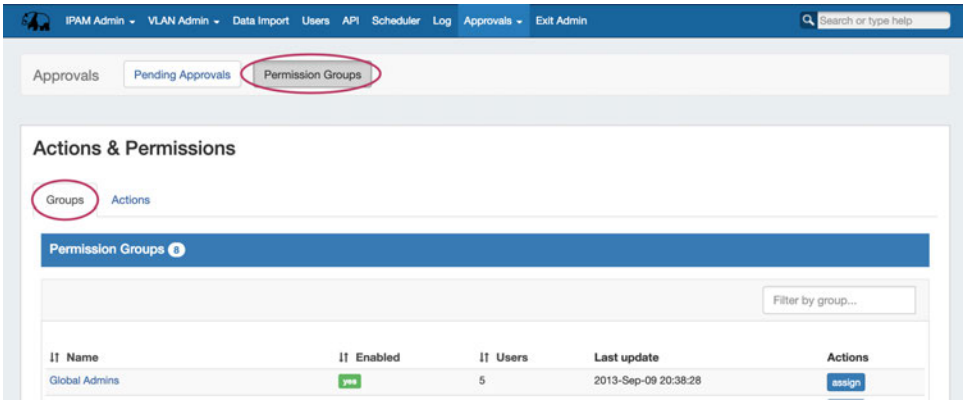
a. Edit existing User Groups to add or remove users, in order to combine users who will need similar action types approved.
b. Verify the User Groups have appropriate CRUD permissions set to perform the action(s) to be approved (e.g, you may have previously removed "Create" permissions for a group, but if the intent is now for those users to have "Add" actions approved by an Admin, the submitter will need User Group resource "Create" permissions back!)
c. Create new User Groups specifically for use with Approvals (recommended)
d. Associate users with different, or additional User Groups (remember - users can be associated with multiple groups!)

For more information on adding and editing ProVision User Groups, see Users & Permissions, Global Permissions, and Working With Users and Groups.

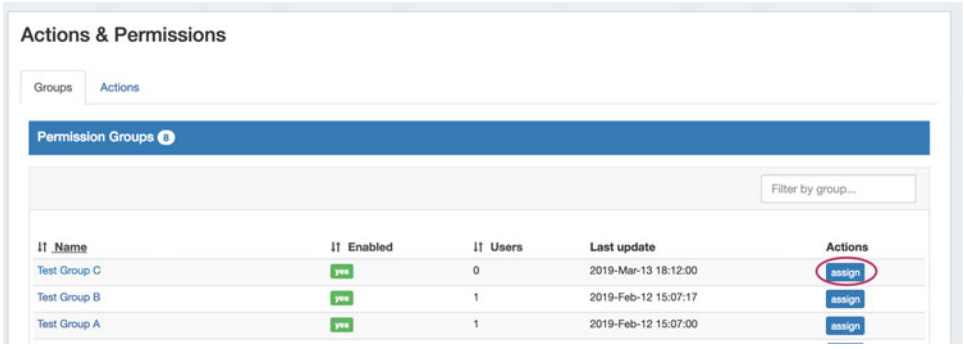
3. Assign Action and Policy Settings to User Groups

## Step 3 - Assign Approval Action Settings to Groups

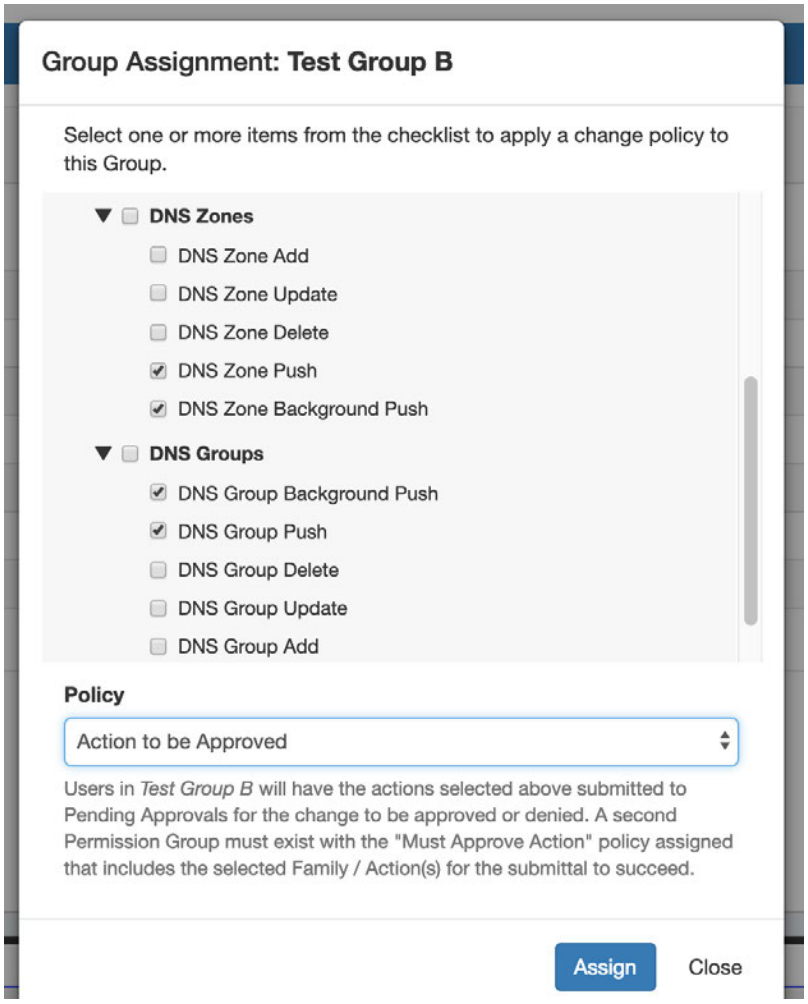
From the **Approvals** Tab, navigate to the **Permission Groups** sub-tab.




Then, under the **Groups** page tab, find the ProVision User Group you wish to want to assign a policy to and click "Assign".




Clicking the "Assign" button for a group brings up a checklist to select what policy to apply to the group for what Family and Actions (i.e. DNS Zone 'Add' or DNS Group 'Update'). You can "quick-select" all actions for a DNS Family (Severs, Groups, Zones, Records) by clicking the checkbox next to the family name, or only select individual action types for each Family.



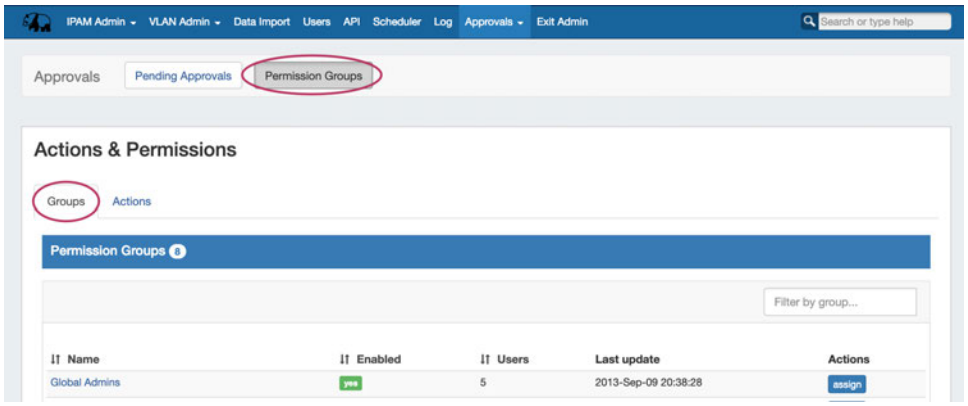

Once you've selected the applicable Family/Action combinations to apply a policy for, select either "Deny", "Action to be Approved", or "Must Approve Action" under Policy.

When done, Click "Assign", and repeat as needed for other Policy types or User Groups.

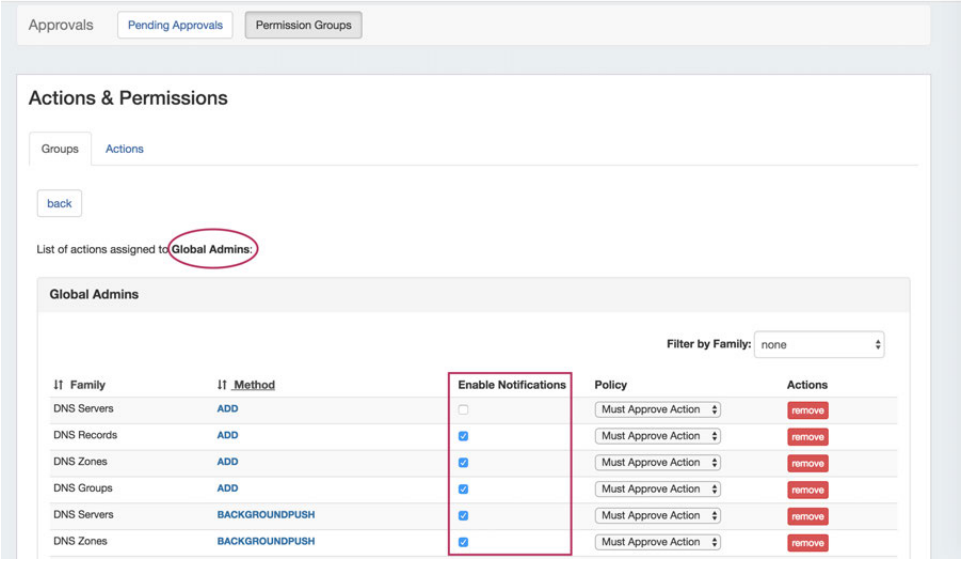
4. If using Approvals notifications, enable notifications for the appropriate Permissions Group(s)

## Step 4 - Enable Notifications (Optional)

From the **Approvals** Tab, navigate to the **Permission Groups** sub-tab **Groups** page tab.




Click on the group name for which you want to set notifications - the Group Permissions Detail page will provide additional information on the group's settings.




For any Family/Action that you want to enable notifications, click the checkbox under "Enable Notifications". All users of that group will get email notifications when a change of the selected type(s) are made.

5. If using Approvals notifications, set up a Scheduler task for "Approvals - Process Subscription"

**Step 5 - Add Scheduler Task: "Approvals - Process Subscription"**

The "Approvals - Process Subscription" task processes approval request events and handles the sending of notification emails to subscribed Approvals Groups - this task must be created and running on a regular interval in order for Approval Notification emails to be sent.

In order to receive the most up to date information in the Approval Notifications, is recommended to create this task with a run time of "every 5 minutes" and no end date.

For information on setting up Scheduler Tasks, see Scheduler Tab.

6. Set up a Scheduler Task for "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month", to occasionally clear out old and obsolete Approval request events

### Step 6 - Add Scheduler Task: "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month"

The "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month" task deletes any Approvals history events older than 30 days.

It is recommended to set this task to run monthly with no end date, to clear out obsolete approvals items, reduce data storage space needs, and reduce approvals page load time.

For information on setting up Scheduler Tasks, see Scheduler Tab.

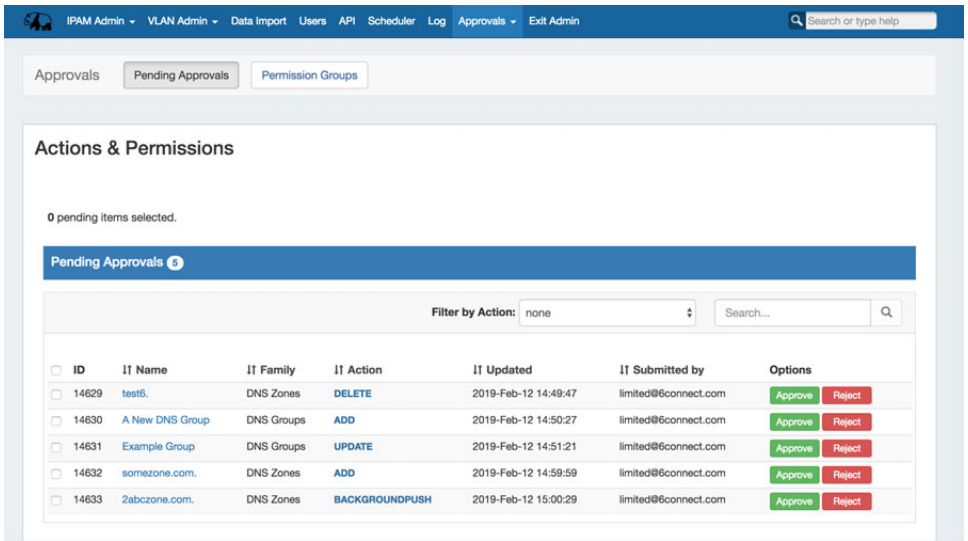
## Daily Use

On a day-to-day basis after initial setup, an Approvals Workflow will be similar to the following (with "Submitter" as the user whose actions require approval, and "Approver" as the admin with the ability to approve/reject the change):

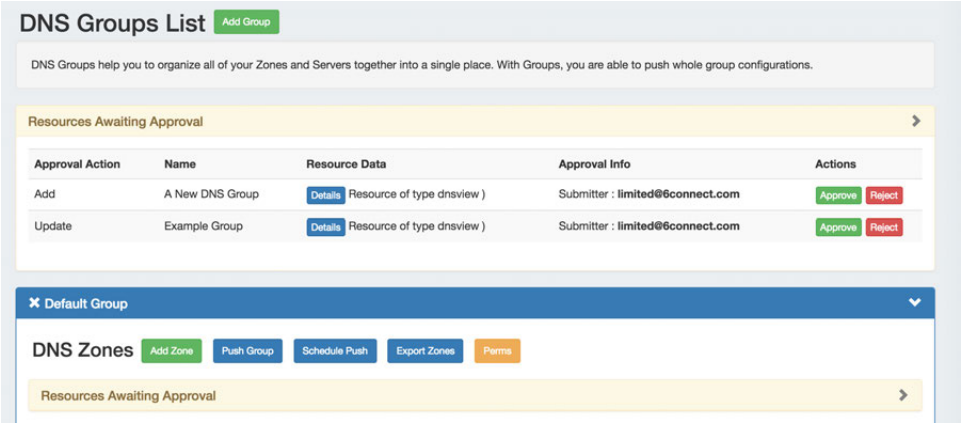
1. Submitter makes an action (either by action type or DNS Family) that requires approval
2. Submitter is notified that their action is pending approval

3. The requested change is sent to the **Approvals** Tab **Pending Approvals** list, and also to the **DNS** **Resources Awaiting Approval** module (the submitter may see their own submitted action under "Resources awaiting approval", but only Approvers can take approve /reject actions)

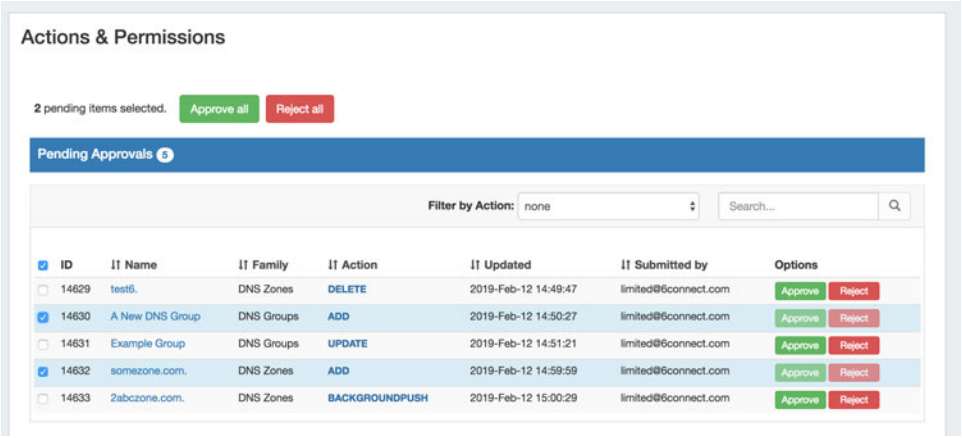
The **Pending Approvals** list is under the **Approvals** Tab. It shows Approvals events (change requests) for which the user has the ability to Approve or Deny - it does not show approval requests for all of ProVision or those for other users.




A "Resources Awaiting Approval" module will display in selected DNSv3 pages to Users with Admin / Approval permissions, if a change has been submitted on that page that is pending approval by the User's Approval Group.

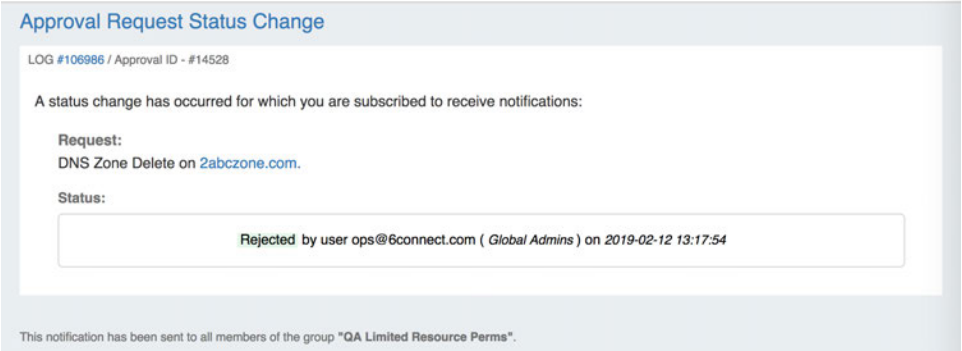



4. The Approver reviews the change in either their **Approvals** Tab **Pending Approvals** list, or the **DNS**Resources Awaiting Approval module, and chooses to Approve or Reject the change:




   a. If Approved, and no other groups need to approve it, then the change executes and is saved. A status change notification email is sent, if enabled.
   b. If Approved, and is waiting approval from an additional User Group, the change continues to be held as Pending, until the other group responds (Both groups must "Approve" for the change to execute). A status change notification email is sent, if enabled, stating that the change is awaiting another Group.
   c. If Rejected, the change is not executed. A status change notification email is sent, if enabled.

**Example Notification Email:**



Approval Request Status Change

LOG #106986 / Approval ID - #14528

A status change has occurred for which you are subscribed to receive notifications:

**Request:**
DNS Zone Delete on 2abczone.com.

**Status:**

Rejected by user ops@6connect.com ( *Global Admins* ) on *2019-02-12 13:17:54*

This notification has been sent to all members of the group **"QA Limited Resource Perms"**.

See the following areas for more information on Approvals and using Approvals with DNS:

- DNS Tab
- Approvals
- Pending Approvals
- Permission Groups
- Scheduler Tab

# ProVision User Guide

# User Guide

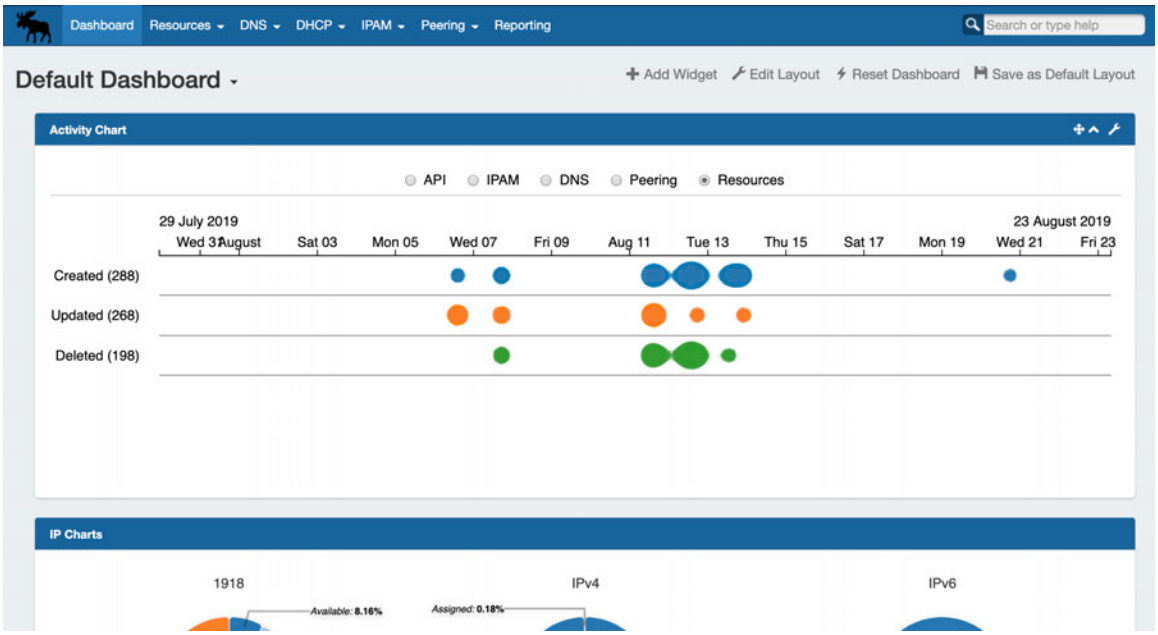
The ProVision User Guide provides information on features accessible in the standard user tabs within ProVision - Dashboard, Resources, DNS, DHCP, IPAM, Peering, and Reporting. For more detailed information on features accessible with Admin permissions, see the ProVision Admin Guide.

## Table of Contents


- The Dashboard
- Resources
- DNS Tab
- DHCP Tab
- IPAM Tab
- Peering
- Reporting
- User Preferences

# The Dashboard

## The Dashboard




The Dashboard is your first stop when logging into 6connect Provision, giving you a quick graphical status overview as well as convenient links for reference and support. The Dashboard is comprised of modular "Widgets" that show different types of information. These Widgets may be added, moved, edited, and customized to create personalized Dashboards.

There are two levels of Dashboards:

**Default Dashboard:** The Default Dashboard is a shared dashboard for all users of the ProVision instance. It may only be edited by admin level users, but it is viewable by all users.

**Individual Users' Dashboards:** Additional Dashboards may be created by individual users. These dashboards are tied to the user logged in, and are only viewable / editable by that user.

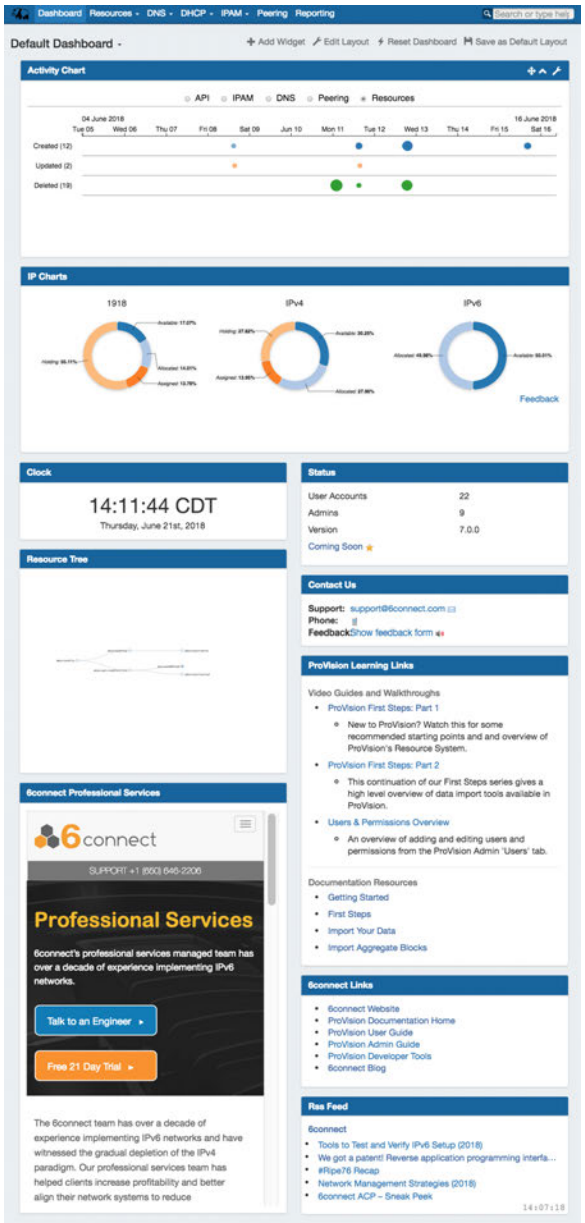
Dashboards and Permissions

Note: An individual's permission levels may limit what that user can view in both default and personal Dashboards. Although all users can view the Default Dashboard, they may be not be able to view all elements or data inside the dashboard.


- The Dashboard
  - ProVision Default Dashboard Overview:
    - Activity Chart (Viewable by Admins Only):
    - IP Charts:
    - Clock:
    - Status:
    - Resource Tree:
    - Contact Us:
    - ProVision Learning Links: (Markdown Widget)
    - 6connect Professional Services: (iFrame Widget)
    - 6connect Links (Links Widget):
    - 6connect RSS (RSS Feed Widget):
- Additional Information

# ProVision Default Dashboard Overview:

Although each user may have access to or create wildly differing dashboards, below are descriptions of the Widgets available shown on the ProVision Default Dashboard (from left to right):




## Activity Chart (Viewable by Admins Only):

Illustrates activity level for API, IPAM, DNS, Peering, and Resource areas of ProVision.

Select the desired ProVision area by clicking on the radio buttons. Then, hover over the chart, and use the mouse scroll wheel to zoom in or out of specific date / times. Clicking on a bubble will show activity detail, and resource / IP block links if applicable.

Only one Activity Chart Widget may exist on a dashboard.

## IP Charts:

Illustrates the percentage of assigned, unassigned, allocated, or holding tank hosts for 1918 / IPv4 / IPv6 space out of the total available hosts in ProVision viewable by the user. Hovering over any section of the ring will display additional data.

Only one IP Charts Widget may exist on a dashboard.

## Clock:

Shows the current time and date for the selected time zone, based on format set by the user.

Multiple Clock Widgets may exist on a dashboard.

## Status:

General status information on number of user / admin accounts, ProVision version number, and a 'Coming Soon' link to the future releases roadmap in the the documentation.

Only one Status Widget may exist on a dashboard.

## Resource Tree:

An interactive horizontal or vertical treeview of a selected Resource and its children. Select a top-level resource from the Widget's Edit menu. Users may click and drag to move within the Widget, as well as zoom in and out using a scroll wheel. Clicking on filled dots will expand the tree to show the children of that resource. Double-clicking on a resource in the tree will give you the option to navigate to the resource's entry page.

Multiple Resource Tree Widgets may exist on a dashboard.

## Contact Us:

Provides support email, phone, and feedback form information. Support phone number and email address are set from the ProVision Admin settings. The feedback form email address is editable within the Widget.

Only one Contact Us Widget may exist on a dashboard.

## ProVision Learning Links: (Markdown Widget)

Pre-created Markdown Widget containing links to commonly referenced ProVision documentation sections, video guides, and walkthroughs.

The Markdown Widget is a blank slate where users may add links, text, or other content through use of the Markdown language.

Multiple Markdown Widgets may exist on a dashboard.

## 6connect Professional Services: (iFrame Widget)

Pre-created iFrame Widget accessing the 6connect Professional Services website.

The iFrame Widget sets a https URL to be viewed in an iFrame, to view stats or commonly referenced websites.

Multiple iFrame Widgets may exist on a dashboard.

## 6connect Links (Links Widget):

Pre-created Links Widget listing 6connect ProVision company and documentation links.

Link URL and display may be set from within the Widget.

Multiple Links Widgets may exist on a dashboard.

### 6connect RSS (RSS Feed Widget):

Pre-created RSS Feed Widget accessing the 6connect Blog RSS.

Shows the most recent five entries of a selected https RSS Feed. Feed links open in a new window when clicked.

Multiple RSS Feed Widgets may exist on a dashboard.

# Additional Information

Continue on for details on dashboard customization, as well as how to add, move, update, and delete individual Widgets.

- Customizing the Dashboard
- Working with Dashboard Widgets

# Customizing the Dashboard

# Dashboard Customization

The Dashboard is your first stop when logging into 6connect Provision, giving you a quick graphical status overview as well as convenient links for reference and support. The Dashboard is comprised of modular "Widgets" that show different types of information. These Widgets may be added, moved, edited, and customized to create personalized Dashboards.

There are two levels of Dashboards:

**Default Dashboard:** The Default Dashboard is a shared dashboard for all users of the ProVision instance. It may only be edited by admin level users, but it is viewable by all users.

**Individual Users' Dashboards:** Additional personal dashboards may be created by individual users. These dashboards are tied to the user logged in, and are only viewable / editable by that user.

Dashboards and Permissions

Note: An individual's permission levels may limit what that user can view in both default and personal Dashboards. Although all users can view the Default Dashboard, they may be not be able to view all elements or data inside the dashboard.

Browser Compatibility

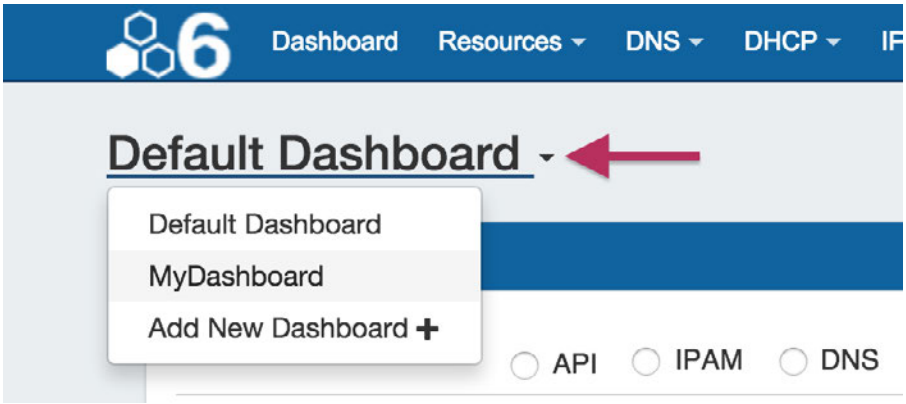
It is recommended to use the most recent versions of the Chrome or Firefox browsers when working with the dashboard. Due to incompatibilities with Internet Explorer / Edge, the dashboard is set to read-only mode and is not editable when accessed from IE at this time.


- Dashboard Customization
- Working with Dashboards
  - Viewing an Existing Dashboard
  - Adding a Dashboard
  - Editing a Dashboard
    - To Edit the Page Layout:
    - To Edit the Location of Individual Widgets:
  - Saving a Dashboard
  - Deleting a Dashboard
  - Reset the Default Dashboard
- Next Step: Widgets


# Working with Dashboards

## Viewing an Existing Dashboard

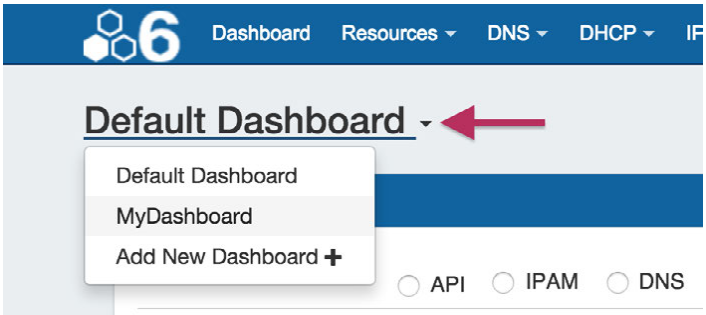
The Default Dashboard will be the primary dashboard that appears when clicking on the **Dashboard** Tab. To view another, already created dashboard, click on the dashboard name at the top left of the Dashboard page. This will open the list of existing dashboards. From there, click on the name of the dashboard you wish to view.



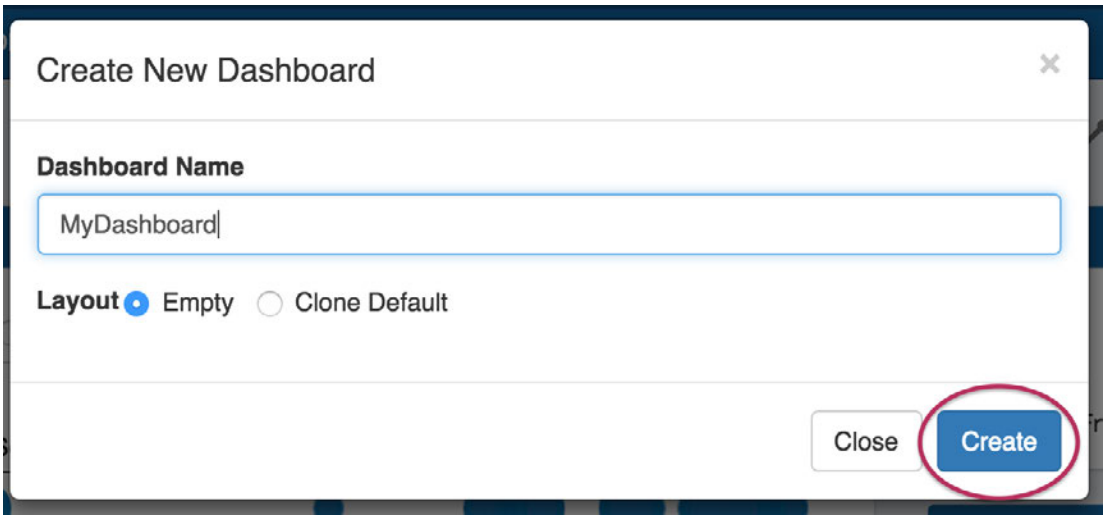
# Adding a Dashboard

To add a new personal dashboard, click on the dashboard name at the top left of the Dashboard page. This will open the list of existing dashboards.

Click on "Add New Dashboard"




Fill out the desired dashboard name, and choose whether the dashboard will be empty or cloned from the default dashboard. Selecting "Empty" will provide a (mostly) blank canvas for selecting and placing Widgets from scratch; selecting "Clone" will duplicate the current state of the Default Dashboard, which the user can then edit as desired.

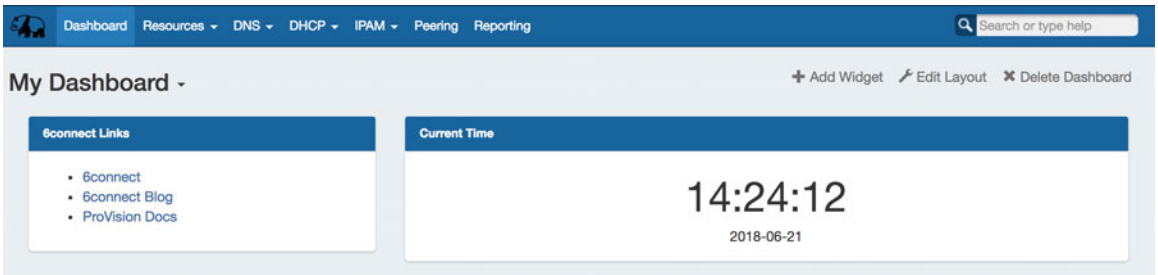



Note

Note: If "Empty" is selected, a default Widget will still show in the head of each page column, this is to assist in both visualizing the current page layout and to aid in placing new Widgets. These widgets may be edited or deleted as desired during the process of selecting layout and adding other Widgets.

For best performance of the dashboard, ensure that at least one Widget is placed in each column, or columns may be difficult to "detect" when moving Widgets to different page areas.

MyDashboard has now been created as an "Empty" dashboard, is accessible from the dropdown list of dashboards, and is ready to set up!

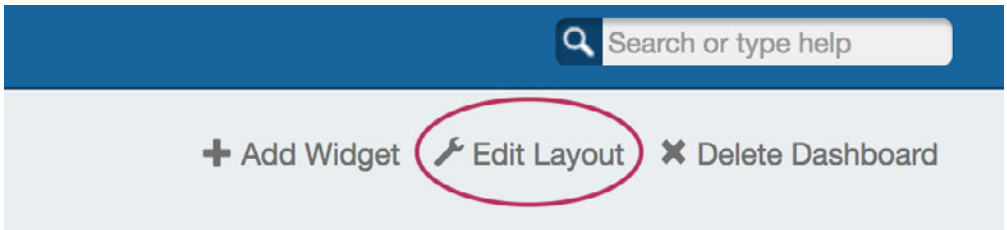



# Editing a Dashboard

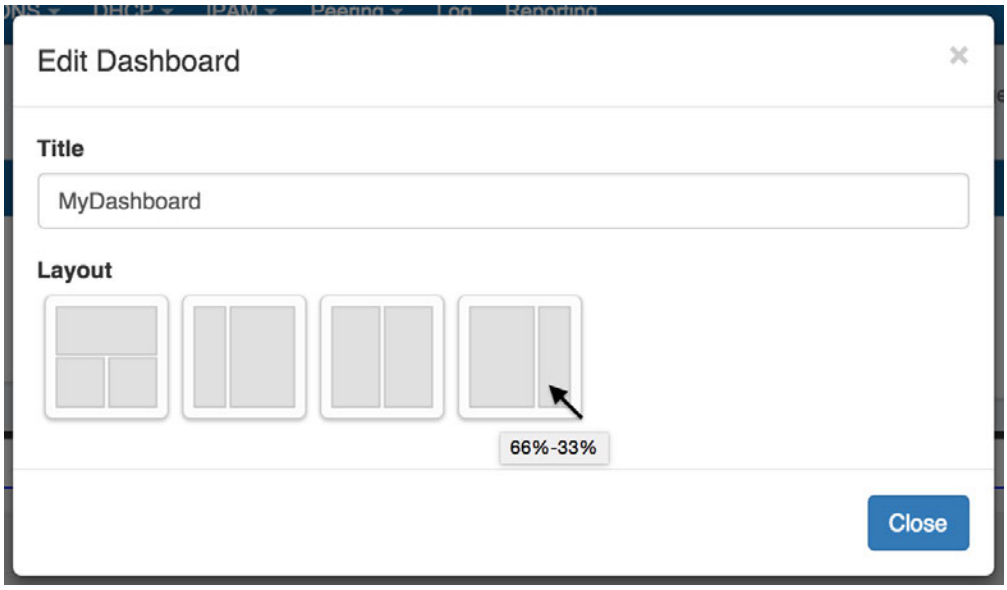
You can change the layout of your dashboard by selecting overall page layout options (for column size and location on the page), as well as move individual widgets around the page.

## To Edit the Page Layout:

At the top of the page, click "Edit Layout".




This will bring up an option box where you can choose to rename your dashboard, and / or select a column organization structure.




**Title:** Type in how you want your dashboard title to display.

**Layout:** Click on a layout option to immediately apply that layout to your dashboard. Hovering over the option will show the column width percentages.

**100% / (50% / 50%):** Creates a page with a full width section at the top, and two equal sized columns below that.

**33% / 66%:** Creates a page with two columns, with the left column being one-third of the page width, and the right column as two-thirds of the page width.

**50% / 50%:** Creates a page with two equal sized columns, split down the middle.

**66% / 33%:** Creates a page with two columns, with the left column as two-thirds of the page width, and the right column as one-third of the page width.

## To Edit the Location of Individual Widgets:

Individual Widgets may be moved around the page by clicking and dragging on the "Move" icon on the right side of the Widget header.

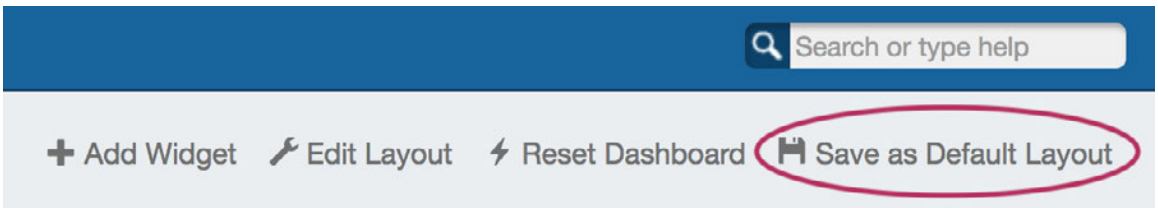
While mousing over the move icon, when the cursor changes to a hand icon, click and hold your left mouse button, then drag the widget up or down to the desired location. To move the Widget to another column, drag the widget sideways to the column, then up to briefly hover over a Widget already in the desired column (this "selects" the column for the Widget). Then, drop the Widget in the desired location in that column.

## Saving a Dashboard

Personal dashboards are automatically saved after making layout or Widget edits (the exception is that Widget resizing must be manually saved - see Working with Dashboard Widgets).

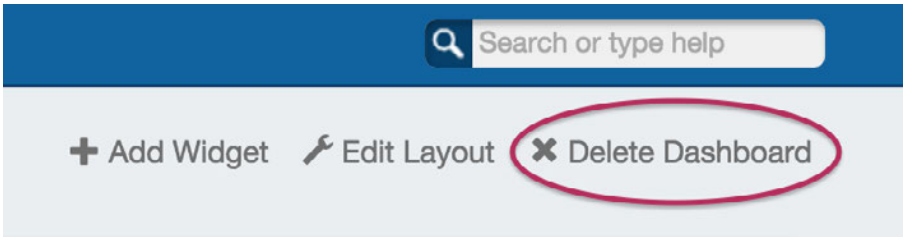
Default Dashboards must be manually saved after edits for those changes to apply to all dashboard users.

Admin users can save Default Dashboard changes by clicking "Save as Default Layout" at the top right section of the dashboard page, and the changes will be applied for all users.




## Deleting a Dashboard

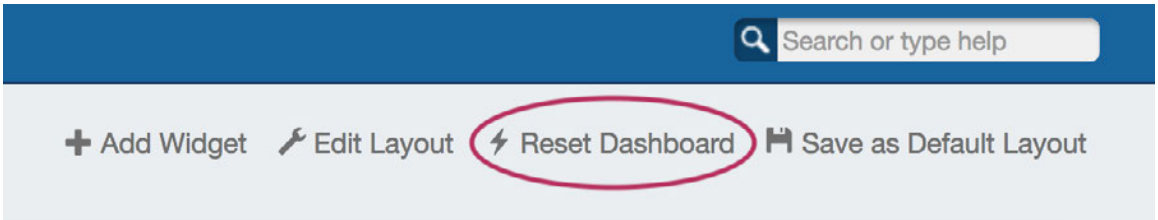
Personal dashboards may be deleted by clicking the "Delete Dashboard" button at the top right of the page. Default Dashboards may not be deleted.




## Reset the Default Dashboard

The Default Dashboard may be reset to the ProVision default dashboard by clicking "Reset Dashboard".

This will remove any admin changes, and set the Default dashboard to its original state. This action may only be made by admin users.




# Next Step: Widgets

Continue on to Working with Dashboard Widgets for information on each Widget, as well as how to add, move, update, and delete individual Widgets.

- Working with Dashboard Widgets

# Working with Dashboard Widgets

# Dashboard Widgets

The previous section, Customizing the Dashboard, gave a high level overview of the dashboard types, how to create new personal dashboards, edit the dashboard layout, and remove personal dashboards.  This section will give an overview of how to work with individual Widgets, and options available in each Widget type.

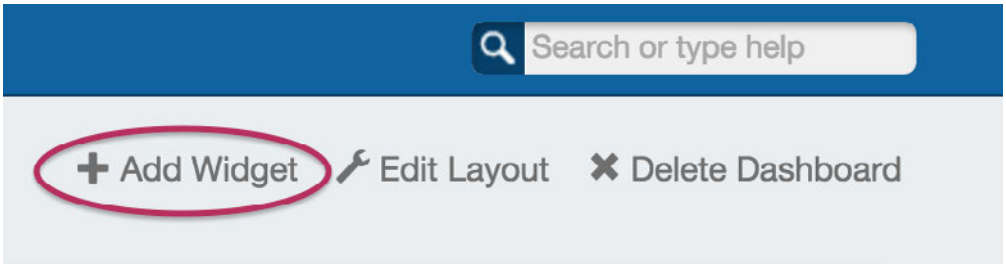
Before you begin working with individual Widgets, make sure that you have reviewed the information contained in Customizing the Dashboard and are familiar with the tasks outlined there.


- Dashboard Widgets
  - Working with Widgets
    - Adding Dashboard Widgets
    - Move a Widget:
    - Maximize / Pop-Out a Widget:
    - Edit a Widget (Widget Action Menu):
  - Available Widgets
    - Activity Chart (Admin only)
    - Resource Tree
    - IP Charts
    - RSS Feed
    - Status
    - Clock
    - Contact Us
    - Markdown
    - Links
    - iFrame

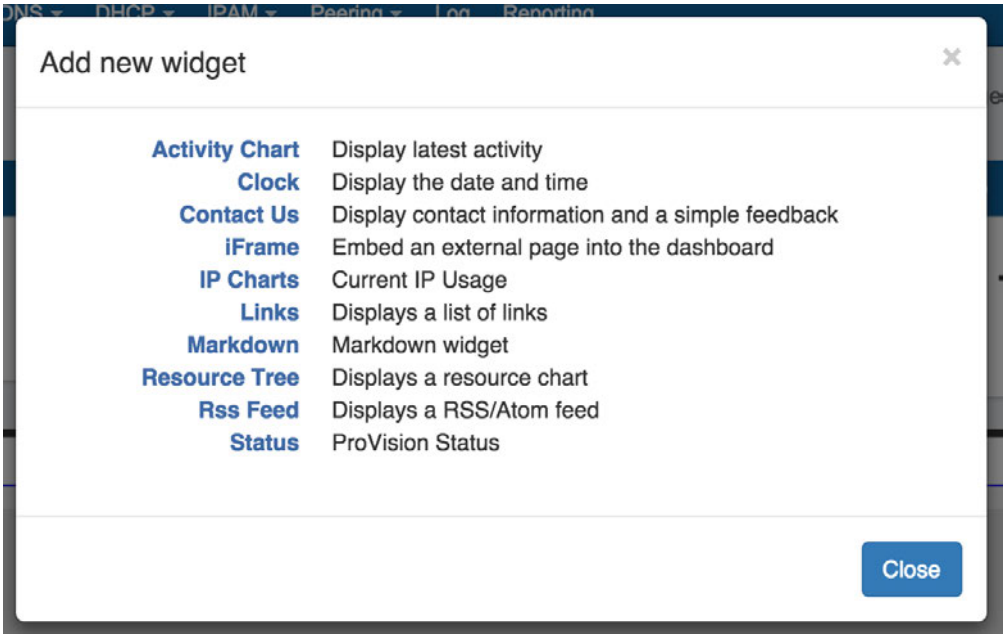

# Working with Widgets

## Adding Dashboard Widgets

To add a widget to personalize your dashboard, click on the "Add Widget" button at the top of the page.




Then, click on the name of the Widget you want to appear on your page. It will automatically be added into the leftmost column of your page.

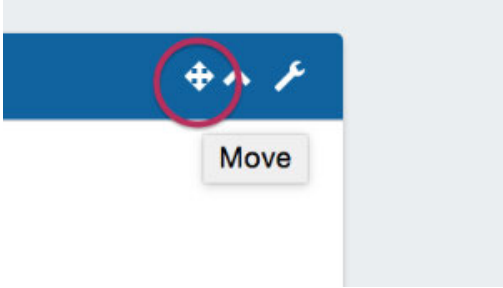



Some Widgets may only have one instance per dashboard, whereas other Widgets may be able to have multiple instances per dashboard. The Add New Widget dialog will only show you the widgets you have available to add.

For detailed information on each individual Widget, view the .Working with Dashboard Widgets v7.0.0#Available Widgets section on this page.

## Move a Widget:

Individual Widgets may be moved around the page by clicking and dragging on the "Move" icon on the right side of the Widget header.



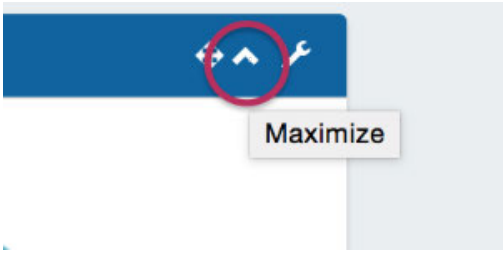

While mousing over the move icon (when the cursor changes to a hand icon) click and hold your left mouse button, then drag the widget up or down to the desired location.

To move the Widget to another column, drag the widget sideways to the column, then up to briefly hover over a Widget already in the desired column (this "selects" the column for the Widget). Then, drop the Widget in the desired location in that column.

Your browser does not support the HTML5 video element

## Maximize / Pop-Out a Widget:

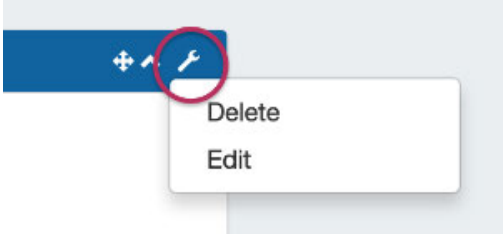
Widgets can temporarily be viewed at a larger size by hitting the "Maximize" icon on the Widget header. This will "pop out" the widget information to a larger page size for easier viewing.




While maximized, you may interact with the widget as normal. When done, hit the "Close" button.

## Edit a Widget (Widget Action Menu):

To open the edit menu for a widget, click on the Action Menu (wrench icon) on the right side of the Widget header. A drop down menu will appear with some of the following options:




**Edit:** Opens an edit widget pop up, where widget-specific options may be changed. Options may include changing the title, links, applicable resources, and so forth depending on the particular Widget.

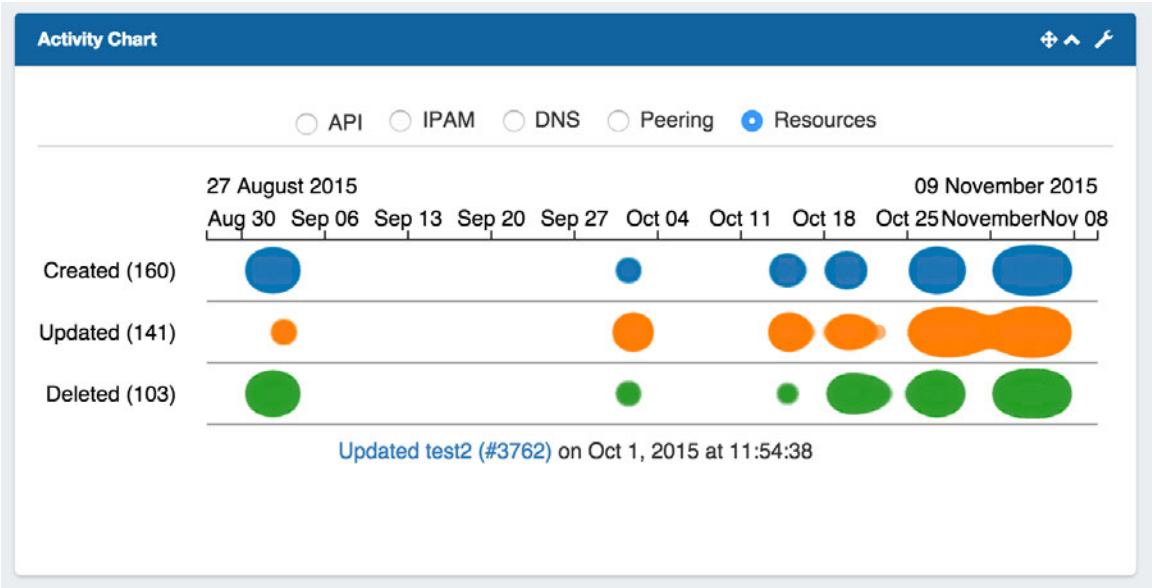
**Resize:** For Widgets able to be resized vertically, brings up a draggable black bar at the bottom of the widget. Drag the bar up or down to the desired widget height, then select the Action Menu again and click on "Save Resize" to save and complete the size edit.

**Save Resize:** Available only after the "Resize" action has been used. After resizing a Widget, selecting the Action Menu again and clicking on "Save Resize" will save the Widget size.

**Delete:** Deletes the widget.

# Available Widgets

## Activity Chart (Admin only)




Illustrates activity level for API, IPAM, DNS, Peering, and Resource areas of ProVision. The Activity Chart is only visible to Admin users. Only one Activity Chart Widget may exist on a dashboard.

## Activity Chart Actions:

**Radio Buttons:** Select the desired ProVision activity area to view by clicking on the radio buttons (API, IPAM, DNS, Peering, or Resources).

**Chart:** While hovering over the chart, you can:

Use the Scroll Wheel to zoom in or out of the date/time detail level

Double click to zoom into the next date/time detail level

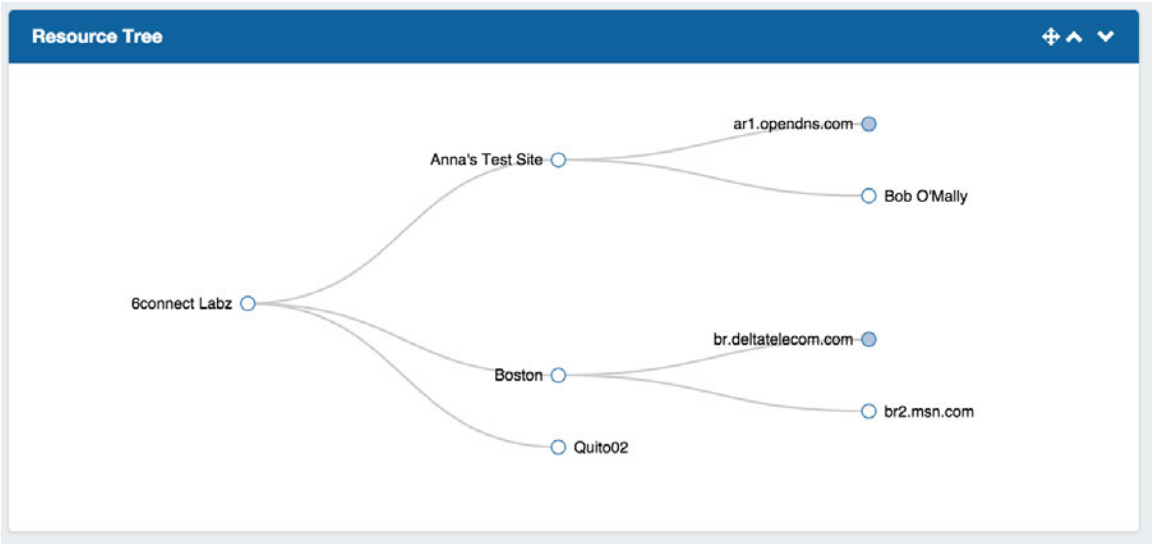
Click & Drag left or right to move to an earlier or later date/time at the current zoom level

Single Click on a bubble will show the activity detail, and resource / IP block links if applicable.

### Activity Chart Edit Options:

**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

## Resource Tree




Interactive graphical display of the resource structure for a parent resource.

**Resource Tree Actions:**

Users may:

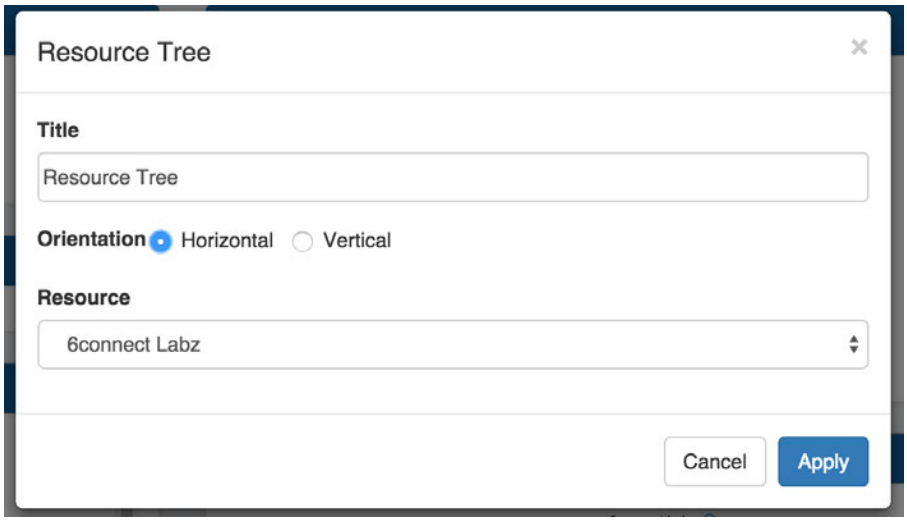
Click & Drag to move the chart within the Widget,

Use the Scroll Wheel to zoom in or out

Click on Filled dots to expand the tree to show the children of that resource.

Double click on a resource in the tree to give you the option to navigate to the resource's entry page.

## Resource Tree Edit Options:



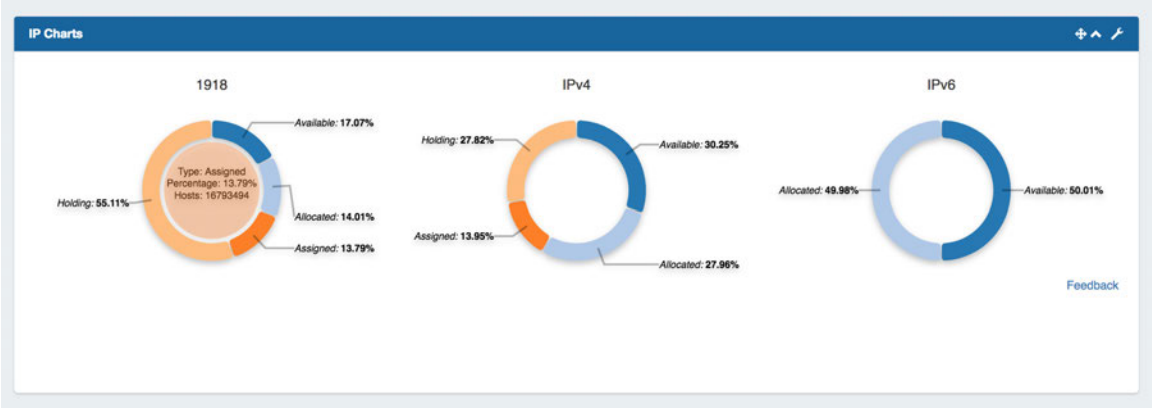

**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

**Orientation:** Select "Horizontal" to view the tree in horizontal form, with the top level resource on the leftmost side of the widget, and children expanding to the right. "Vertical" will show the tree with the top level parent at the top of the widget, with children expanding downward.

**Resource:** A text search box to select the resource that will be the top level resource for the tree.

When done editing, hit "Apply" to save your changes, or "Cancel" to exit without saving.

# IP Charts



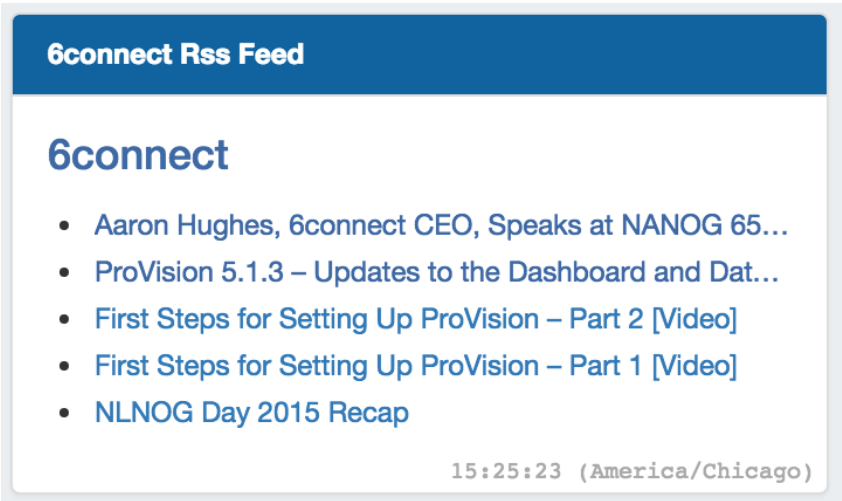

Illustrates the percentage of assigned,  unassigned, allocated, and holding tank hosts for 1918 / IPv4 / IPv6 space out of the total available hosts in ProVision viewable by the user.

Hovering over a particular status will display detailed data in the center of the chart for that status type.

## IP Charts Edit Options:

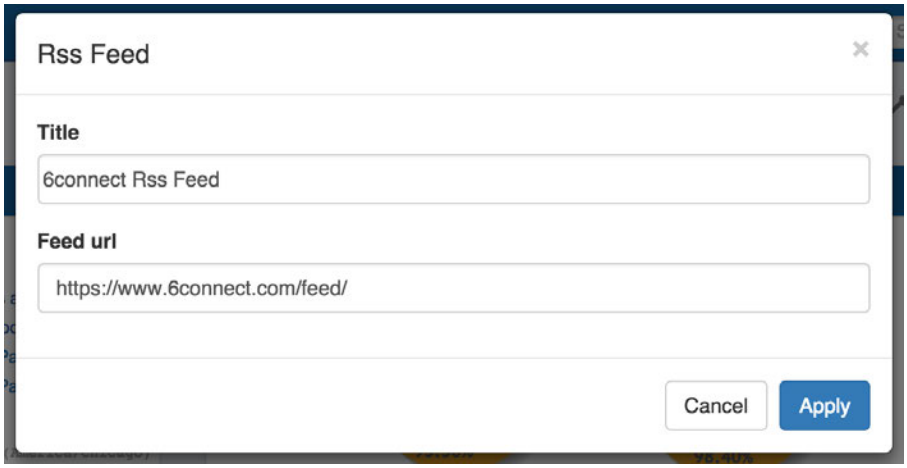
**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

# RSS Feed




Shows the most recent five entries of a selected RSS Feed. Feed links open in a new window when clicked.

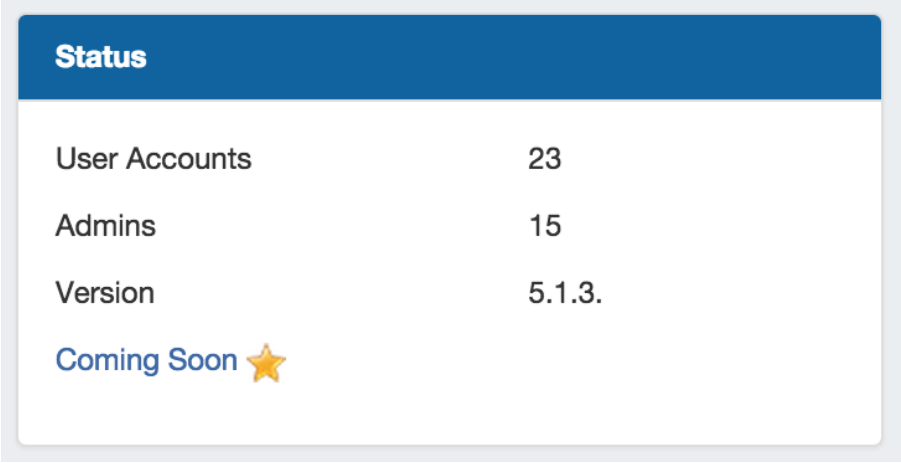
## RSS Feed Edit Options:




**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

**Feed URL:** Edits the URL of the RSS Feed to show.

## Status

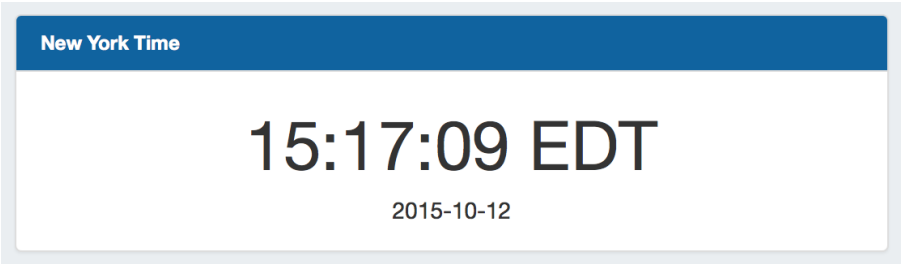



Shows 6connect ProVision status information, including number of user accounts (admin only), number of admin accounts (admin only), current version number, and a link to the "Coming Soon" section of the ProVision documentation.

### Status Edit Options:

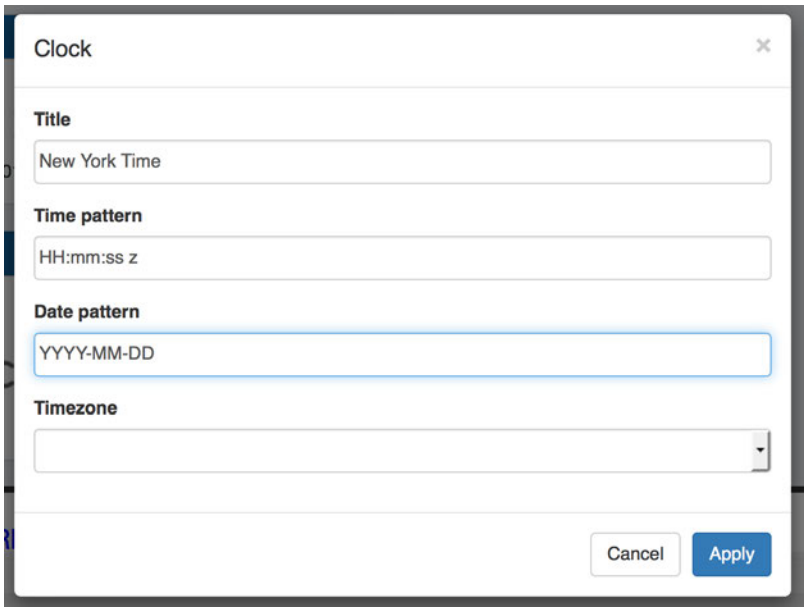
**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

## Clock




Shows the current time for the selected time zone.

## Clock Edit Options:




**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

**Time Pattern:** Sets the desired format for the current time. Example: "HH:mm:ss z" shows hours, then minutes, then seconds, then time zone.

**Date Pattern:** Sets the desired format for the current date. Example: "YYYY-MM-DD" shows 4 digit year, then month, then day.

**Time Zone:** The desired time zone to show the current time for.

Time / Date Patterns

For applicable time / date patterns, see http://momentjs.com/docs/#/displaying/format/

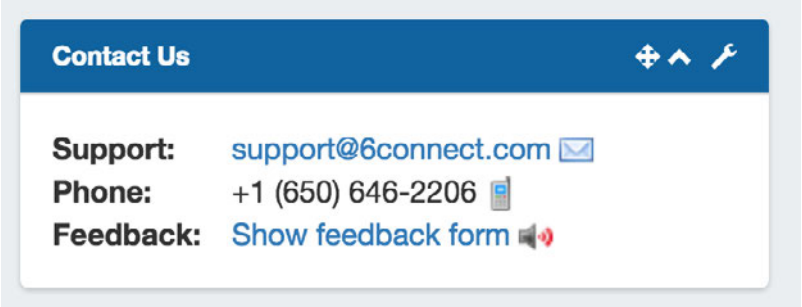
Some common date patterns might be:

| Display | Pattern |
|---|---|
| Wednesday, October 10th, 2015 | dddd, MMMM Do, YYYY |
| 10/21/2015 | l |
| October 21, 2015 | MMMM DD, YYYY |
| 10-21-15 | MM-DD-YY |
| 2015-10-21 | YYYY-MM-DD |

Some common time patterns might be:

| Display | Pattern |
|---|---|
| 15:36:14 EDT | HH:mm:ss z |
| 3:36:12 PM EDT | h:mm:ss A z |
| 03:36:12 pm EDT | hh:mm:ss a z |
| 15:36 -04:00 | HH:mm  Z |

## Contact Us




Provides support email, phone, and feedback form information. Only one Contact Us Widget may exist on a dashboard.

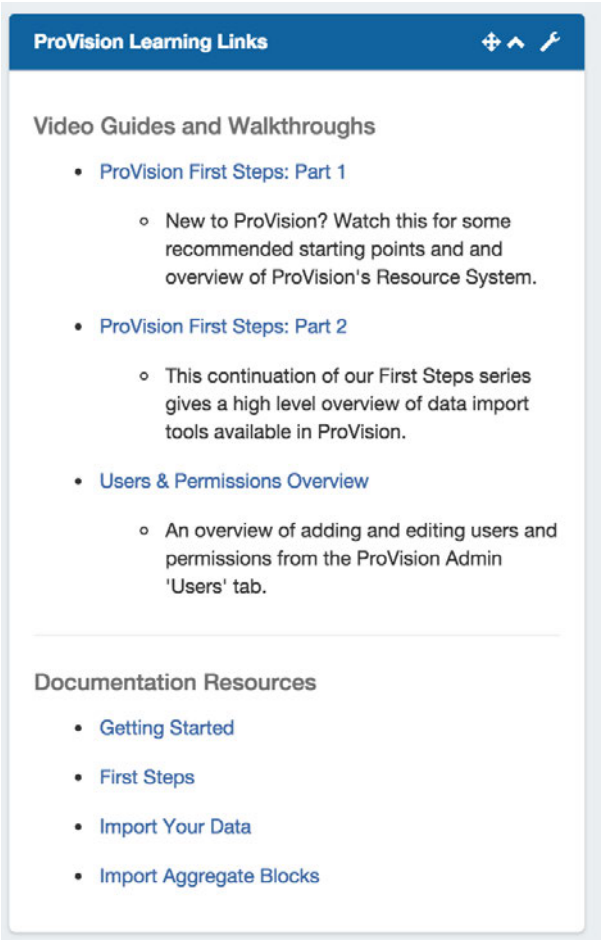
### Contact Us Edit Options:

**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

**Feedback Email:** Sets the desired email address for the feedback form.

Note: Support phone number and email address are set from the ProVision Admin settings.

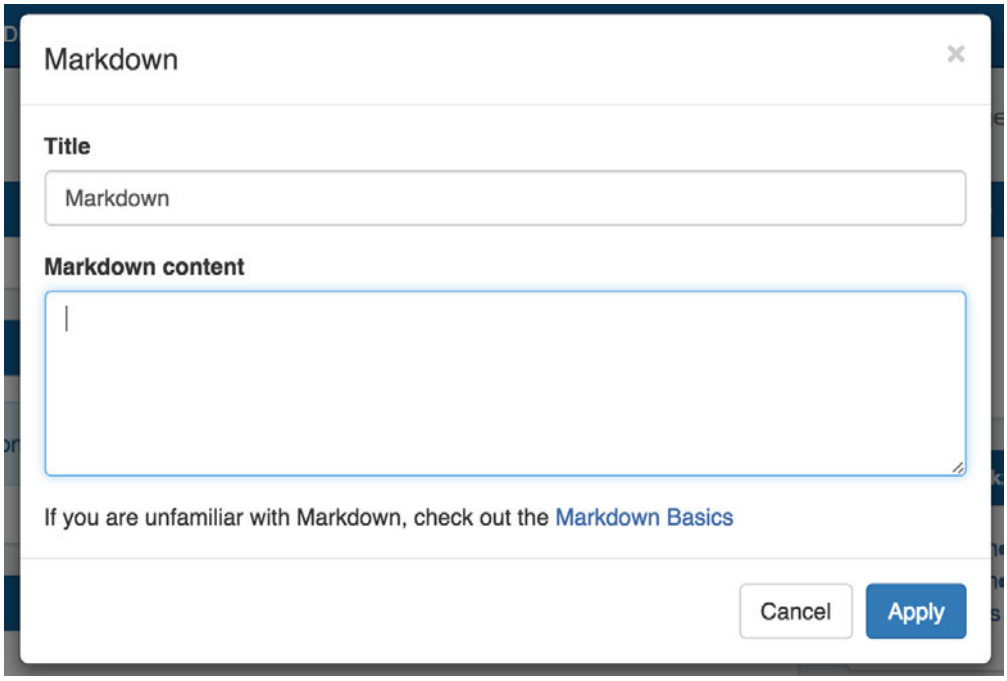
## Markdown




The Markdown Widget is a blank slate where users may add links, text, or other content through use of the Markdown language. Multiple Markdown Widgets may exist on a dashboard.

If you are unfamiliar with Markdown, check out Markdown Basics

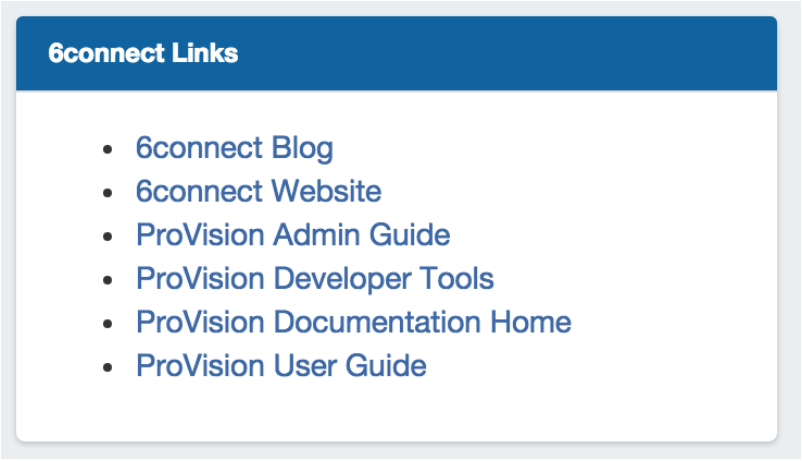
## Markdown Edit Options:




**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

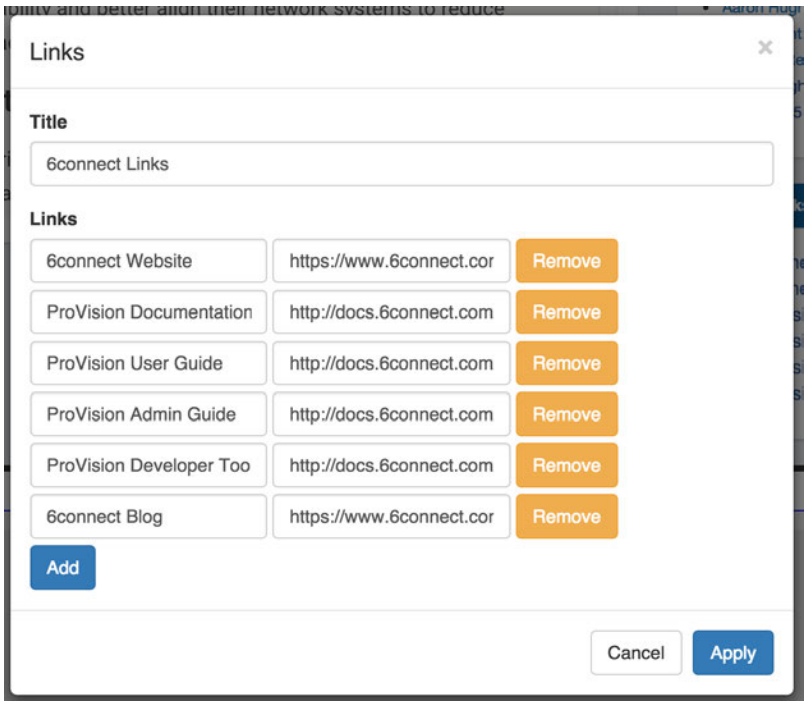
**Markdown Content:** Area to enter the markdown content.

## Links




Provides a list of website links. Multiple Links Widgets may exist on a dashboard.

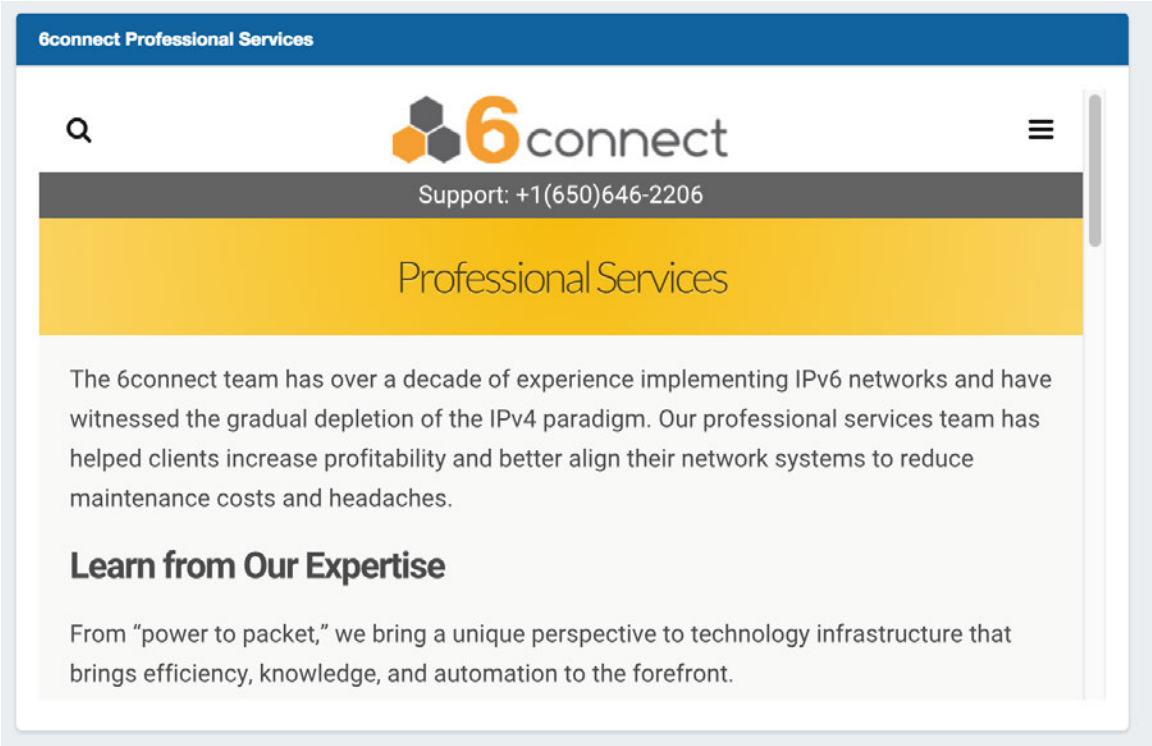
### Link Edit Options:




**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

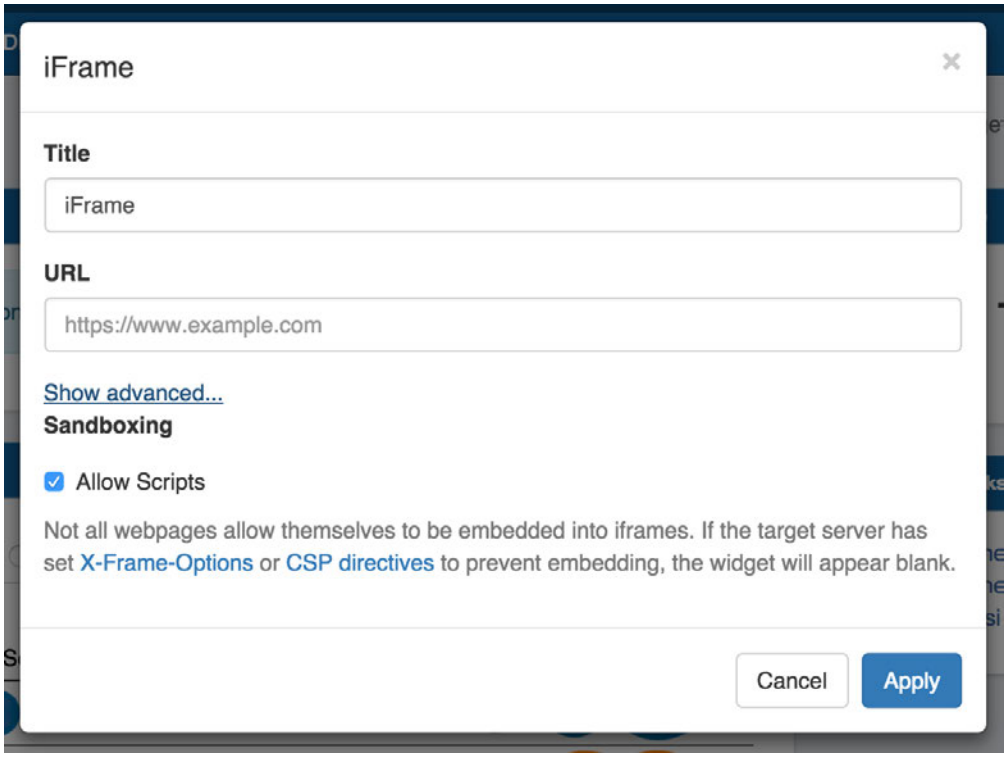
**Links:** Enter the desired link text, then the URL of the website to link. Click "Add" to add a new link, or "Remove" to remove an individual link. Hit "Apply" to save your changes.

## iFrame




Set a https URL to be viewed in an iFrame. Useful to view stats or commonly referenced websites.

### iFrame Edit Options:




**Title:** Edits the title of the Widget shown on the header.

**URL:** Sets the desired https address of the website to display in the frame

Advanced:

**Sandboxing: Allow Scripts:** Check to allow scripts.

Not all webpages allow themselves to be embedded into iframes. If the target server has set X-Frame-Options or CSP directives to prevent embedding, the widget will appear blank.

# Working with Resources

# Working with Resources


- Working with Resources
  - What is a Resource?
  - How to Work with Resources?
  - Additional Information


## What is a Resource?

The "Resource" system is tied to the Permissions structure. What this means is that you get granular control on a resource level and can create groups around a single resource or even groups of resources. Since Resources can inherit permissions from others - it can be an easy way to categorize generic objects.

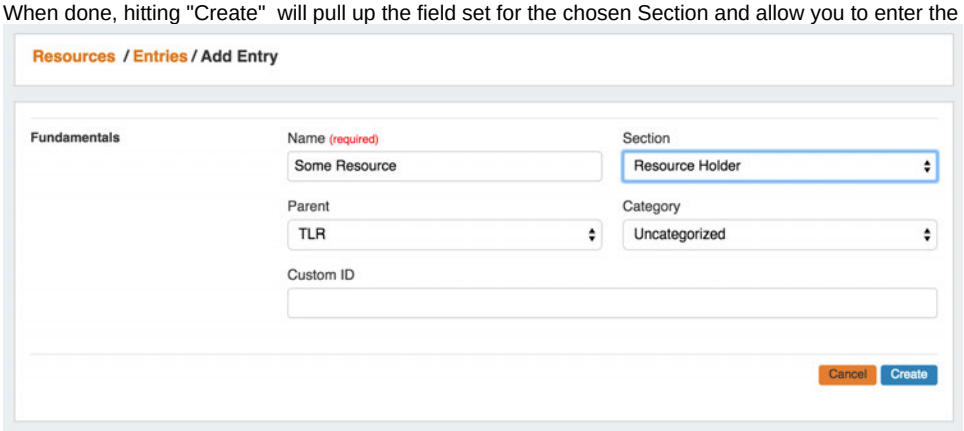
WARNING!

There are key Resources that are used by the System that should not be deleted. We have put in some safeguards in the UI, but the API can delete these resources if prompted. The resources that you should not remove are "Holding" and "Reverse". The "Available" Resource can be renamed - simply not deleted.

## How to Work with Resources?

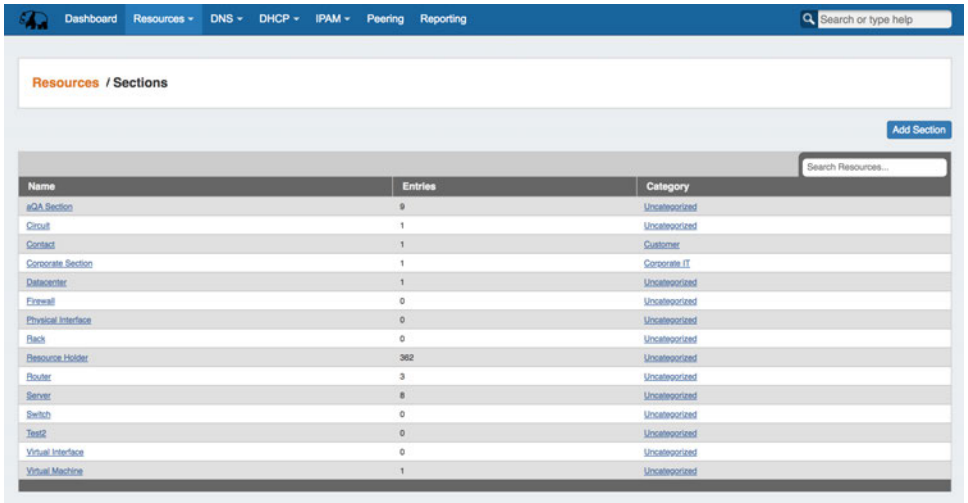
The Resource is an entity that users can assign Network Resources to (IP blocks, hosts, DNS zones, etc.). You can also create hierarchies between resources which allows you to leverage permissions to control who can view and interact with any given resource and its assigned elements. Please note that you can also have Resources that do NOT have anything assigned to them regarding Network Resources. The result of this flexible architecture is that you can work with Resources in three ways:

- **Resource Entries:**
  These are the actual Resource names. When you click the "Add Entry" button you can customize various elements of the entry and assign the Parent Resource, Section and Category from their respective dropdown menus. You may also add a Custom ID if desired. When done, hitting "Create"  will pull up the field set for the chosen Section and allow you to enter the data for the given Entry.

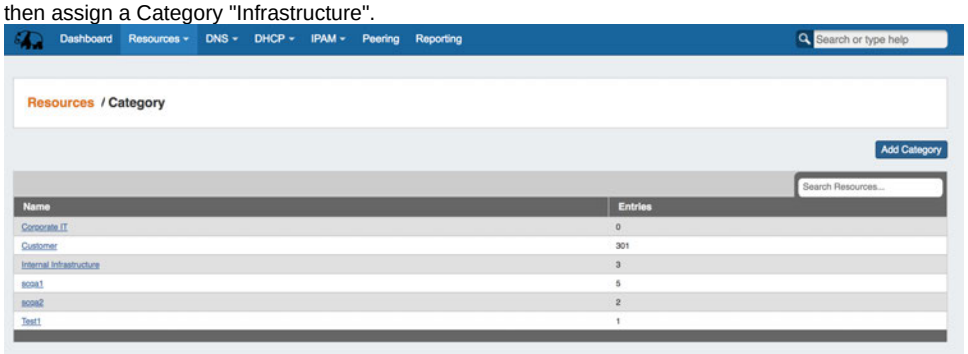



- **Resource Sections:**
  These can be anything from "customers" to "firewalls" to "cross-connects". Since you can customize the fields for these elements, and assign them to a Parent Section, you have flexibility in organizing the data. Check out Customizing Sections and Customizing Fields for

more details on how to fit these elements to your business.




- **Resource Categories:**
  Categories can be used to create some filtered views for given Resources and Sections. For example, you can create a Section called "Resource Holder" and then assign a Category "Customer". Then you can view a list of Resources that have been assigned to Category "Customer". In the same way, you could also assign a Section called "Router" under the Parent Resource "Corporate Datacenter" and then assign a Category "Infrastructure".




Want to customize Sections? Check out Customizing Sections and Customizing Fields for more details!

**Some examples:**

1) Service Provider

2) Managed Service Provider

3) Datacenter/Colocation Provider

4) Enterprise

# Additional Information

- Working with Entries
- Customizing Sections
- Customizing Fields
- Gadgets
  - XML Specifications
- Contact Manager

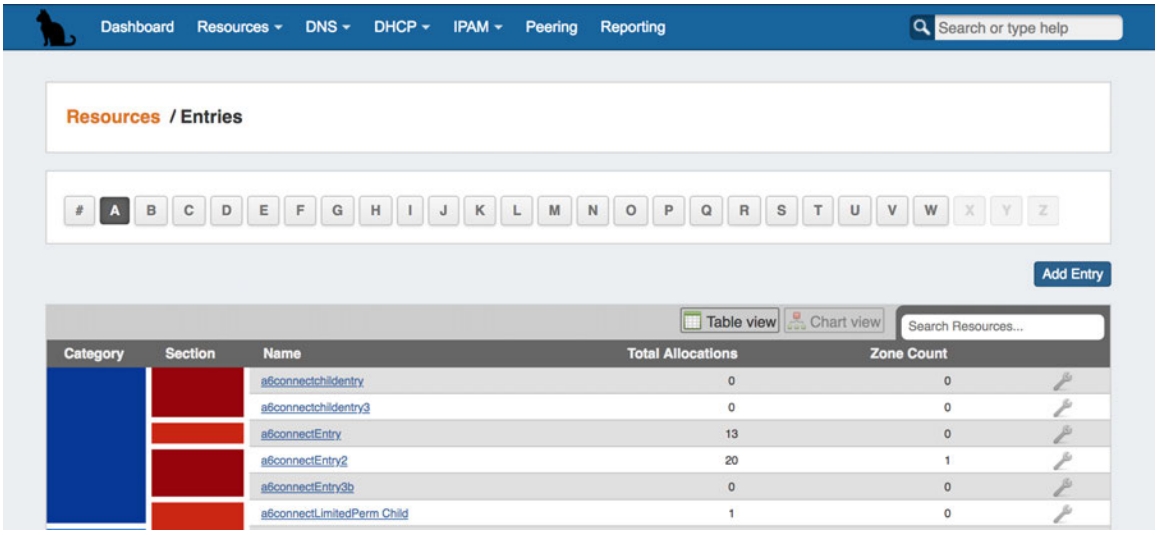
# Working with Entries

# Working with Entries

The list of Resource Entries is under the **Resources** Tab. To access it, you may either click on the Resources Tab, or select "Entries" from the Resource Tab dropdown menu.


- Working with Entries
  - Resource Tab / Entry List User Interface
    - Entry List Action Menu
  - Chart View
  - The Resource Entry Page (View Resource)
  - Create an Entry
  - Edit or Delete an Entry
  - Add Child Entries
  - Resource Clone
    - To Clone an Entry
  - Additional Information


## Resource Tab / Entry List User Interface




**1) Alphabetical Filter**: Entries are organized by the first letter of the name. Click on a letter to see entries starting with that letter.

**2) Add Entry Button**: Click to add a new entry.

**3) Pagination**: Click to view additional pages of Entries under the selected letter.

**4) Viewing Options:** Select "Table View" or "Chart View" .

Table View (shown above), lists the Entries, Allocations, and Zone Count along with color-corded Category and Section information.

Chart View graphically shows the entries in filterable, hierarchy form.

**5) Search Box:** This text box allows the user to enter in criteria to filter the list of Entries.

**6) Category:** Color-coded Category indicator. The Category name will appear upon mouseover. Clicking on the Category box when the hand icon appears will redirect to a filtered list of entries of that Category.

**7) Section:** Color-coded Section indicator. The Section name will appear upon mouseover. Clicking on the Section box when the hand icon appears will redirect to a filtered list of entries of that Section.

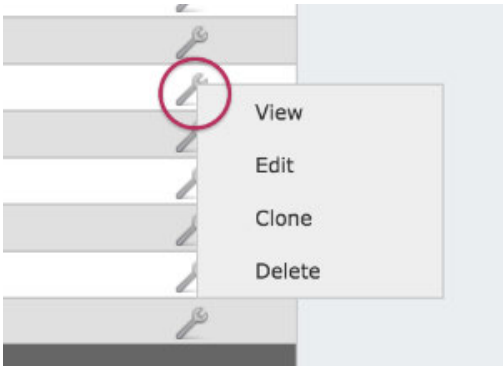
**8) Name**: A list of the Resource Entry names. Clicking on a name will take the user to that resource's individual entry page.

**9) Allocations:** The number of IP blocks assigned to that resource.

**10) Zone Count:** The number of zones assigned to that resource.

**11) Action Menu**: The Action Menu (wrench icon) gives a list of additional actions to perform on the zone

## Entry List Action Menu




Clicking on the Action Menu in the Entry List View will bring up the following options:

**View:** Opens the resource's Entry page

**Edit:** Opens to the resource's Edit page

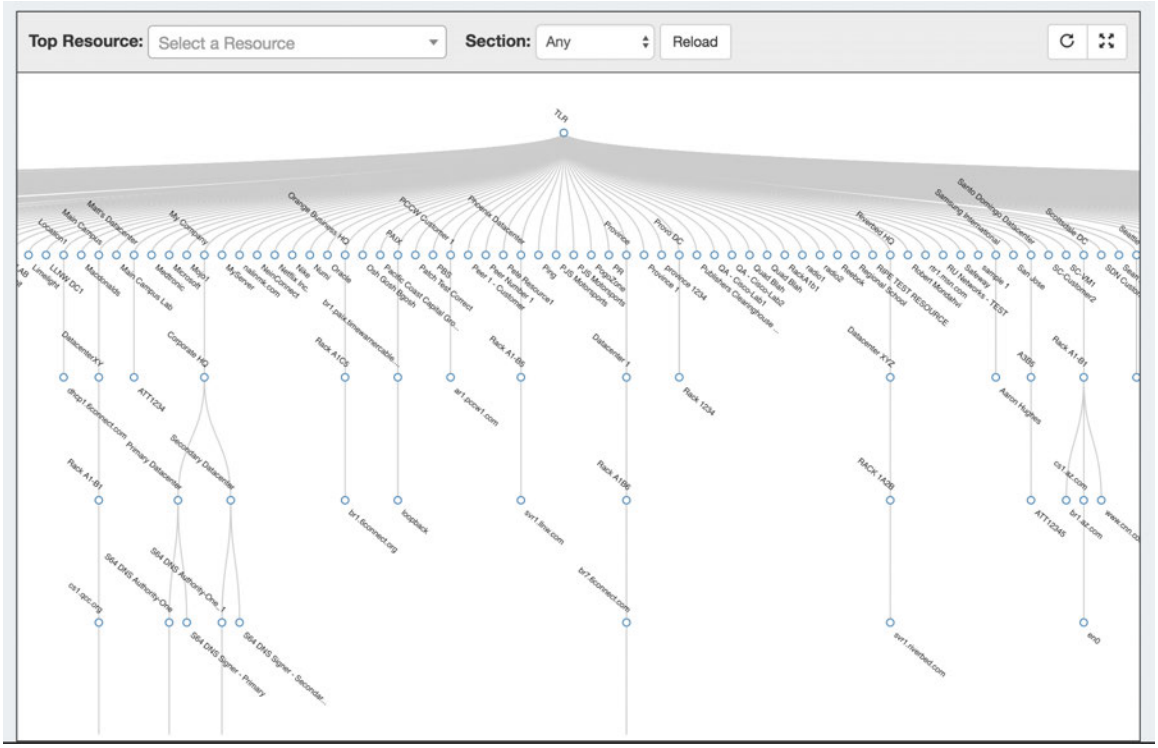
**Clone:** Opens the clone resource page for the selected resource

**Delete**: Deletes the resource, if appropriate permissions exist.

## Chart View

Chart View illustrates the resources created in a node-based tree.

Select the Top Resource and/or the Section Type from the dropdown menus to limit the view, if desired, and then click "Reload". Users will only be able to view sections of the resource tree on which they have view permissions.



While viewing the main chart, you may:

- View in horizontal or vertical tree mode by clicking the "Switch Chart Orientation" button.
- View fullscreen by clicking the "View Fullscreen" button.
- Left click and drag within the tree view, or scroll wheel in/out to change the area viewed.
- Single or double-clicking on a node with children will collapse or expand the tree at that resource.
- Clicking and dragging a resource node to another resource will relocate the resource to be a child of the resource it is dropped on.

Hovering over a specific Resource or node, then right clicking will open a context menu with the following options:

**Quick View:** Shows summarized details about the resource and its children, and links to the Resource Entry page(s).

**Edit:** Opens to the resource's Edit page

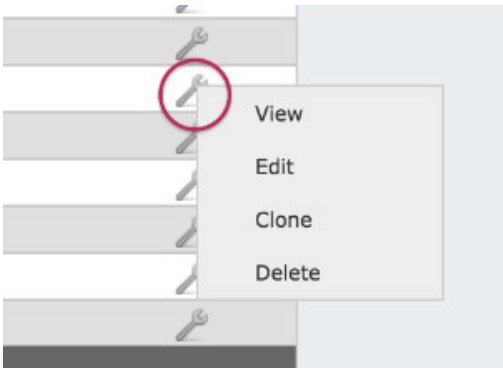
**Clone:** Opens the clone resource page for the selected resource

**Delete**: Deletes the resource, if appropriate permissions exist.

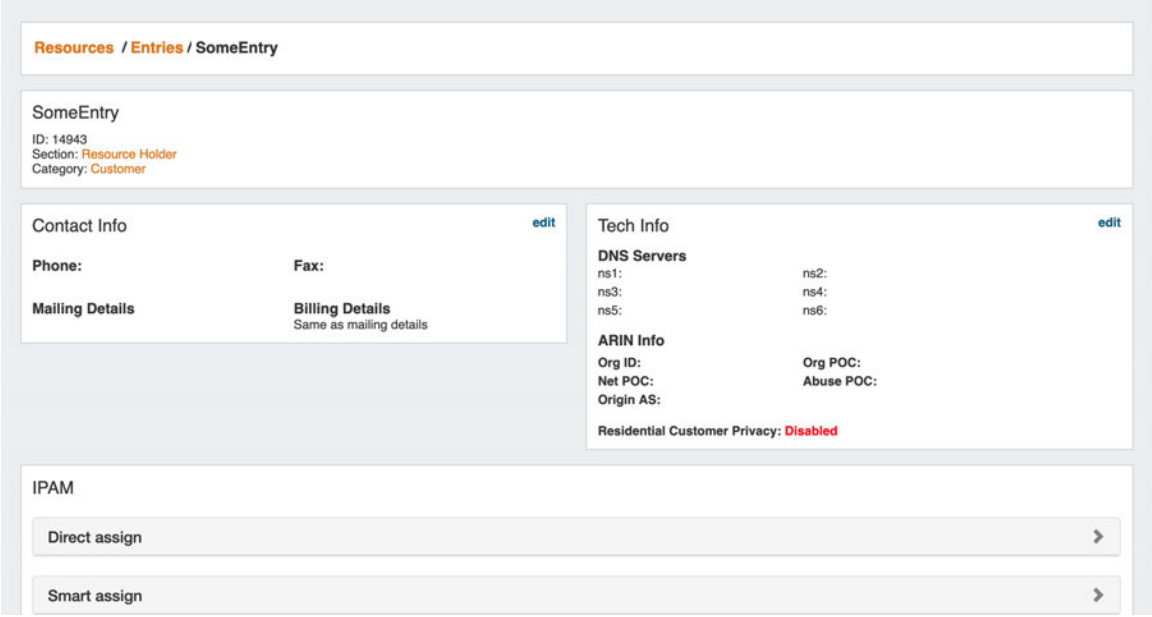
# The Resource Entry Page (View Resource)

The Resource Entry Page displays details for an existing Resource and any associated Gadgets. Here, users may edit the Resource's fields, clone the resource, add child resources, and perform Gadget-level actions such as assigning and managing IPAM Blocks, Contacts, generate DNS Zones, add Field information, and manage Peering Sessions.

Open the page by clicking on a Resource name from the Resource List, or select "View" from the Action Menu for the resource in the Entry List.




The Resource Entry page displays basic details about the Resource, including name, id, section, and category.



Additional information and actions are available to perform for the Resource, depending on which Gadgets are enabled for the associated Section:

Note

A few things to keep in mind on Gadgets:

- Not all Gadgets are appropriate for all Resource types - some are suited for Routers, Servers, etc.
- Some Gadgets (marked "Legacy") may not be available to new ProVision users or newer versions of ProVision.
- Some Gadgets may be specialized for very specific use cases or connect with other products.

Currently Available Gadgets:

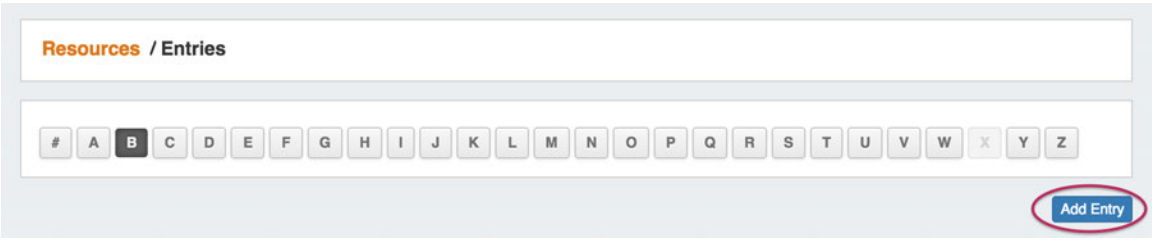
- **ACP ("Workflows") Gadget:** Connector to ProVision's API Composer Platform. Executes selected ACP Workflows.
- **Contact Info**: Displays phone, address, and billing details for the Resource.
- **Contacts:** Assigns Contacts to the Resource from the Contact Manager.
- **DHCP Server Management (Legacy):** Manage a DHCP Server details and pools.
- **DHCP Customer Configuration (Specialized):** Assign and Configure DHCP Pools from APNIC Blocks.
- **DNS**: Lists DNS Zones associated with the Resource and links to the zone's DNSv3 page.
- **DNS Autogenerator:** Autogenerates DNS forward and reverse zones for the resource, based on assigned IP Blocks.
- **Document Storage:** Load, View, and Download assorted image or text documents.
- **Field Gadget**: View and Edit data and information fields associated with the current resource.
- **IPAM (Legacy):** Manage IP Blocks.
- **IPAMv2:** Manage IP Blocks - supports additional functionality over the old IPAM Gadget.
- **Notes:** Type and view short text notes.
- **Peer Groups**: View and assign Router Peer Groups.
- **Peering Sessions:** View and manage peering sessions.
- **Peering VRFs:** Manage Peering VRFs.
- **Resource Linkage Gadget:** Create a reciprocal link to another resource.
- **Resource Linkage - Linked IPs Gadget:** View the IPs assigned to Linked Resources.
- **Resource View:** Displays the basic Resource entry information - name, section, etc.
- **Reverse API Console:** Display custom reverse API content.
- **Tech Info:** Display NS and Technical RIR info.

From here, you can work with your selected Gadgets, performing tasks such as assigning DNS zones, IP Blocks, assign Contacts, and more.

See the Gadgets Page for detail on working with individual Gadgets.

# Create an Entry

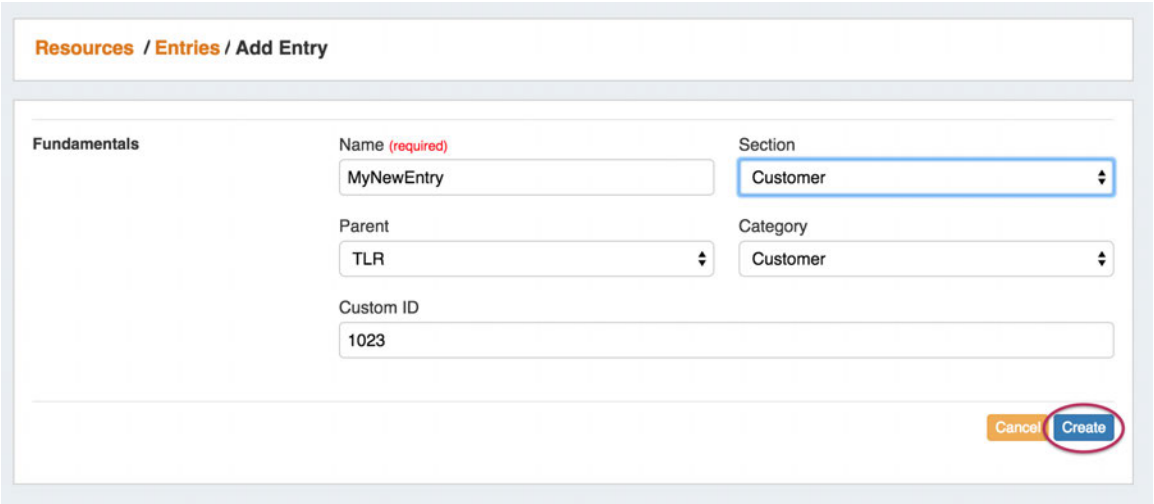
To create a new Entry, click on the "Add Entry" button from the Resource Tab / Entry List Page.



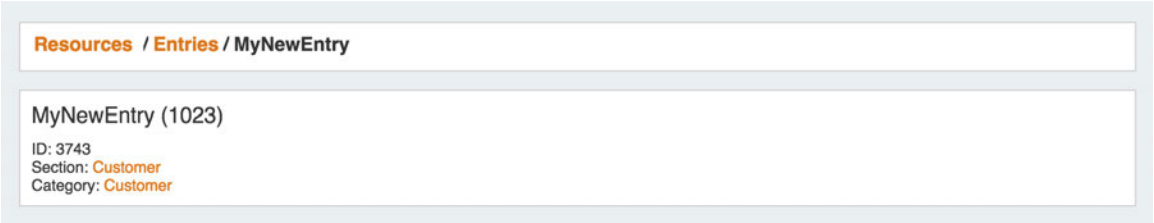

This will take you to the Add Entry page.

Fill in the Name of your new Resource Entry, select a Section (the chosen Section determines what gadgets will show on your new resource's Entry page), the Parent Resource, Category, and enter a Custom ID number if desired.

When complete, click the "Create" button. If you wish to exit without saving your changes, click "Cancel".




Once the Entry is created, the **Resource Entry** page loads for that Resource, displaying whatever gadgets are enabled for the associated Section .

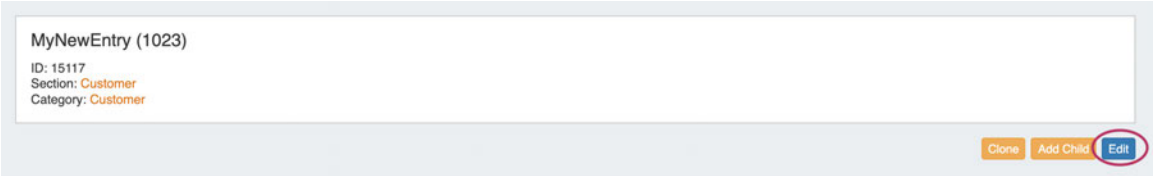



From here, you can work with your selected Gadgets, performing tasks assigning IP Blocks, Contacts, and more.

See the Gadgets Page for detail on working with individual Gadgets.

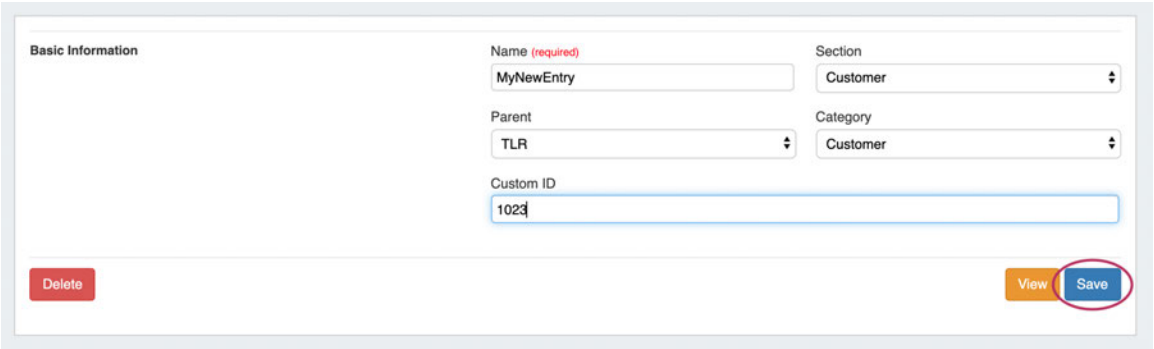
# Edit or Delete an Entry

To edit or delete an Entry, go to the bottom of that resource's Entry Page, and select "Edit".




This will bring up the Edit Entry Page, where you can edit basic information such as Name, Section, Parent, Category, or Custom ID.

When done, hit the "Save" button.




If you wish to delete the Entry, select the "Delete" button.

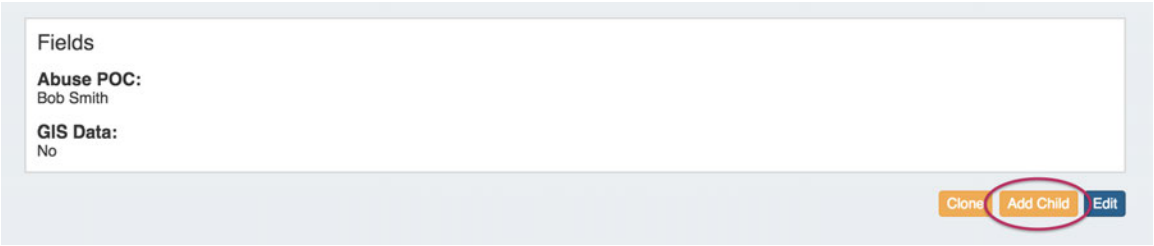
Note

If an entry has children, the delete option will not be available. Child Entries must be deleted before a Parent Entry can be deleted.

## Add Child Entries

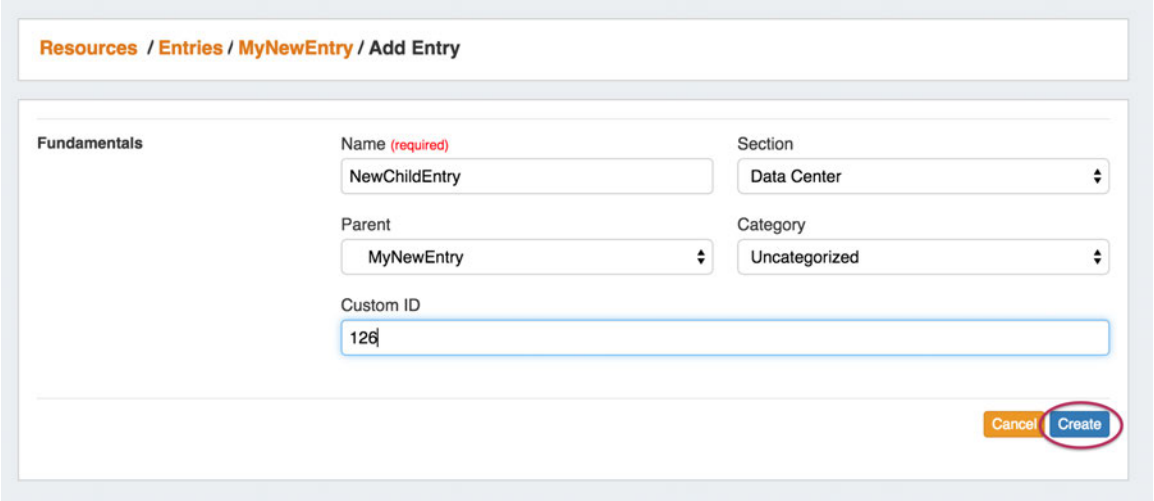
Adding a Child Entry creates a resource underneath the current resource in the hierarchy.

To add a Child Entry, at the bottom of the Resource Entry page, click "Add Child".

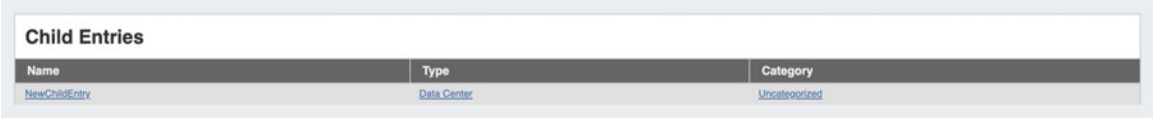



This brings up the Add Entry dialog. Looking at the top navigation breadcrumbs, you can see that we are adding an Entry underneath the resource "MyNewEntry".

Fill out the Name, Section, Category, and Custom ID (if desired), and hit the "Create" button. The Parent field is pre-selected for you.




Once created, the Child Entry will show in a list at the bottom of the Parent Entry page.




## Resource Clone

Cloning an Entry duplicates the Entry and, if desired, any Child Entries existing under it.

This feature can be used to quickly and efficiently create multiple resources with same format, field information, or similar hierarchy structure. One example may be a datacenter with x number racks with y number of servers on each. One rack, with its servers as child entries could be created, and then cloned until the necessary quantity is reached. As text field information is copied during the clone, changes in individual server information would still need reviewed and updated. Think of cloning as creating a template from an existing Resource Entry.

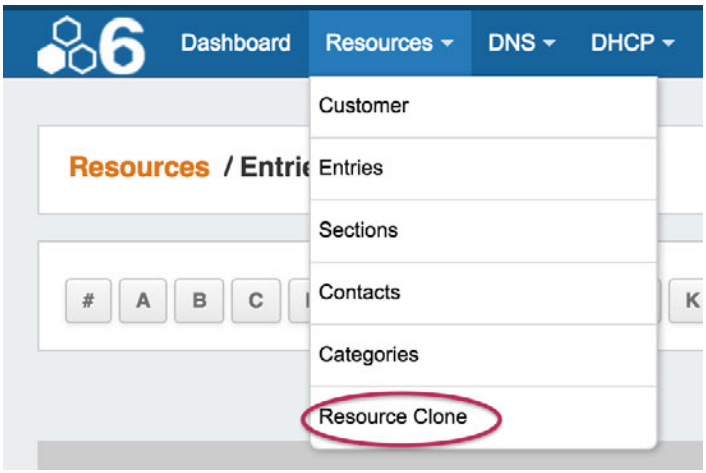
**Information Cloned:** Format of the original Resource (which gadgets are enabled, location, fields), contact / tech information, field information, and (if selected) Child Entries, and Child Entry sections, fields, and field informaiton - in general, items that are chosen or input at the entry creation, or input into text fields.

**Information not Cloned:** IP Blocks, DNS Zones, uploaded documents - in general, items that are *assigned* to the entry rather than input into fields.

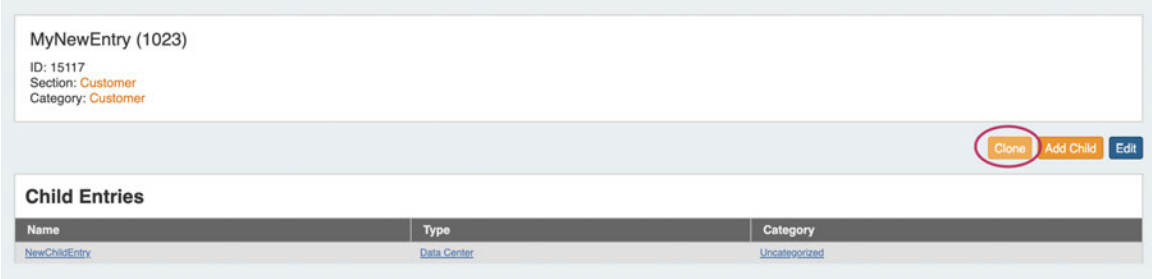
## To Clone an Entry

The Resource Clone feature may be accessed from either the **Resources** Tab dropdown menu, or from a Resource Entry page.

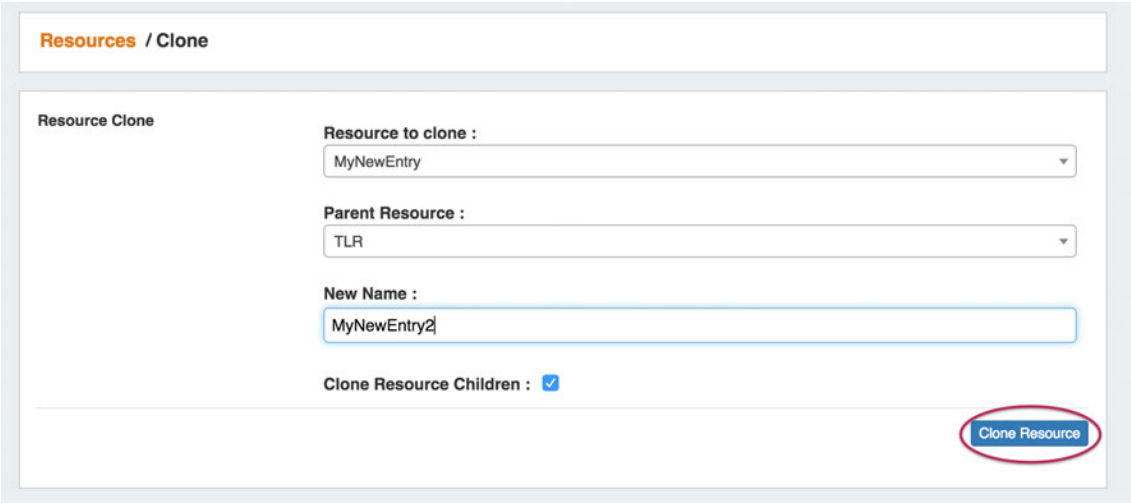
From the **Resources** Tab dropdown, select "Resource Clone". This will take you to the Resource Clone page.




You may also select "Clone" from the bottom of a Resource Entry page, in which case the Entry page you clicked "Clone" from will be automatically selected as the resource to clone.




Once on the Resource Clone Page, enter the Resource to clone, Parent Resource, and the New Name for the clone. If you wish for all children of that resource (and their children, if applicable) to be cloned, check the "Clone Resource Children" checkbox. When complete, click the "Clone Resource" button.




To repeatedly clone the resource, simply change the "New Name" field (if you want the subsequent clones to have a different name), and click "Clone Resource" again. You may repeatedly click "Clone Resource" and each click will produce a new clone.

When done, you may click on the link provided for the most recently created clone, or hit the back button from your browser to return to the parent resource.

Tip

Review the cloned resources using the chart view to see the hierarchy structure!

# Additional Information

Continue on to the following pages for additional information on working with Resources in Provision:

- The Resource System
- Customizing Sections
- Customizing Fields
- Gadgets
- Contact Manager

# Customizing Sections

# Customizing Sections

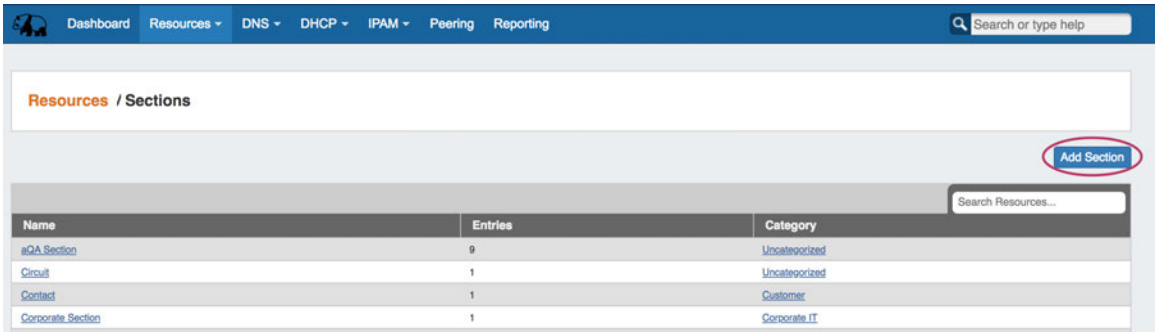
You can create as many Sections as you wish (Firewall, Server, VM, Virtual Interface, etc.) and customize the Gadgets and fields that apply to each Section.

For example, you may not need to track the console port for your virtual firewall, so you would simply not use that field for the "Virtual Firewall" Section. This way you can still track the console port for your physical firewalls like normal.

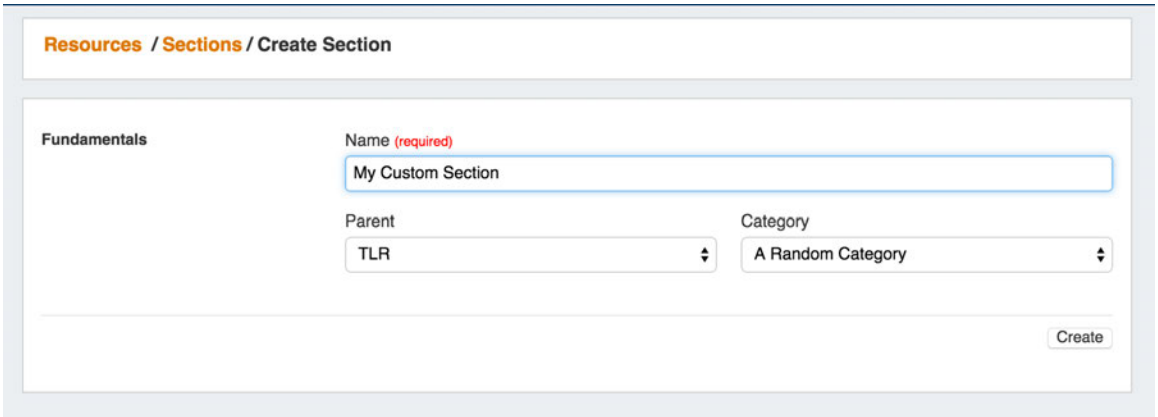

- Customizing Sections
  - Step 1: Create a New Section
  - Step 2: Add a Custom Field to a Section
  - Step 3: Edit Custom Field Data
  - Step 4: Add Gadgets to your Section
  - Additional Information


## Step 1: Create a New Section

Click "Add Section" from the **Sections** sub-tab under the **Resources** Tab

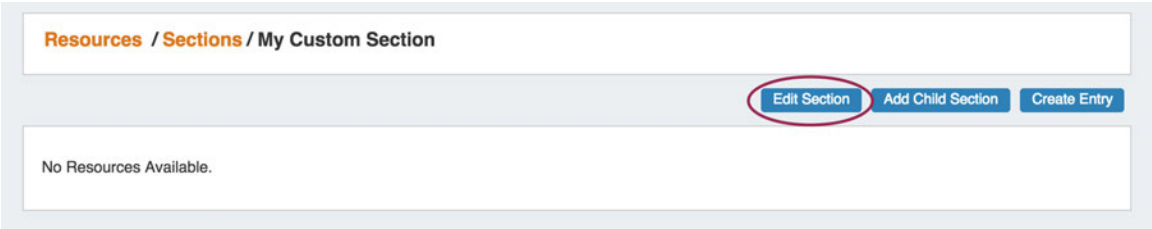



Create a new Section by specifying a Name, Parent, and Category. Then hit the "Create" button.

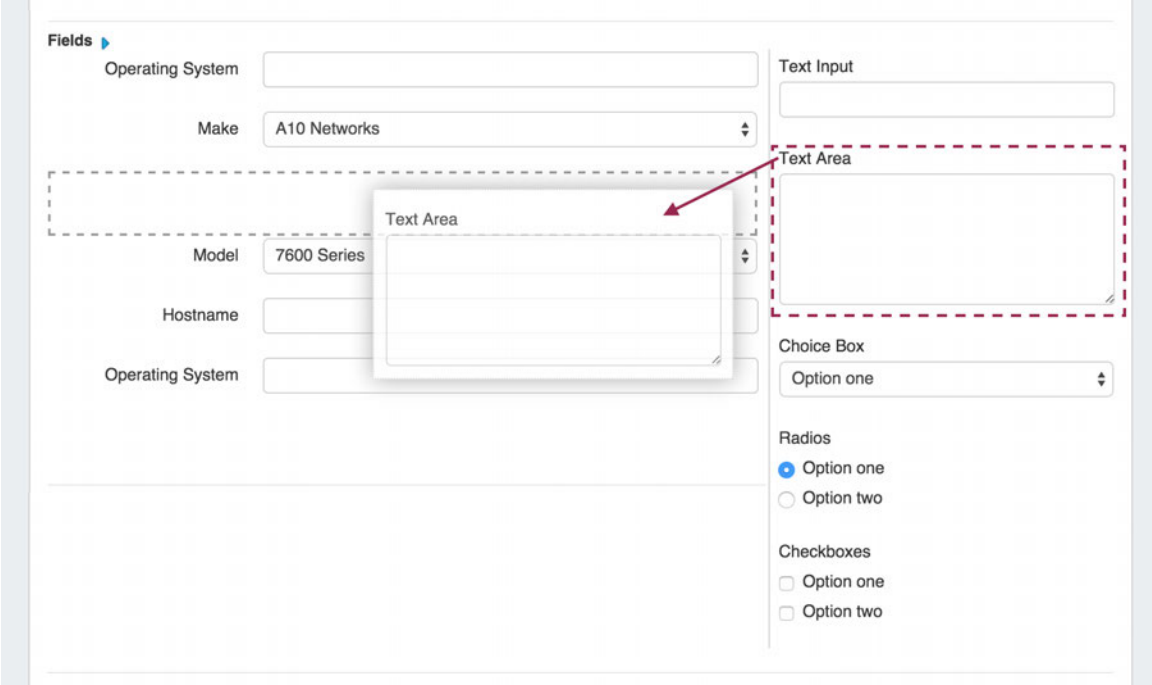



## Step 2: Add a Custom Field to a Section

Manage existing fields and add custom fields for the selected Section by clicking **"**Edit Section"

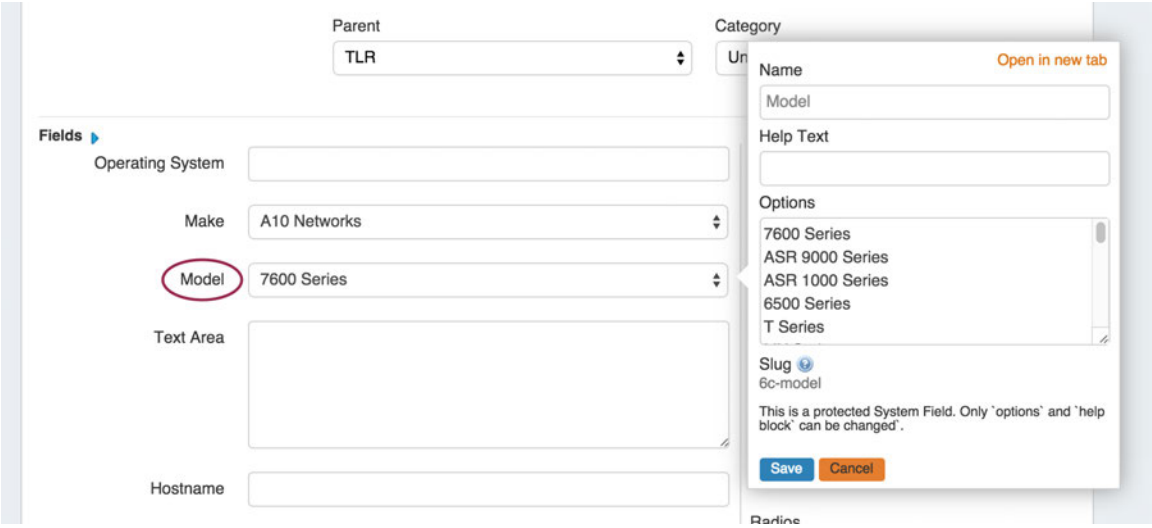



Add existing or Custom Fields for your Section. You can add new Custom Fields of different types (text input, text area, choice box, radios, checkbox) by dragging and dropping the fields as well as using any existing fields that are available. See the Customizing Fields page for more details.




## Step 3: Edit Custom Field Data

Select the field name and you will get an editing window to modify the parameters of the field. Custom fields may be renamed and have other attributes updated, whereas protected system fields may have noted restrictions.



# Step 4: Add Gadgets to your Section

You will notice on this customization screen that you also have an area for Gadgets. Gadgets are modules of additional functionality that can be added to the UI of a given Resource. Simply select the Gadget you want to show for that section, hit "Add", then organize by dragging into the order you wish them to appear on the page. Once added to the Section, Gadgets will be visible for all Resources of that Section.

For a detailed list of gadgets and descriptions, see the Gadgets page.

# Additional Information

Continue on to the following pages for additional information on Resources in Provision:

- Customizing Fields
- Gadgets
- Contact Manager

# Customizing Fields

# Working with Fields

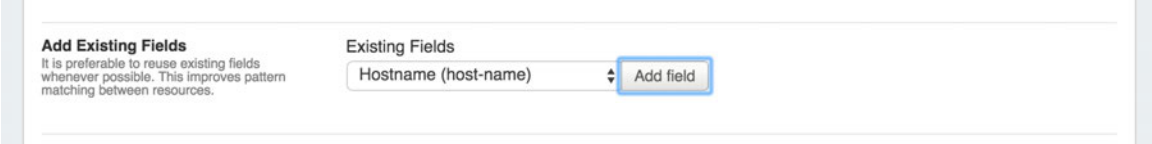
Fields are individual pieces of data that you can associate with a particular Section. For example, you may want to have "Operating System", "Make", and "Model" fields for a server or device. Provision includes many default fields to choose from, but you may also create custom fields and edit fields to suit your needs.

Once a field is added to a particular Section, it will be available add to the Field Gadget for later to edit, manage, or remove.


- Working with Fields
  - Add Existing Field to a Section
  - Add Custom Field to a Section
  - Editing/Removing Fields
  - Using the Field Gadget
    - Manage Resource Fields
  - Additional Information

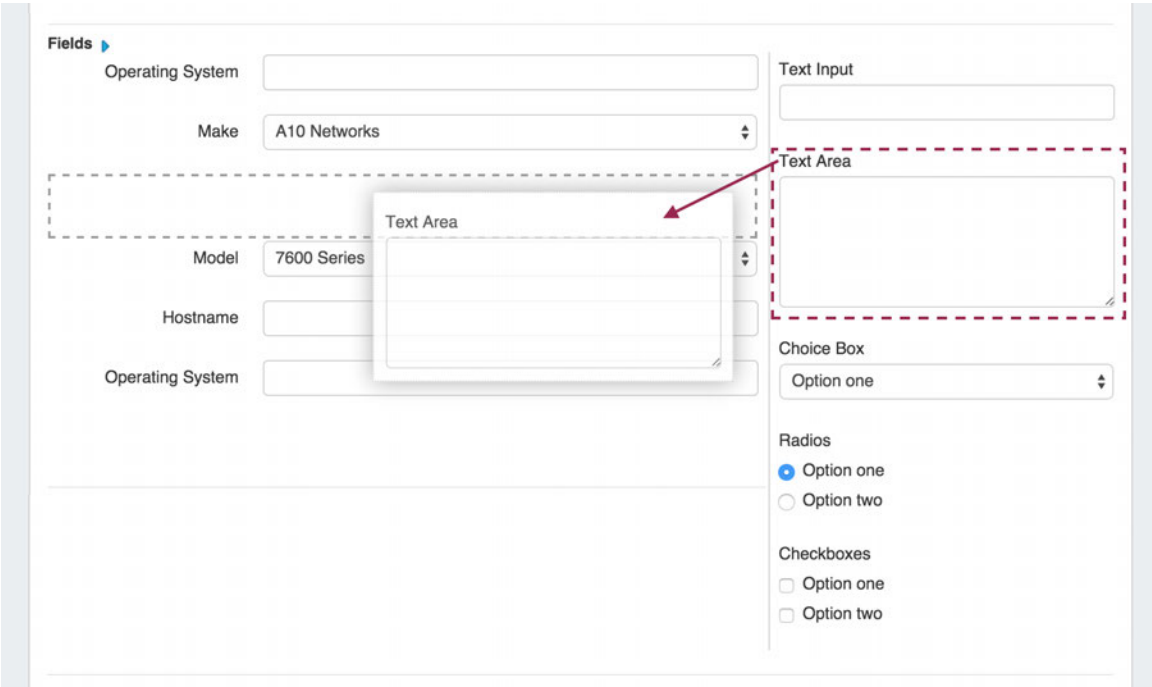

## Add Existing Field to a Section

To add an existing field to a Section, select the field name from the dropdown menu and click on the "Add Field" button.



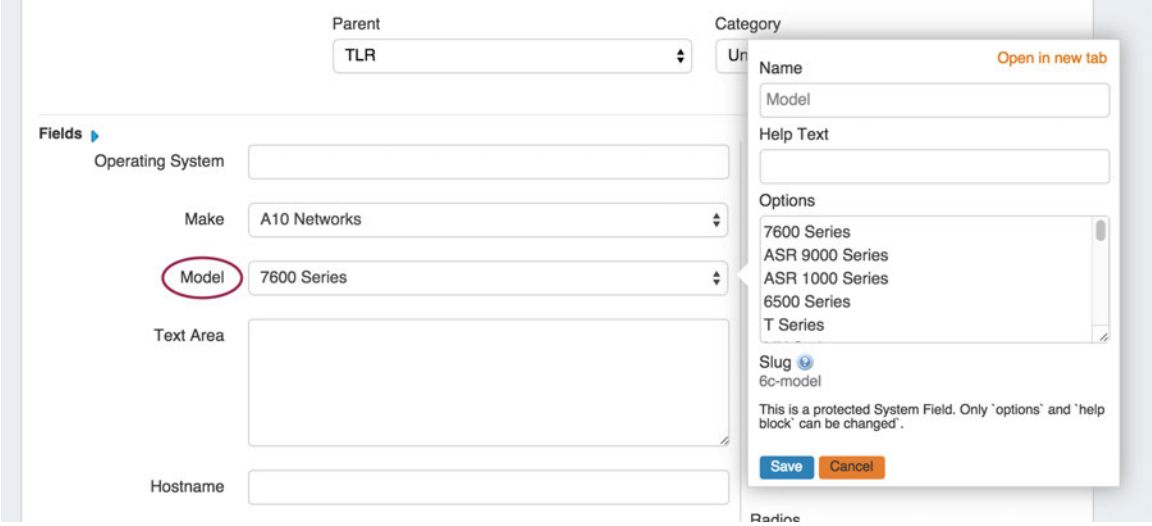

## Add Custom Field to a Section

To add a new custom field to a Section, simply click on the custom field type name (Text Input, Text Area, Choice Box, etc), then drag the field over to the field list and release in the desired location. Edit the field name and options as described in Editing / Removing Fields.



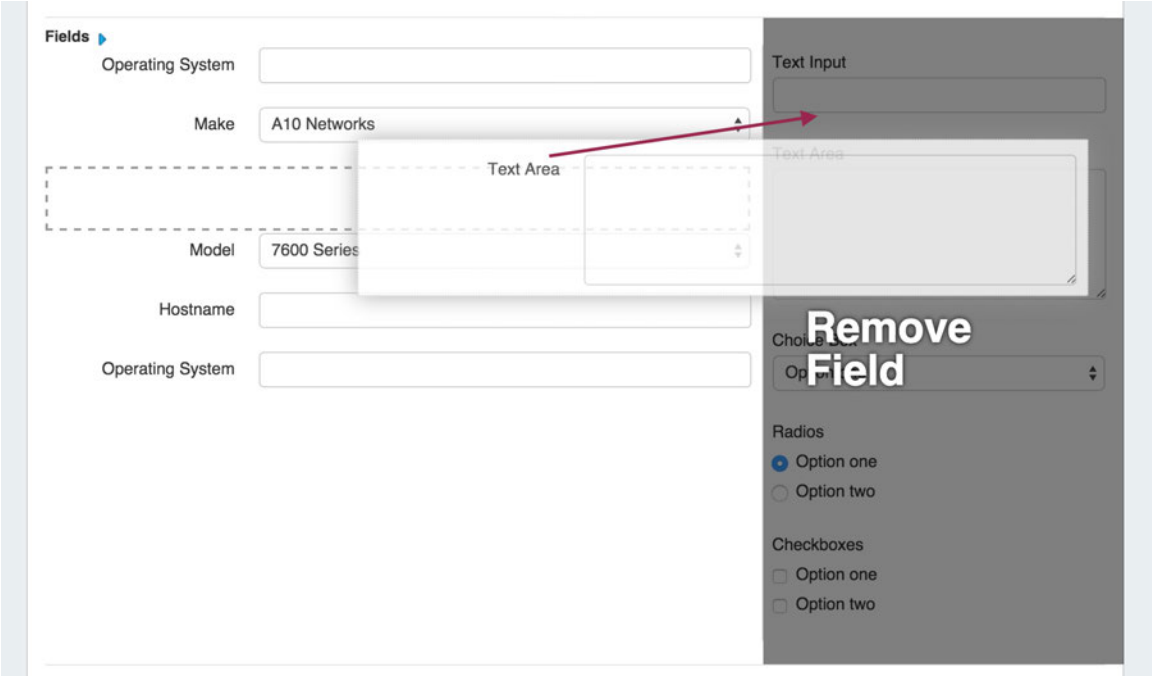
# Editing/Removing Fields

Once fields are added to a Section, you can click on the field name to make additional changes to the fields. Custom fields may be renamed and have other attributes updated, whereas protected System Fields may have noted restrictions.




To rearrange the field list order, click and hold on the field name, then drag and drop into the preferred order.

To remove a field, click and hold on the field name, then simply drag and drop the field to the right side of the screen to where the "Remove Field" prompt is visible.




# Using the Field Gadget

The Field Gadget displays the information fields that been added to the Section, and have been added for the specific Resource that is being viewed.

Users may add enabled fields to the resource, edit field values, and remove fields from the Resource through this Gadget. Field values in this Gadget (such as Hostname, Username, and Password, among others) may also be used by other Resource Gadgets and Provision modules.

## Manage Resource Fields

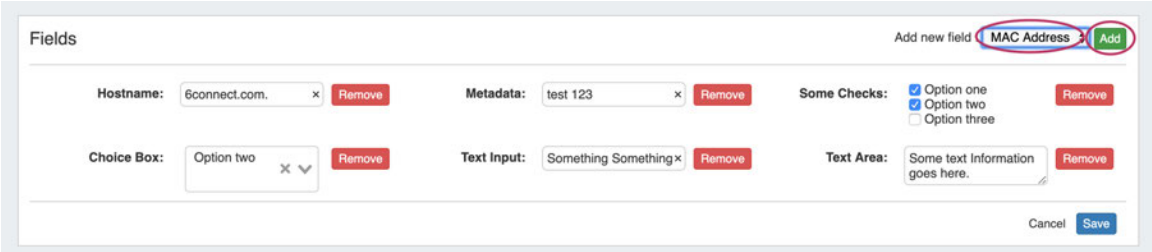
The Field Gadget and the individual fields must both be enabled and added to the Resource's Section before they can be used in the Field Gadget on the Resource Entry page.

Once the fields are added to the Section, they will be available to add to the Field Gadget for any Resource of that Section, from the Field Gadget's "Add New Field" dropdown.

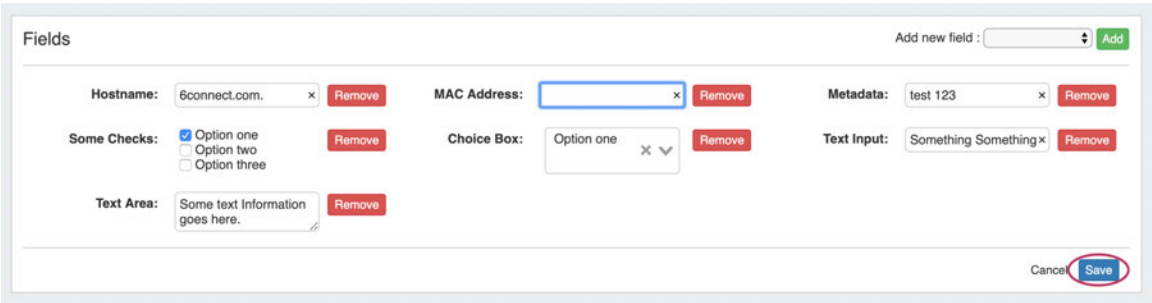
To Add, Edit, or Remove fields, click the "Edit" Button at the bottom right corner of the Field Gadget.

To add an available field to the Gadget, select one of the available fields from the "Add New Field:" dropdown, then click "Add".

Once added, the field will be available to edit or remove.




Edit the field value(s) by typing into the input box, and/or selecting the desired option, then click "Save". You may also remove a field from the gadget by clicking "Remove" - it will be available to re-add later, if needed.




When done with your edits, click "Save" to return to view mode.

# Additional Information

Continue on to the following pages for additional information on Resources in Provision:

- Gadgets
- Contact Manager

# Gadgets

# Gadgets


- Gadgets
  - What are Gadgets?
  - Available Gadgets
    - ACP ("Workflows") Gadget
    - Contact Info
    - Contacts
    - DHCP Server Management (Legacy)
    - DHCP Customer Configuration
    - DNS
    - DNS Autogenerator
    - Document Storage
    - Field Gadget
    - IPAM (Legacy)
    - IPAMv2
    - Notes
    - Peer Groups
    - Peering Sessions
    - Peering VRFs
    - Resource Linkage Gadget
    - Resource Linkage - Linked IPs Gadget
    - Resource View
    - Reverse API Console
    - Tech Info
  - Creating your own Gadgets
  - Additional Information

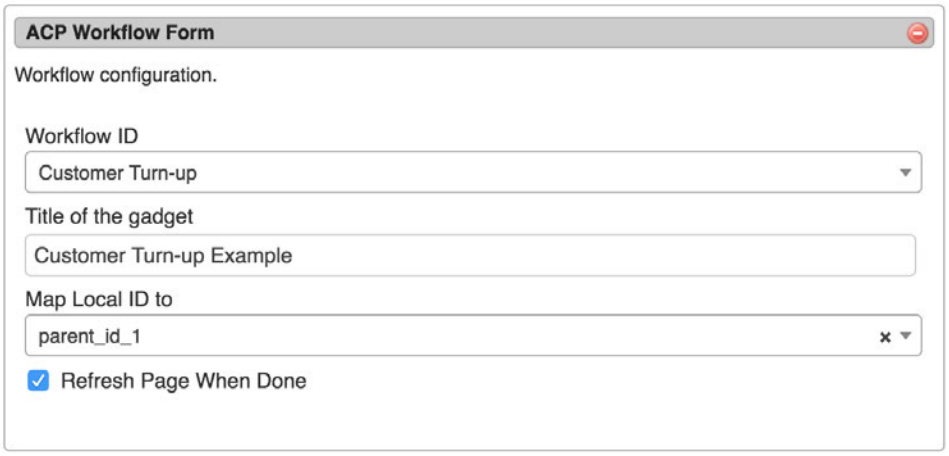

## What are Gadgets?

Our gadget system is similar to the Atlassian Gadget system (and Google Gadgets). When creating or editing a Section, gadgets can be added in a way similar to how you would add or remove a field (see Customizing Sections). Gadgets are best described as self contained webapps; widgets but with more power. Gadgets can have their own fields, HTML templates, and even accompanying scripts and stylesheets. They can interface with the API to display simple information such as the Type of the Resource, or they can perform much more complex functions as demonstrated with the IPAM gadget in the following section.

## Available Gadgets

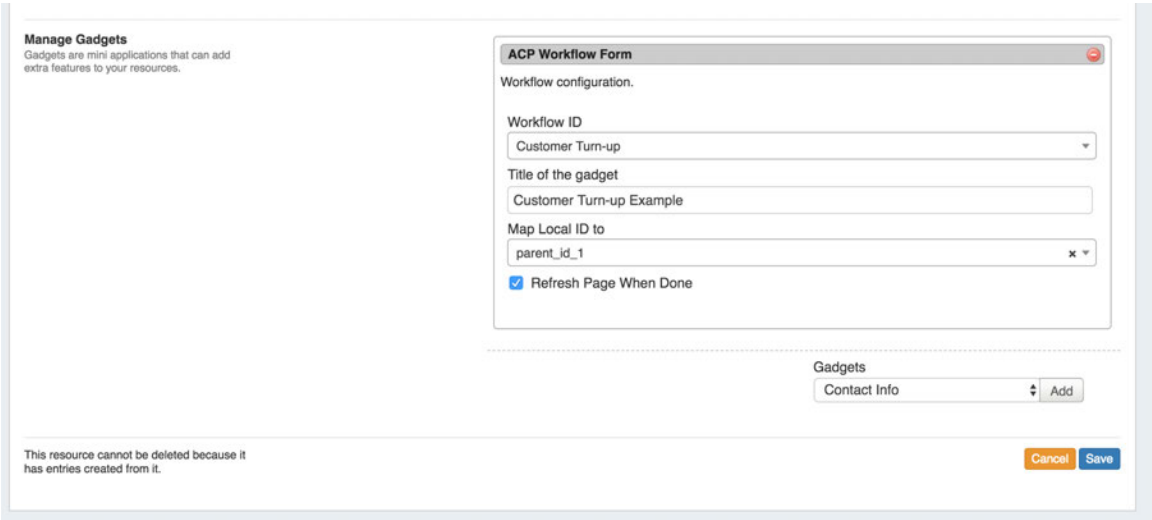
### ACP ("Workflows") Gadget

The ACP Workflow Form is a Gadget connecting 6connect's ACP (API Composer Platform) with the ProVision interface to run Workflows.
It allows users to specify and execute Workflows created in the ACP product on a ProVision Resource Entry page.




### *Working with the ACP Workflow Form*

Customers with an ACP license can select and add the "ACP Workflow Form" Gadget to a Section, containing fields to select the desired Workflow to Run, Title, and map input options. Multiple Forms may be added to a Section, in order to run additional Workflows or option settings.  When complete, click "Save".

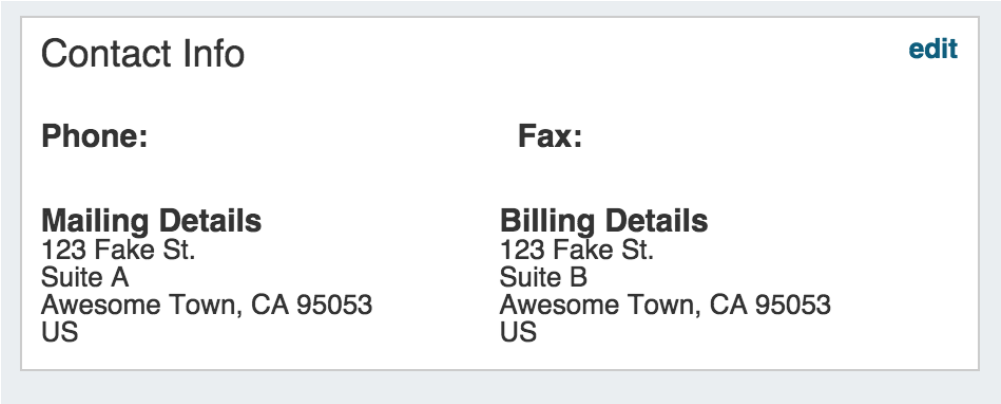



Once enabled, the Gadget will show on the resource page of the section type. Input the field data necessary for the Workflow, and click "Execute Workflow" to process the chain of workflow calls.

In this example, a "Customer Turn-Up" Workflow was selected (created in ProVision's ACP product) that performed six functions with one button click. The successful "Execute" for "Customer Turn-Up" created a new customer resource entry, assigned IPv4 and IPv6 blocks to them, created a DNS zone for the hostname, and lastly created 'A' and 'AAAA' records for the zone.

## Contact Info

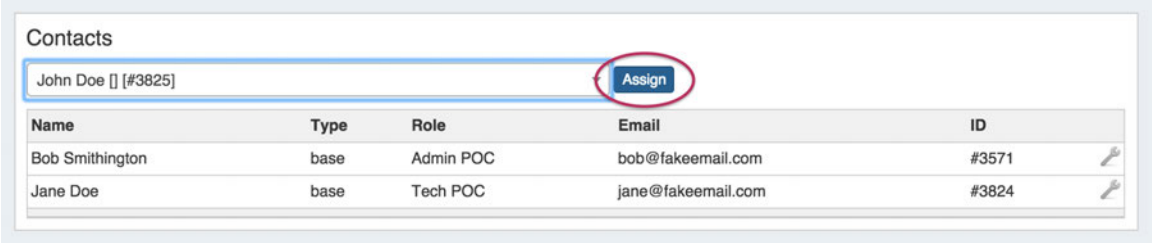
This Gadget is used on the Resource Holder Section type. In the Contact Info Gadget, you can track information such as mailing / billing addresses, phone number, and fax number for that Resource.




## Contacts

The Contacts Gadget may be used on any Section type to assign a contact (from the Contact Manager) to a Resource.

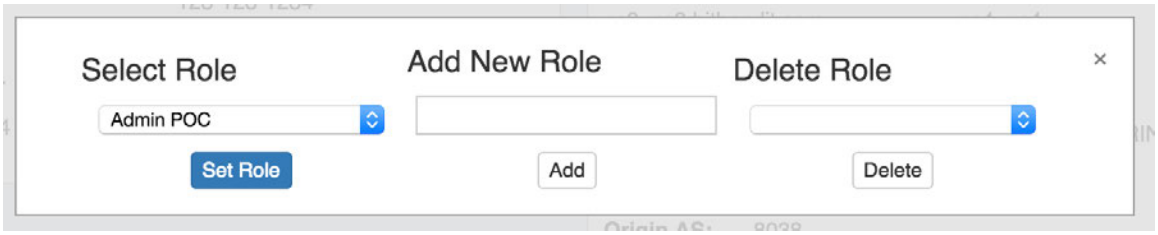
To assign a contact, search for and select the desired contact in the search box, then click "Assign". The Contact will show in the list below.




**Contacts Action Menu:**

The Action Menu (wrench icon) in the contacts gadget has three options:

**Set Role:** Opens a dialog box to select a role to assign to the contact, add a new role, or delete an existing role.




**Unassign:** Unassigns the contact from the resource

**View:** Redirects to the contact's detail page in the Contact Manager

Refer to the Contact Manager page in the documentation for more detail on working with the Contacts gadget and the Contact Manager.

A Note on Permissions

The ability to view and assign a contact to a resource is restricted by the Parent assigned to the contact upon creation. If a user does not have permissions for a contact's Parent Resource, that contact will not be able to be viewed / assigned via the gadget.

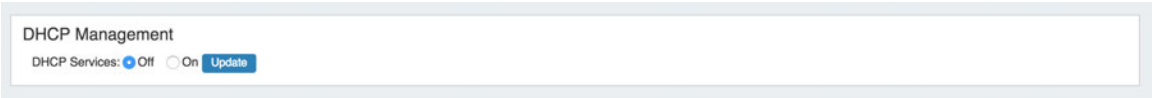
## DHCP Server Management (Legacy)

The DHCP Server Management Gadget has functionally been replaced by the **DHCP** Tab updates in version 7.0.0.

Although the DHCP Management Gadget may still be used, we recommended checking out the **DHCP Groups**, **DHCP Servers**, and **DHCP Pools** pages instead for an improved user experience.

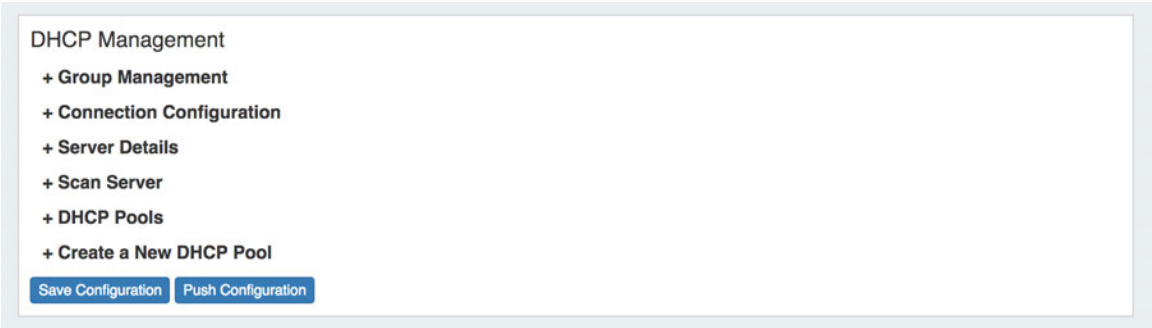
The DHCP Server Management Gadget should be used with the "Server" Section.

When initally added to the section, it will show in the "Off" configuration:



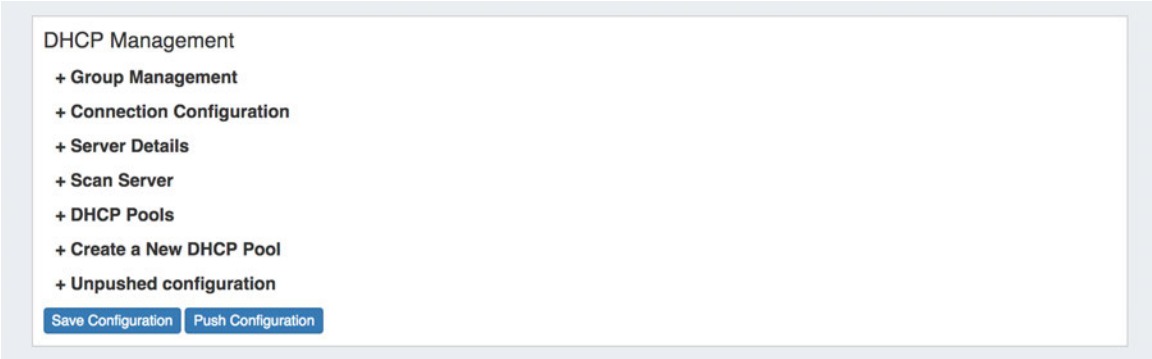

To enable the DHCP Management Gadget, select the "On" radio button next to "DHCP Services", and click the "Update" Button.

The DHCP Management Gadget in the "On" configuration:




Each of the sections in the DHCP Management Gadget - Group Management, Connection Configuration, Server Details, Scan Server, DHCP Pools, and Create a New DHCP Pool - may be expanded to change settings in each area.

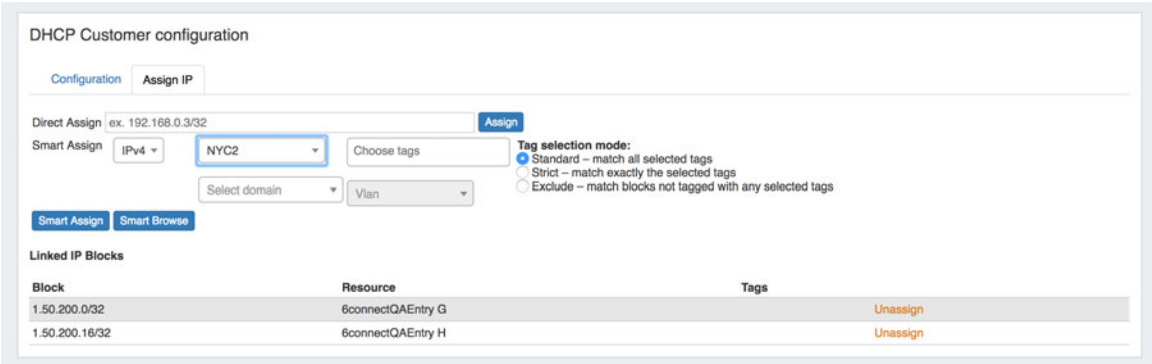
Additional sections may appear in the Gadget once unpushed or pushed configurations are saved:




For detailed information on working with the DHCP Management Gadget, see DHCP Tab - Managing DHCP Server Configurations.

## DHCP Customer Configuration

The DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget allows users to assign IP aggregates to the DHCP server pools and generates DHCP Server Configuration changes depending on the tag(s) and DHCP options selected.




These configurations are then sent to the associated DHCP server Management Gadget as "Unpushed Configurations", where they may be held until a manual or schedule push occurs.

### Before You Begin

Before using the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget, the following should be set up in ProVision:

- The associated DHCP server should be created in ProVision and set up in the DHCP Management Gadget or **DHCP** Tab - **DHCP Servers** list (See: **DHCP** Tab).
- Add the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget to the desired Section. You may want to create a specific "DHCP Customer" Section for DHCP customer entries (See: Customizing Sections).
- Have, or set up APNIC Aggregates for DHCP use from the **IPAM** Tab with the desired IP space type, Region(s), Tags, and any desired VLAN criteria. Regions are a required field when assigning IPs from the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget. Any APNIC aggregate may be used for DHCP, so you may want to create a "DHCP" IPAM Tag to help denote the desired aggregate(s).
- If you are planning on Direct Assigning the DHCP blocks in the Customer Configuration Gadget, ensure that the desired blocks in the DHCP are split to individual /32 or /128 size. Smart Assign and Smart Browse will automatically split the block to assign the correct size.

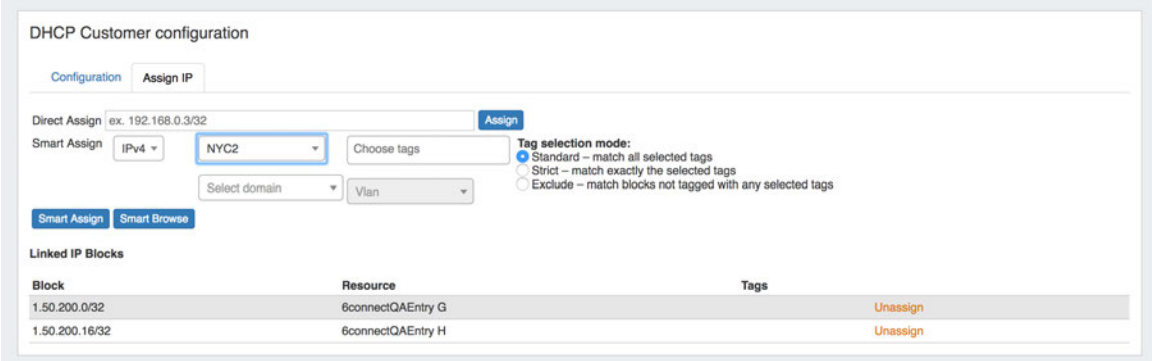
### Associate with DHCP Server

Once the Gadget is enabled, the first step is to associate it with an already-created DHCP server in ProVision. Select the DHCP Server to link to, and click "Continue".

### Assign IP's

Next, Assign IP's for Pools from DHCP Aggregates. You may Direct Assign, Smart Assign, or assign from Smart Browse based on the selected criteria.

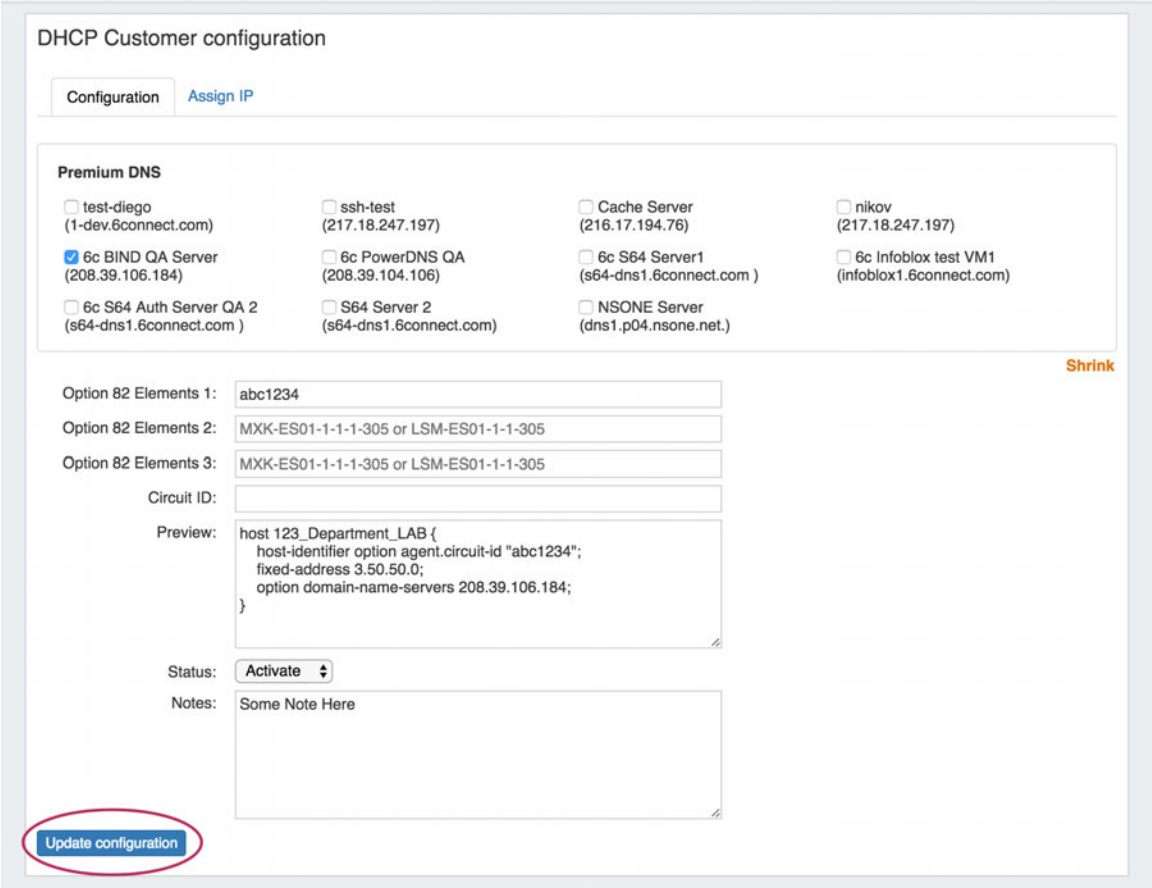
Once assigned, a Pool Name will be automatically generated under "Resource". Pools may be unassigned by clicking the "Unassign" button.



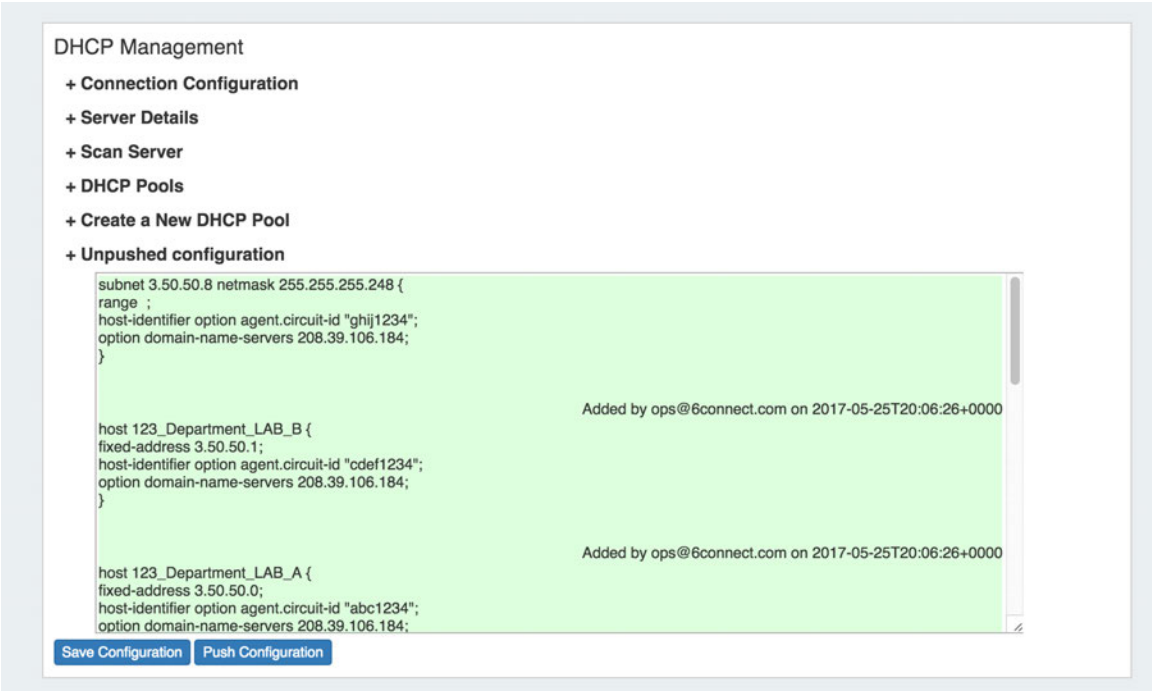
**Set up Configuration**

Once IP's have been assigned, the "Configuration" tab will appear. Click on the tab, and then select or deselect the DNS Server associated with the Customer, add Option 82 Elements, Add Circuit ID text, and add notes if desired. Use the "Preview" field to confirm the accuracy of the data, and select the status as "Activate" or "Terminate".

When done, click "Update Configuration". The configuration will be sent to the associated DHCP server's DHCP Management Gadget.



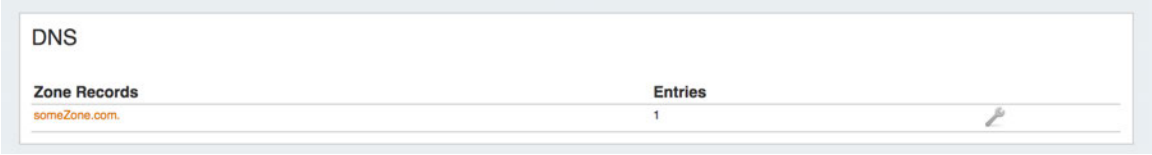

**Reviewing and Pushing Configuration Updates**
When a configuration has been saved from the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget, it will appear as an "Unpushed Configuration" in the DHCP Management Gadget for the DHCP Server. If you expand that option, you will see the config elements highlighted – red are config elements that will be deleted, green are config elements that will be added.




At this point, an Admin user may manually push the updated configuration, or use a scheduled DHCP push task to automate the pushes.

## DNS

This gadget is used on the Resource Holder Section type. The DNS Gadget shows zones that have the current Resource Holder set as their parent, and provides links to the zone's View Zone page.

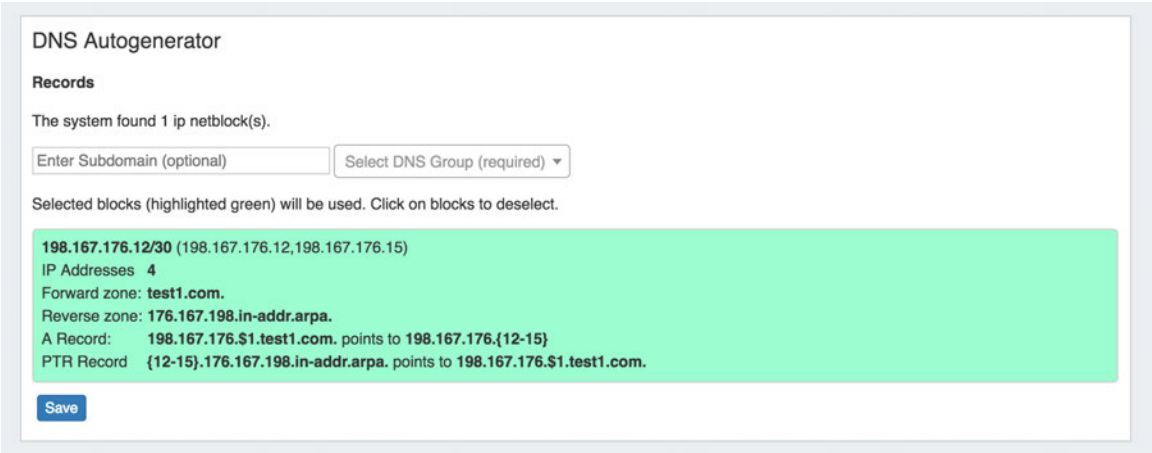



To go to the View Zone page, you may either click on the zone name, or click on the Action Menu (wrench icon) and select "View Zone".

For more information on DNS functions and managing zones, refer to the documentation for the DNS Tab.

## DNS Autogenerator

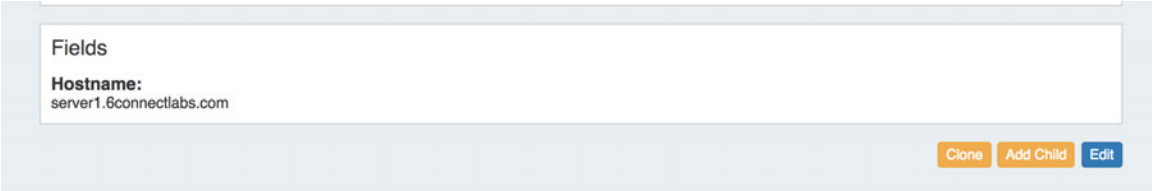
The DNS Autogenerator Gadget uses the Hostname field (6c-hostname-fqdn) of the Resource to generate a list of DNS forward and reverse zone entries based on the blocks assigned to the Resource in the IPAM Gadget It will generate a list of potential zone records - just select the ones you want to create, save the changes and you are ready to push the zones.




**Enabling the DNS Autogenerator**

To set up this Gadget, ensure that the Section of the Resource (typically, "Resource Holder" ), has the "Hostname" field (6c-hostname-fqdn) and the DNS Autogenerator Gadget added to the Section. (See: Customizing Sections and Customizing Fields).

Then, check that the Resource itself has information entered into the "Hostname" field. If the field is already filled out, it will show in the "Fields" information area at the bottom of the Resource Entry page. To add or edit the hostname, click "Edit" at the bottom of the resource entry page, add the information to the Hostname field, and click "Save".



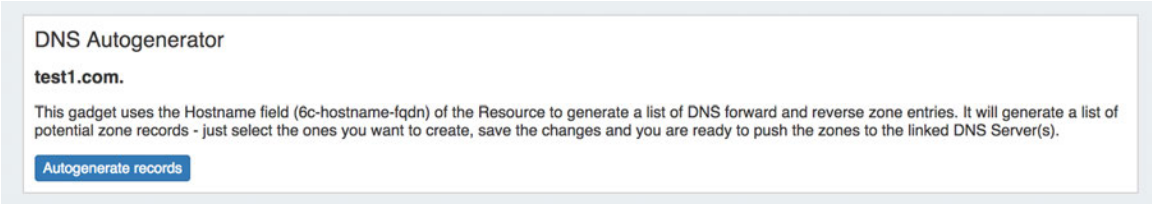

Once a hostname has been associated with a Resource, and the page refreshed, the DNS Autogenerator Gadget will be visible.

**Before you Begin**

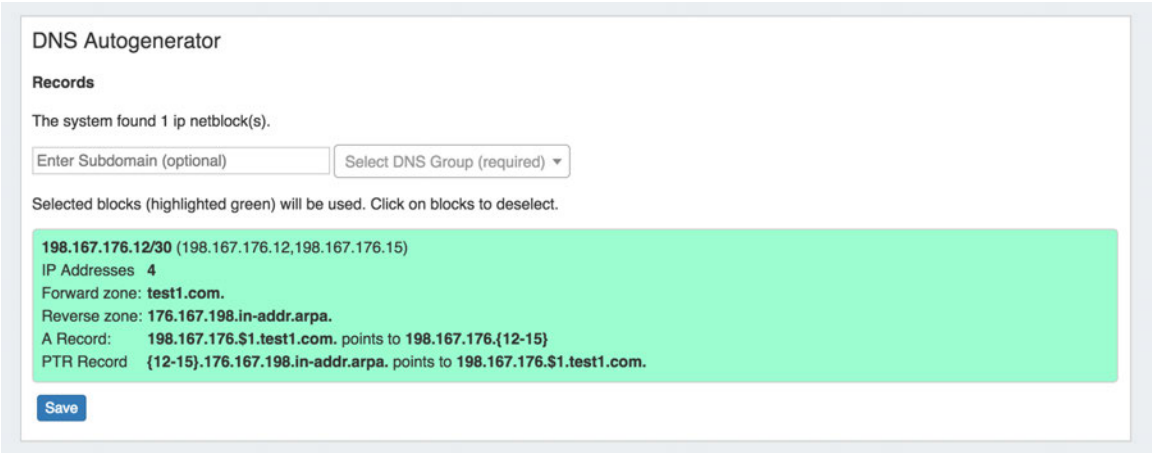
Before starting, check that the blocks assigned to the Resource in the IPAM Gadget are correct and up-to-date - the Autogenerator uses these blocks to create the records. If using a DNS Group other than "Default" to hold zones, ensure that the desired DNS Group to hold the generated records has been set up. (See: Working with DNS Groups).

**Working with the DNS Autogenerator**

One enabled and visible, the DNS Autogenerator Gadget will initially show a short description, the hostname, and a button to "Autogenerate Records".

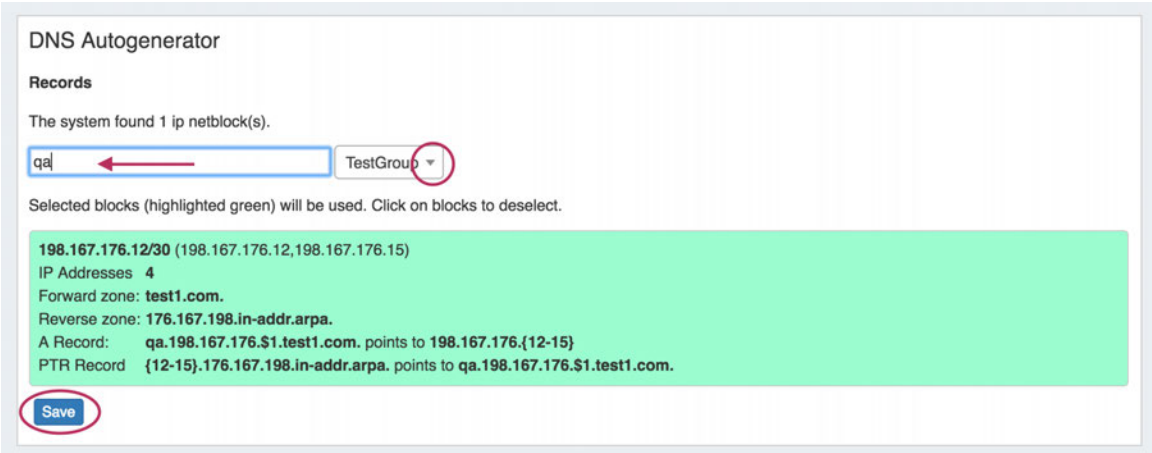



When ready, click the "Autogenerate Records" button. The Gadget will search through the blocks in the IPAM gadget and provide a list of found blocks.



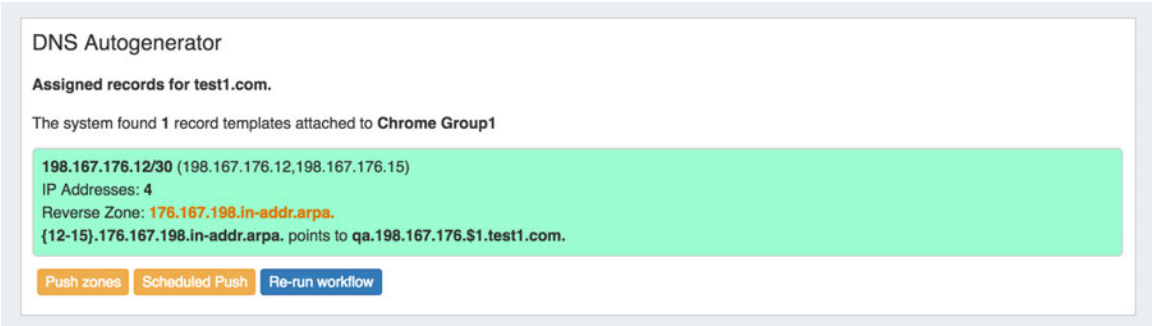

**Add Subdomain / DNS Group**

Next, add in a subdomain if desired (optional), and select the DNS Group to hold the records (required). Click on the listed blocks to select (highlighted green) or deselect (grey) for DNS zone / record creation.




**Save and Push**

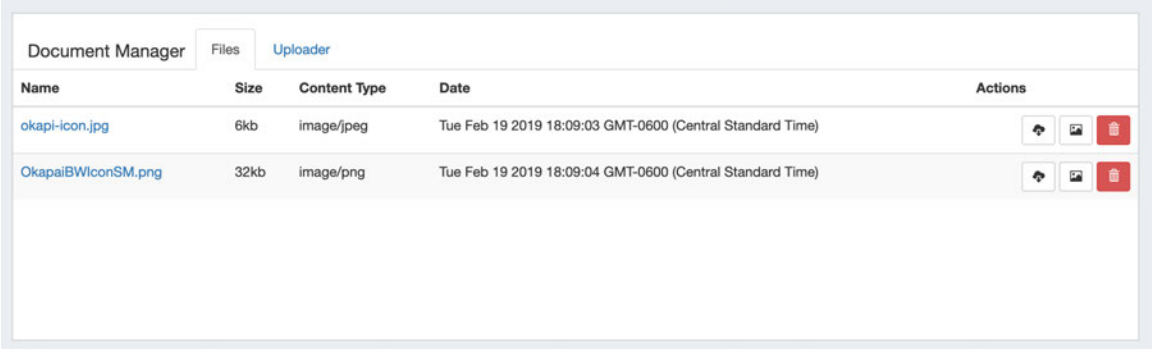
Finally, hit the "Save" button at the bottom of the gadget - the selected forward and reverse DNS records will be created and added into the DNS Group, viewable in the **DNS** Tab.




At this point, you may choose to immediately push the autogenerated zone(s), schedule a push, or re-run the workflow to edit the subdomain or group.

## Document Storage

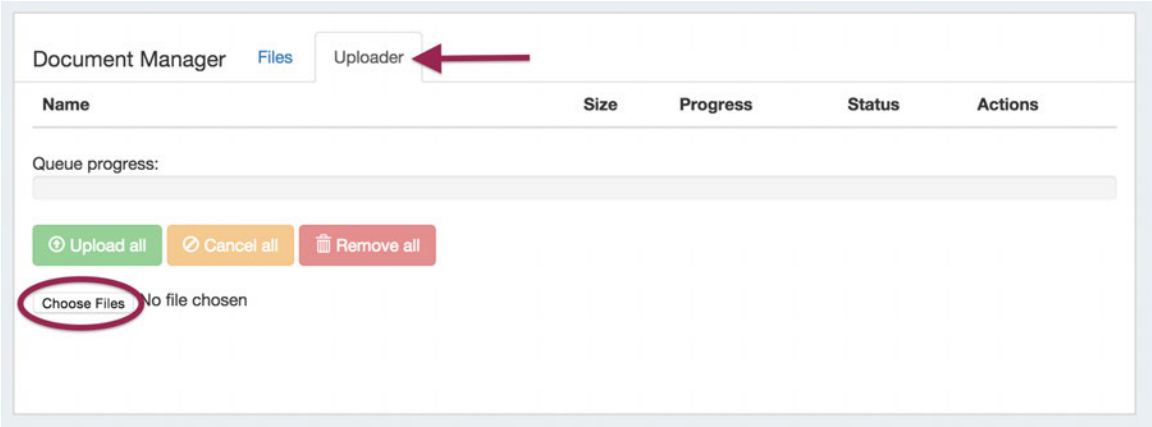
The Document Storage gadget allows you to upload documents to a resource, and have those documents accessible to download from the 6connect cloud to your local machine. It may be enabled on any Section type.



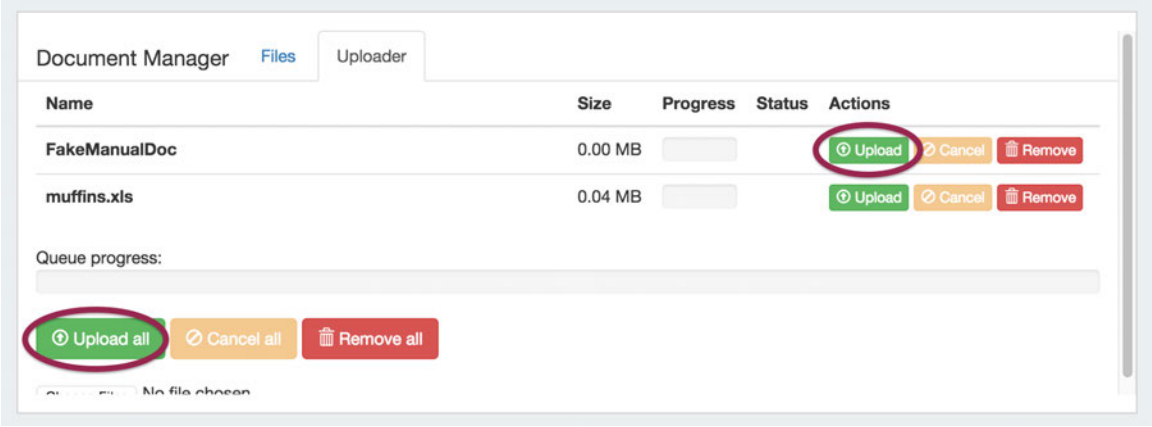

**Upload Files**

First, ensure the Document Storage gadget is enable for the Section type. Then, select the "Uploader" tab under the Document Manager gadget.

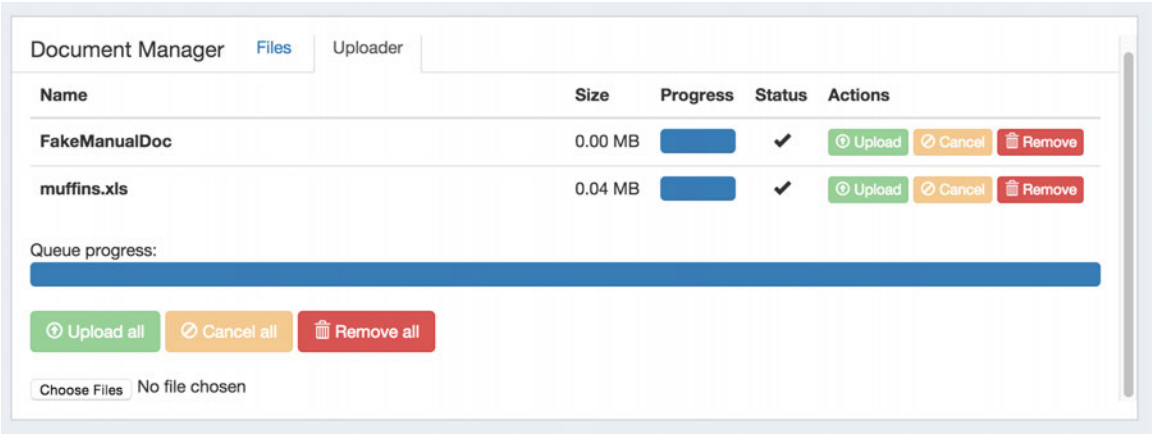
Click on the "Choose Files" button, and select the file(s) you would like to upload.




The selected files will show in a list under the Uploader tab. To upload the file(s), click on either the "Upload" button adjacent to the file to upload the individual file, or the "Upload All" button to upload all files listed. You may also choose to remove files from the upload list, or cancel.



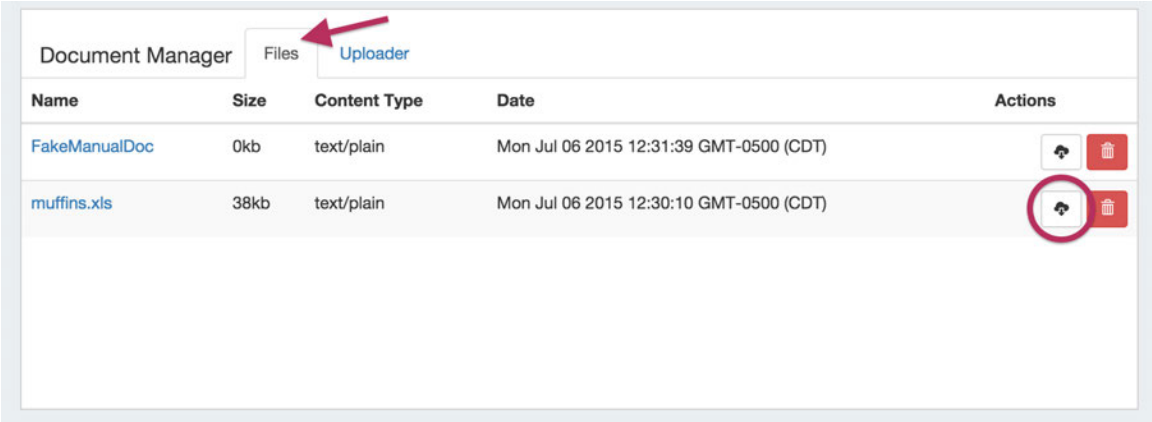

Once the progress bar is filled in, your upload is complete! Your files will show under the "Files" tab.




**Download Available Files**

Successfully uploaded files are listed under the "Files" tab of the Document Manager gadget. From here, you can see the file Name, Size, Type, Date, and available Actions.

To download a file to your local machine, ensure you are on the "Files" tab, then click on the "Download from Cloud" icon.




If a file is no longer needed, you may delete the file from the Document Manager by clicking on the Delete (trash can) icon.

Note: The uploader has a file size limit of 14mb, files above this size will not successfully upload.

# Field Gadget

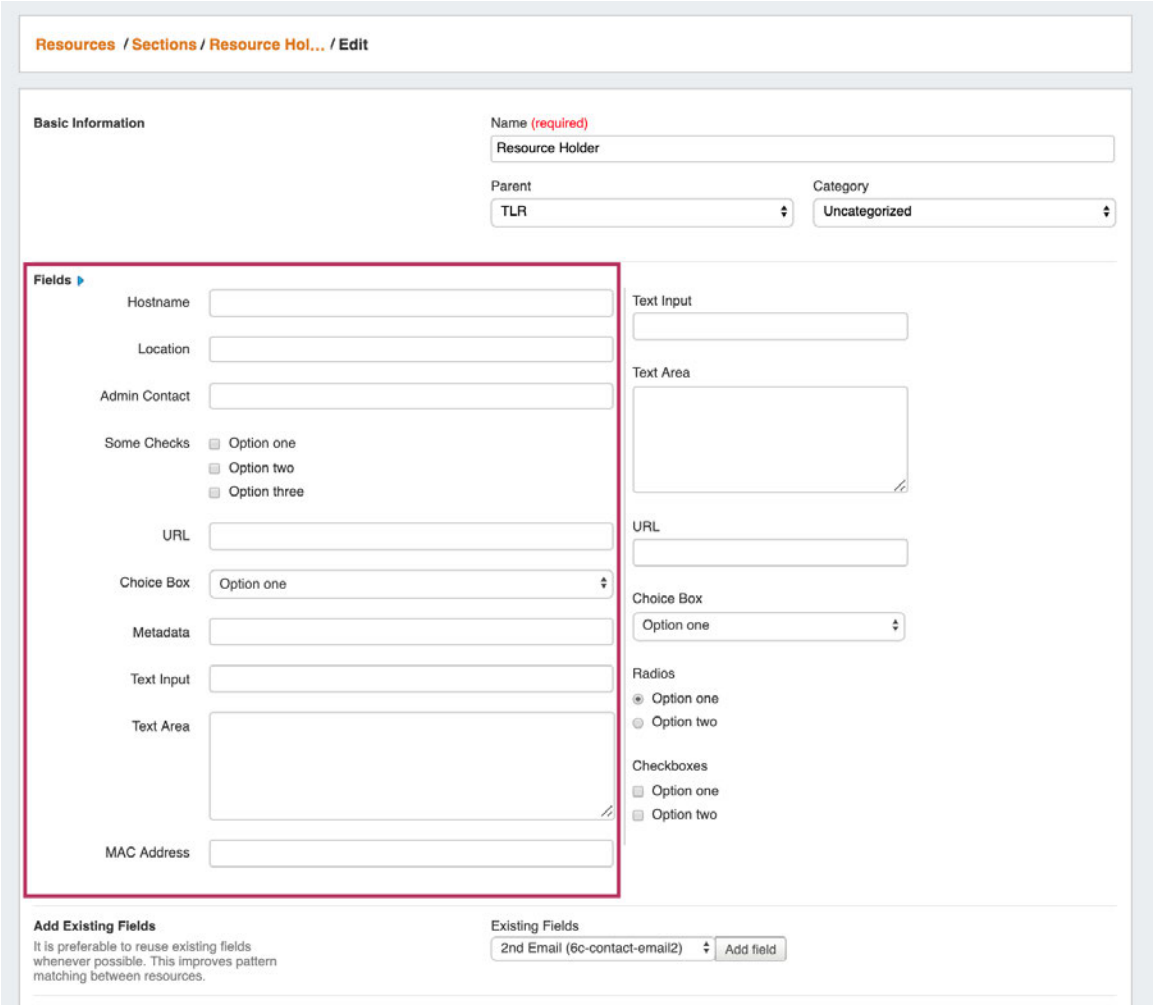
The Field Gadget displays the information fields available for the Section and specific Resource that is being viewed.

Users may add enabled fields to the resource, edit field values, and remove fields from the Resource through this Gadget. Field values in this Gadget (such as Hostname, Username, and Password, among others) may also be used by other Resource Gadgets and Provision modules.

## Before You Begin

Fields must be enabled and added to the Resource's Section before they can be used in the Field Gadget.

Fields enabled in a Section (pictured below) will be available to add to the Field Gadget for any Resource of that Section.

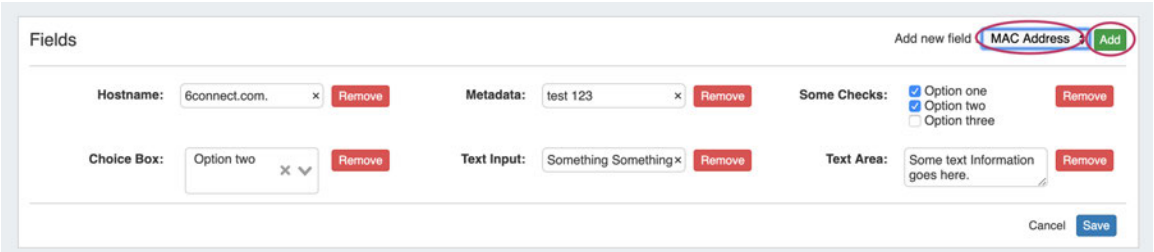



## Working with the Field Gadget

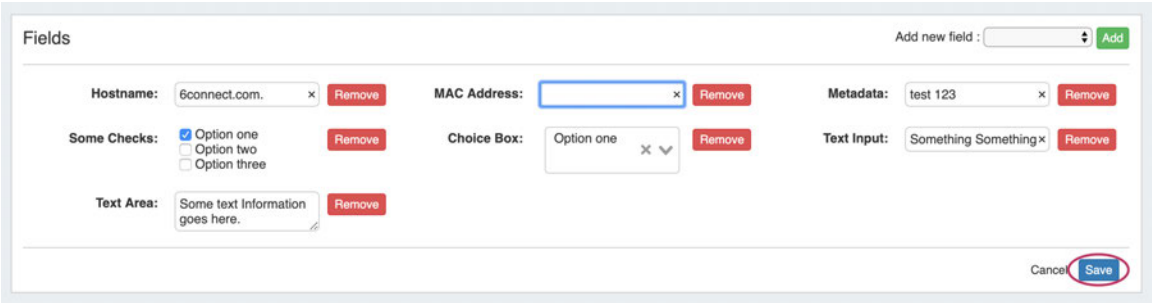
Once fields have been enabled for a Section, they will be available to select in the "Add New Field" dropdown.

To Add fields, click the "Edit" Button at the bottom right corner of the Field Gadget.

Then, next to "Add New Field:", select one of the available fields from the dropdown, and click "Add".




Once added, the field will be available to edit or remove. Edit field value(s) as desired, then click "Save".



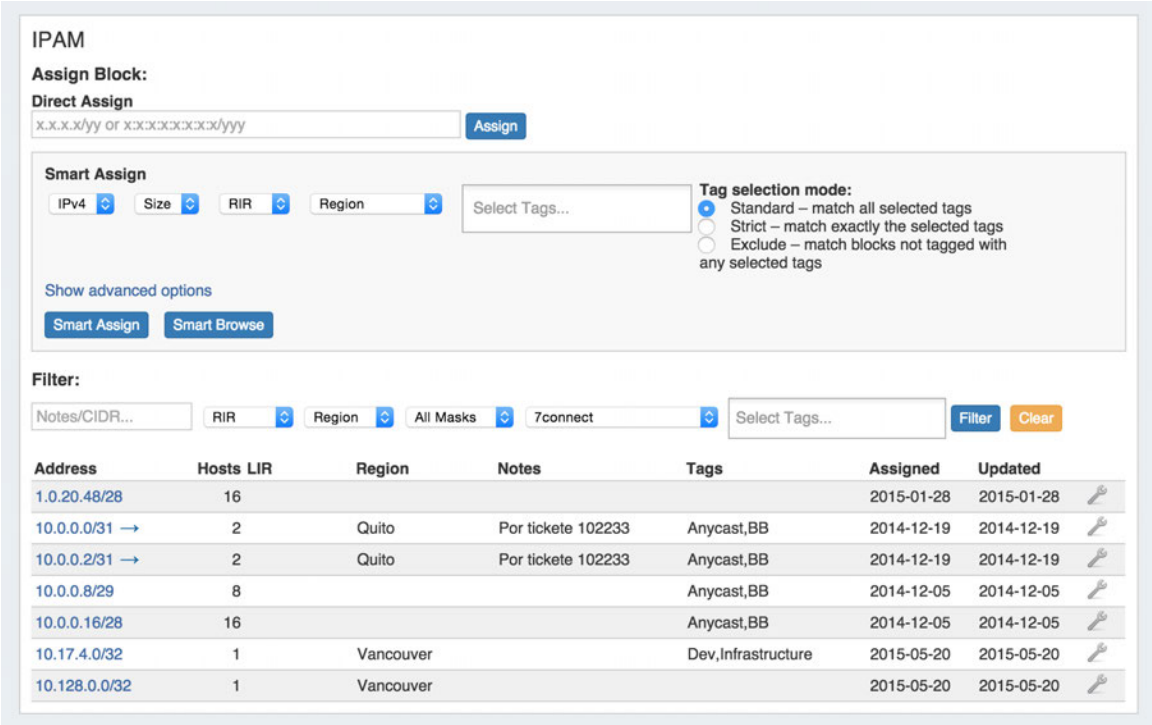

## IPAM (Legacy)

The IPAM Gadget has functionally been replaced by the IPAMv2 Gadget in version 7.0.0.

Although the original IPAM Gadget is still able to be used by existing customers, we recommend switching to the IPAMv2 Gadget for improved speed, filters, and UI customization options.

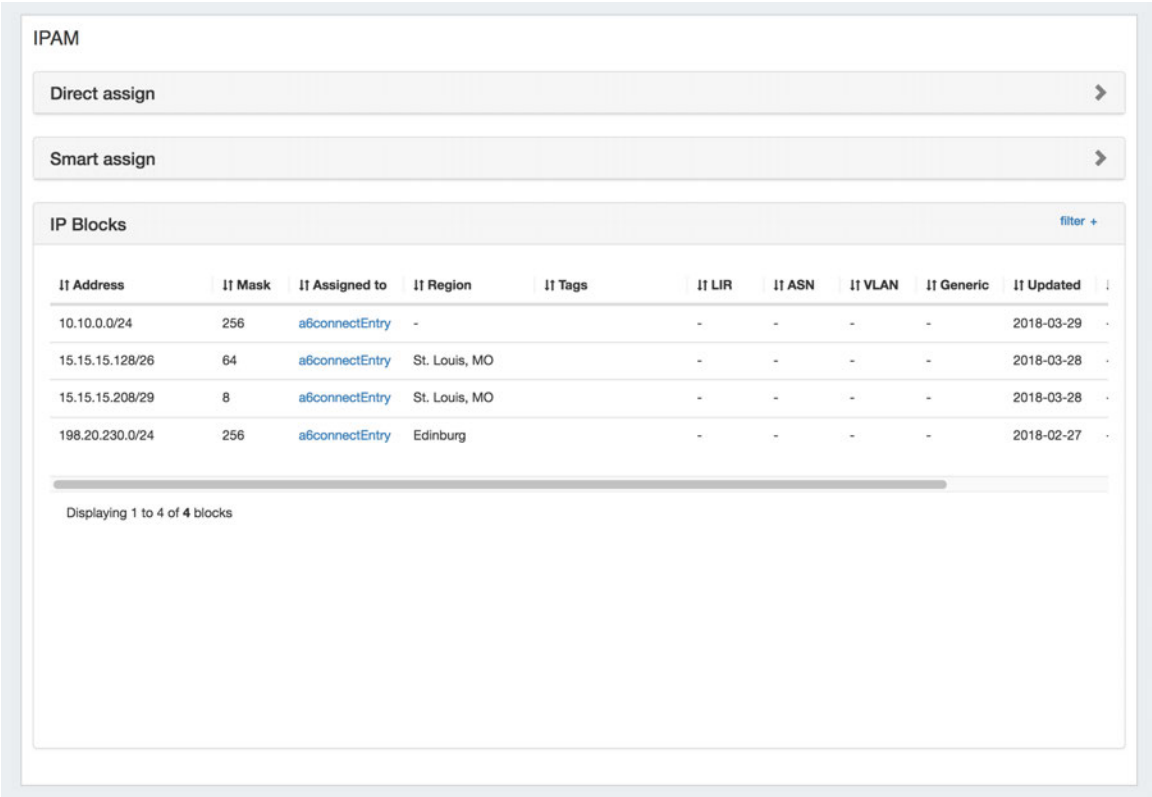
This gadget is used on the Resource Holder Section type. IPAM Gadget allows you to view, assign, and manage blocks for that resource.

For more information on assigning and managing blocks, see Working with IP Blocks - Assigning IP Space.




## IPAMv2

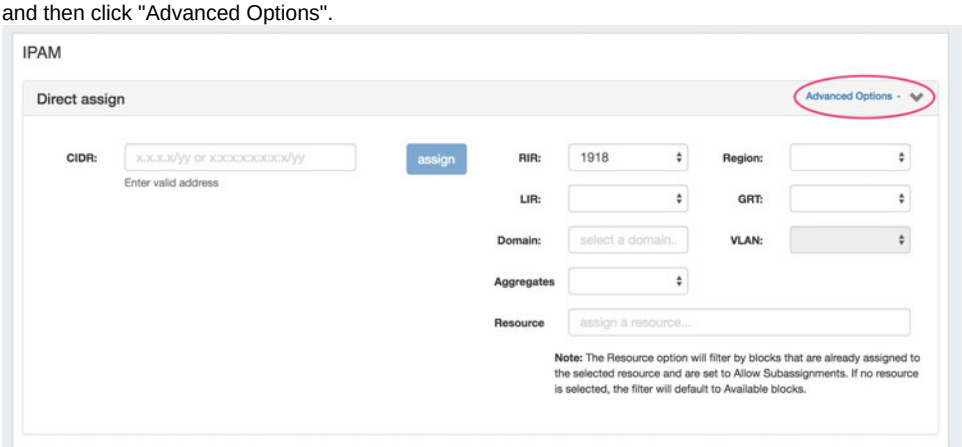
The IPAMv2 Gadget is used on the Resource Holder Section type, and allows you to view, assign, and manage blocks for that resource. As of ProVision 7.0.0, it replaces the previous IPAM Gadget.




It contains improvements over the original IPAM gadget, such as improved speed, pagination, advanced filters, sortable columns, reverse zone generation, customized column order/names, and custom data fields.

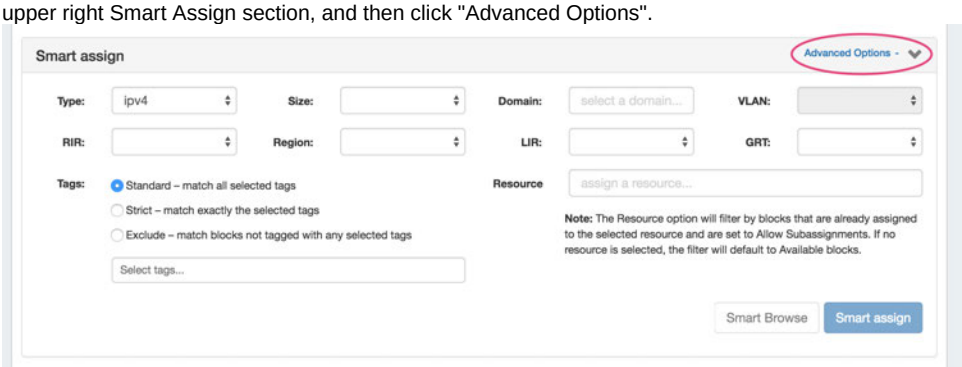
Using this gadget, you can:

- **Direct Assign** with or without additional filtering options. In cases where duplicate blocks exist, using the filter options with Direct Assign allows you to specifically control which of the dupilicate blocks is assigned.
    - To open the Direct Assign section of the Gadget and the advanced options, click the expansion caret in the upper right section, and then click "Advanced Options".

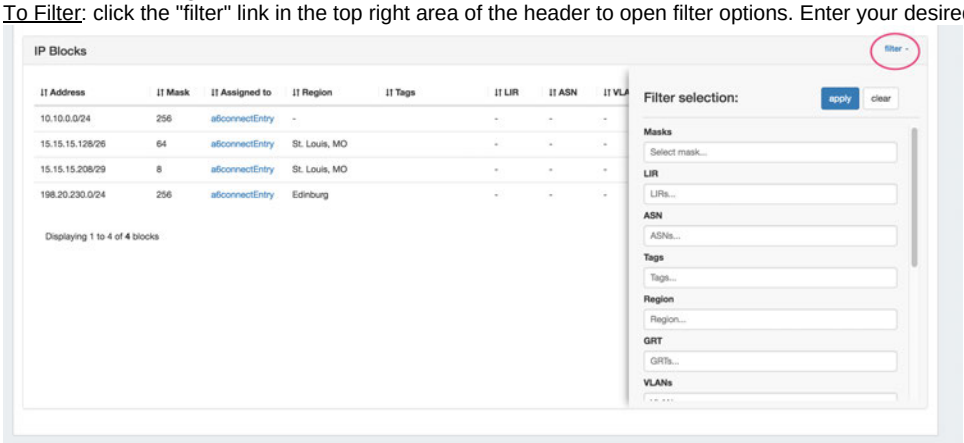



- **Smart Assign** with or without additional filtering options. Required fields for Smart assign are: "Type", "RIR", and "Size", but additional fields such as "Region", "VLAN", "LIR", "Resource" (for blocks that allow subassignments), and various "Tag" mode options.
- **Smart Browse** using smart assign filter options to bring up a browsable list of blocks meeting that critera, from which you may assign or assign out of.

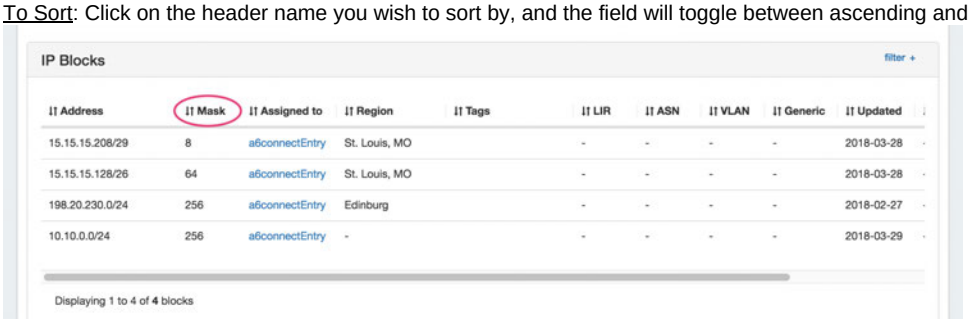
- To open the Smart Assign / Smart Browse section of the Gadget and the advanced options, click the expansion caret in the upper right Smart Assign section, and then click "Advanced Options".




- **View, Filter, and Sort Assigned Blocks** for the resource via the "IP Blocks" list.
  - To Filter: click the "filter" link in the top right area of the header to open filter options. Enter your desired criteria and hit "Apply".

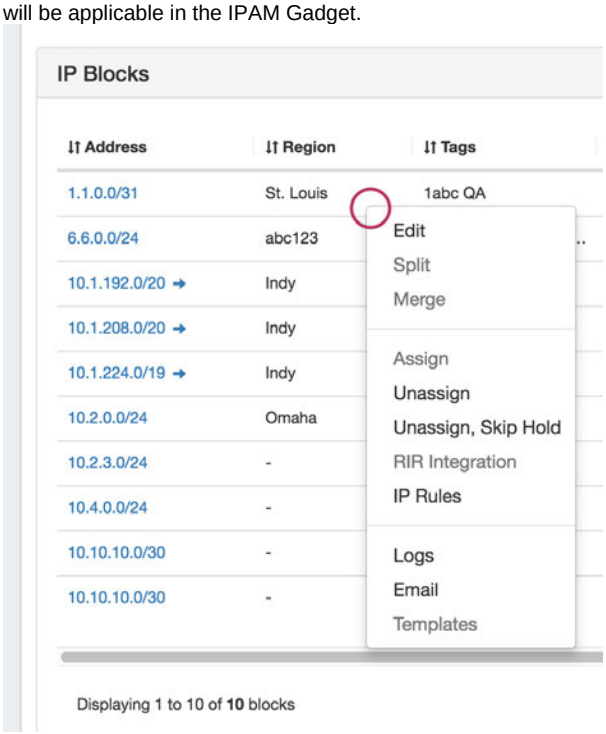



  - To Sort: Click on the header name you wish to sort by, and the field will toggle between ascending and descending order.

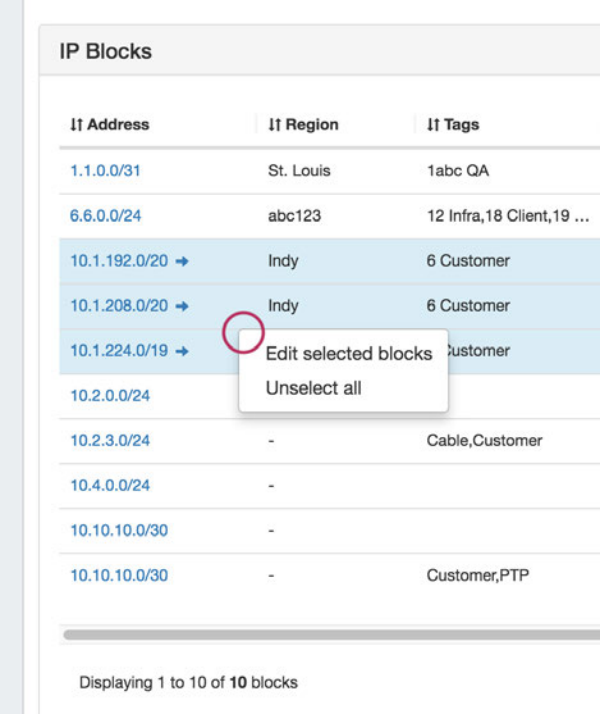



- **Manage Assigned Blocks** for the resource by going into the "IP Blocks" list, and using the Action Menu (Gear Icon) to perform actions for the selected block.

All options available in IPAM Manage for a block are also available in the IPAM Gadget Action menu, although the "Templates" option will be applicable in the IPAM Gadget.




- **Edit Multiple Blocks:** by shift-clicking or cmd-clicking to select multiple blocks, and then right click to show the multi-block Action options, then select "Edit". The Edit Block Attributes screen will display.

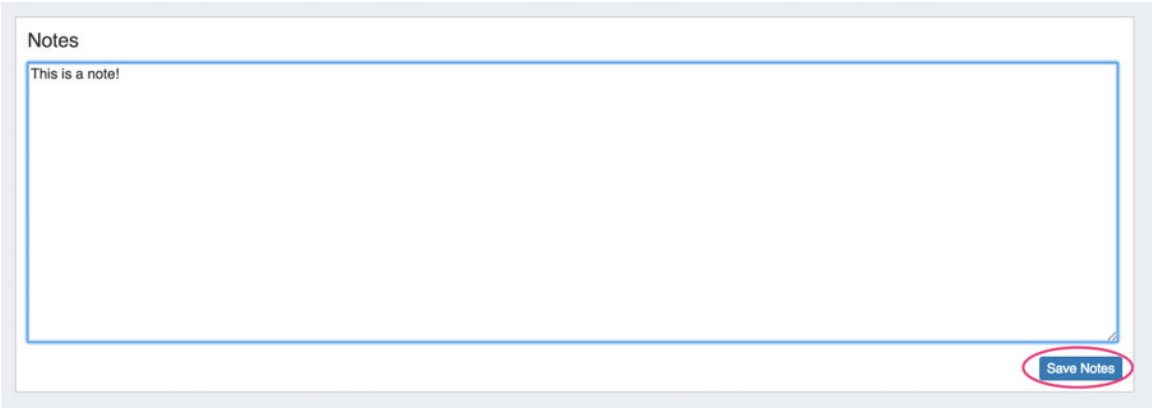



For more information on assigning and managing blocks, see Working with IP Blocks - Assigning IP Space.

## Notes

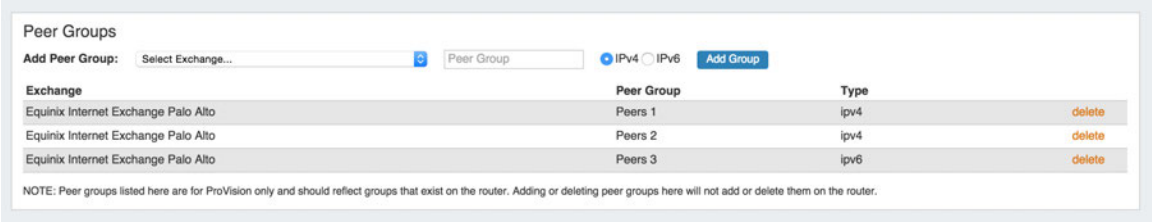
The Notes Gadget is a simple text area box, where you can save text notes relevant to the Resource.

To save a note, just click inside the note box, type the desired notes, and click the "Save Notes" button.



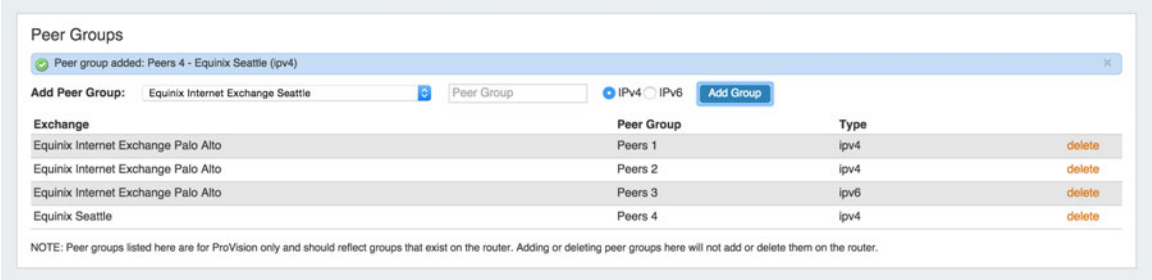

## Peer Groups

The Peer Group Gadget allows you to add peer groups for IPv4 and IPv6 for a selected exchange from a router's Resource Entry page.




To do this, simply select the exchange, type in a Peer Group name in the text box, select IPv4 or IPv6, the click "Add Group".

Peer Groups added from this gadget will be then be available to select in the "Add Session" dialog box in the **Peering** tab.




Note

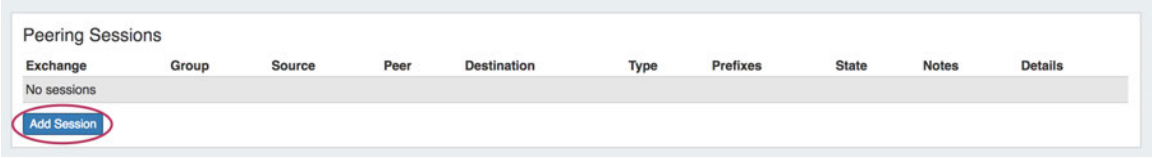
Peer groups listed in the Gadget are for ProVision only and should reflect groups that exist on the router.

Adding or deleting peer groups from the Gadget will not add or delete them on the router.

For additional information on Peering, see Peering v2.

## Peering Sessions

This Gadget is used on the Router Section type. From here, new sessions may be added by clicking on the "Add Session" button, then entering session information into the "Create New Session" page.



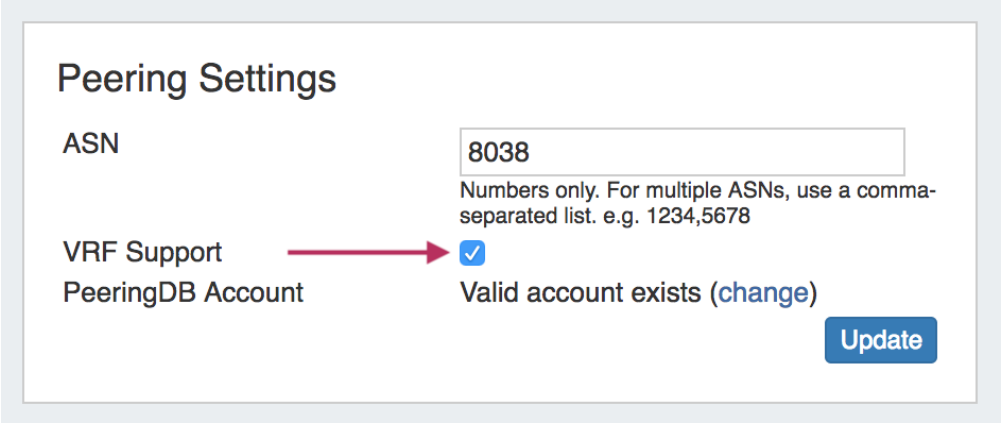
Existing sessions may be managed by clicking on the "View" link for the session, bringing up the Peering v2 session details page.

For additional information on Peering, see Peering v2.

## Peering VRFs

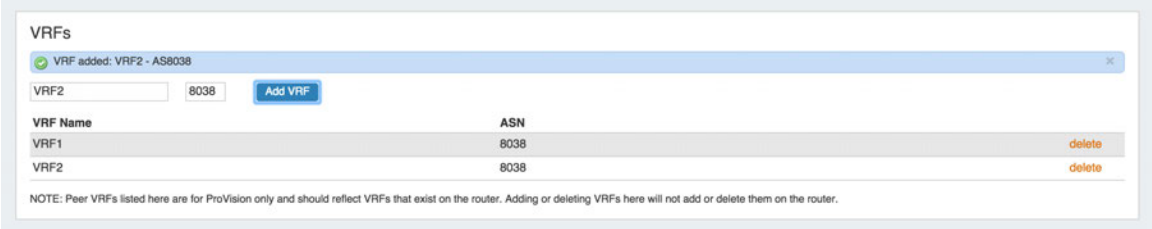
The Peering VRF Gadget allows you to add VRFs from a router's Resource Entry page.

Enabling "VRF Support" in the Admin home page under "Peering Settings" will automatically add the VRF gadget to the router Section.




The VRF gadget will then be accessible in a router's Resource Entry page.

To add a VRF, type the VRF name and ASN, then hit "Add VRF".




To delete a VRF, click on "delete" next to the VRF entry in the gadget.

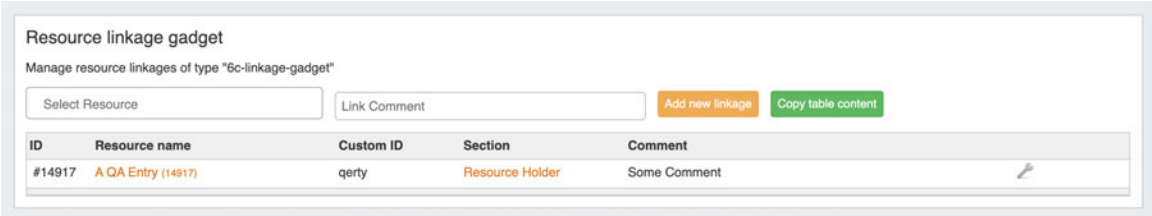
Once VRFs are set up for a router, the source ASNs for the associated VRFs will appear in the Source ASN dropdown when adding or editing a session for that router from the **Peering** tab.

Peering VRF currently only supports Cisco routers.

# Resource Linkage Gadget

The Resource Linkage Gadget allows you link a Resource to other Resources, and display the links in one place, without needing a hierarchy relationship.This gives you more flexibility to centralize data without requiring direct relationships. By default, all links created in the Resource Linkage Gadget are reciprocal.

The Resource Linkage Gadget also provides information to the Linked IPs Gadget - Resources linked here will have their IP Block information displayed in the Linked IPs Gadget.



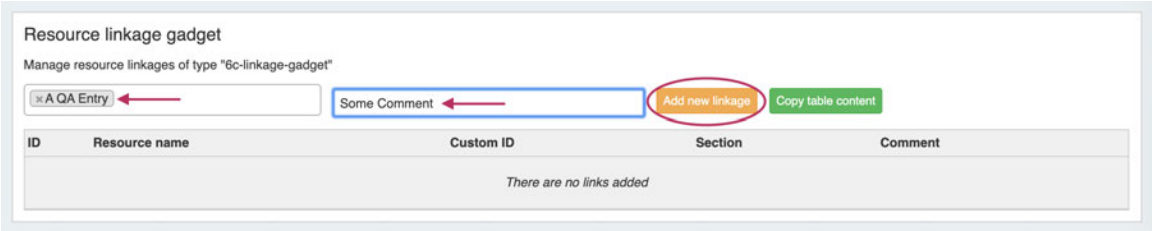

**Working with the Resource Linkage Gadget**

To use the Resource Linkage Gadget, first, ensure that "Resource Linkage" is enabled under "Manage Gadgets" for the Section type of the Resource being used.

At this step, an empty Resource Linkage Gadget is displayed on the Resource's Entry page.

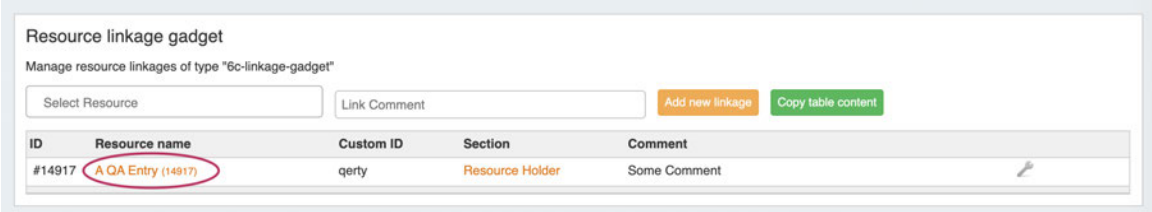
## Add a Resource Link

To add a new link, select the desired Resource to link, add a comment, then click "Add new linkage".




A reciprocal link will be created, and the linked Resource will show in the Resource list for the gadget.

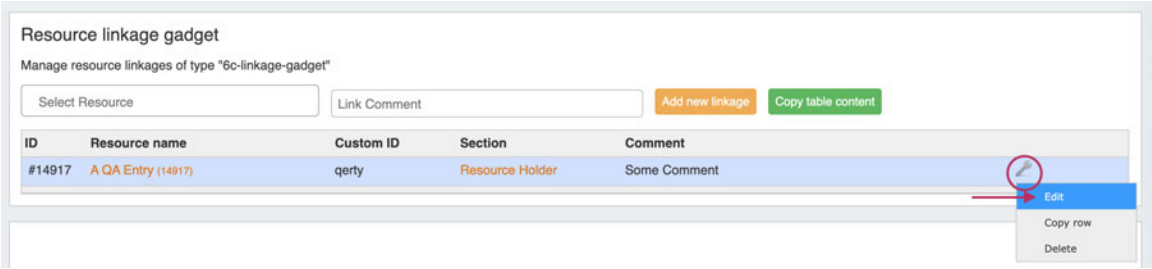
To follow the link, simply click on the resource name for the linked Resource.



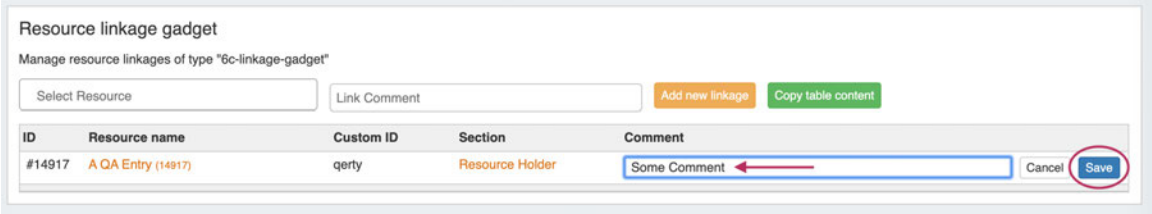

Once a resource link has been created, you may also edit the comment or delete the link.

## Edit a Resource Link

Editing a link allows for changes to be made to the associated comment - just click on the action menu (gear icon) for the link, then select "Edit".



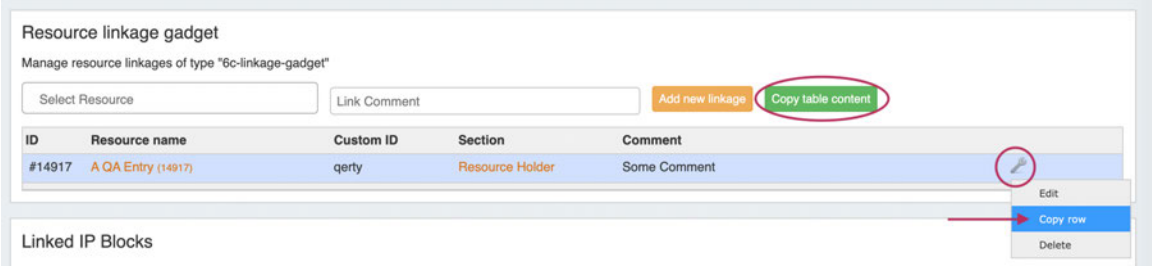

Type in the desired comment change, and click "Save" when complete. Or, you may exit out by clicking "Cancel".




## Copy a Link Data

You may copy either a single row of data, or the entire table, to the clipboard to paste into another application.

To copy the entire table, click "Copy table content" at the top of the gadget. To copy only a single row, open the action menu (wrench icon) for the row, and select "Copy row".

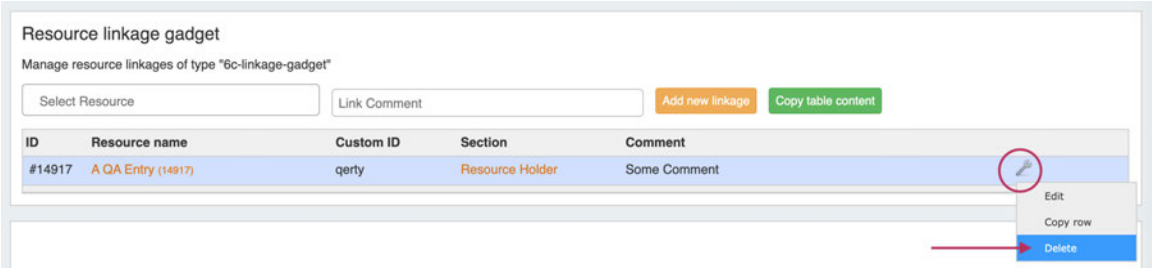



Then paste the data into the desired application.

## Delete a Resource Link

To delete a Resource Link, click the "Delete" button for the desired link in the list, and confirm the delete in the message that appears.

Deleting a resource link also deletes the reciprocal link from the other resource's page.




# Resource Linkage - Linked IPs Gadget

The Linked IPs Gadget lists IP blocks assigned to Resources linked under the Resource Linkage Gadget, with a link to the resource holder.

Block information may be refreshed by clicking the "Reload" button to check for changes.

Linked IP Blocks

Reload

| Resource | Address | Hosts | Region | Notes | Tags | Assigned | Updated |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3M | 10.2.1.0/24 | 256 | | | | 2018-12-14 | 2018-12-14 |
| 3M | 10.2.2.0/24 | 256 | | | | 2018-12-14 | 2018-12-14 |
| 3M | 10.2.3.0/24 | 256 | | Internal space | | 2018-12-13 | 2018-12-13 |
| 3M | 10.2.4.0/22 | 1024 | | | | 2018-12-14 | 2018-12-14 |
| 3M | 10.2.8.0/21 | 2048 | | | | 2018-12-14 | 2018-12-14 |
| 3M | 10.2.16.0/20 | 4096 | | | | 2018-12-14 | 2018-12-14 |
| 3M | 10.2.32.0/19 | 8192 | | | | 2018-12-14 | 2018-12-14 |
| 3M | 10.2.64.0/18 | 16384 | | | | 2018-12-14 | 2018-12-14 |
| 3M | 10.2.128.0/17 | 32768 | | | | 2018-12-14 | 2018-12-14 |
| 3M | 10.3.0.0/16 | 65536 | | | | 2018-12-14 | 2018-12-14 |

Pages: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

## Resource View

This Gadget is used on the Resource Holder Section type. The Resource view displays and provides links for the Section and Category for the Resource.

Some Customer (1234)

Section: Resource Holder
Category: Customer

## Reverse API Console

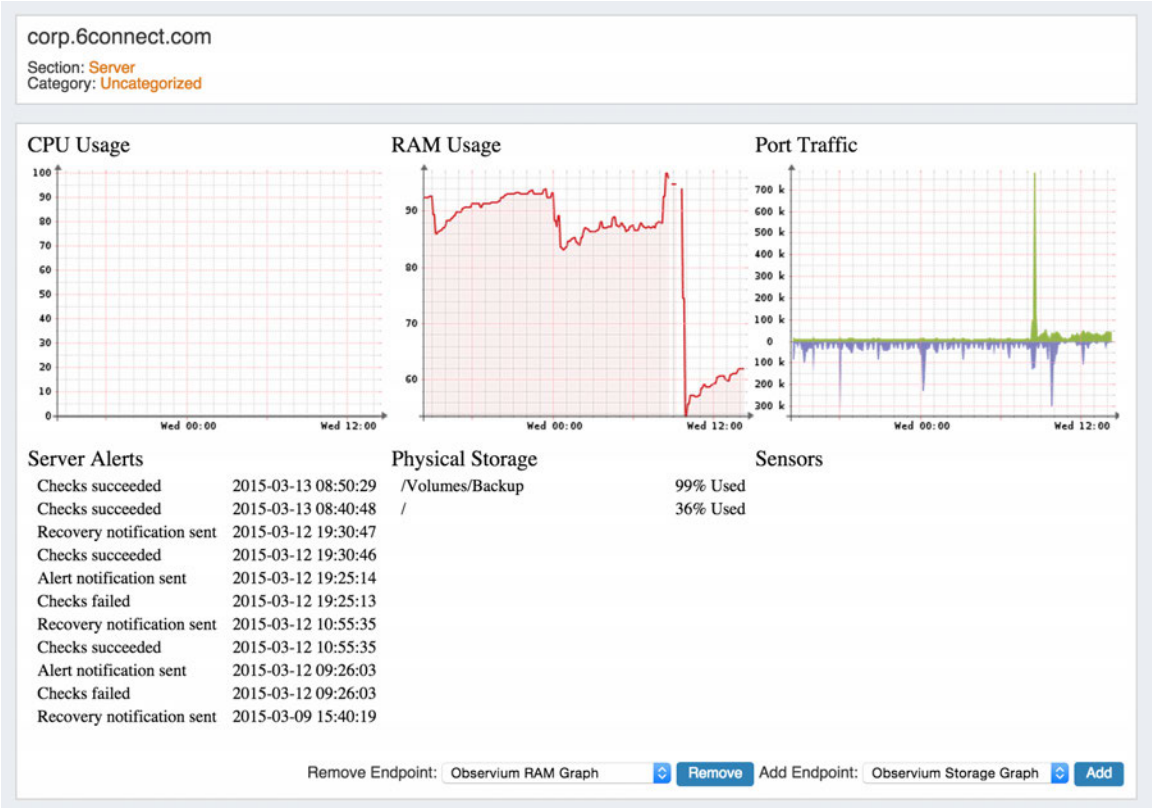
The Reverse API Console Gadget allows you to add endpoints from a Resource Entry page, and view customizable javascript displays set for the selected endpoint. The Reverse API Console may be added to any type of Section / Resource, and must be enabled for a Resource for certain rAPI processes to successfully complete.

After adding the gadget to a section, the Reverse API console will appear as whitespace with the option to add an endpoint display. Endpoints must already be created via rAPI or through the Admin Reverse API interface in ProVision to be selectable via the gadget.

Add Endpoint: TestPoint2 Add

Selecting an Endpoint and clicking "Add" will allow the javascript display code (added via rAPI or the Admin Reverse API interface) associated with that endpoint to display on the Resource Entry page.

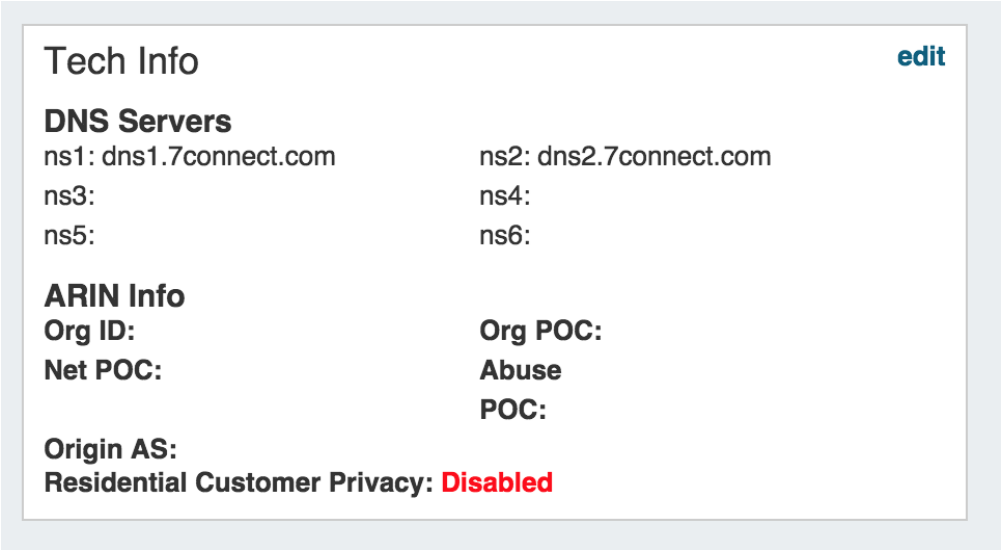
An example display might be integrating Observium to display server status modules and alerts for Resources with the "Server" Section:




As a completely customizable area, displays can be designed to meet individual Resource needs - create charts, alerts, command buttons, or any other type of data that you wish to view.

## Tech Info

This visual element is used on the Resource Holder Section type. This Gadget allows you to list DNS servers, ARIN information, and enable /disable customer privacy.




# Creating your own Gadgets

6connect provides XML specifications for users interested in creating their own gadgets for ProVision. See the XML Specifications section linked below for more information.

User created gadgets are not supported at this time and the specification below could change without notice. If you want to make your own gadget, please get in touch so we can help you

- XML Specifications

## Additional Information

Continue on to the following pages for additional information on Resources in Provision:

- Contact Manager

# XML Specifications

# XML Specifications

THIS IS AN EXPERIMENTAL FEATURE

User created gadgets are not supported at this time and the specification below could change without notice. If you want to make your own gadget, please get in touch so we can help you.


- XML Specifications
  - XML Specification
    - Implemented Tags
    - Example
    - Fields


## XML Specification

The XML gadget specification is based on the Atlassian Gadgets.

### Implemented Tags

The implemented tags and corresponding attributes are:

- ModulePrefs

  Description
  - title
  - width - "full" or "half" are the only options for now
- ContentSources
  - type - "file" uses the file given in src, "html" uses the content in the tag (eg. <Content type="html">This is the content</Content>)
  - src - relative filename or url
- Source
  Fields
  - type - "css" or "javascript"
  - src - relative filename or url
- Field
  - slug

### Example

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
<Module>
    <ModulePrefs title="Contact Info" width="half" />
    <Description>This gadget adds a field editor for fields related to contact info (phone, address, ect).<
/Description>
    <Content type="file" src="template.html" />
    <Sources>
       <Source type="javascript" src="script.js" />
    </Sources>
    <Fields>
       <Field slug="6c-resourceholder-phone-main" />
       <Field slug="6c-resourceholder-phone-fax" />
    </Fields>
</Module>
```

### Fields

If a gadget uses fields, you can optionally add the slug of the field in this section to hide it from the main field list.

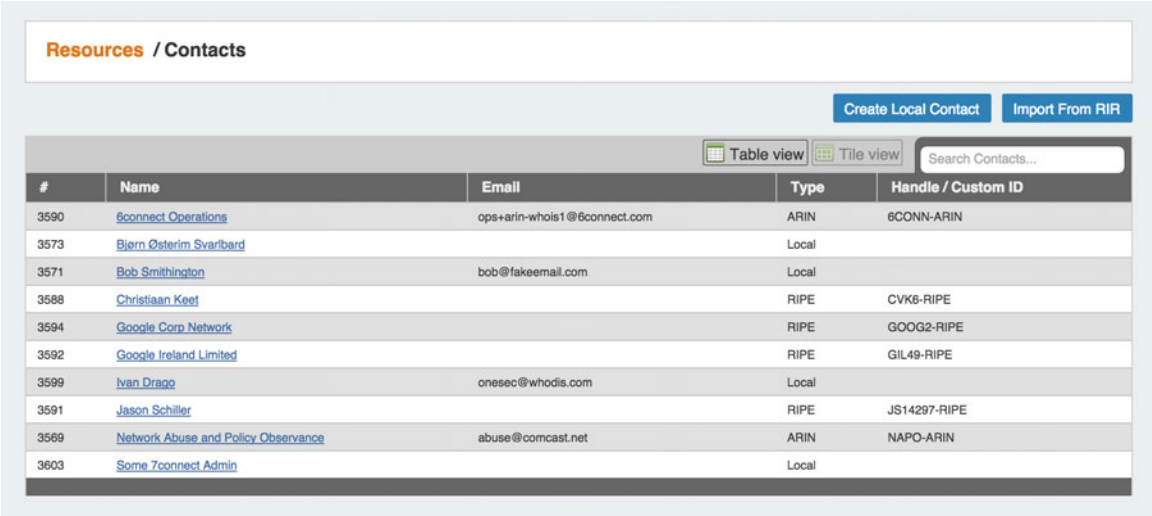
This can be very useful and make your Resource Sections easier to work with. If the fields are not hidden, this can lead to long lists of redundant data in multiple places and can cause confusion. However, all viewing and editing of the field will have to be done through the

gadget. If your gadget uses a field in a read-only manner, then you should **not** add it to the gadget's manifest because that would prevent users from editing the field data through the standard edit page.

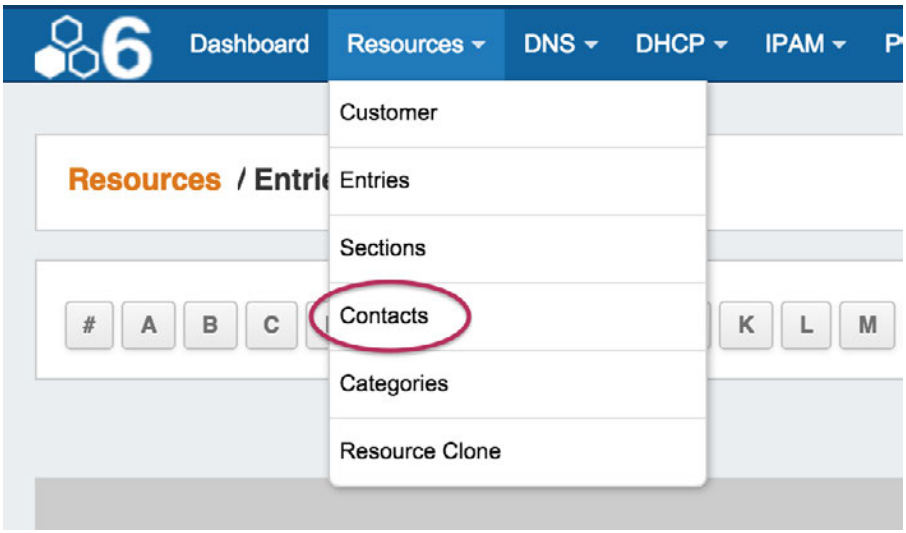
# Contact Manager

# Contact Manager

The Contact Manager lists and imports contacts into ProVision. You can create new contacts manually, or import contacts from RIR. Contacts may then be assigned to ProVision resources through the Contacts Gadget.




The Contact Manager is accessed from the Resource tab dropdown menu, under "Contacts"





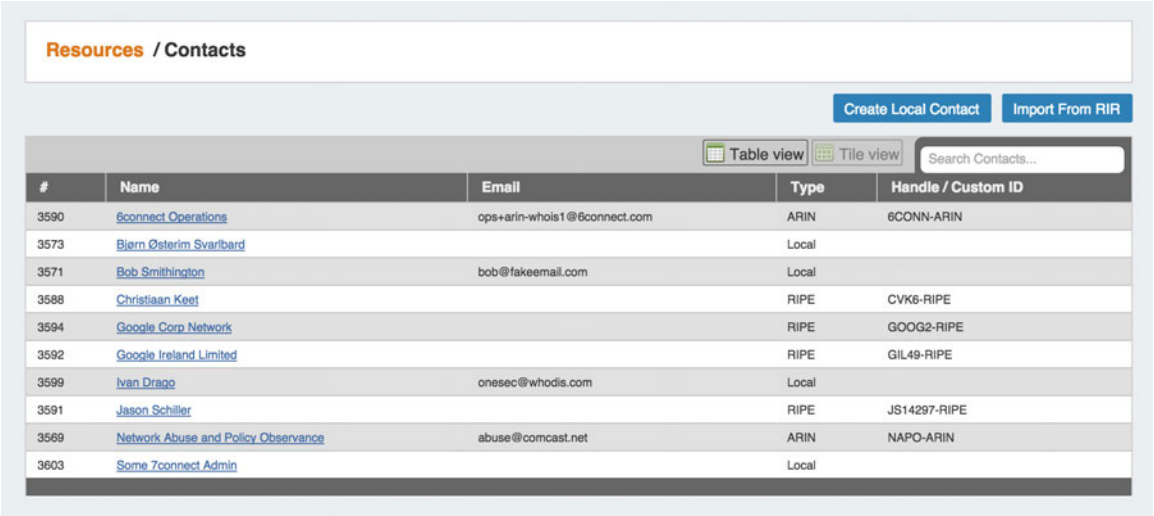
- Contact Manager
  - UI Overview
    - Table View
    - Tile View
    - View Contact Details
  - Create New Contact
  - Import Contact from RIR
    - 1) Select RIR / Type
    - 2) Enter Point of Contact Handle
    - 3) Verify and Add
  - Edit or Delete Contact
- Working with the Contacts Gadget
  - Assigning a Contact to a Resource

    - Assign the Contact
    - Create a Contact Role
    - Assign a Role to a Contact
    - Delete a Role from the Roles List
- Unassign a Contact
- View the Contact Details Page


# UI Overview

## Table View

Table View  shows contacts in list form, their ID number, email, contact type, and their handle /custom ID. If the contact was manually created through the "Create New Contact" button, it will show as type "Local", whereas a contact imported from RIR will show of type "RIPE" or "ARIN".




| # | Name | Email | Type | Handle / Custom ID |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3590 | 6connect Operations | ops+arin-whois1@6connect.com | ARIN | 6CONN-ARIN |
| 3573 | Bjørn Østerim Svarlbard | | Local | |
| 3571 | Bob Smithington | bob@fakeemail.com | Local | |
| 3588 | Christiaan Keet | | RIPE | CVK6-RIPE |
| 3594 | Google Corp Network | | RIPE | GOOG2-RIPE |
| 3592 | Google Ireland Limited | | RIPE | GIL49-RIPE |
| 3599 | Ivan Drago | onesec@whodis.com | Local | |
| 3591 | Jason Schiller | | RIPE | JS14297-RIPE |
| 3569 | Network Abuse and Policy Observance | abuse@comcast.net | ARIN | NAPO-ARIN |
| 3603 | Some 7connect Admin | | Local | |

## Tile View

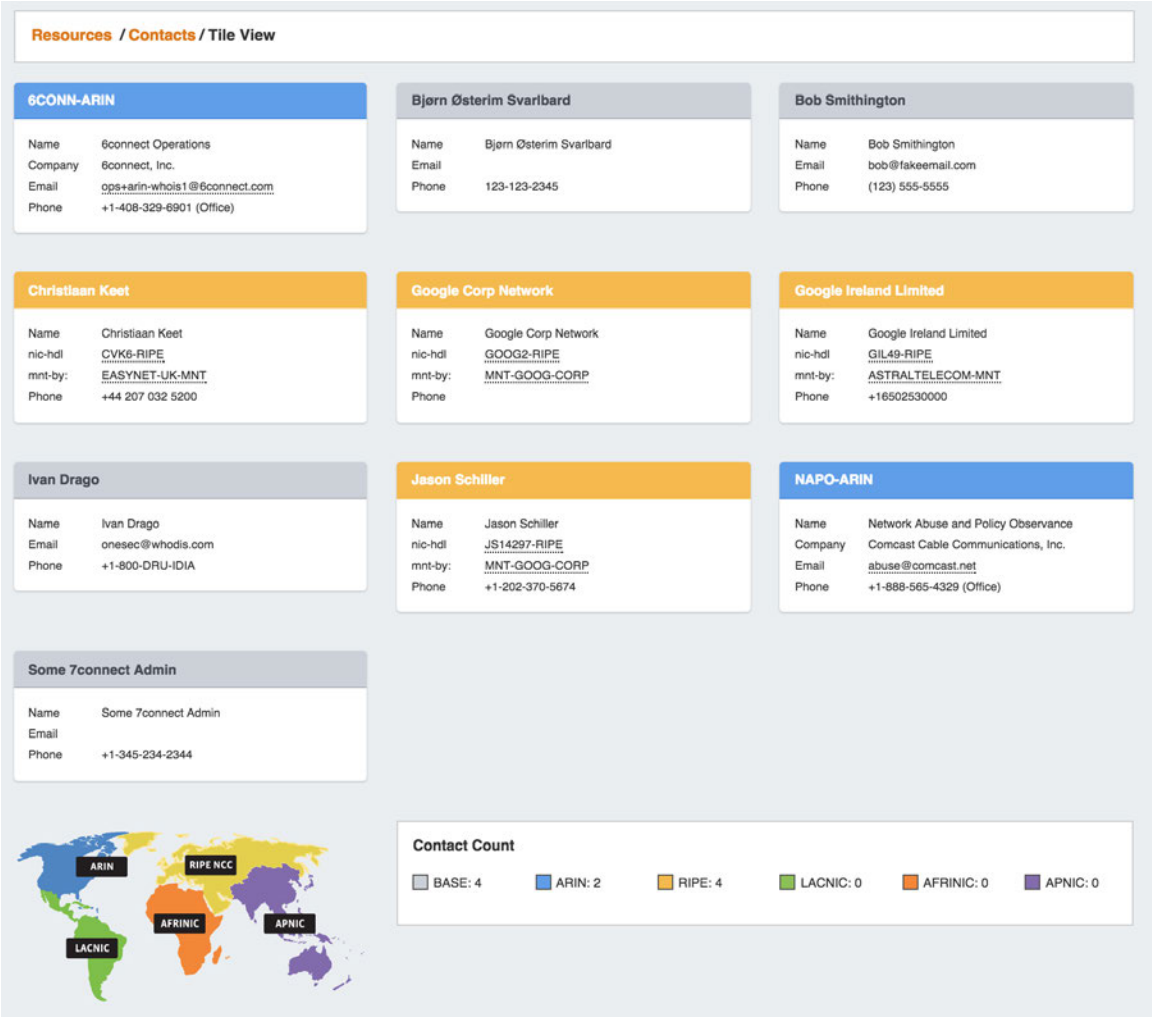
Tile view allows you to see all current contacts as a snapshot of basic information, based on contact type:

**Base Contacts:** Shows Contact Name, Email, and Phone

**ARIN Contacts:** Shows Contact Name, Company, Email, and Phone (if provided in ARIN)

**RIPE Contacts:** Shows Contact Name, nic-handle, maintained by, and phone (if provided in RIPE).

Clicking on the contact name on the header of the tile takes you to the contact's detail information page.



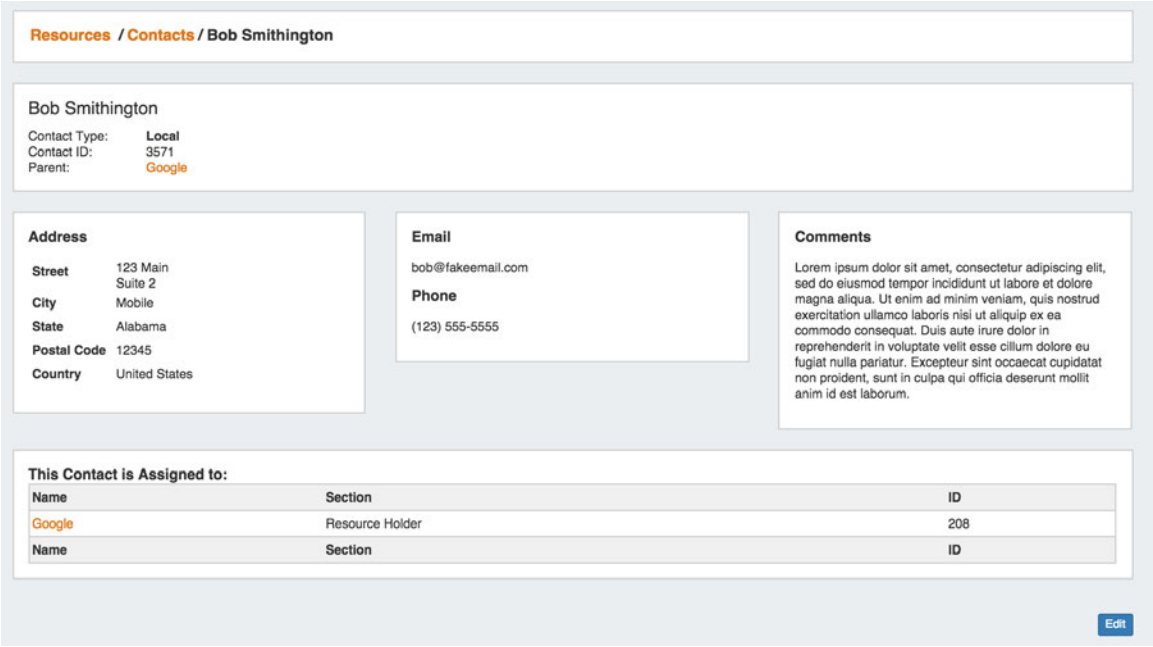

At the bottom of the Tile View page, counts of current contacts by RIR as well as an image map are provided. At this time, only Base (Local), ARIN, and RIPE contacts are supported.

## View Contact Details

To view the contact details, click on the contact's name in either list or tile view. You will be taken to the contact details page.

A Local contact created in ProVision will have modules shown for Address, Email/Phone, and Comments, as well as a list of any resources that contact is assigned to via the Contacts gadget.

You may edit or delete a Local contact by clicking the "Edit" button at the bottom of the page.

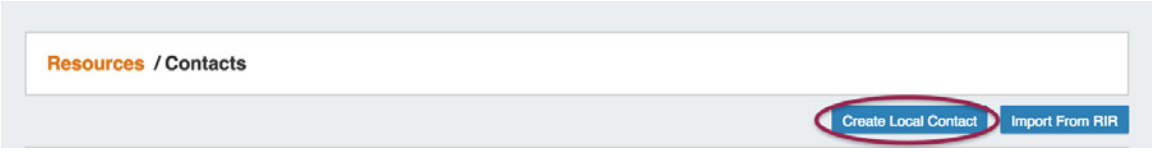



A contact imported from a RIR will have its details shown as determined by the imported RIR module - this data is not editable in ProVision.

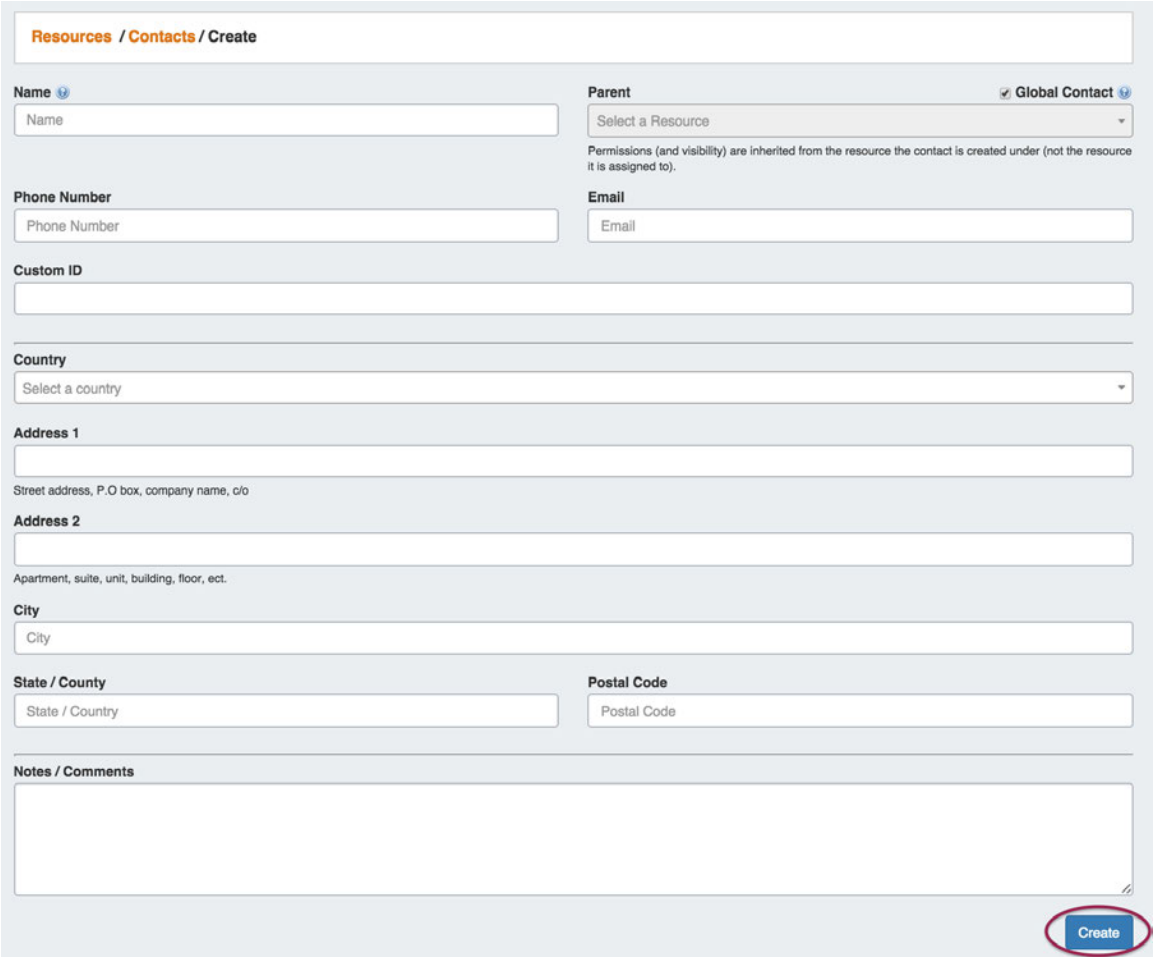
You may delete the contact by clicking the "Delete" button at the bottom of the page.

## Create New Contact

You can manually create a new contact in ProVision by clicking on "Create Local Contact" under the contacts page.




Fill in the contact's information for Name, Parent Resource (if desired), Phone, Custom ID, Email, Address, and Comments if desired.



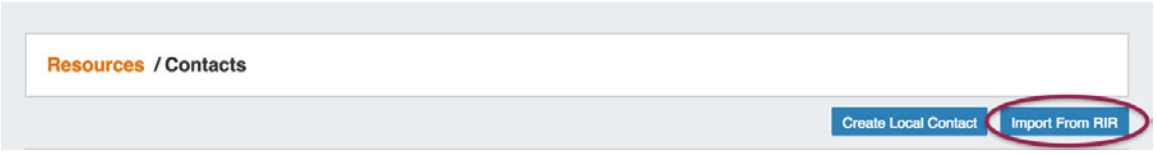

When done filling out the information fields, hit the "Create" button to save your contact.

Parent

The parent field relates the contact to a resource's permissions structure, only allowing users with permissions for that resource to view and assign the affiliated contact(s). To allow the contact to be viewed globally in ProVision, check the "Global Contact" box above the Parent Field.

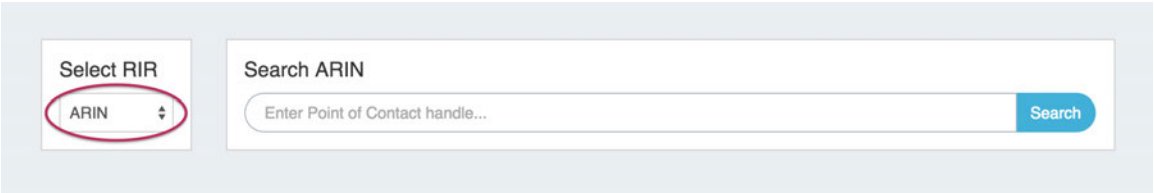
# Import Contact from RIR

To import a contact from ARIN or RIPE, click the "Import from RIR" button from the contacts page.

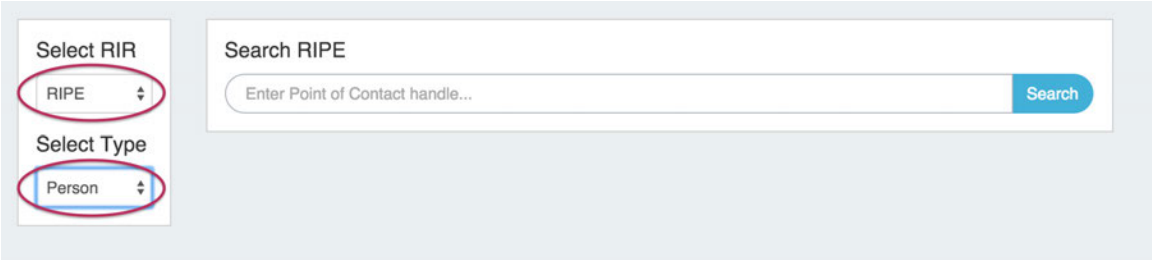



## 1) Select RIR / Type

Once on the the Import from RIR page, on the left hand side of the page select the RIR from which you wish to import - ARIN or RIPE.



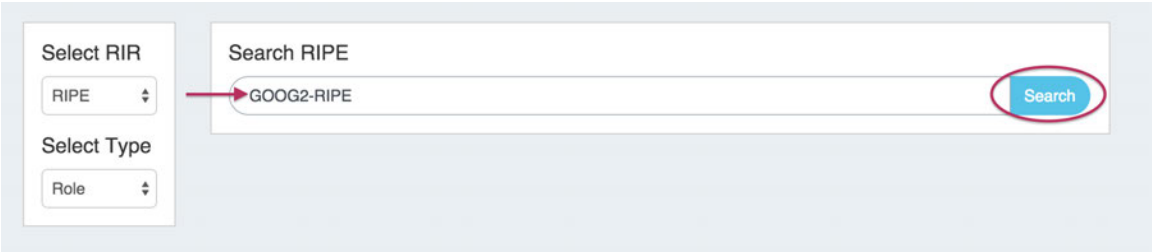
If you select RIPE, you will also be prompted to choose whether you are importing a "Person" or "Role".




## 2) Enter Point of Contact Handle

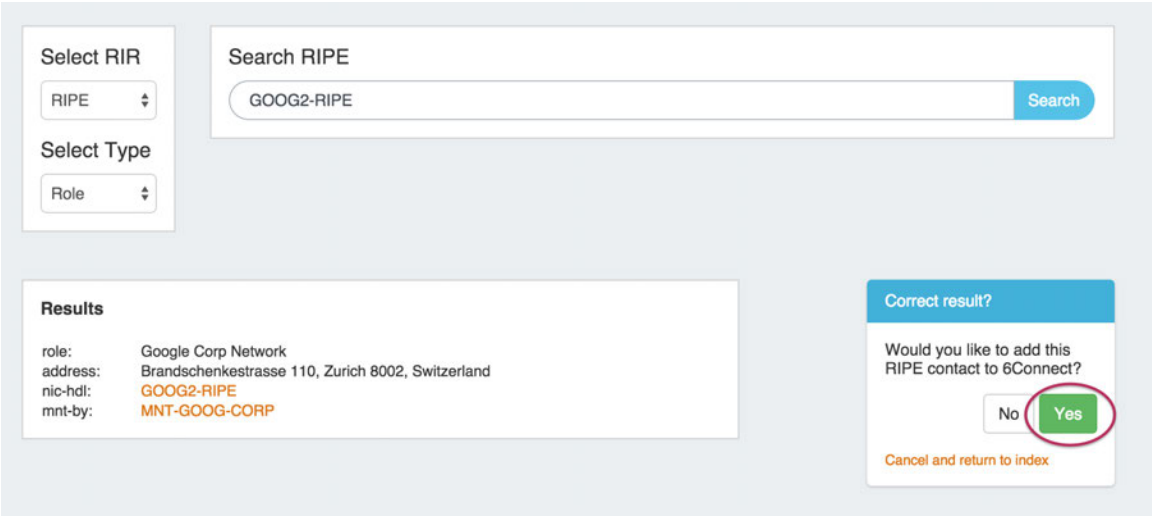
After selecting the RIR / Type (if applicable), enter the ARIN or RIPE Point of Contact Handle for the contact you are importing, then click "Search".

Point of Contact Handle is the only search term that is valid. Attempting to search by name or keyword is not valid, and will return an error.



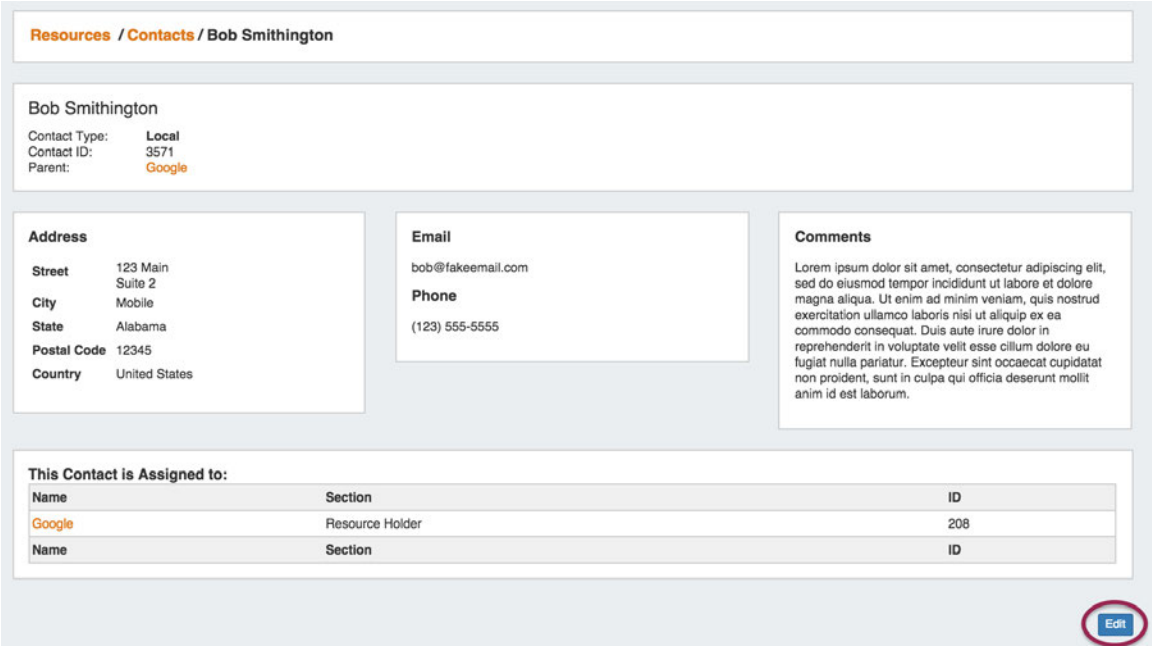

## 3) Verify and Add

If the search is successful, the found contact information will display at the bottom of the screen. If this is the information you wish to add into ProVision, click the "Yes" button on the right hand side of the page under "Would you like to add this RIPE contact to 6connect?". Otherwise, you may hit "No" to decline adding, or cancel and return to the index.

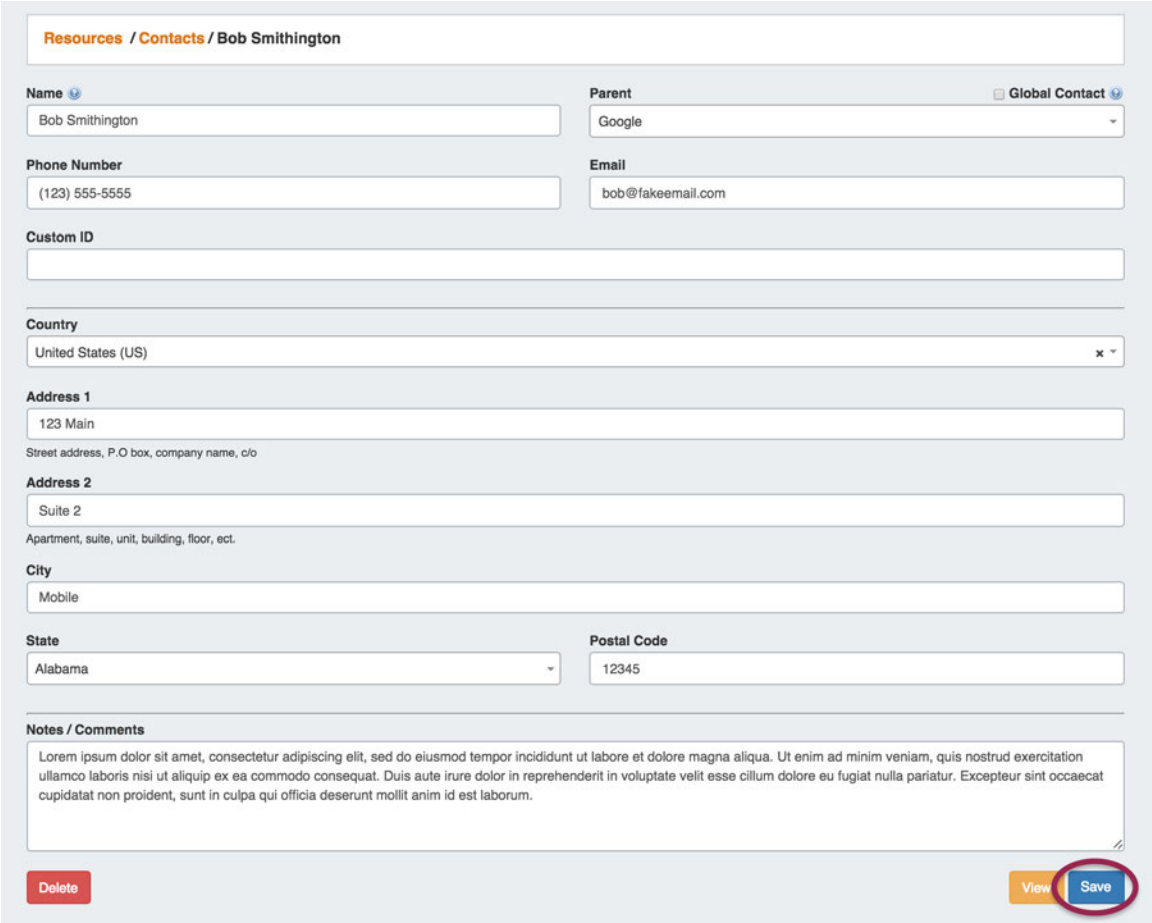



# Edit or Delete Contact

To Edit or Delete a base contact, click on the contact's name in the contact list to go to its detail view page. From there, click "Edit".




This will take you to the detail information page, where you may edit fields as desired. When done editing, hit "Save" to save your changes, or "View" to cancel without saving and view the contacts list.




To delete the contact, click the "Delete" button while in the contact details page.

# Working with the Contacts Gadget

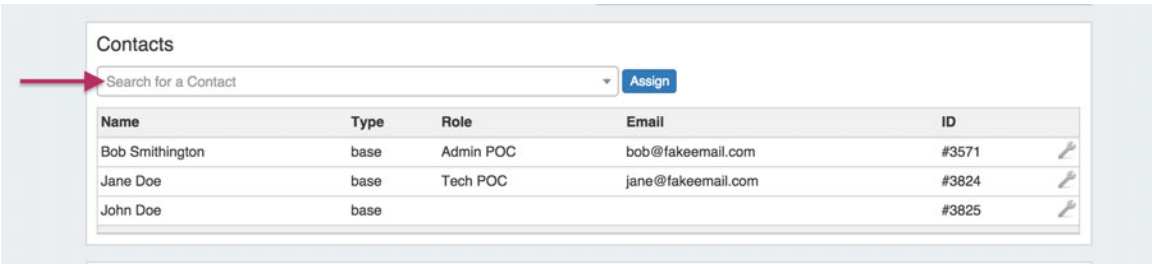
## Assigning a Contact to a Resource

Contacts may be assigned to a resource through the Contacts gadget. To add a gadget to a Resource's Entry page, see Customizing Sections and Gadgets.

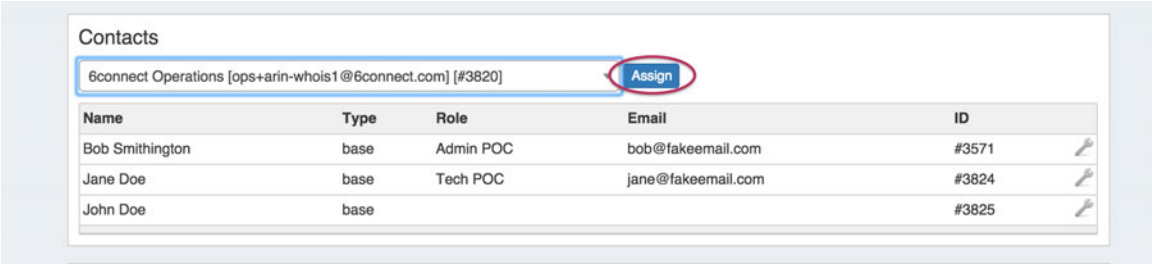
Once the Contacts gadget has been added to the desired Section, go to the Resource Entry page for the Resource you wish to assign the contact to, and navigate to the Contacts gadget.

### Assign the Contact

In the Contact Gadget, search for a contact by typing the first few letters of the contact name in the search box, then click on the desired contact.



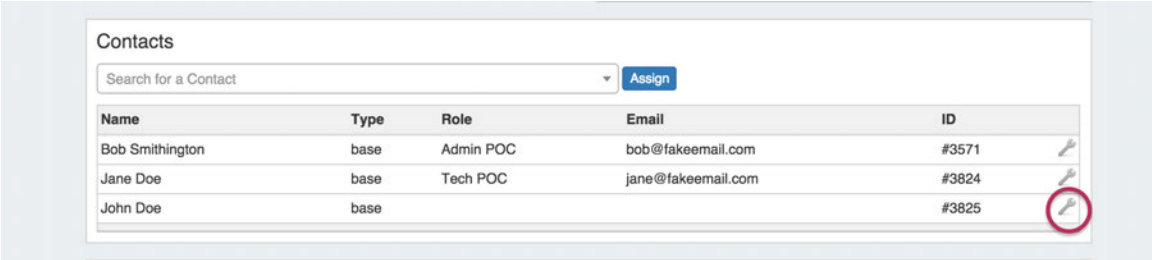

Then hit "Assign".



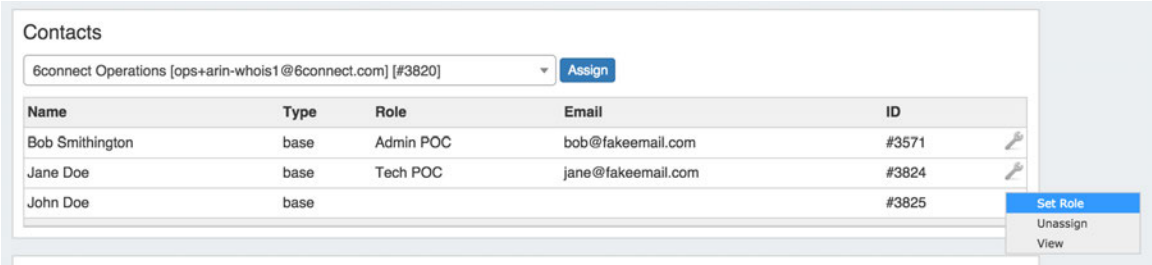

The Contact will show in the list below.

### Create a Contact Role

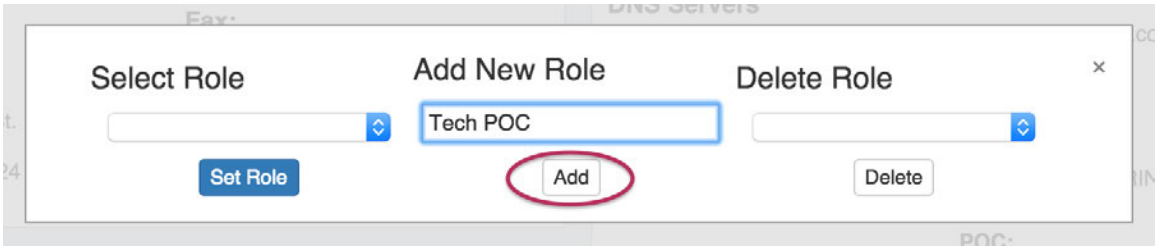
Once a contact has been assigned, you can create and set a role for the contact by clicking on the Action Menu (wrench icon).




Select "Set Role"

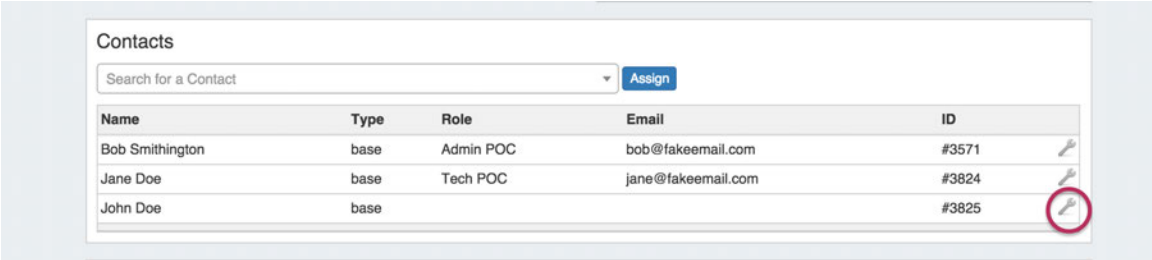



Under the "Add New Role" section, type in the desired tole name and click the "Add" button.

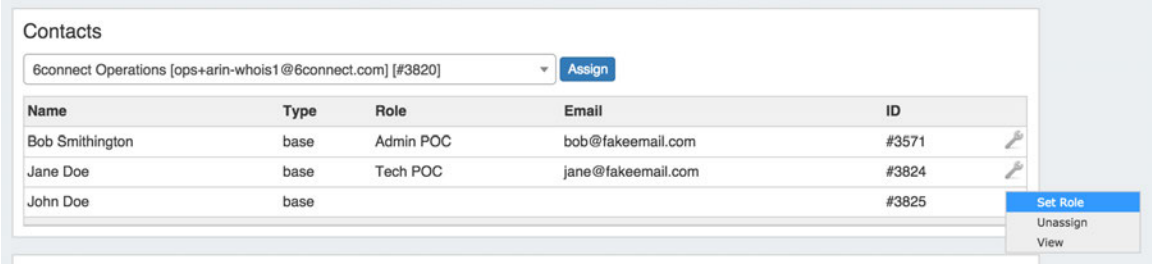



## Assign a Role to a Contact

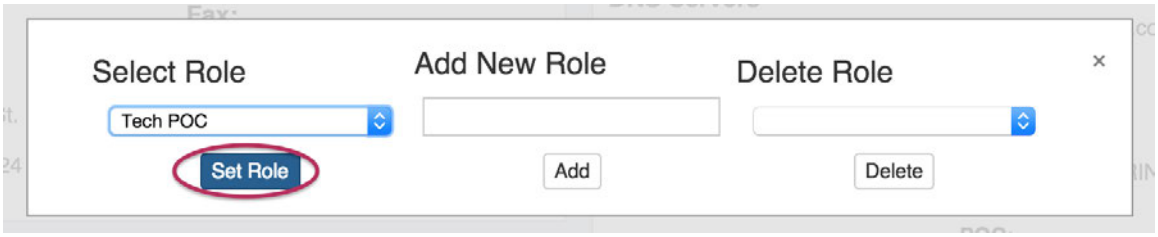
Once a contact has been assigned, you can set a role for the contact by clicking on the Action Menu (wrench icon).




Select "Set Role"

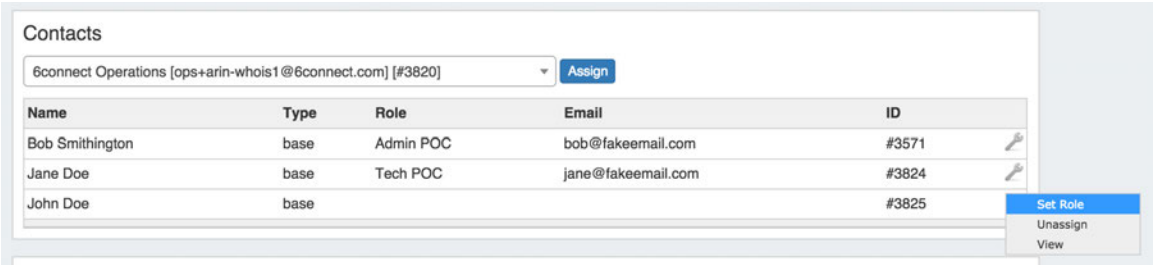



Under the "Select Role" section, choose the desired Role from the dropdown list, and click the "Set Role" button.

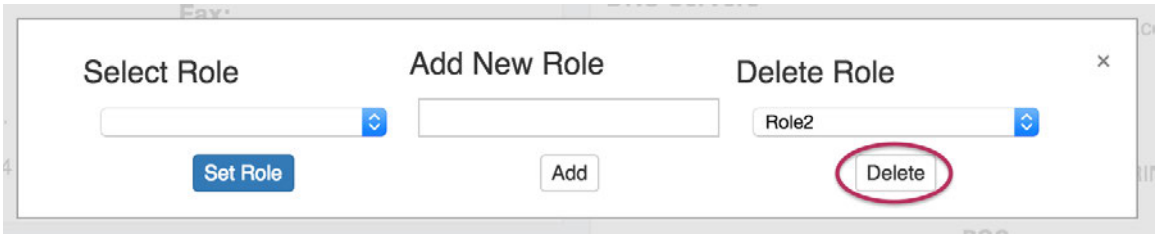



## Delete a Role from the Roles List

Select "Set Role"



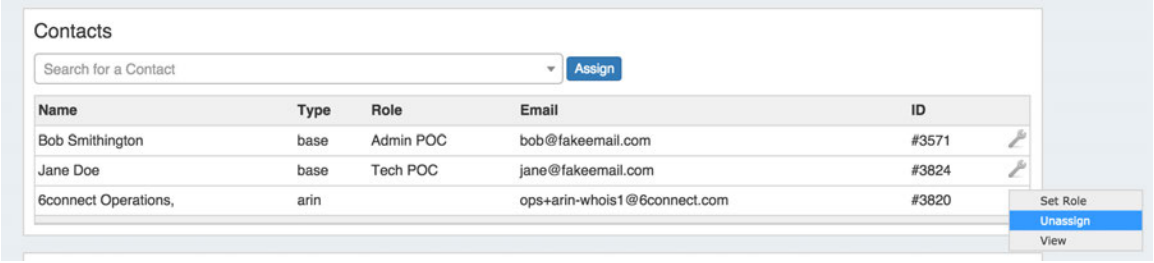

Under the "Delete Role" section, choose the desired Role from the dropdown list, and click the "Delete" button.




This removes the role from the "Select Role" list.

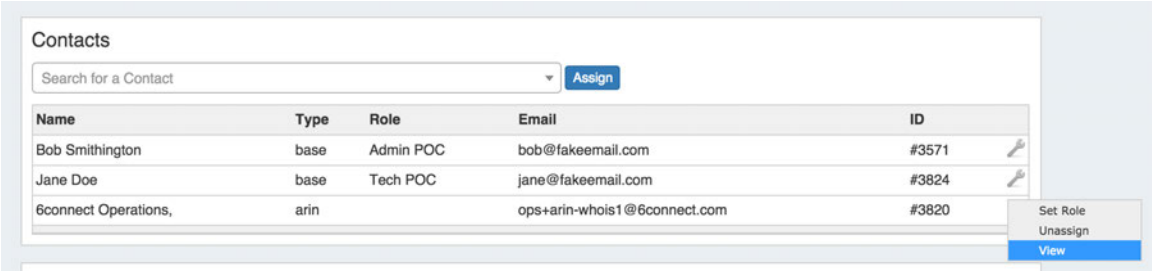
## Unassign a Contact

To unassign a contact from a resource, in the Contacts gadget click the Action Menu, then select "Unassign".




## View the Contact Details Page

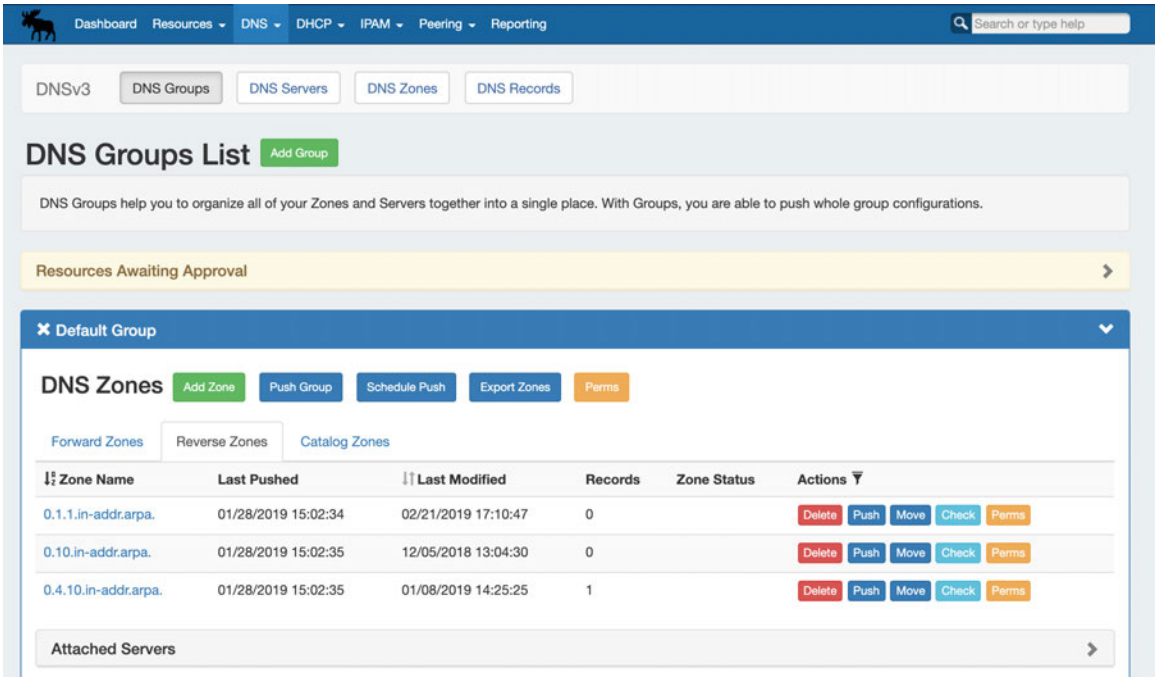
To view the contact's details, click the Action Menu, then select "View". You will be redirected to the contact's detail page.


Contacts
Search for a Contact
Assign
Name
Type
Role
Email
ID
Bob Smithington
base
Admin POC
bob@fakeemail.com
#3571
Jane Doe
base
Tech POC
jane@fakeemail.com
#3824
6connect Operations,
arin
ops+arin-whois1@6connect.com
#3820
Set Role
Unassign
View

# DNS Tab

# DNSv3

ProVision's DNSv3 combines server management, group organization, and zone management under the **DNS** tab.




The **DNS** tab contains four sub-tabs: **DNS Groups, DNS Servers, DNS Zones, and DNS Records**.

The **DNS Groups** tab is where DNS Groups, zones, ACL's, and default SOA values are managed. The **DNS** tab **Groups List** allows you to create, view, and manage groups of DNS Servers and Zones. Using groups, you can configure and push selected combinations of zones at one time.

The **DNS Servers** tab is only accessible to Admin users, and contains functions for adding, updating, and managing DNS servers as well as scheduling server tasks. For Admin-level DNS tasks, see DNS Administration and Working with DNS Servers.

The **DNS Zones** tab lists all the zones in ProVision able to be viewed by the user, in the same format as on the **DNS Groups** page, but without the Group organization. The Zone List allows you to view, add, delete, and push individual DNS Zones.

The **DNS Records** tab list all records in ProVision, in a filterable list to expedite search, editing, and managing records. New records may also be added from this page.


- DNSv3
  - DNSv3 Overview
    - DNS Permissions
      - Permission Shortcut Button ("Perms")
    - DNS Approvals
  - DNSv3 Workflow
  - Additional Information


# DNSv3 Overview

DNSv3 organizes ProVision's DNS system into a more unified and accessible interface, combining both admin and non-admin DNS tasks together under the **DNS** tab.

In DNSv3, zones are gathered under DNS Groups, servers are attached to those Groups, and Nameservers, Default SOA values, and ACLs are managed at a per-Group level. Users can then view and manage Groups, individual zones, default SOA values, ACLs, attach servers, and perform pushes all on the same page.

## DNS Permissions

DNSv3 incorporates DNS zones and Groups into ProVision's Resource System. Zones and Groups are Resources just like Customers, Servers, Routers, or Contacts (See The Resource System for a more detailed explanation of Resources in ProVision).

This allows for DNS zones and Group permissions to be managed similarly to other ProVision resources, where users with Resource permissions (Create / Read / Update / Delete) on the parent resource of the DNS Group can create groups and zones, manage those groups and zones, push (if a server is attached), and delete.

A user with full Resource permissions on a DNS Server, as well as the parent resource of a Group, may view and attach that server to a Group.

Users with Admin permissions can access the **DNS Servers** area under the **DNS** tab manage DNS server creation, edits, and deletion.

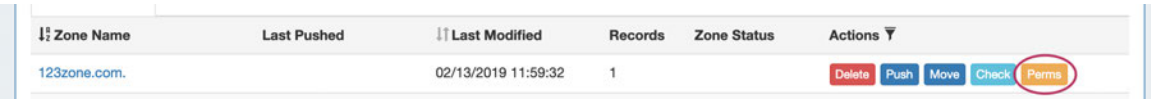
For more information on setting up permissions groups in ProVision, see Users & Permissions.

### Permission Shortcut Button ("Perms")

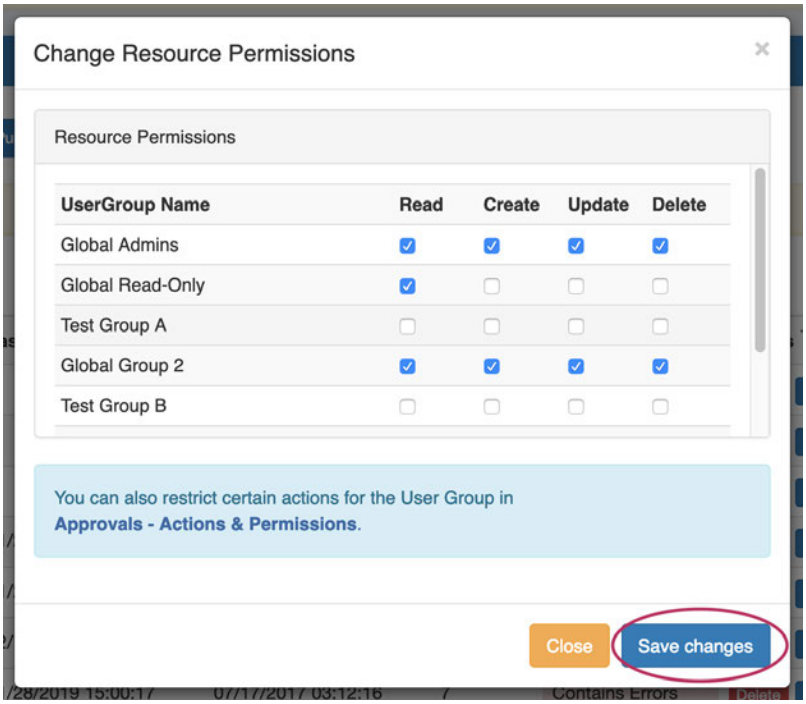
Throughout DNS, a shortcut permissions button ("Perms") is available on a per-item level, accessible only to Admin users.

This permissions button allows for direct, point-of-use permissions adjustments to DNS Groups, Servers, Zones, and Records. It uses the same CRUD permissions and groups available in the Admin Users tab, but removes the need to remember and search for the DNS item name.

To open the Change Resource Permissions module, click on the "Perms" Button for any DNS item.




Edit the CRUD permissions for any ProVision user group by clicking the checkbox for the desired group and permission type. When done, click "Save Changes". The permission changes will be also be reflected in the Admin **User** tab Group settings.

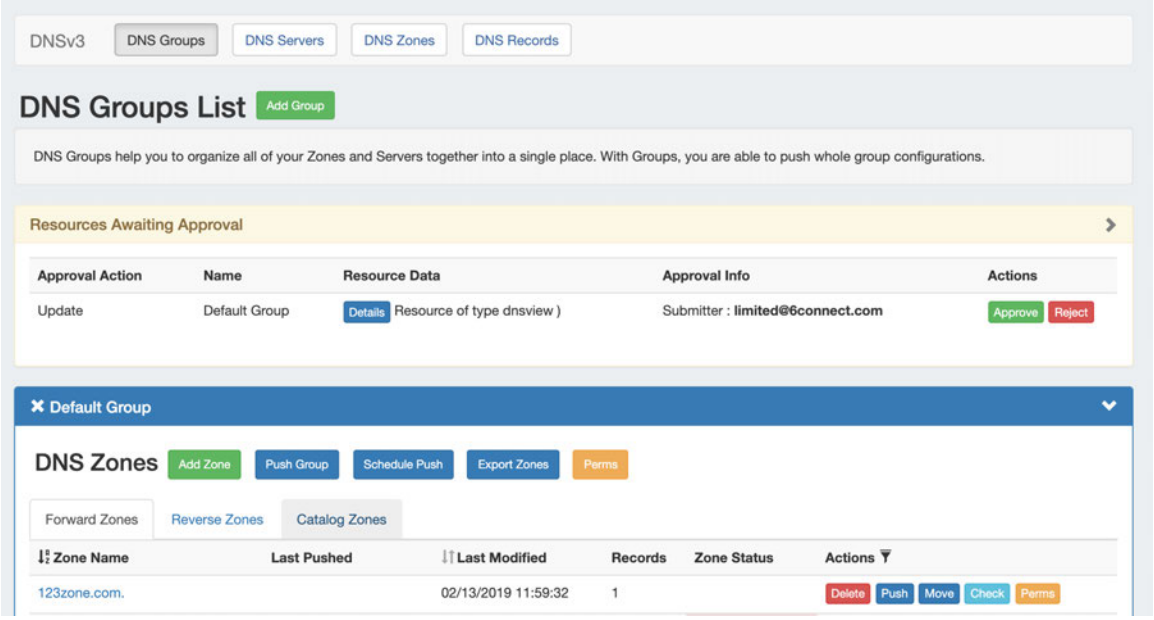



## DNS Approvals

The Approvals module stores and queues DNS actions made by selected User Groups, and sends those actions to a Pending Changes list for administrative review.  Later, an administrator (or combination of administrators) can approve or reject these stored actions.

Approvals is primarily set up and managed via the Admin **Approvals** Tab. See the ProVision Admin Guide - Approvals Tab for details on setting up and using Approvals from the Administrative viewpoint.

In the **DNS** Tab, a "Resources Awaiting Approval" module will display near the top of DNS Groups, DNS Zone Lists, and DNS Servers pages, if a change has been submitted on that page that is pending approval.




Users who submitted a change for approval will see the details of their change request in this module.

Admin users with permissions to approve or reject the request will have the option to Approve or Deny the change.

# DNSv3 Workflow

DNSv3 revolves around Groups. Zones are gathered under Groups, servers attached to Groups, and pushes may be done on a per Group level. Thus, the first workflow step in DNSv3 is to set up one or more DNS Groups. A "Default Group" is automatically provided in ProVision, but other Groups may be desired to organize zones and default values.

To create a new DNS Group, click the "Add Group" button from the **DNS Groups** tab. Enter the desired default values for the Group, and save. If only using the Default Group, ensure the default parameter values are set as needed. For more information, see Working with DNS Groups.

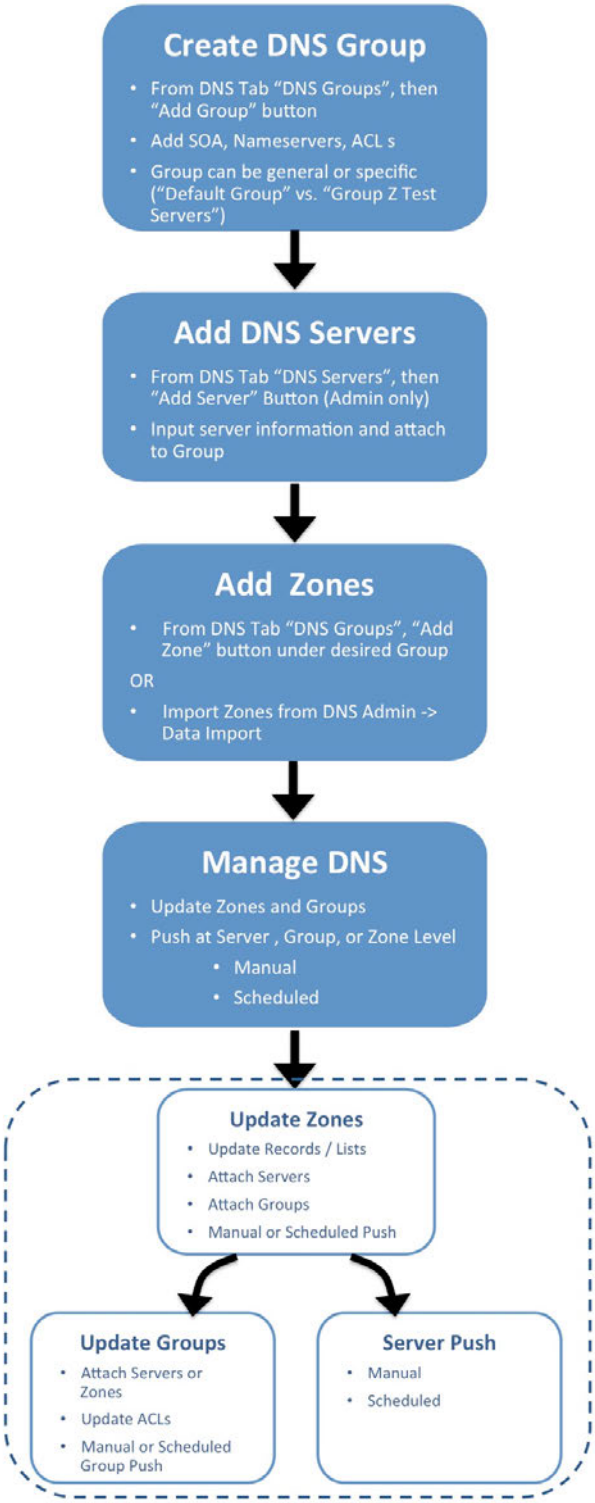
After Groups have been set up, DNS servers should be added or settings verified. Admin users may add DNS servers from the **DNS Servers** tab "Add Server" button. Input the server information and save. Existing servers may be reviewed and edited by clicking on the server name in the DNS Server List. Once a server is created in ProVision, it may be attached to any DNS Group under the Group's "Attached Servers" module. Attaching a server to a Group will allow for zones in that group to be pushed to the attached server(s). See Working with DNS Servers.

Next, add zones to your groups. Zones may be manually added under each group by clicking the "Add Zone" button in the DNS Groups or DNS Zones tabs, or it may be imported via DNS Importers into a selected Group. Add the zone and record information, and save. See Working with DNS Zones for additional information.

Zones may only exist once per Group, but may be duplicated under multiple Groups. Zones may also be moved from Group to Group as needed.

At this point, all major components of the ProVision DNS system have been added - from here management tasks take over. Zones may be updated and moved to or from Groups; Groups may be edited with different default values or servers, and pushes maybe be performed for an individual zone, a full Group, or for an entire server. Pushes may be manual or scheduled for a future time through the Scheduler.

# DNS WORKFLOW

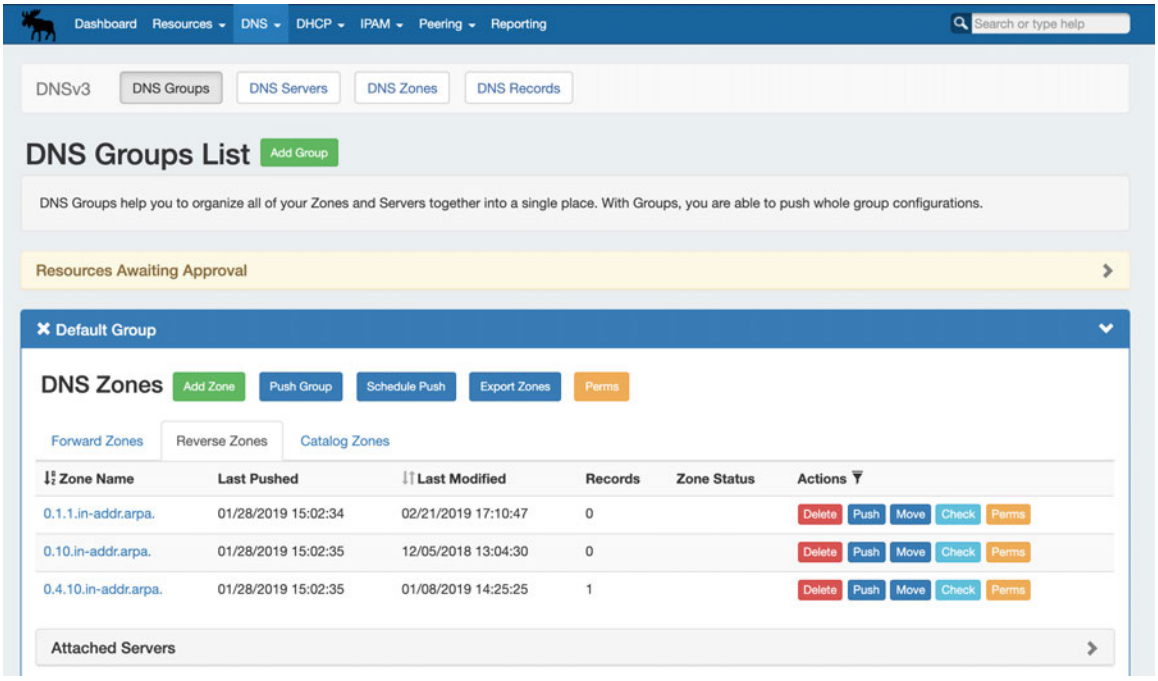


# Additional Information

- Working with DNS Groups
- DNS Zones Overview
- Working with DNS Zones
- Working with DNS Records

# Working with DNS Groups

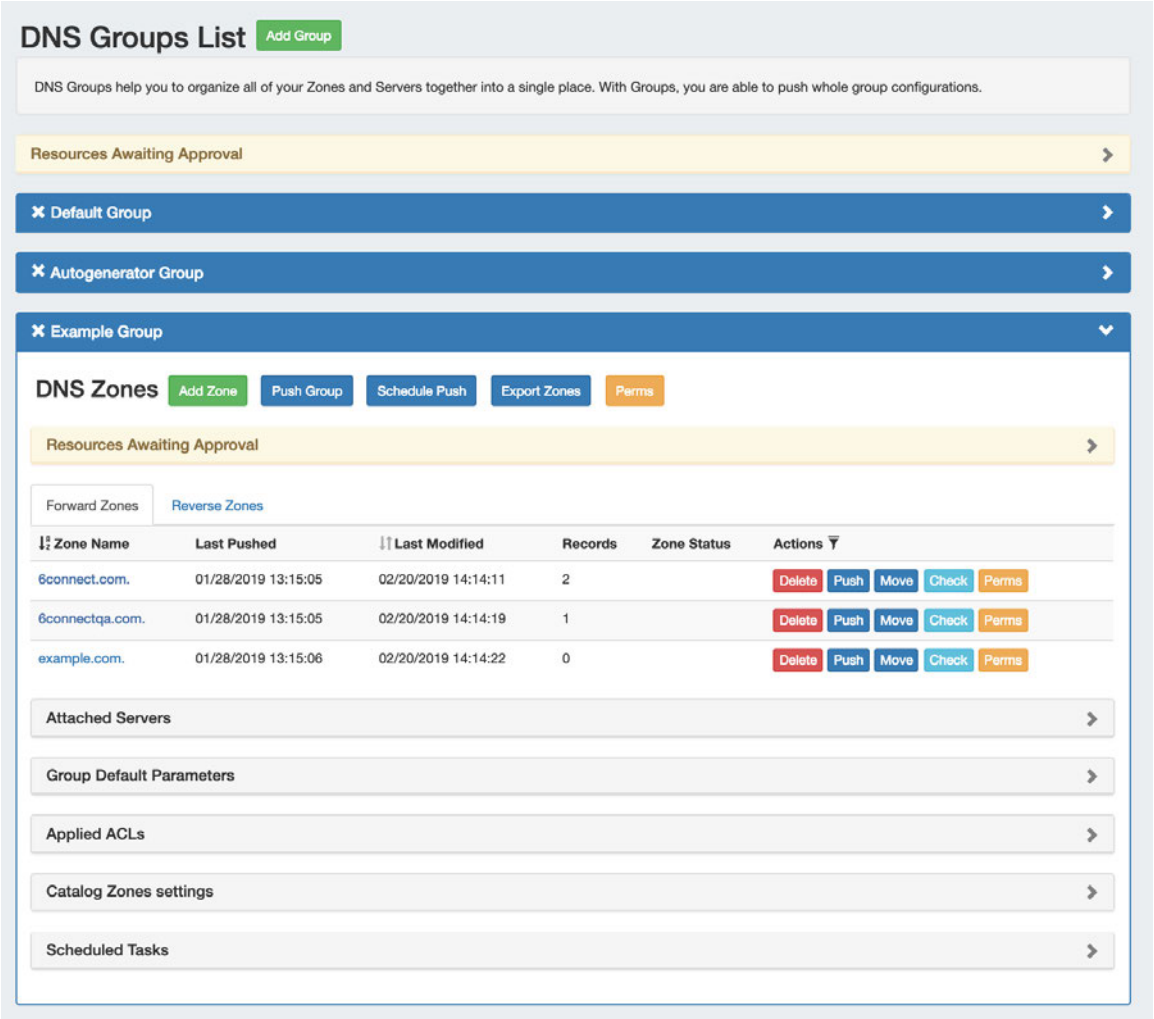
# DNS Groups




The **DNS** tab **Groups List** allows you to create, view, and manage groups of DNS Servers and Zones. Using groups, you can configure and push selected combinations of zones at one time.


- DNS Groups
  - DNS Groups List Interface
- Working with DNS Groups
  - Add a Group
    - Create a Group
    - Navigating a Group
  - Edit a Group
    - Edit a Group Name
    - Edit Attached Servers
    - Edit a Group's Default Parameter Values
      - Edit Group Advanced Settings
      - Edit Nameservers
      - Edit Push Policy
      - Edit SOA Values
      - Save Changes
  - Add Zones to a Group
  - Pushing a Group
    - Manual Group Push
    - Scheduled Group Push
  - Delete a Group
  - Export a Group
  - Using the Templates Group / Cloning Zones to a Group
    - Create your template zone
    - Clone Template to a Different Group
  - Additional Information


## DNS Groups List Interface

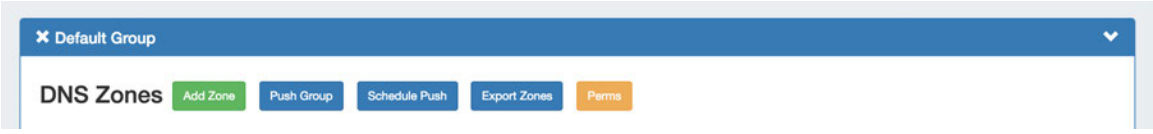



**1) Add Group Button**: Opens a dialog for creating a DNS Group

**2) Resources Awaiting Approval Module - Group Level**: Lists pending DNS Group level Approval events either submitted by, or able to be approved/rejected by, the current user.

**3) Group Container**: The Group container header shows the group name. Expand or close the group container by clicking on the expansion arrow ( > ) on the far right of the header. Clicking on the X will delete the Group and all zones included in the group. Rename the group by clicking on the name, then typing the desired changes and clicking outside of the name.

**Group Actions:**




**4) Add Zone Button:** Opens a dialog for creating a DNS zone under that group.

**5) Push Group Button:** Pushes all zones in the group.

**6) Schedule Push Button:** Schedules a push of all zones in the group to the selected day and time. Requires the scheduler tab / cron tasks to be enabled.

**7) Export Zones:** Exports all zones in the group into a .zip file.

**8) Perms (Admin):** Provides a shortcut for Admin users to change the group/user permissions for the DNS Group.

**9) Resources Awaiting Approval Module - Zone List Level**: Lists pending DNS Zone List level Approval events either submitted by, or able to be approved/rejected by, the current user.

**10) Zone List:** Forward and reverse zones included in the Group.

**11) Forward / Reverse Zones Tabs**: Shows zone list containing only forward or reverse zones, respectively.

**12) Zone Name (Sortable):** The name of the zone. Clicking on the zone name will open the zone details window, showing individual records. Clicking on the "Zone Name" header will sort the zone list by ascending or descending by name.

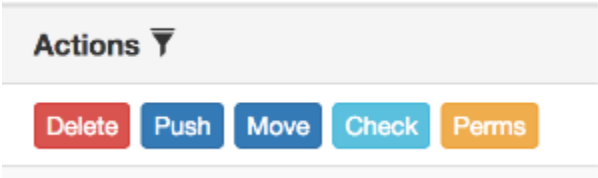
**13) Last Pushed:** The date and time the zone was last pushed.

**14) Last Modified (Sortable).** The date and time the zone was last modified. Clicking on the "Last Modified" header will sort the zone list by most / least recent modification date.

**15) Records:** How many records are in the zone.

**16) Zone Status:** Will notify if the zone or server connection contains errors, after a check has been performed (by clicking on the "Check" button). Clicking on the "Contains Errors" message will provide additional details on the error.

**17) Actions:** The actions that may be performed on each zone:




**18) Delete:** Deletes the zone from ProVision and removes the entry in ProVision conf file on the remote server(s) (the user will also receive a prompt to confirm they wish to complete the action)

**19) Push**: Pushes the zone to the associated server.

**20) Move**: Moves the zone to a different Group.

**21) Check:** Performs a check on the zone, notifying the user if errors or warnings are present for the zone.

**22) Perms (Admin):** Provides a shortcut for Admin users to change the group/user permissions for the zone.

**23) Attached Servers:** Sets the server that zone and group pushes will be sent to. Click on the header title or > to expand or collapse. Admins and users with server/group parent permissions may view, attach, or detach a server from the group.

**24) Group Default Parameters:** Click on the header title or > to expand or collapse. Edit default group settings including nameservers, SOA values, and Push Policy.

**25) Applied ACLs:** Click on the header title or > to expand or collapse. Add or detach ACLs to the group.

**26) Catalog Zone Settings:** Click on the header title or > to expand or collapse. Enable / Disable Catalog Zones. Enabling Catalog Zone exports all zones inside the Group into a new catalog zone, so that slave servers can receive zone changes.

**27) Scheduled Tasks:** If a scheduled push has been set up for the group, the task information will show in a "Scheduled Tasks" module. Click on the header title or > to expand or collapse. Review or delete scheduled group pushes.

# Working with DNS Groups

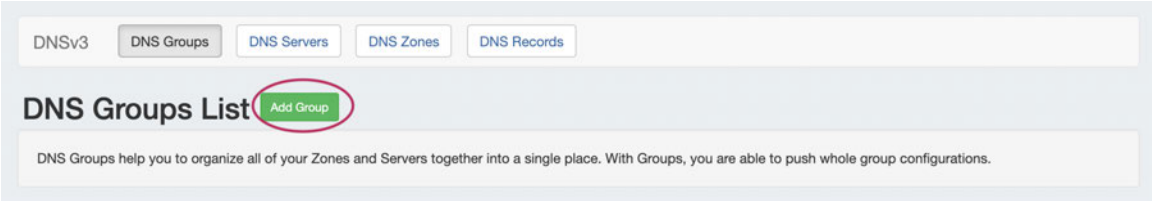
DNS Groups allow for organizing multiple zones together and linking those zones with one or more servers. Default nameservers, SOA values, and ACL's are set at the Group level, so different Groups may have their own default values. Zones may be pushed individually, as a Group, or at the server level.

ProVision automatically designates a Default Group for zones to be imported or added to, as well as a "templates" group for holding pre-DNSv3 templates or to hold new zones created as templates. Creating additional Groups is completely optional.

## Add a Group

DNSv3 automatically contains two Groups - one Default Group to contain existing or imported zones, and a Templates Group, containing zones mimicking DNS Templates. Additional Groups may be added or removed at any time, and zones may be freely moved or duplicated between different groups as needed.

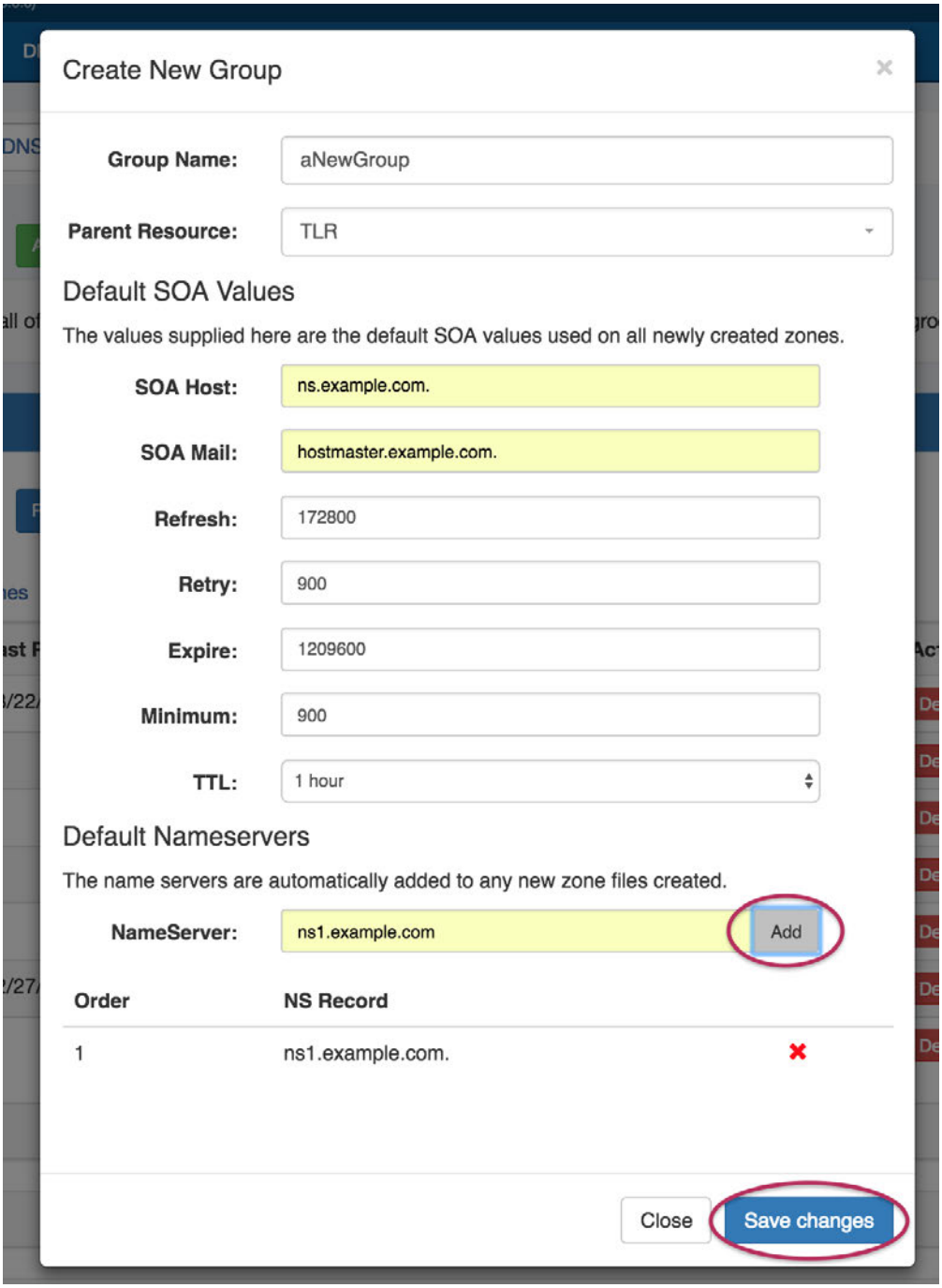
To create a new Group, from the **DNS** Tab, select the **DNS Groups** sub menu. Then, click the "Add Group" button next to "DNS Groups List".




This will open the "Create New Group" dialog.

## Create a Group

In the "Create New Group" dialog, enter the desired Group Name, select a parent resource, enter the default SOA values, and add a default Nameserver (type the NS, then click "Add").

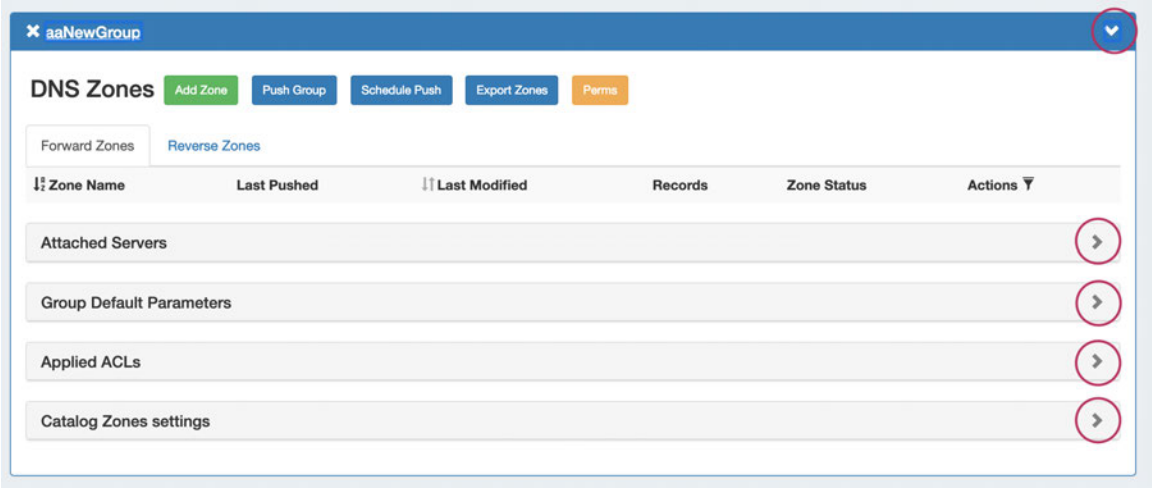


Click the "Save Changes" button when complete. The new group will be added to the DNS Groups List.

## Navigating a Group

Open the Group container for the new Group by clicking on the expansion arrow at the top right corner of the header.

Information for Attached Servers, Group Default Parameters, Applied ACLs, and Catalog Zones settings may also be viewed and edited by clicking on the expansion arrows for each section.

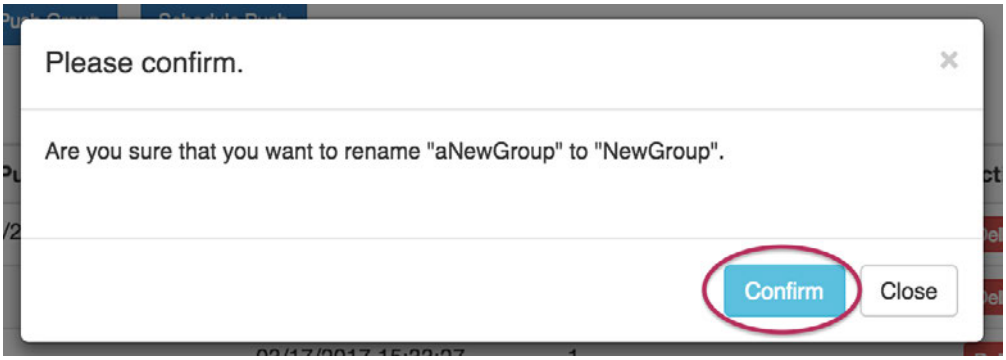



# Edit a Group

## Edit a Group Name

Edit the name for a Group by clicking inside the Group's Name. A highlight box will appear around the name, and a cursor inside the box.

Edit the text as desired using your mouse or arrow keys to navigate through the text. When complete, click anywhere outside of the name box, and a confirmation dialog will appear.




Click "Confirm" to save your changes, or "Close" to exit without saving.

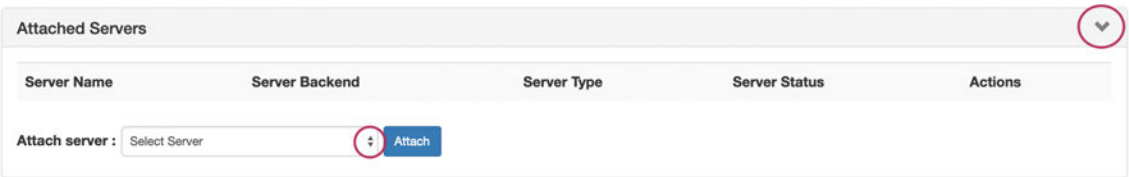
## Edit Attached Servers

Users may attach or detach servers from a group if they have either of the following permission types:

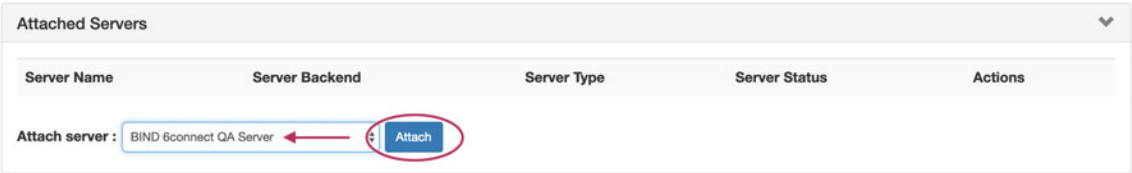
- TLR Admin permissions
- Full permissions on both the DNS Server(s) and the Parent Resource set for the DNS Group

If either condition is met, the user may view and attach/detach the applicable server(s) to a Group.

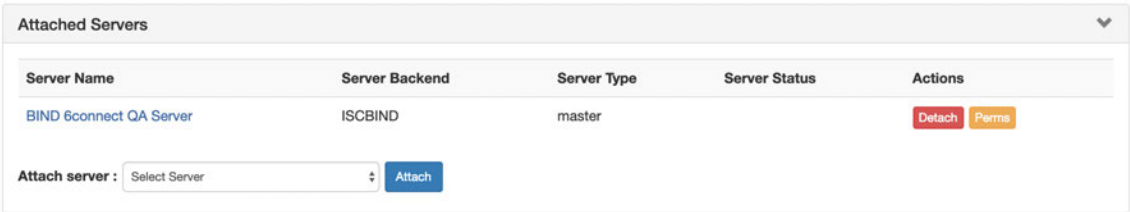
To attach a server, expand the "Attached Server" module, and click on the Attach Server list.




Select the desired server, then click "Attach".

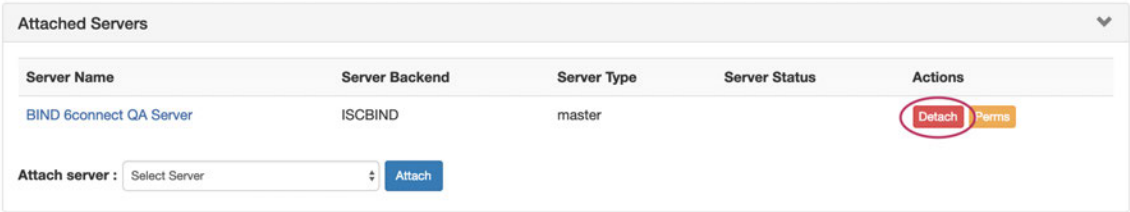



The server is now attached to the group, and future zone and group pushes will be sent to the attached server.



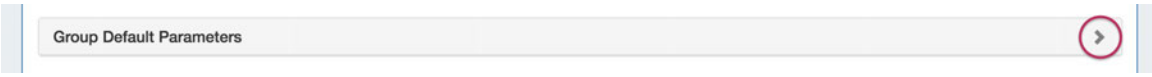

From here, users have the option to Detach the server if desired, by clicking the "Detach" button.

Admin users may edit pemissions for the server using the "Perms" button, if desired (see: DNS Tab DNSv3 Permissions for additional information).




## Edit a Group's Default Parameter Values

Under the desired Group, expand the "Group Default Parameters" module by clicking on the expansion arrow.




Save your changes!

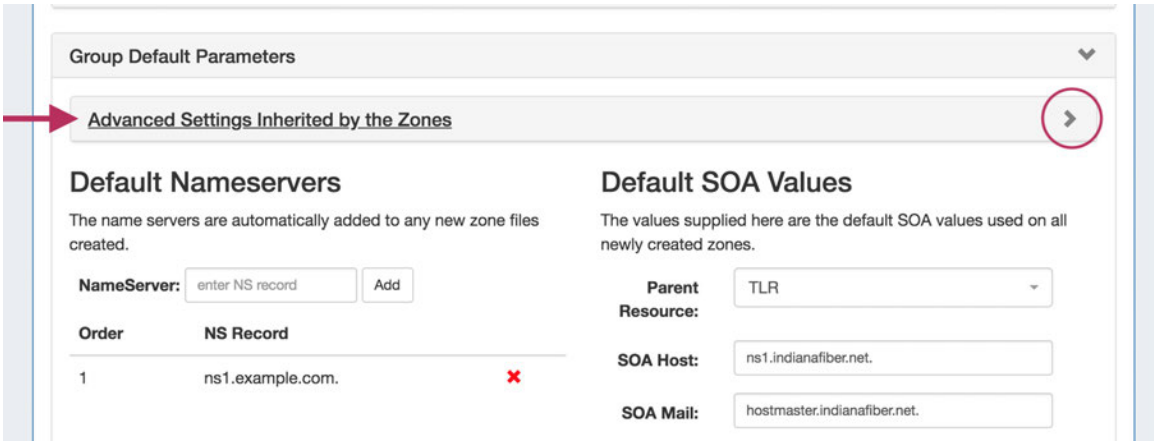
Important - to ensure that your changes are saved while working in Group Default Parameter, click the "Save Group Defaults" button under the Default SOA Values section - this save button will save any changes made to Advanced Settings, Default Nameservers, or Default SOA Settings.

Push Policy changes can be saved by clicking "Save Push Policy".

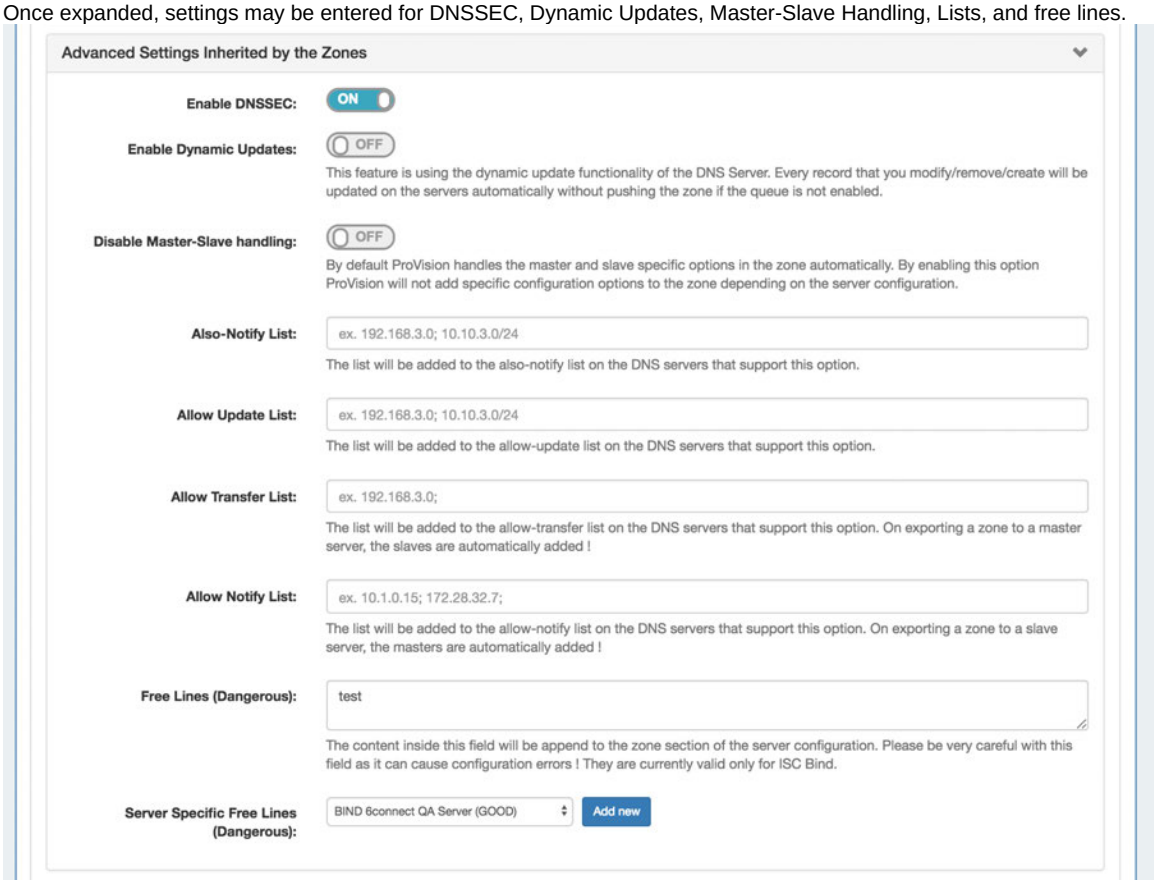
## Edit Group Advanced Settings

Open the "Advanced Settings Inherited by the Zones" module by going to any DNS Group and opening the "Group Default Parameters".

The Advanced Settings module will be at the top of Default Parameters area. To expand it, click on the expansion arrow on the right side of the header bar.

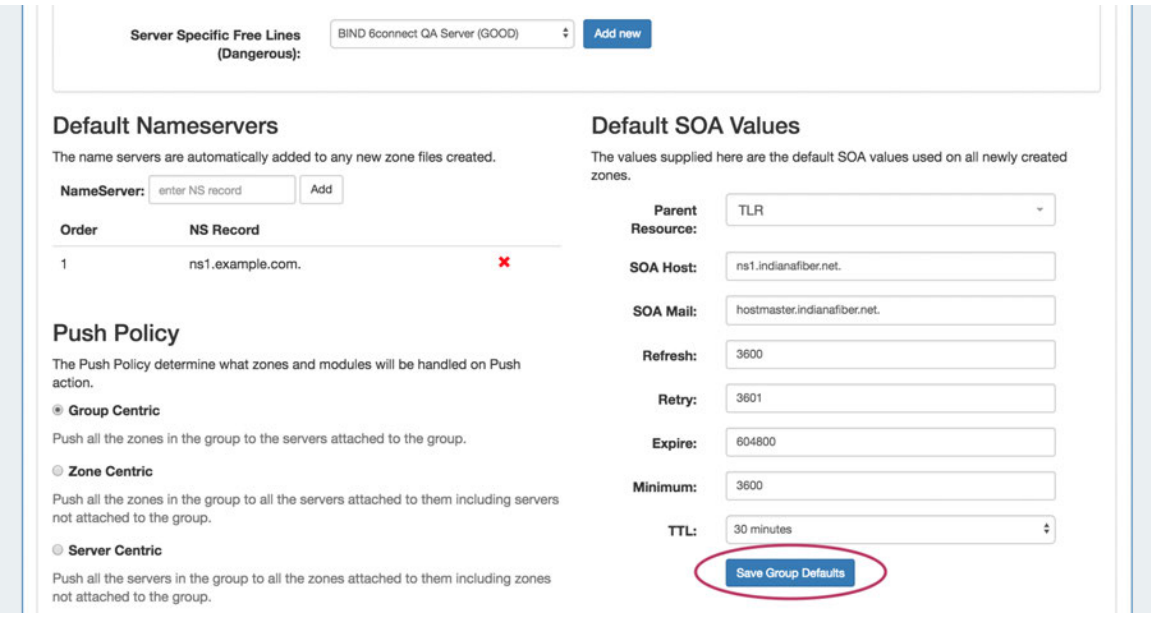



Once expanded, settings may be entered for DNSSEC, Dynamic Updates, Master-Slave Handling, Lists, and free lines.




Save your changes!

Important - to ensure that your changes are saved, click the "Save Group Defaults" button under the Default SOA Values section - this save button will save any changes made to Advanced Settings, Default Nameservers, or Default SOA Settings.

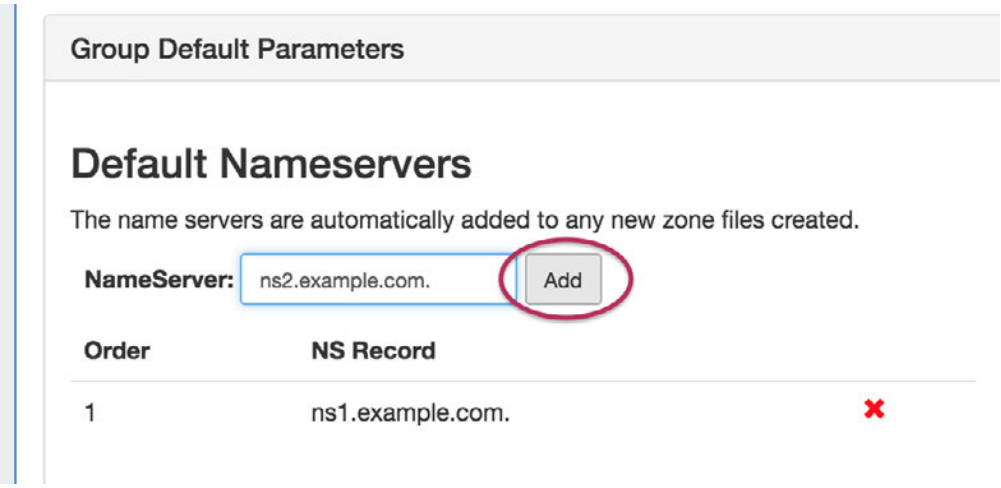



## Edit Nameservers

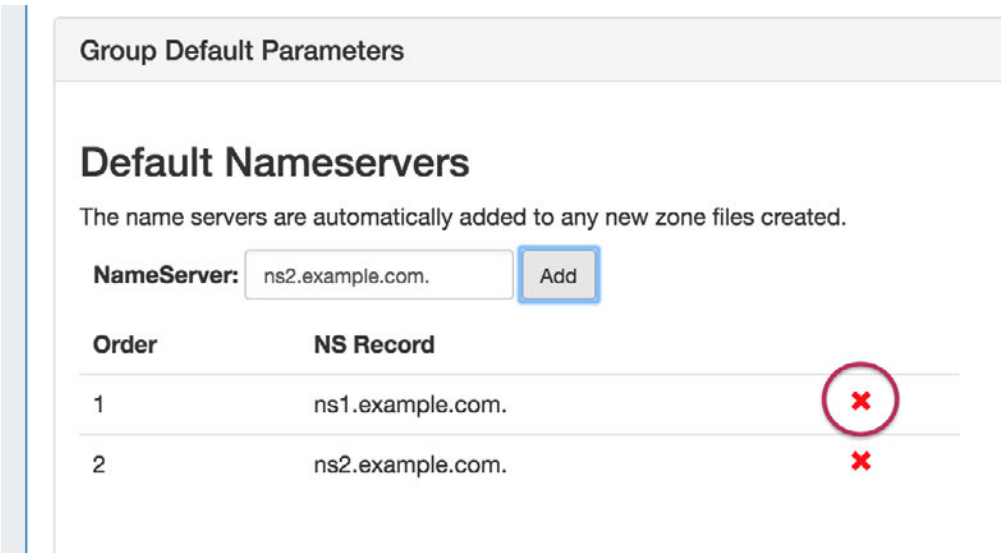
Default Nameservers are automatically added to any newly created zone files.

You may choose not to set a default nameserver, however, an empty Nameservers list can cause invalid zones.

Change a Nameserver by typing the new NS record into the Nameserver box, then click "Add".

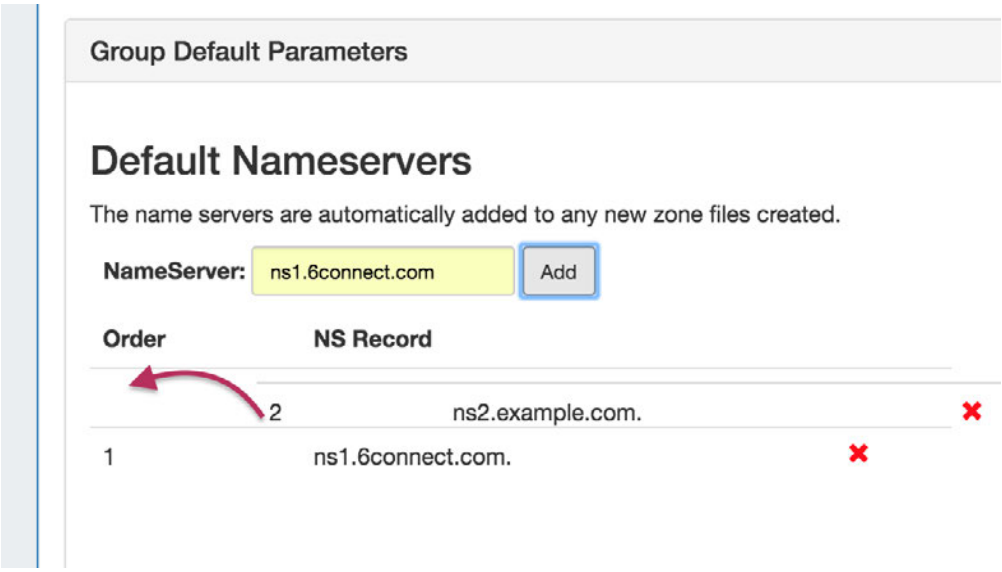



Delete the previous Nameserver by clicking on the red "X" to the right of the NS Record.




Change the order of multiple Nameservers by left-clicking (holding the mouse button down) over the NS Record to move, dragging to its desired placement, then releasing the mouse button.

The NS record will drop into its new location, with the order updated.

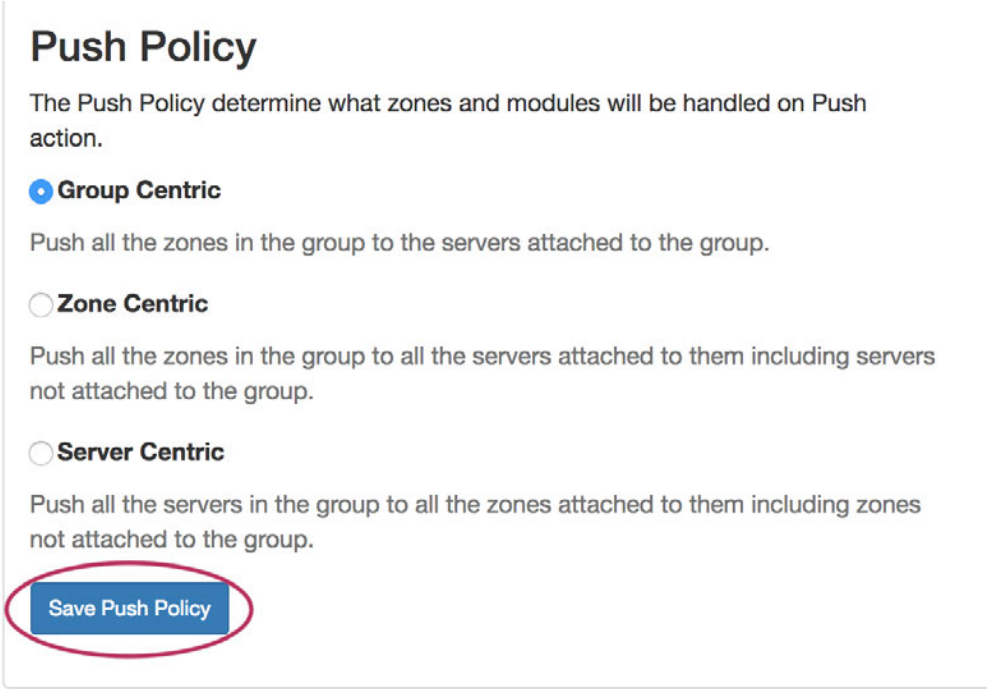



Save your changes!

Important - to ensure that your changes are saved, click the "Save Group Defaults" button under the Default SOA Values section - this save button will save any changes made to Advanced Settings, Default Nameservers, or Default SOA Settings.

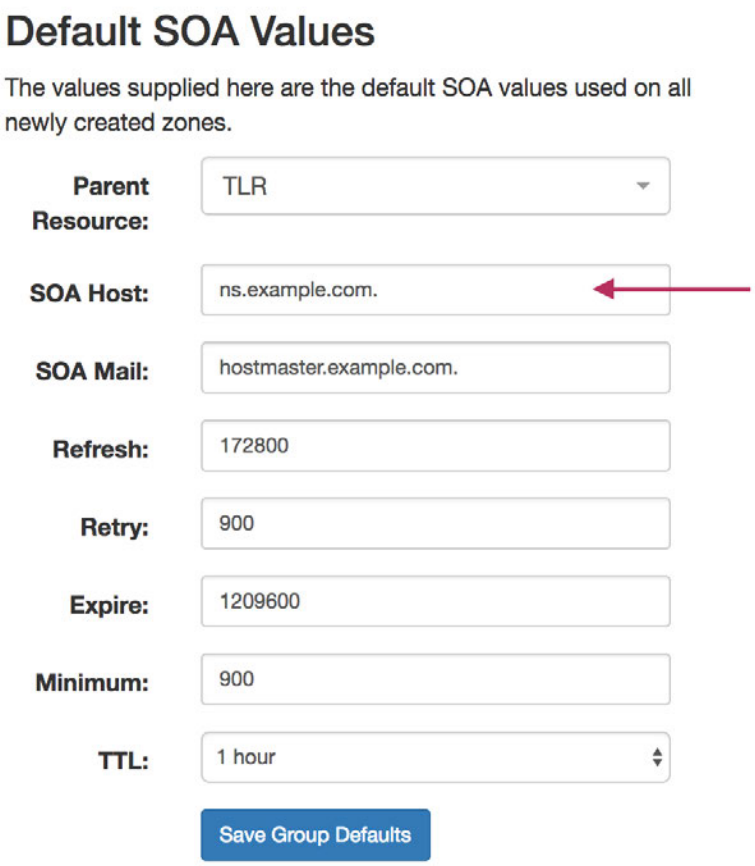
## Edit Push Policy

Edit the push policy by selecting the radio next to the desired push behavior ("Group Centric", "Zone Centric", or "Server Centric") and click "Save Push Policy".




## Edit SOA Values

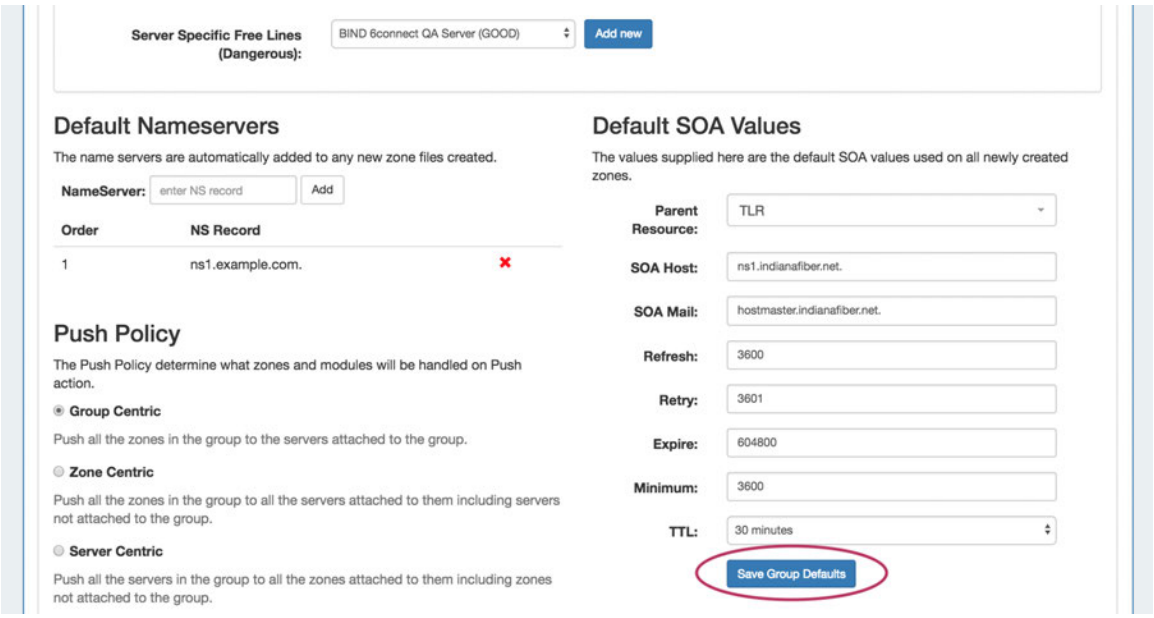
To edit the Default SOA values, simply click inside the value to be changed and type or select your new value. Be sure to also verify the desired Parent Resource for the Group, as the resource selected determines the Group's permissions.



## Save Changes

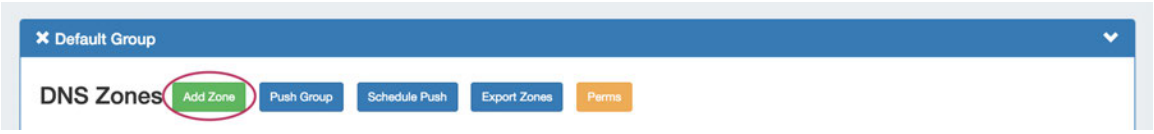
Save all Nameserver, Advanced Settings, and SOA value changes by clicking on the "Save Group Defaults" button at the bottom of the section.

Closing without saving will cause all changes to be lost.



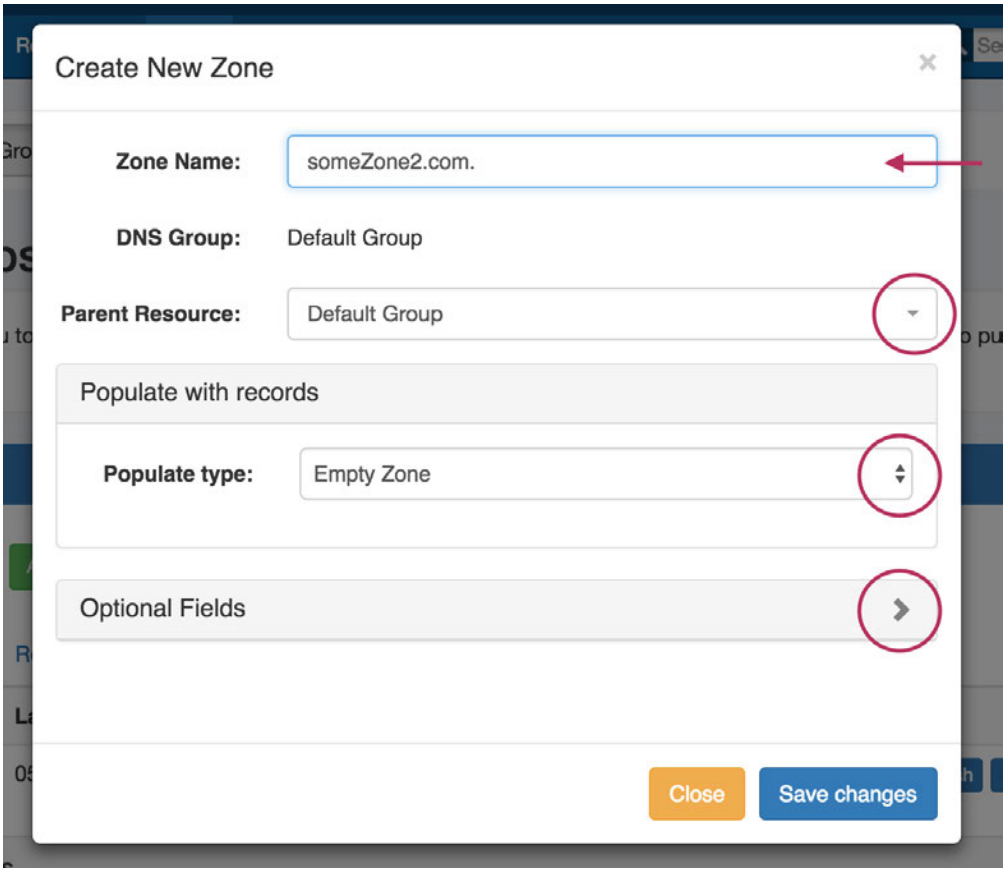

# Add Zones to a Group

To add a new zone to a Group, click the "Add Zone" button inside the desired Group.




Fill in the zone name, select a parent resource (by default, the Group is selected), select a populate type, and fill in any optional fields.

For more detail on each of these options, see Working with DNS Zones - Add a Zone.




When complete, hit the "Save Changes" button.

# Pushing a Group

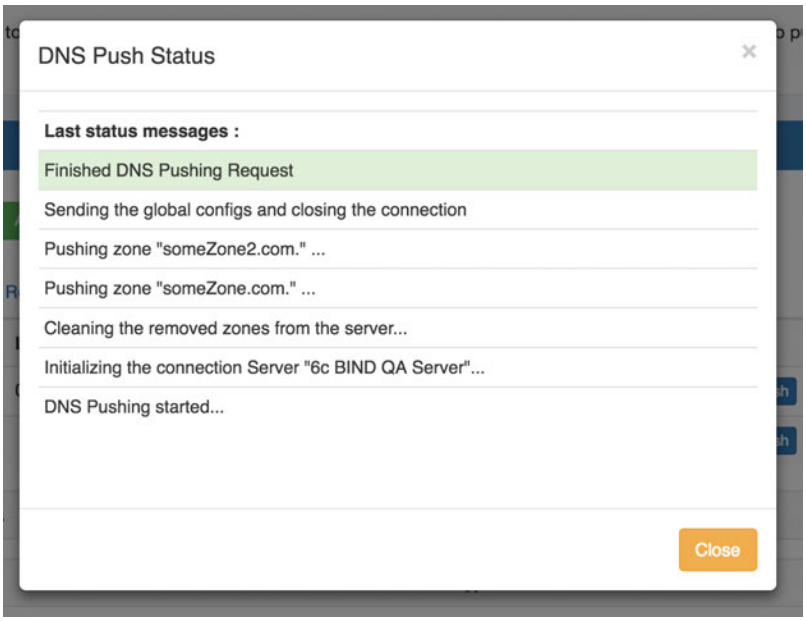
Before pushing a group for the first time, verify the settings in the following areas are correct:

- Under "Attached Servers", verify that the correct server is attached to the DNS Group.
- Under "Group Default Parameters" verify SOA Settings, Nameservers, and the Push Policy are set.

## Manual Group Push

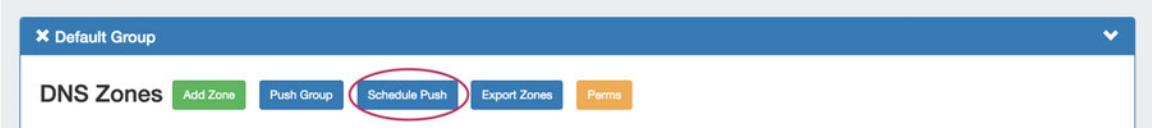
After verifying the attached server and group settings, manually push the Group by clicking the "Push Group" button under the desired Group.

A DNS Push Status window appears, showing each zone in the Group as it is pushed to the attached server. If successful, a green "Finished DNS Pushing Request" will appear as the final message. If errors occur, an error message will show with details on the issue. When complete, hit the "Close" button.

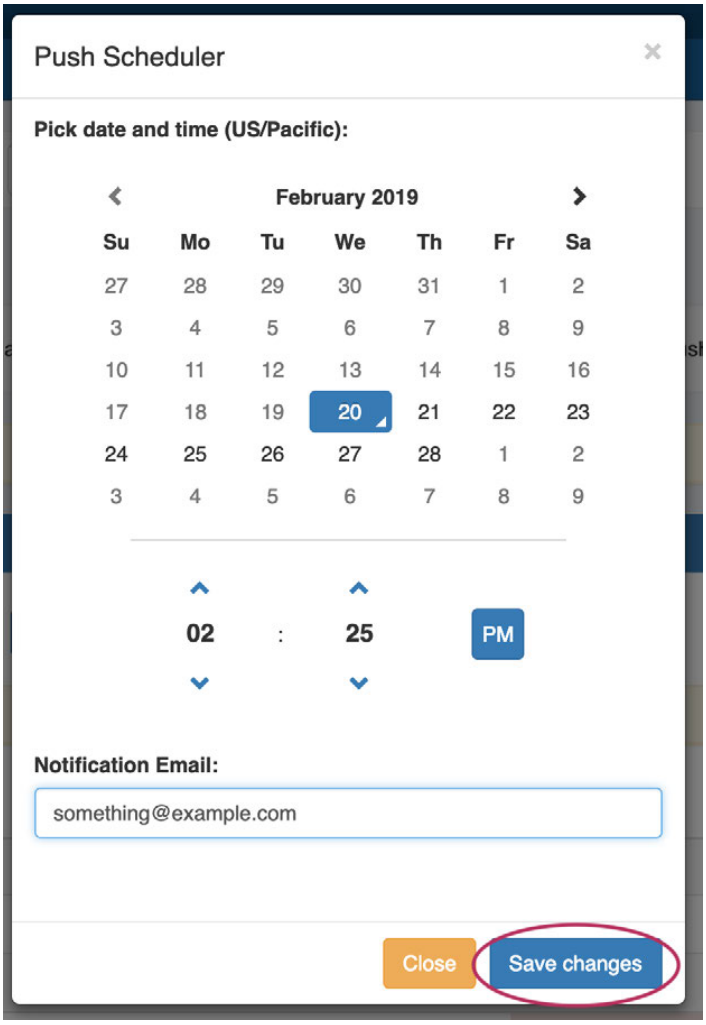



## Scheduled Group Push

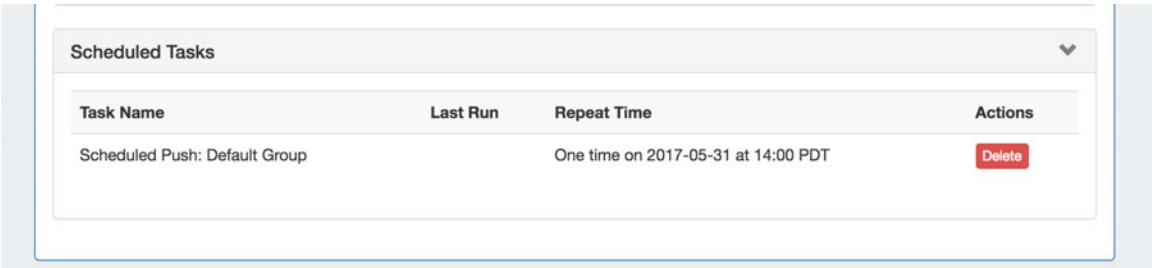
Scheduled pushes may be set up through the "Schedule Push" button for the Group.




Click "Schedule Push" for the Group, then select a date, time (12 hour, with AM / PM toggle), add a notification email address, and click "Save changes".



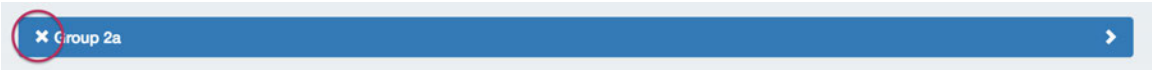

The Scheduled task will be shown in both the Group details (under "Scheduled Tasks") and the Admin Scheduler task list.



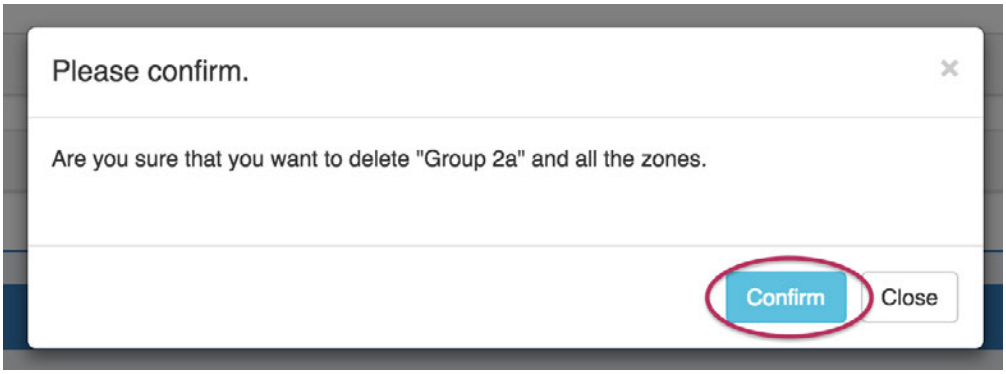

The task may be deleted prior to running by clicking the "delete" button, but will automatically be removed once completed.

## Delete a Group

Delete a non-Default Group by clicking on the "X" to the left of the Group's name in the DNS Groups List.




A confirmation message will appear, click "Confirm" to save your changes, or "Close" to exit without saving.




The Default Group may not be deleted.

## Export a Group

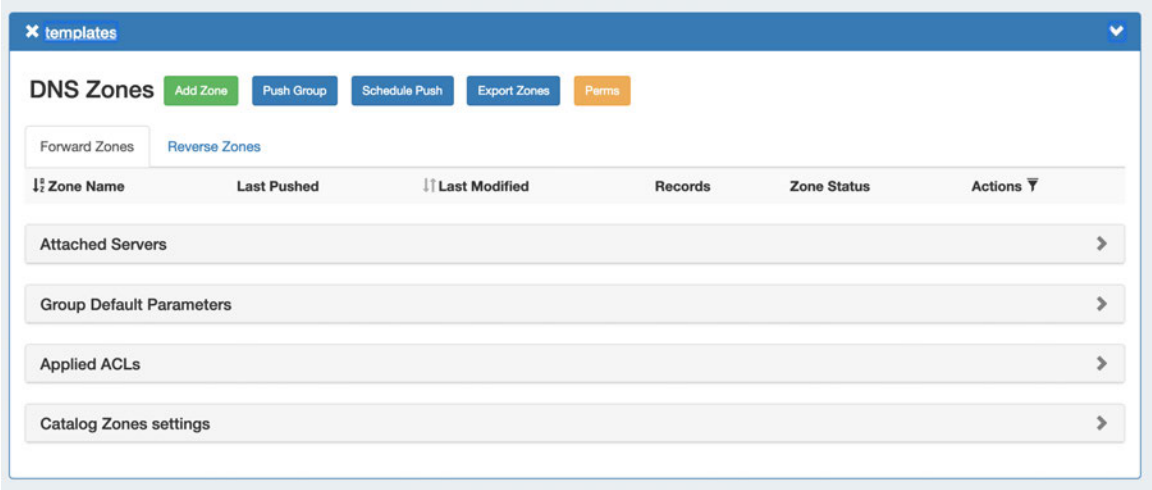
All zones under a DNS Group may be exported to a .zip file by clicking the "Export Zones" button at the top of the Group module.

The exported .zip file may be used with ProVision's BIND DNS Zone Upload / Import tool.

## Using the Templates Group / Cloning Zones to a Group

By default, a "templates" group is included in DNSv3.

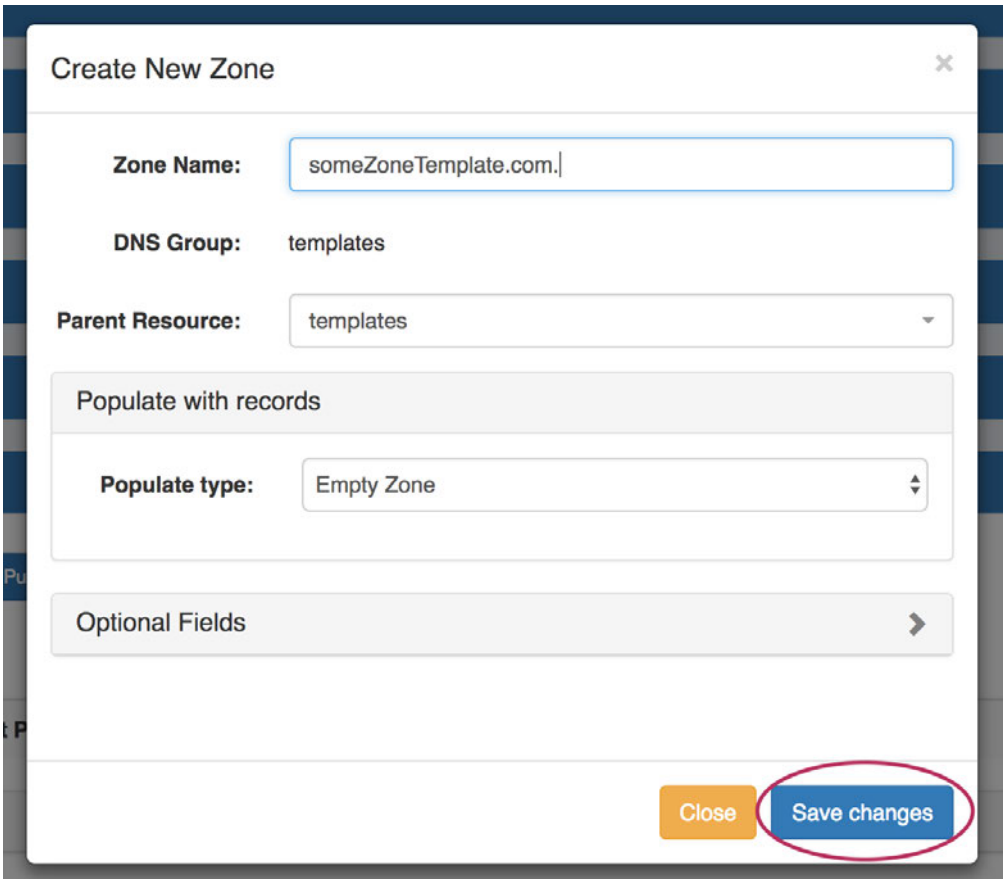
Any pre-DNSv3 DNS Templates will be included in this group, as well as any newly created zones to be used as template zones.




The template group functions the same as any other DNS Group, but gives a holding place for zones designed as templates separate from other zones.

### Create your template zone

Add a template zone by clicking the "Add Zone" button, giving the zone a descriptive name to clearly identify as a template, select the populate type, and fill in any optional data.  ( see Working with DNS Zones - Add a Zone.)

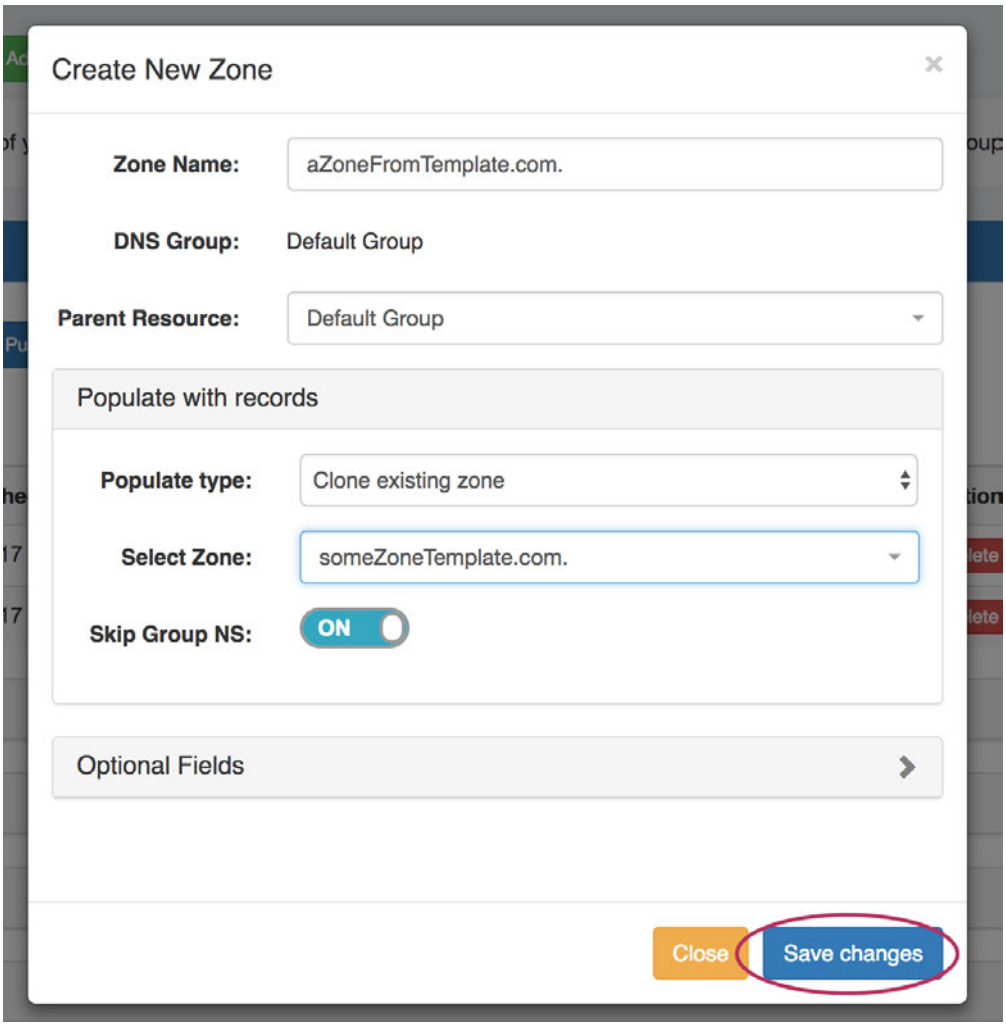



Once the zone has been created, it will show in the templates group zone list, and is now selectable as a base for the "clone existing zone" option when creating a new zone.

## Clone Template to a Different Group

Go to a different group, and click "Add Zone". Enter in the new zone name and parent.

Under "Populate Type", select "Clone existing zone" and select /search for the template zone you created.




Edit the optional fields as needed, and click "Save changes".

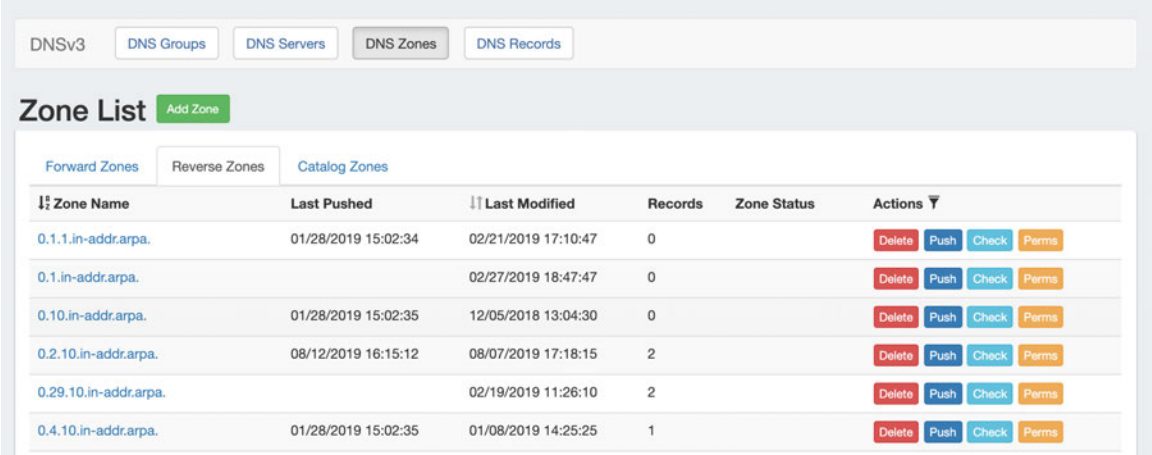
## Additional Information

For more information on DNSv3 tasks, see:

- Working with DNS Zones
- DNS Zones Overview
- DNS Administration
- Working with DNS Servers
- Approvals

# Editing DNS Zones

# DNS Zones




DNS Zones are accessed under the **DNS** tab, **DNS Groups** or **DNS Zones** sub-tabs. The **DNS Zones** sub-tab features the DNS Zone List - a straightforward list of all zones existing in ProVision, including those not attached to DNS Groups. From here, you can create a new zone, view all Forward, Reverse, and Catalog zones, delete, push, check, view pending approvals, or edit permissions (admin only) on a zone.

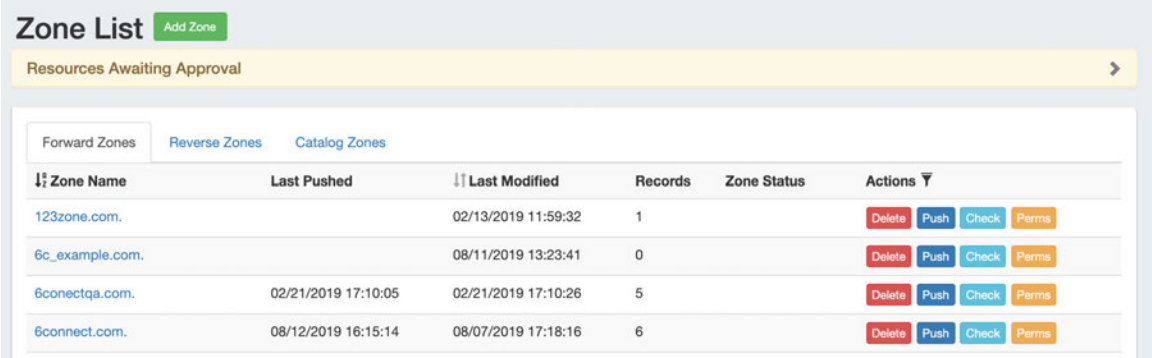
This page focuses on a general UI overview of the DNS Zones and Zone View pages.

For detailed instructions on how to perform specific zone tasks, see Working with DNS Zones.


- DNS Zones
- DNS Zone List Interface
  - Sort / Filter the Zone List
  - Resources Awaiting Approval
  - View Zone Details (View Zone Page)
- The View Zone Page Interface
  - Error Notification
  - Zone Actions
  - Comments
  - Pending Approvals
  - Advanced Settings
  - DNS Records
    - Filter Records
  - Scheduled Tasks
  - Attached Servers
  - Zone Backups
  - Current Zone Export
  - Addiitonal Information:


# DNS Zone List Interface

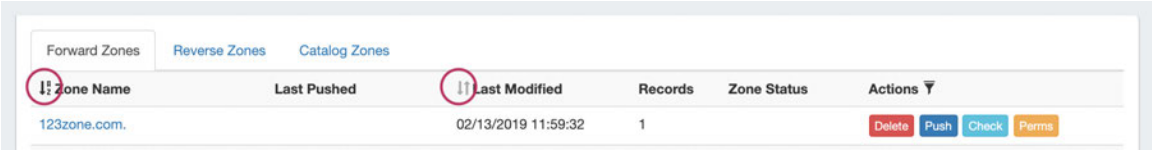
The DNS Zone List shows all zones existing in ProVision, organized into three tabs - Forward, Reverse, and Catalog Zones. By default, the zones load in ascending alphabetical order with 25 zones per page. To switch between the two lists, simply click on the tab for the desired zone type.



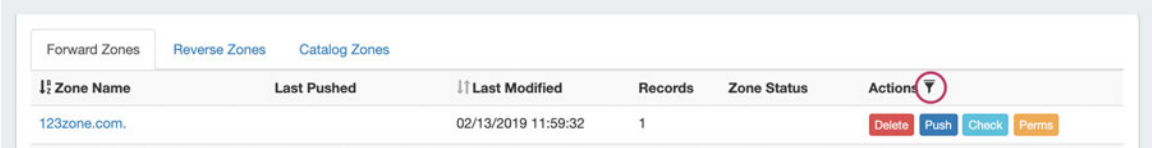

## Sort / Filter the Zone List

The Zone list may be sorted by either "Zone Name" or by "Last Modified" time.

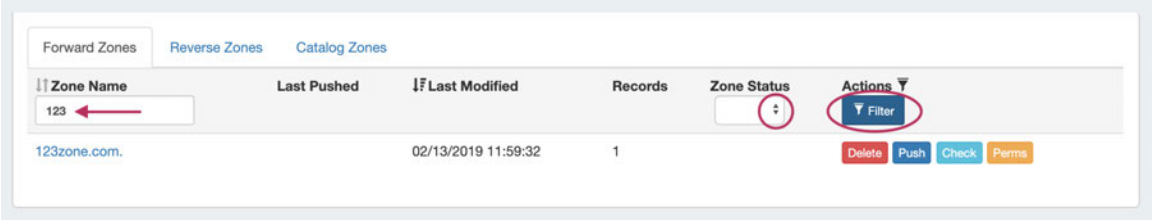
To sort the Zone List, click on the up/down arrows next to either column header to toggle between ascending/descending order.




To filter the Zone List, click on the filter icon next to "Actions".




Then, type in all or part of the zone name, or select zone status. Click "Filter."



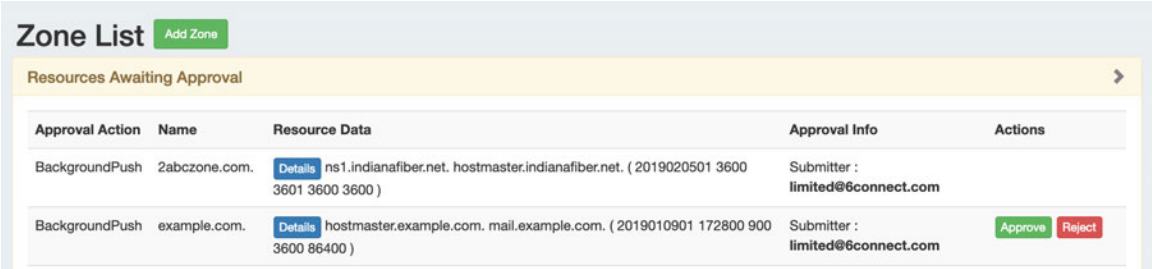

The zone list will filter the zones to only those fitting the selected criteria.

## Resources Awaiting Approval

If the Approval system is in use, pending zone approval items will be shown in a "Resources Awaiting Approval" module above the Zone List.

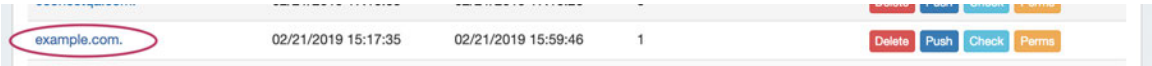
Users who submitted a change for approval will see the details of their change request in this module.

Admin users with permissions to approve or reject the request will have the option to Approve or Deny the change.




## View Zone Details (View Zone Page)

To view details or manage a zone, click on the zone name from any Zone List to go to the Zone View page.



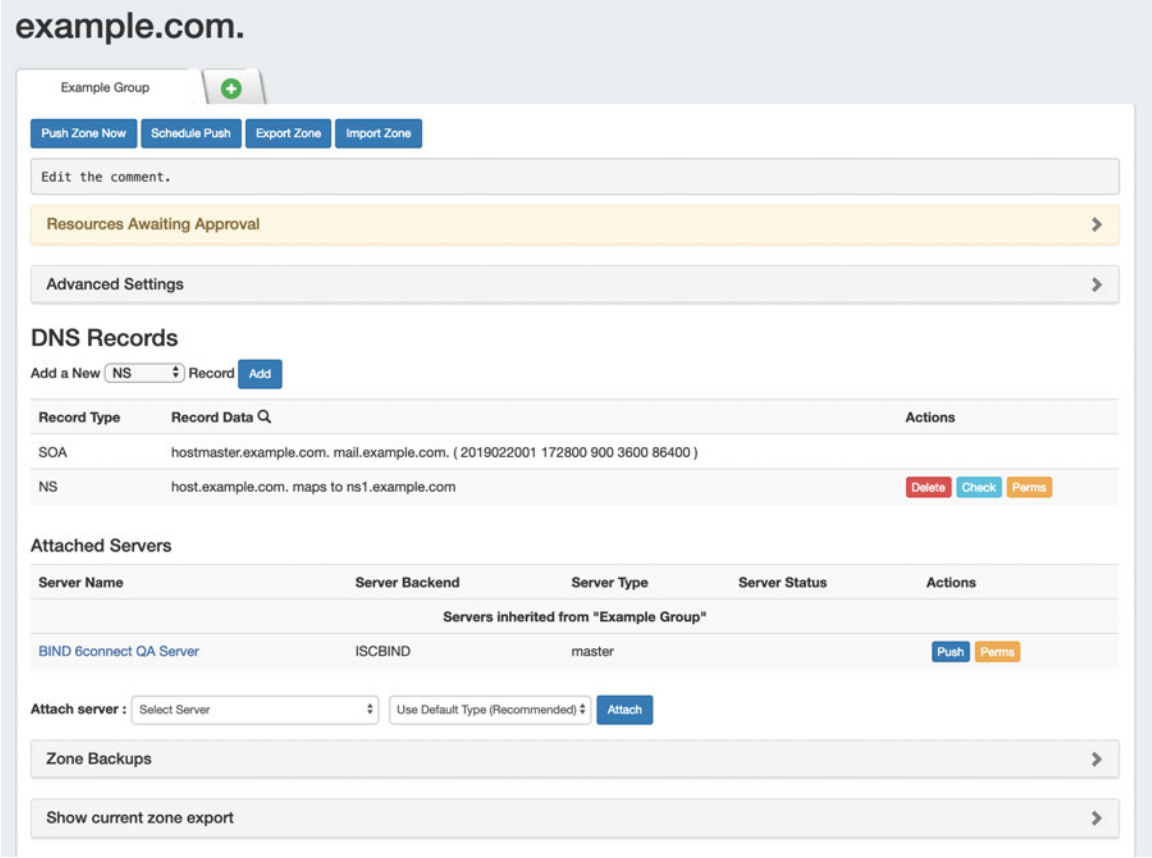

# The View Zone Page Interface

Zones may be edited by clicking on the Zone name in any zone list in which it appears - from the DNS Zones Zone List, zones listed under DNS Groups, under DNS Server attached zones list, or from the DNS Gadget.

Clicking on the zone name opens up the View Zone page, from where comments may be added, records added or updated, servers attached to the zone, advanced settings edited, backups restored or the zone pushed / exported.

This section focuses on a general UI overview of the Zone View page.

For detailed instructions on how to perform specific zone tasks on this page, see Working with DNS Zones.



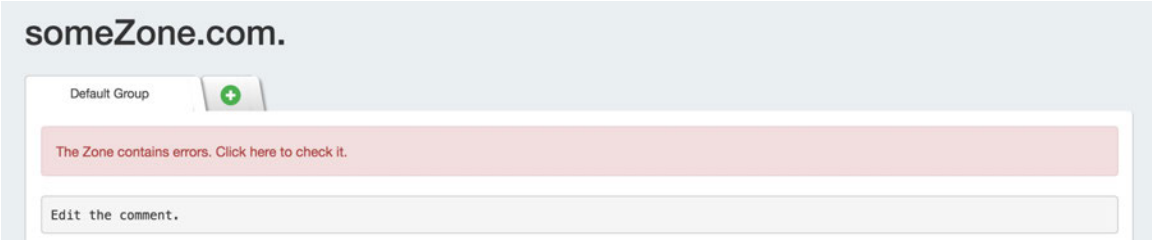
Areas of the Zone View page include:


- DNS Zones
- DNS Zone List Interface
    - Sort / Filter the Zone List
    - Resources Awaiting Approval
    - View Zone Details (View Zone Page)
- The View Zone Page Interface
    - Error Notification
    - Zone Actions
    - Comments
    - Pending Approvals
    - Advanced Settings
    - DNS Records
        - Filter Records
    - Scheduled Tasks
    - Attached Servers
    - Zone Backups
    - Current Zone Export
    - Addiitonal Information:


# Error Notification

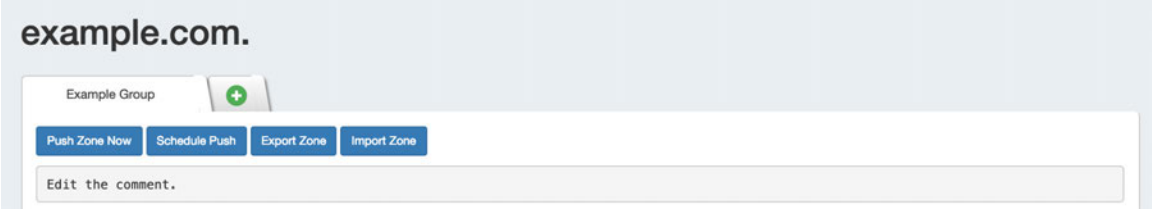
If errors are detected for the zone, an error notice will be given at the top of the group tab for the zone. To review the error, click on the message, and it will list the number of errors present, and details if available.

Records will errors will be highlighted in red in the records list.



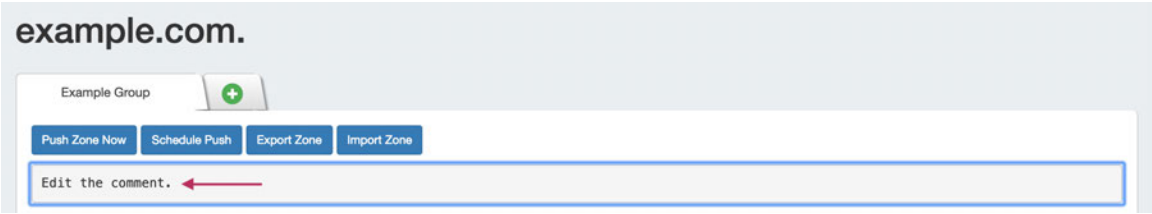

# Zone Actions

Zone actions that may be taken include pushing the zone ("Push Zone Now"), scheduling a zone push ("Schedule Push") or exporting the zone to a .zone file ("Export Zone").




# Comments

To add a comment to a zone, click anywhere inside the comment area and begin typing. The comment will be saved when an area outside of the comment box is clicked, deselecting the comment area.

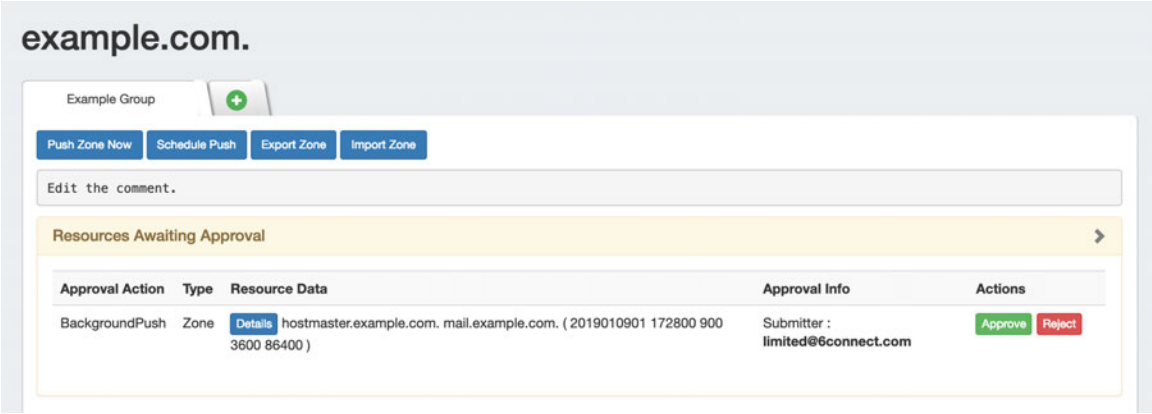



## Pending Approvals

If the Approvals system is used, pending approval events for the zone or records will appear in an expandable module under the zone comment.

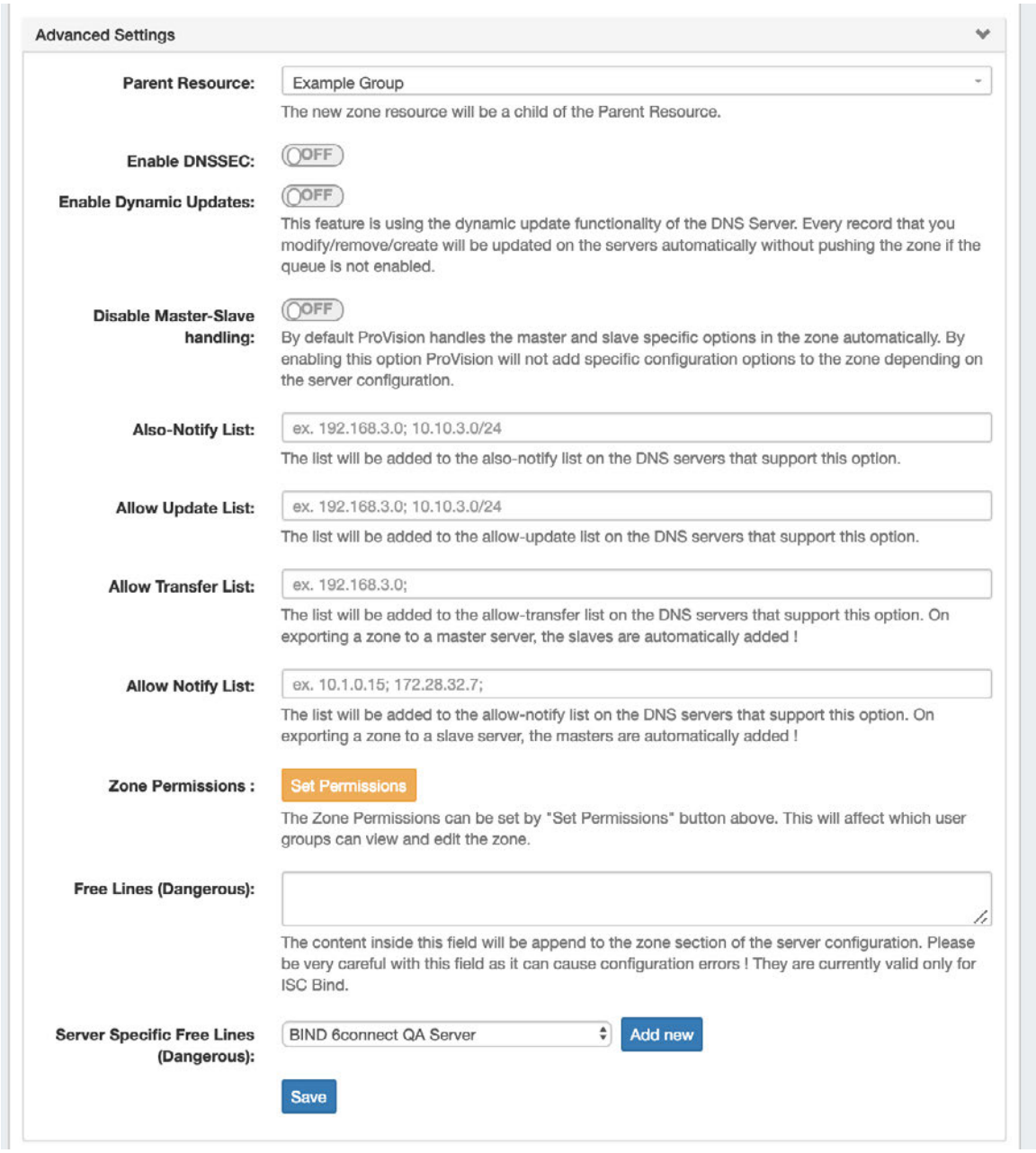
Users who submitted a change request will see the action and data details for their request.

Admin users who can approve/reject the change will see all details plus buttons to Approve or Reject the change. See Approvals for additional information.




## Advanced Settings

Open the zone "Advanced Settings" section by clicking on the header or the expansion arrow (>).




Here, you will find options for:

**Parent Resource:** Sets the zone's Parent Resource, which affects the permissions access for the zone. By default, the parent is set as the DNS Group the zone is in.

**Enable DNSSEC:** Toggle "On" or "Off" to enabled DNSSEC for the zone, if supported by the attached server.

**Enable Dynamic Updates:** Toggle "On" or "Off" to enabled Dynamic Updates for the zone, if supported by the attached server.

**Also-notify List:** Add IPs to also-notify list of the attached DNS sever, if supported.

**Allow Update List:** Add IPs to the allow updates list of the attached DNS sever, if supported.

**Allow Transfer List:** Add IPs to the allow transfer list of the attached DNS sever, if supported. Slaves are automatically added if exporting a zone to a master server.

**Allow Notify List:** Add IPs to the allow notify list of the attached DNS sever, if supported.

**Zone Permissions (Admin):** Directly adjust User Group CRUD permissions for this zone.

**Free Lines:** Enter free lines to append to the zone section of the server configuration for the attached server (ISC BIND only). Use with caution - this can cause configuration errors if mistakenly included.

**Server Specific Free Lines:** Select a DNS server and click "Add New" to add server-specific Free Lines.

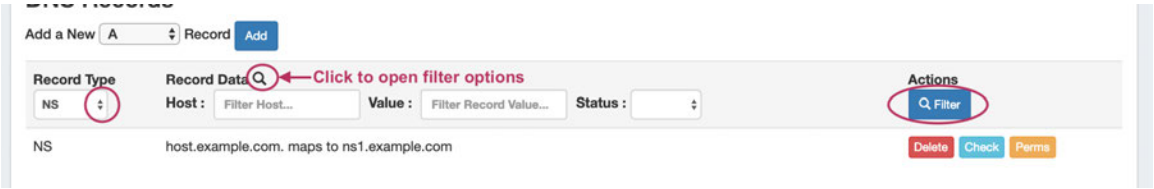
**Save Button:** Be sure to click "save" when edits are complete, or changes will not be saved.

# DNS Records

The DNS Records list on the View zone page contains options to add a new record of the selected type, edit record information, delete a record, check record, or edit permissions (admins only).

## Filter Records

Filter the records list by clicking the "filter" icon next to "Record Data".



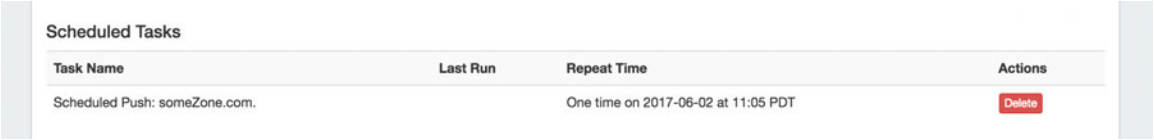

Then, select the desired record type, host / value names, or status. Then, click "Filter".

DNS records may also be reviewed and managed from the **DNS Records** sub-tab.

# Scheduled Tasks

If scheduled tasks (zone pushes) have been set up for the zone, they will appear under a "Scheduled Tasks" section.

Tasks here will also show in the Admin Scheduler task list.



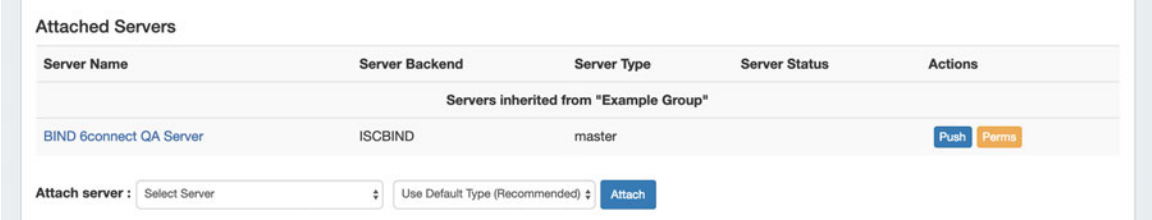

The task may be deleted by clicking the "delete" button.

See Working with DNS Zones for details on Scheduling zone pushes.

# Attached Servers

Servers attached directly to the zone, or inherited from the zone's parent DNS Group will be shown here.

Additional servers may be attached by selecting the server name, type (default, master, slave), and clicking the "Attach" button, as long as the user has permissions on both the zone and the server to attach. After attached, users with sufficient permissions may detach, push, or edit permissions on the server.



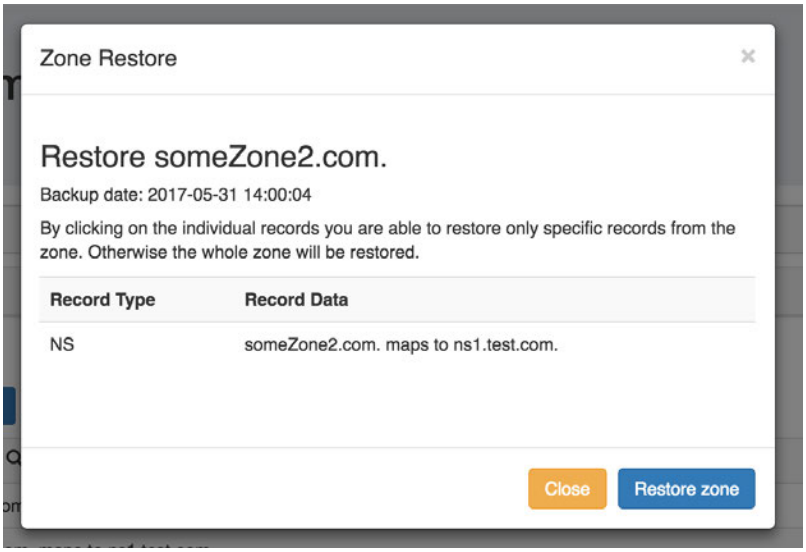

To detach a server from a zone, look for the server under the "Attached Servers" list, then click "Detach" under actions for that server.

Servers that are attached via inheritance from a DNS Group will not be able to be detached at the zone level.

# Zone Backups

If a zone has had changes sucessfully pushed, a "Zone Backups" section appears near the bottom of the page, showing the date and time of the backup.

To view details, or restore the zone to the previous version, click on the row of the desired date/time backup, and the "Zone Restore" module will open.

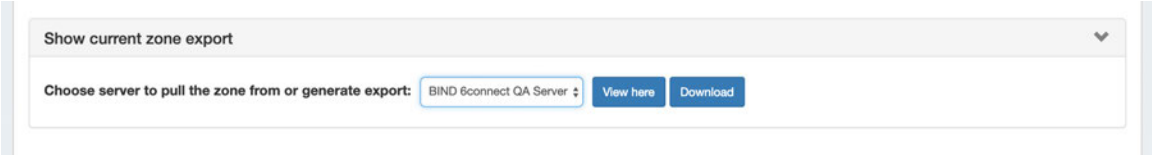



From here, you may restore individual records by clicking on them, or restore the entire zone by clicking the "Restore Zone" button.

To exit without saving, click the "Close" button.

# Current Zone Export

To view or download current zone information, expand the "Show Current Zone Export" module. Then, select the DNS server to pull from and select either "View Here" or "Download".




"View Here" will display a read only text data display of the zone information directly in the module.

"Download" will download a .zone file for the zone from the selected server.

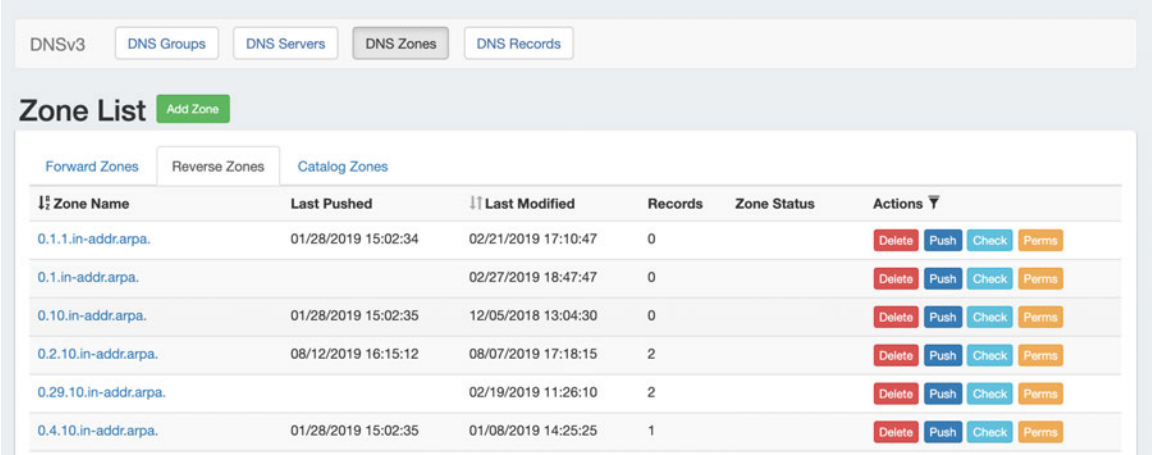
## Addiitonal Information:

For more information on working with DNS Zones, Groups, and Servers, see the following sections:

- Working with DNS Groups
- Working with DNS Zones
- DNS Administration
- Import DNS Zones
- Approvals

# Working with DNS Zones - Common Tasks

# Working with DNS Zones




This page details some common DNS tasks performed from the **DNS** tab.

DNS Zones are accessed under the **DNS** tab, **DNS Groups** or **DNS Zones** sub-tabs. Separate zone lists exist under each DNS Group.

DNS Records are accessed from either the View Zone page (for records under that zone), or globally under the **DNS Records** sub-tab. For Details on working with records in either area, see Working with DNS Records

For a more general overview DNS Groups and Editing Zones, see Working with DNS Groups and DNS Zones Overview. This page focuses on specific DNS zone tasks.

DNSv3 Zone Directory

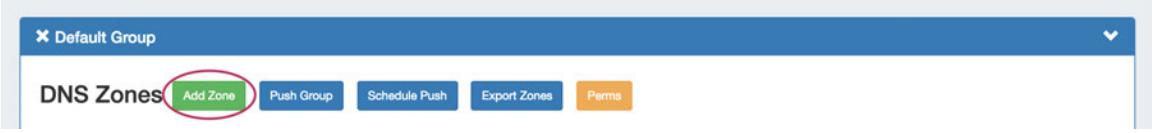
In DNSv3, zone files in the server directory will have a number appended, similar to 'example.com._123.zone'. This number is the Resource ID associated with the zone, and is used in ProVision to identify the zone and differentiate zones that may have the same name, but under different DNS Groups. This append does not affect any zone functionality otherwise.


- Working with DNS Zones
- Working with DNS Zones
  - Add a Zone
    - Optional Fields
  - Edit a Zone (View Zone page)
    - Add a comment
    - Edit Advanced Settings
  - Move Zones to a Different Group
  - Pushing Zones
    - Push Now (from Group List)
    - Push Now (from View Zone page)
    - Schedule Push (from View Zone page)
    - Schedule Push (Admin Scheduler):
    - Group Push:
    - Server Push:
  - Export a Zone
  - Import Zone
  - Delete a Zone
  - Addiitonal Information:
-

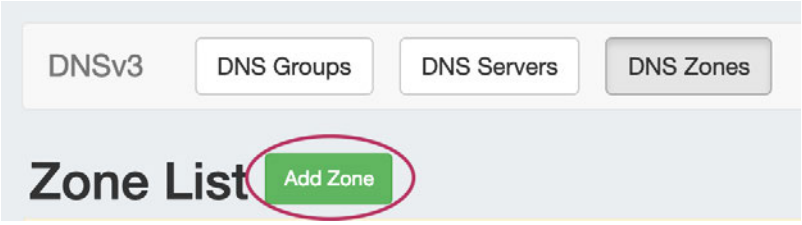
# Working with DNS Zones

## Add a Zone

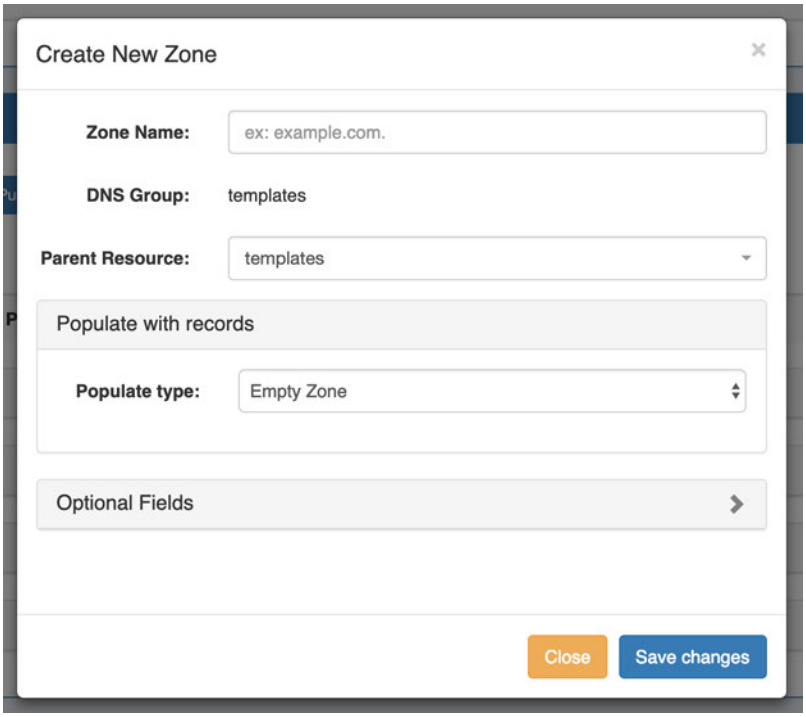
Add a new zone while in the **DNS Groups** tab by selecting "Add Zone" under the desired Group.




You may also add new zones from the **DNS Zones** tab, by clicking "Add Zone" next to **Zone List.**




The "Create New Zone" dialog will pop up.




Enter the name of your new zone and select a parent resource, if desired. The DNS group will already be selected.

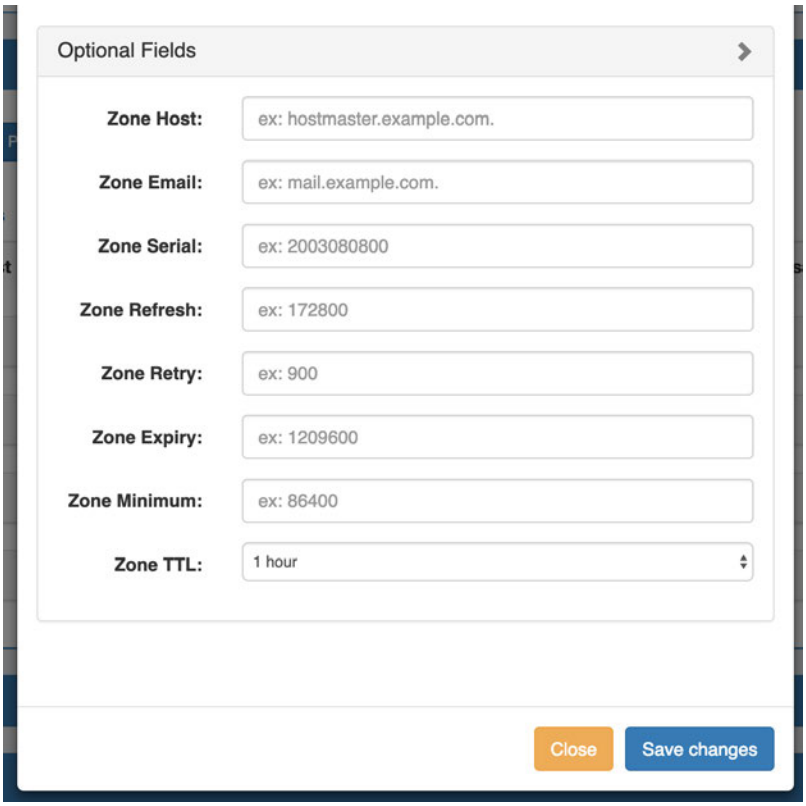
DNSv3 allows you to populate the zone with three options:

- Empty Zone - create the zone as an empty zone, and manually create records
- Populate by AXFR Transfer - transfer zones from an outside server
- Clone an existing zone - use an existing zone as a template, and manually edit as needed

From there, you may either save your changes and complete zone creation, or add in optional field details.

### Optional Fields

Expand the "Optional Fields" section by clicking on the chevron (>) or the "Optional Fields" header.




Under this section, add in optional values for Zone Host, Email, Serial , Refresh, Retry, Expiry, or TTL.

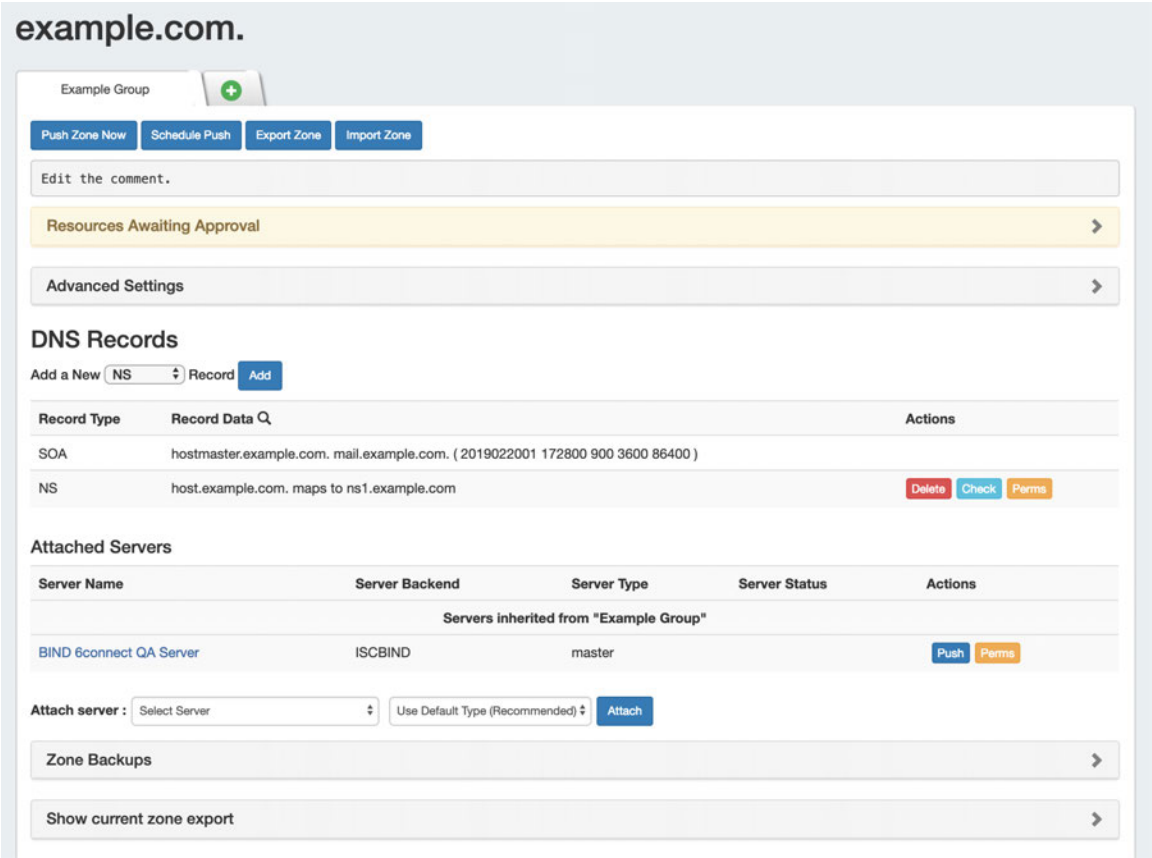
When finished, click "Save Changes".

To exit without saving, simply click "Close".

## Edit a Zone (View Zone page)

Zones may be editing by clicking on the Zone name in any zone list in which it appears - the **DNS Zones** Zone List, **DNS Groups** Zone List, or zones listed as attached to a server under **DNS Servers**.

Clicking on the zone name from any zone list opens up the View Zone page.

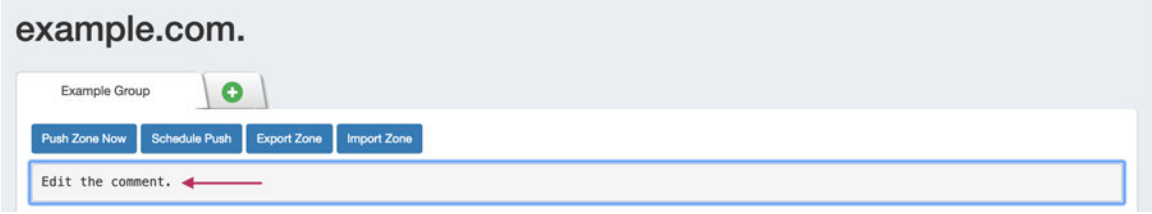



Here, comments may be added, records added or updated, servers attached to the zone, advanced settings edited, backups restored or the zone pushed / exported. For a general interface overview of the View Zone page, see DNS Zones Overview.

For detailed information on working with DNS Records from the View Zone page Record List or the **DNS Records** sub-tab, see Working with DNS Records.

## Add a comment

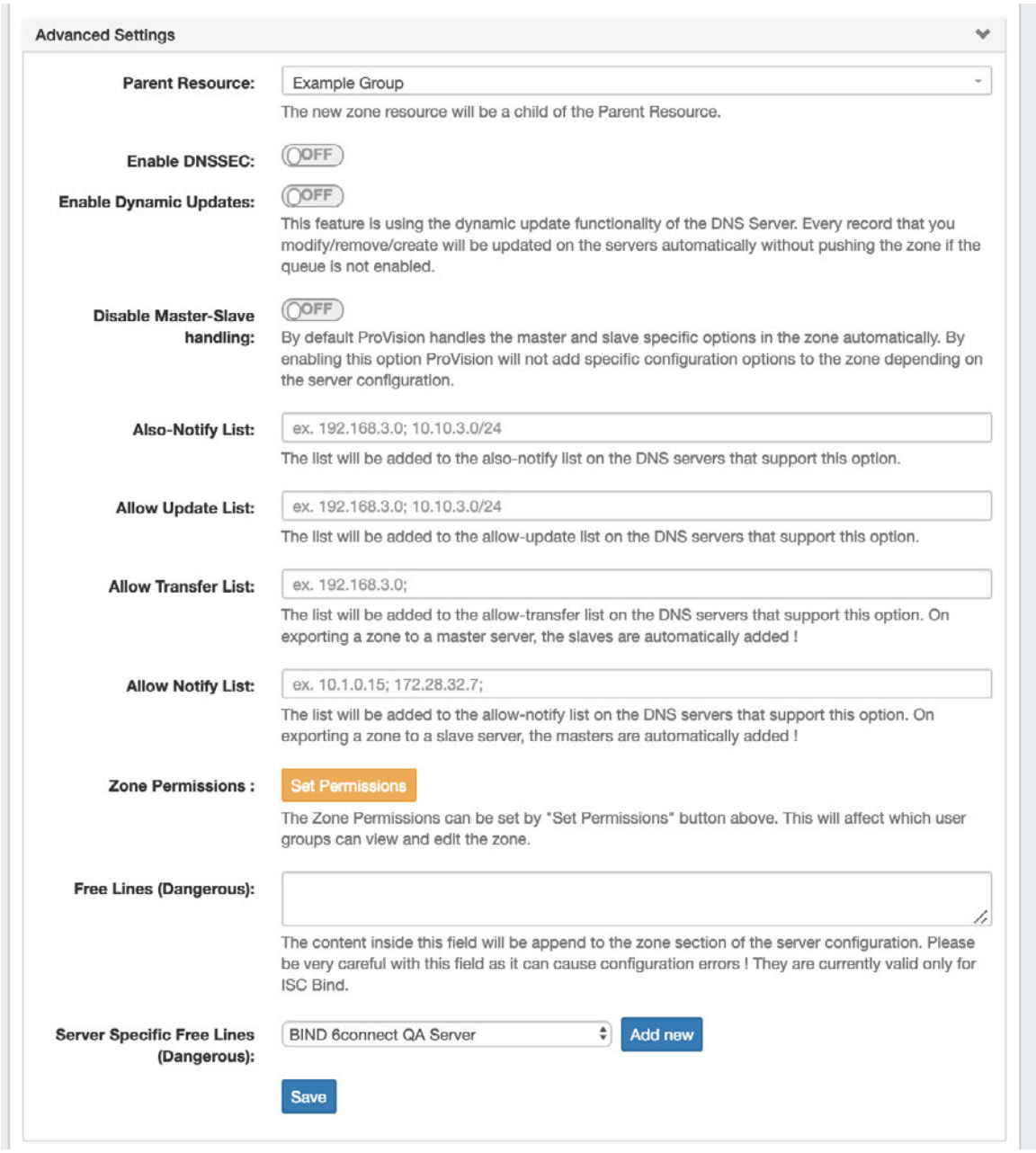
To add a comment to a zone, click anywhere inside the comment area and begin typing. The comment will be saved when an area outside of the comment box is clicked, deselecting the comment area.




## Edit Advanced Settings

Open the zone "Advanced Settings" section by clicking on the header or the expansion arrow (>).

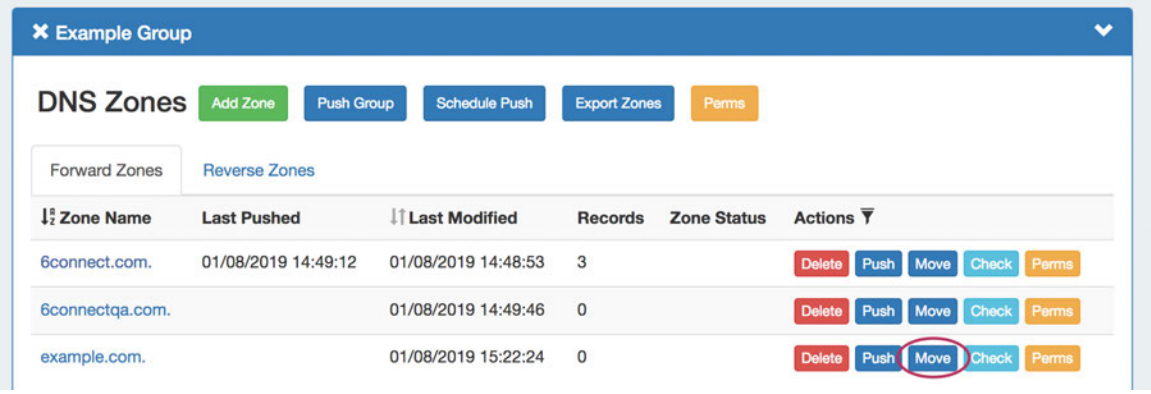
Under this area, you can change settings such as Parent Resource, DNSSEC, Lists, Zone permissions, and free lines.



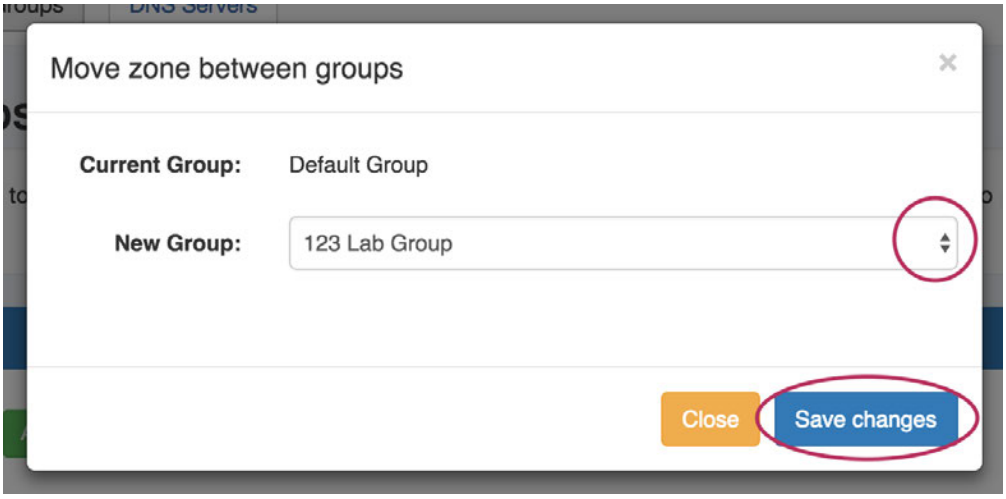

Edit fields as needed, and click "Save" when done.

## Move Zones to a Different Group

Zones may be moved to a different Group than the one created under, by clicking the "Move" button in the zone's Actions menu.




The "Move Zone" modal will appear - select the new Group to move to the zone under, and click "Save Changes" to complete.



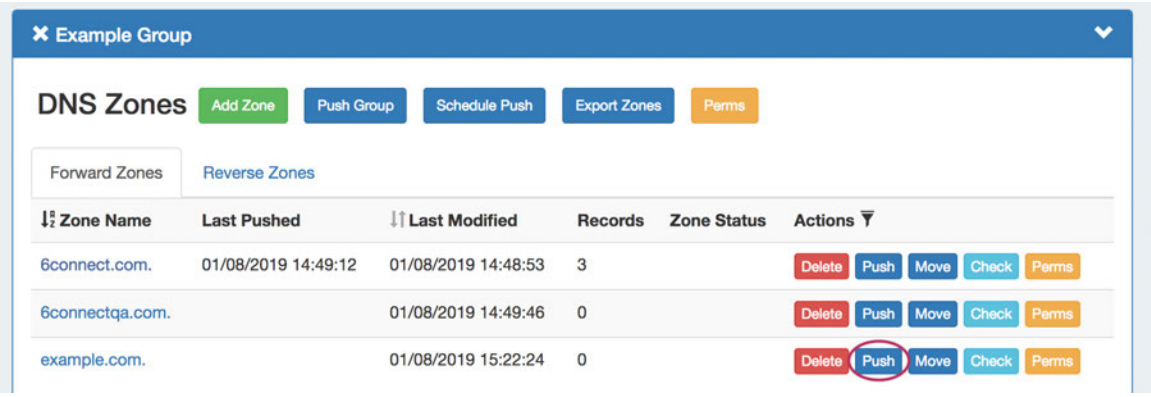

# Pushing Zones

Zones may be pushed individually ("Push Zone Now"), as a scheduled future push ("Schedule Push"), or pushed as part of a Group or Server Push.

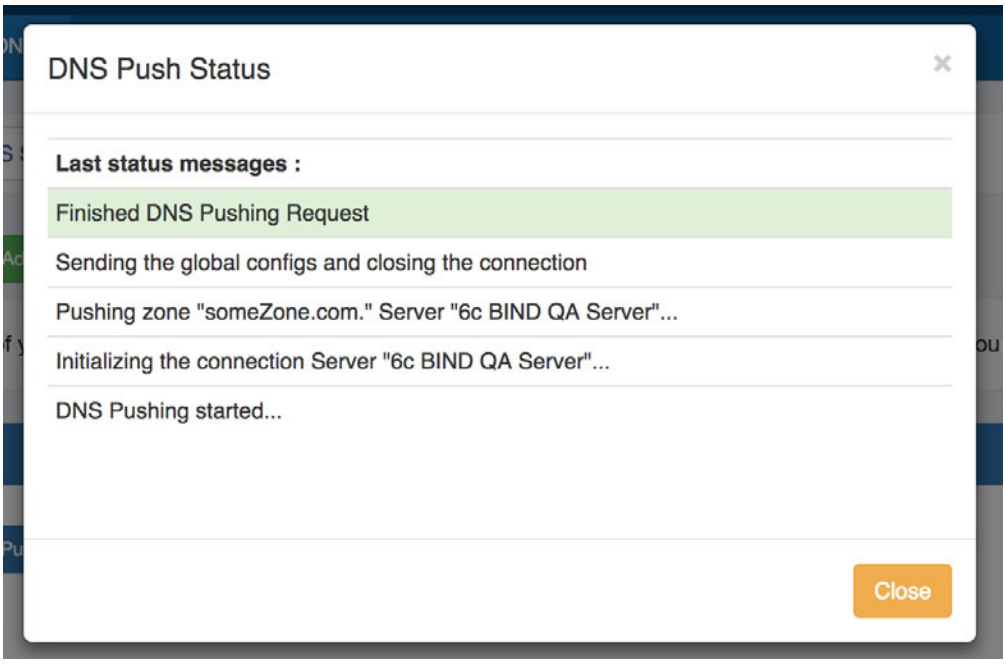
## Push Now (from Group List)

To immediately push a single zone, navigate to the DNS Group the zone is under, then click the "Push" button in the Actions column for the zone.

You may also look for the zone in the **DNS Zones** tab Zone List, and then likewise, click the "Push" button in the zone row.

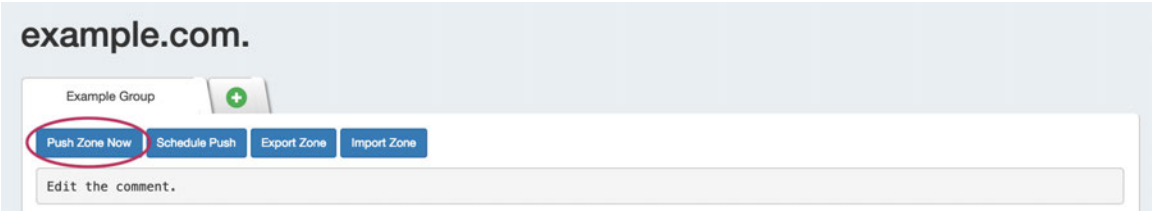



The "Push Status" modal will appear, showing status and any errors that occur. When a successful zone push is complete, a green "Finished DNS Pushing Request" message will appear, and the window may be closed.




## Push Now (from View Zone page)

The View Zone page, accessed from clicking on the zone name in the Group zone list, includes a "Push Zone Now" button that immediately attempts to push the zone to the attached server(s).

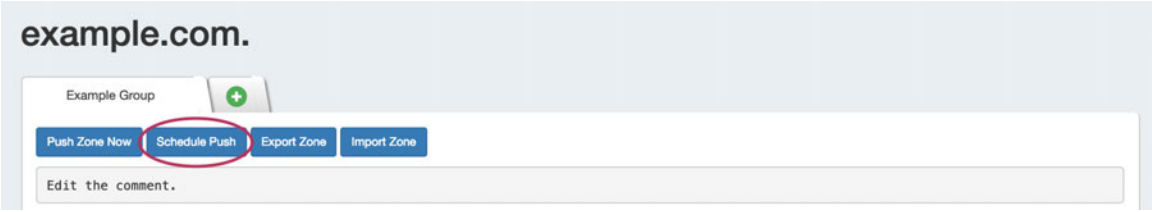



Click on "Push Zone Now", and the "Push Status" modal will appear, showing status and any errors that occur.

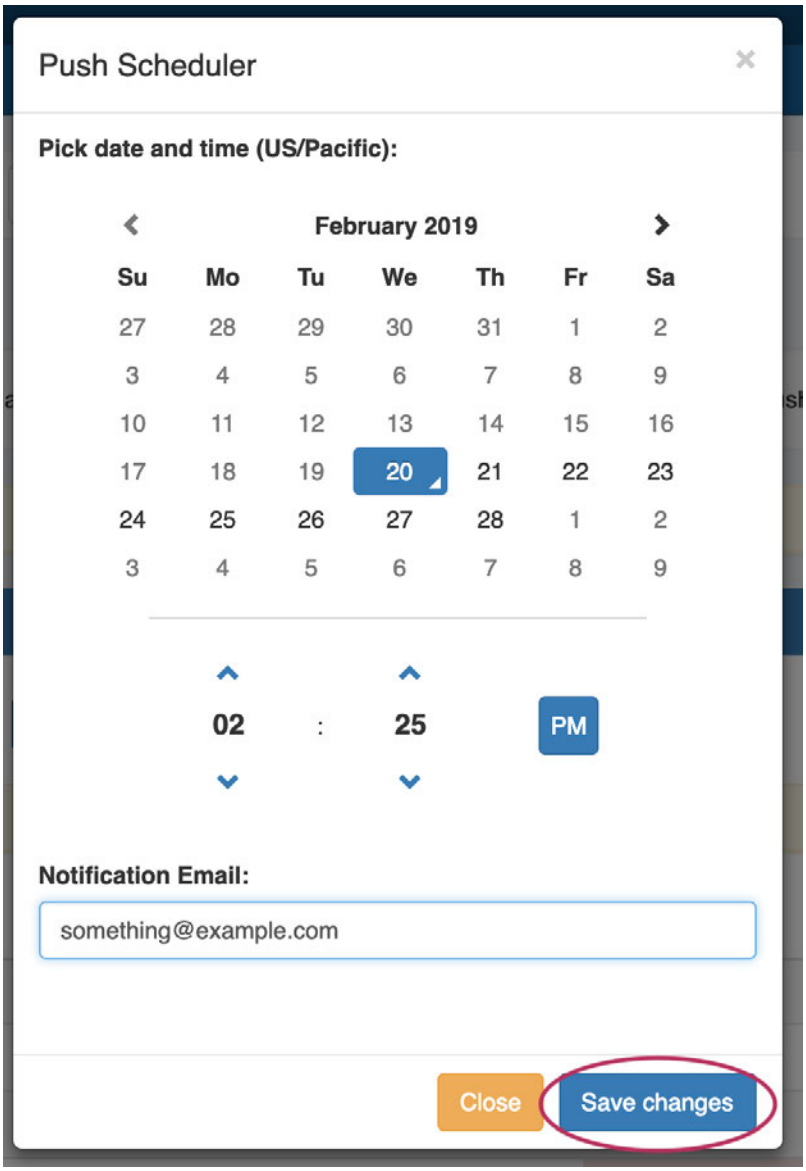
When a successful zone push is complete, a green "Finished DNS Pushing Request" message will appear, and the window may be closed.

## Schedule Push (from View Zone page)

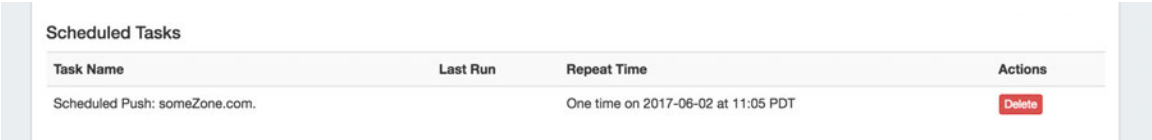
The View Zone page includes an option to schedule a zone push, similar to scheduling a Group push.




Click "Schedule Push" for the zone, then select a date, time (12 hour, with AM / PM toggle), add a notification email address, and click "Save changes".




The Scheduled task will be shown in both the Zone View page (under "Scheduled Tasks") and the Admin Scheduler task list.




The task may be deleted prior to running by clicking the "delete" button, but will automatically be removed once completed.

## Schedule Push (Admin Scheduler):

Scheduled zone and server pushes may also be set up by Admin users from the **Scheduler** tab. For more information, see the Scheduler Tab documentation.

## Group Push:

All zones contained in a DNS Group may be pushed at the same time, by pushing the DNS Group.

For information on working with DNS Groups, including performing a manual or scheduled Group push, see Working with DNS Groups - Pushing a Group.

## Server Push:

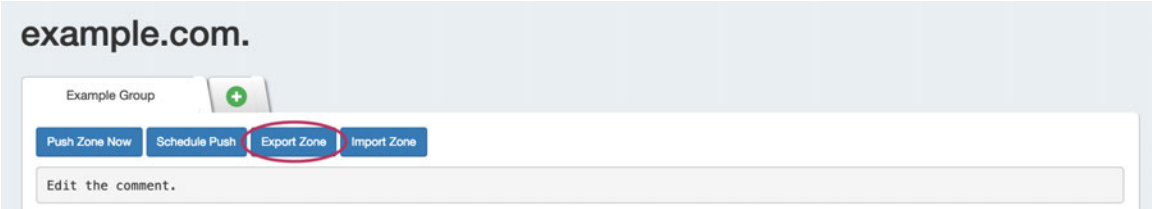
Admin users may push all zones on a server from the **DNS** Tab -> **DNS Servers** page.

For information on working with DNS Servers, including performing a manual or scheduled server push, see Working with DNS Servers - Pushing a Server.

# Export a Zone

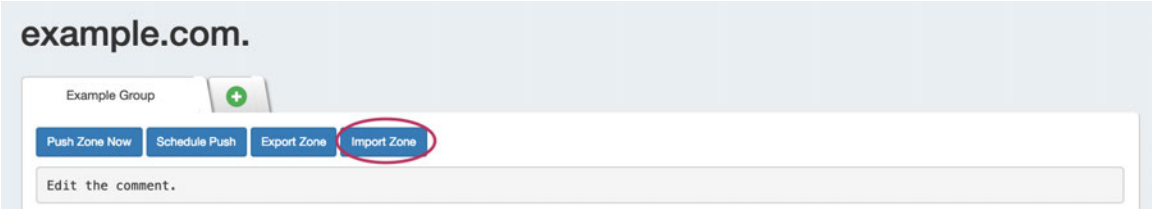
Individual zones may be exported to a .zone file by clicking the "Export Zone" button on the View Zone page.

Individual .zone files may later be compressed into a .zip, and used with ProVision's BIND DNS Zone Upload / Import tool.

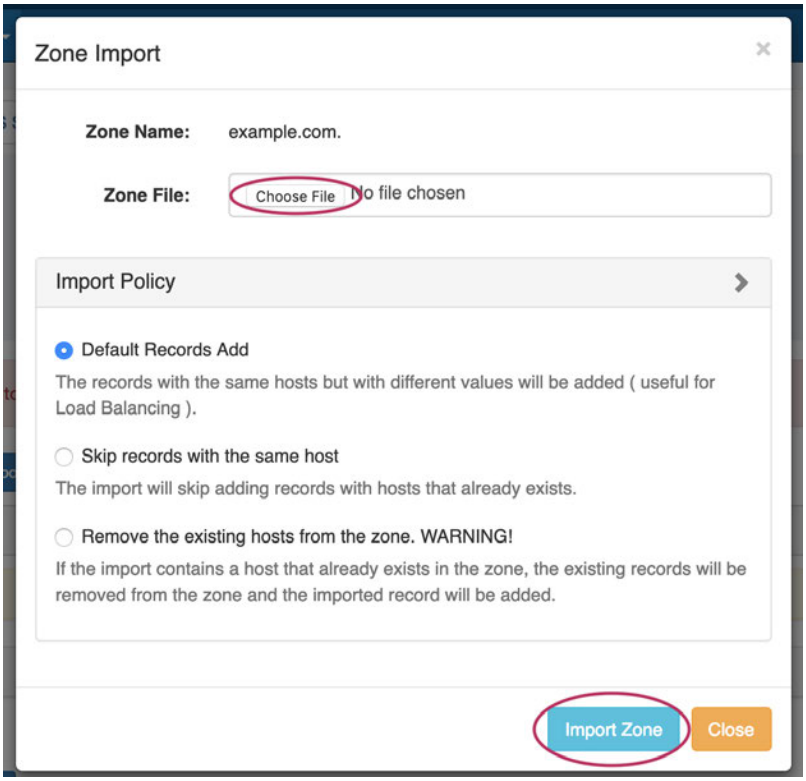



# Import Zone

A  zone file (.zone) may be imported into a ProVision zone to populate record data. Click "Import Zone" on the View Zone page.



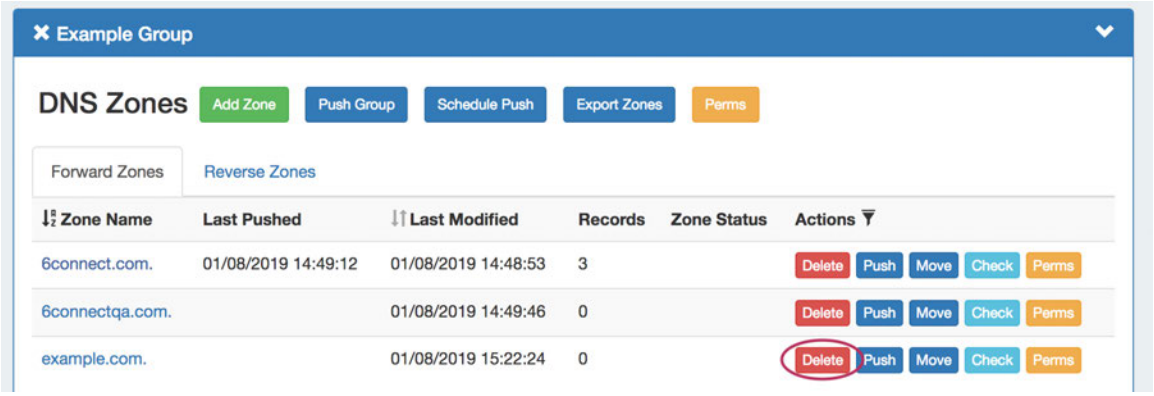

A Zone Import dialog box will open. Next to **Zone File:**, click "Choose File" and select your .zone file to import. Then, select an import policy to follow.




When done, Click "Import Zone".

## Delete a Zone

Users with resource delete permissions over the zone may delete a zone record by clicking the "Delete" button under "Actions" for the desired zone entry in any Zone List.




## Addiitonal Information:

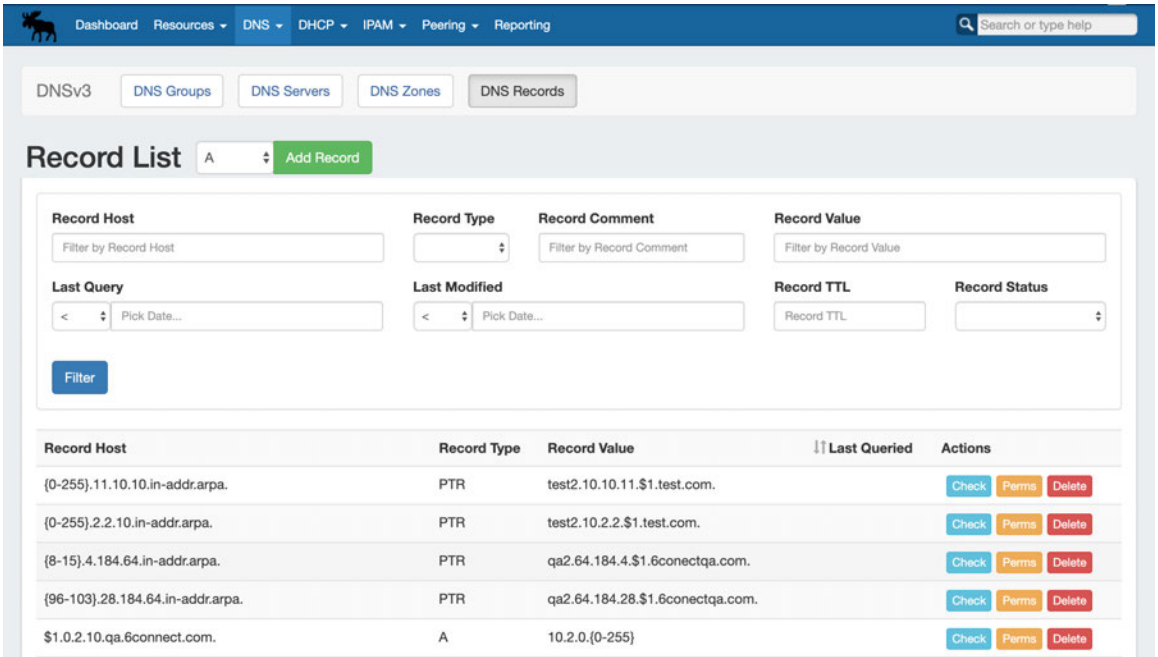
For more information on working with DNS Zones, Groups, and Servers, see the following sections:

- DNS Tab
- Working with DNS Groups
- Working with DNS Records
- Editing DNS Zones (The View Zone Page)

- DNS Administration
- Import DNS Zones
- Approvals

# Working with DNS Records

# Working with DNS Records




DNS Records may be managed either from the View Zone page (for the records under the respective zone) or globally through the **DNS Records** sub-tab.


- Working with DNS Records
  - Working with Zone Records - View Zone Page
    - Add Zone Records
    - Edit Zone Records
    - Delete Zone Records
    - Check a Record
    - Attach / Detach Servers to a Zone
    - Restore a Zone / Record from Backup
  - Working with Records - DNS Records sub-tab
    - Filter Records
    - Work with Records
    - Add a New Record
  - Additional Information

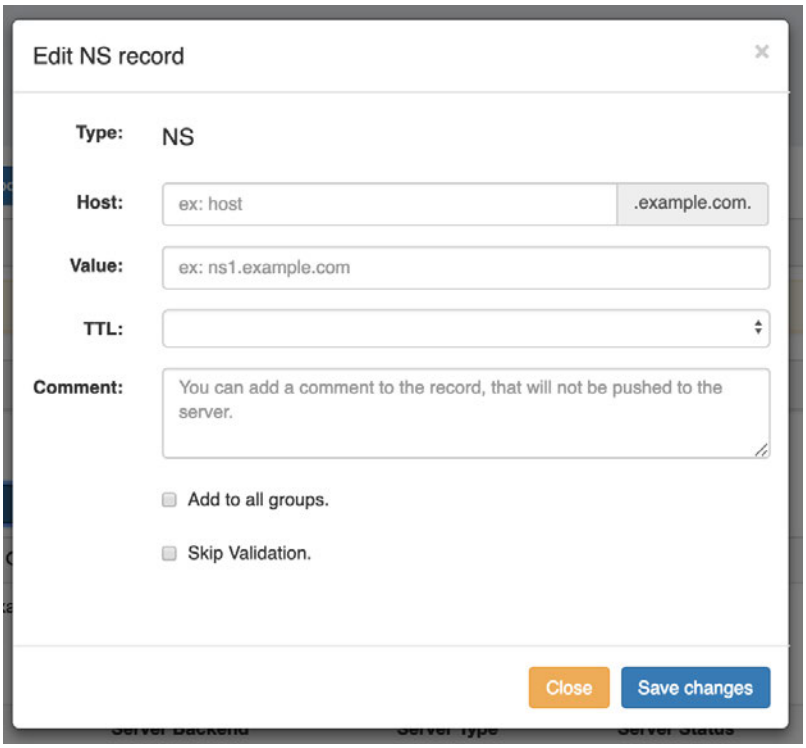

## Working with Zone Records - View Zone Page

### Add Zone Records

From the View Zone page, under DNS Records, look for the line "Add a new ___ Record".

Select the desired record type from the dropdown list, then click "Add".

Fill in the information for the new record, selecting options for adding to groups or skipping validation.

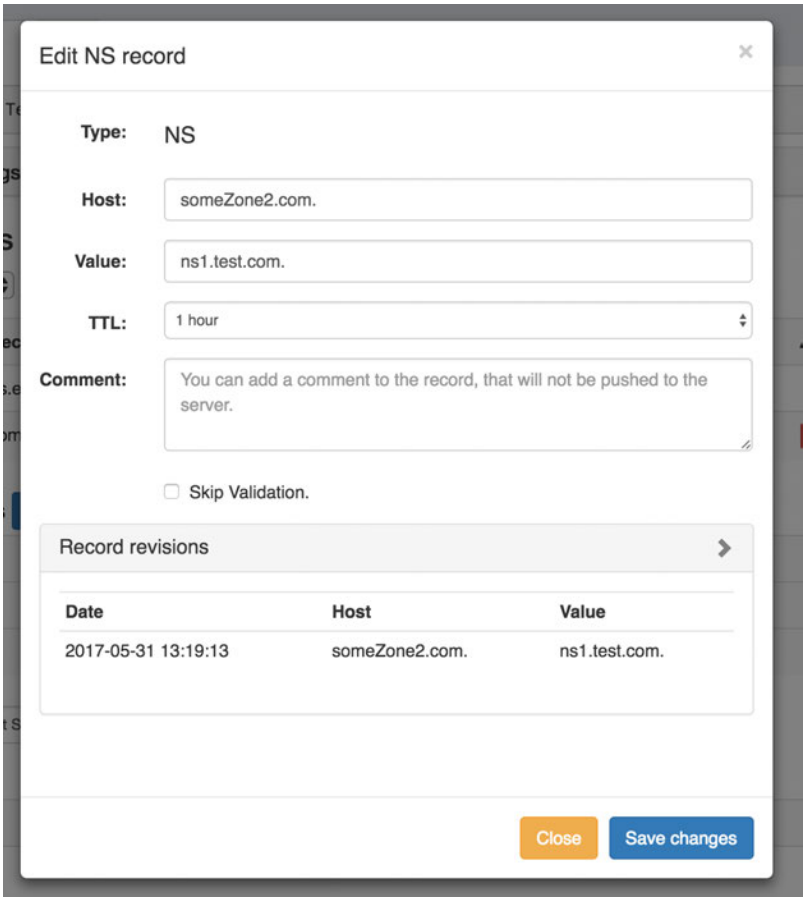



When done, click "Save Changes".

## Edit Zone Records

To edit an existing zone record, click on the record line in the DNS Records list.

The Edit Record dialog will open, allowing you to fill in record details.




Fill in the Host, Value, TTL, and comment if desired.

An option exists to "Skip Validation" - check to select if you wish to bypass validation for the record.

If previous versions of the record exist, the revision log will be visible under "Record revisions".

When edits or reviewing is complete, click "Save changes", or "Close" to exit without saving.

## Delete Zone Records

Delete a zone record by clicking the "Delete" button under "Actions" for the desired record entry.

## Check a Record

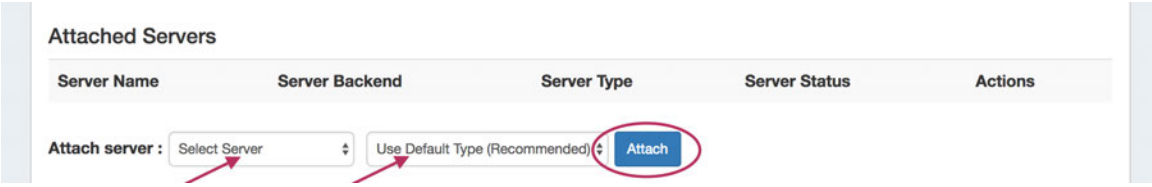
Check a record for errors by clicking the "Check" button under "Actions" for the desired record entry.

A dialog box will appear, with details on any errors.

You may clear the error if desired, recheck, or close the box.

## Attach / Detach Servers to a Zone

Under the "Attached Servers" section of the View Zone page, next to "Attach Server:", select the desired server to attach and choose the server type (Default, Master, Slave), then click the "Attach" button.

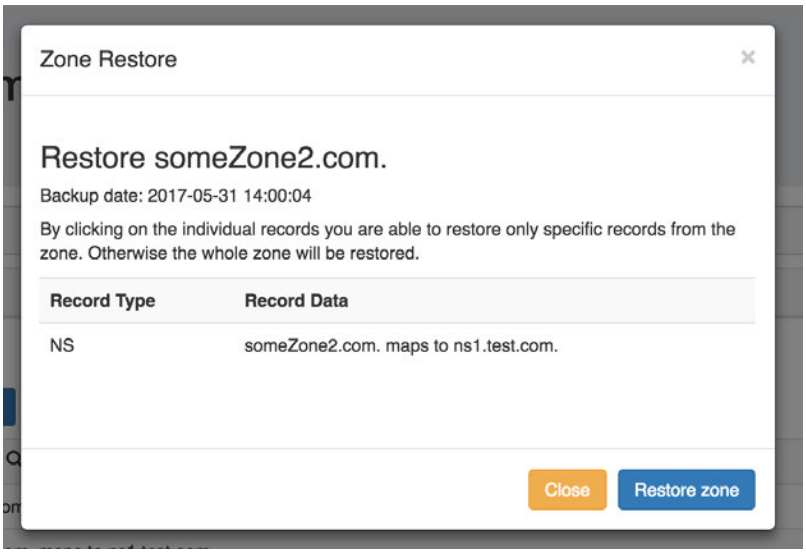



To detach a server from a zone, look for the server under the "Attached Servers" list, then click "Detach" under actions for that server.

## Restore a Zone / Record from Backup

If a zone has had changes successfully pushed, a "Zone Backups" section appears near the bottom of the page, showing the date and time of the backup.

To view details, or restore the zone to the previous version, click on the row of the desired date/time backup, and the "Zone Restore" module will open.

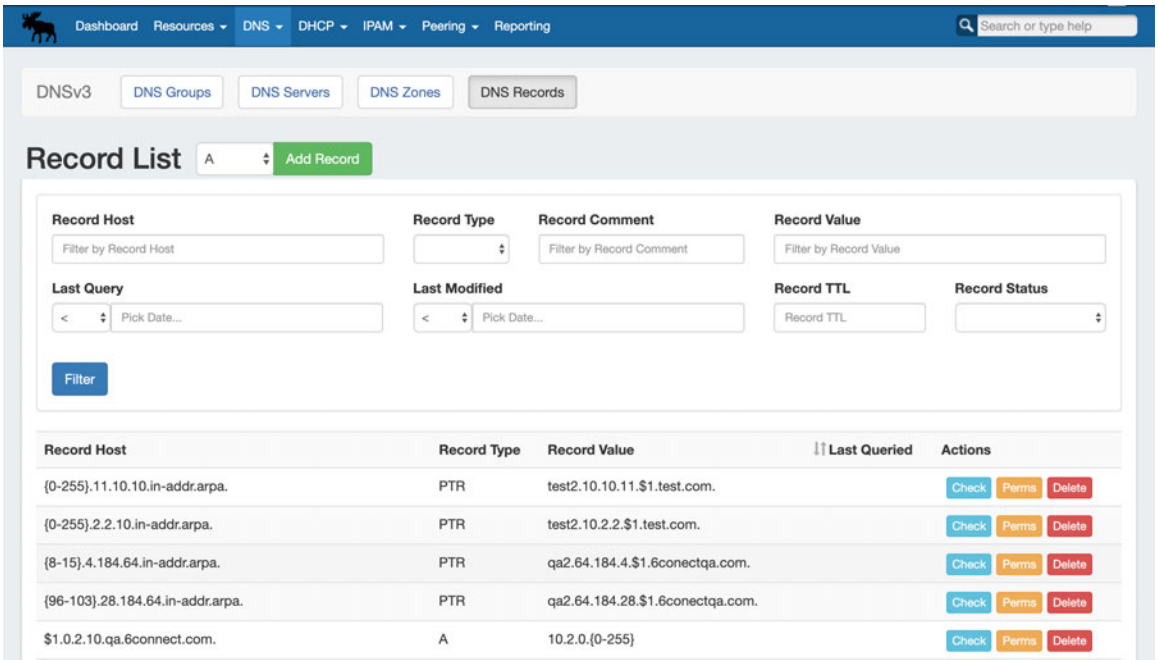


From here, you may restore individual records by clicking on them, or restore the entire zone by clicking the "Restore Zone" button.

To exit without saving, click the "Close" button.

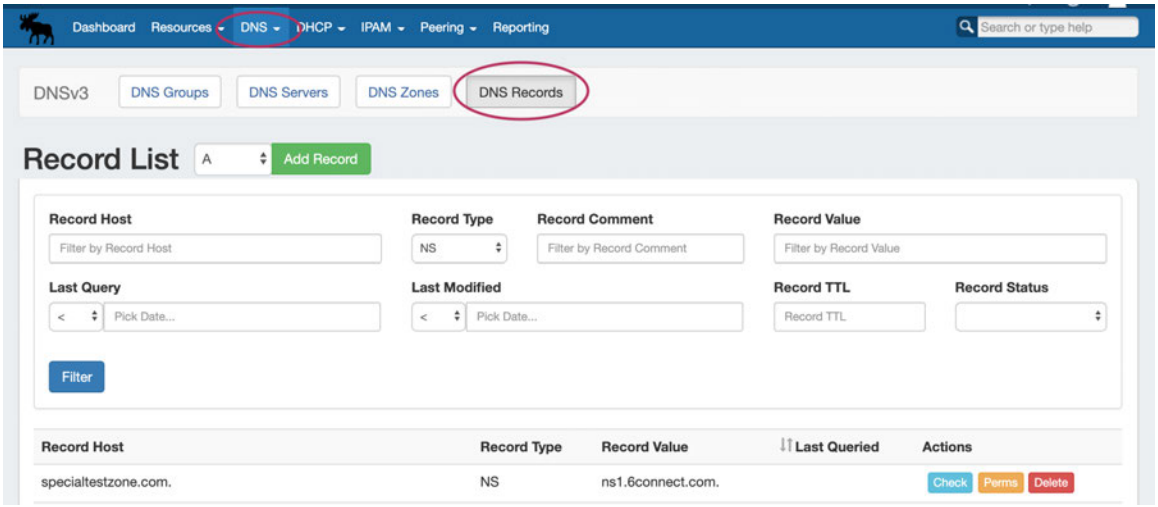
# Working with Records - DNS Records sub-tab

The DNS Records sub-tab provides a global list records for expedited searching, filtering, adding, and editing of DNS Records.




From the DNS Tab, click on the "DNS Records" sub-tab button, or select it from the DNS dropdown menu.

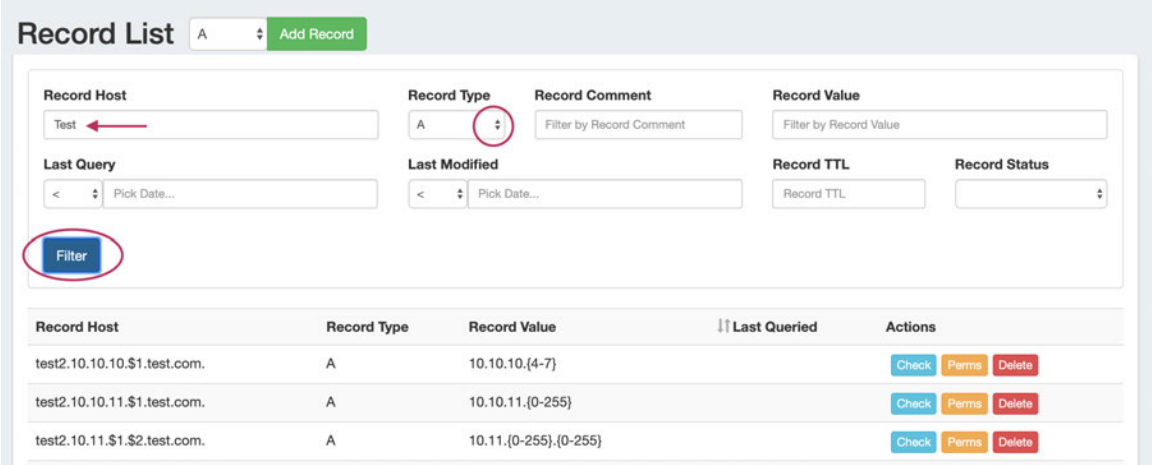
All DNS records available in ProVision displays in a single Record List, along with Host, Type, Value, and Last Queried information.




## Filter Records

Search for specific records by filtering by Host, Type, Comment, Value, Last Query, Last Modified, Record TTL, or Status.

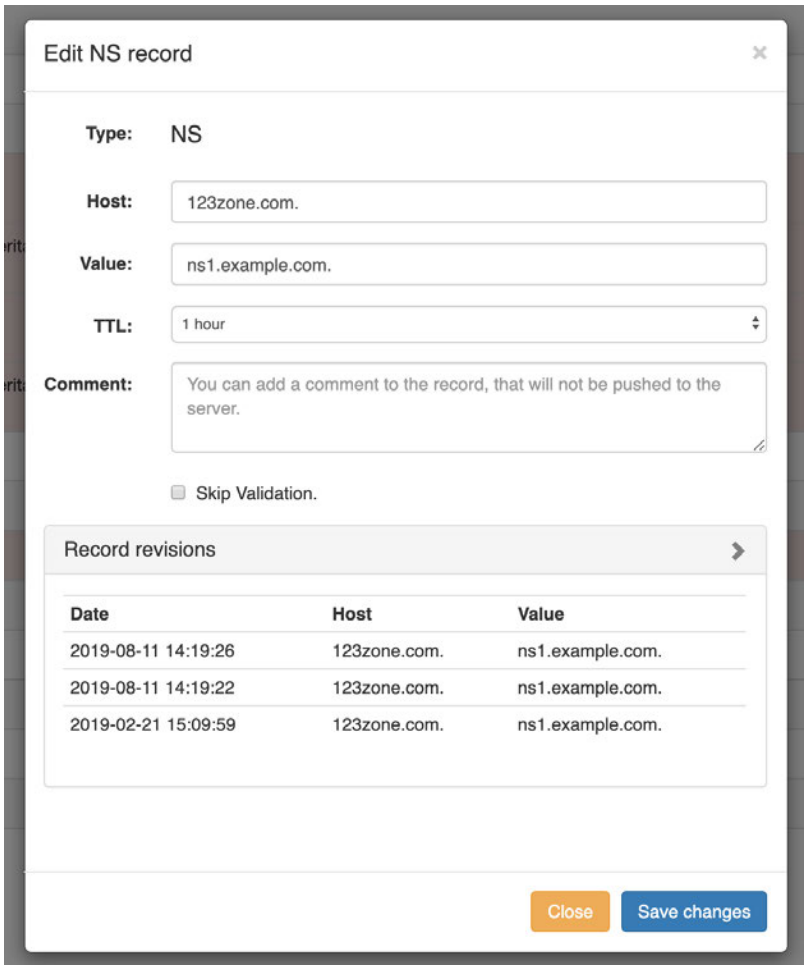
After entering your filter criteria, click "Filter".




## Work with Records

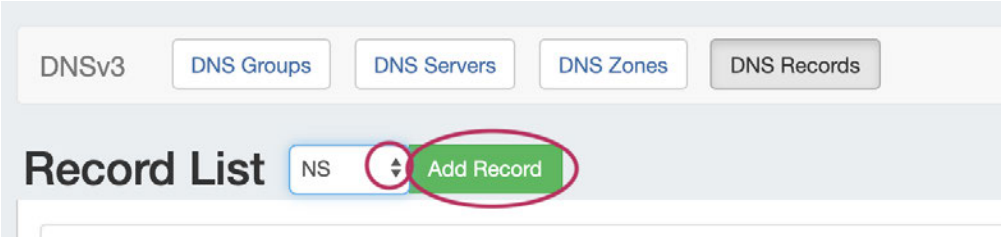
For each record, you may:

- Click the "Check" button to run an DNS Monitor error check on the record
- Review or change record permissions by clicking "Perms" (Admin only)
- Delete the record by clicking "Delete"
- Review or Edit record details by double-clicking on the row for the desired record.
    - Review record revision dates or enter your desired edit, then click "Save changes" to complete.

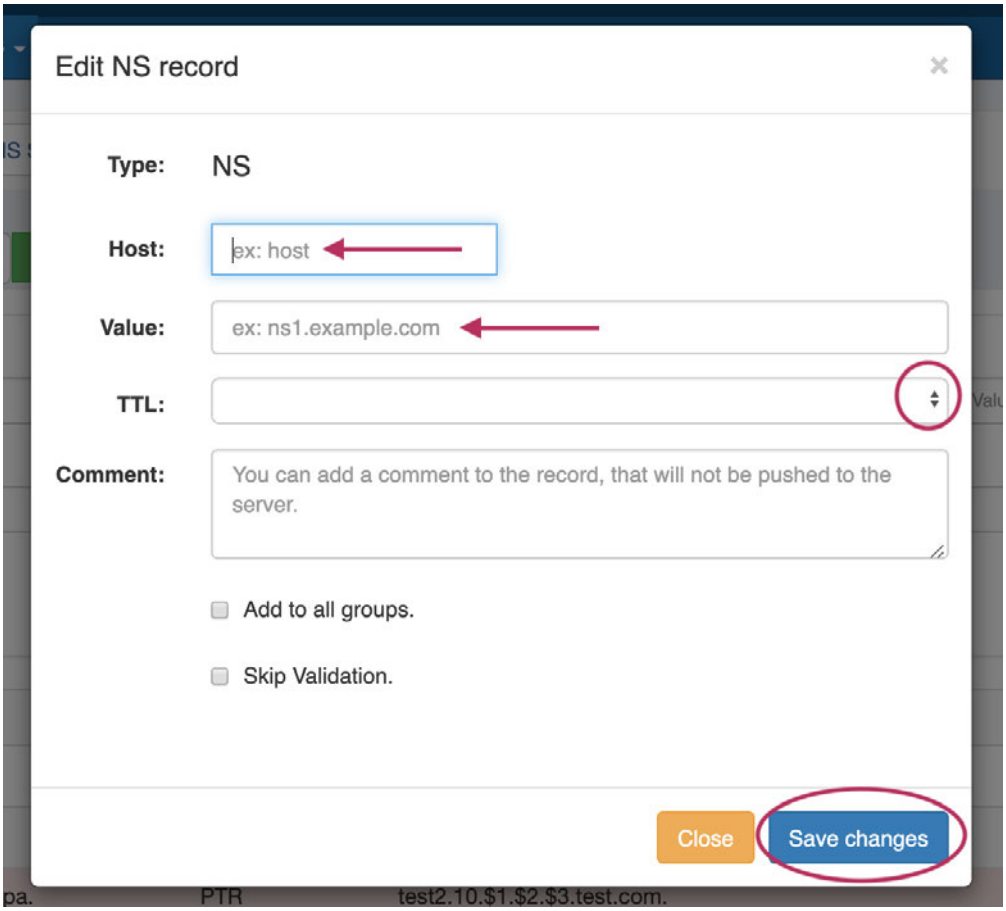



## Add a New Record

Next to "Record List", select the desired record type, then click "Add Record".




Enter the record information for the record type. When done, click "Save Changes".




## Additional Information

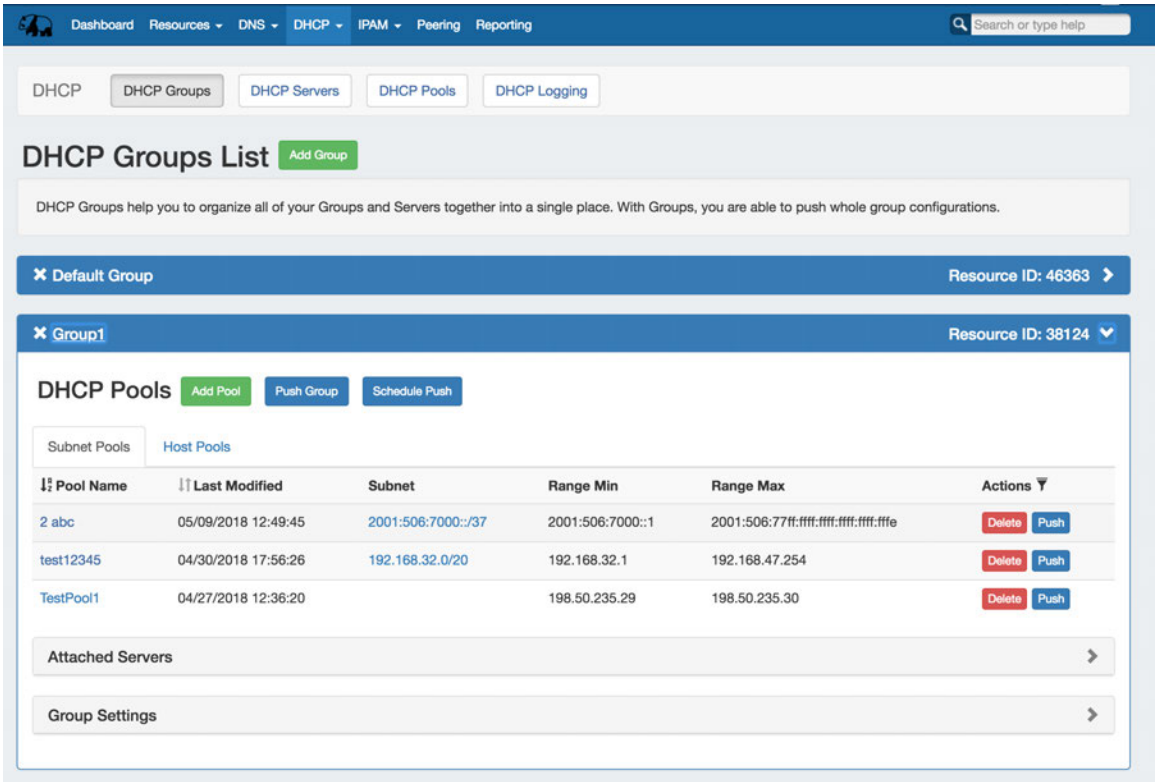
For more information on DNSv3 tasks, see:

- Working with DNS Zones
- DNS Zones Overview
- DNS Administration
- Working with DNS Servers
- Approvals

# DHCP Tab

## The DHCP Tab

ProVision's **DHCP** Tab combines server management, group organization, and pool management under one tab.




The **DHCP** tab contains four sub-tabs: **DHCP Groups, DHCP Servers, DHCP Pools, and DCHP Logging**.

The **DHCP Groups** tab is where DHCP servers and pools are managed as a part of DHCP Groups. The **DHCP** tab **DHCP Groups List** allows you to create, view, and manage groups of DHCP servers and pools. Using groups, you can configure and push selected combinations of pools at one time.

The **DHCP Servers** tab is only accessible to Admin users, and contains functions for adding, updating, and managing DHCP servers as well as scheduling server tasks. For Admin-level DHCP tasks, see Working with DHCP Servers.

The **DHCP Pools** tab lists all the pools created in ProVision able to be viewed by the user, in the same format as on the **DHCP Groups** page, but without the Group organization. The Pool List allows you to view, add, delete, and push individual DHCP Host and Subnet Pools.

The **DHCP Logging** tab provides a link to ProVision's logging system, where you can filter to view DHCP-only logs.


- The DHCP Tab
  - Permissions
  - Additional Information


## Permissions

DHCP Management integrates with ProVision's resource and permissions hierarchy, as well as the IP Management system. Individual DHCP servers can be assigned via Resource Permissions to different internal user groups, to be managed by only the appropriate parties.

# Additional Information

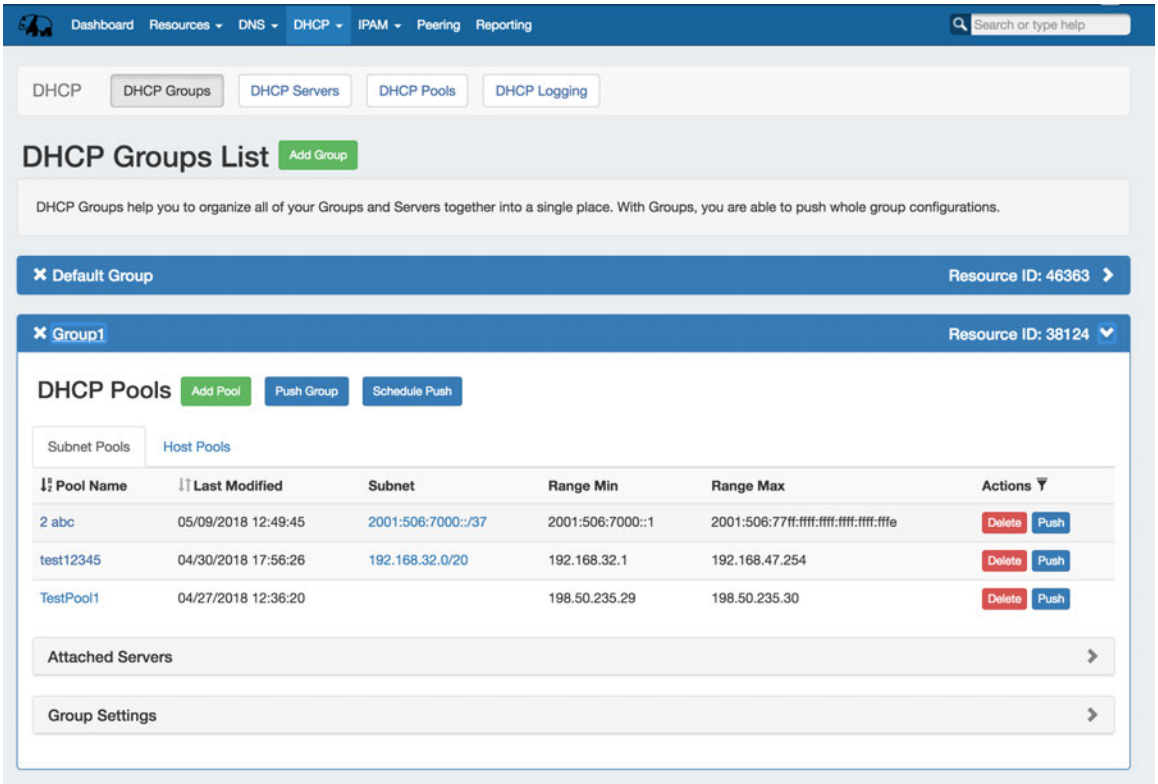
See the following sections for detail on working within the DHCP Tab:

- Working with DHCP Groups
- Working with DHCP Pools
- Working with DHCP Gadgets

For more detail on advanced DHCP topics and the DHCP API, see API Module - DHCP.

# Working with DHCP Groups

# DHCP Groups

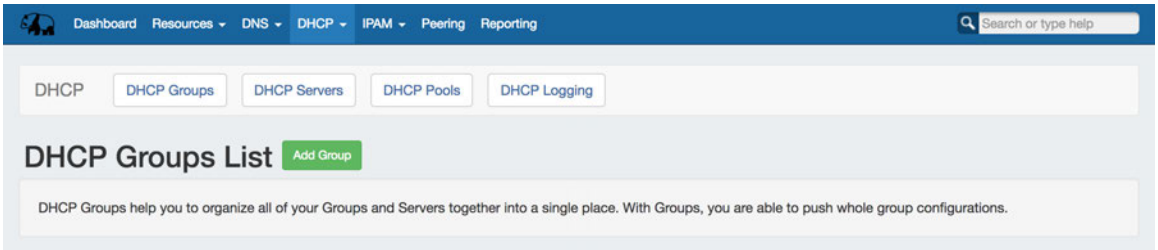



The DHCP tab **DHCP Groups List** allows you to create, view, and manage groups of DHCP Servers and Pools. Using groups, you can configure and push selected combinations of zones at one time.


- DHCP Groups
  - DHCP Groups List Interface
- Working with DHCP Groups
  - Add a Group
  - Edit a Group
    - Edit a Group Name:
    - Edit a Group's Settings:
      - Edit Parent Resource
      - Edit Failover Name
  - Add Pools to a Group
    - Add a Subnet Pool
      - Smart Assign
      - Direct Assign
    - Add a Host Pool
      - Smart Assign
      - Direct Assign
  - Pushing a DHCP Group
    - Manual Group Push
    - Scheduled Group Push
  - Delete a Group
  - Additional Information

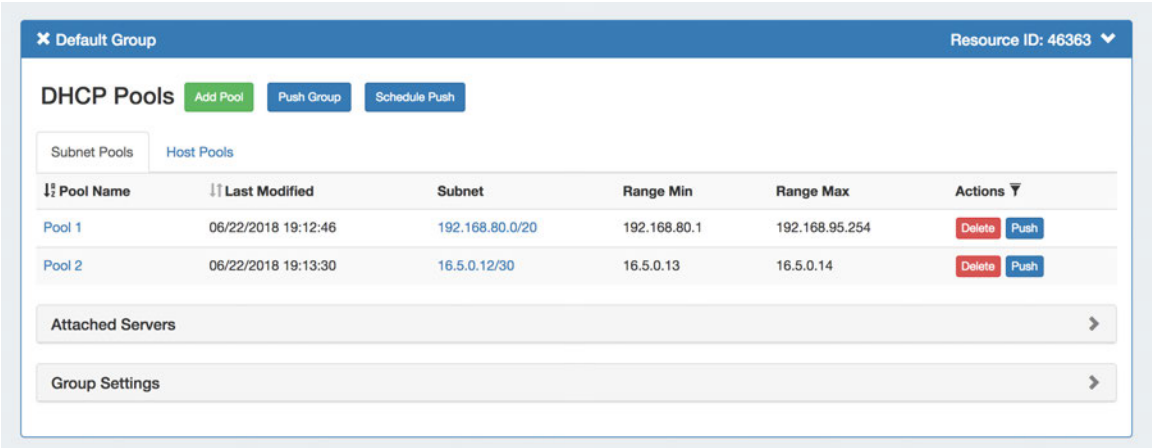

## DHCP Groups List Interface

**Navigation:** Move between the DHCP Groups, DHCP Servers, DHCP Pools, and DHCP Logging pages via the subtab buttons below the main navigation bar.




**1) Add Group Button**: Opens a dialog for creating a DHCP Group

**2) Group Container**: The Group container header shows the group name. Expand or close the group container by clicking on the expansion arrow ( > ) on the far right of the header. Clicking on the X will delete the Group and all zones included in the group. Rename the group by clicking on the name, then typing the desired changes and clicking outside of the name.



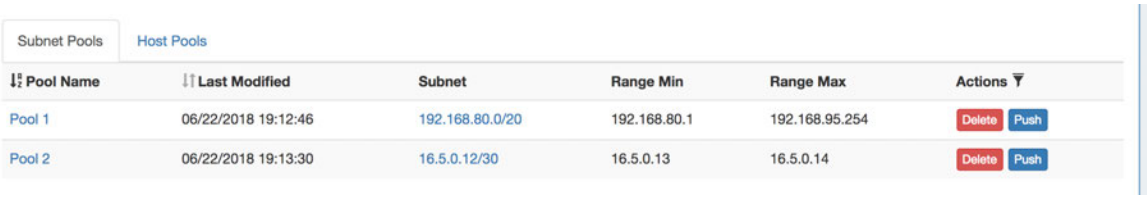

**Group Pool Actions:**

**3) Add Pool Button:** Opens a dialog for creating a DHCP Pool under that group.

**4) Push Group Button:** Pushes all pools in the group to the associated DHCP server.

**5) Schedule Push Button:** Schedules a push of all pools in the group to the selected day and time. Requires the scheduler tab / cron tasks to be enabled.

**6) Pool List:** Subnet and Host Pools included in the Group.




**7) Subnet / Host Pools Tabs**: Shows zone list containing only forward or reverse zones, respectively.

**8) Pool Name (Sortable):** The name of the pool. Clicking on the pool name will open the pool details page. Clicking on the "Pool Name" header will sort the zone list by ascending or descending by name.

**9) Last Modified (Sortable):** The date and time the pool was last modified. Clicking on the "Last Modified" header will sort the list by most / least recent modification date.

**10) Subnet (or IP):** The subnet or IP of the subnet/host pool, respectively.

**11) Range Min (or MAC):** The starting range address for subnet pools, or the MAC for host pools.

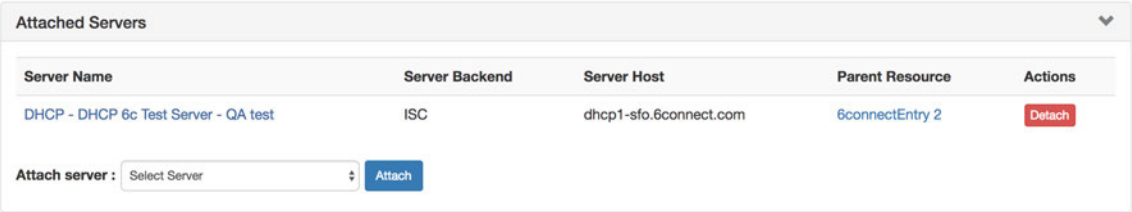
**12) Range Max:** For the subnet list, the ending range address for the pool.

**13) Actions:** Clicking on the "Actions" header will reveal sortable filters for selected fields. Buttons under the Actions column indicate actions that may be performed on each pool:

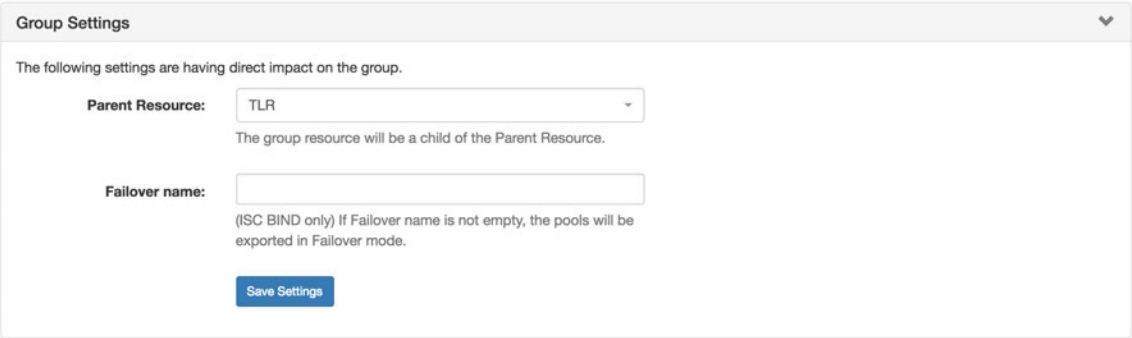
**14) Delete:** Deletes the pool from ProVision.

**15) Push**: Pushes the pool to the associated server.

**16) Attached Servers:** Click on the header title or > to expand or collapse. View, attach, or detach a DHCP server from the group.

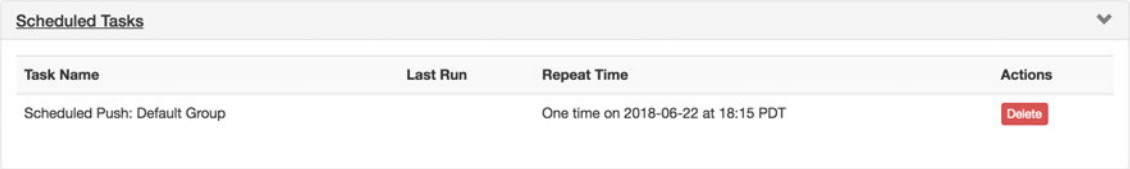



**17) Group Settings:** Click on the header title or > to expand or collapse. Edit default group settings including the Parent Resource and Failover name.




**18) Save Settings Button:** Saves any changes made to the DHCP Group Settings options.

**22) Scheduled Tasks:** If a scheduled push has been set up for the group, the task information will show in a "Scheduled Tasks" module. Click on the header title or > to expand or collapse.




From here, you may review or delete scheduled group pushes.

# Working with DHCP Groups

DHCP Groups allow for organizing multiple pools together and linking those pools with one or more servers. Pools may be pushed individually, as a Group, or at the server level.

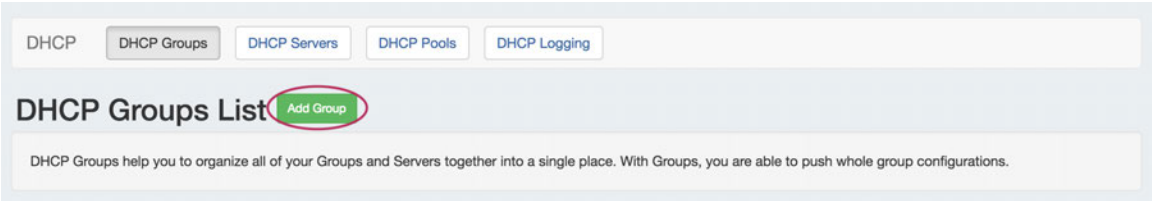
ProVision automatically designates a Default Group for pools to be imported or added into. Creating additional Groups is completely optional.

## Add a Group

Create DHCP Groups by clicking the "Add Group" Button, then add subnet or host pools under the group by clicking "Add Pool" for the desired Group.

Pools may be pushed individually, as a part of a DHCP Group, or through pushing an entire DHCP Server.

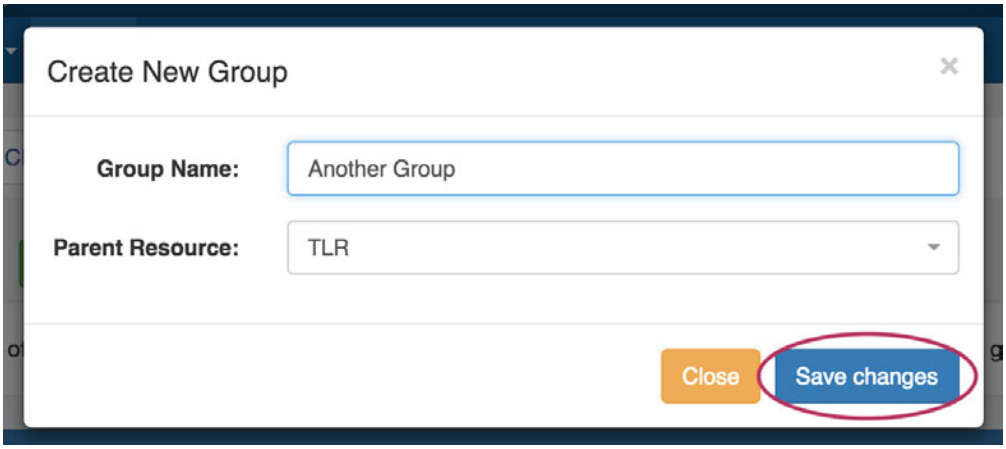
To create a new Group, from the **DHCP** Tab, select the **DHCP Groups** sub menu. Then, click the "Add Group" button next to "DNS Groups List".




This will open the "Create New Group" dialog.

Enter the desired Group Name and select a parent resource.

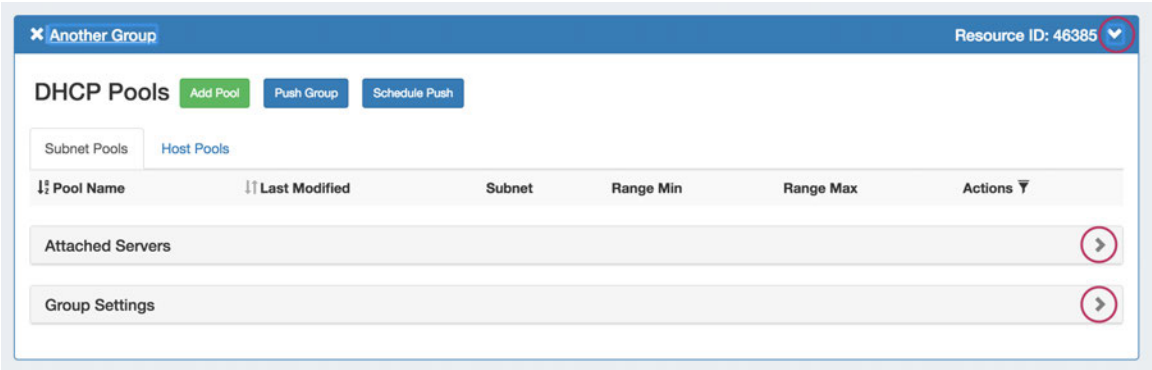
Click the "Save Changes" button when complete.




The new group will be added to the DHCP Groups List.

Open the Group container for the new Group by clicking on the expansion arrow at the top right corner of the header.

Information for Attached Servers and Group Settings may also be viewed and edited by clicking on the expansion arrows for each section.

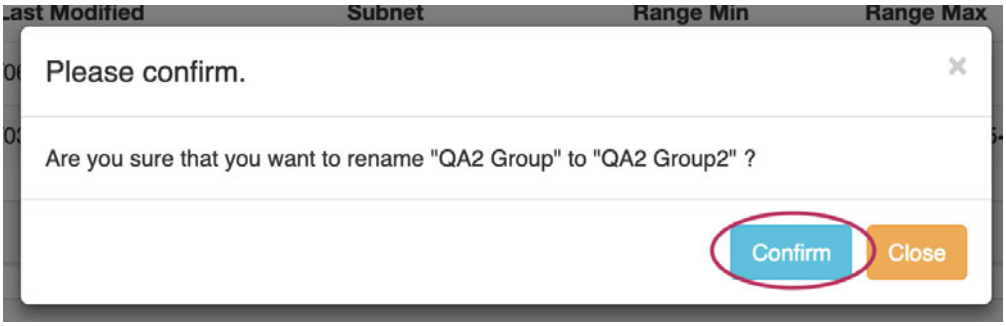



# Edit a Group

## Edit a Group Name:

Edit the name for a Group by clicking inside the Group's Name. A highlight box will appear around the name, and a cursor inside the box.

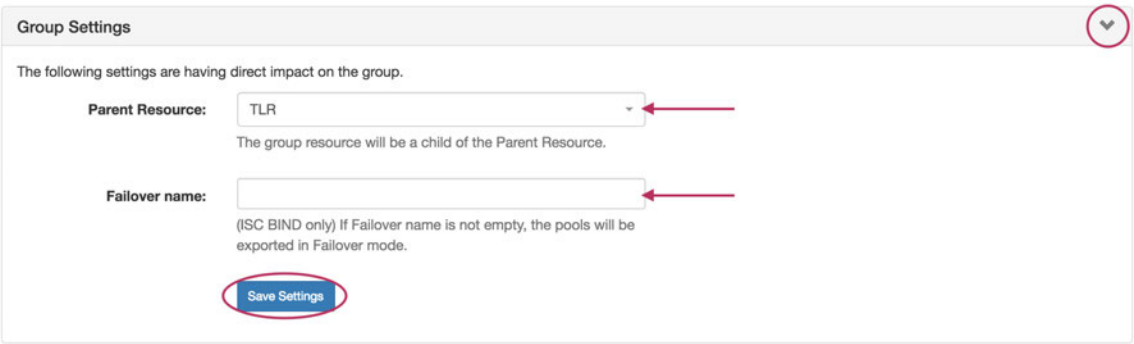
Edit the text as desired using your mouse or arrow keys to navigate through the text. When complete, click anywhere outside of the name box, and a confirmation dialog will appear.




Click "Confirm" to save your changes, or "Close" to exit without saving.

## Edit a Group's Settings:

Under the desired Group, expand the "Group Settings" module by clicking on the expansion arrow in the upper right corner of the header.




### Edit Parent Resource

Change the parent resource for the DHCP Group by searching and selecting the desired resource from the dropdown box.

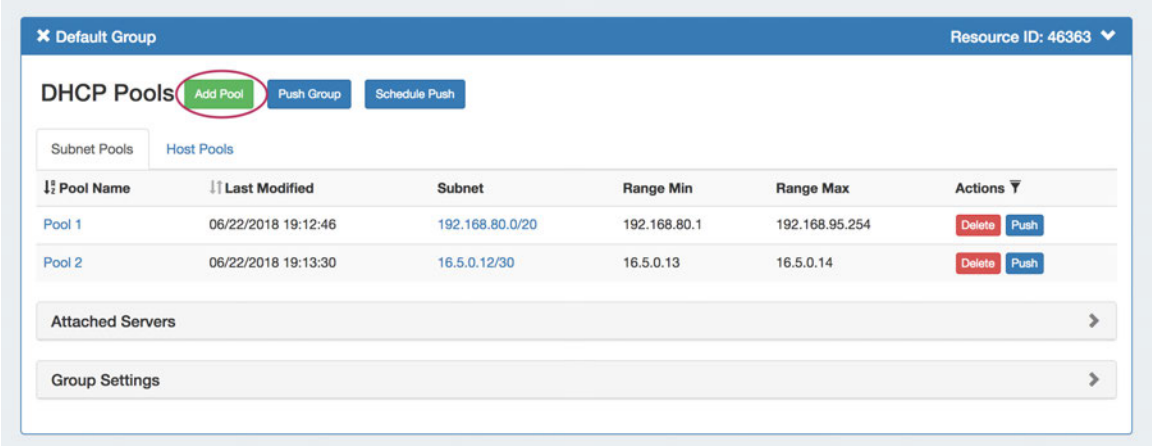
### Edit Failover Name

Edit the Failover name by typing the name directly in the Failover Name input. If the Failover name is not empty, the pools will be exported in Failover mode. NOTE: This is for ISC BIND only.

When done with your edits, be sure to click the "Save Settings" button.

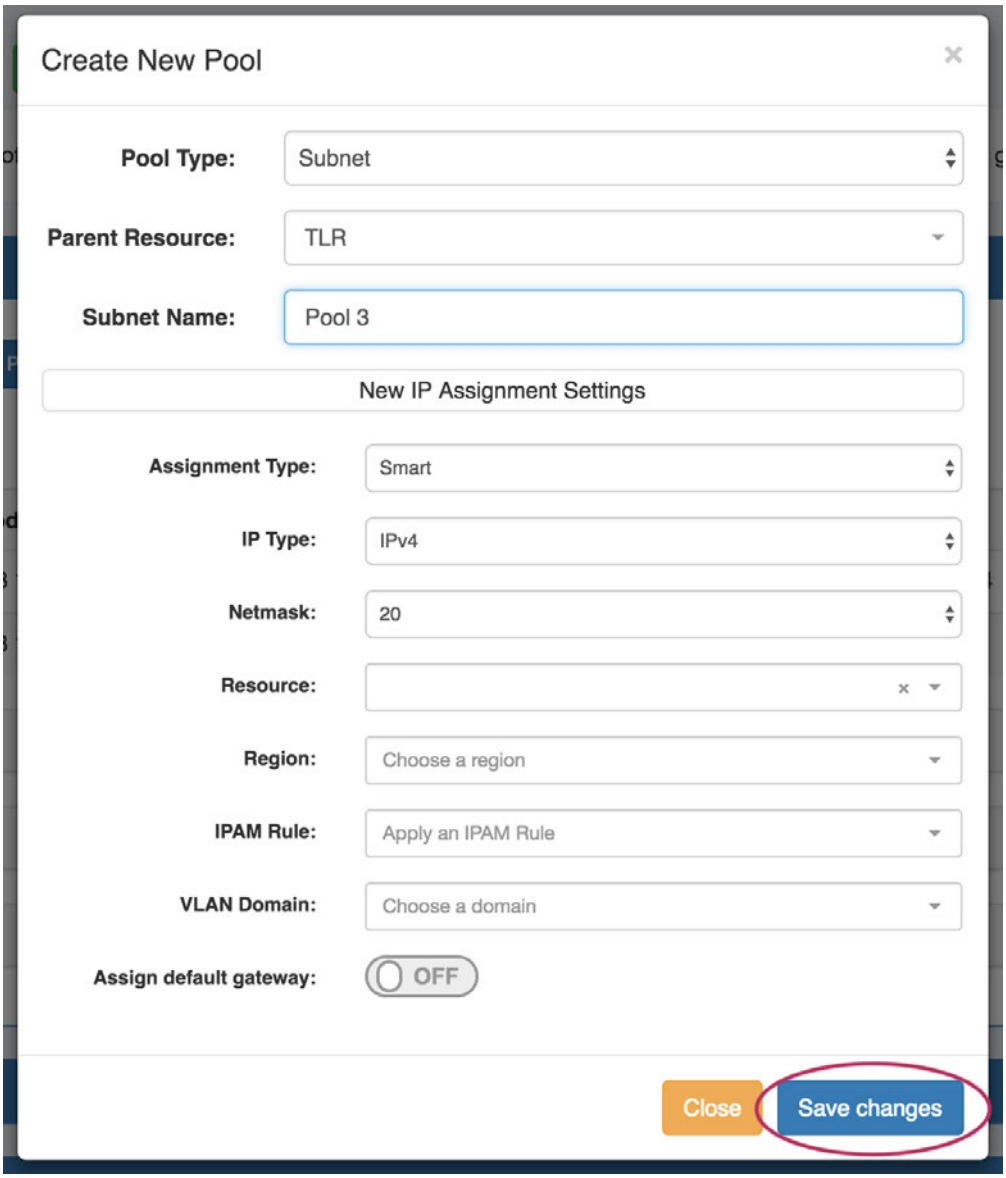
# Add Pools to a Group

To add a new pool to a DHCP Group, click the "Add Pool" button inside the desired Group.




## Add a Subnet Pool

To add a new subnet pool to a DHCP Group, select "Subnet" as the Pool Type. Select the parent resource and type in a Subnet Name.



Next, choose an assignment type - you may either have ProVision smart assign a block for the pool that matches your provided criteria, or directly assign a specific block.

## Smart Assign

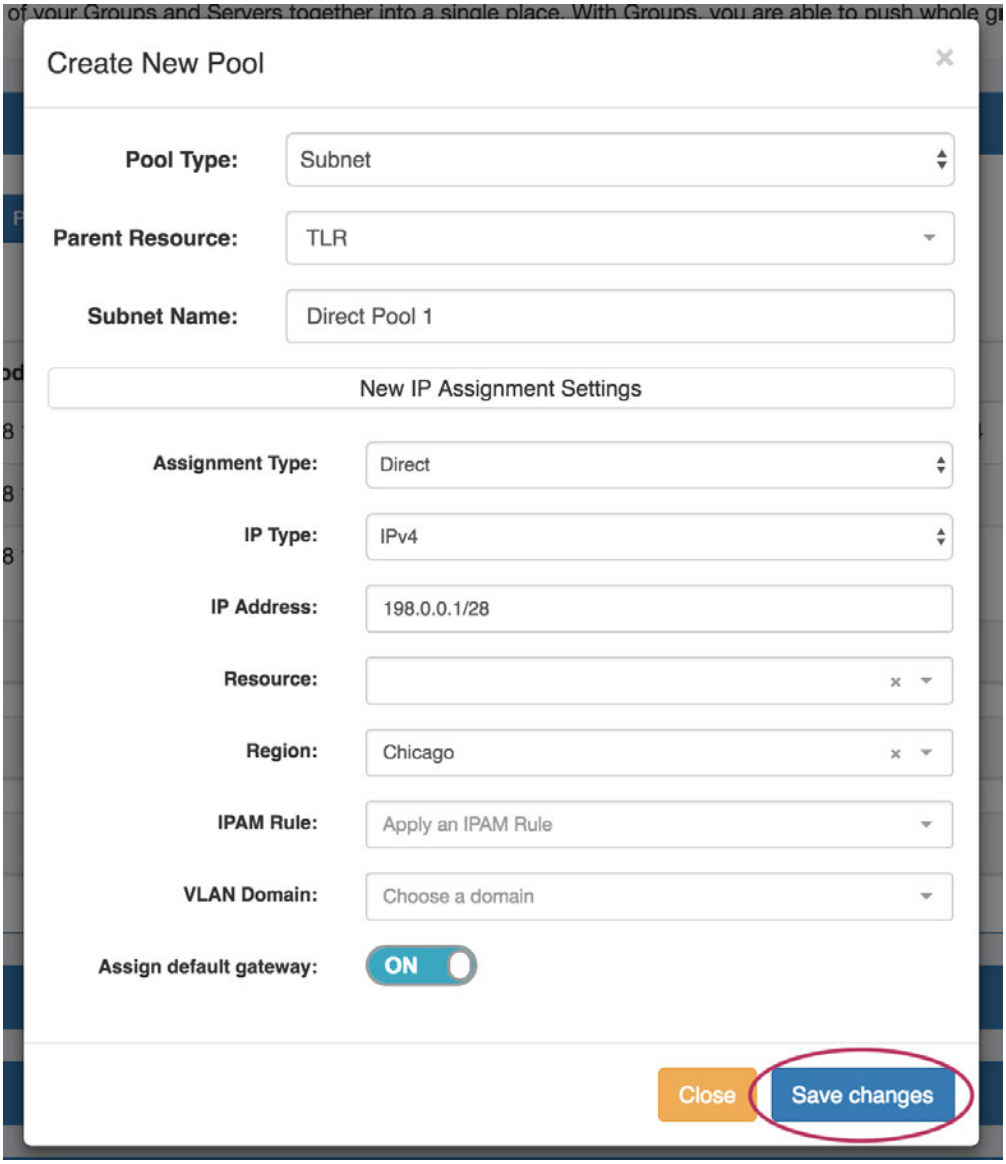
To Smart Assign a DHCP pool, select "Smart" for the Assignment type, choose IPv4 or IPv6 for the IP type, then select a netmask.

All other fields are optional - Resource, Region, IPAM Rules, and VLAN may be selected to further narrow the block criteria. If desired, toggle "Assign Default Gateway" on.

When done, click "Save Changes". ProVision will choose the first block matching all criteria to assign to the pool.

If no block matches the given criteria, a message will state so. Try either removing some criteria, or ensure that blocks exist in IPAM (with subassignments enabled!) with the given attributes.

## Direct Assign



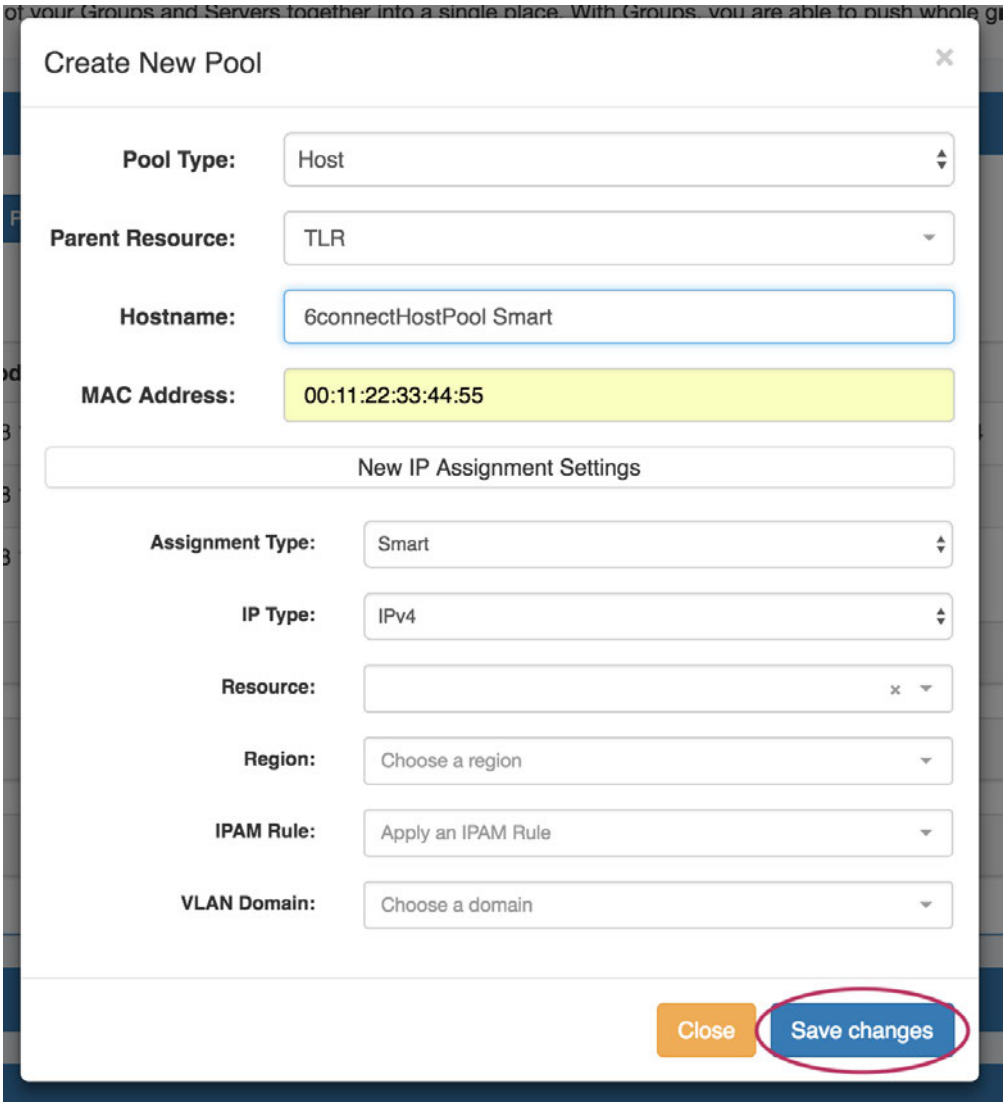

To Direct Assign a DHCP pool, select "Direct" for the Assignment type, choose IPv4 or IPv6 for the IP type, then type in the desired IP Address.

All other fields are optional - Resource, Region, IPAM Rules, and VLAN may be selected to further narrow the block criteria, if duplicate blocks exist. If desired, toggle "Assign Default Gateway" on.

When done, click "Save Changes". If the typed block exists in ProVision with subassignments enabled, and meets any additional criteria, that block will be assigned to the pool.

## Add a Host Pool

To add a new host pool to a DHCP Group, select "Host" as the Pool Type. Select the parent resource,  and add a Hostname and MAC Address.




Next, choose an assignment type - you may either have ProVision smart assign a block for the pool that matches your provided criteria, or directly assign a specific block.

## Smart Assign

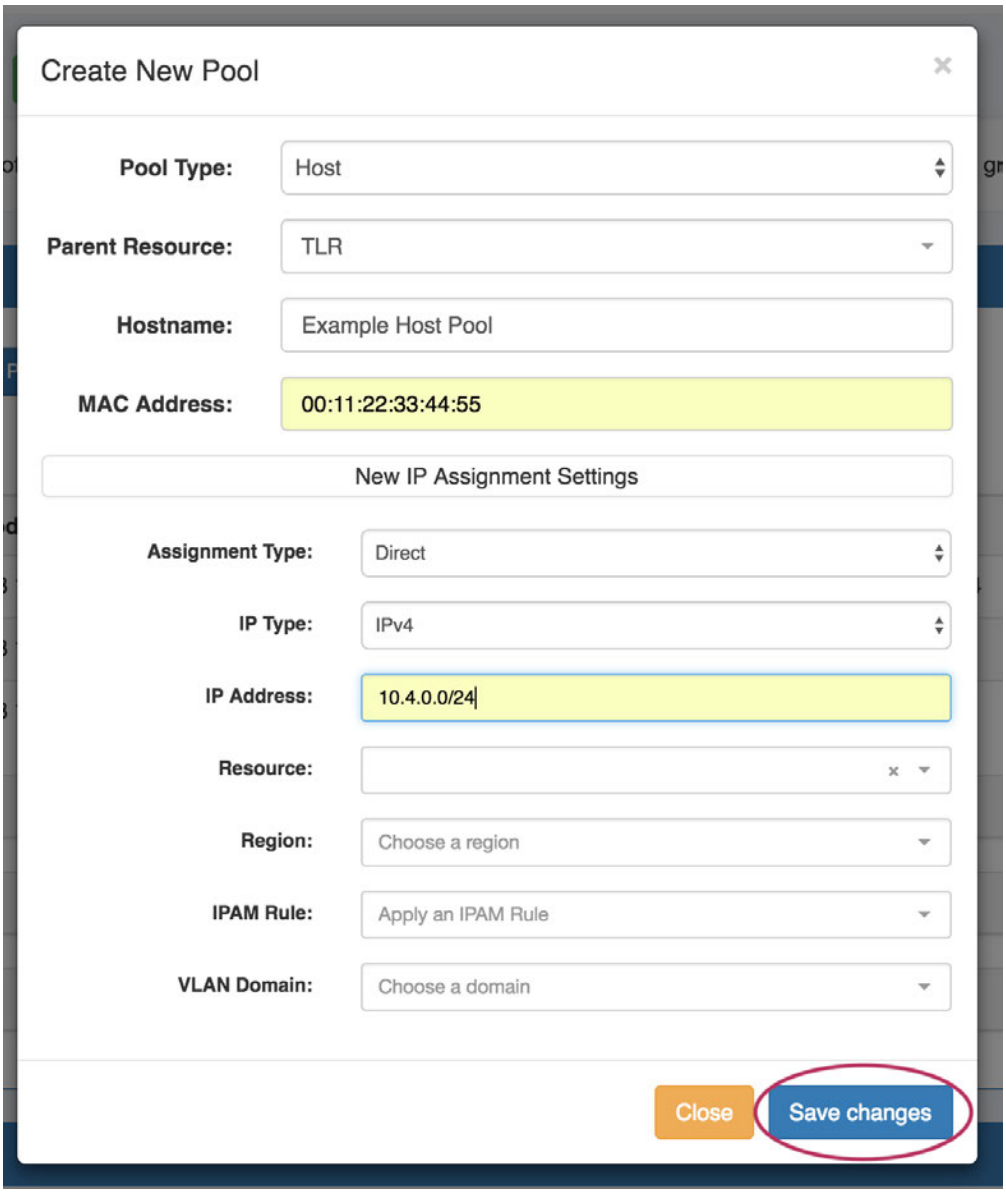
To Smart Assign a DHCP pool, select "Smart" for the Assignment type and choose IPv4 or IPv6 for the IP type.

All other fields are optional - Resource, Region, IPAM Rules, and VLAN may be selected to further narrow the block criteria.

When done, click "Save Changes". ProVision will choose the first block matching all criteria to assign to the pool.

If no block matches the given criteria, a message will state so. Try either removing some criteria, or ensure that blocks exist in IPAM (with subassignments enabled!) with the given attributes.

## Direct Assign



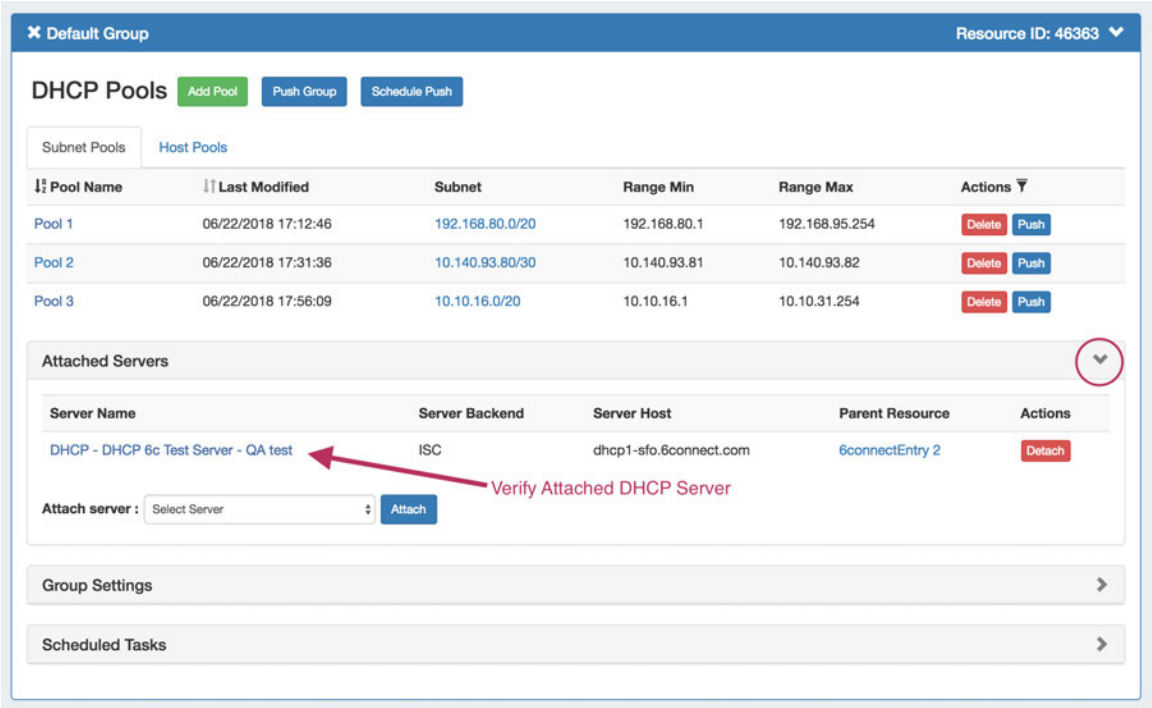

To Direct Assign a DHCP pool, select "Direct" for the Assignment type, choose IPv4 or IPv6 for the IP type, then type in the desired IP Address.

All other fields are optional - Resource, Region, IPAM Rules, and VLAN may be selected to further narrow the block criteria, if duplicate blocks exist.

When done, click "Save Changes". If the typed block exists in ProVision with subassignments enabled, and meets any additional criteria, that block will be assigned to the pool.

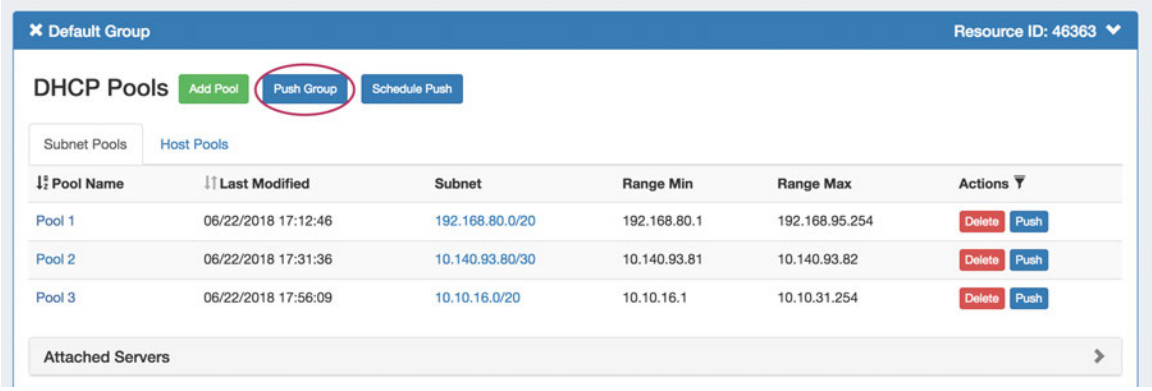
## Pushing a DHCP Group

Before pushing a group, expand the "Attached Servers" section and verify that the correct server is attached to the DHCP Group.




## Manual Group Push

After verifying the attached server, manually push the Group by clicking the "Push Group" button under the desired DHCP Group.

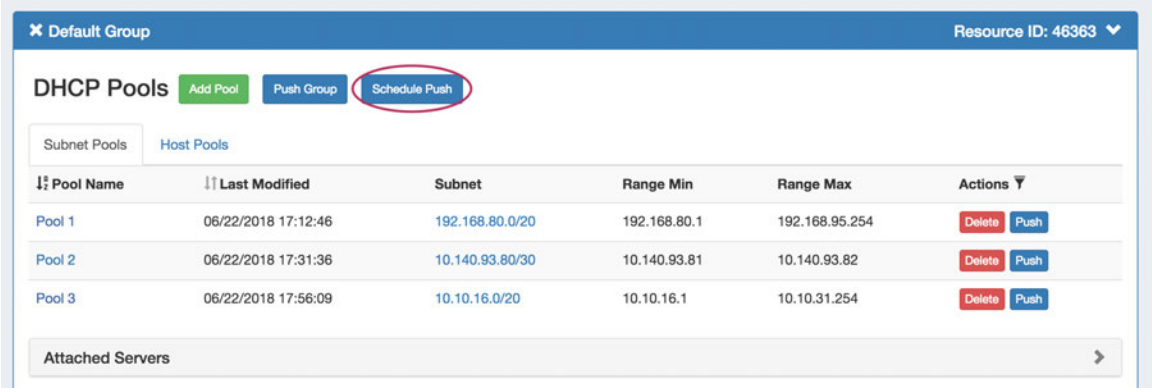



A DHCP Push Status window appears. If successful, a green "Finished DHCP Pushing Request" will appear as the final message.

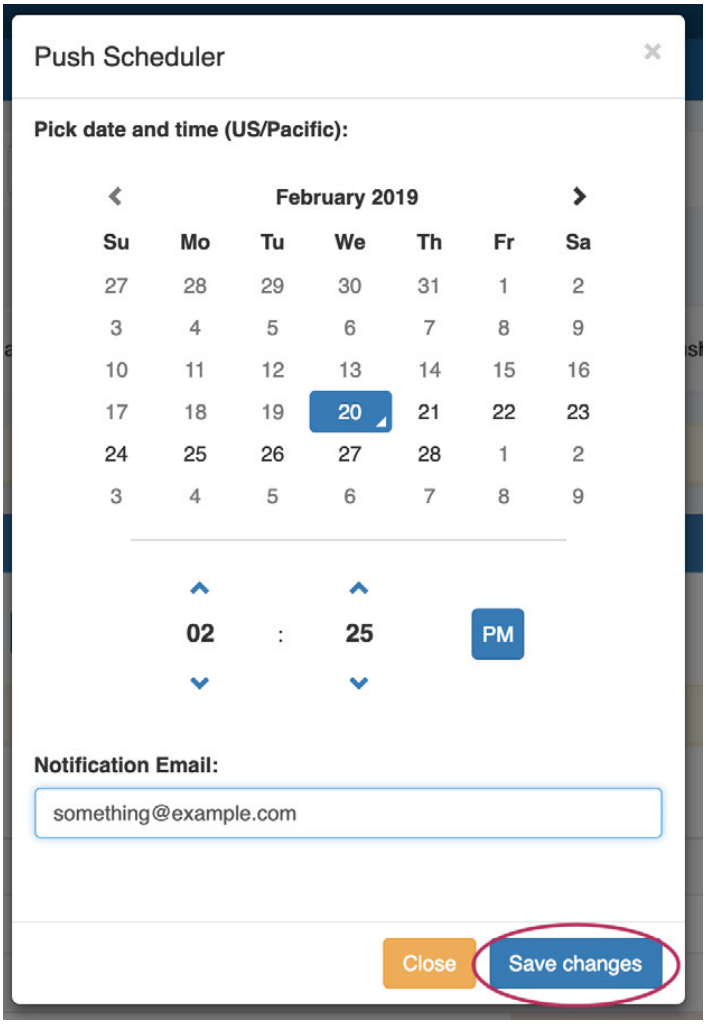
If errors occur, an error message will show with details on the issue. When complete, hit the "Close" button.

# Scheduled Group Push

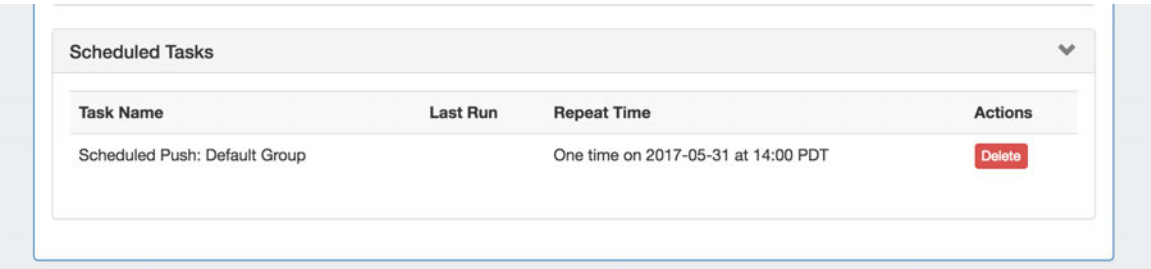
Scheduled pushes may be set up through the "Schedule Push" button for the Group.




Click "Schedule Push" for the Group, then select a date, time (12 hour, with AM / PM toggle), add a notification email address, and click "Save changes".




The Scheduled task will be shown in both the Group details (under "Scheduled Tasks") and the Admin Scheduler task list.

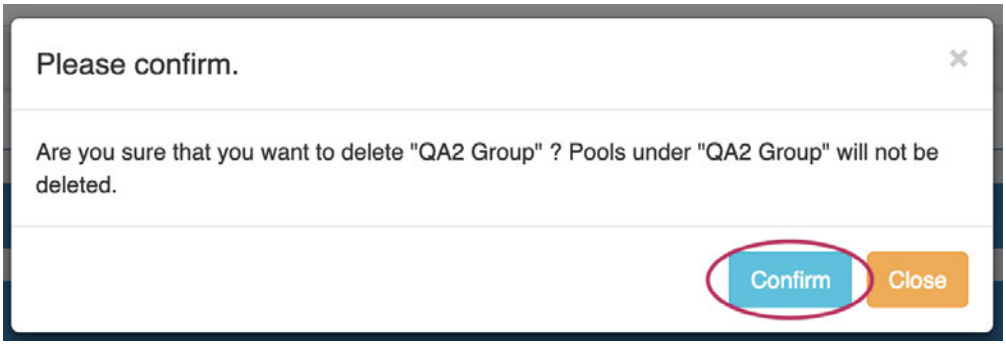



The task may be deleted prior to running by clicking the "delete" button, but will automatically be removed once completed.

## Delete a Group

Delete a non-Default Group by clicking on the "X" to the left of the Group's name in the DHCP Groups List. When you delete a DHCP Group, pools under the group will not be deleted.They will no longer be associated with a DHCP Group, and can be managed from the DHCP Pools list.

A confirmation message will appear, click "Confirm" to save your changes, or "Close" to exit without saving.




The Default Group may not be deleted.

## Additional Information

For more information on DHCP tasks, see:

DHCP Tab

Working with DHCP Pools

Working with DHCP Gadgets

Administrative Tasks:

DHCP Administration

Working with DHCP Servers

# Working with DHCP Pools

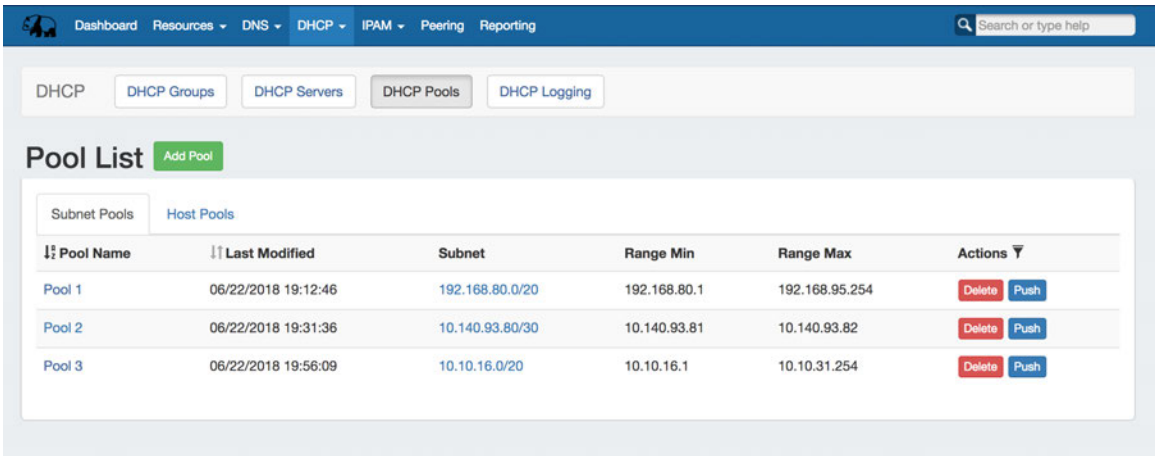
# DHCP Pool Management

DHCP Pool specific tasks are managed from two main areas in ProVision - the **DHCP Pools** list, and the **Pool Details** page.

The DHCP Pools List is accessed from the **DHCP** tab, then clicking on the **DHCP Pools** subtab button.

Clicking on the Pool name from any DHCP Pool List will open the **Pool Details** page for the specific pool.

# DHCP Pools List




The **DHCP Pools** list provides the same pool-level functionality as the DHCP Groups pool lists, but includes all pools regardless of Group attachment.

From this page, you may create, view, edit, and push subnet or host pools.

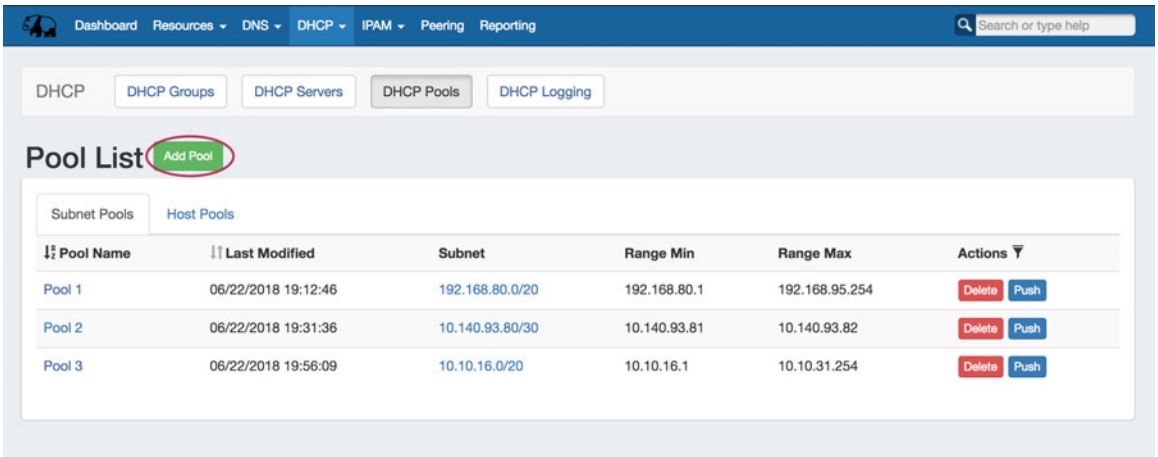
Clicking on the pool name will open the Pool Details page, and clicking on the Subnet will open IPAM Mange for the assigned pool block.


- DHCP Pool Management
- DHCP Pools List
  - Add a DHCP Pool
    - Create Subnet Pool
      - Smart Assign
      - Direct Assign
    - Create a Host Pool
      - Smart Assign
      - Direct Assign
  - Edit / Manage a Pool (Pool Details page)
    - Add  / Edit a comment:
    - Edit Pool Range
    - Edit IP Assignment
    - Add / Remove a Pool Reservation
    - Edit Advanced Settings:
    - Detach Server from a Pool
  - Pushing DHCP Pools
    - Manual Pool Push (DHCP Pools List)
    - Manual Pool Push (Pool Details page):
    - Schedule Push (from Pool Details page):
    - Schedule Push (Admin Scheduler):
    - DHCP Group Push:
    - DHCP Server Push:

- Delete a Pool
- Addiitonal Information:

# Add a DHCP Pool

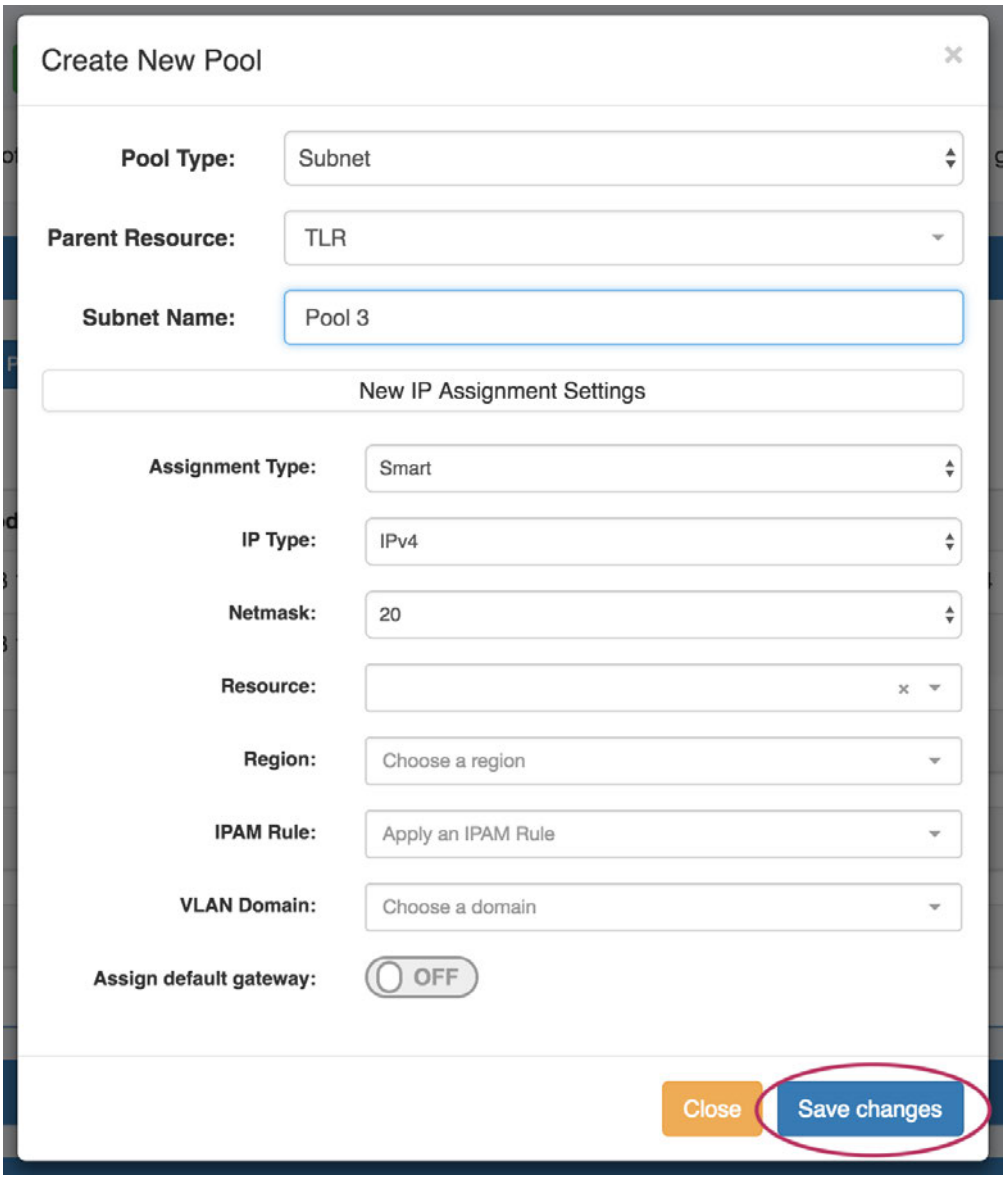
Add a new DHCP Pool from the Pool List by clicking the "Add Pool" button at the top of the page.




When the "Create New Pool" dialog appears, you may choose to create either a Subnet or Host Pool. Either pool type may have a block smart assigned or manually direct assigned.

## Create Subnet Pool

To add a new subnet pool to a DHCP Group, select "Subnet" as the Pool Type. Select the parent resource and type in a Subnet Name.




Next, choose an assignment type - you may either have ProVision smart assign a block for the pool that matches your provided criteria, or directly assign a specific block.

## Smart Assign

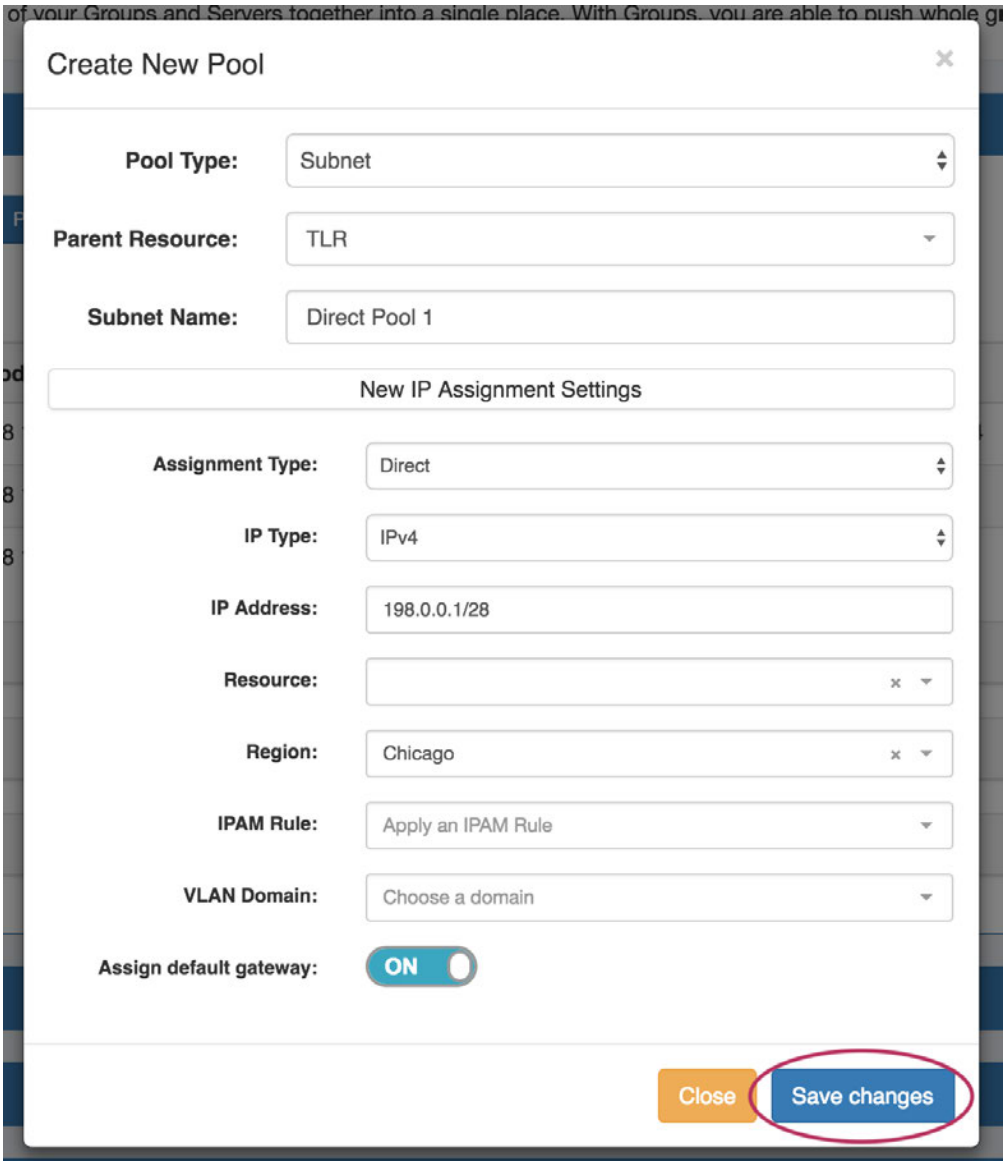
To Smart Assign a DHCP pool, select "Smart" for the Assignment type, choose IPv4 or IPv6 for the IP type, then select a netmask.

All other fields are optional - Resource, Region, IPAM Rules, and VLAN may be selected to further narrow the block criteria. If desired, toggle "Assign Default Gateway" on.

When done, click "Save Changes". ProVision will choose the first block matching all criteria to assign to the pool.

If no block matches the given criteria, a message will state so. Try either removing some criteria, or ensure that blocks exist in IPAM (with subassignments enabled!) with the given attributes.

## Direct Assign



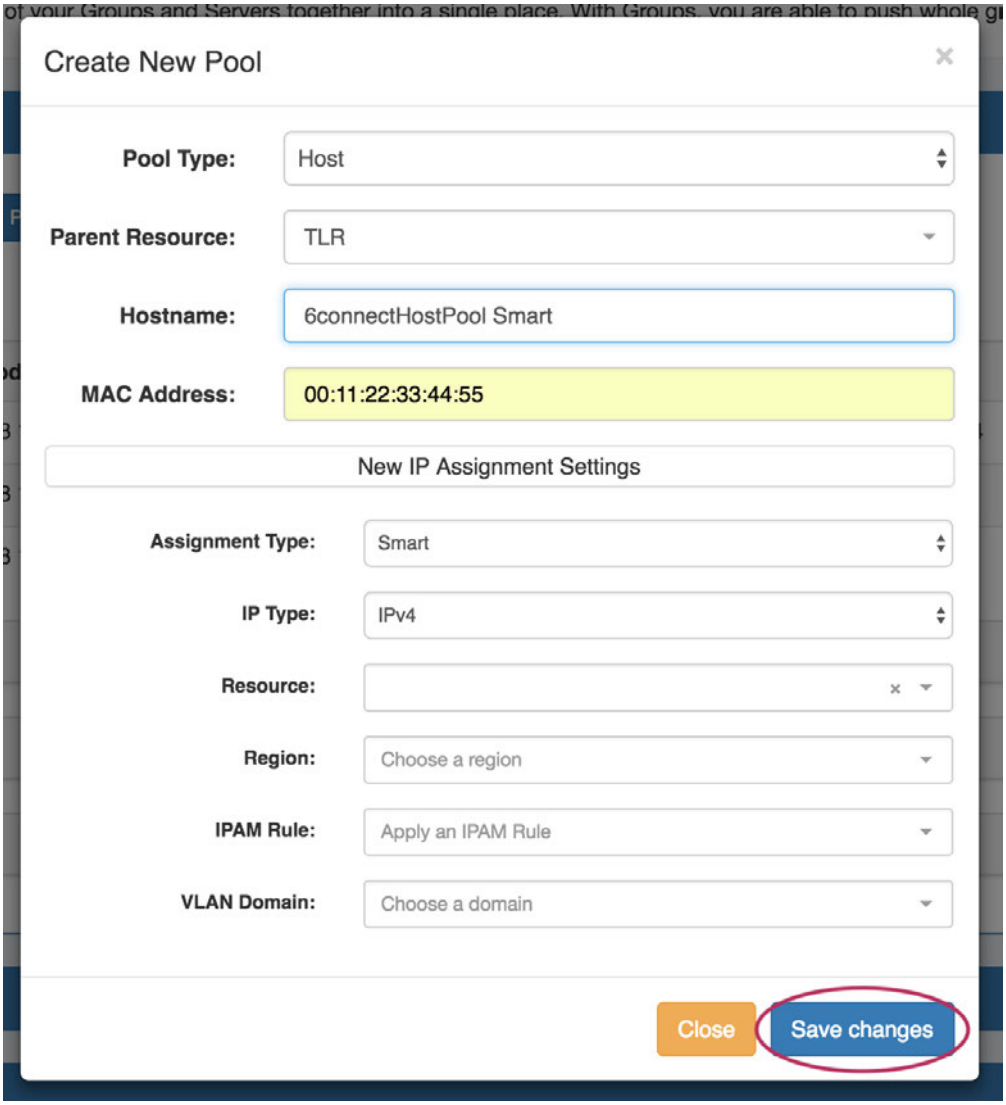

To Direct Assign a DHCP pool, select "Direct" for the Assignment type, choose IPv4 or IPv6 for the IP type, then type in the desired IP Address.

All other fields are optional - Resource, Region, IPAM Rules, and VLAN may be selected to further narrow the block criteria, if duplicate blocks exist. If desired, toggle "Assign Default Gateway" on.

When done, click "Save Changes". If the typed block exists in ProVision with subassignments enabled, and meets any additional criteria, that block will be assigned to the pool.

## Create a Host Pool

To add a new host pool to a DHCP Group, select "Host" as the Pool Type. Select the parent resource,  and add a Hostname and MAC Address.




Next, choose an assignment type - you may either have ProVision smart assign a block for the pool that matches your provided criteria, or directly assign a specific block.

## Smart Assign

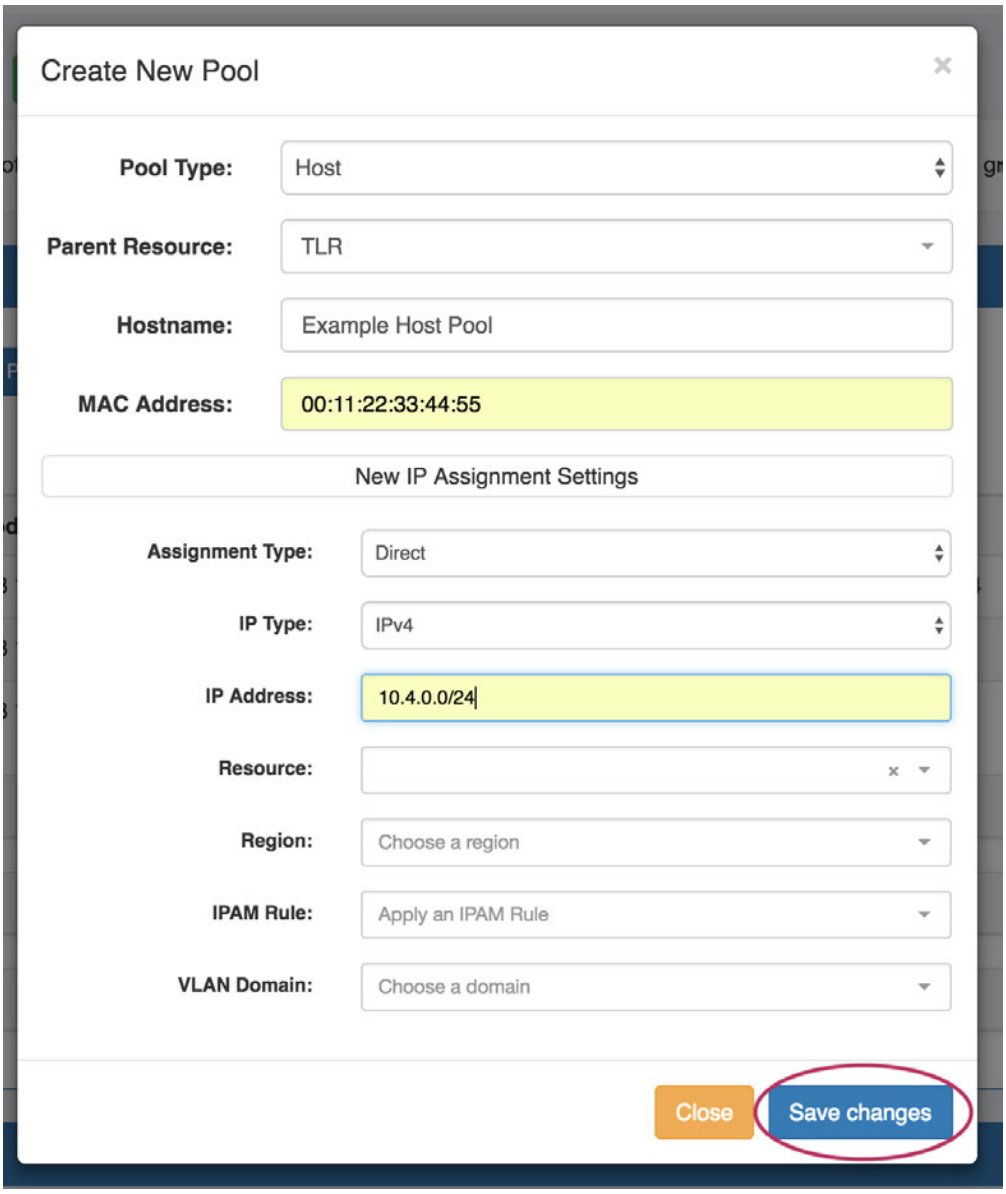
To Smart Assign a DHCP pool, select "Smart" for the Assignment type and choose IPv4 or IPv6 for the IP type.

All other fields are optional - Resource, Region, IPAM Rules, and VLAN may be selected to further narrow the block criteria.

When done, click "Save Changes". ProVision will choose the first block matching all criteria to assign to the pool.

If no block matches the given criteria, a message will state so. Try either removing some criteria, or ensure that blocks exist in IPAM (with subassignments enabled!) with the given attributes.

## Direct Assign




To Direct Assign a DHCP pool, select "Direct" for the Assignment type, choose IPv4 or IPv6 for the IP type, then type in the desired IP Address.

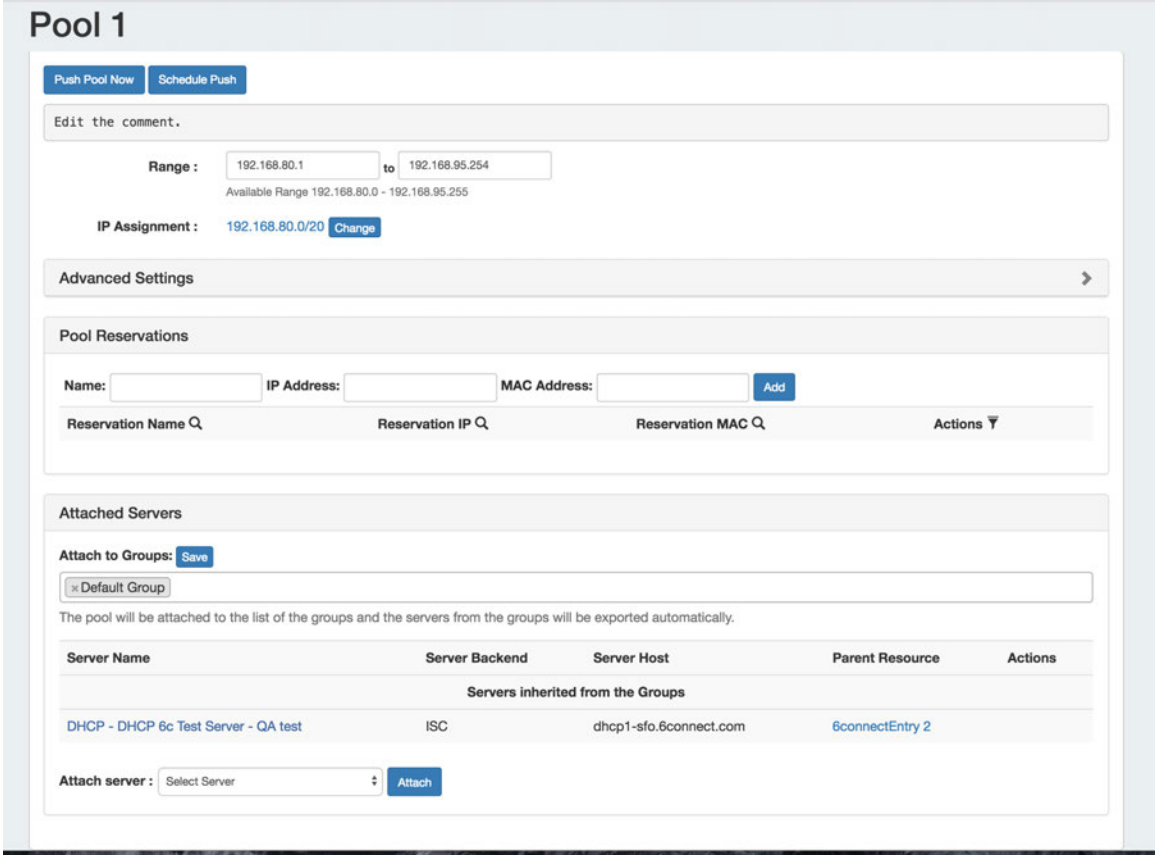
All other fields are optional - Resource, Region, IPAM Rules, and VLAN may be selected to further narrow the block criteria, if duplicate blocks exist.

When done, click "Save Changes". If the typed block exists in ProVision with subassignments enabled, and meets any additional criteria, that block will be assigned to the pool.

## Edit / Manage a Pool (Pool Details page)

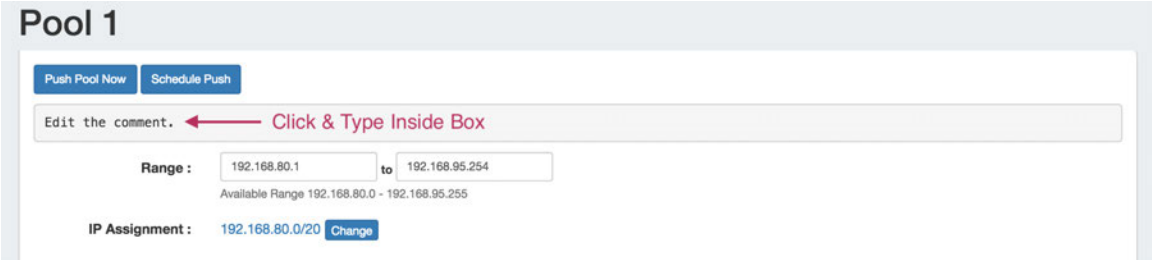
Additional Pool Management options are available from the **Pool Details** page.  Pools may be edited by clicking on the Pool name in any **DHCP Pools** list in which it appears.

From this page, users may edit assignment, range, settings, reservations, or servers for the pool.




## Add / Edit a comment:

To add a comment to a pool, click anywhere inside the comment area and begin typing. The comment will be saved when an area outside of the comment box is clicked, deselecting the comment area.

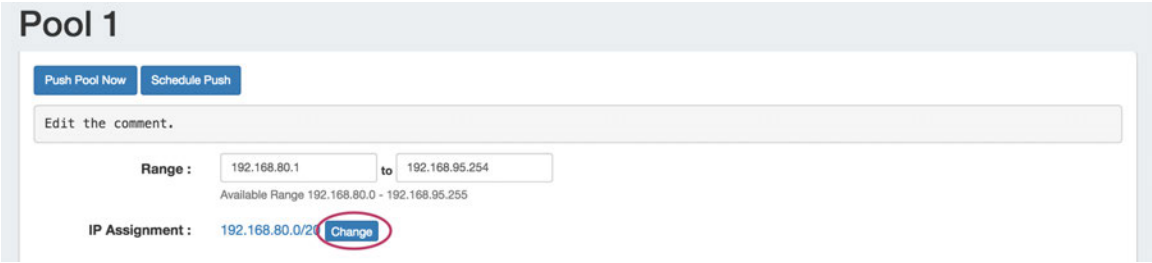



## Edit Pool Range

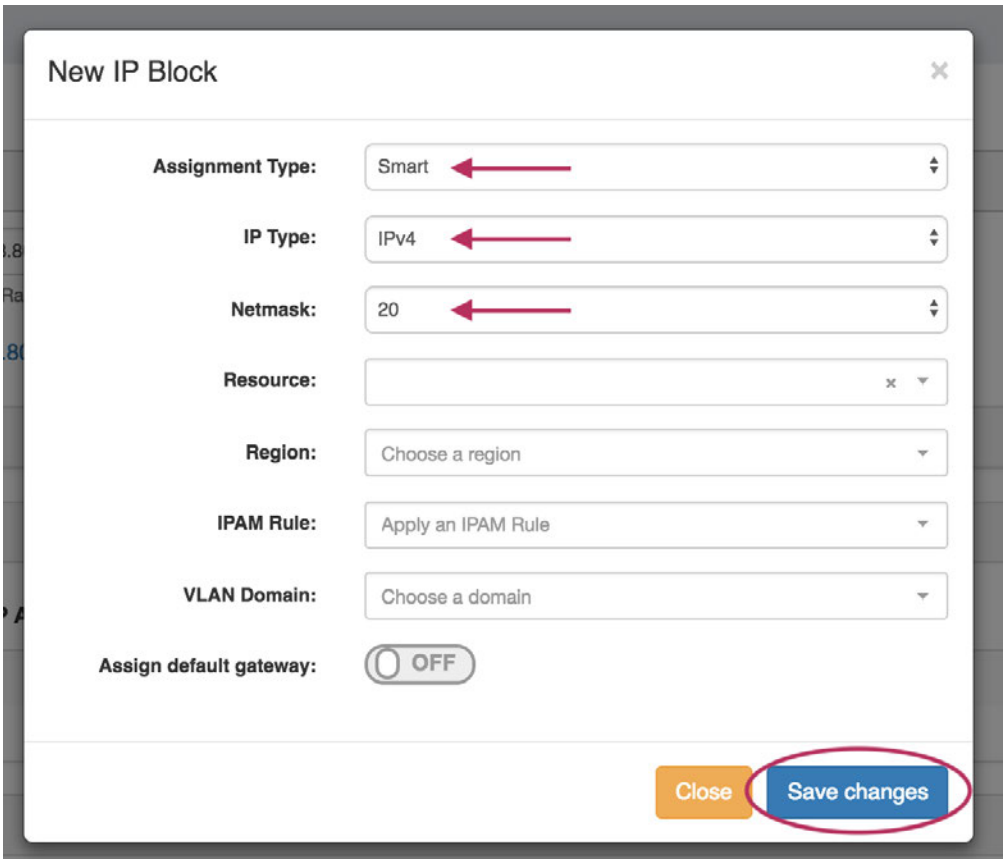
The pool range may be manually edited by typing the desired range start and end values into the "Range" section, then click the "Save" button.

## Edit IP Assignment

To change the current IP assignment for the pool, click the "Change" button next to "IP Assignment".




In the "New IP Block" dialog, select the Assignment Type, IP Type, and Netmask. Optional fields include Resource, Region, IPAM Rule, and VLAN as filtering criteria if desired.



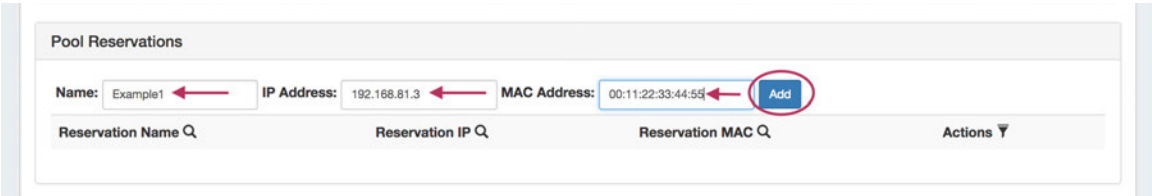

When complete, click "Save changes".

If no block meets the selected criteria, an error message will appear - try removing filter criteria, or verify that subassignable blocks meeting the criteria have been created in IPAM.

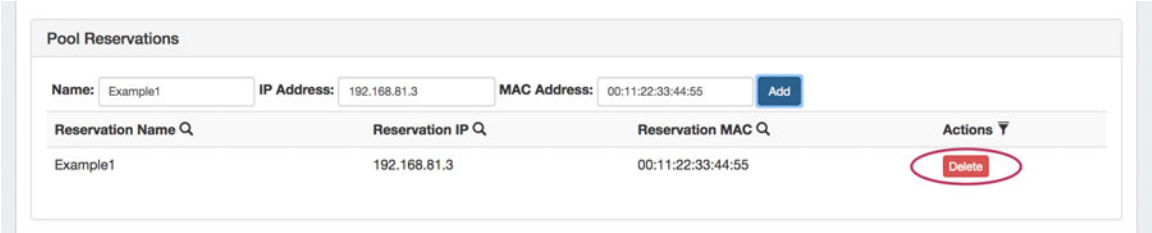
If successful, the IP assignment will change to a block meeting the provided attributes.

## Add / Remove a Pool Reservation

Add a new pool reservation by entering the Name, IP, and MAC Address into the fields under "Pool Reservations", and click the "Add" Button.

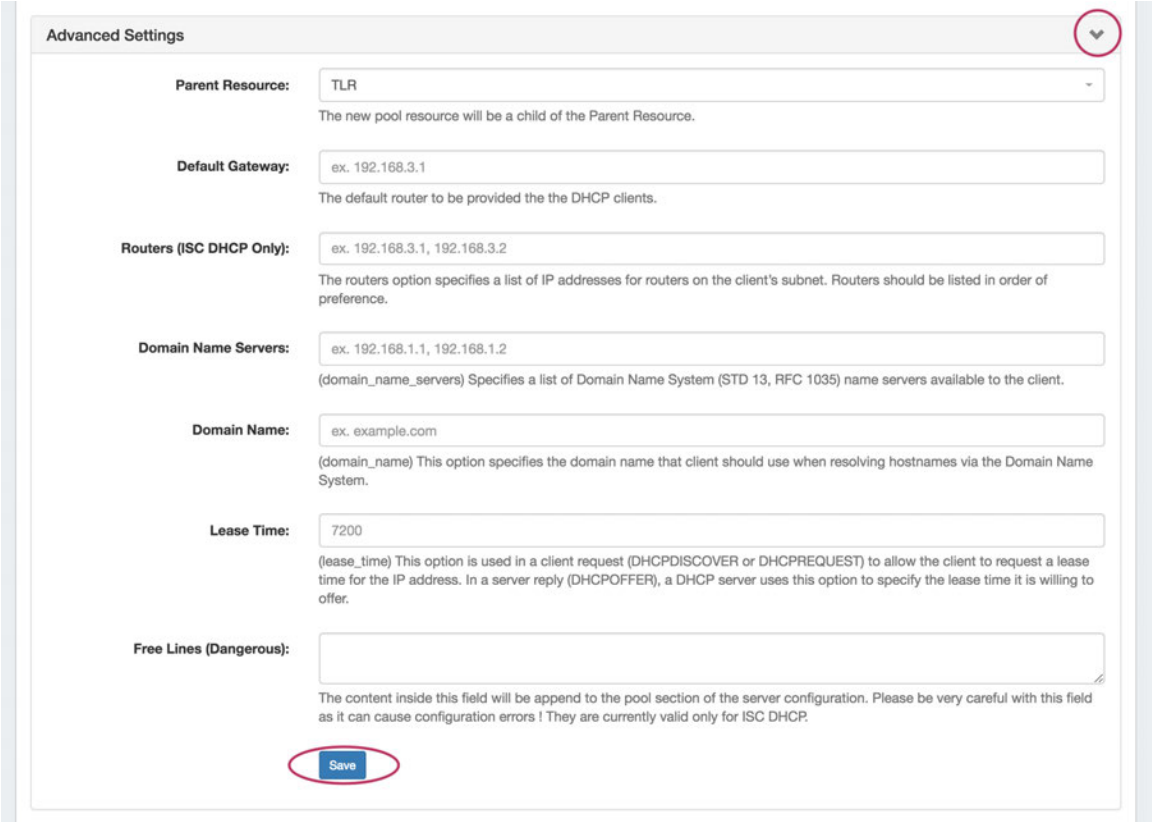


Once created, a reservation may be removed by clicking the "Delete" button next to it.




## Edit Advanced Settings:

Open the zone "Advanced Settings" section by clicking on the header or the expansion arrow (>). Edit fields as needed, and click "Save" when complete.

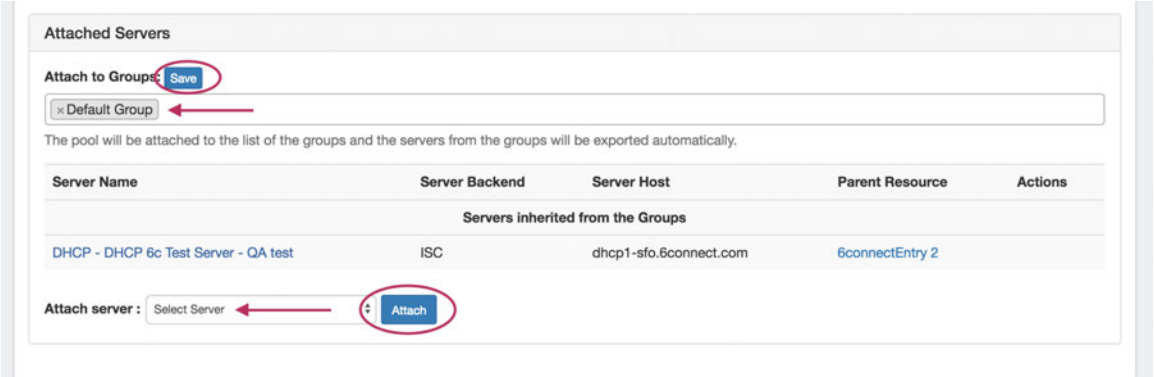



## Attach Group / Server to a Pool

Servers may be attached to a pool either from a DHCP Group association, or directly from the Pool Details Page.

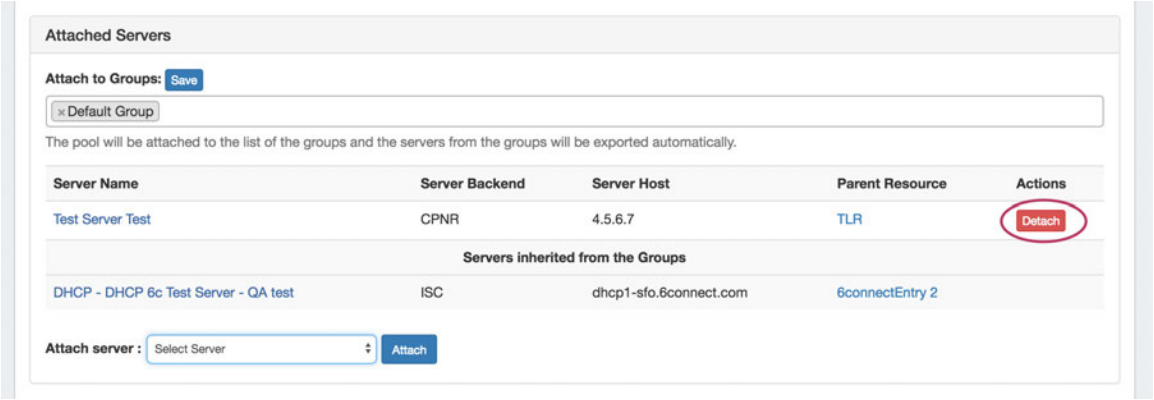
Attach the pool to a DHCP Group by clicking in the DHCP Group search box, selecting a Group, then clicking "Save" next to "Attach to Groups". The pool will inherit the DHCP server associated with that group.

To directly attach a DHCP server to a pool, select the server from the "Attach server" dropdown, then click the "Attach" button.




## Detach Server from a Pool

To detach a server from a pool, look for the server under the "Attached Servers" list, then click "Detach" under actions for that server.

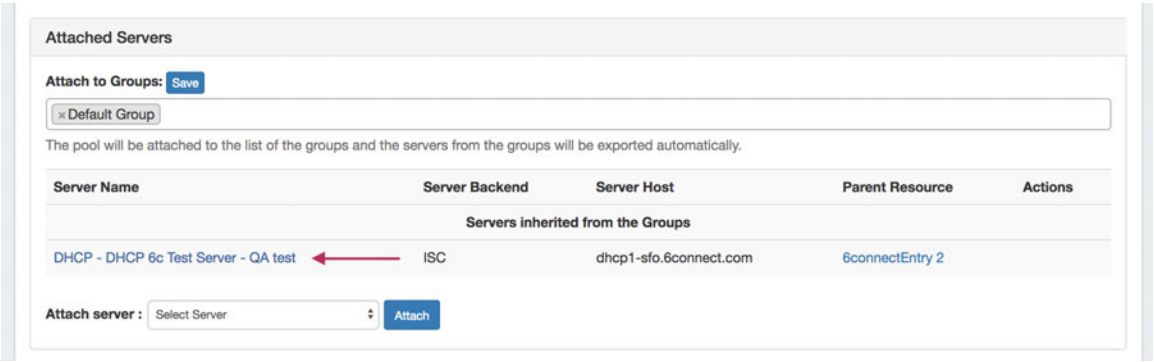



To detach a server inherited from a Group, the pool must be removed from the group. To do that, click the "x" next to the group name in the "Attach to Groups" box, then click "Save".

# Pushing DHCP Pools

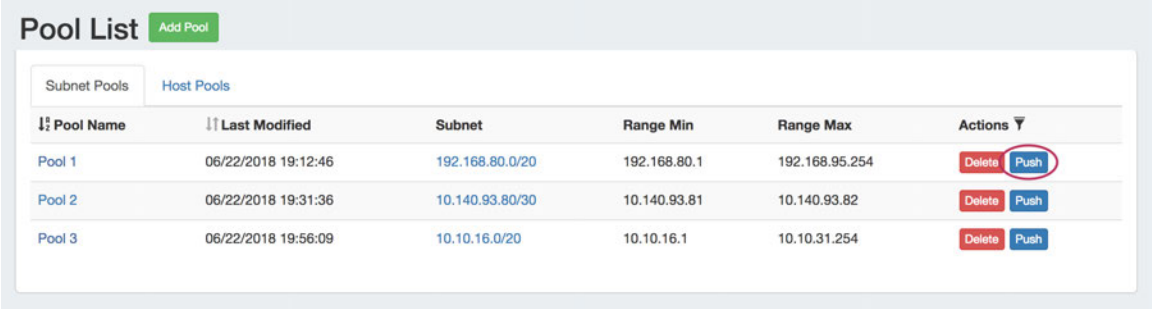
Pools may be pushed manually ("Push", "Push Pool Now"), as a scheduled future push ("Schedule Push"), or pushed as part of a DHCP Group or DHCP Server Push.

Before pushing a pool for the first time, view the "Attached Servers" section in the **Pool Details** page and verify that the correct server is attached to the DHCP Pool, either directly or via a DHCP Group.




## Manual Pool Push (DHCP Pools List)

Pools may be manually pushed by clicking the "Push" button for the pool from any **DHCP Pools** list.

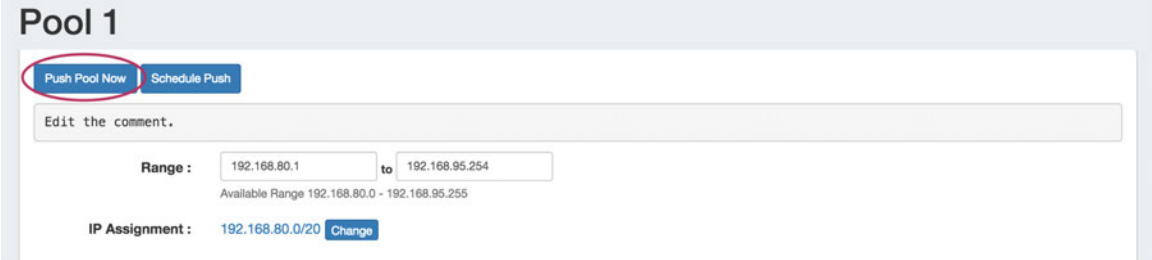



The "DHCP Push Status" modal will appear, showing status and any errors that occur.

When a successful push is complete, a green "Finished DHCP Pushing Request" message will appear, and the window may be closed.

## Manual Pool Push (Pool Details page):

The Pool Details page, accessed from clicking on the zone name in the Group zone list, includes a "Push Pool Now" button that immediately attempts to push the pool to the attached server(s).

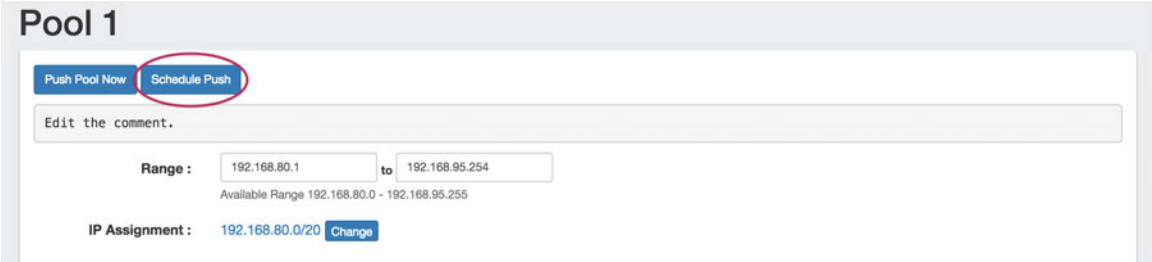



Click on "Push Pool Now", and the "DHCP Push Status" modal will appear, showing status and any errors that occur.

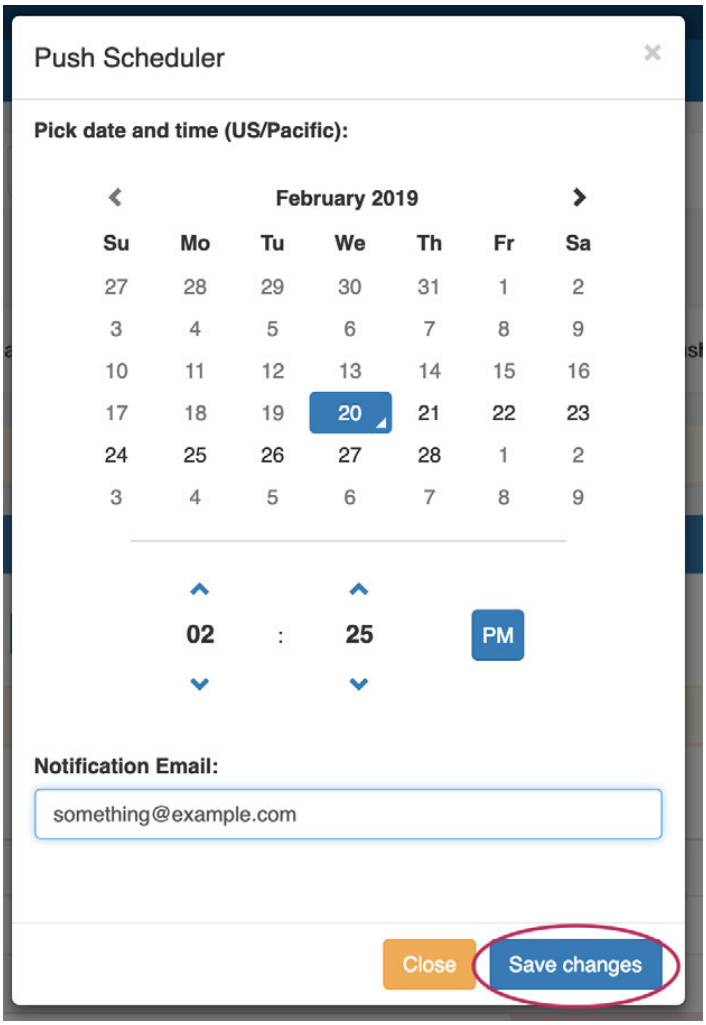
When a successful push is complete, a green "Finished DHCP Pushing Request" message will appear, and the window may be closed.

## Schedule Push (from Pool Details page):

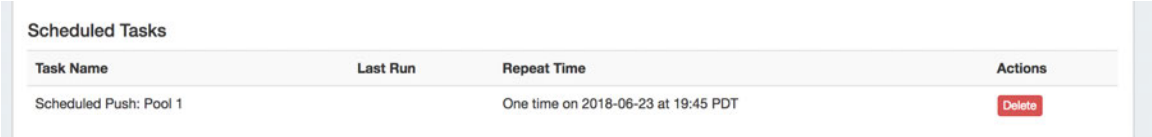
The Pool Details page includes an option to schedule a push, similar to scheduling a Group push.



Click "Schedule Push" for the pool, then select a date, time (12 hour, with AM / PM toggle), add a notification email address, and click "Save changes".




The Scheduled task will be shown in both the Pool Details page (under "Scheduled Tasks") and the Admin Scheduler task list.




The task may be deleted prior to running by clicking the "delete" button, but will automatically be removed once completed.

## Schedule Push (Admin Scheduler):

Pools may also be pushed via scheduled DHCP Group or DHCP Server pushes. Server pushes may be set up by Admin users from either the **DHCP Servers** section, or the **Scheduler** tab.

For more information, see the Working with DHCP Servers or Scheduler Tab documentation.

## DHCP Group Push:

All pools contained in a DHCP Group may be pushed at the same time, by pushing the DHCP Group.

For information on working with DHCP Groups, including performing a manual or scheduled Group push, see Working with DHCP Groups - Pushing a Group.

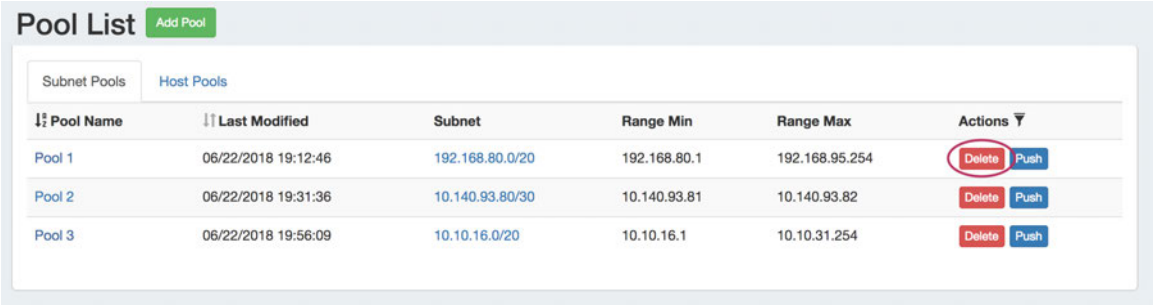
## DHCP Server Push:

Admin users may push all pools on a DHCP server from the **DHCP** Tab -> **DHCP Servers** page.

For information on working with DHCP Servers, including performing a manual or scheduled server push, see Working with DHCP Servers - Pushing a Server.

# Delete a Pool

Users with delete permissions over the pool may delete it by clicking the "Delete" button under "Actions" from any DHCP Pool List.




# Addiitonal Information:

For more information on working with DNS Zones, Groups, and Servers, see the following sections:

DNS Tab

Working with DNS Groups

Editing DNS Zones (The View Zone Page)

DNS Administration

Import DNS Zones

# Working with DHCP Gadgets

# Working with DHCP Gadgets

There are two DHCP Gadgets available to integrate onto a Resource Entry Page - the DHCP Management Gadget, and the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget.

For an overview of Gadgets and how to attach them to Resource pages, see Gadgets and Adding a Gadget to a Section .


- Working with DHCP Gadgets
- DHCP Management Gadget (Legacy)
    - Before You Begin:
        - Attach / Enable the DHCP Gadget
        - Managing DHCP Server Configurations
        - Group Management
            - Working with DHCP Groups
        - Connection Configuration
        - Server Details
        - Scan Server
        - DHCP Pools
            - DHCP Pool Search:
        - Create a New DHCP Pool - Subnets
        - Create a New DHCP Pool - Host
        - Current Pushed Configuration
        - Saving/Pushing DHCP Server Configurations
- Working with the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget
        - Setting up the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget
        - Using the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget
    - Additional Information


# DHCP Management Gadget (Legacy)

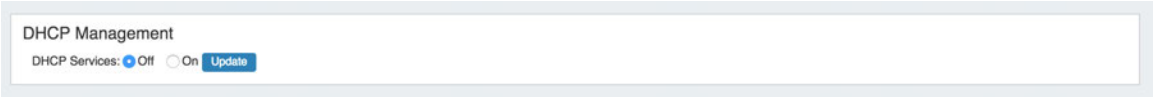
Note: As of ProVision 7.0.0, the DHCP Management Gadget is a legacy feature.

While it is still available to be used, we recommend checking out the updated **DHCP** Tab and using the DHCP Groups, DHCP Servers, and DHCP Pools pages as the primary DHCP management system.

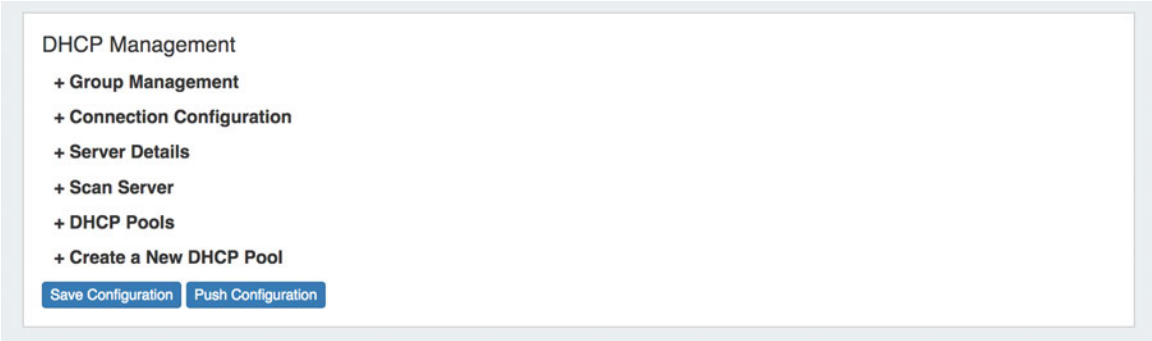
## Before You Begin:

### Attach / Enable the DHCP Gadget

Verify that the DHCP Gadget is attached to the Resource Section. Then, you can enable the gadget by selecting the radio button next to "On", and click "Update".




Once enabled, the DHCP Management Gadget will show sections for "Group Management", "Connection Configuration", "Server Details", "Scan Server", "DHCP Pools", and "Create a New DHCP Pool". Once pushes or unpushed configuration changes occur, a "Current Pushed Configuration" or "Unpushed Configuration" section will be available for review.




These sections will be reviewed in detail further on in this section.

A Note on DHCP Aggregates

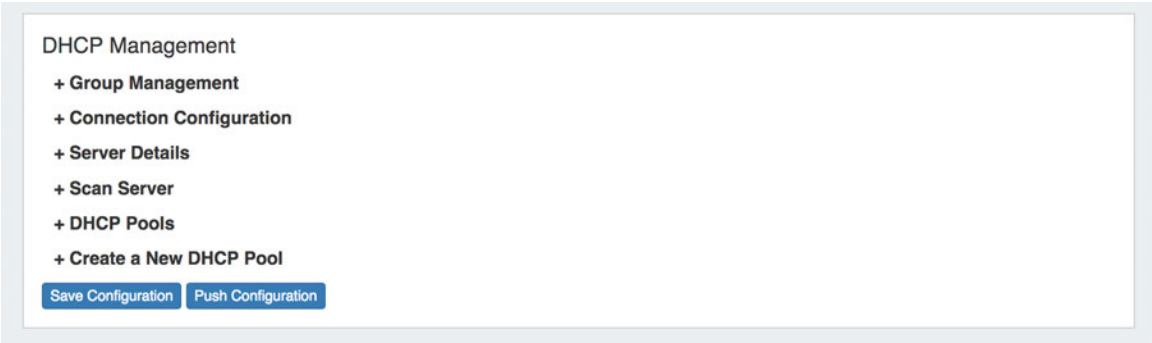
ProVision versions prior to 7.0.0 required creating or identifying specific IPAM blocks as "DHCP Aggregates" using the "DHCP Available" status to assign DHCP pools from.

As of 7.0.0, these statuses have been removed, and any IPAM block may be used to assign DHCP pools from, as long as they are subassignable and meet the assignment criteria provided by the user.

This applies to all DHCP Management functions - the DHCP Management Gadget, DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget, and all DHCP Tab areas.

## Managing DHCP Server Configurations

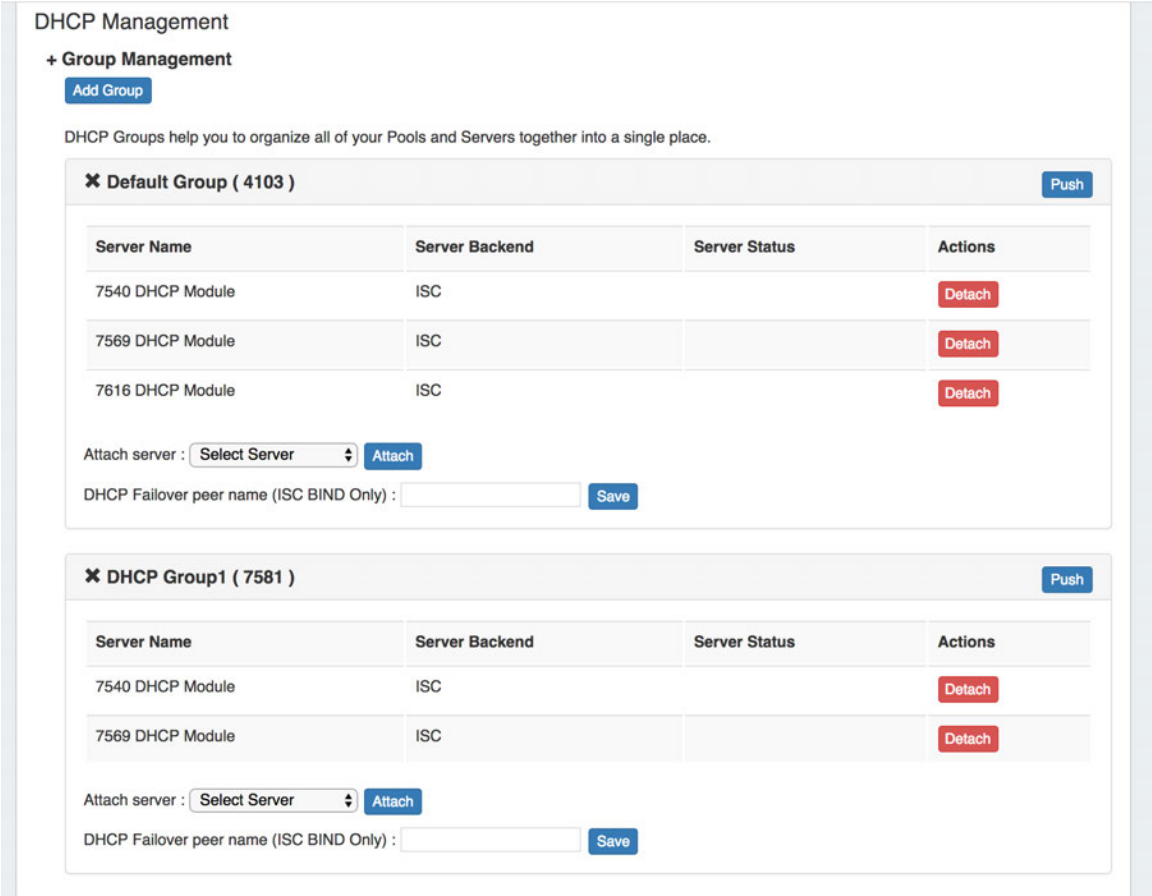
Once DHCP functions are enabled for a Resource Section, you will be able to manage configurations per Resource by expanding the relevant areas on the Resource's Entry page.




## Group Management

This section of the DHCP Management Gadget allows you to create and manage DHCP Groups.

DHCP groups help you to organize all of your Pools and Servers together into a single place, and push pools linked to a DHCP Group to all of the servers attached to that Group. It also allows for the designation of a DHCP Failover Peer for ISC BIND servers.




## Working with DHCP Groups

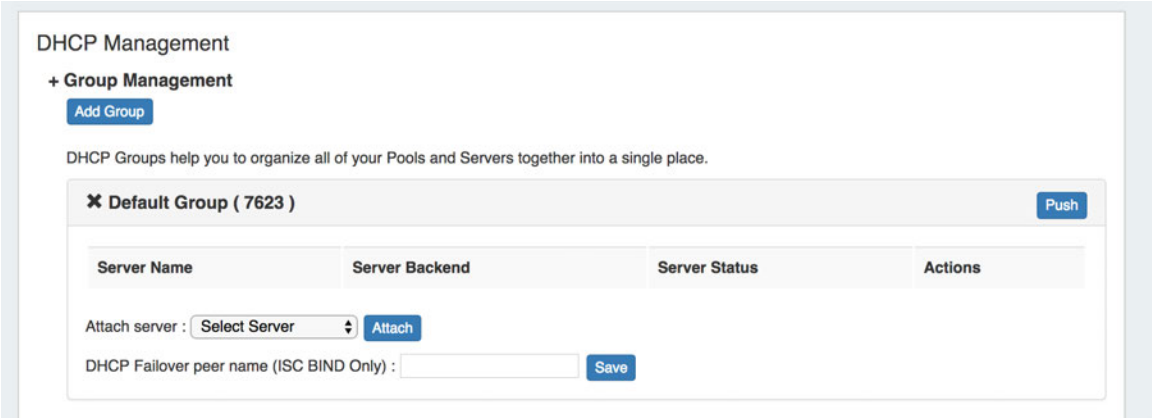
**Step 1: Create DHCP Servers**

Ensure that all necessary DHCP servers are created via the **DHCP** Tab **DHCP Servers** page. See Working with DHCP Servers for additional information.

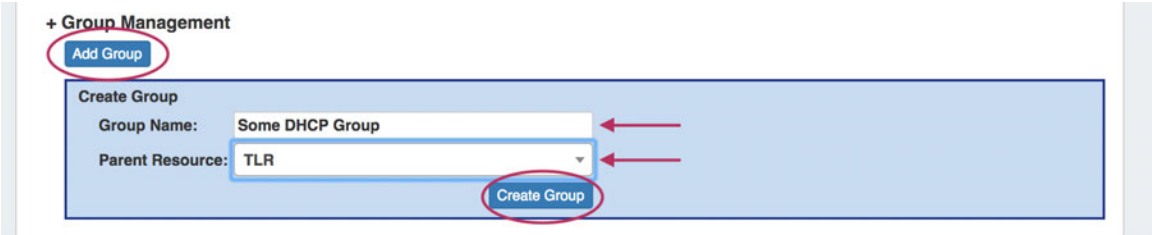
All DHCP servers listed under the DHCP tab will be available to select to attach to DHCP Groups (in the format of "ResourceID - DHCP Module").

**Step 2: Create DHCP Groups**

Select a DHCP server page with the DHCP Management Gadget from, and expand the Group Management section. Note: Any DHCP server page with the Manangment Gadget is fine to use, as the Group Management section will globally update to be the same in any DHCP Management Gadget. As of ProVision 7.0.0, DHCP Groups may also be created and managed from the DHCP Groups page under the **DHCP** Tab.



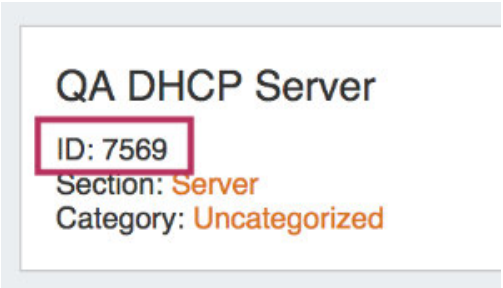
A "Default Group" should be available immediately, or you can click the "Add Group" button to create a new DHCP Group. Type in the desired Group Name and select a Parent Resource for the Group, then click "Create Group".



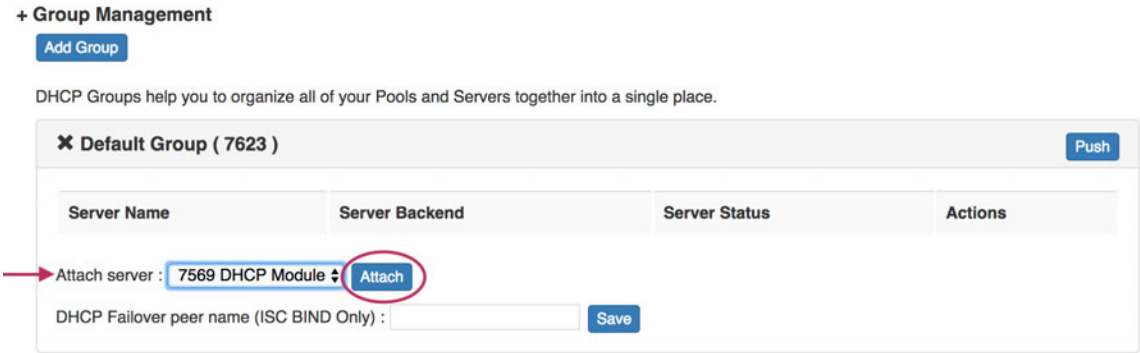

Your new Group will be available in the DHCP Management Gadget. To delete the DHCP Group, click the "X" next to the Group name.

**Step 3: Attach DHCP Servers to Groups**

All DHCP servers listed under the ProVision DHCP Tab will be available to select and attach to the Group. They are identified by their resource ID number, so if necessary, check the server's resource ID number in the resource information Gadget.




Select the desired server from the "Attach Server" selector, then click "Attach". The server is now attached to the group and available for pushes.




If needed, a server may be removed from a DHCP Group by clicking the "Detach" button.

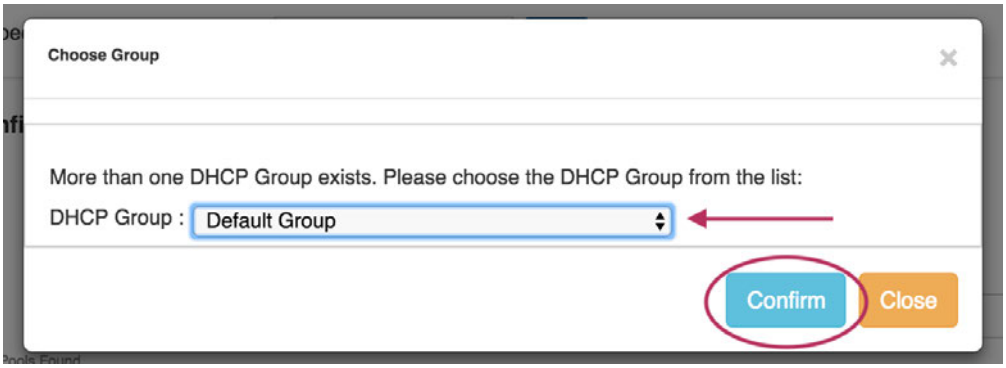
**Step 4: Identify Failover Peer (Optional - ISC Bind Only)**

If a DHCP failover peer is configured for the server, enter the server name and click the "Save" button. In the event that the primary server fails to push, the push will be sent to the failover peer instead.

**Step 5: Link Pools to DHCP Groups**

From the Existing Pools list under the DHCP Pools section, click the Action Menu for the pool you wish to link to a DHCP Group. From there, click "Link to Group".

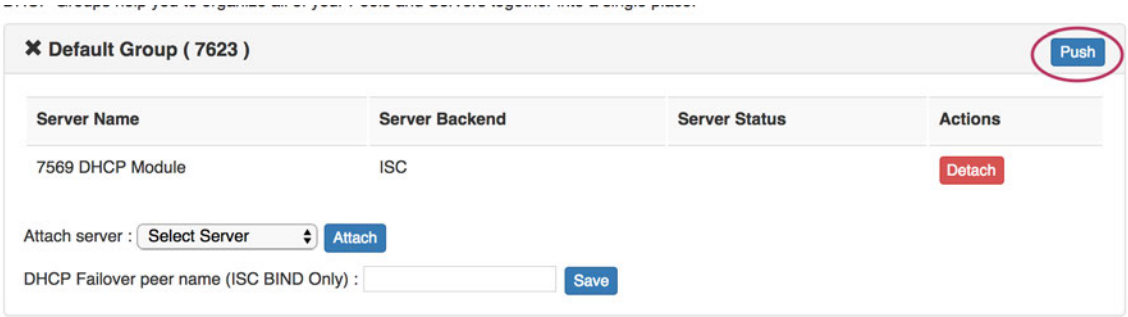
If multiple DHCP Groups exist, a dialog will pop up for you to select the desired Group to link the pool to. Select the DHCP Group, then click "Confirm" to add the pool to the Group.




Once linked, the DHCP Pool will show under the "Linked Group Pools" area of the DHCP Pool section. From here, if desired, you may remove the pool from the group by clicking the Action Menu and "Remove Link".

**Step 6: Push the DHCP Group**

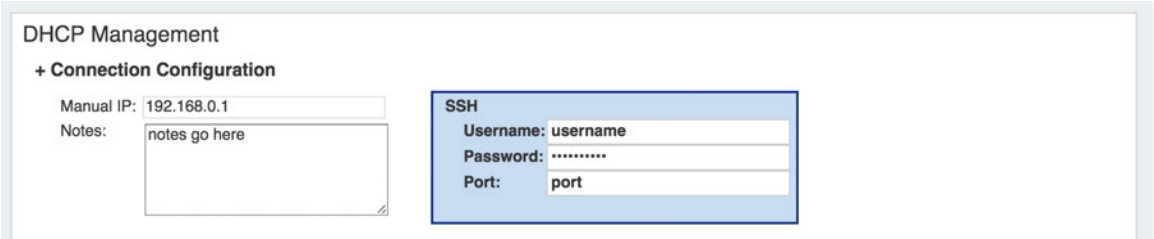
Lastly, click the "Push" button for the DHCP Group to push the linked pool(s) for the Group to the linked DHCP Module, and then push all DHCP servers linked to the Group.




While pushing, a status box will appear to show status and any errors, if applicable.

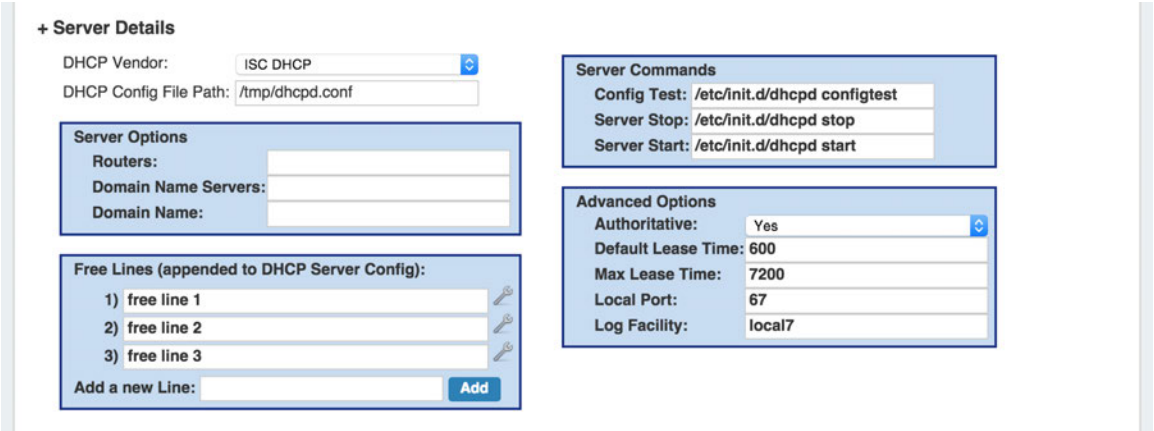
## Connection Configuration

In this gadget area, you may enter in the information that will be used for ProVision to communicate to the DHCP Server.




## Server Details

Server details and advanced options may be entered under this portion of the gadget.




Server Command: Config Test

A note on the Server Command: Config Test option:

This command is run after the newly-written DHCP Config file has been transferred to the server but before the server is restarted. Due to the wide variety of DHCP install configurations that can arise on different systems, it is best if the Config Test option is as explicit as possible. For example:

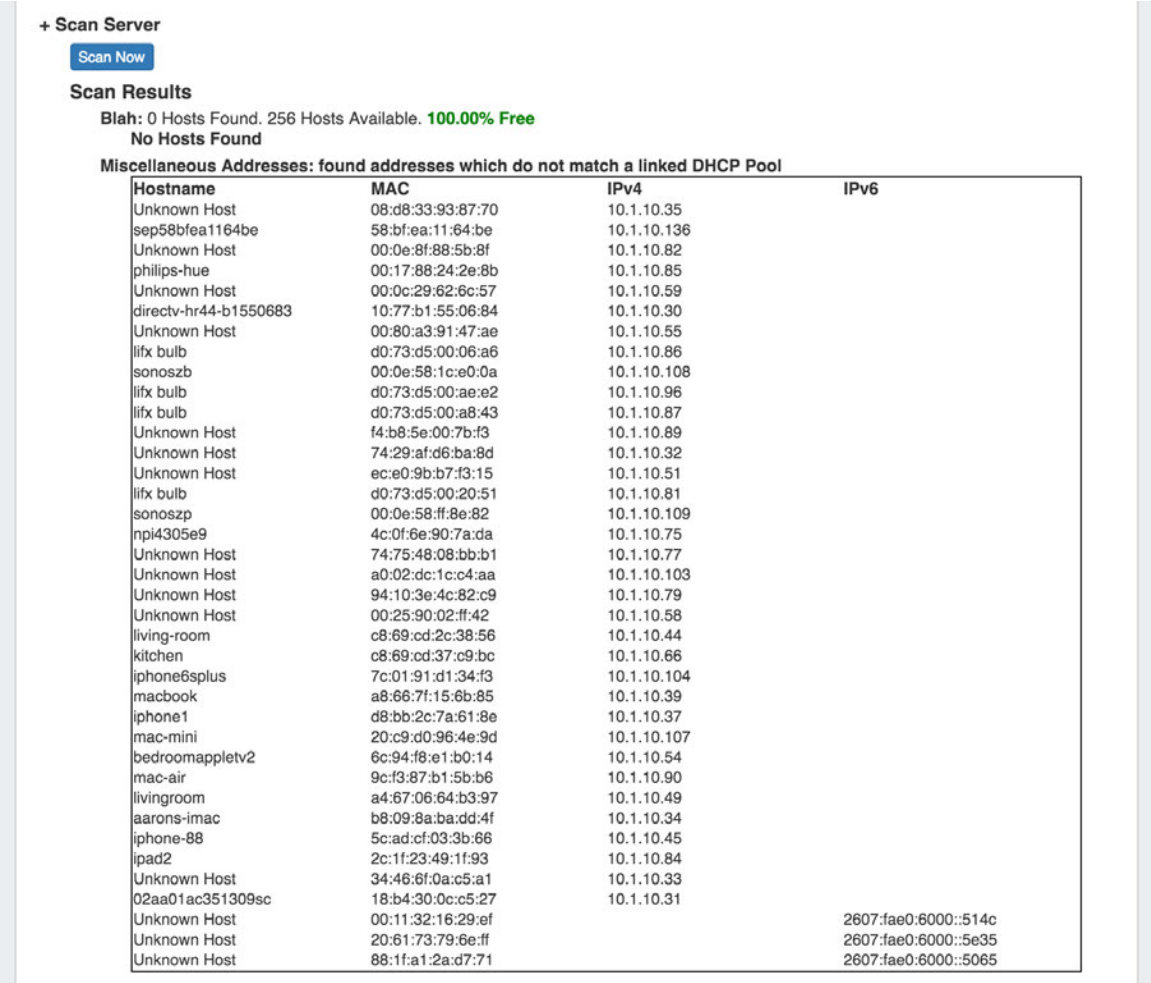
sudo /usr/sbin/dhcpd -t -cf /etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf

This command explicitly requests the DHCP daemon start in test-only mode (-t) with a specific config file (-cf). This config file should be the location supplied in the "DHCP Config File Path" section.

## Scan Server

Scan Server provides a "Scan Now" button, which scans the DHCP server and returns found IPs under DHCP Pools.

The returned IPs are divided by Pools and IPv4/IPv6. Returned fields include MAC address, IP address, and name. The percentage utilization of IP space out of the available DHCP Pool space is also included at the top of the list.




| Hostname | MAC | IPv4 | IPv6 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Unknown Host | 08:d8:33:93:87:70 | 10.1.10.35 | |
| sep58bfea1164be | 58:bf:ea:11:64:be | 10.1.10.136 | |
| Unknown Host | 00:0e:8f:88:5b:8f | 10.1.10.82 | |
| philips-hue | 00:17:88:24:2e:8b | 10.1.10.85 | |
| Unknown Host | 00:0c:29:62:6c:57 | 10.1.10.59 | |
| directv-hr44-b1550683 | 10:77:b1:55:06:84 | 10.1.10.30 | |
| Unknown Host | 00:80:a3:91:47:ae | 10.1.10.55 | |
| lifx bulb | d0:73:d5:00:06:a6 | 10.1.10.86 | |
| sonoszb | 00:0e:58:1c:e0:0a | 10.1.10.108 | |
| lifx bulb | d0:73:d5:00:ae:e2 | 10.1.10.96 | |
| lifx bulb | d0:73:d5:00:a8:43 | 10.1.10.87 | |
| Unknown Host | f4:b8:5e:00:7b:f3 | 10.1.10.89 | |
| Unknown Host | 74:29:af:d6:ba:8d | 10.1.10.32 | |
| Unknown Host | ec:e0:9b:b7:f3:15 | 10.1.10.51 | |
| lifx bulb | d0:73:d5:00:20:51 | 10.1.10.81 | |
| sonoszp | 00:0e:58:ff:8e:82 | 10.1.10.109 | |
| npi4305e9 | 4c:0f:6e:90:7a:da | 10.1.10.75 | |
| Unknown Host | 74:75:48:08:bb:b1 | 10.1.10.77 | |
| Unknown Host | a0:02:dc:1c:c4:aa | 10.1.10.103 | |
| Unknown Host | 94:10:3e:4c:82:c9 | 10.1.10.79 | |
| Unknown Host | 00:25:90:02:ff:42 | 10.1.10.58 | |
| living-room | c8:69:cd:2c:38:56 | 10.1.10.44 | |
| kitchen | c8:69:cd:37:c9:bc | 10.1.10.66 | |
| iphone6splus | 7c:01:91:d1:34:f3 | 10.1.10.104 | |
| macbook | a8:66:7f:15:6b:85 | 10.1.10.39 | |
| iphone1 | d8:bb:2c:7a:61:8e | 10.1.10.37 | |
| mac-mini | 20:c9:d0:96:4e:9d | 10.1.10.107 | |
| bedroomappletv2 | 6c:94:f8:e1:b0:14 | 10.1.10.54 | |
| mac-air | 9c:f3:87:b1:5b:b6 | 10.1.10.90 | |
| livingroom | a4:67:06:64:b3:97 | 10.1.10.49 | |
| aarons-imac | b8:09:8a:ba:dd:4f | 10.1.10.34 | |
| iphone-88 | 5c:ad:cf:03:3b:66 | 10.1.10.45 | |
| ipad2 | 2c:1f:23:49:1f:93 | 10.1.10.84 | |
| Unknown Host | 34:46:6f:0a:c5:a1 | 10.1.10.33 | |
| 02aa01ac351309sc | 18:b4:30:0c:c5:27 | 10.1.10.31 | |
| Unknown Host | 00:11:32:16:29:ef | | 2607:fae0:6000::514c |
| Unknown Host | 20:61:73:79:6e:ff | | 2607:fae0:6000::5e35 |
| Unknown Host | 88:1f:a1:2a:d7:71 | | 2607:fae0:6000::5065 |

If the scan is unable to be completed, an error message will appear in the DHCP Management section.

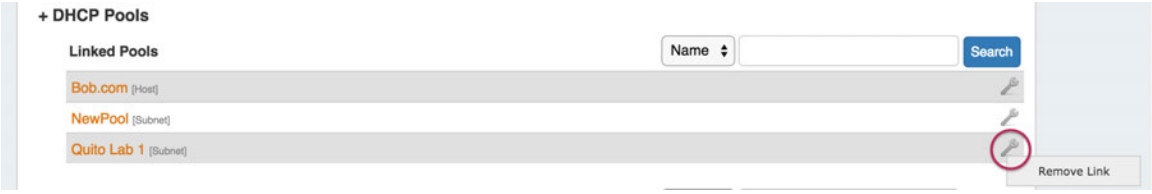
## DHCP Pools

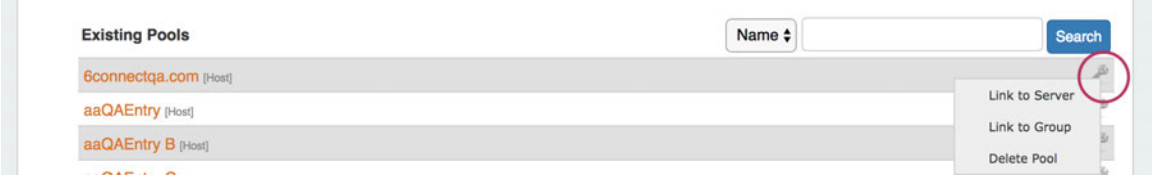
In this area, the admin can specify what DHCP Pools are linked to the DHCP server or DHCP Groups.

This includes any host reservations as well as DHCP Pools as defined in the next section.

Use the Action menu on Existing Pools to Link to Server, Link to Group, or Delete Pool

The Action menu for Linked Pools will show the option to Remove Link from Pools.






Additional edits may be made to pools by clicking on the Pool name. This allows the Pool name, assignment, and lines to be changed. Be sure to hit "Save" after making changes.

## DHCP Pool Search:

Both Linked and Existing DHCP pools have field-specific search options to filter the DHCP pool list(s). Select the search term type from the dropdown list, type the search term in the search box, then hit "Search".

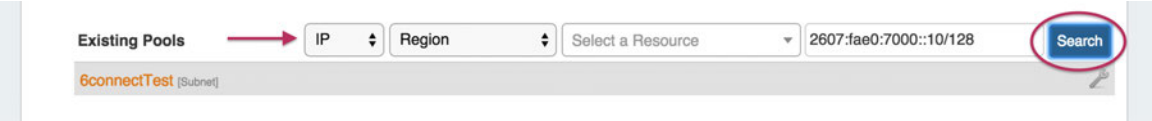
For both Linked and Existing pools, search terms include:

**Name:** The full or partial name of the pool (ex: "Lab")

**MAC:** The full (ex: 00:11:22:33:44:55:66:77) or partial (:22) MAC address, for pools that were created as "Host" type. MAC address searches must include a colon.

**IP:** Search by IP Block by providing the CIDR assigned to the pool. *(ex: 10.0.0.0/24)*

For Existing Pools, additional filter terms may be included to further filter the IP search by Region or assigned Resource.




After entering your search terms, click "Search", and the pool list will filter to the results.

# Create a New DHCP Pool - Subnets

When Assigning a Subnet (via dropdown) the IP Assignment selection will pull the data from any IPAM block meeting your defined criteria. You can use either a Smart or Direct assignment depending on your preference. For Smart Assign pool creation, existing IP Rules may be applied to reserve additional addresses out of the pool range. To create an IP Rule, see IPAM Rules.

DHCP Pools and IP Rules

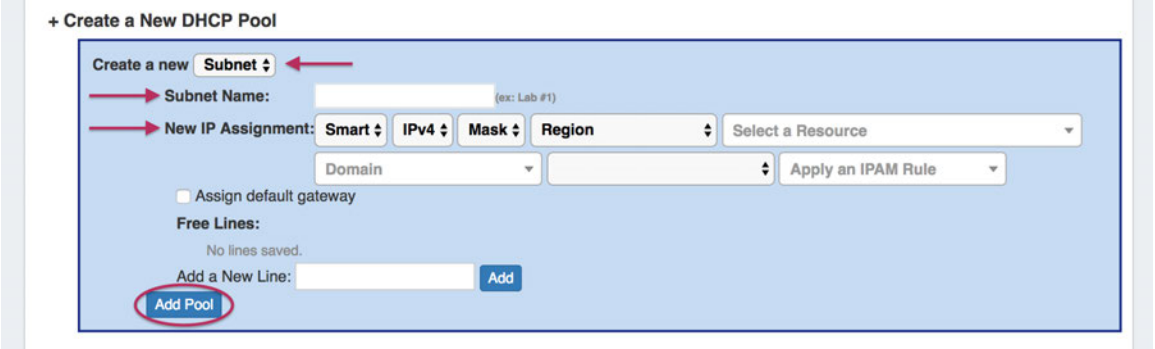
For DHCP Pools, ProVision automatically reserves the first and last address of the pool for Gateway and Broadcast addresses, respectively.

If an additional IP Rule is applied, the rule will begin with the second address in the block.

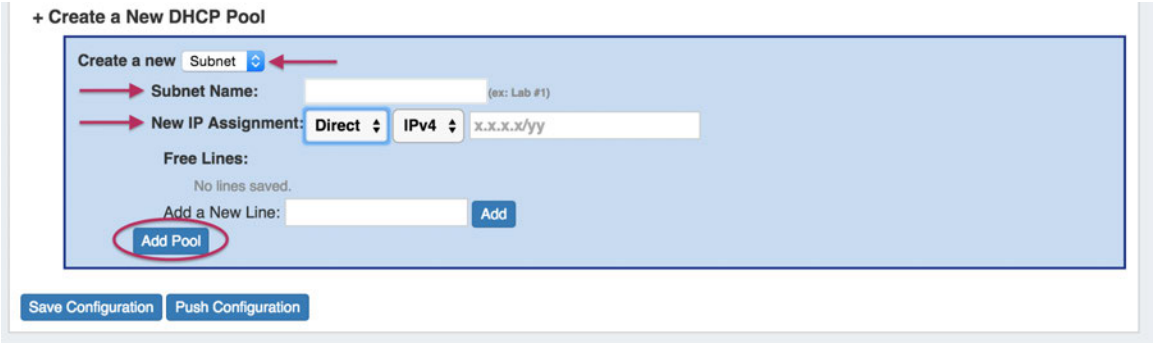
For example: if a DHCP Pool is created using 10.0.0.64/29 with an IP Rule of "Reserve First Three", the resulting pool range would be 10.0.0.68 through 10.0.0.70, as the first four as well as the final address would be reserved.

Enter the name of the Pool / Subnet, and select the assignment criteria:

For **Smart Assign**: select IPv4 / IPv6, Mask, then optional Region, Resource assignment, Domain - VLAN, and IP Rules criteria, add free lines if desired, then click "Add Pool".




For **Direct Assign**: select IPv4 / IPv6 and enter the block in CIDR format, add free lines if desired, then click "Add Pool".

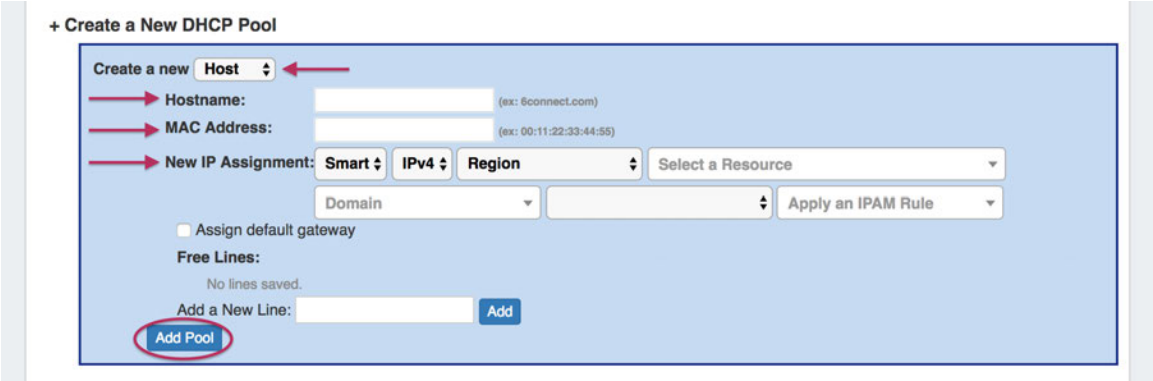



# Create a New DHCP Pool - Host

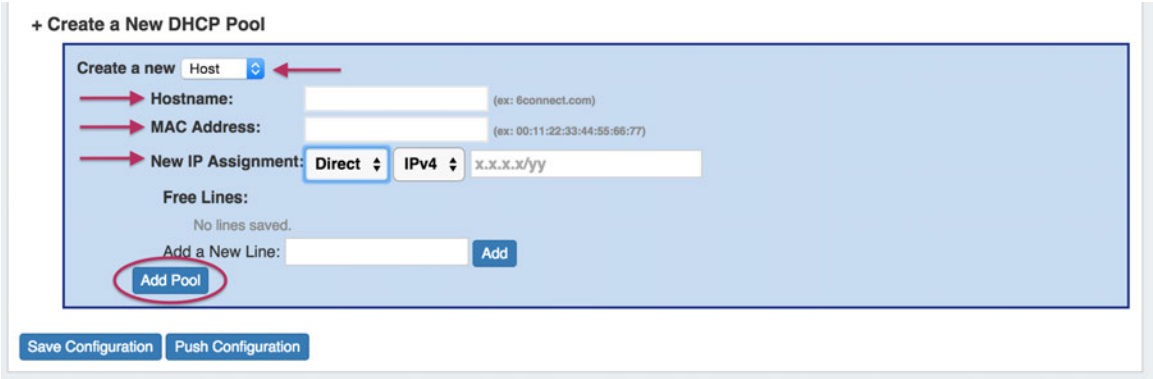
When reserving Hostname/MAC data, change the Dropdown to "Host". This will also give you an option to assign from an existing DHCP block (smart assign) or a specific IP address (direct assign).

Enter the name of the Hostname and MAC address, then select the assignment criteria:

For **Smart Assign**: select IPv4 / IPv6, then optional Region, Resource assignment, Domain - VLAN, and IP Rule criteria, add free lines if desired, then click "Add Pool".



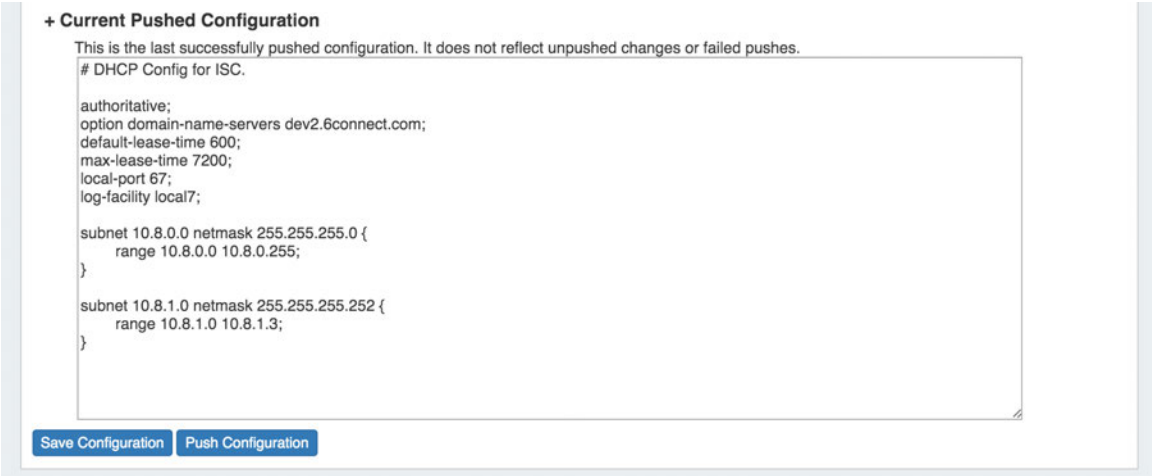

For **Direct Assign**: select IPv4 / IPv6 and enter the block in CIDR format, add free lines if desired, then click "Add Pool".




## Current Pushed Configuration

Expanding "Current Pushed Configuration" allows you to view the detailed text (read-only) of the last sucessfully pushed configuration.

Current Pushed Configuration does not reflect any un-pushed changes or failed pushes.

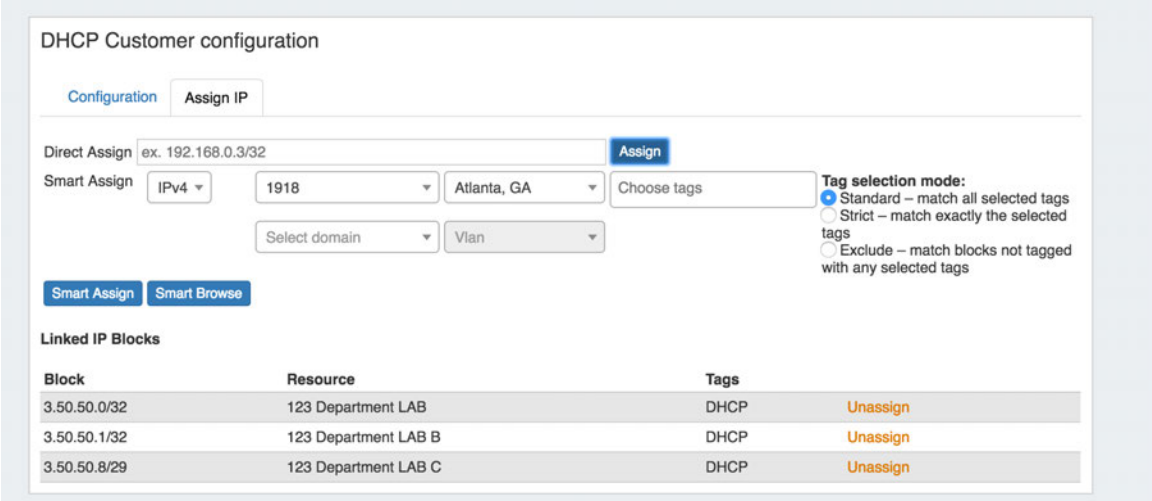



## Saving/Pushing DHCP Server Configurations

It is recommended that you save your configuration after changes. Save your changes by clicking the "Save Configuration" button at the bottom of the DHCP Management Gadget.

When you Push a Configuration (by clicking "Push Configuration") the configuration is automatically saved.

# Working with the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget




The DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget allows users to assign IP aggregates to the DHCP server pools and generate DHCP Server Configuration changes.

These configurations are then sent to the associated DHCP server Management Gadget as "Unpushed Configurations", where they may be held until a manual or schedule push occurs.

## Setting up the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget

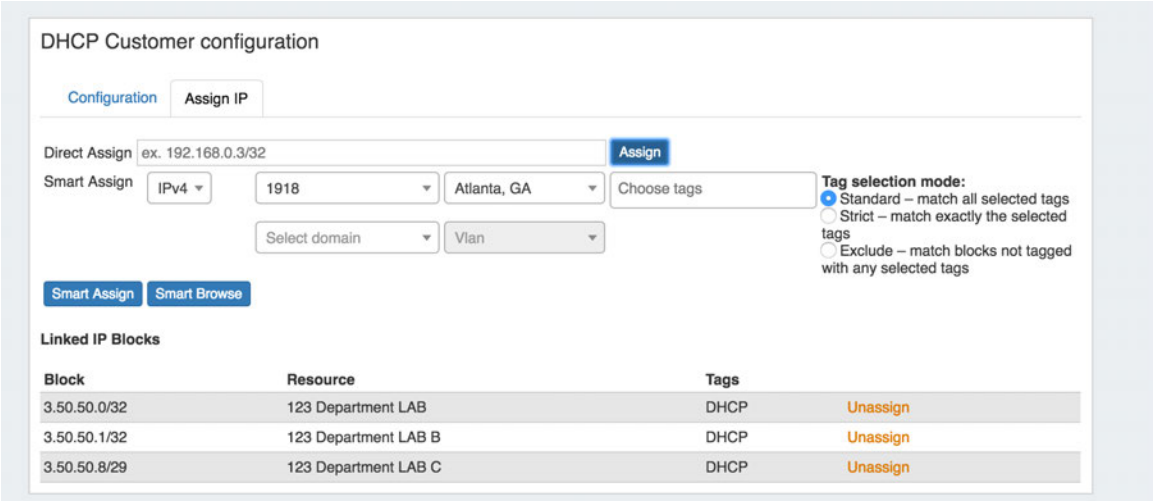
Before using the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget, the following should be set up in ProVision:

- The associated DHCP server should be created in ProVision and set up in the DHCP Management Gadget (See: DHCP Tab).
- Add the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget to the desired Section. You may want to create a specific "DHCP Customer" Section for DHCP customer entries (See: Customizing Sections).
- Have, or set up IPAM Aggregates with subassignable blocks from the **IPAM** Tab with the desired IP space type, RIR, Region(s), Tags, and any desired VLAN criteria. Regions are a required field when assigning IPs from the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget.

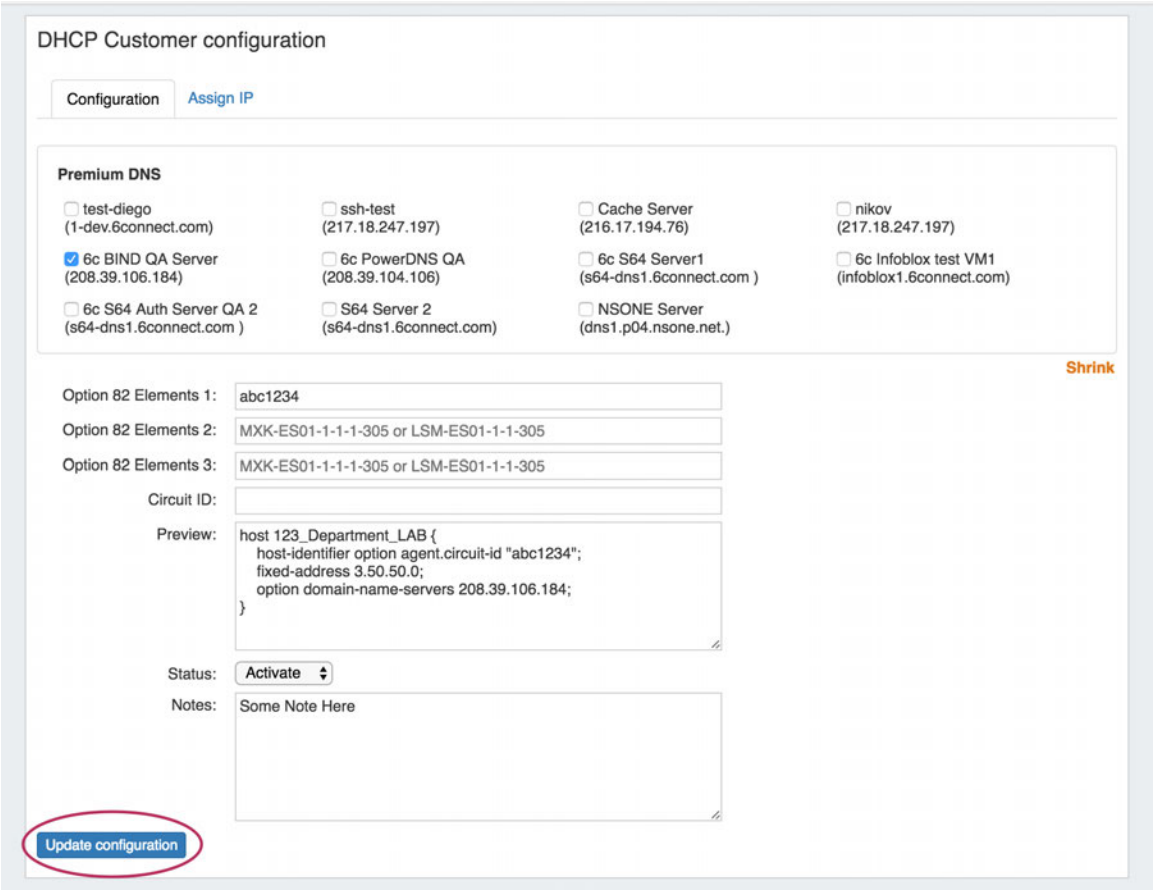
## Using the DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget

Step 1) Link the Gadget with the desired DHCP Server

Step 2) Assign IP's for Pools from DHCP Aggregates




Step 3) Set up configuration information - add Option 82 Elements, Circuit ID, and notes. Use the "Preview" field to confirm the accuracy of the data, and select the status as "Activate" or "Terminate".
Once saved, the updated configuration will be sent to the DHCP Management Gadget.




Step 4) an admin user may manually push the updated configuration from the DHCP Management Gadget, or use a scheduled DHCP push task to automate the pushes.

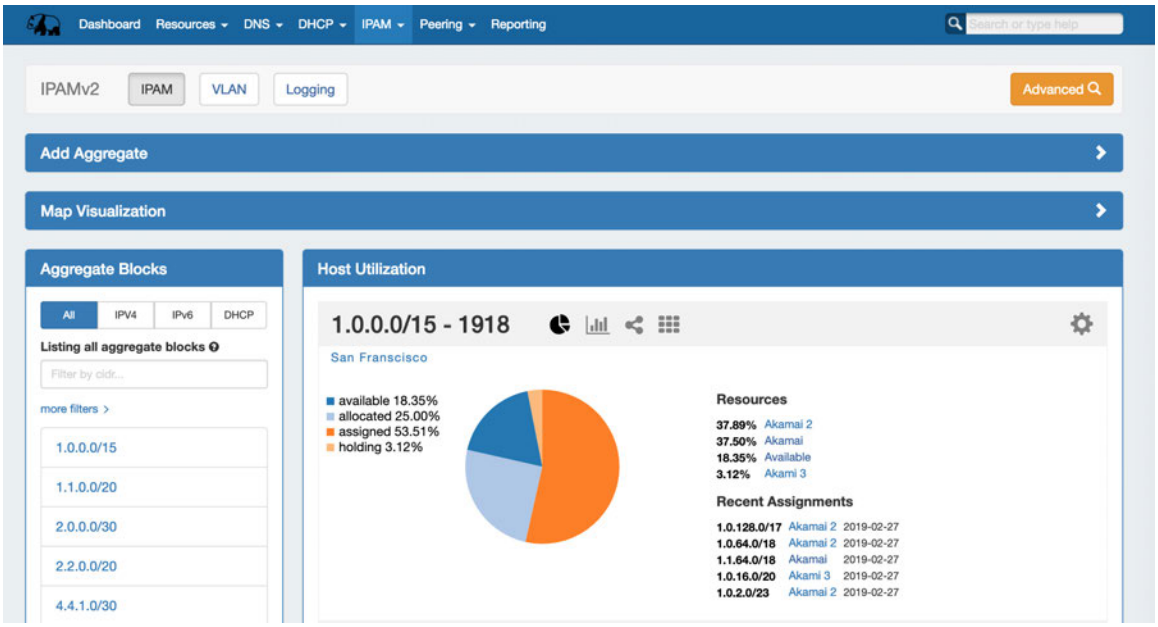
See Gadgets - DHCP Customer Configuration for more details.

## Additional Information

For more detail on advanced DHCP topics and the DHCP API, see API Module - DHCP.

# IPAM Tab

# IPAM




The **IPAM** tab contains three sub-tabs: **IPAM**, **VLAN**, and **Logging**.

The **IPAM** tab provides a listing of top-level aggregate blocks, tools to add, merge, sparse allocate, and manage aggregates, as well as multiple data visualizations. The blocks under each aggregate may be individually assigned, edited, swip'ed, and managed from the IPAM Manage page for the aggregate. For detailed information on specific aggregate and block tasks, see Working with IP Aggregates, Working with IP Blocks, and Working with IP Rules. For administrative level tasks, see IPAM Administration.

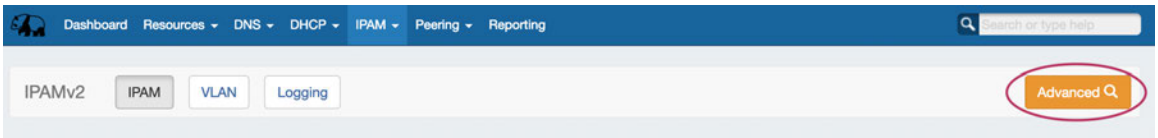
The **VLAN** tab (Admin only) shows an overview of Domains and VLANs on the left sidebar, and IPAM Utilization data organized by each Domain / VLAN pair. From here, Admins may enabled VLANs for domains, edit VLANs, add/remove VLAN associations with blocks, and Browse VLAN Manage (similar to IPAM Manage). See VLAN Administration and Working with the VLAN Manager for details.

**Logging** (Admin only) provides a quick link to ProVision's logging system, where you can filter to view IPAM-only logs.


- IPAM
- IPAM Tab Overview
  - Advanced Button
  - Add Aggregate
  - Map View
    - Map View Overview
    - Enabling Map View
    - Working in Map View
  - Aggregate Blocks List
    - Search / Filter Aggregates
  - Top-Level Aggregate / Host Utilization Box Overview
- IPAM Workflow
  - IP Management
    - Add Aggregates
    - Manage Aggregates
    - Assign Aggregates
    - Delete Aggregates
  - IP Assignment Lifecycle
    - IP Block Status
- Working with IPAM Aggregates
- Additional Information

# IPAM Tab Overview

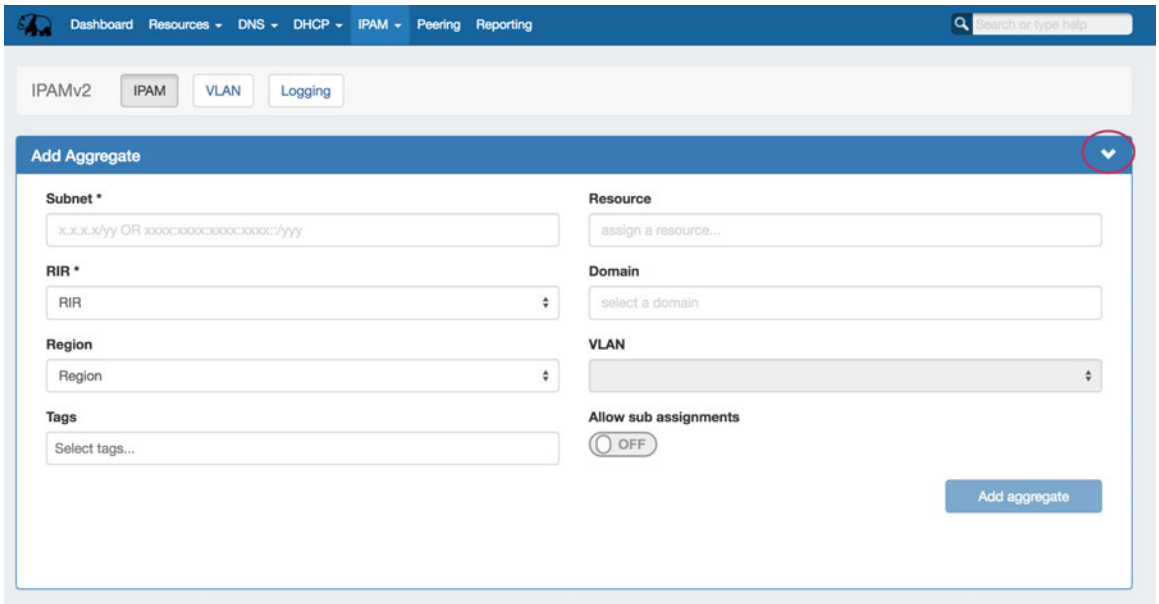
## Advanced Button




Opens the **IPAM Manage** screen for all blocks under all aggregates. See Working with IP Blocks for more information on working in IPAM Manage.

## Add Aggregate

Opens a menu to add an aggregate block with options for RIR, VLAN, Tags, Region, Resource, and enabling Sub-Assignments.

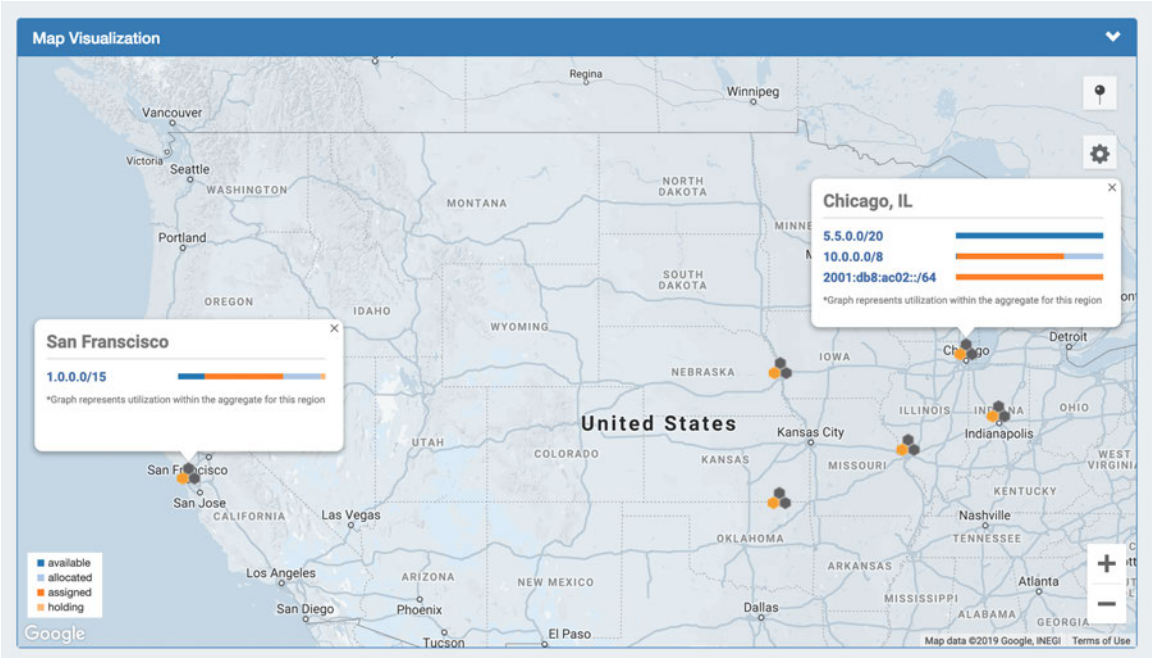



When done, click "Add Aggregate". The Aggregate will be listed under the Host Utilization and Aggregate Blocks list of the IPAM Tab, and individual blocks under that aggregate may be managed from IPAM Manage.

## Map View

### Map View Overview

Map View shows aggregate locations / recent assignments in geographical format, based on the region assigned to those aggregates. Clicking on a location icon will bring up a current utilization graph and a link to that aggregate's IPAM Manage page if in Aggregates view, or recent assignment details if in Recent Assignments view.




Google Geocode API Key Requirement for Map View

*Due to changes in Google's licensing and Geocoding API, the geolocation method used for Map View in ProVision versions pre-v7.1.0 is no longer supported.*

*A Google Geocoding API Key is now required for geolocation data to be accessible by ProVision, and for IPAM Maps to properly determine a Region's location. As a result, IPAM Map View in versions older than 7.1.0 may not accurately display or update location information.*

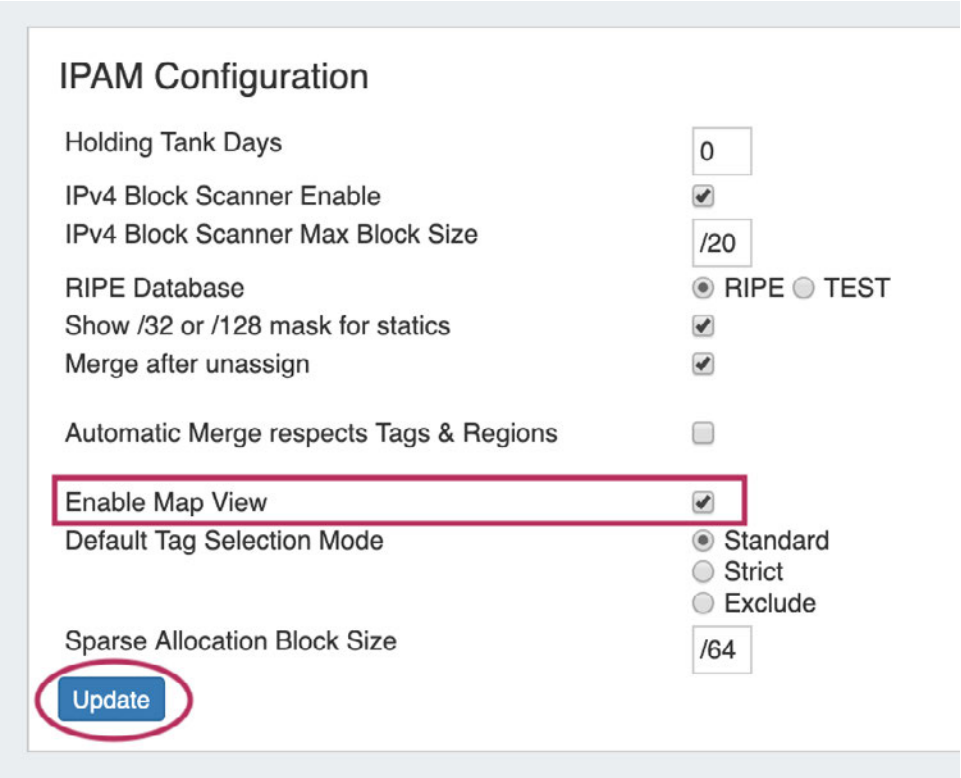
*6connect is exploring adding additional map integration options for ProVision. Any customers who require an alternative geocode option supported apart from Google Geocode API key, please contact us at feedback@6connect.com.*

## Enabling Map View

The IPAM aggregate map view may be enabled / disabled from the IPAM Configuration page. Once enabled, a map module will be able to be expanded in the IPAM Tab.

The following criteria must be met for Map view to correctly show data:

- Map View enabled on the IPAM Configuration page




- A Google Geocoding API Key provided in the Edit Regions page. See Edit Regions for additional detail.

  **Step 1: Obtain a Google Geocoding API Key**

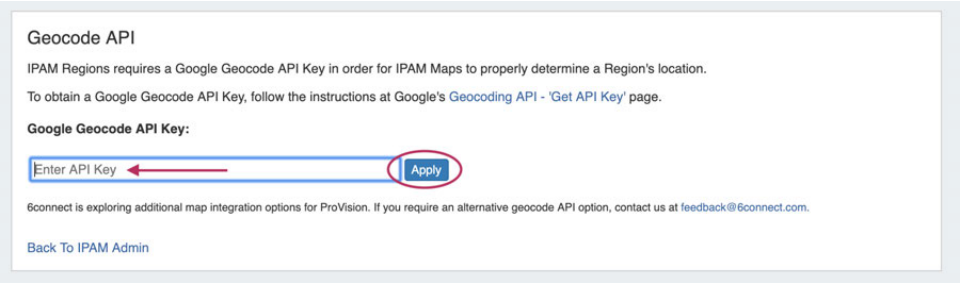
  *To get a Google Geocoding API Key, follow the instructions listed here:*

  > *How to get a Google Geocoding API Key*

  *Note: In order to obtain a Google Geocoding API Key, a company must have a subscription enabled to Google Cloud Platform Console.*

  **Step 2: Assign the API Key to IPAM Regions**

  *Once assigned a Google Geocoding API Key, paste the API key into the IPAM regions page under "Google Geocode API Key" and click the "Apply" button.*




- Regions created with a valid "Address" (location) field. See Edit Regions for additional detail.

  The "Address" field may be a street address, city, airport code, or geo-coordinates.

  Valid addresses (according to Google's API) will show a green check mark next to the address field, invalid addresses (unable to be mapped) will show a yellow exclamation mark.

| Region Code | Name | Address | Action |
|---|---|---|---|
| SFO | San Franscisco | SFO | Update |
| 5520 | Berlin | 5520 West 76th St., Berlin, Germany | Update |
| 701 | Indy | 701 West henry St., Indianapolis, IN | Update |
| London | London | London, UK | Update |
| Rome | Rome | ..... | Update |
| CHI | Chicago, IL | Chicago, IL, USA | Update |

Miscellaneous Terms as Addresses

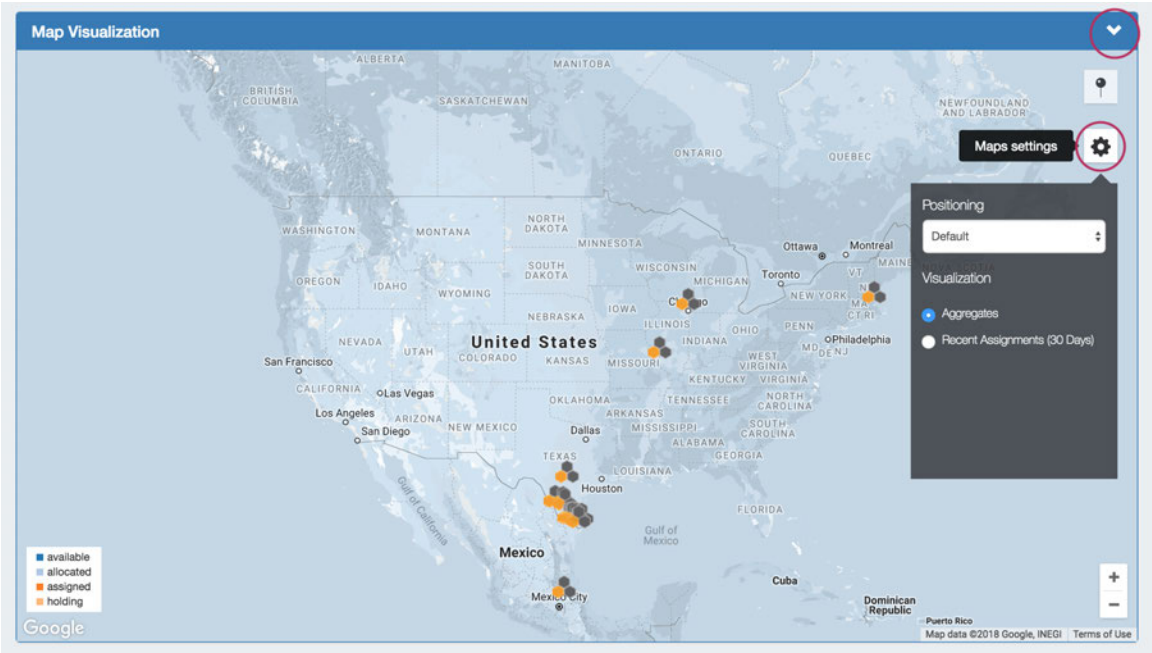
Being that the validity of the "Address" field is determined by Google's API, unexpected location mapping may occur if a company name or other non-location specific term is used in the Address field.

Google treats the item as a search term and returns the most likely location result back - but it might not be what you were expecting! When in doubt, check the address term by pasting it into Google Search, and verify that the top result returns your desired location.

- Regions enabled in IPAM Columns and assigned to aggregates / blocks for the IPAM Map view to populate data. See Edit IP Block Attributes for additional detail.

## Working in Map View

The map view may be set by either selecting a predefined map area from the "Maps Settings" "Positioning" dropdown (US, US & Europe, South America, All), or chose a custom area set by zooming / navigating to the desired map area.




To save the currently viewable area as the Default view, click the pin icon to "Save current position as Default".

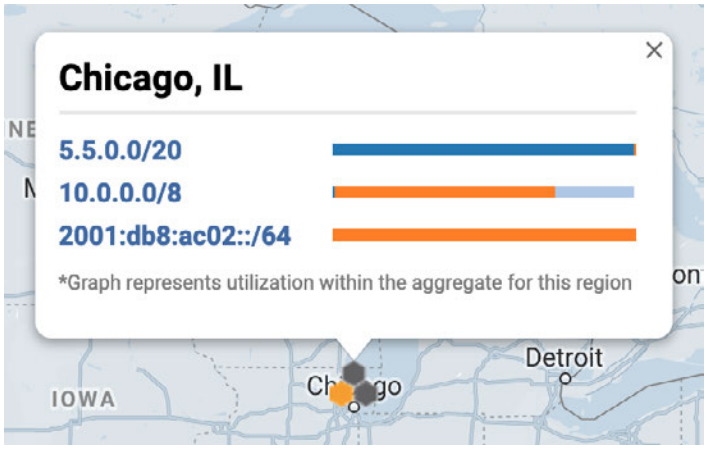
**Map View Settings:**

**Visualization:** Select "Aggregates" to view all available aggregates with region data, or "Recent Assignments" to view block assignments made within the past 30 days.

**Positioning Dropdown:** Select a predefined area for the map view range: US, US & Europe, South America, or All.

**Save current Position as Default:** Click the pin icon to save the current map view range as the default view.

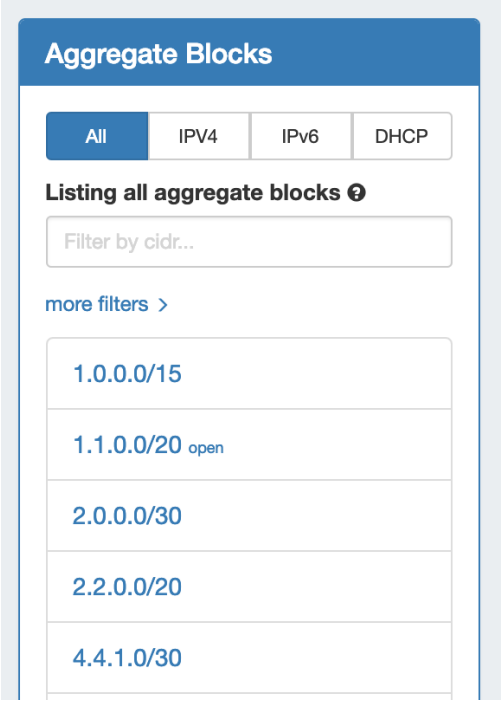
**Aggregate Detail Box:**




Provides utilization data and a shortcut link to the IPAM Manage screen for that aggregate if in "Aggregates" view, or assignment details if in "Recent Assignments" view.

# Aggregate Blocks List

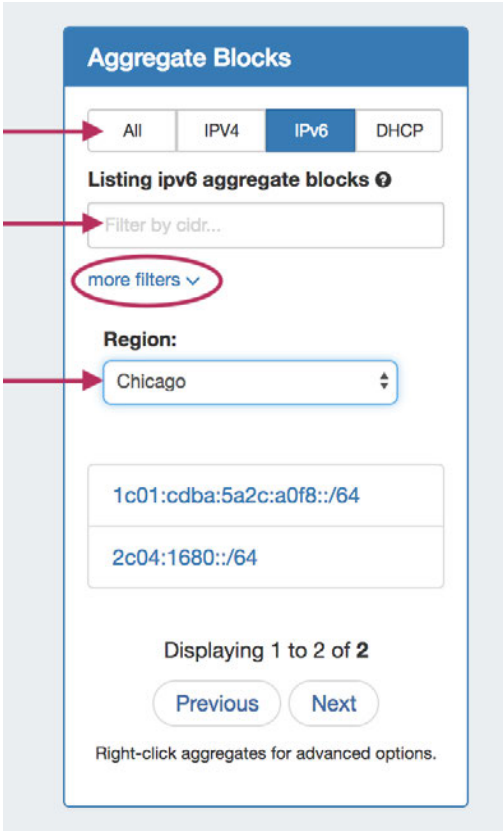
Provides a searchable / filterable listing of all aggregate blocks in the left sidebar, links IPAM Manage for the aggregates, and Merge Aggregate functionality.



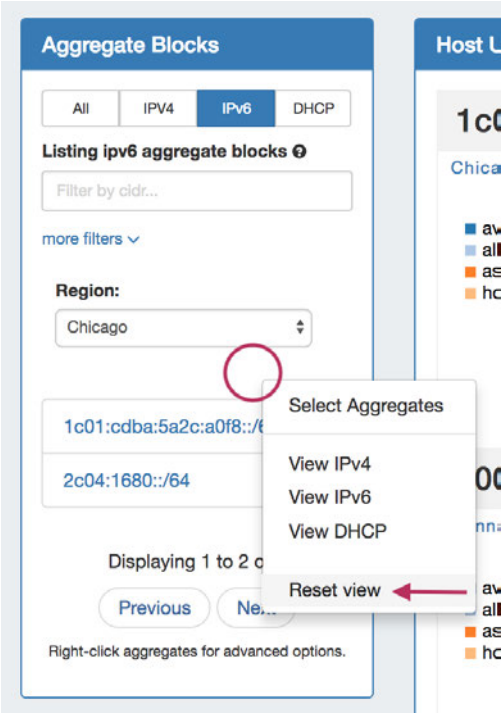

## Search / Filter Aggregates

Search for and filter IPAM Aggregates from the Aggregate Blocks List:

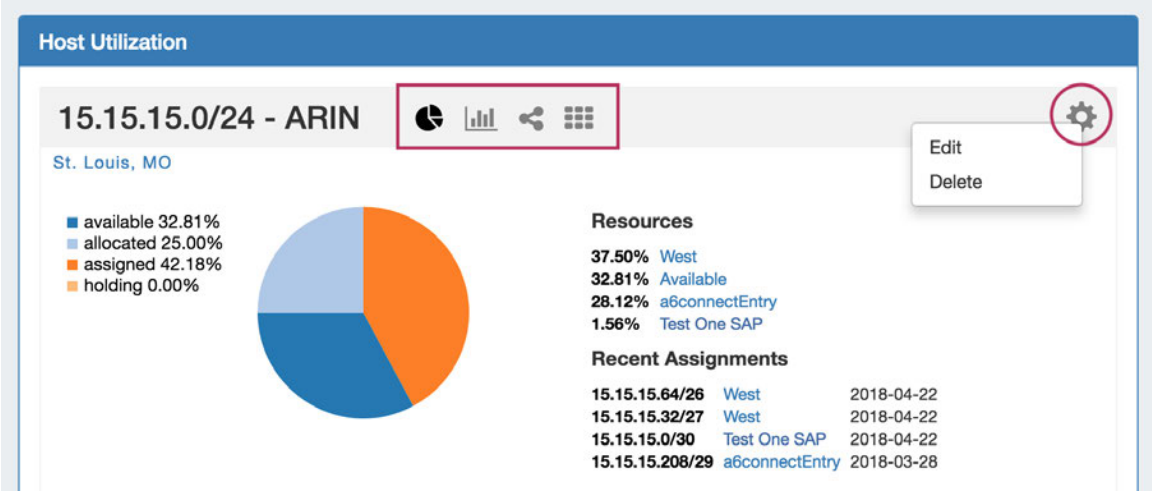
- Select "All", "IPv4", IPv6", or "DHCP" to sort the list by type (You may also access the type filters by right clicking anywhere in the Aggregate Blocks box)
- User the filter / search box to search by CIDR, Region, or RIR
- Search by Region by clicking the "more filters" link
- A shortcut to IPAM Manage for an aggregate is provided by clicking the "open" link that appears when hovering over an aggregate block in the list.




To reset the list, right click anywhere in the Aggregates Blocks list and select "Reset View".




## Top-Level Aggregate / Host Utilization Box Overview




The Top-Level Aggregate Host Utilization box provides detailed information on that aggregate, including:

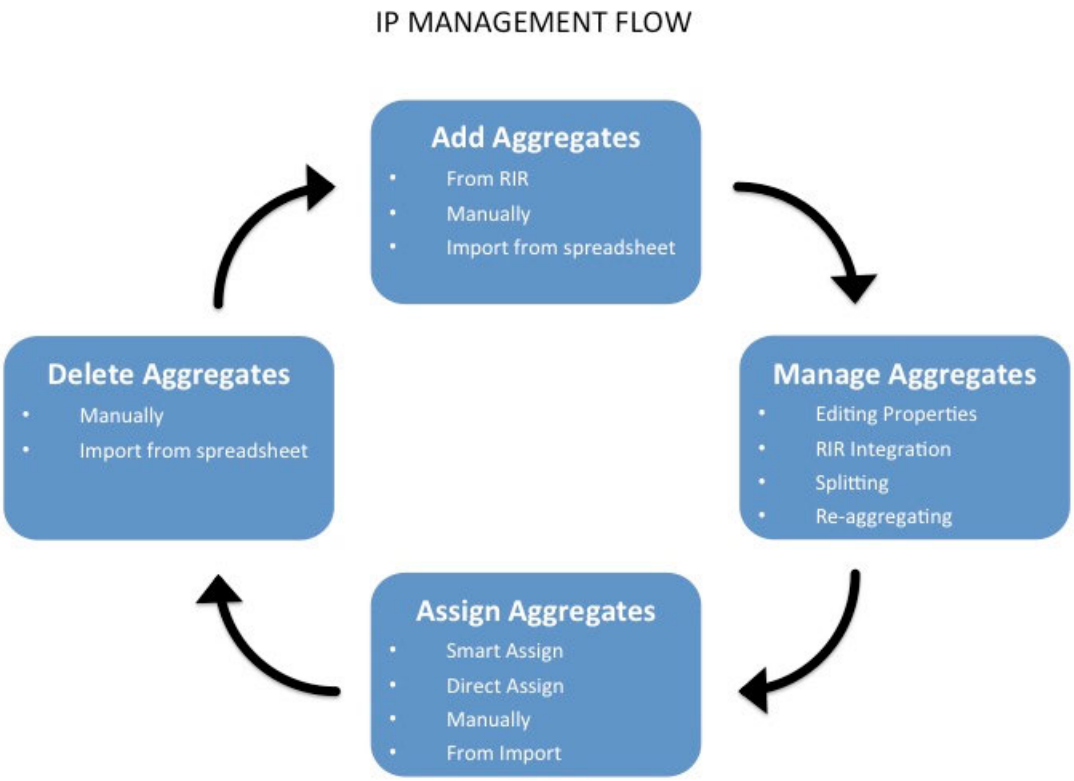
- **CIDR**: Links to IPAM Manage for the aggregate
- **RIR information:** displays the aggregate's RIR, as set at creation (1918, ARIN, RIPE, LACNIC, AfriNIC, APNIC)
- **Aggregate Chart Views**: Four Aggregate chart views are available, - **Pie**, **Bar**, **Tree**, and **Grid** view. Switch between each chart by clicking on the respective icons in the Aggregate header (marked above).
- **Aggregate Actions (Gear Icon):**
  - **Edit:** Opens IPAM Manage for the aggregate. See Working with IP Blocks for information on working in IPAM Manage. Clicking on the Block CIDR in the header also opens the IPAM Manage page.
  - **Delete**: Deletes the Aggregate (provides a warning).
  - **Enable / Disable Sparse Allocation** (IPv6 only): Enable or disable Sparse Allocation for an IPv6 aggregate. Enabling will automatically generate a Numbering Authority Sparse Allocate Domain for use with the aggregate.
  - **Sparse Allocate** (IPv6 only): Appears only when Sparse Allocation is enabled for an IPv6 aggregate. Opens a menu to select or create a resource to assign a block to, using the sparse allocate algorithm to disperse the assignment(s) throughout the aggregate. See: Working with IP Aggregates
- **Region(s):** Displays the primary region(s) associated with the aggregate, either at aggregate creation or from regions associated with blocks under that aggregate. Clicking on the region link for an aggregate will open IPAM Manage for the aggregate, filtered to view blocks associated with that region.
- **Utilization:** Utilization displayed as both a pie chart and detailed percentages. Utilization statuses include:
  - **Available:** A status of "Available" indicates the block is free and able to immediately be assigned or allocated to a resource.
  - **Allocated:** Allocated blocks have been assigned to an overarching resource, but have subassignments enabled and may have smaller blocks assigned out of them to other Resources, such as customers or DHCP Pools.
  - **Assigned:** A status of "Assigned" indicates that the block has been assigned to a Resource, with no subassignment capability, and is unavailable.
  - **Holding:** Blocks in "Holding" have recently been unassigned, and are held for a set duration in the IPAM Holding Tank, unless otherwise overridden, reassigned, or reclaimed from Holding.
- **Resources:** The top five Resources assigned under that aggregate with the most assigned block space.
- **Recent Assignments:** The five most recent block assignments under that aggregate, with the CIDR, assigned resource link, and assignment date.

# IPAM Workflow

## IP Management

IP Management is comprised of four basic functions: adding aggregates into ProVision, managing those aggregate blocks, assigning them to a resource, and deleting the aggregates.

ProVision provides multiple ways for you to achieve each step, depending on your needs. For example, if your organization currently uses spreadsheet data to track aggregates, ProVision provides tools that can import your existing spreadsheets for bulk updates, saving you time. Need to just quickly assign a single IP? Direct Assign will allow you to do so with just a few clicks.




## Add Aggregates

Adding new aggregate may be done manually, automatically from a RIR import, or imported from a .csv file.

- **Manually:** Create a new aggregate via the IPAM Tab. See: Working with IP Aggregates.
- **Import from RIR:** ProVision will automatically identify your RIR / organization and show available aggregates, or you can enter in an ORG ID or IP. See Import Aggregate .Blocks
- **Import from .csv:** Normalize your data as detailed in Importing Your Data - Normalize your Data, and then use ProVision's IP Import from .csv tool.

## Manage Aggregates

Edit, Split, Merge, and connect with RIRs to architect the aggregates as needed and update WHOIS information, if applicable.

- For aggregate level actions, like splitting, merging, and editing, see Working with IP Aggregates - Common Tasks .
- RIR Integration requires LIR setup. See LIR Management and Use and RIR Integration: SWIP/RPSL .
- Editing individual blocks under an aggregate can be done from either IPAM Manage or the IPAM Gadget. See Working with IP Blocks and Working with IP Rules.

## Assign Aggregates

Aggregates may be assigned to a Resource at their creation/import, or assigned later manually or via Smart / Direct Assign.

- To assign at manual aggregate creation, just select a resource from the dropdown in the IPAM Tab - Create Aggregate dropdown. See: Working with IP Aggregates.
- To assign during import, either include the resource assignment as a field in your .csv, or edit the import during the review step to assign a resource. See IP Import from .csv.
- Manual assignments may be done at any time in IPAM Manage or Smart/Direct Assign. See: Working with IP Aggregates and Working with IP Blocks.

## Delete Aggregates

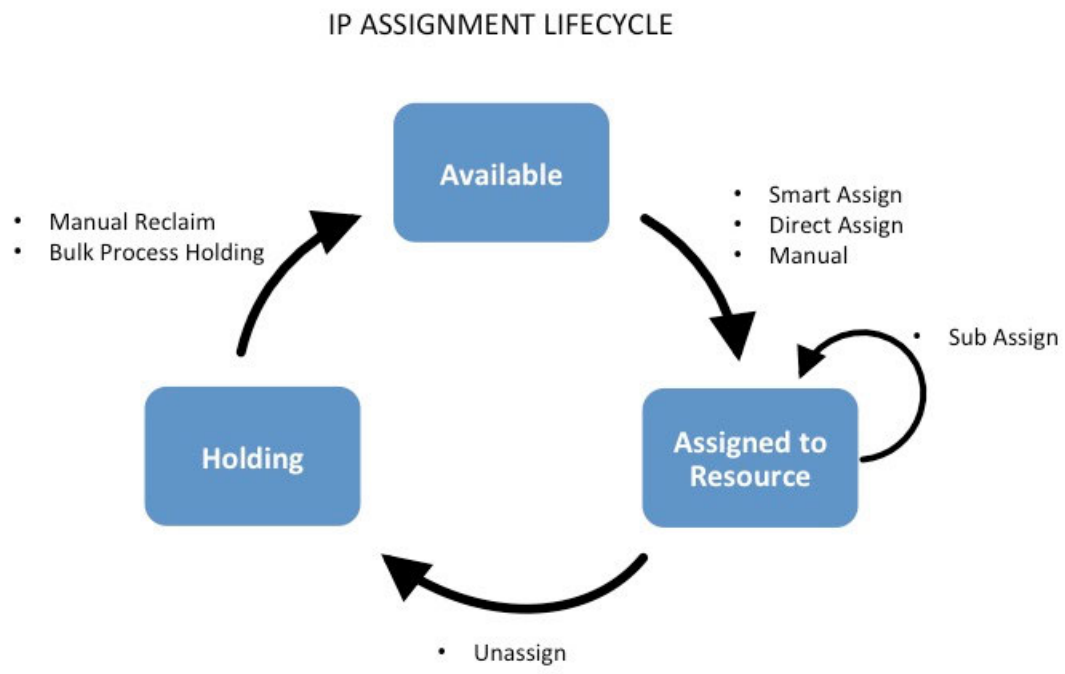
Delete an aggregate from the aggregate box in the IPAM Tab. See: Working with IP Aggregates.

# IP Assignment Lifecycle

In ProVision, the IP assignment lifecycle starts with an available block which is free to be assigned to any IPAM-enabled resource holder. There are multiple methods that may be used to assign a block to a resource holder: Smart Assign, Direct Assign, or Manual Assign (Smart Browse). See Working with IP Blocks for details on assigning blocks.

Once an IP block is assigned, blocks can be further subassigned via the same methods, if desired, by using the "allow subassignments" toggle when editing an assigned block. If a block has subassignments enabled, but has not yet been subassigned, it is listed as "Allocated" - essentially held by the parent resource, but not fully assigned.

When an assigned block is un-assigned it proceeds into the Holding Tank: a special resource where blocks are held until either a set time has elapsed or until they are manually reclaimed to 'available' status. If a subassigned block is unassigned, it too proceeds to the Holding Tank if not overridden, and then reverts back to allocated to the original parent resource.




## IP Block Status

- **Available:** A status of "Available" indicates the block is free and able to immediately be assigned or allocated to a resource. Available blocks may be assigned via any assignment method - manual, smart assign/browse, and direct assign.
- **Assigned:** A status of "Assigned" indicates that the block has been assigned to a Resource, with no subassignment capability, and is unavailable.
- **Allocated:** Allocated blocks have been assigned to an overarching parent resource, but have subassignments enabled and may have smaller blocks assigned out of them to other Resources, such as customers or DHCP Pools. Allocated blocks count as "Available" for reporting functionality until subassigned, but are shown as their own category on the IPAM Utilization charts. Once subassigned, the block is considered "Assigned".
- **Holding:** Blocks in "Holding" have recently been unassigned, and are held for a set duration in the IPAM Holding Tank, unless otherwise overridden, reassigned, or reclaimed from Holding.

For more information on performing tasks in this IP Assignment Lifecycle, see the following documentation sections:

Working with IP Blocks

IPAM Administration

# Working with IPAM Aggregates

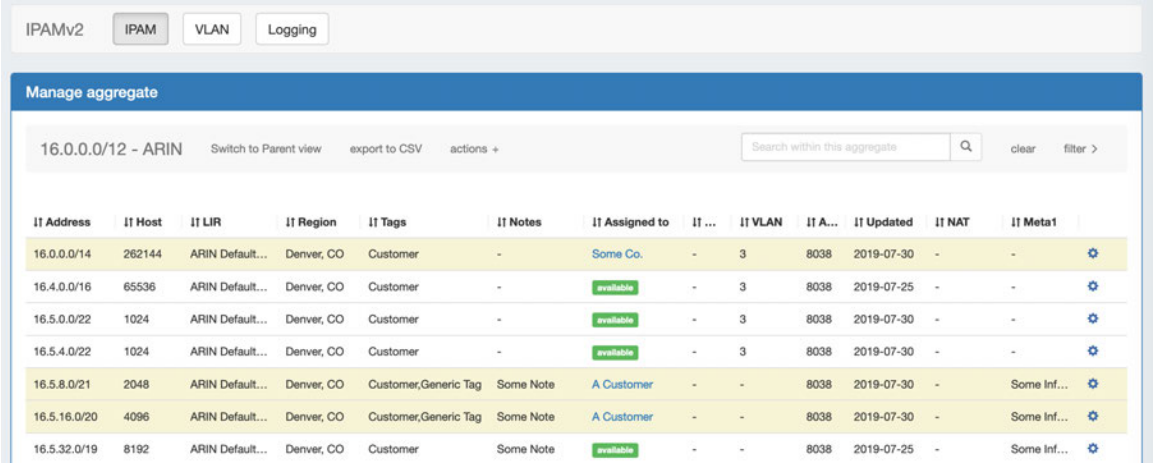
For additional information on performing IPAM tasks and working with aggregates and blocks, continue on to Working with IP Aggregates and Working with IP Blocks.

# Additional Information

- Working with IP Aggregates
- Working with IP Blocks
- Working with IP Rules

# Working with IP Aggregates

# Working with IP Aggregates




**IPAM Aggregates**

IP Aggregates are edited and managed from the **IPAM** Tab and IPAM Manage page.

Aggregates may be viewed, filtered, created, and deleted from the **IPAM** Tab, and setting IPAM alerts and using Aggregate Templates are performed in IPAM Manage.

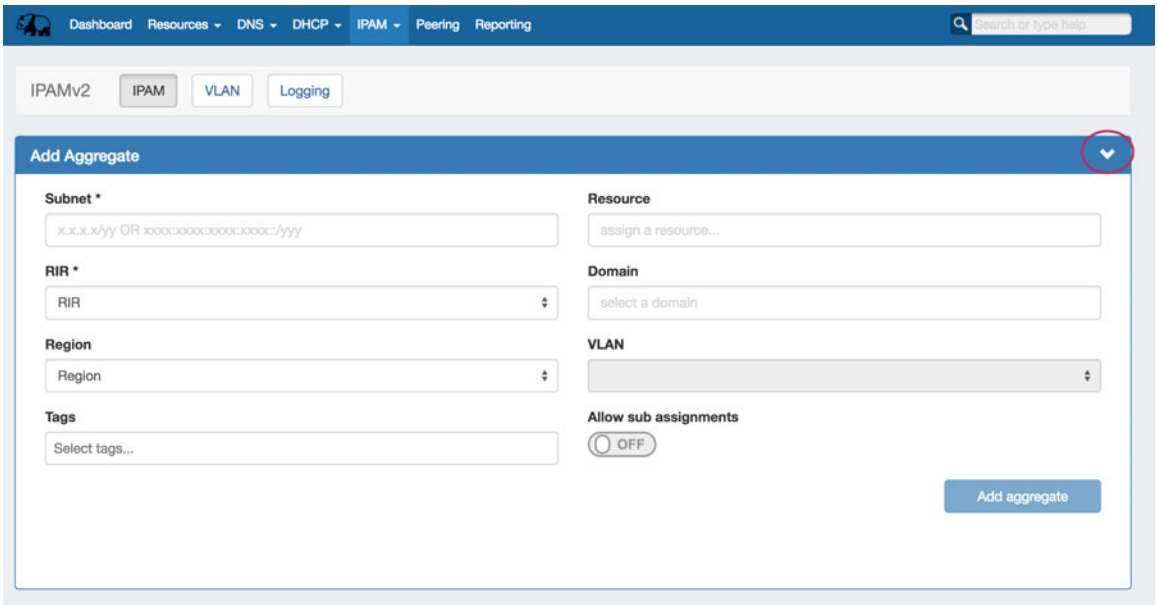
For an overview of the IPAM Tab, see IPAM Tab. For information on working with individual blocks, continue to Working with IP Blocks.


- Working with IP Aggregates
- Working with IP Aggregates - Common Tasks
  - Add an Aggregate
  - Delete an Aggregate
  - Merge Aggregates
  - Sparse Allocate in an IPv6 Aggregate
  - Manage an Aggregate
    - Open IPAM Manage for an Aggregate
  - Aggregate Actions
    - Auto Split Aggregate
    - Clean Up Aggregate
    - Set Aggregate Alerts
- Working with IP Blocks
- Additional Information


# Working with IP Aggregates - Common Tasks

## Add an Aggregate

On the main **IPAM** Tab, expand the "Add Aggregate" module. Once clicked, you get a more detailed screen to add an aggregate block.



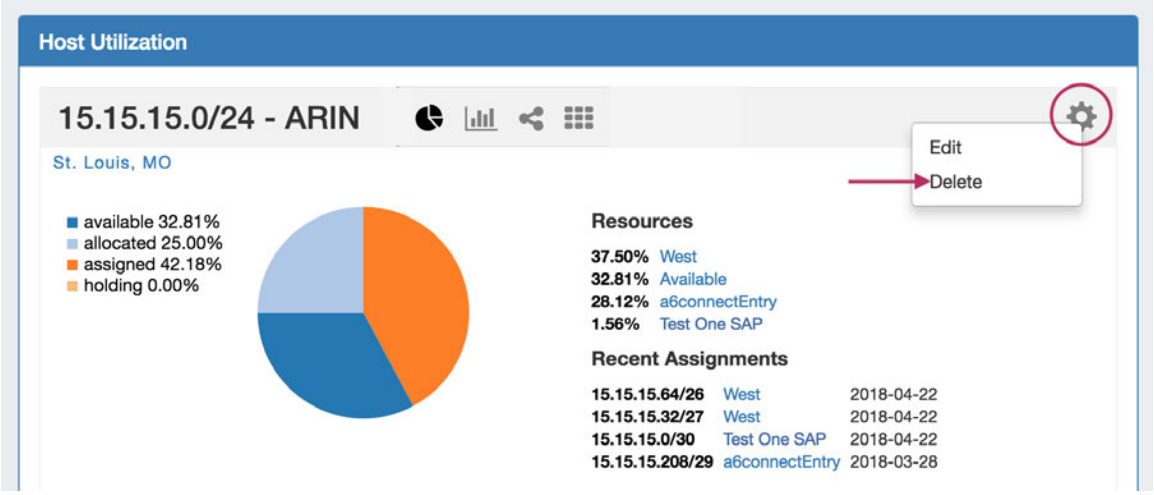

Enter in the desired IPv6 / IPv6 CIDR and RIR, at minimum. Region, Tags, Resource, Domain, VLAN, and subassignment status are optional, if desired.

If creating the aggregate for a specific use, keep in mind that certain uses may require additional information is provided in the aggregate, such as requiring 1918 space (DHCP Pools), a region to be provided (DHCP Customer Configuration Gadget), or a resource to be assigned with subassignments enabled. In such cases, it may be useful to assign a specific IPAM tag to associate with that use to assign at aggregate creation (such as "DHCP" )

When done, click "Add Aggregate". The Aggregate will be listed under the Host Utilization and Aggregate Blocks list of the IPAM Tab.

## Delete an Aggregate

Aggregates may be deleted from the Gear Icon in the top right corner of their Host Utilization box display.

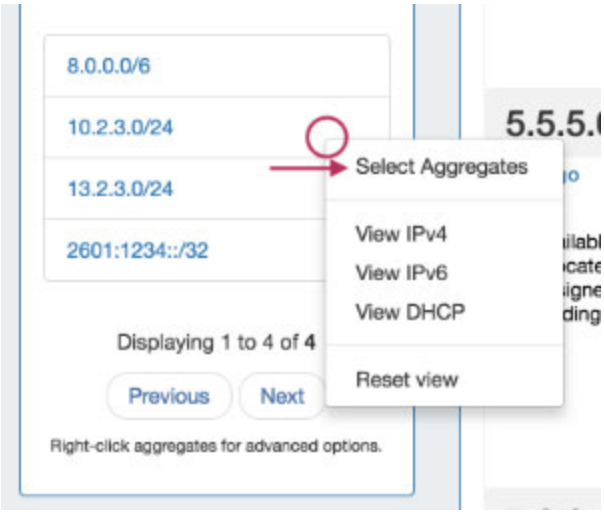



A warning dialog box will appear confirming the deletion, and noting whether assigned blocks exist in the aggregate that would also be deleted.

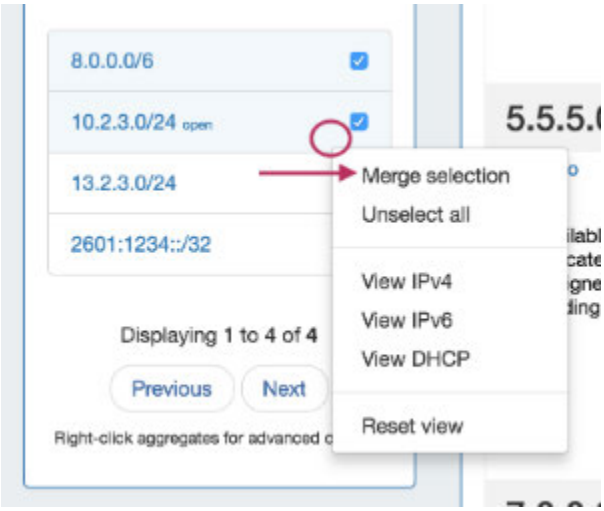
## Merge Aggregates

Adjacent Top Level Aggregates may be merged into a single aggregate, if meeting validity criteria (adjacent, but not overlapping).

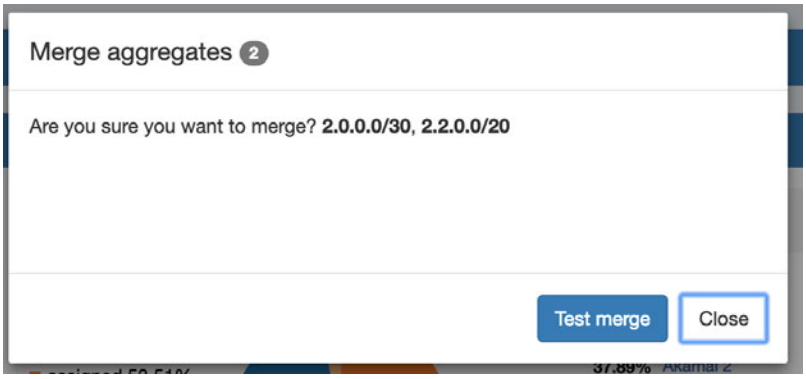
To do so, right click anywhere on the Aggregate Blocks list, and choose "Select Aggregates" from the menu.




Then, click the check boxes for the two aggregates you wish to merge, and then right click and select "Merge Selection".

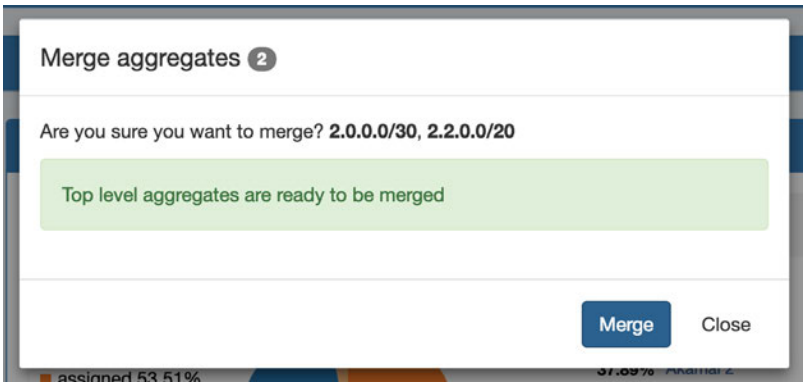



A confirmation dialog box appears to confirm the blocks to merge, and proceed with testing to see if the merge is valid. Click "Test Merge" to proceed.




ProVision will pre-test the merge, and if valid, give you the option to proceed.

Otherwise, an error message will display detailing why the aggregates are unable to be merged.



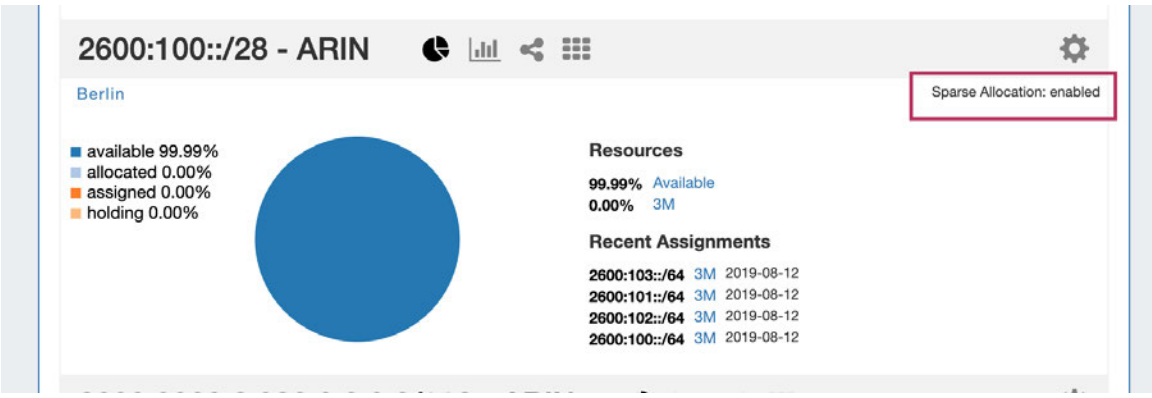

Complete the aggregate merge by clicking "Merge".

To Exit out of the selection prior to merging, select "Close".

## Sparse Allocate in an IPv6 Aggregate

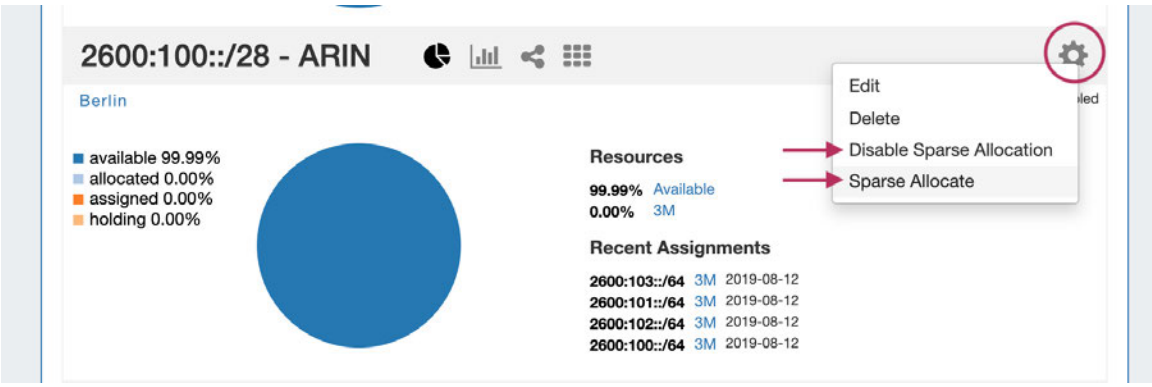
Sparse allocation evenly distributes assignments throughout an IPv6 range, using either a manually configured or automatically generated "Sparse Allocate" Numbering Authority domain algorithm to calculate the next block to assign.

Sparse allocation options are accessed from the IPv6 Aggregate's Action Menu (gear icon). The top right corner of the Utilization module for the IPv6 aggregate will display whether sparse allocation is enabled or disabled for the particular aggregate.

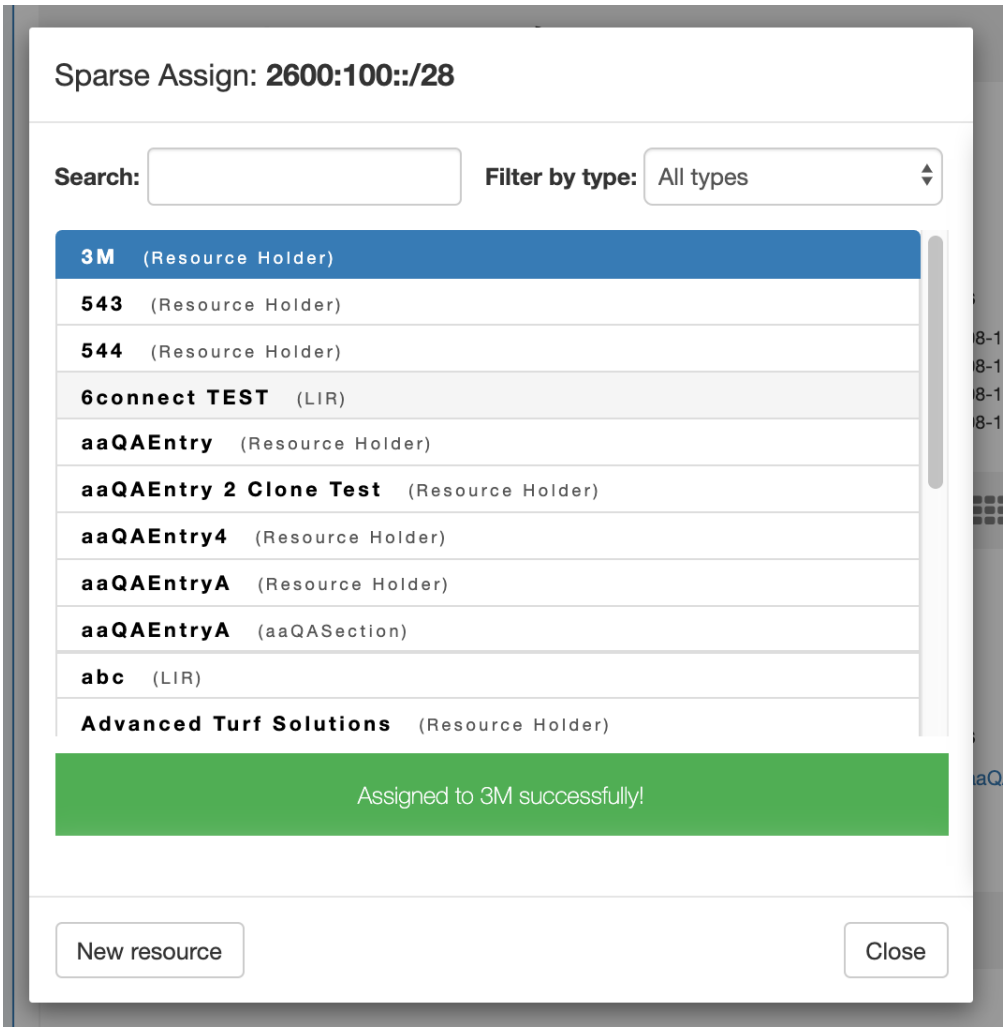



Enable or disable Sparse Allocation for the aggregate by clicking on the aggregate menu, and select to Enable / Disable Sparse Allocation for the aggregate. A "Sparse Allocate" Numbering Domain will automatically be generated for the aggregate in the Admin IPAM Admin area of ProVision. Once enabled, the "Sparse Allocate" option will be available for the aggregate.

To Sparse Allocate assign the next IP generated, select "Sparse Allocate" from the aggregate action menu.




Then, select the resource to assign (or create a new one) and click "Assign".



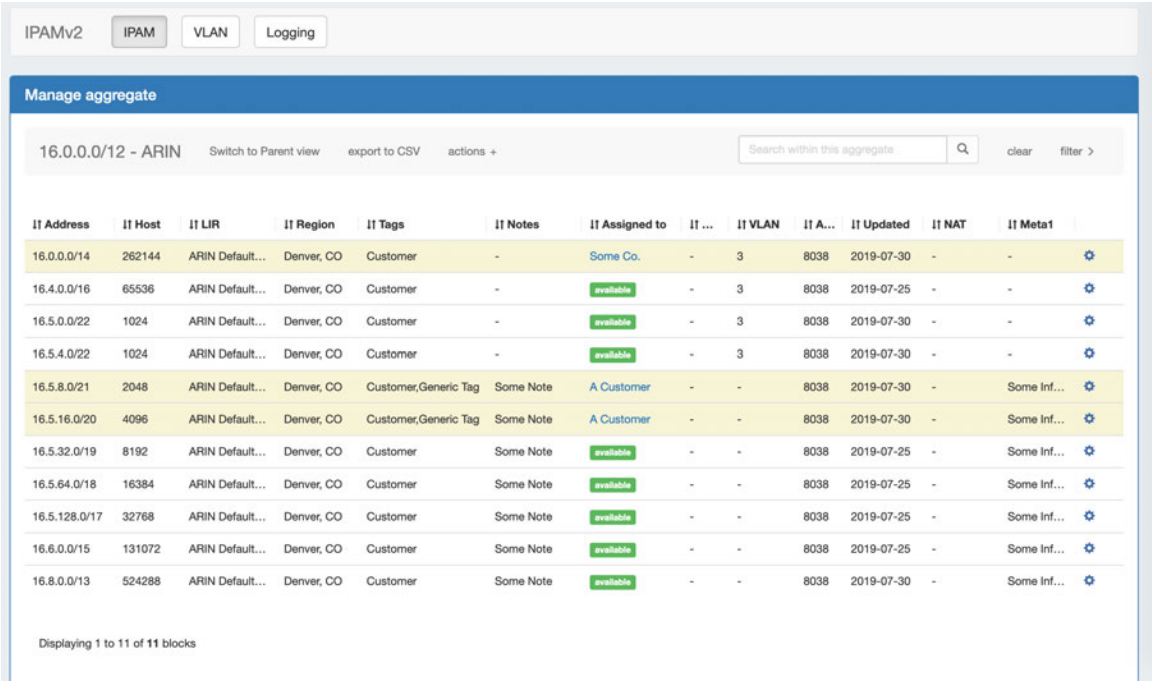

The resource will be assigned according to the distribution algorithm and may be further managed in IPAM Manage for the aggregate.

## Manage an Aggregate

Managing an aggregate is mostly performed in the IPAM Manage screen for the aggregate.

From IPAM Manage, you can perform the aggregate template actions of Auto-Split / Clean-Up, Set IPAM Alert information, export the block list, as well as manage individual blocks.

For detailed information on using the IPAM Manage screen and managing at a block level, see Working with IP Blocks.

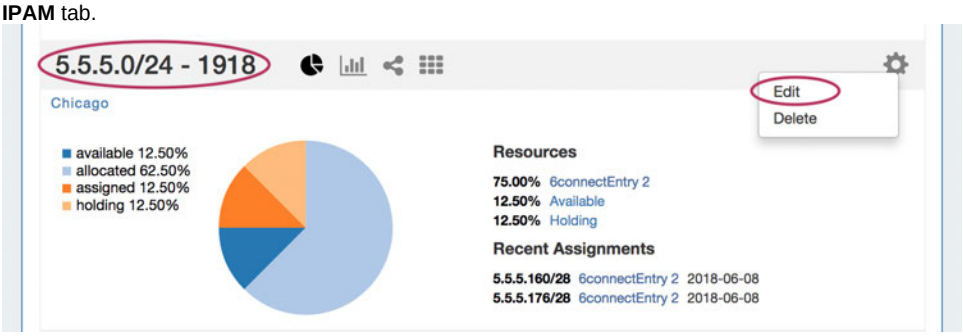



## Open IPAM Manage for an Aggregate

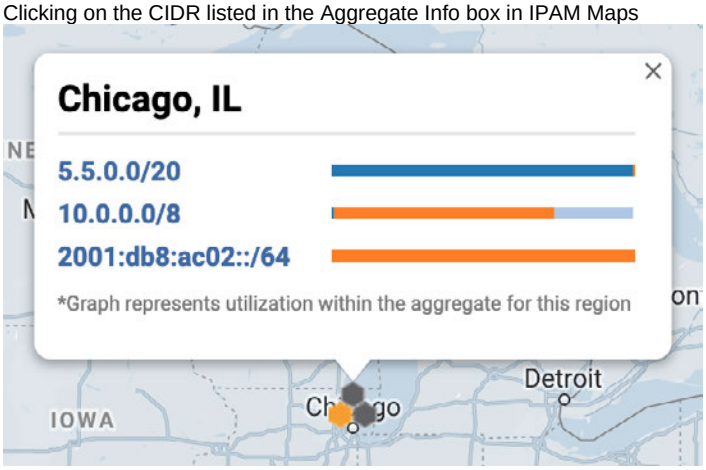
Open the IPAM Manage screen for a block by:

- Searching for the block in the Global search, and clicking on the resulting CIDR
- Clicking the "Open" link in the aggregate blocks list from the **IPAM** tab.

- Clicking on the CIDR header of the Aggregate Block Host Utilization module, or selecting "Edit" from the module's Gear Icon from the **IPAM** tab.



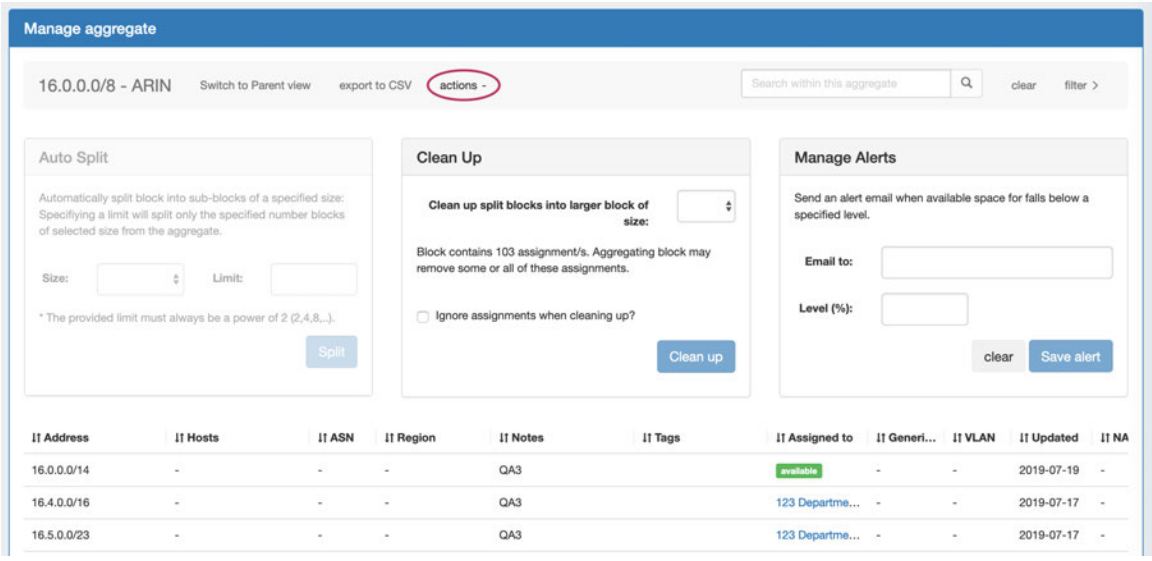
- Clicking on the CIDR listed in the Aggregate Info box in IPAM Maps




# Aggregate Actions

Open up aggregate level actions in IPAM Manage by clicking on the "Actions" link in the Manage Aggregate header.

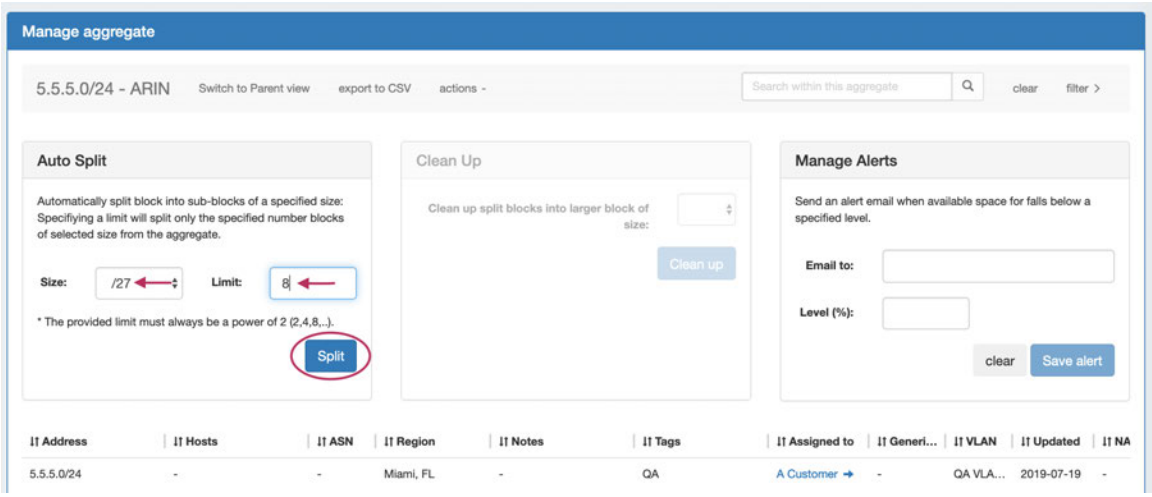
Three options are available - Auto Split, Clean Up, and Manage Alerts.




## Auto Split Aggregate

Auto Split an available aggregate into blocks of a specific size, up to a specific quantity of blocks by selecting "Size" and "Limit" under "Auto Split".

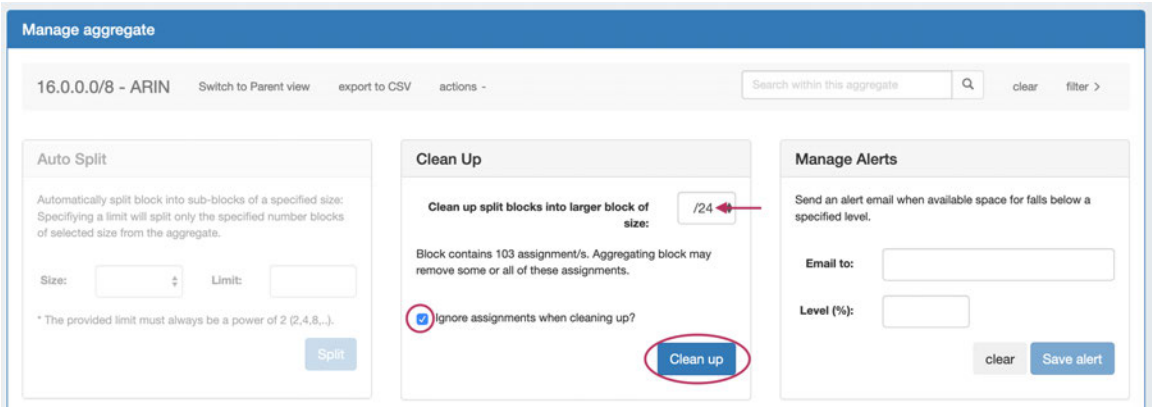
The block limit must be a power of two, or an error will appear. When done, click "Split".




## Clean Up Aggregate

Clean up an Aggregate into fewer blocks of a specific size, by selecting your desired block size and clicking "ignore assignments" (if blocks have assignments that would prevent merging).

When done, click the "Clean Up" button. All blocks will be merged to the set size and reset to available.

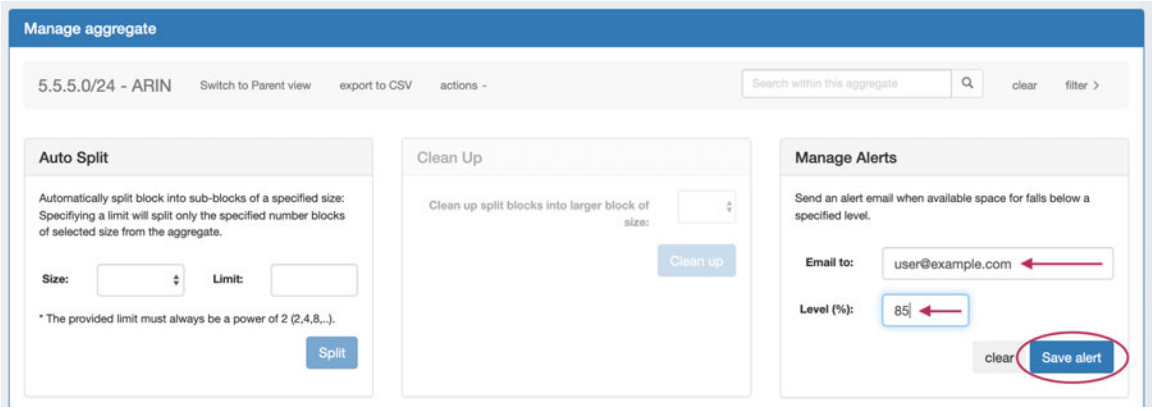



## Set Aggregate Alerts

Enable or clear aggregate alert emails for the aggregate by setting an email address and utilization percentage level.

When the aggregate is utilized to the set percent, an email alert will be sent to the provided address.

Note: the "IPAM Alerts" task must be created and set to the desired notification frequency in the Admin Scheduler Tab in order for the emails to be sent.




When done, click "Save Alert".  To clear an existing alert, hit "Clear Alert", and the alert information will be removed and status saved.

# Working with IP Blocks

For additional information on performing IPAM tasks and working with blocks, continue on to Working with IP Blocks.

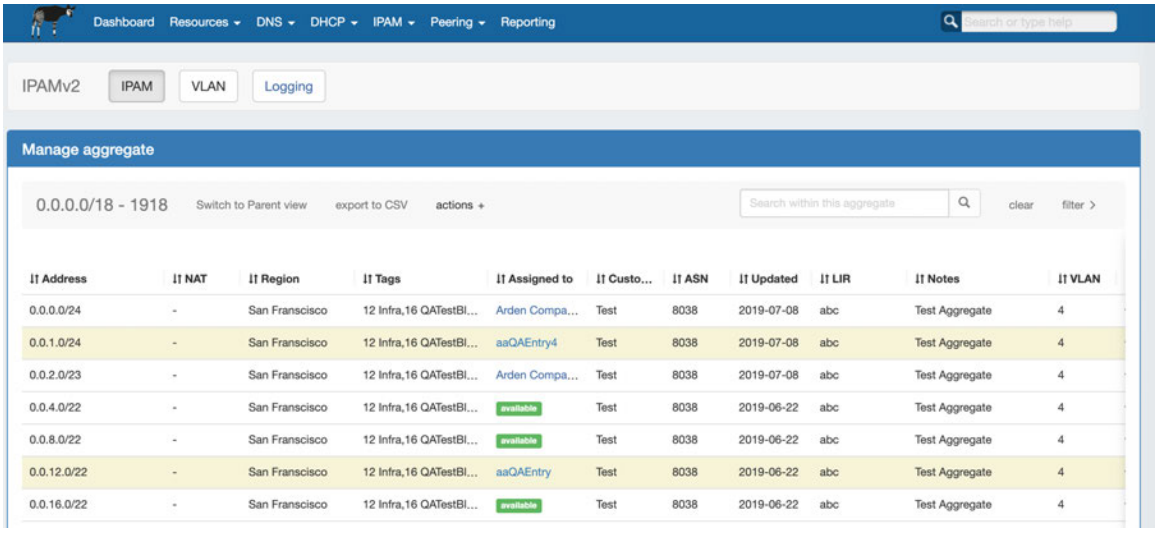
# Additional Information

For additional information on working with the IPAM system in ProVision, see the following areas:

- IPAM Tab
- Gadgets (IPAM and IPAMv2 Gadgets)
- Working with IP Rules
- IPAM Administration

# Working with IP Blocks

# IP Block Management



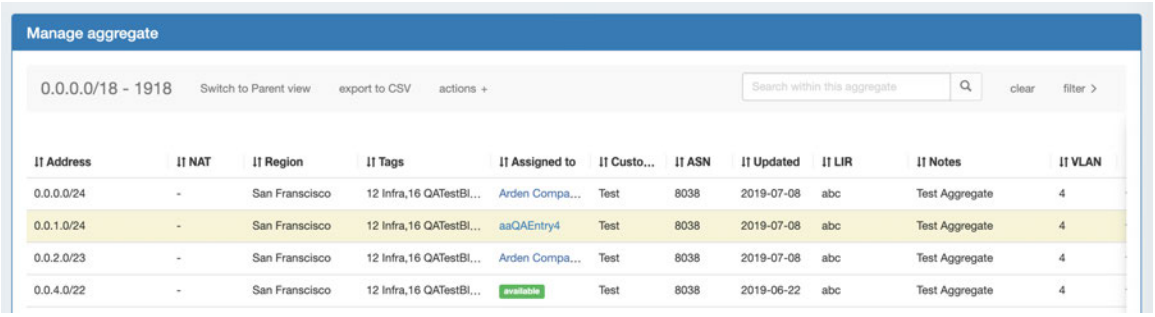

**Managing IP Blocks**

IP Blocks are edited and managed in either IPAM Manage or the IPAM Gadget.

From either area, you can perform standard block-level actions such as assign, unassign, split, merge, edit attributes, track NAT associations, and more.

The primary difference between the two areas is that IPAM Manage shows all blocks (or all blocks under an aggregate), regardless of assignment or status, where the IPAM Gadget shows only the blocks assigned to the specific resource that you are currently viewing on the Resource Entry Page. However, the IPAM Gadget has more advanced assignment options and criteria available (Direct Assign, Smart Assign, Smart Browse).

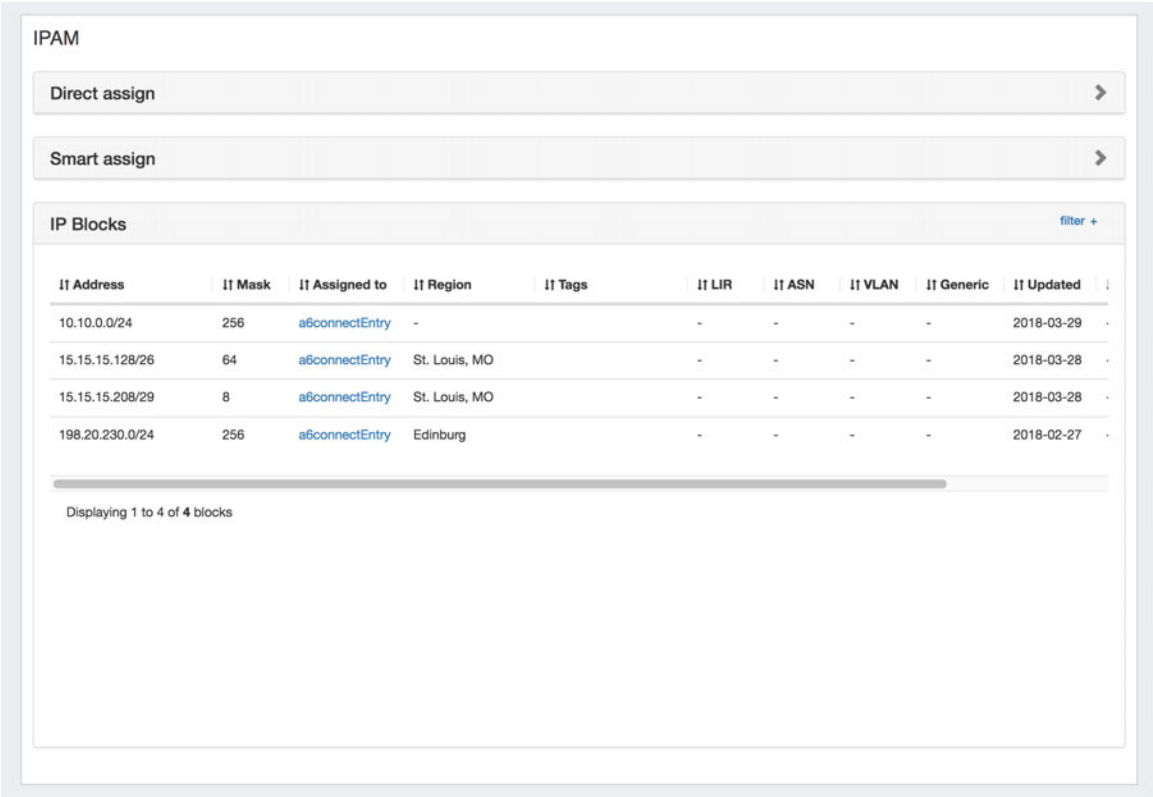
**IPAM Manage Features**




IPAM Manage is accessed from: the **IPAM** Tab  Edit Aggregate / Aggregate CIDR; **IPAM** Tab Advanced button; and most block CIDR Links in ProVision. Here, you can:

- Sort, Filter, and Export the block list
- Auto-Split and Clean-up templates available for aggregates
- View all blocks (IPAM Advanced), or all blocks under an aggregate, regardless of assignment
- Shows blocks from all statuses - available, in holding, assigned, subassignable
- Perform Single and Multi-block assignments and edits

**IPAM Gadget Features**




The IPAM Gadget is accessed from the **Resource Entry Page** IPAM Gadget, once it has been enabled for the section. Here, you can:

- View only the blocks assigned/assigned-and-subassignable under the Resource that you are currently viewing.
- Sort and Filter the block list
- Advanced assignment functions - Direct Assign, Smart Assign, and Smart browse with additional field criterial available.
- Perform single and multi-block edit, and assign subassignable blocks.

Both IPAM Manage and the IPAM Gadget have customizable column names, order, and visibility, as well as options for user-defined meta columns (for details on setting up customization of the IPAM Manage / IPAM Gadget block list, see IPAM Parameters Edit Columns).

**Aggregate-Level Actions**

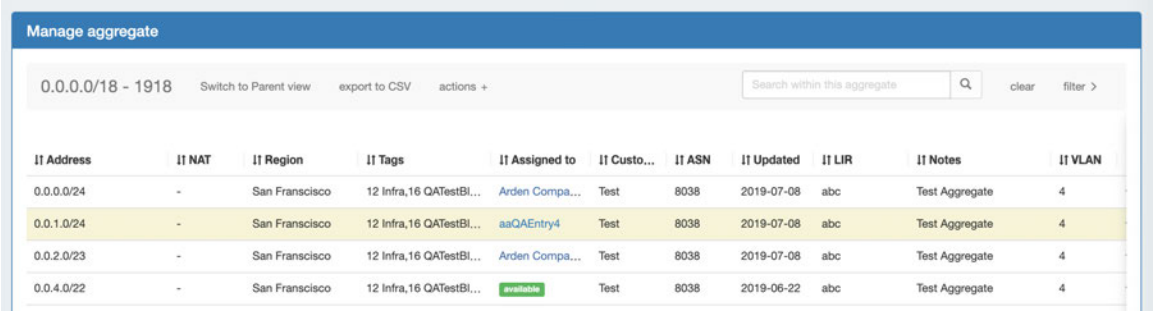
Some aggregate-level actions are performed in IPAM Manage, such as setting IPAM alerts and using Aggregate Templates.

These actions are detailed on the IPAM Tab page under *Working with IPAM Aggregates.* This page will focus primarily on block-level actions and management.


- IP Block Management
- Working in IPAM Manage
  - Open IPAM Manage for a specific Aggregate
  - Open IPAM Manage for all Aggregates/Blocks
  - Viewing Blocks in IPAM Manage
    - Sort Blocks
    - Filter Blocks
    - View Parent Blocks / Hierarchy Tree
    - Important Blocks
- Working with IP Blocks - Common Tasks
  - IPAM Block Action Menu - Overview
  - Split or Merge Blocks Manually
  - Split or Merge Blocks Using Templates
  - Edit IP Block Attributes
    - Edit Attributes Overview:
  - Assign IP Space
    - Assign Space from the IPAMv2 Gadget
    - Direct Assign
    - Smart Assign / Smart Browse
  - Manually Assign Space from IPAM Manage
  - Sub Assigning IP Space

- Unassign IP Space
- Working with NAT Blocks
  - Track IP NAT Associations
    - Working with NAT'ed Blocks
    - Enable NAT
    - Create NAT Association
    - Configure NAT to Router(s)
  - NAT Rotate Dynamic IPs
    - Before you Begin
    - Add Dynamic Tags to Blocks
    - Set up Scheduler Task
- Additional Information


# Working in IPAM Manage



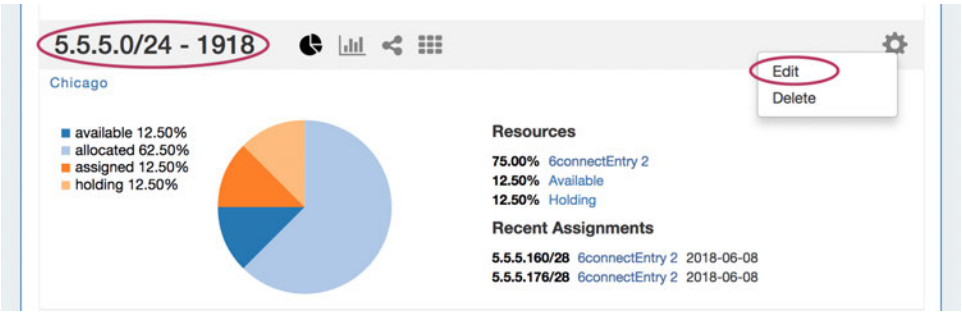

In IPAM Manage, you can manage aggregate level actions, such as Split , Clean Up, Alerts, and Export, as well as viewing and managing individual blocks. In IPAM Manage - Advanced, aggregate-level actions are not available.

## Open IPAM Manage for a specific Aggregate

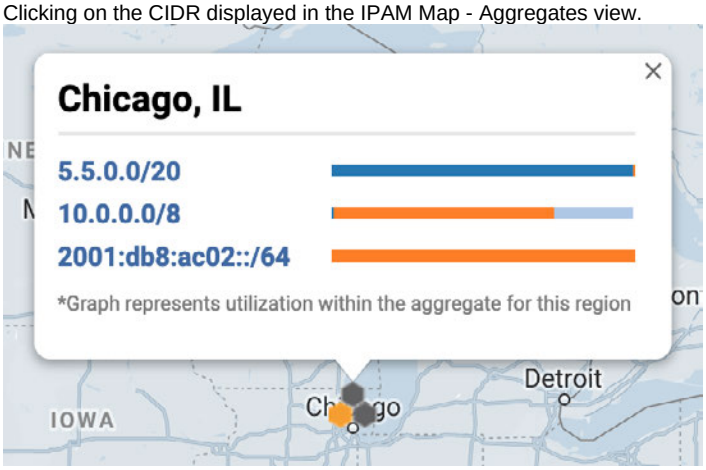
Open the IPAM Manage screen for a block by:

- Searching for the block in the Global search, and clicking on the resulting CIDR
- Clicking the "Open" link in the aggregate blocks list from the **IPAM** tab.

- Clicking on the CIDR header of the Aggregate Block Host Utilization module, or selecting "Edit" from the module's Gear Icon from the **IPAM** tab.

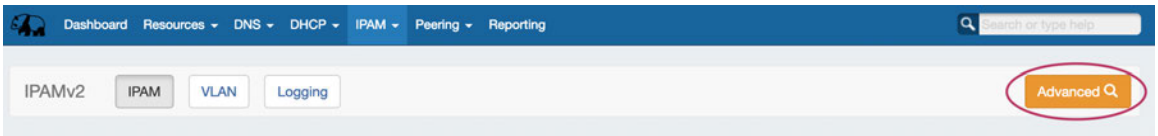


- Clicking on the CIDR displayed in the IPAM Map - Aggregates view.




# Open IPAM Manage for all Aggregates/Blocks

Open IPAM Manage for all blocks under all aggregates by clicking the "Advanced" button at the top of the **IPAM** tab.




This will open IPAM Manage for all blocks in ProVision, with all the same filters, block edit functions, and search capabilities as in 'standard' IPAM Manage for an aggregate, but with no aggregate-level actions available.

When working in IPAM Manage - Advanced, be aware of the following:

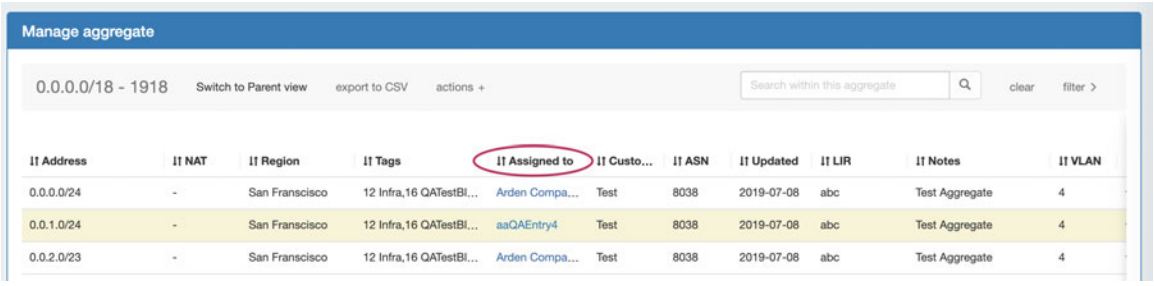
- Due to the large volume of combined data that may be available, filter/search results may take slightly longer than load than a standard aggregate level view.
- Users should take care to ensure that they are working with the correct block(s), as duplicate 1918 space is permitted and blocks may be difficult to distinguish.

# Viewing Blocks in IPAM Manage

## Sort Blocks

Sort the IPAM Manage blocks list by clicking on any column name the in list with the up-down arrows icon ().

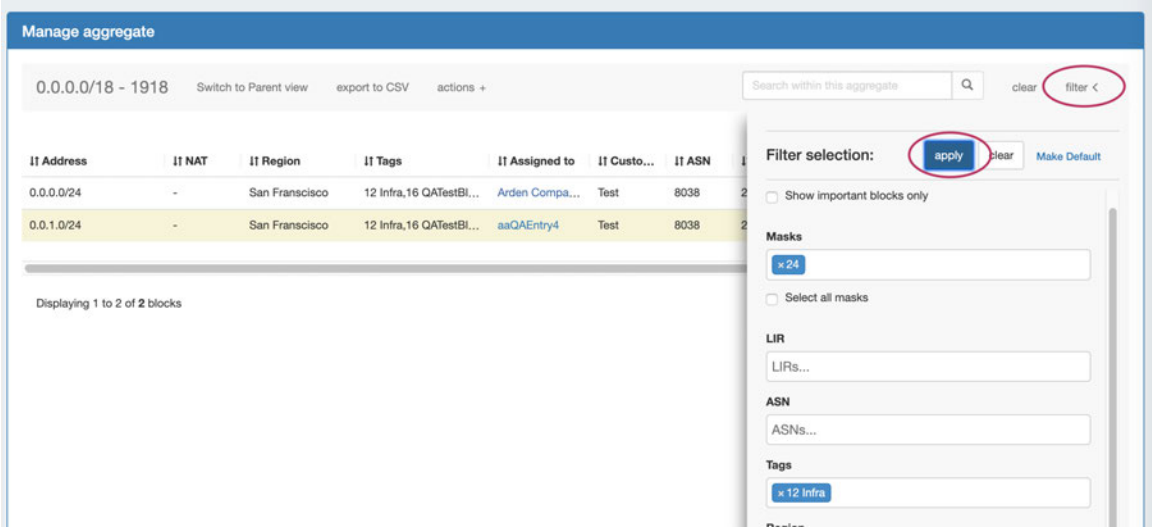
The list will sort between ascending and descending order for that field.




## Filter Blocks

Filter the block list in IPAM Manage by toggling the "Filter +" link in the top right corner of the aggregate header.

A flyout will appear with filter criteria options. Type in or search for the term under your desired field, and hit "Apply". When done, click "clear". To hide the filter flyout, just click the "filter -" link again.

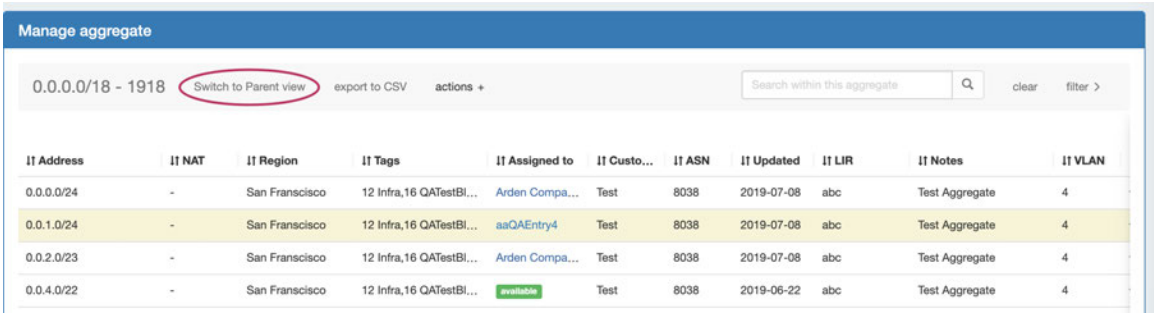



Type in or search for the term under your desired field, and hit "Apply".

When done, click "clear". To hide the filter flyout, just click the "filter -" link again.

## View Parent Blocks / Hierarchy Tree

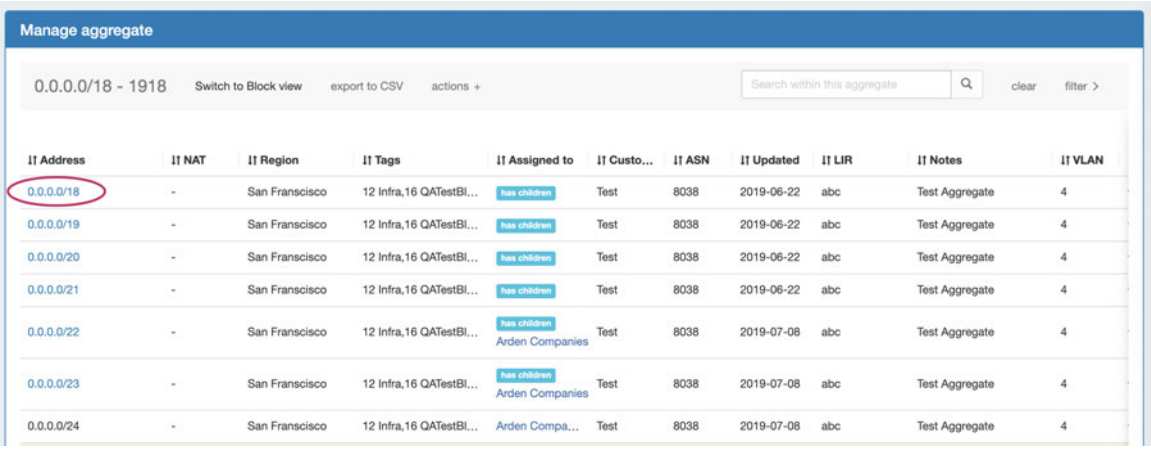
To view parent blocks / IP block hierarchy, click on "Switch to Parent View" at the top of the block list.



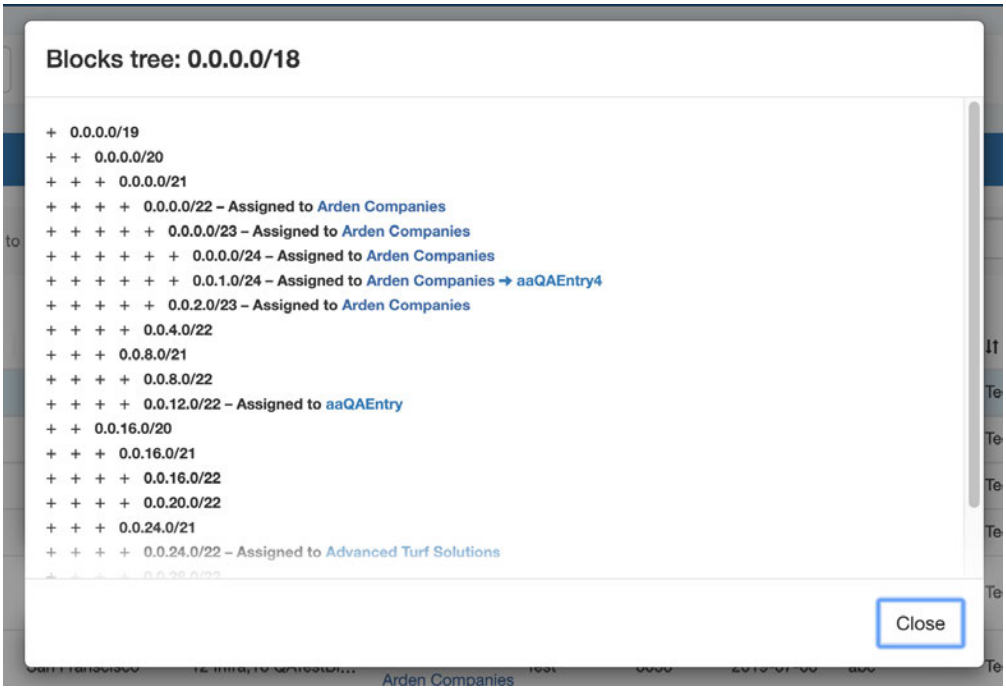

You may also enter Parent View  from the "Filter" menu, by checking the "Select All Masks" checkbox and clicking "Apply".

Once all masks are enabled to view, the block list changes to include the "Parent" blocks, showing all masks throughout the assignment tree.

A parent block with children will show "Has Children" in the column where assignment status is shown, its immediate child resource (if applicable) and the block CIDR will show as a clickable link.

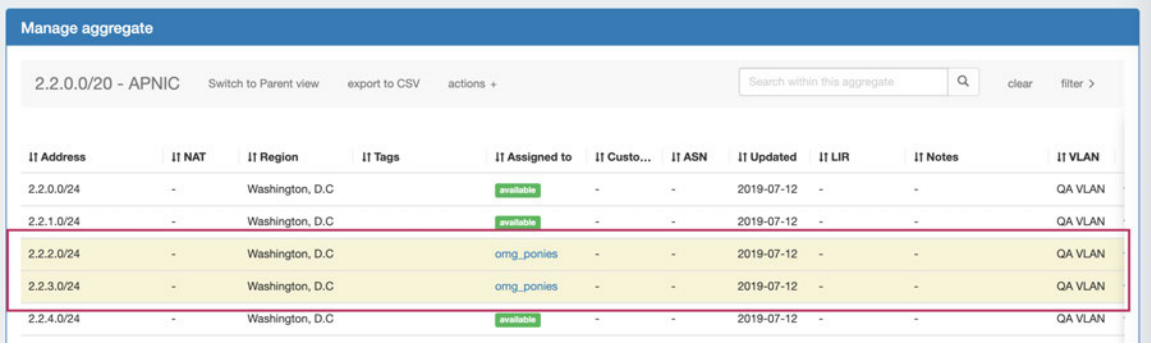



Clicking on the CIDR for a block that has children will open "Block Tree" view, showing the hierarchy of blocks and their assignments.

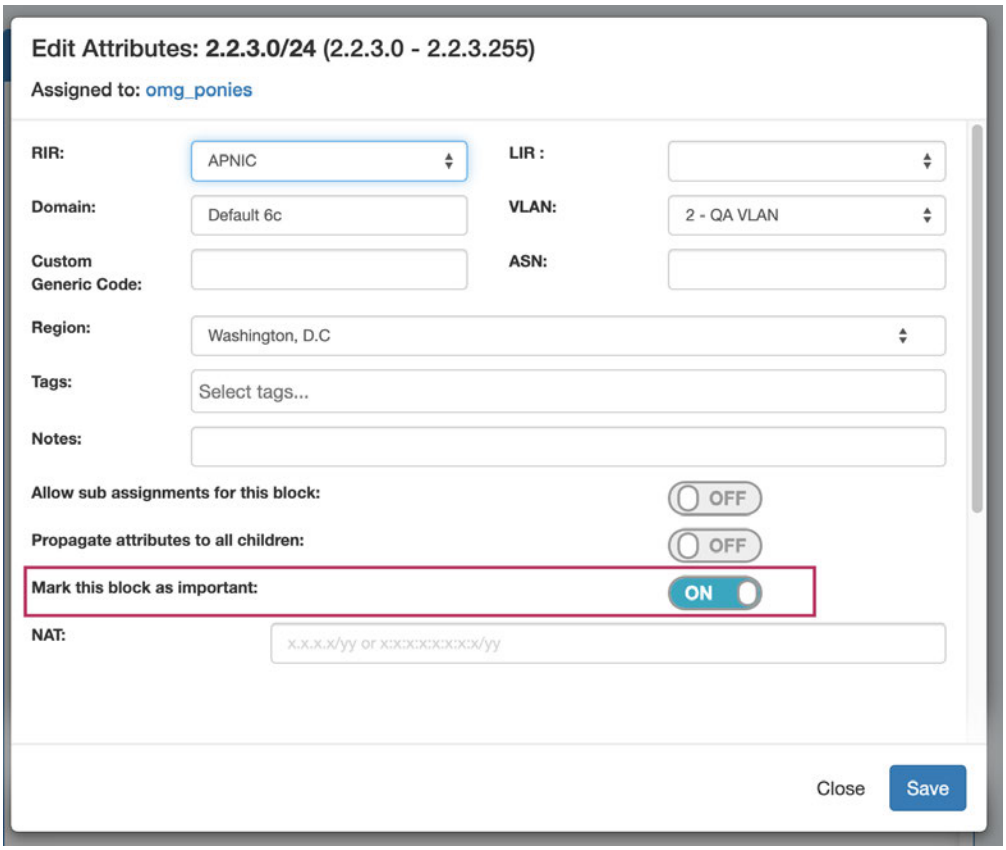



## Important Blocks

"Important" IP blocks display with a yellow background highlight. By default, any block that has been manually assigned, unassigned, or had other high-level manual interactions performed will be automatically marked as "Important".




Blocks may be manually marked or unmarked as "Important" from either the "Edit Block" interface (by opening "Edit" for the block, then selecting the toggle for "Mark this block as important"), or from the API .



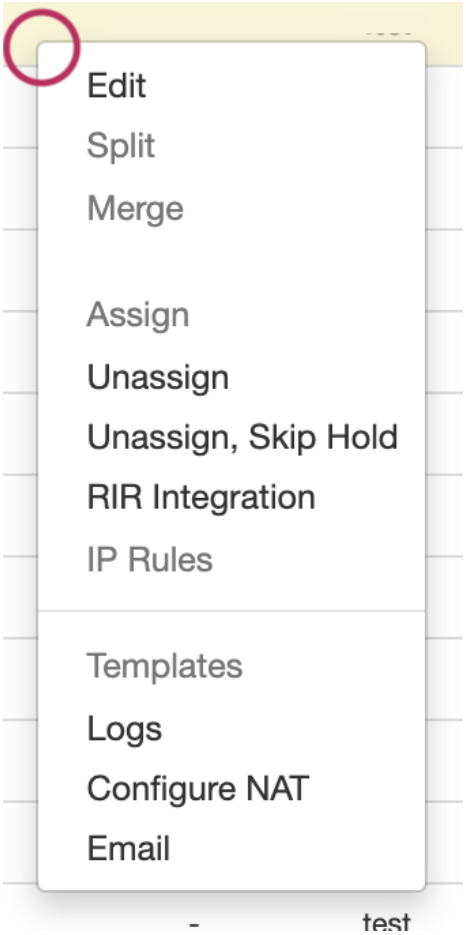

# Working with IP Blocks - Common Tasks

Individual Blocks may be managed from either IPAM Manage, or the IPAM Gadget.  (if assigned to a resource, and the IPAM Gadget is enabled on the Resource's Entry Page).

In general, standard actions from the Action Menu will be performed the same in either area, with "Assign" being the exception.

## IPAM Block Action Menu - Overview

Most actions performed with block managed are contained under the IPAM Manage - Action Menu. Open the Action Menu by left clicking on the Gear Icon, or right clicking anywhere on the block's row. The same Action Menu is also available to manage blocks via the IPAM Gadget.




The Action Menu contains the following options:

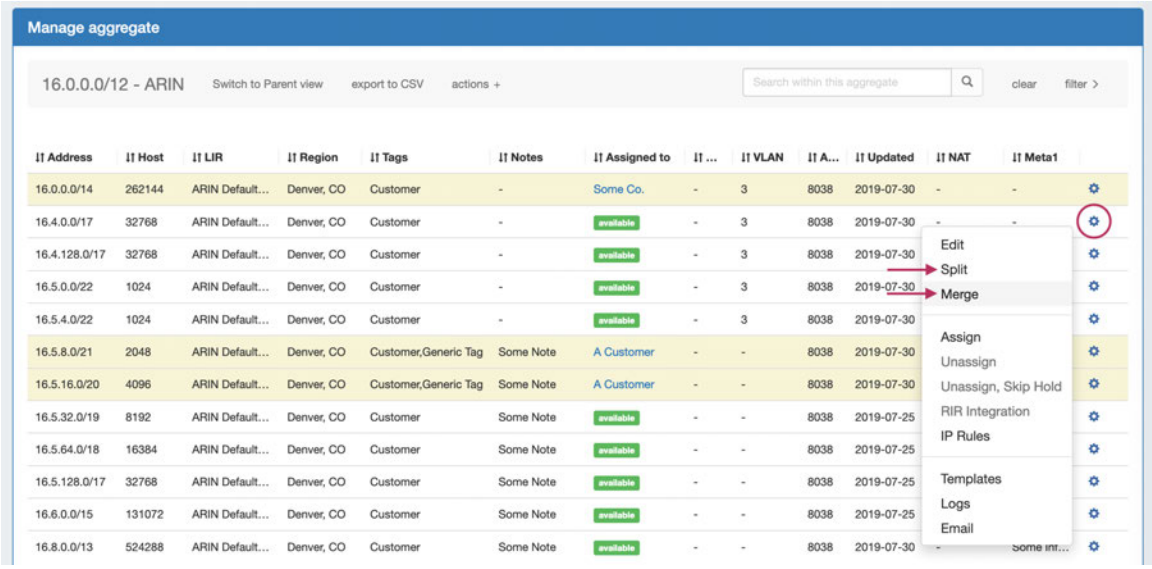
- **Edit:** Opens the blocks "Edit Attributes" page, used to add, change, or remove data associated with a block. Can also be opened by double clicking on a block's row.
- **Split:** Splits the selected single block into two equal smaller blocks, of the next smallest mask, e.g. a /24 will be split into two /25s. The Split option is not available for blocks that are already of the smallest available size ( IPv4 /32s or IPv6 /128s), for blocks in "Holding", or for blocks that are already assigned and do not have subassignments enabled. If more than one level of splitting is needed, use "Templates - Auto Split" instead.
- **Merge:** The opposite of Split. Merge combines two blocks of equal size into the next largest mask, e.g., two /25s will be merged into one /24. Merge is only available for adjacent blocks of the same size that are "Available", in "Holding", or is subassignable.
- **Assign**: Assigns the block to a ProVision Resource, making it unavailable for other assignment actions and certain block actions (unless edited to be subassignable).
- **Unassign:** Unassigns the Resource from the current block, and moves the block into the Holding Tank. The block may then be eligible for certain actions such as direct assignment, merge, and split - but not for automated assignments until it is removed from Holding and regains the "Available" status. Unassigning a subassigned block will first place the block in "Holding", and then restore it to the parent assignment. (Tip: You can "Unassign" twice in a row to bypass "Holding", or select "Unassign, Skip Holding".)
- **Unassign, Skip Holding**: Unassigns the Resource from the current block, and bypasses the Holding Tank, restoring the block to "Available" status (or to the parent assignment if the block was subassigned).
- **RIR Integration:** Provides SWIP/RPSL functions for ARIN and RIPE blocks through simple reassigns, sending the updated block assignment information back to the coordinating RIR (ARIN or RIPE). See LIR Management and Use and RIR Integration: SWIP/RPSL.
- **IP Rules:** Create or Associate an IP Rule to the block to reserve portions of the block from assignment. See IPAM Rules.
- **Templates:** Provides options to 'Auto-Split' a standard block (that is available for standard "split" functionality) down to a certain mask and limit, or "Clean Up"(Auto-merge) a Parent Block to a certain mask level.
- **Logs:** Shows recent log event actions associated with that block.
- **Configure NAT:** Only displays for NAT'ed blocks. Configures the NAT'ed block to the selected router.
- **Email:** If a Contact is associated with the Resource assigned to the block, an email form with display to email the Contact with the template options provided in Admin Settings.

# Split or Merge Blocks Manually

To split a block manually, click on the Action Menu (Gear icon), or right-click anywhere in the row for the available block you wish to modify.

In the menu that appears, select the "Split" function.

To aggregate blocks, select "Merge" from the same menu.

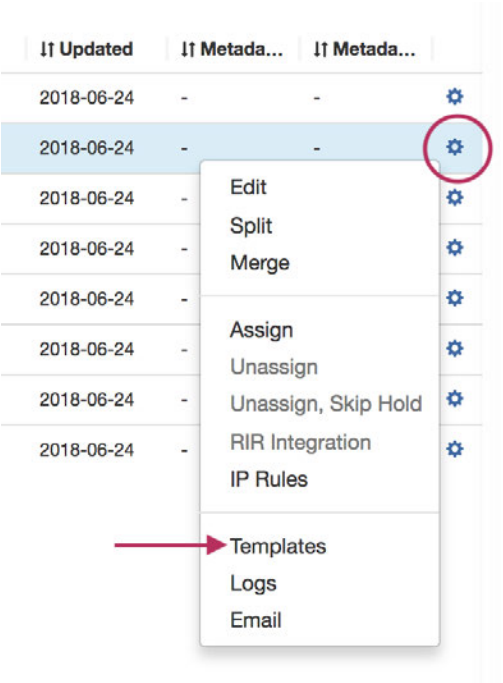



The Split option is not available for blocks that are already of the smallest available size ( IPv4 /32s or IPv6 /128s), for blocks in "Holding", or for blocks that are already assigned and do not have subassignments enabled. If more than one level of splitting is needed, use "Templates - Auto Split" instead.

Merge is only available for adjacent blocks of the same size that are "Available", in "Holding", or is subassignable.

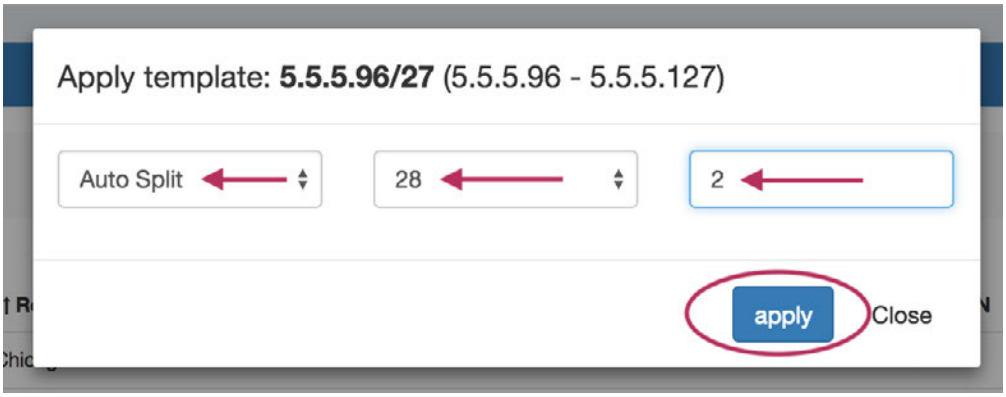
# Split or Merge Blocks Using Templates

Templates for a block are available under the Action Menu (wrench icon or right-click) for that block. Templates are only usable from IPAM Manage.




There are two templates available: Cleanup (Only available for parent blocks) which auto-aggregates the block, and Auto-split.

Select the available template action, the mask, and the limit. When done, click the "Apply" button.

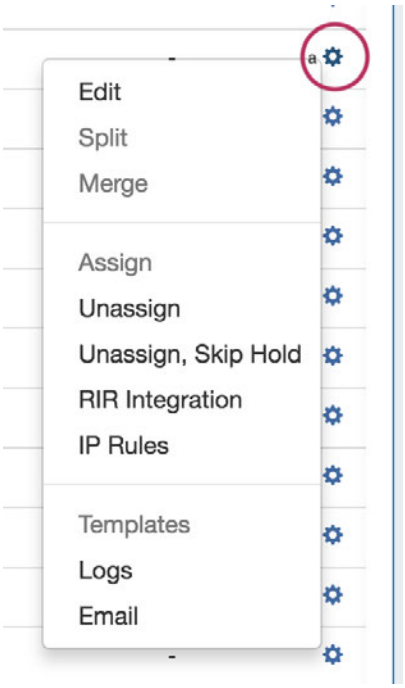



You can also use the "Templates" option from the Action Menu on the IPAM Manage screen for the specific block.

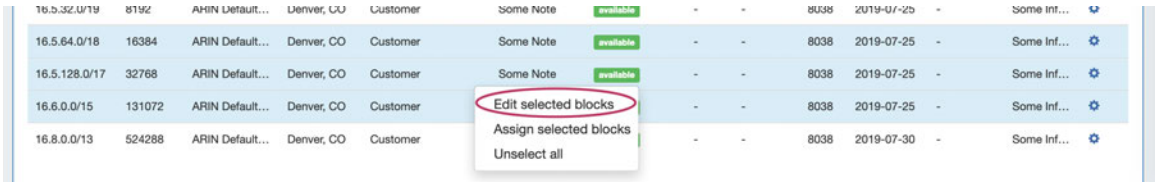
## Edit IP Block Attributes

You may edit a block / multiple blocks from either IPAM Manage or the IPAM Gadget, with the same options available.

Select the "Edit" option from the Action Menu (or double click on the block row) for a given block to get the Edit Attributes menu.




To edit multiple blocks at a time, shift-click each block you wish to edit - they will highlight in blue. Once selected, right-click on any highlighted block to open the multi-edit attributes screen.




Once selected, right-click on any highlighted block to open the multi-edit attributes screen.

From here you can set a variety of attributes for a given block. These values are also customizable from the Admin screen - see IPAM Administration and IPAM Parameters to customize, enable, or disable the available parameters.

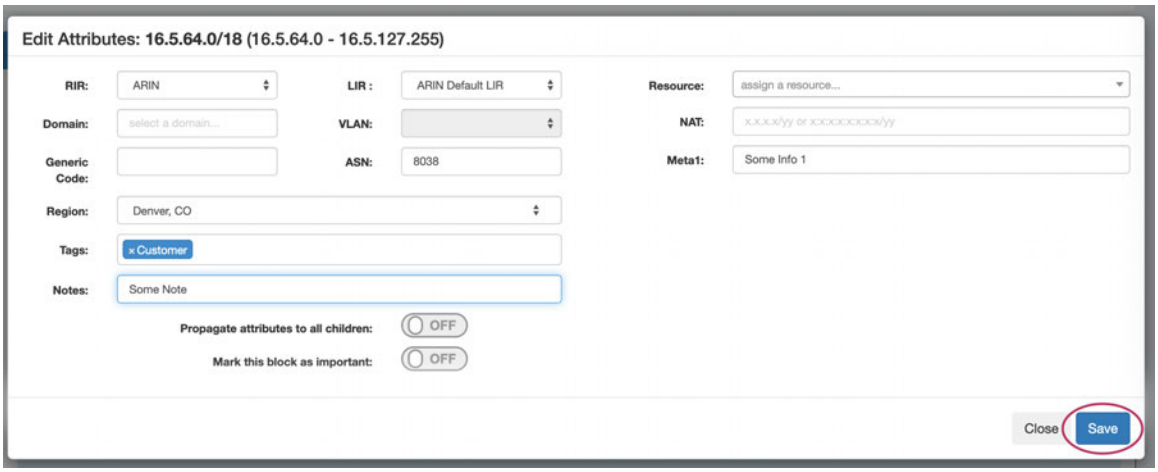
If a field that you know is supported in ProVision appears to be 'missing' from the IPAM Mange, IPAM Manage filters, or Edit Attributes screens, check the following:

Have an Admin verify that the field is set to "enabled" in Admin IPAM Admin Edit Columns. Any field disabled here will be hidden throughout ProVision, and some functions are dependent on certain fields being enabled - for example, filtering by Mask in IPAM Manage requires the "Host" field to be enabled.

In IPAM manage, verify that the column widths of each field are set wide enough to display the column header

Check for a scroll bar - when all attributes are enabled, many screens will require scrolling down or to the right in order to see all of the available data.

After editing the desired attributes for the block, simply hit "Save".




## Edit Attributes Overview:

**RIR:** The RIR associated with the aggregate / block.

**LIR:** If LIRs are set up in IPAM Admin for the associated RIR, they will be selectable in this dropdown. See LIR Management and Use.

**Domain:** The VLAN Domain to associate with the block. To set up domains in ProVision, see VLAN Administration.

**VLAN:** VLAN information for the block, must have domain selected to view available VLANs.

**Generic:** This is a customizable text field that can be used to track information specific to your needs. It can be filtered in the IPAM Manage screen. The header, display, and enable/disable settings for this field are set under IPAM Configuration in the IPAM Administration section.

**ASN:** The ASN to associate with the block.

**Region:** Select the region from the drop down menu. Regions can be added and customized in the IPAM Admin section of ProVision - see IPAM Administration and IPAM Parameters.

**Tags:** Tags can be set under Edit Tags in the IPAM Administration section.

**Notes:** Freeform text field for additional information you wish to capture.

**Resource:** The resource assigned to the block.

**NAT**: The corresponding public or private block CIDR that is associated with the current block.

**Metadata1 - Metadata 10:** User-defined text fields, as set in IPAM Administration Edit Columns.

**Allow Subassignments:** When editing a block that has been assigned, toggling this setting to "On" allows for further subassignments, indicated by a blue arrow next to the assignment in the Manage screen. Note: Subassign status cannot be changed if a block has children.

**Propagate Attributes to Children:** Toggle this setting to "On" when editing a parent block to carry through attribute changes to all children of that block *for that edit*. This is not a persistent setting - it only applies to the specific edit you are in the process of making.

To view parent blocks, and which children would be affected, ensure that top level or all masks are selected in the Filter menu in the IPAM Manage screen. See View Parent Blocks for more information.

Note: The VLAN of a child cannot be different from that of its parent, so for mutil-level situations (Parent -> Child -> Grandchild), VLAN should be updated at the top tier parent level.

# Assign IP Space

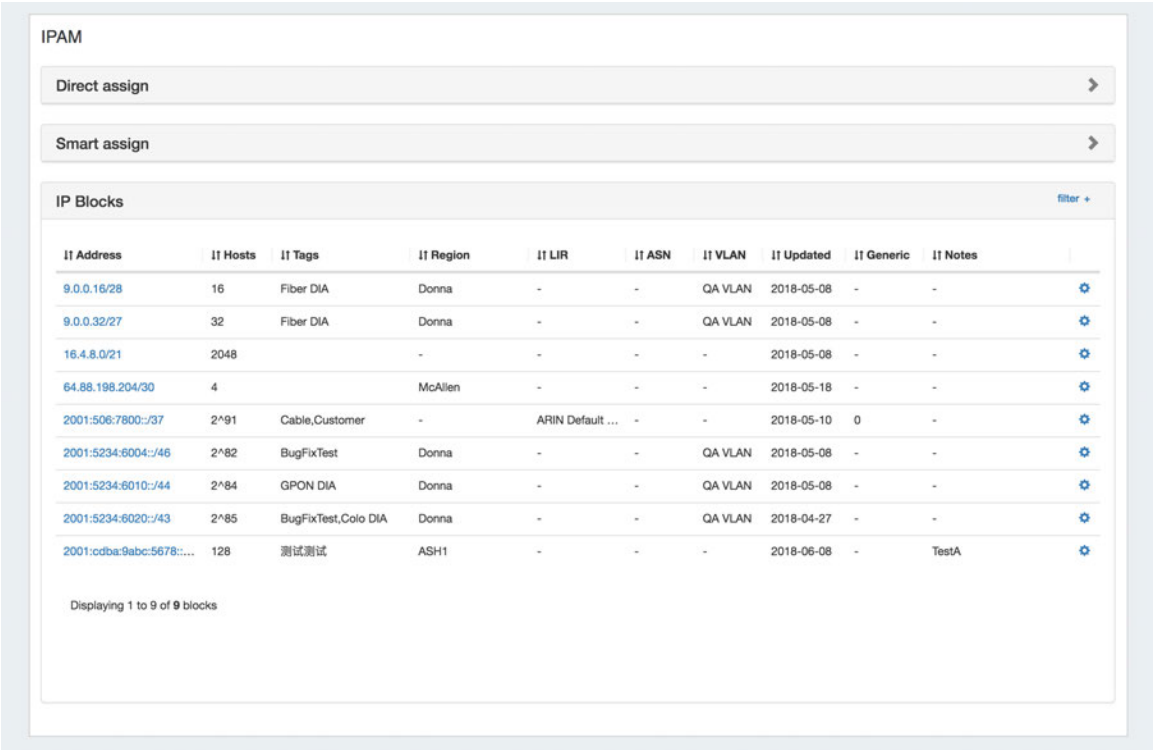
There are two areas where you can assign IP Space: in the IPAM Gadget for the particular Resource, or through IPAM Manage for manually assigning a block to a resource.

The IPAM Gadget allows for more detailed assignment options including Direct Assign, Smart Browse, and Smart Assign with advanced options, and is the primary tool for space assignment.

# Assign Space from the IPAMv2 Gadget

The IPAM Gadget is accessed from a Resource Entry page, once enabled for the Section (to add Gadgets, see Customizing Sections and Add Gadgets to your Section).

For additional details on the IPAMv2 Gadget, see Gadgets.




| Address | Hosts | Tags | Region | LIR | ASN | VLAN | Updated | Generic | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 9.0.0.16/28 | 16 | Fiber DIA | Donna | - | - | QA VLAN | 2018-05-08 | - | - |
| 9.0.0.32/27 | 32 | Fiber DIA | Donna | - | - | QA VLAN | 2018-05-08 | - | - |
| 16.4.8.0/21 | 2048 | | - | - | - | - | 2018-05-08 | - | - |
| 64.88.198.204/30 | 4 | | McAllen | - | - | - | 2018-05-18 | - | - |
| 2001:506:7800::/37 | 2^91 | Cable,Customer | - | ARIN Default ... | - | - | 2018-05-10 | 0 | - |
| 2001:5234:6004::/46 | 2^82 | BugFixTest | Donna | - | - | QA VLAN | 2018-05-08 | - | - |
| 2001:5234:6010::/44 | 2^84 | GPON DIA | Donna | - | - | QA VLAN | 2018-05-08 | - | - |
| 2001:5234:6020::/43 | 2^85 | BugFixTest,Colo DIA | Donna | - | - | QA VLAN | 2018-04-27 | - | - |
| 2001:cdba:9abc:5678::... | 128 | 测试测试 | ASH1 | - | - | - | 2018-06-08 | - | TestA |

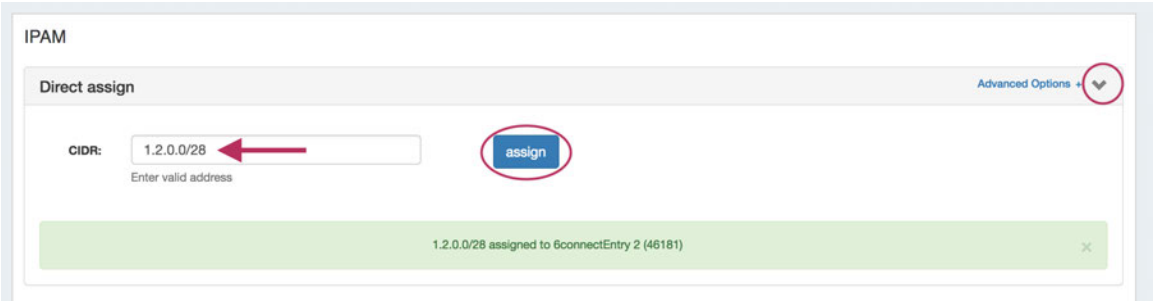
You have three options for assigning IP space using the IPAM Gadget: Direct Assign, Smart Assign, and Smart Browse.

# Direct Assign

Direct Assign is used when you know the exact CIDR that you wish to assign to the Resource. You can use "Simple" direct assign, for straightforward assignments of a CIDR to the Resource, or "Advanced", used in cases where duplicate blocks may exist and you need additional criteria to differentiate between them.

Simple Direct Assign:

Expand the "Direct Assign" module of the IPAMv2 Gadget by clicking the "Expand" arrow on the right side of the header.

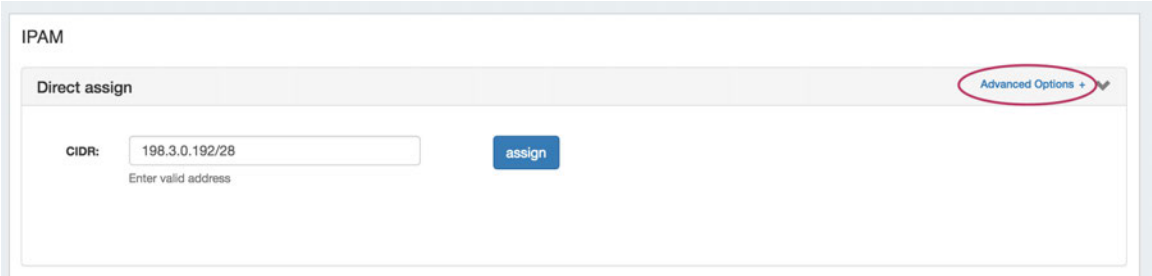



Type the desired CIDR to assign in the CIDR input box, then click "Assign". A message will appear to confirm success, or provide details on an error.

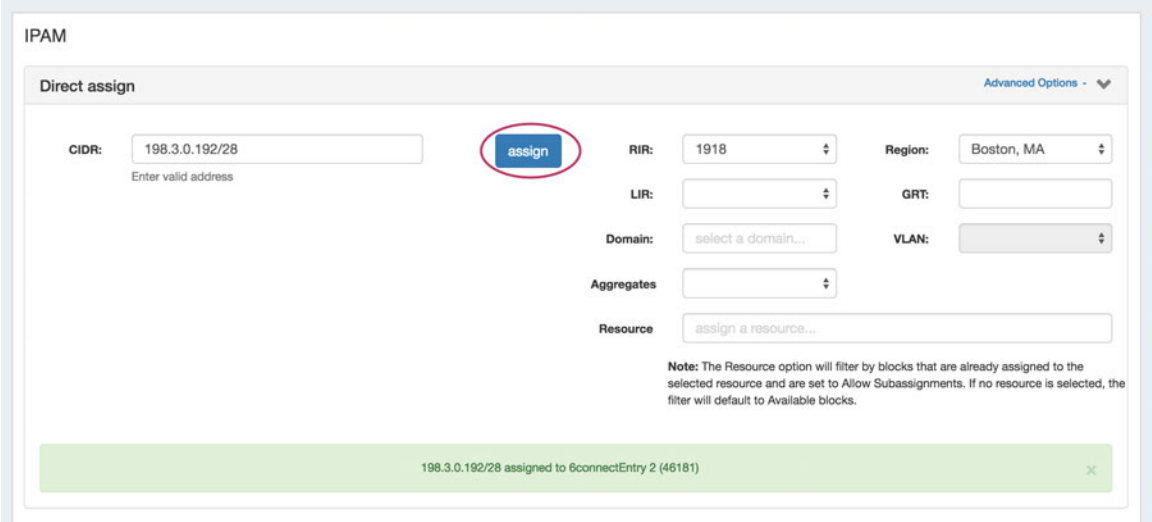
Advanced Direct Assign:

In some cases, you make need the ability to further specify a block to direct assign - such as if you have duplicate 1918 blocks. The "Advanced Options" filters allow for further detail to be provided to ensure ProVision assigns the specific block that is intended.

Expand the "Advanced Options + " link to the right of the "Direct Assign" module header.




Then, add in the desired CIDR, and set your additional filter criteria, such as RIR, region, LIR, VLAN, and so forth. When done, hit "Assign".



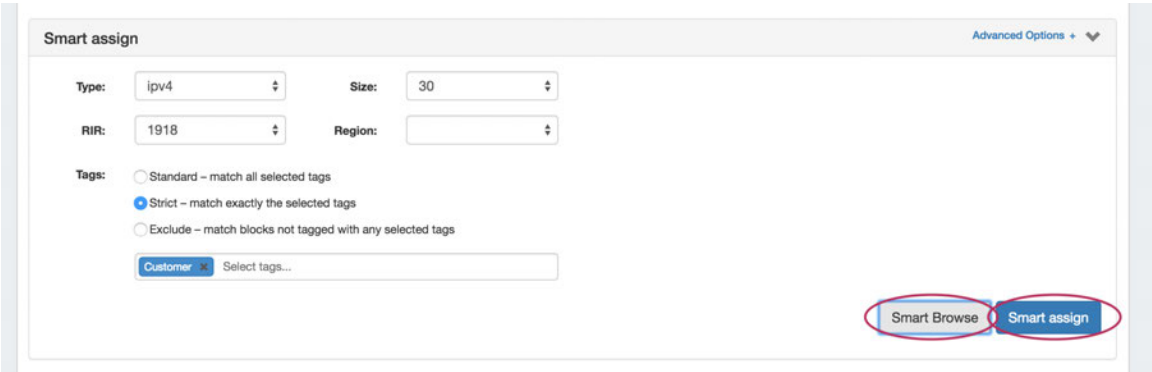

## Smart Assign / Smart Browse

Smart Assign and Smart Browse are used when you have criteria that you need to meet for the assignment, and any block meeting that criteria is acceptable for assignment.

With Smart Assign, you enter criteria such as IP Type, Size, RIR, Region, and Tag information, then ProVision's automation will automatically assign a block meeting that critieria, if any exist. Smart Browse uses the same criteria, but provides a browsable list of blocks meeting that criteria for you to select from.

Expand the "Smart Assign" module in the IPAMv2 by clicking the expansion arrow in the right side of the Smart Assign header.

For a basic assignment, enter at least the IP type, RIR, and block size.



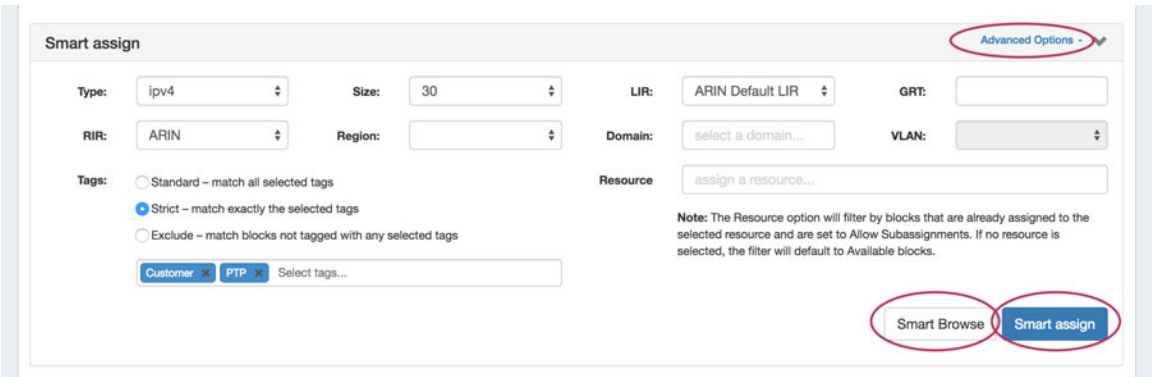

IP Tag filters are optional. IP Tag filters exist in three modes:

Standard - checks to see if the selected tag is associated with the block

Strict: limits results to blocks with exactly the selected tag(s)

Exclude - blocks without the selected tag(s)

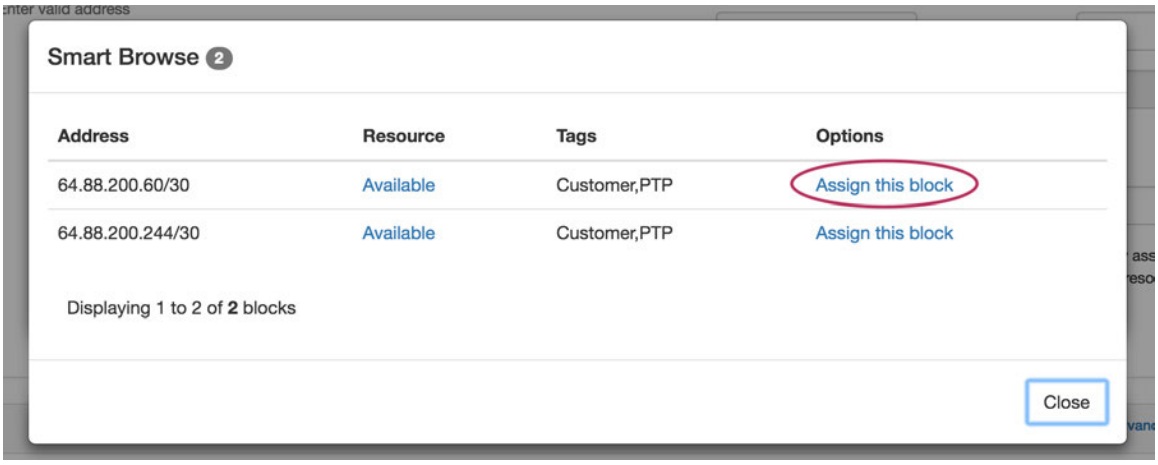
For Advanced Options, Click the "Advanced Options +" expansion link in the top right of the header. Additional filter criteria will be available to apply to both Smart Browse and Smart Assign.




Then click "Smart Browse" or "Smart Assign".

For Smart Assign, you will receive a message indicating a successful assignment, or information regarding an error. If no blocks are available meeting the criteria, the message will say so. In this case, try removing one or more of your filter criteria and try again.

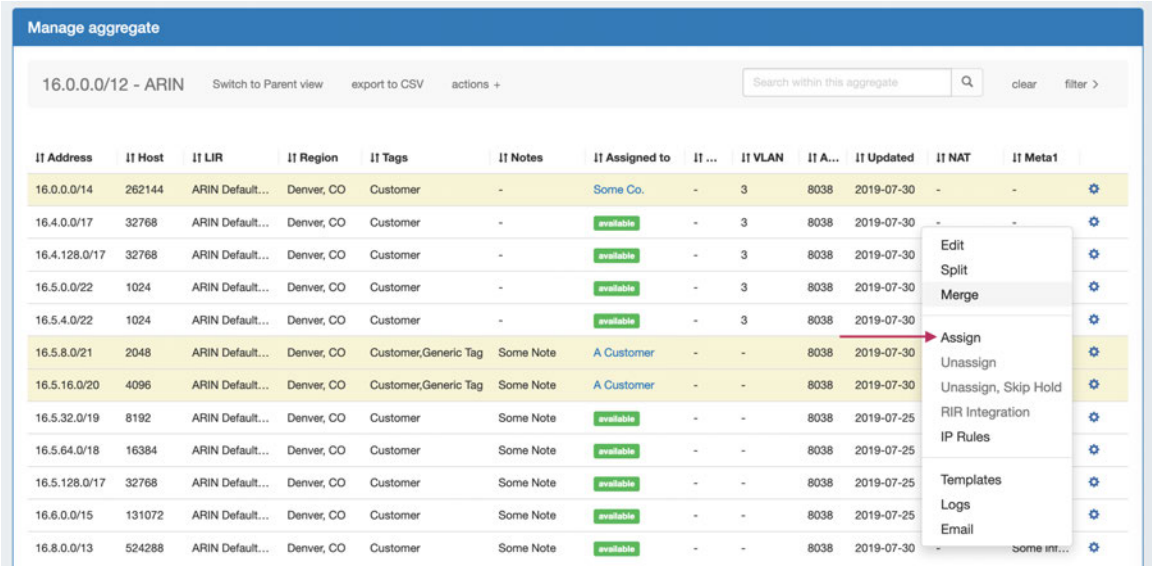
For Smart Browse, a screen will pop up showing blocks meeting your criteria. Browse to the block you want to assign, and click either "Assign this block", or "Assign from this block"(splits a larger block down).




Successful assignments will be added to the "IP Blocks" list in the IPAMv2 Gadget, and are able to be managed in the IPAM Gadget, IPAMv2 Gadget, or IPAM Manage Screen.

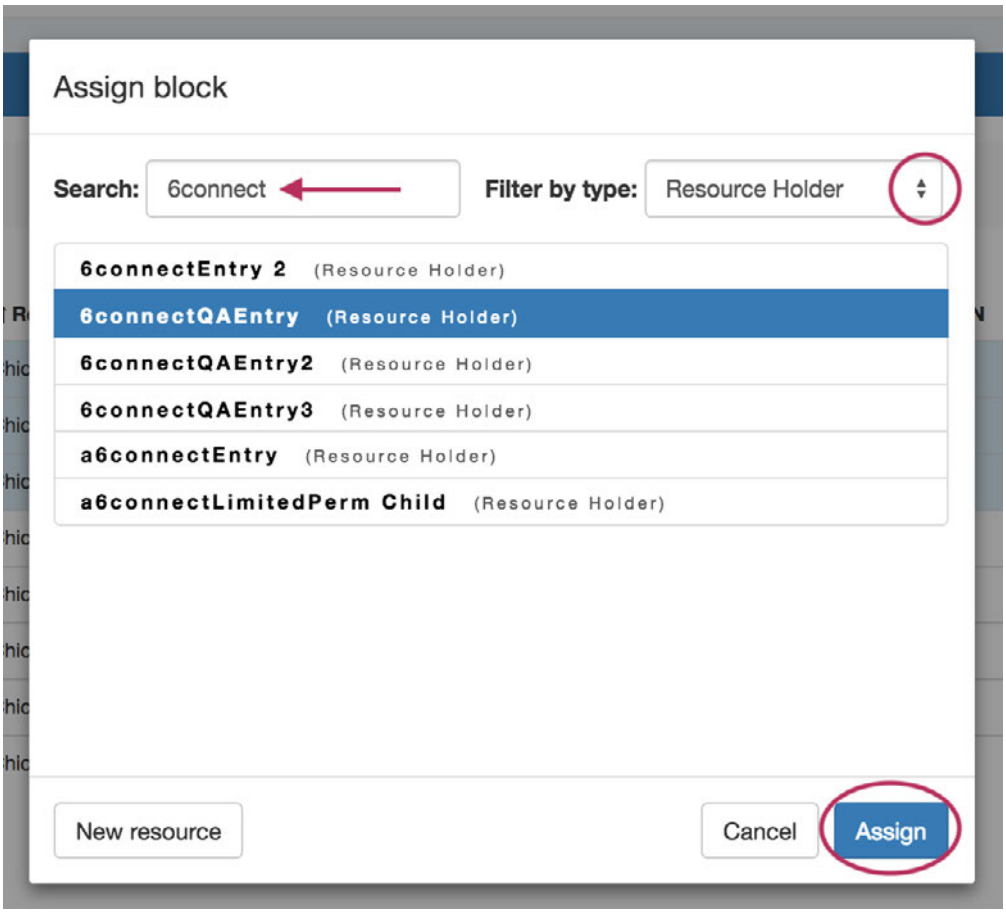
## Manually Assign Space from IPAM Manage

You can also assign blocks manually using the "Assign" function from the IPAM Manager screen (accessible from the IPAM Tab). Open the Action Menu for a block, then select "Assign".




Assignments may also be performed for multiple blocks at a time, by shift-clicking the desired blocks, and right-clicking on any highlighted row to open the multi-block menu (choose "Assign Selected Blocks") :

Then, search for / select the Resource to assign the block. A filter tool is provided to narrow the list to a particular Section type.




When the correct resource has been selected, click the "Assign" button. If needed, a new resource can be created by clicking the "New Resource" button.

After assigning, you can further edit the block attributes or subassign space.

'Reserving' IP Space

If you need to create a 'reserved' pool from which to assign blocks, you can achieve this by creating a "Reserved" Section. Create a Section called "Reserved", add the IPAM gadget to it, then create an Entry with that Section to be the address group. From there, use the IPAM gadget and the IPAM Manage page to assign and unassign IP space from that pool.

For more details, see the FAQ entry: "How do I 'reserve' IP Space?"

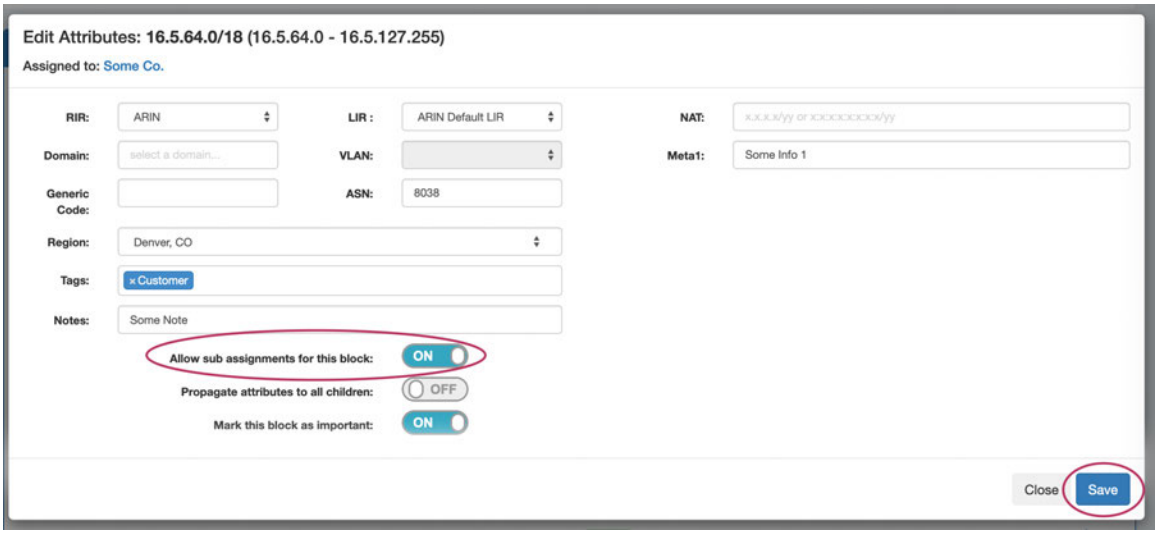
## Sub Assigning IP Space

To allow sub assignments, just toggle the "Allow sub assignments" button to "On" under Edit block.

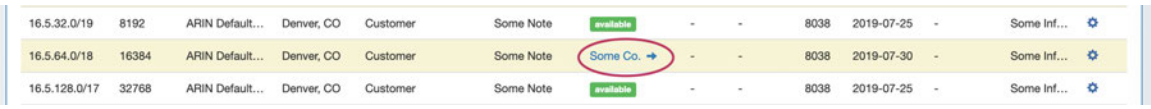
Once the allow sub assignments box is checked, the block may be further split and assigned to other resources.

Split blocks may also be re-claimed to the originally assigned resource and re-aggregated.  When "allow sub assignments" is checked, the block is counted as allocated, but not assigned - various statistics in IPAM, on the dashboard, and reporting will reflect this.

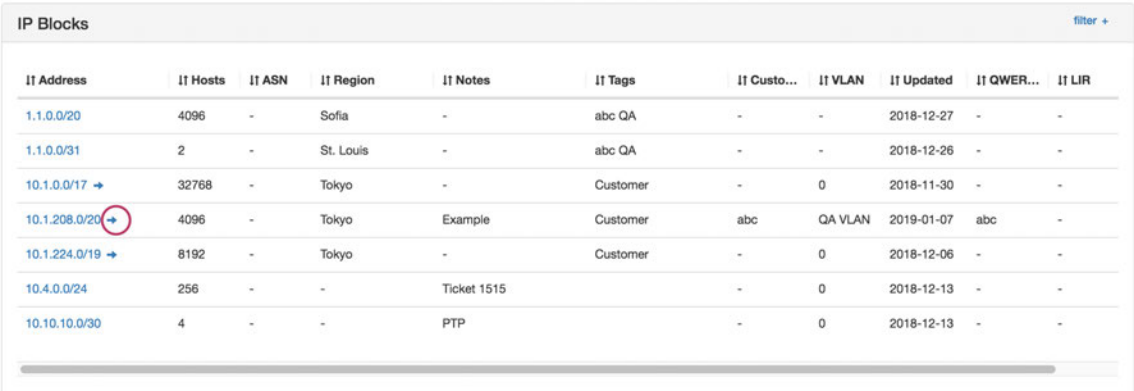
Sub assignments can be useful for tracking IPs assigned to a customer with multiple subsidiaries, or locations.




If a block is subassignable, a blue arrow will display in the "Assigned To" field in IPAM Manage.




In the IPAM gadget, subassignable blocks display a blue arrow in the 'Address' field.

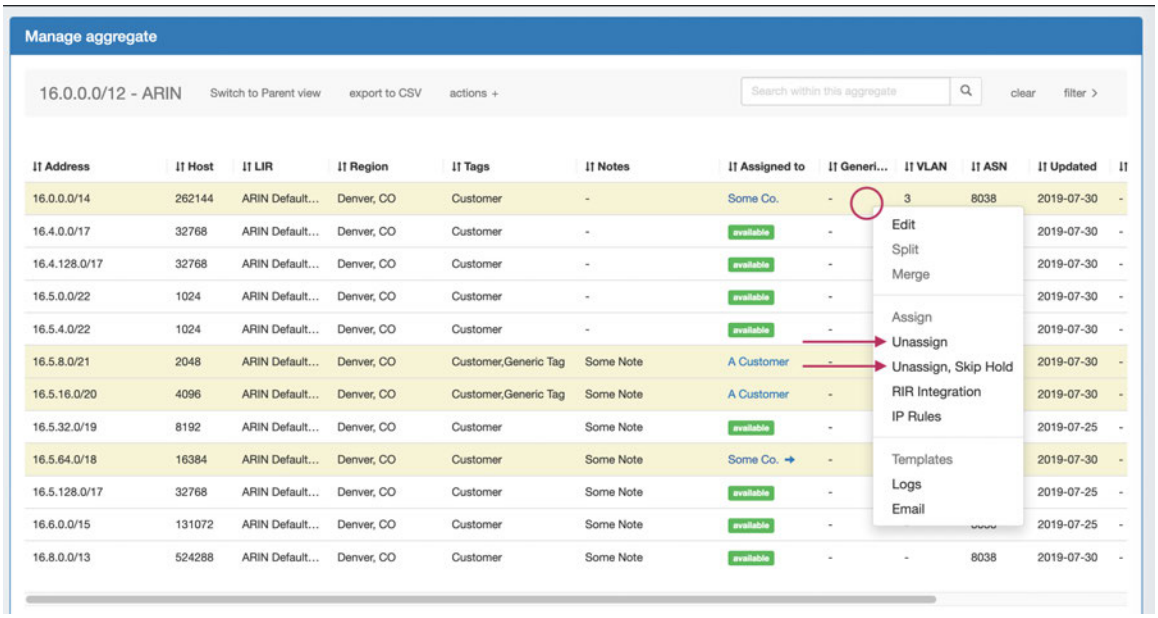



## Unassign IP Space

When a block is assigned, you will have the option of unassigning the block from the resource and returning it to the Holding Tank.

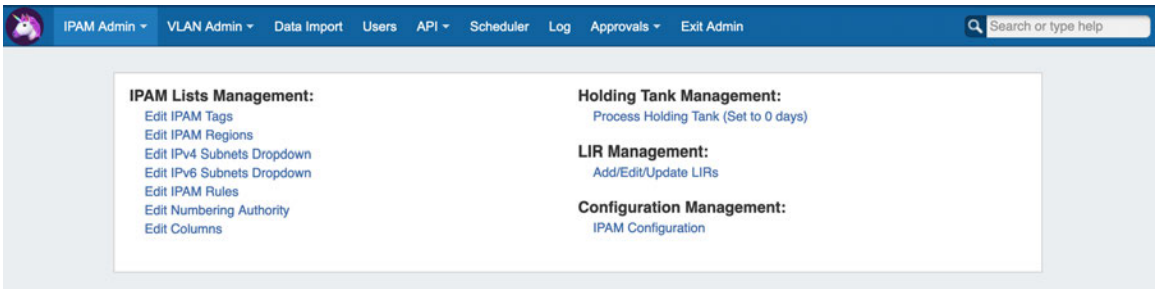
To unassign the block, simply open on the Action Menu for the block in either IPAM manage or the IPAM Gadget,  and select "Unassign".

You may also chose "Unassign, Skip Hold", which unassigns the block and immediately returns it to available, bypassing the holding tank.




After unassigning blocks / skipping holding, newly available blocks will be merged upon next page refresh. Blocks which had been subassigned will revet back to the parent resource.

To return IP space in the Holding Tank to the Available Pool, process the Holding Tank via the Admin screen under **IPAM Admin** (this will only process blocks that were present for the specified number of days).



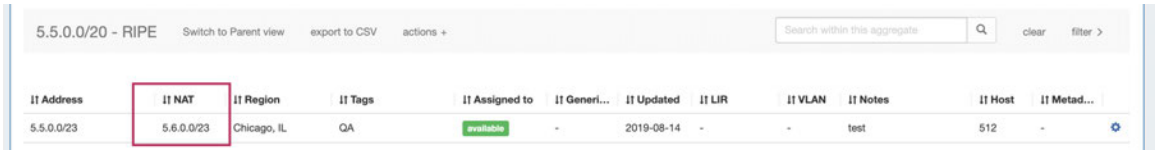

For more information on the Holding Tank, see Holding Tank Management.

# Working with NAT Blocks

## Track IP NAT Associations

Track NAT associations between public and private (1918) blocks via the IPAM "NAT" Field.

The "NAT" field accepts a single IPv4 CIDR to associate with the current block, and automatically updates the corresponding block with the NAT association.




## ⚠️ Working with NAT'ed Blocks

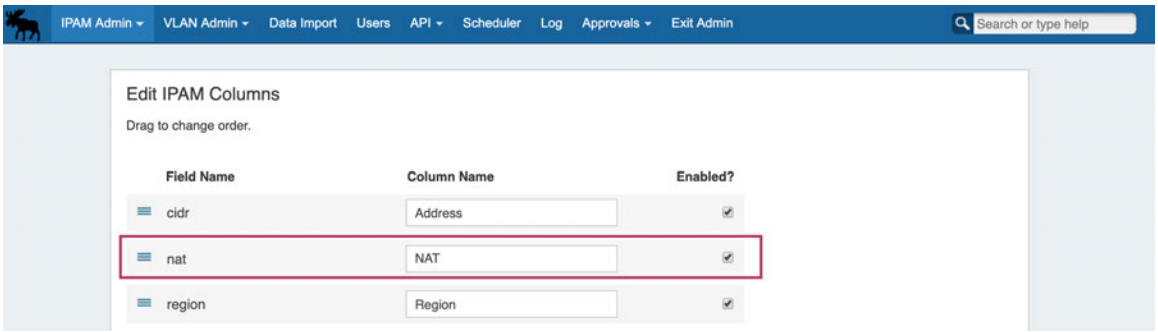
Use caution when managing NAT'ed blocks or aggregates - major actions that change either block's assignment or size (assign, unassign, split, merge, autosplit/cleanup) removes the NAT association.

In this case, complete the necessary high-level block tasks, and then re-save the NAT CIDR association to either block.

## Enable NAT

Enable the NAT field by navigating to IPAM Admin  Edit IPAM Columns.

From there, ensure that the NAT column is checked (enabled), and customize the column location if desired. Be sure to click "Update" to save any changes.

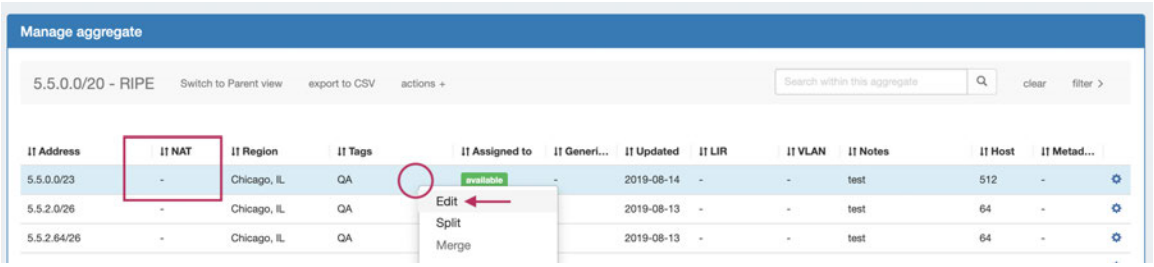



## Create NAT Association

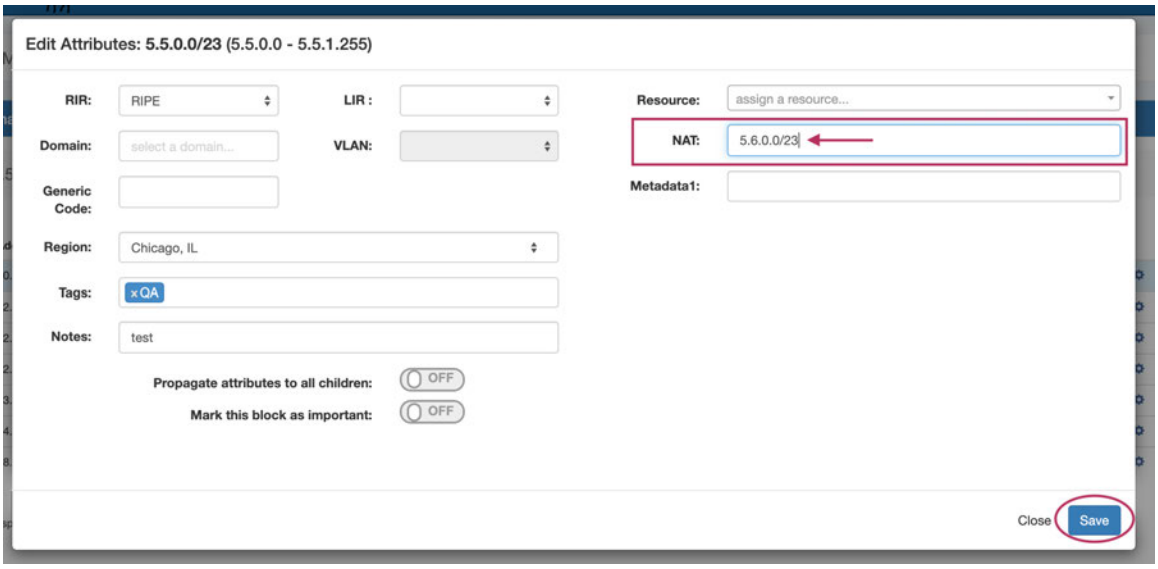
Ensure that the two appropriate IP Aggregates (one public, one 1918 private space) containing the desired blocks to NAT have been added into ProVision. (See: Working with IP Aggregates)

After verifying the aggregates and blocks, you may add the NAT association:

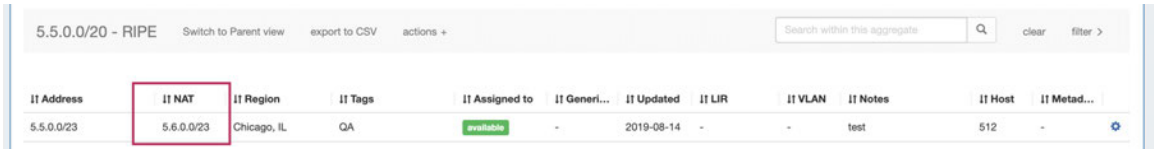
Open IPAM Manage for either aggregate, then open "Edit Block" for the specific block you wish to NAT. (See:Working with IP Blocks)



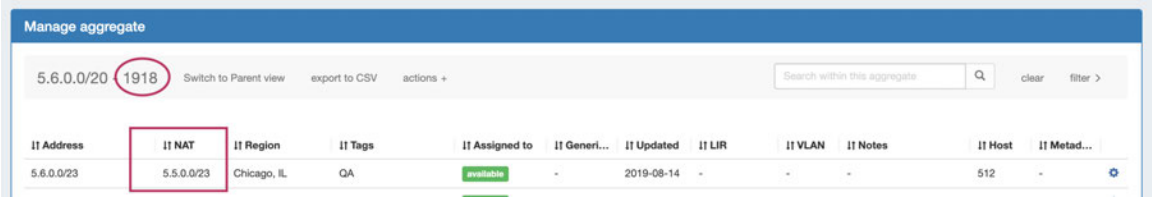

In the Edit Block dialog, enter the IPv4 CIDR of the corresponding NAT block. When complete, click "Save".




Once the NAT field has been saved, the association will display in the NAT Column.



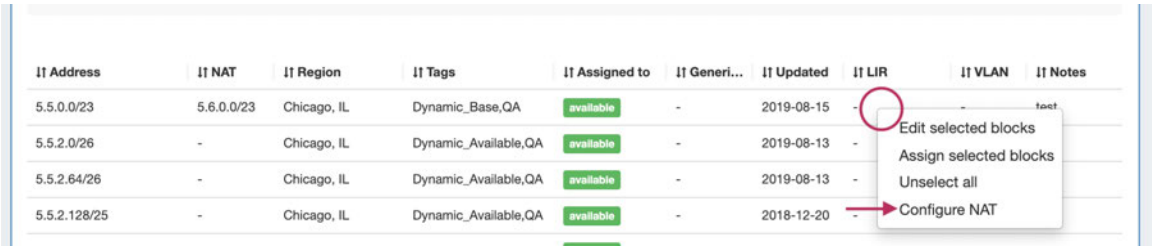

The corresponding block (here, the private 1918 space block) will automatically have the NAT associated applied.



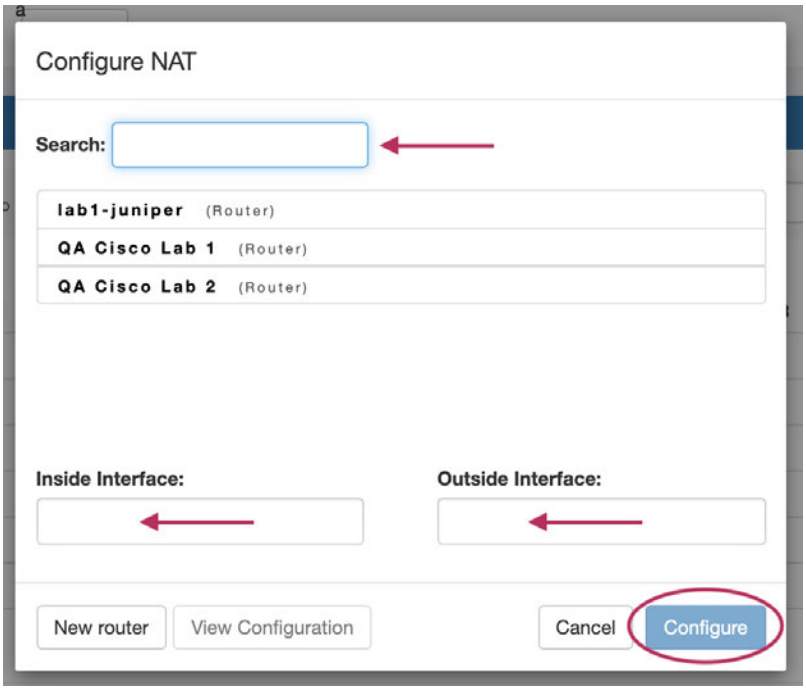

## Configure NAT to Router(s)

To push the NAT association to a router, go to the IPAM Manage Action Menu, and select "Configure NAT" for the NAT'ed block(s) (For information on adding a router to ProVision, see Peering Routers).

Open the Action Menu for the NAT'ed block(s) and select "Configure NAT".




Then, select the router. Add the custom configuration / interface information for the router and click "Configure".




## NAT Rotate Dynamic IPs

NAT'ed block assignments may be automatically rotated to other available IPs via the "Rotate Dynamic IPs" scheduler task available in the Admin **Scheduler** tab.

"Rotate Dynamic IPs" reassigns single IPv4 NAT addresses (/32s) after 'x' days (since last config push) to an available address denoted by blocks associated with the Dynamic_Available tags.

Prior to using this task, two blocks (one public, one private) must be NAT'ed in IPAM, the NAT Config pushed to a router, and appropriate blocks tagged with "Dynamic_Base" and "Dynamic_Available".

## Before you Begin

Before setting up NAT Dynamic IP Block Rotation, ensure the follow has been completed:

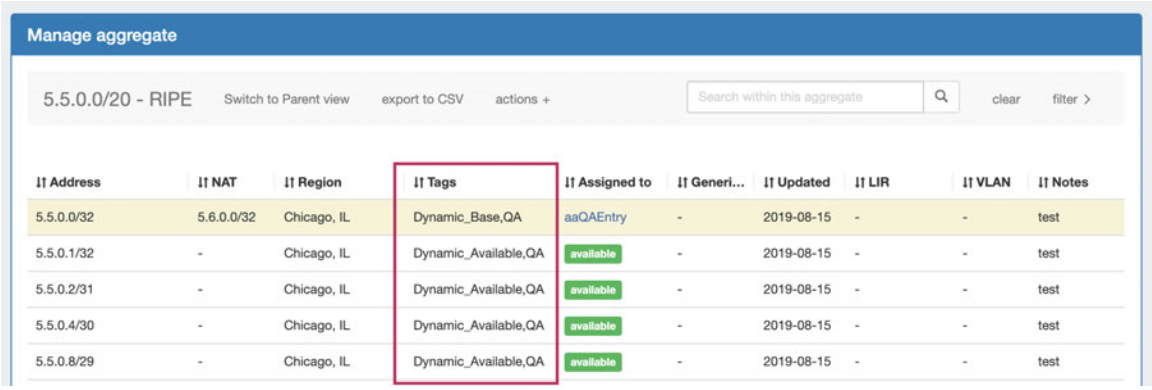
- The public/private IP blocks exist in ProVision (as /32s) and have been set up with NAT Metadata and matching IP Tags
- The NAT'ed blocks have been configured with a router
- The Aggregate(s)/IP's exist in ProVision with sufficient "Available" space to use for Rotating the NAT'ed block(s)
- IPAM Tags match between the NAT'ed blocks and intended available blocks

## Add Dynamic Tags to Blocks

After NAT blocks and aggregates have been set up in ProVision with sufficient size, matching IPAM tags, and NAT metadata, you can identify which blocks to use for dynamic rotation by adding the "Dynamic_Base" and "Dynamic_Available" tags.

Go to IPAM Manage and:

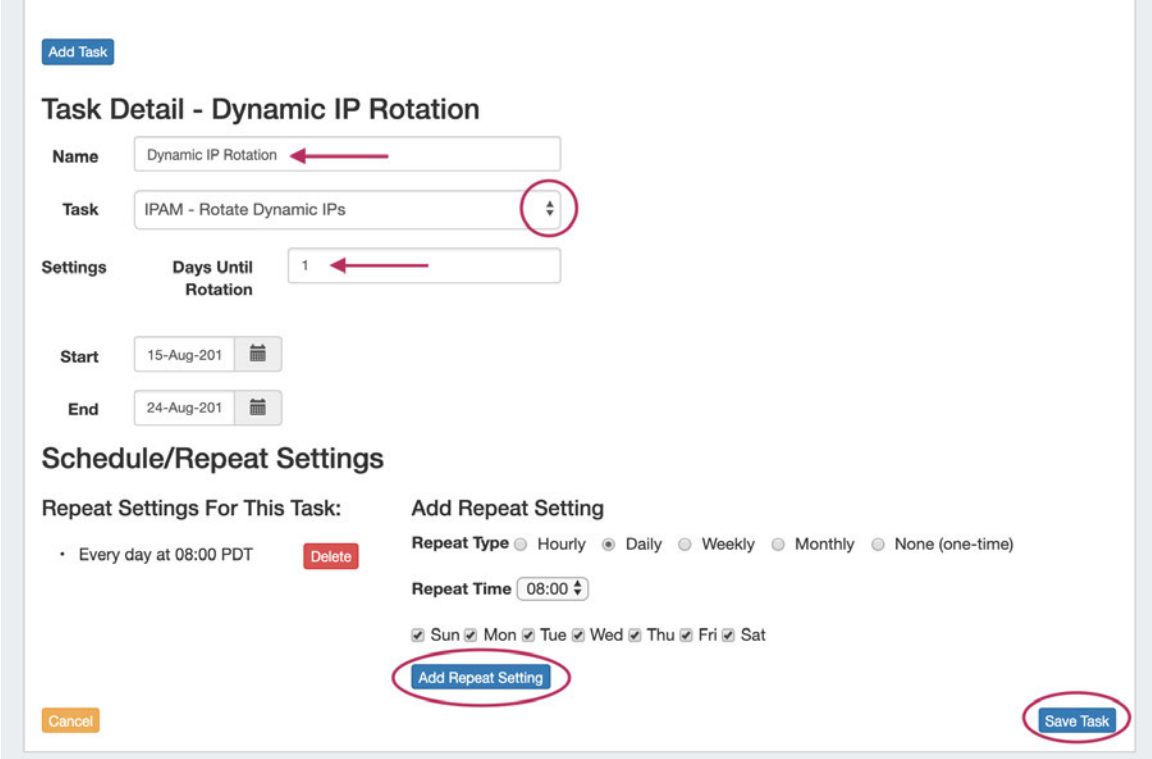
- Add the IPAM tag "Dynamic_Base" to the /32 block(s) currently NAT'ed.
- Add the IPAM tag "Dynamic_Available to the aggregate or blocks which match the NAT'ed blocks, and are available for rotation use. If used on a block larger than the Dynamic_Base block, the available block will be automatically split.




## Set up Scheduler Task

Go to  Admin  Scheduler, Add the scheduler task "IPAM - Rotate Dynamic IPs".

Enter a number for the days to wait (since last configure) until rotation.




Enter scheduled start / end dates, repeat settings, and click "Save" when complete.

The scheduled task will look for NAT'ed, /32 "Dynamic_Base" blocks that have last configuration times older than the provided day count, and rotate those IPs to "Dynamic_Available" blocks. Dynamic_Available blocks larger than than the Dynamic_Base block will be automatically split.

# Additional Information

For additional information on working with the IPAM system in ProVision, see the following areas:

- Gadgets (IPAM and IPAMv2 Gadgets)
- Working with IP Rules
- IPAM Administration

# Working with IP Rules

# Working with IP Rules


- Working with IP Rules
  - IP Rules
    - Creating a new rule
      - IP Rule Positions
    - Apply an existing rule
    - Remove a rule from a block
- Additional Information


## IP Rules

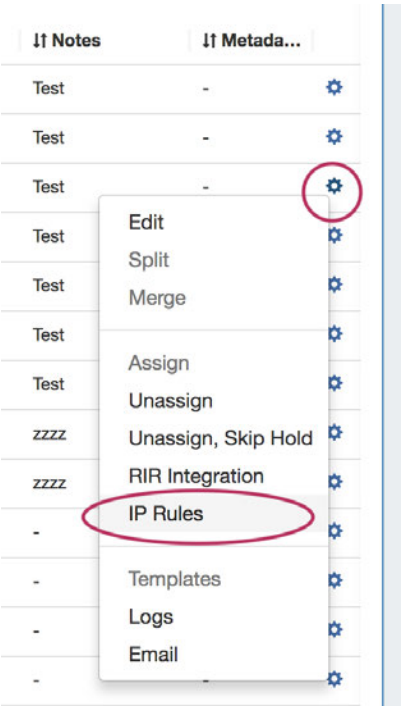
IP Rules allow users to exclude IP addresses from being assigned (via Smart Assign or Direct Assign) based on the address position in the block (i.e., first address, last address, nth from last).

IP Rules can be accessed from IPAM Manage or the IPAM Gadget, in the block's Action Menu (wrench icon). IPAM users may view rules applied to a block, apply an existing rule to a block, or create a new rule for a block. Only one rule may be applied per block, and rules applied to a parent block affect the child blocks below it in the tree.

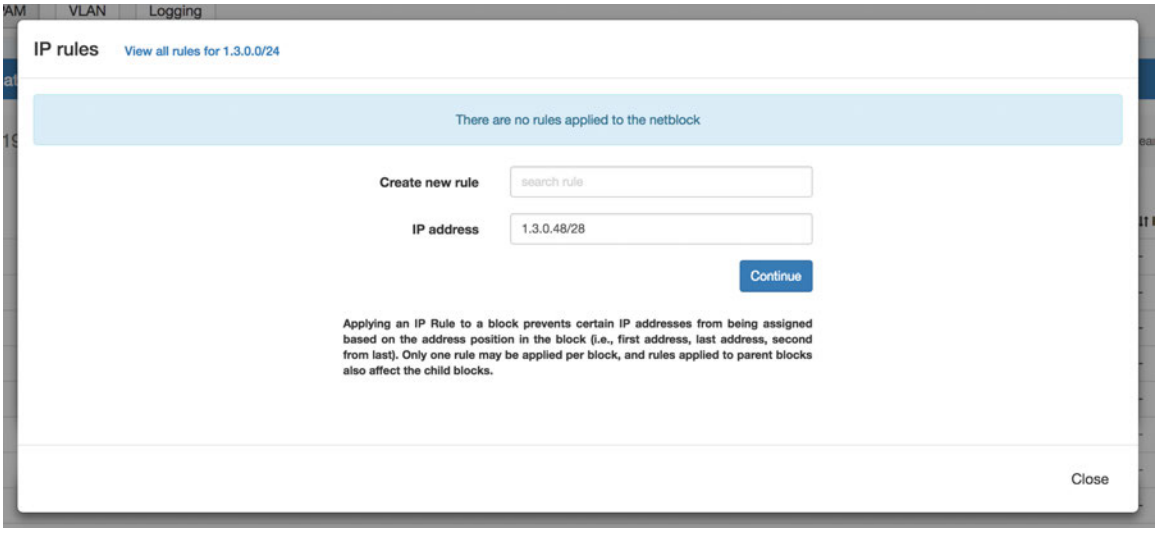
Admin users may view all existing IPAM Rules, the blocks affected by each rule, and delete rules through the IPAM Admin - IP Rules page.

### Creating a new rule

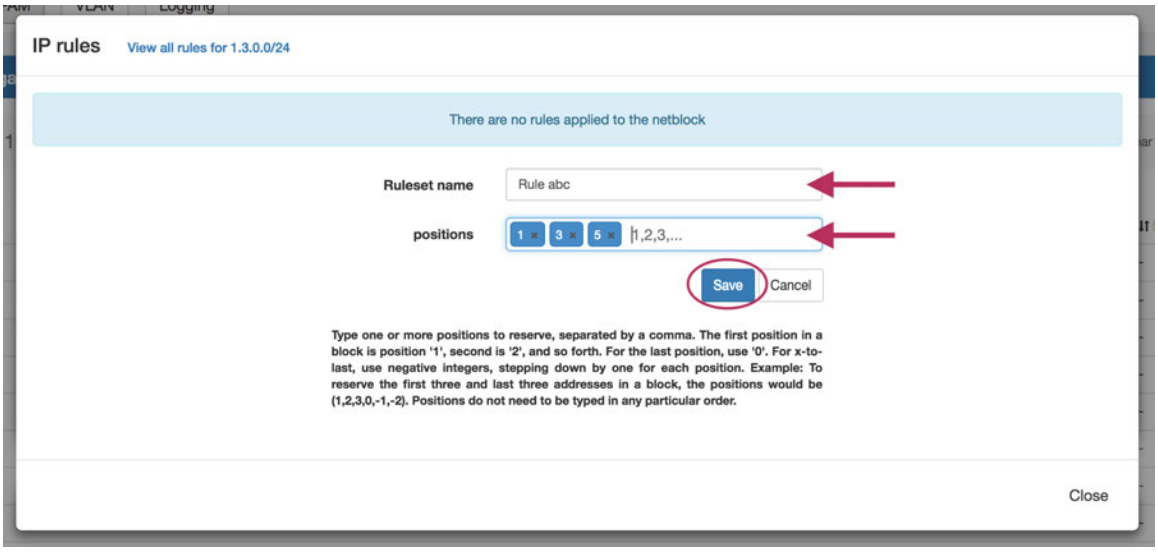
From the IPAM Manage screen or IPAM Gadget, click on the Action Menu (wrench icon) for the block you wish to apply a rule. Select "IP Rules".




The IP Rules screen will pop up. From here, you can view existing rules applied to the block (or the parent block), search for and apply an existing rule, or create a new IP Rule.




To create a new rule, leave the "Search Rule" input empty, and hit the "Continue" button.




The Manage Ruleset screen will appear, prompting you to enter a Ruleset name, and select positions to reserve.

Type in the desired name for the new rule, and one or multiple positions (denoted by integers separated by commas) into the box below the name.

When complete, click the "Save" button, or hit "Cancel" to exit without saving. The Rule preview screen will appear.

## IP Rule Positions

Reserved addresses are set by their position in the block. Positions start at '1', for the first address in a block, and step up by one for each subsequent IP address.  The last position in a block is '0', representing the last address, and steps down a negative integer for each position from last - so the last three addresses in a block would be represented by (0, -1, -2). When reserving multiple positions, the typed order of the positions does not matter.

**Position examples:**

(1) - Reserves the first IP

(0) - Reserves the last IP

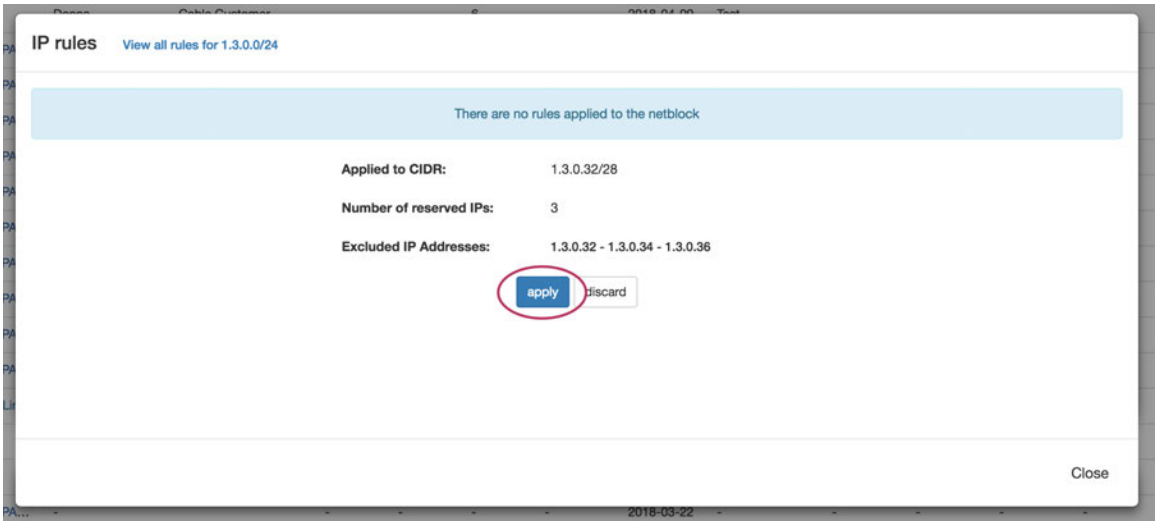
(1,2,3) - Reserves the first three IPs

(0, -1, -2) - Reserves the last three IPs.

(1,2,3,0,-1,-2) - Reserves the first three and last three IPs

Review the list of excluded IP addresses affected by the rule, then click "Apply" to finalize the selection.

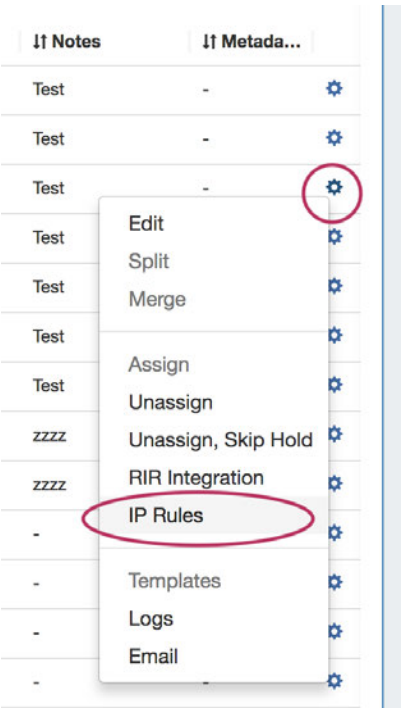
If desired, you can exit out of applying the rule by clicking "Discard", and closing the screen.



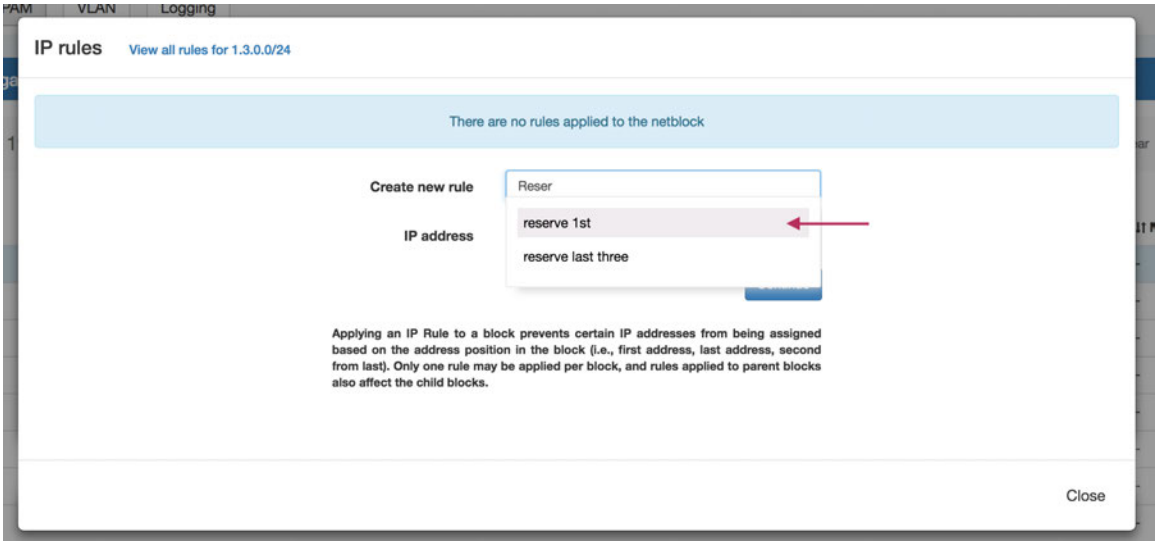

Once changes are applied, the rule will show the name, affected CIDR(s), affected IPs, and an option to remove the rule.

## Apply an existing rule

From the IPAM Manage screen or IPAM Gadget, click on the Action Menu (wrench icon) for the block you wish to apply a rule. Select "IP Rules".

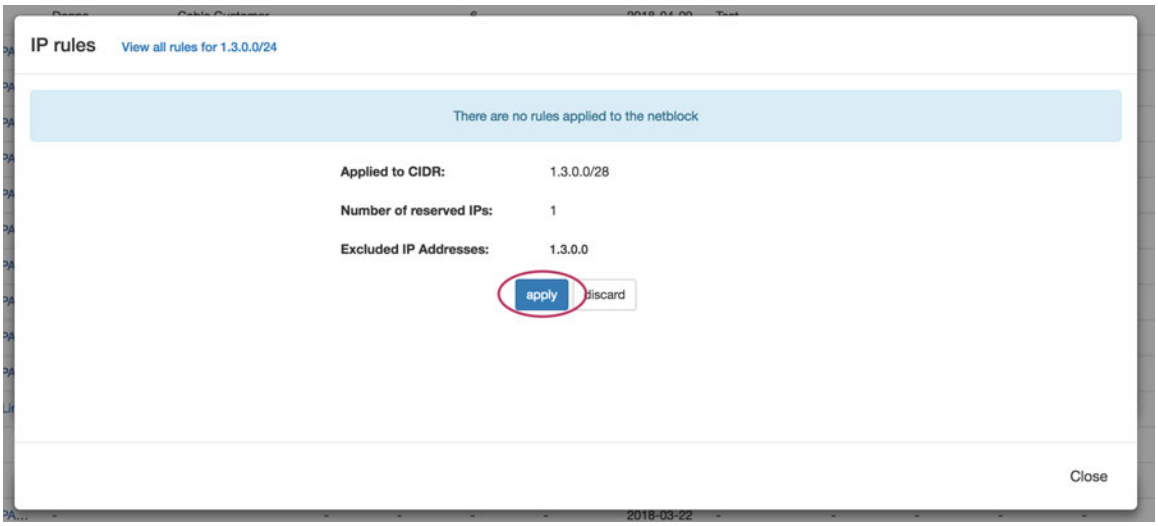



The IP Rules screen will pop up. From here, you can search for existing rules by typing a few letters of the Rule name in the search box, then selecting the desired rule.




Once selected, hit the "Continue" Button.

Review the list of excluded IP addresses affected by the rule, then click "Apply" to finalize the selection.

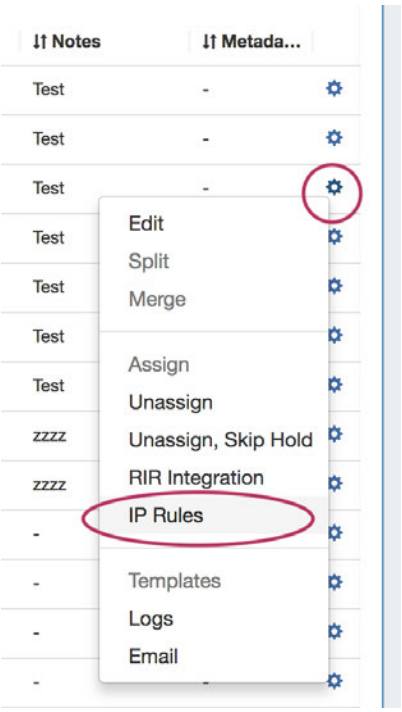



If desired, you can exit out of applying the rule by clicking "Discard", and closing the screen.

Once changes are applied, the rule will show the name, affected CIDR, affected IPs, and present with an option to remove the rule.

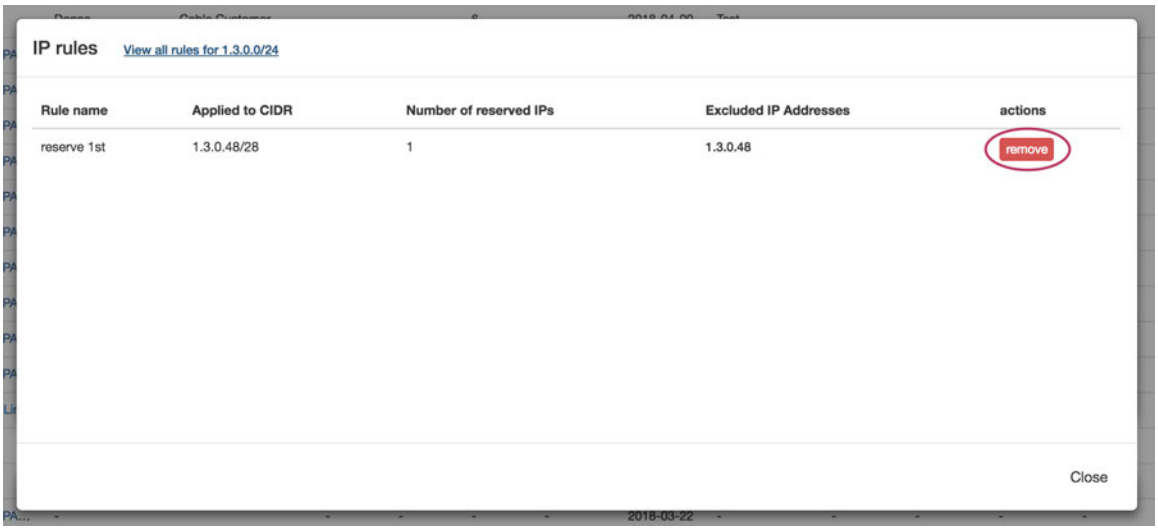
## Remove a rule from a block

From the IPAM Manage screen or IPAM Gadget, click on the Action Menu (wrench icon) for the desired block. Select "IP Rules".




The details for the existing rule applied to the block will be shown. To remove the rule from the block, click the "Remove" button and confirm.

The rule will still be able to be re-applied and usable by other blocks, simply no longer applied to the current block.




# Additional Information

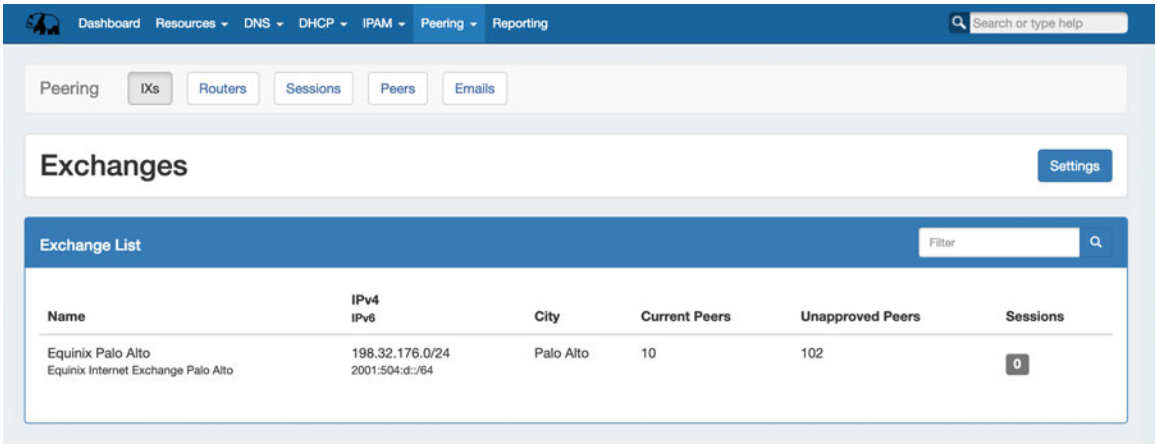
For additional information on working with IP Blocks and IP Rules, including Admin-level tasks, see the following areas:

- IPAM Tab
- Working with IP Blocks
- IPAM Administration
    - IPAM Parameters
    - IPAM Rules (Admins)

# Peering v2

# Peering

The **Peering** tab displays allows you to add and manage exchanges, routers, sessions, and peers. Admin users may view and manage recent emails for a company peering email address, and associate email communications with ProVision peers.




ProVision's **Peering** tab has five subtabs to manange various peering functions: **IXs** (Exchanges), **Routers**, **Sessions**, **Peers**, and **Emails**.

The **IXs** tab shows the exchange list. From here, you can edit exchange settings and view, manage, and mark peer status and communications via the exchange details page.

The **Routers** tab shows the list of routers in ProVision. From here, you can add new routers or manage existing routers.

The **Sessions** tab lists the current sessions in ProVision. You may also add new sessions, or click on a session name to show session details, from which you may configure and manage each session.

On the **Peers** tab, you can view and manage session peers.

In the **Email** tab (Global Admins only), recent email communications to and from a company peering email account may be managed.


- Peering
- Peering Overview
- Set up ProVision Peering
    - Add ASN(s) to ProVision
    - Add PeeringDB Credentials
    - Additional Options for Local Installations
- Peering Workflow
    - Peering Workflow Steps
        - 1) Add Router(s)
        - 2) Add Peer Groups
            - From Peering  "Router Details" Page:
            - From the Peer Group Gadget:
        - 3) Add Session(s)
        - 4) Configure Sessions
            - Configure Sessions Individually by Exchange / Session:
            - Configure Sessions by Peers:
        - 5) Manage Communications
            - New Peer:
            - Outgoing Peer Request:
            - Incoming Peer Request:
        - 6) Repeat for new Routers, Sessions, and Peers.
- Additional Information


# Peering Overview

In ProVision's **Peering** tab, you can add multiple exchanges, routers, sessions, view peer details, as well as send and receive peering requests.  ProVision directly interfaces with PeeringDB's API to update exchange and peering data, to ensure up to date information.

This requires Peering users to have a PeeringDB account, and for the account credentials to be set in ProVision.

Peering Setup - Local Installations

If you are using a locally hosted instance of ProVision, verify that you have followed the instructions on the Local Installations - Peering Setup page to set up Peering for your instance.

# Set up ProVision Peering

Two components need to be set up before you can begin to do common peering tasks in ProVision - set at least one ASN, and set PeeringDB account credentials.

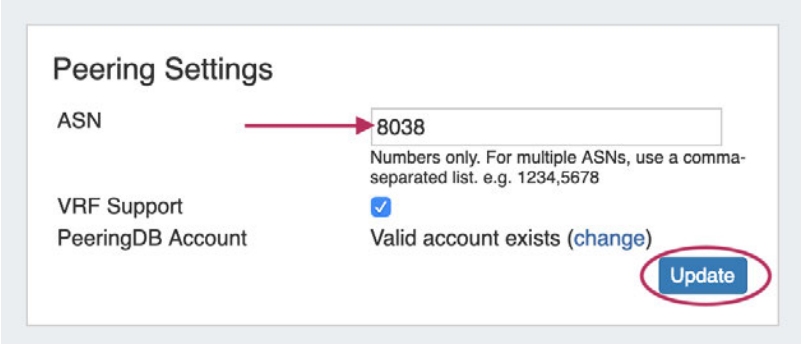
## Add ASN(s) to ProVision

Add at least one ASN to ProVision from either the **Admin**  **Admin Preferences** page, or via the **Peering** Tab -> Exchange Settings.

- Click one of the options below for details:

  From the **Admin Preferences** page, go to **Peering Settings**.

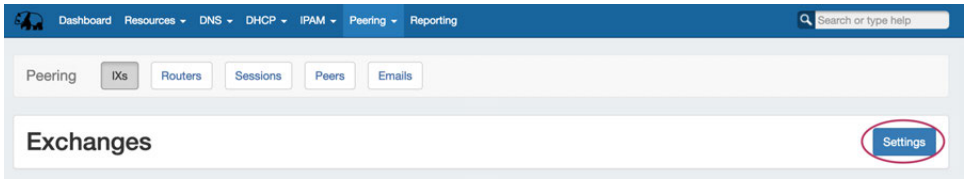
  Next to "ASN", enter the ASN(s) you want to track in ProVision.




  For multiple ASNs, separate each ASN with a comma (e.g. "1234, 5678").

  When done, click "Update" to save your changes.

  From the **Peering** Tab, go to the **IX's** subtab and then click "Settings".




  Peering Settings will display.

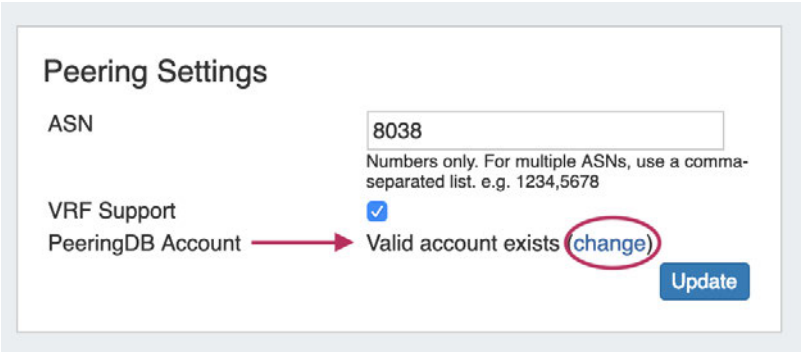
  Under the "Config" section, you'll see a field to add an ASN - fill in the desired ASN(s), and click "Add".

## Add PeeringDB Credentials

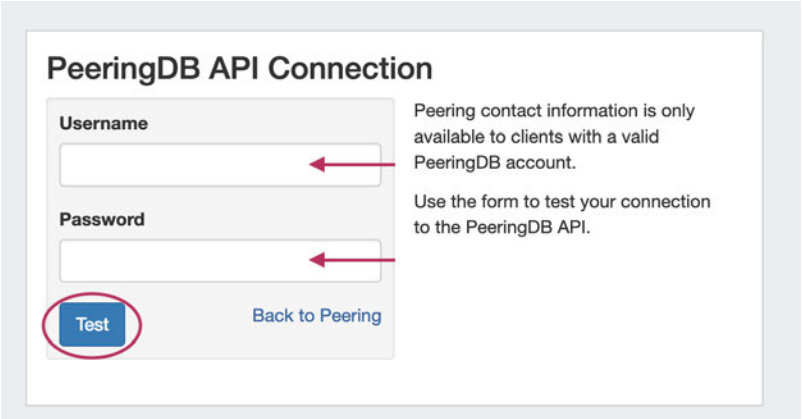
Both Cloud customers and local installations may set the PeeringDB credentials in the ProVision **Admin**  **Admin Preferences** page, or via the **Peering** Tab -> Exchange Settings.

- Click one of the options below for details:

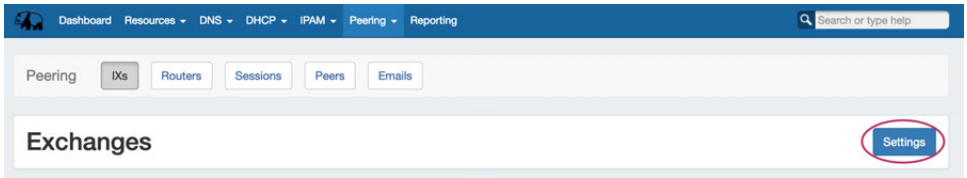
From the **Admin Preferences** page, go to **Peering Settings**. The current PeeringDB Account status will display next to "Peering DB Account". To set or change the account, click the "change" link. You will go to the **PeeringDB API Connection** page to test and set the account.




Enter the PeeringDB account username and password, then hit "Test" - the connection will be tested. If successful, you can then save the credentials.



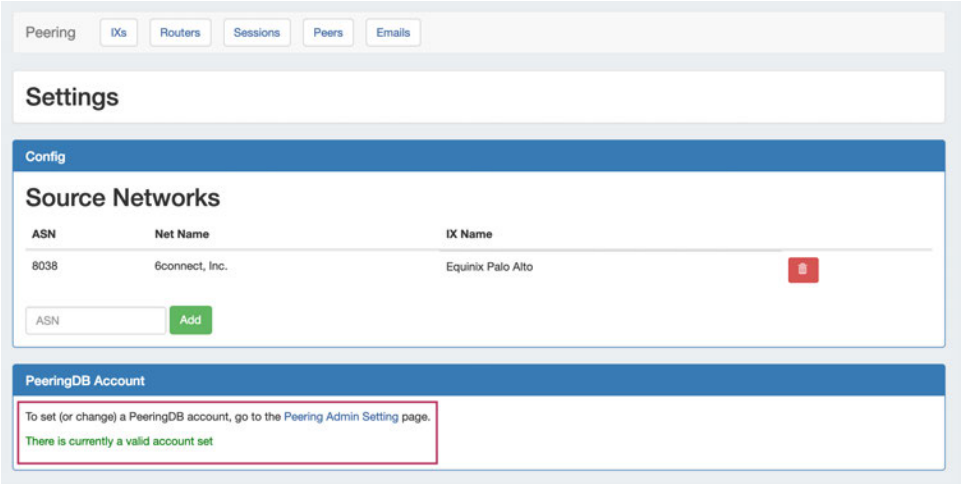

From the **Peering** Tab, go to the **IX's** subtab and then click "Settings".




Peering Settings will display.

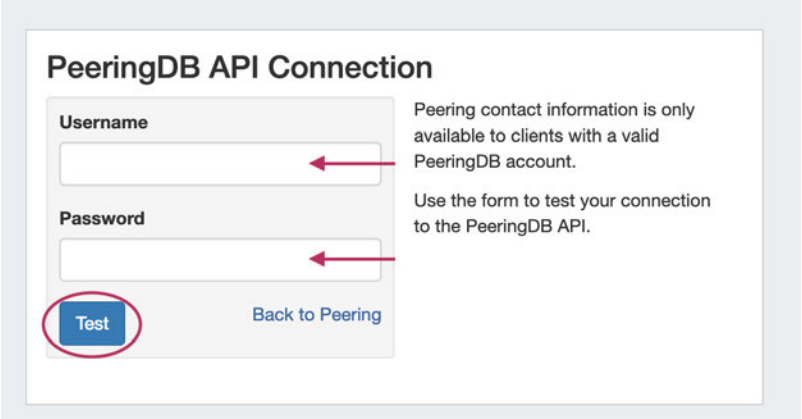
Under the "PeeringDB Account" section, you will see account status instructions to set or change the Peering DB Account.

Click on the "Peering Admin Settings" link to go to the **PeeringDB API Connection** page to test and set the account.




This opens the **PeeringDB API Connection** page.

Enter the PeeringDB account username and password, then hit "Test" - the connection will be tested. If successful, you can then save the credentials.




## Additional Options for Local Installations

Local Installations have an additional option of hard-coding the credentials in ProVision's globals.php file.

Additional Peering constants may be added into globals.php to change the PeeringDB URL between the main and beta site (some users may find the beta site to have faster response times), and to adjust the PeeringDB cache TTL.

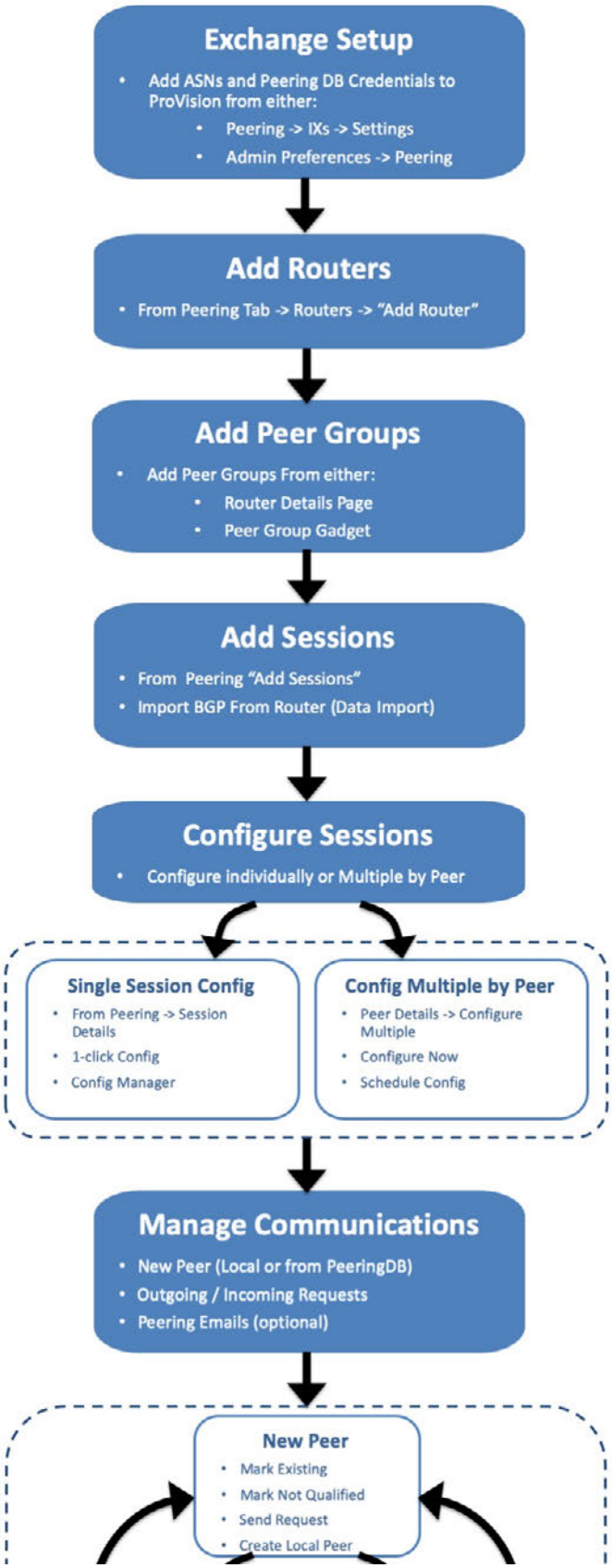
For real-time updates, TTL may be set to 0. However, some users may experience severe lag with a TTL = 0; we recommend using a 10 to 15 minute or greater TTL if this occurs.

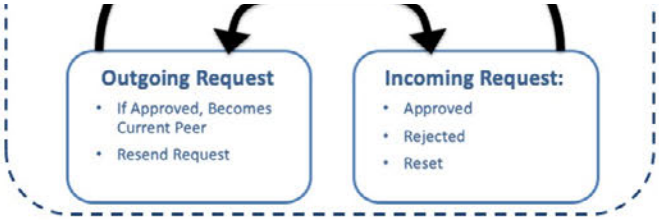
For details on adding / editing these peering constants, see Local Installations - Peering Setup.

# Peering Workflow

After the initial Peering setup is complete (Adding ASNs and a Peering DB account), you can begin to work with the rest of the Peering tabs, including routers, peer groups, sessions, managing peers, and communications.

# PEERING WORKFLOW






# Peering Workflow Steps

Below is an outline of the steps needed for a basic workflow process.


- Peering
- Peering Overview
- Set up ProVision Peering
  - Add ASN(s) to ProVision
  - Add PeeringDB Credentials
  - Additional Options for Local Installations
- Peering Workflow
  - Peering Workflow Steps
    - 1) Add Router(s)
    - 2) Add Peer Groups
      - From Peering  "Router Details" Page:
      - From the Peer Group Gadget:
    - 3) Add Session(s)
    - 4) Configure Sessions
      - Configure Sessions Individually by Exchange / Session:
      - Configure Sessions by Peers:
    - 5) Manage Communications
      - New Peer:
      - Outgoing Peer Request:
      - Incoming Peer Request:
    - 6) Repeat for new Routers, Sessions, and Peers.
- Additional Information


## 1) Add Router(s)

Adding a router is the fundamental base and first step of working with peering in ProVision. Routers may be added through the "Add Router" button in the **Peering** Tab.

For a detailed breakdown of this task, see Peering Routers.

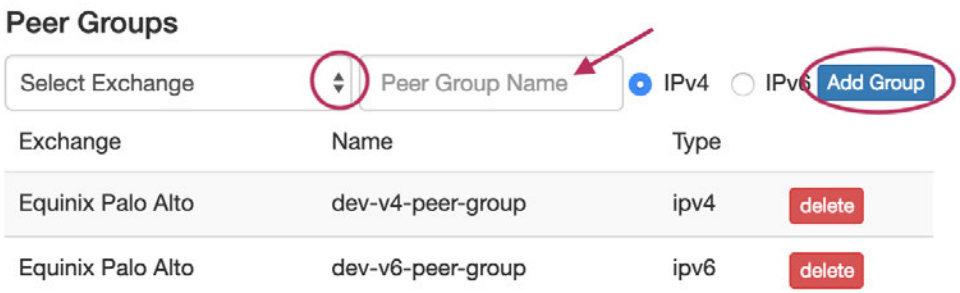
## 2) Add Peer Groups

Associating the router with a peer group is necessary to link the router to a particular exchange. You may add the Peer Group information either in the "Router Details" page in Peering, or in the Peer Group Gadget prior to adding sessions.

### From Peering  "Router Details" Page:

Go to **Peering** Tab  Routers. Click on the desired router to view the **Router Details** page. (See Peering Routers)

Here, you may add and delete and Peer Groups associated with the router - select the Exchange, Add the Peer Group Name, select the IP type, and click "Add Group".

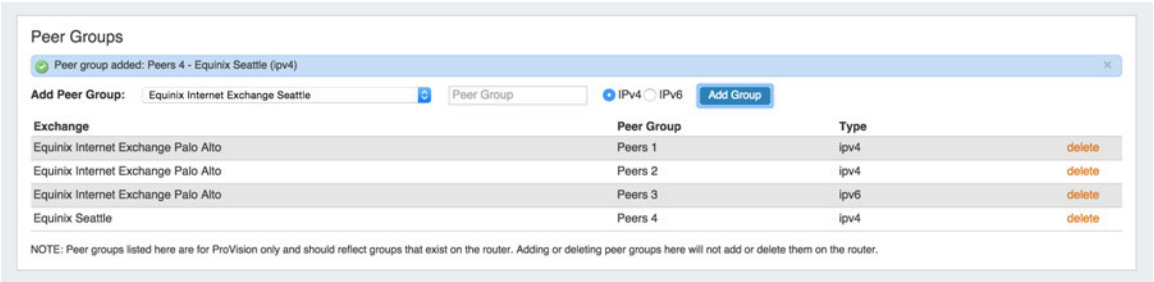



## From the Peer Group Gadget:

If you need to add a Peer Group to an existing router, you may use the Peer Group gadget.

The Peer Group Gadget allows you to add peer groups for IPv4 and IPv6 for a selected exchange from a router's Resource Entry page.

To do this, simply select the exchange, type in a Peer Group name in the text box, select IPv4 or IPv6, the click "Add Group".




Peer Groups added from this gadget will be then be available to select in the "Add Session" dialog box in the **Peering** tab.

# 3) Add Session(s)

After Routers and Peer Groups have been set up, the next step is Adding Sessions to ProVision.

You may add a new session through the "Add Session" button in the **Peering** tab, or you may Import Peering Sessions from an existing router.

Importing sessions requires Admin level permissions, and is accessed through the **Data Import** Tab in the Admin section of ProVision.

# 4) Configure Sessions

Once a session has been added, you will see it in the session list. For a newly added session, the status will show as "Not Configured". There are a few options to configure sessions:

## Configure Sessions Individually by Exchange / Session:

You may configure the session through 1 click config or the Config Manager, accessed by clicking session and opening the Session Details page. 1 click config uses the default config settings, while the Config Manager allows you to manually create one time use unique settings.

## Configure Sessions by Peers:

From the **Peer Details** Page, you can choose to create or configure multiple sessions.

With this option, you can view and configure all sessions for that Peer from one menu (as opposed to the Sessions list configure option, which configures individual sessions by Exchange).

Clicking on "Configure Multiple Sessions" button opens a page showing the available exchanges with routers and options to change the router, peer group, and Peer type.

Select the checkmarks for the desired sessions to configure. As a shortcut, you may also check the "Select all exchanges" option to select all sessions under all exchanges, or, check "Select all networks" next to the exchange header to select all sessions in that exchange. From there, deselect items as needed.

When your selections have been made, click "Configure Now" to immediately configure all selected sessions, or you may select "Schedule" to automatically create sessions and schedule a configuration to occur in one hour (by default). The scheduled configuration may be edited through the **Scheduler** Tab.

## 5) Manage Communications

Once a session has been added with a peer, you will see the peer listed Peer List under the **Peers** tab.

You'll also be able to manage communications from Exchange Communications.

You will see the list of Peers, their ASNs, Name, Request Status, Notes (log), and the Action Menu (wrench icon).

From here, you may send peer requests, mark peer status, and view notes on previous actions. The available options and flow depends on the Peer Status and whether a request is Outgoing or Incoming.

### New Peer:

For an existing peer that was just added, you can mark the peer as:

a) Mark Existing Peer, or,

b) Mark Not Qualified

You may also choose to send an outgoing peer request.

### Outgoing Peer Request:

To send out a peer request, select "Send Request" from the Action Menu (wrench icon) . This sends an initial peering request email to the peering coordinator for that peer. The email template pre-populates data based on peeringdb data (To address, Subject line and Peering exchange information). You have the chance to edit the email prior to sending. If Peering Emails are set up in ProVision with the same email address, a copy of the request will be saved to the Sent box.

Once a Request has been sent out, it can proceed two ways:

a) The request is accepted and Peering is established (becomes current peer)

b) The request is not accepted / responded to, and the "Resend Request" option becomes available, allowing you to repeat the request.

### Incoming Peer Request:

If a request is received, you have a few options from which you may mark the peer from the Action Menu:

a) If you accept the request, you may "Mark Approved" and Peering is established (becomes current peer).

b) You may "Mark Rejected", in which case a peer status is marked rejected.

c) "Reset Status" is available at various points in the communications process, if you want to reset the peer back to the beginning state and re-establish a different status condition. This reopens the initial options from which you may select a different peer mark.

d) "Resend Request" may be available to resend a request

If Peering Emails are set up in ProVision, and the message was sent to the account as set there, the incoming request will be recieved to the ProVision inbox.

## 6) Repeat for new Routers, Sessions, and Peers.

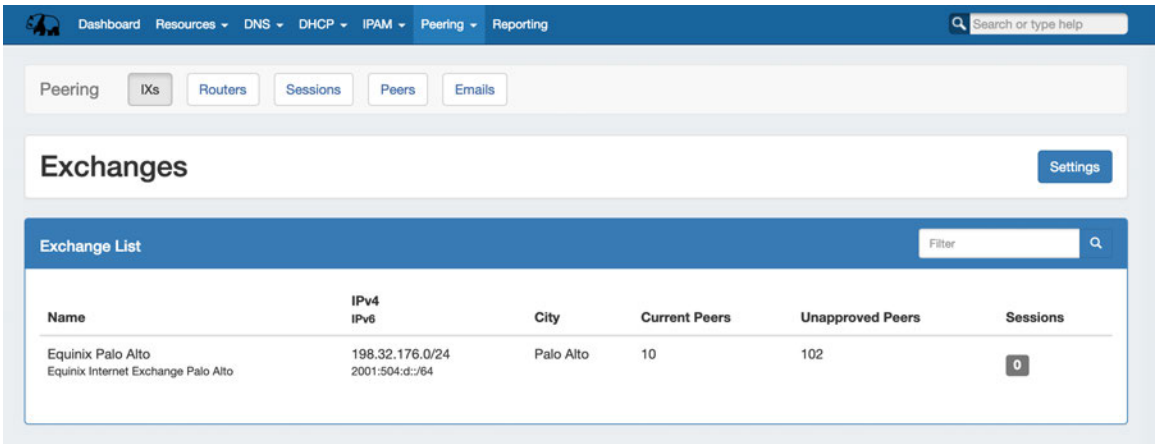
To add additional Routers, Sessions, and Peers repeat steps 1, 2, or 3, and manage your newly added sessions and peer communications similarly with steps 4 and 5.

# Additional Information

- Peering Exchanges
- Peering Routers
- Peering Sessions
- Managing Peers
- Peering Emails

# Peering Exchanges

# Working with Peering Exchanges

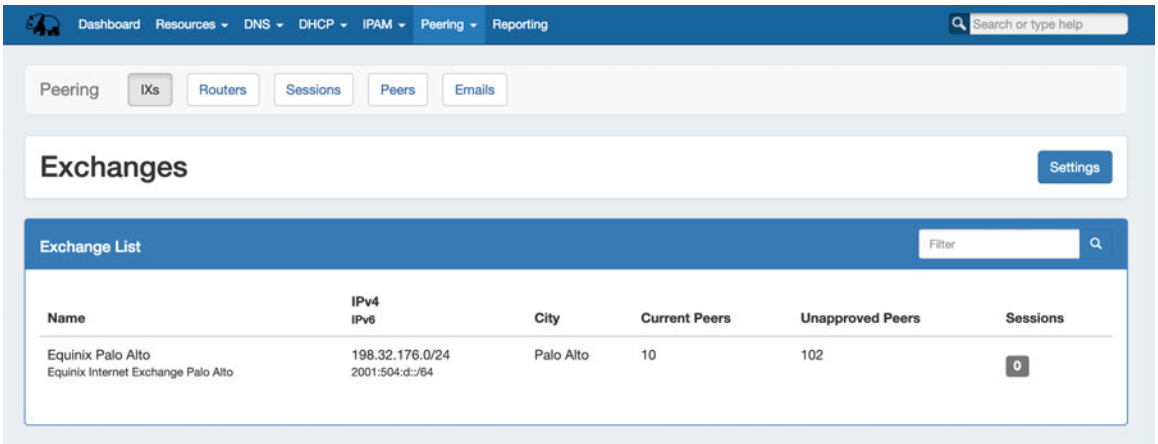



From this tab, you can access exchange settings to set ASN / Peering DB info, view the current exchange list and peer status, and view details for each exchange.


- Working with Peering Exchanges
- IXs Overview
  - Exchange Settings
    - ASNs
    - PeeringDB Account
  - Exchange Details
    - Exchange Details Tab:
    - Exchange Sessions Tab:
    - Communications Tab:
      - Menu Actions
  - Additional Information

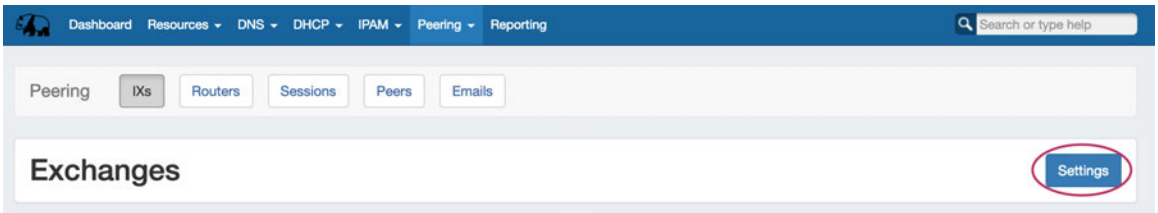

# IXs Overview

The Exchanges subtab features the list of exchanges currently set in ProVision, with IP type, city, peers, and active session counts.

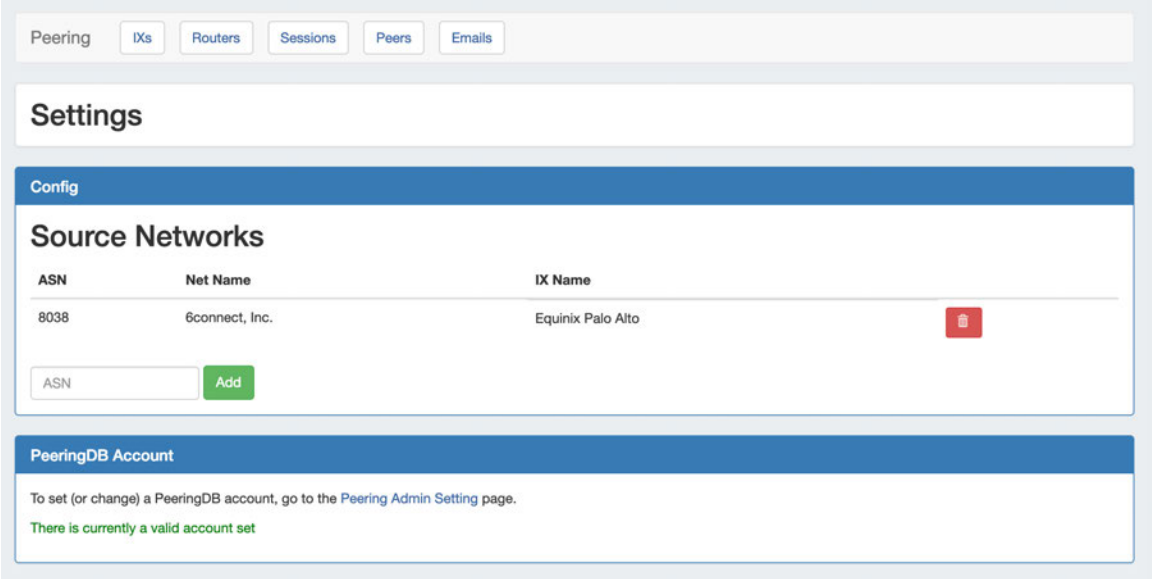



## Exchange Settings

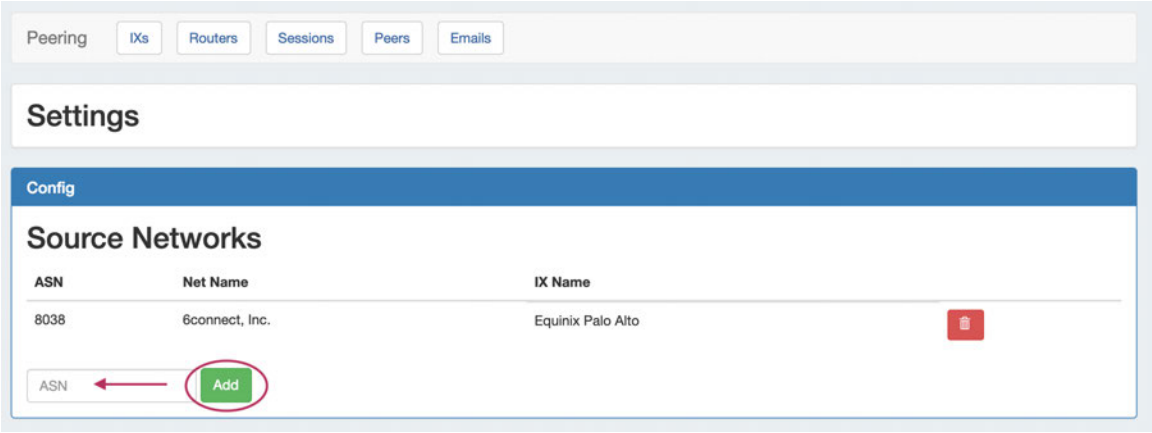
Clicking the "Settings" Button opens the Exchange Settings page.




Here, you can add or remove ASNs, add or edit PeeringDB account settings:




## ASNs

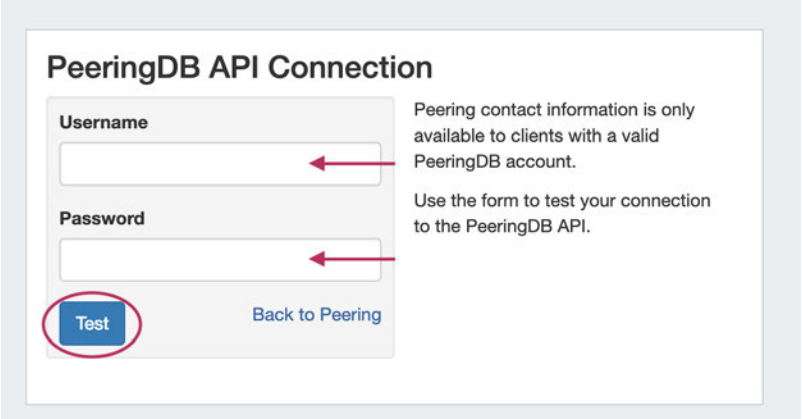



- Add an ASN by typing a valid ASN into the Config - ASN box, and then click "Add".
- Delete an ASN by clicking the red "Delete" icon for the row under Source Networks.

## PeeringDB Account

If a valid PeeringDB account is already set, a message will display confirming the valid account.

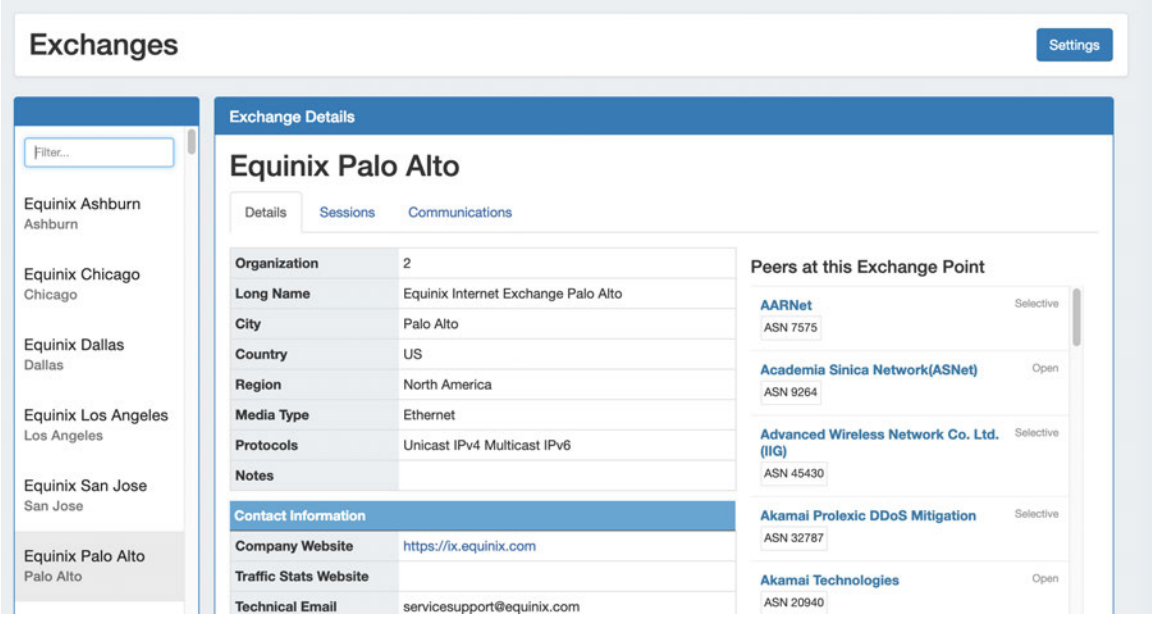
If no account is set, or the current account is invalid, follow the link to the **Peering Admin Settings** page to test and add a PeeringDB account.




Enter the PeeringDB credentials and click "Test". If the account is valid, an option will appear to add it to ProVision.

# Exchange Details

Clicking on an exchange in the exchange list will bring up an exchange details page, where Exchange Details, Session Details, and Exchange Communications may be viewed and managed.



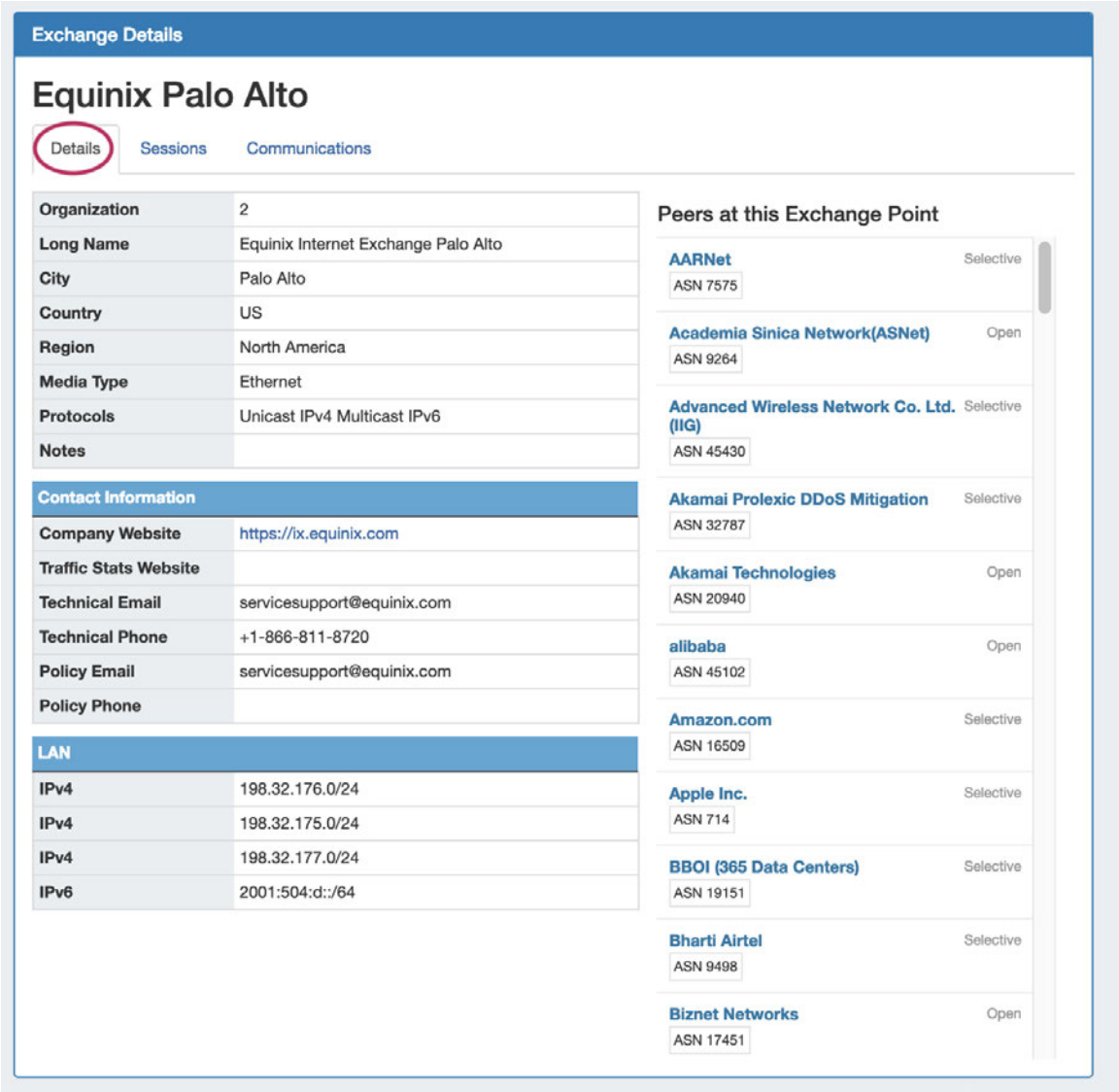

The "Settings" button takes you back to the **Exchange Settings** page.

The left side of the page displays a filterable list of all exchanges currently added to ProVision - to narrow the list down, simply type the first few letters of the exchange name into the "Filter" box, and click on your desired exchange to view its details.

## Exchange Details Tab:

The exchange details tab provides general information about the exchange, obtained from PeeringDB.

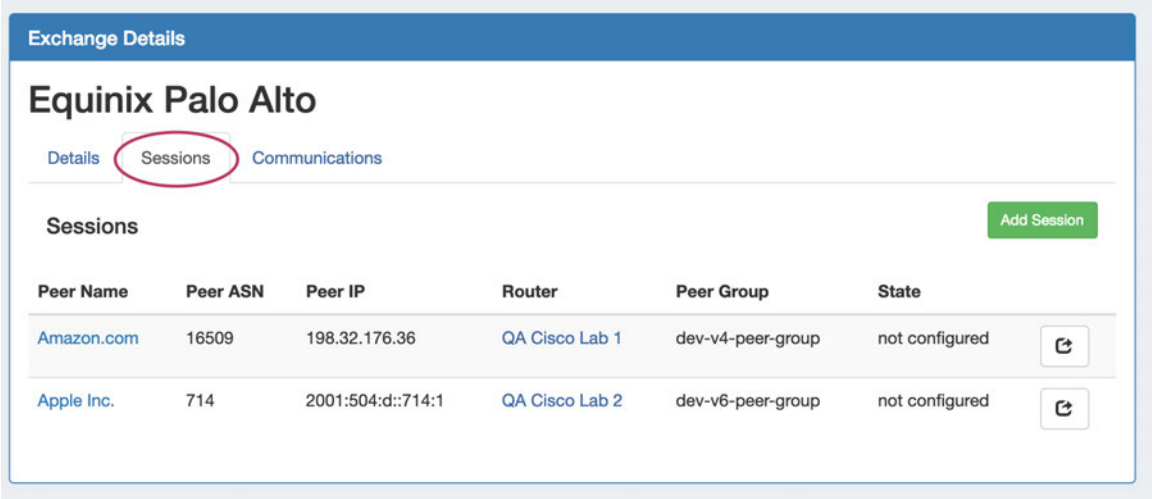
It includes organization information, contact information, LAN, and a list of Peers at the exchange point.




Clicking on the name of any peer in the under the "Peers at this Exchange Point" list will open the **Peer Details** page.

## Exchange Sessions Tab:

The sessions tab lists ProVision sessions associated with the exchange, detailing the ASN, IP, Router, Peer Group, and session state.

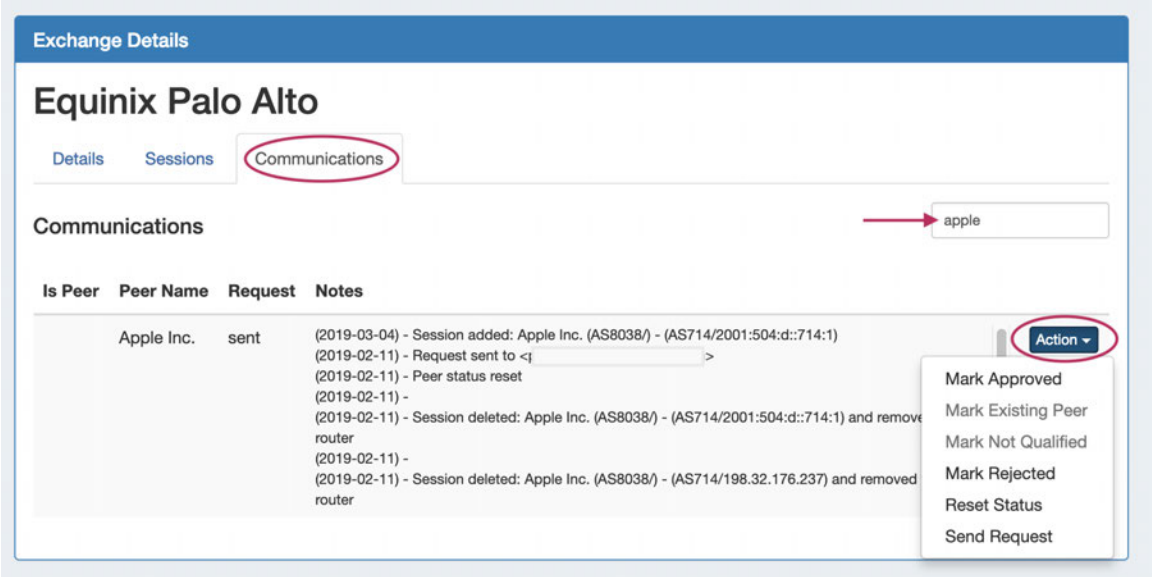



From here, you may:

- Add sessions to this exchange by clicking "Add Session".
- Click on the Peer Name to go to the **Peer Details** page for that Peer.
- Click on the Router Name to view **Router Details**.
- Manage the session by clicking on the "GoTo" Arrow button at the right side of the list to open the **Session Details**.

## Communications Tab:

The Communications tab is where you can manage communications actions and mark status of peers.




Filter the Communications list by typing the peer name into the filter box at the top left.

Available communication and status options are available in the Action Menu - available actions are dependent on current status, so not all actions are available at all times.

### Menu Actions

**Mark Approved:** Marks the peer as approved. Available after receiving a request response.

**Mark Existing Peer:** Marks a peer as an existing one and removes the email request options.

**Mark Not Qualified Peer:** Marks a peer as "not qualified" and removes the email request options.

**Mark Rejected:** Marks the peer as rejected. Available after receiving a request response.

**Reset Status:** Resets the status of the peer, opening up the options to mark peer as existing, not qualified, or to send email requests.

**Resend Request:** Resends the peering request.

**Send Request:** Sends an initial peering request email to the peering coordinator. The email template pre-populates data based on peeringdb data (To address, Subject line and Peering exchange information). You have the chance to edit the email prior to sending.

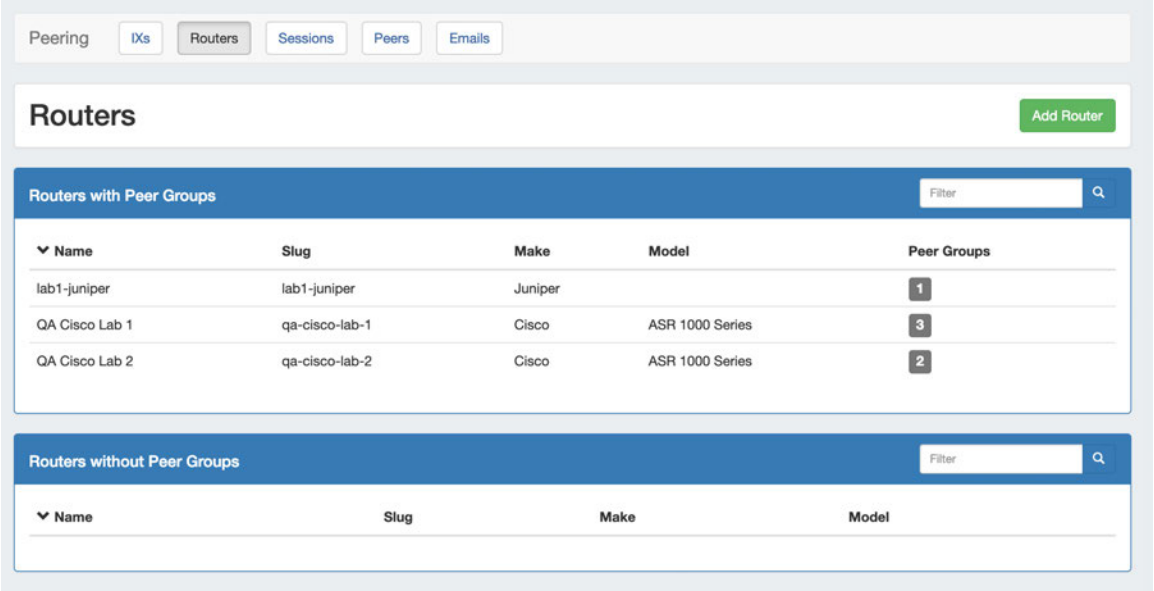
Actions taken from this menu will be logged and display in the "Notes" field of the Communications list. If a Peering Email account is set up in ProVision and used to send Peering Requests from this menu, the emails will be accessible in ProVision in the Peering  Emails Tab  Sent Folder. See Peering Emails for additional information.

# Additional Information

- Peering
- Peering Routers
- Peering Sessions
- Managing Peers
- Peering Emails

# Peering Routers

# Peering Routers




The **Routers** subtab is where routers may be added and managed. Routers are divided into two lists - those with Peer Groups, and those without.

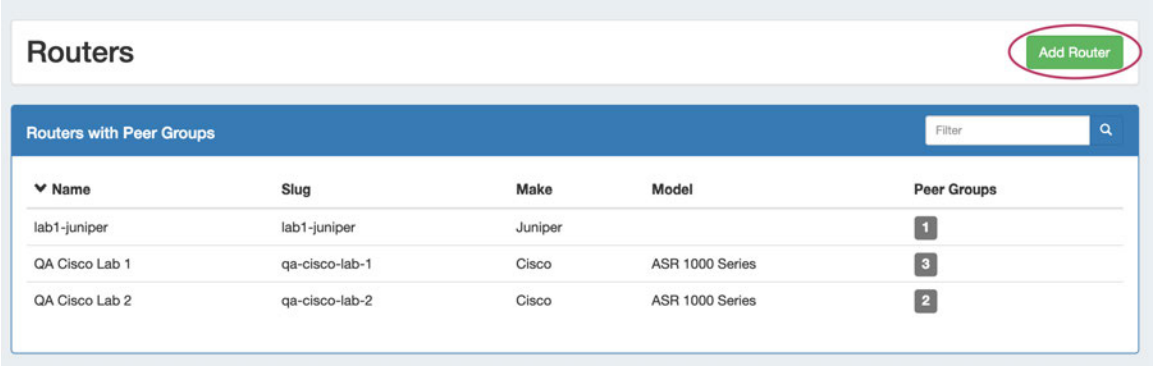
From here, you can filter the router list, click on any router name to go to the **Router Details** page, or "Add Router" to add a new router.


- Peering Routers
- Working with Peering Routers
  - Add a Router
    - Router Details Page
      - Edit Router
      - Edit Peer Groups
      - Router Sessions
  - Additional Information

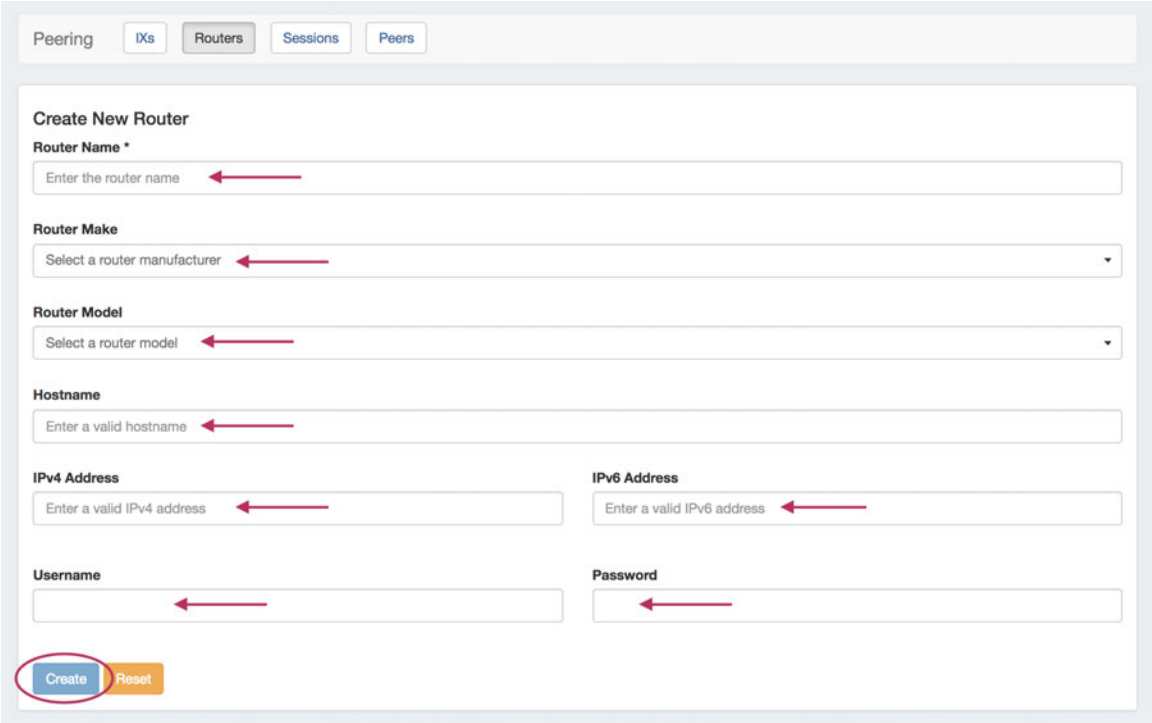

# Working with Peering Routers

## Add a Router

Add a new router by clicking the "Add Router" button, which will direct to a page to input the router details.



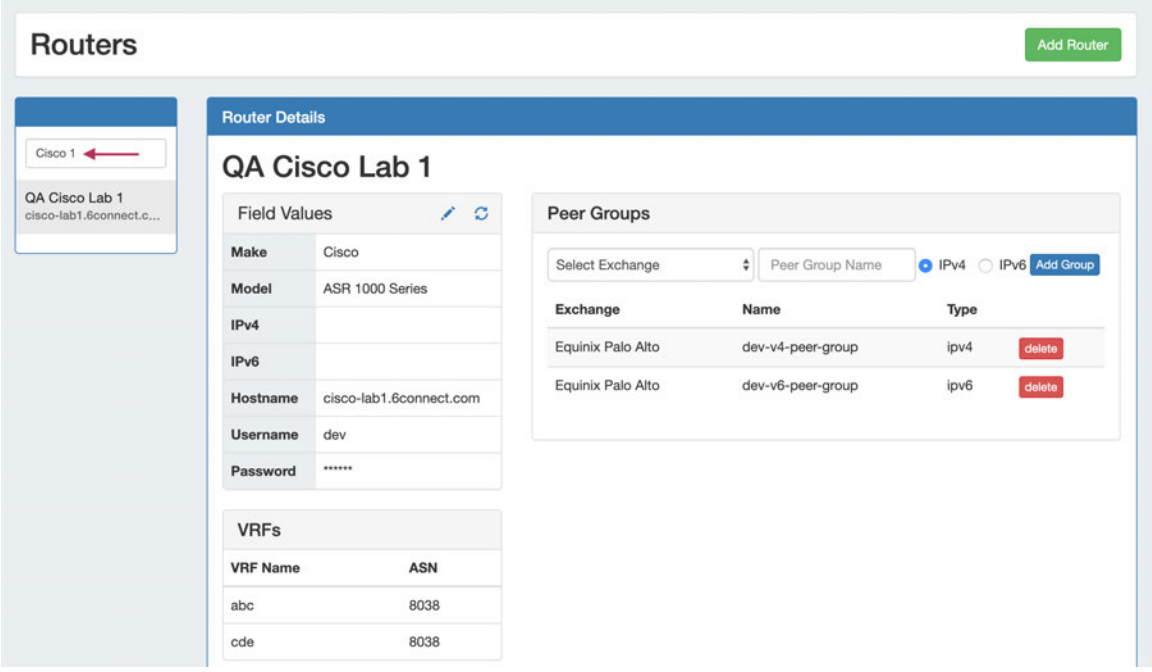
Enter in router details: Name, Make, Model, Hostname, IP address(es), and credentials. When done, click "Create".




The Router will be added to the Router list, and can be managed from the router details page.

## Router Details Page

Clicking on a router entry in the router list will open the router details page.



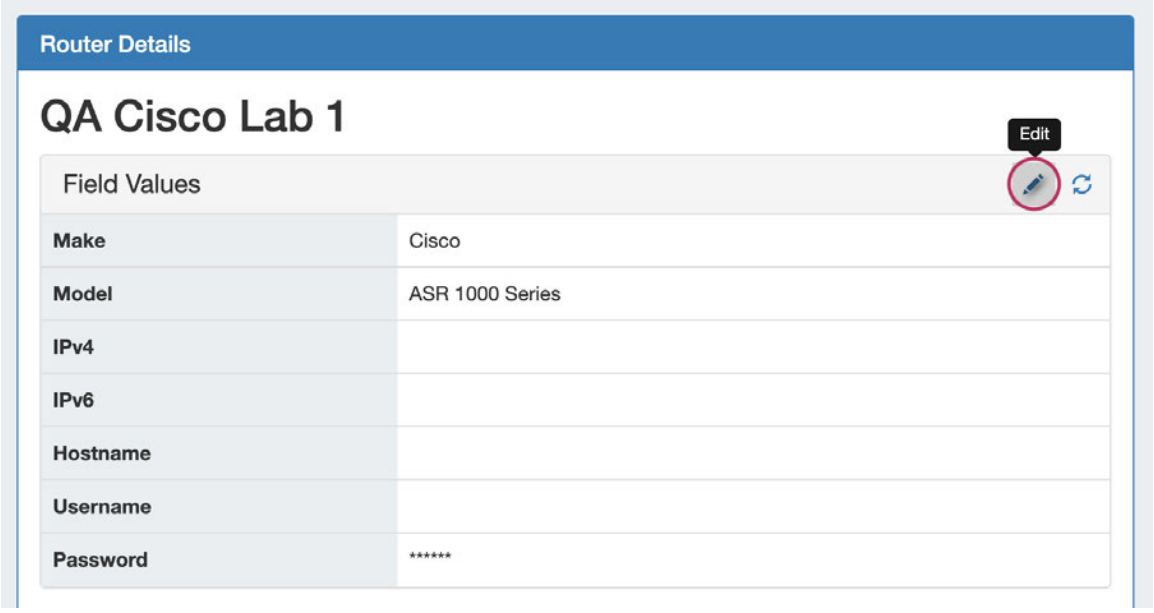

From here, routers may be added as well, or you can use the filterable list in the left sidebar to select a router to view.

The router details area gives the basic router information.

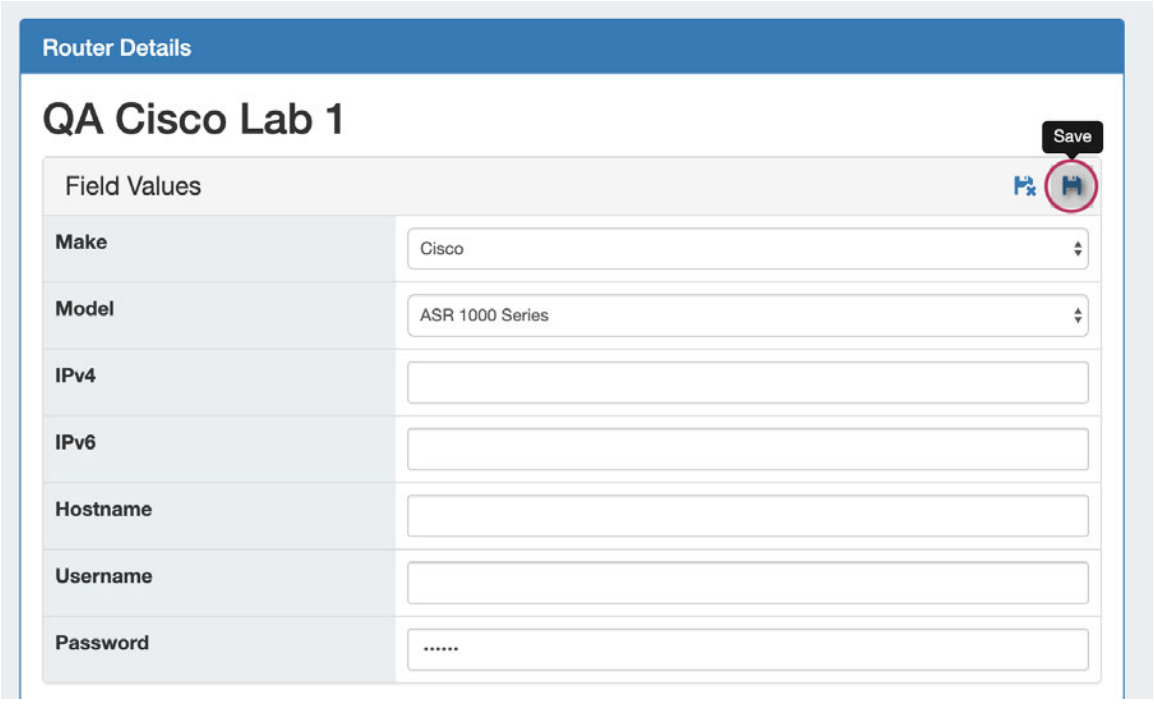
## Edit Router

A Router's Make, Model, IP address, Hostname, Username, and Password may  be edited from the Peering Router Details page.

To edit a router field, click the "Edit" icon (pencil), and input the desired change.



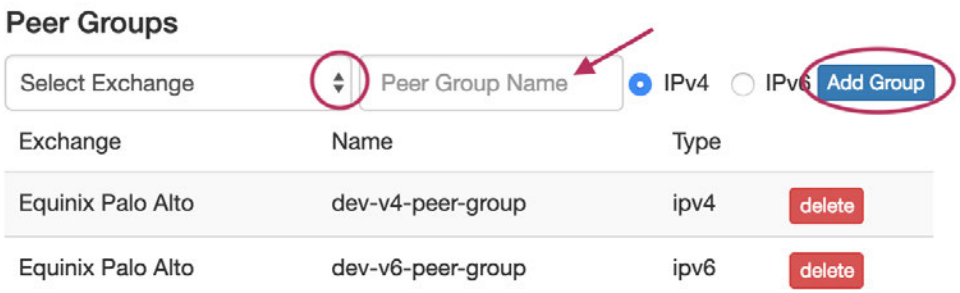

When complete, click the "Save" icon. You may cancel the edit by clicking the "Cancel" icon to the left of "Save".




Router information may also be edited from the Router's Resource Entry page and /or Field Gadget. By default, not all router fields may be visible or editable - this is to prevent editing critical router identification elements while sessions may exist for those routers.

## Edit Peer Groups

You may also add and delete and Peer Groups associated with the router - select the Exchange, Add the Peer Group Name, select the IP type, and click "Add Group".

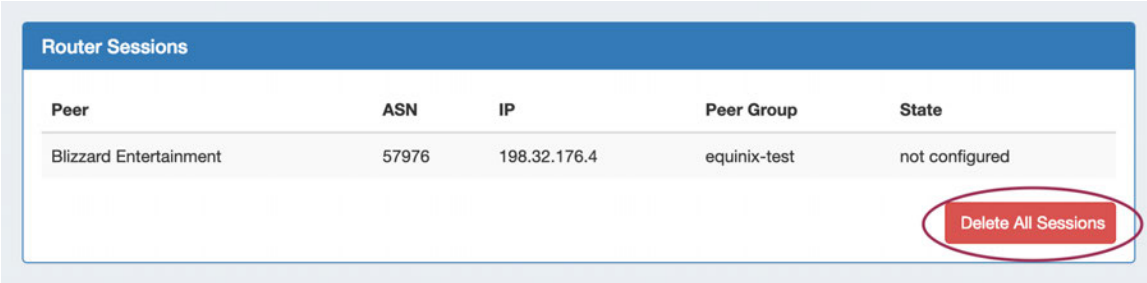



To delete Peer Groups, click "Delete" for the peer group to remove. Peer Groups may also be edited via the Peer Group gadget.

Note: Adding / Deleting Peer Groups only affects ProVision, it does not add or remove from from the router itself.

## Router Sessions

View all ProVision sessions associated with a router by going to that router's detail page and scrolling down to the "Router Sessions" section. Clicking on any session will open up the Session Details for that session.



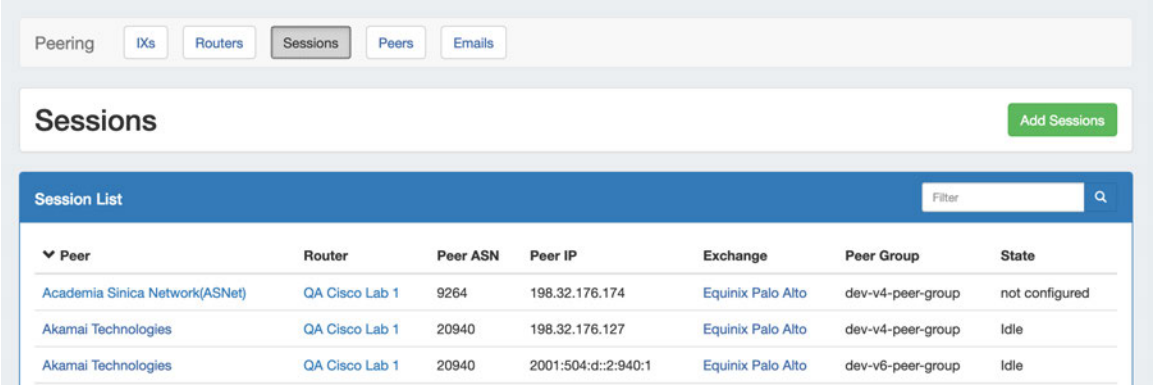

Delete all sessions in ProVision for the router by clicking "Delete All Sessions" under Router Sessions.

# Additional Information

- Peering
- Peering Exchanges
- Peering Sessions
- Managing Peers
- Peering Emails

# Peering Sessions

# Peering Sessions




The **Sessions** subtab is where current sessions may be added, managed, and updated.

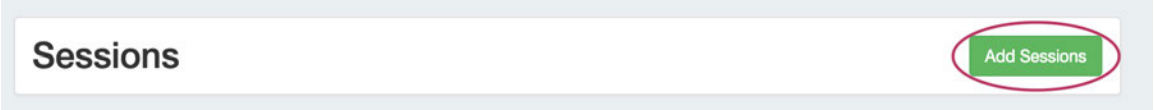
The **Session List** shows all current sessions in ProVision, and their current information and session state. Update the session states for all sessions by clicking the "Update Session States" button, or manage individual sessions by clicking on the row for the desired session.


- Peering Sessions
- Working with Peering Sessions
  - Add a Session
    - Add Session Information
    - Select or Add Destination
  - Manage a Session (The Session Details Page)
    - Session Details Actions
  - Additional Information


# Working with Peering Sessions

## Add a Session

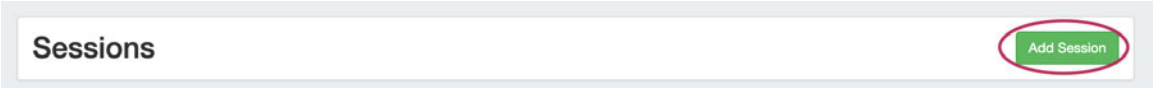
Add a new session by clicking the "Add Session" button.

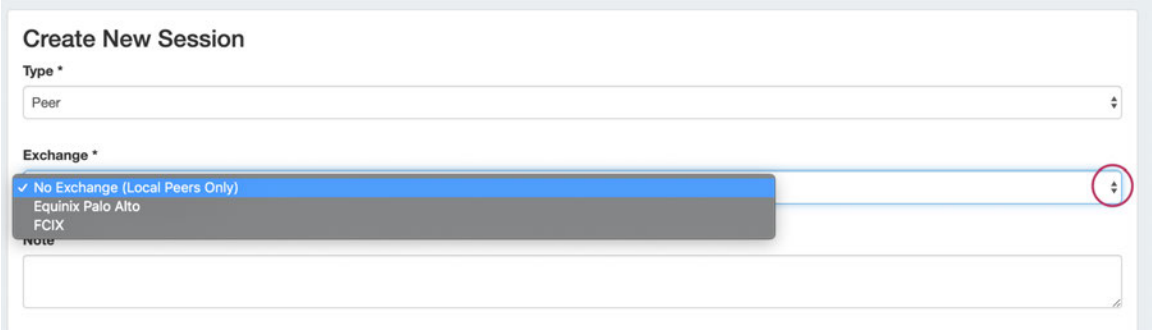



### Add Session Information

Click "Add Session" from the Peering  Sessions sub-tab.

In the Create New Session Form, type the session information, selecting the appropriate exchange type for the planned Peer. If using a Local Peer, "No Exchange" is an available option.

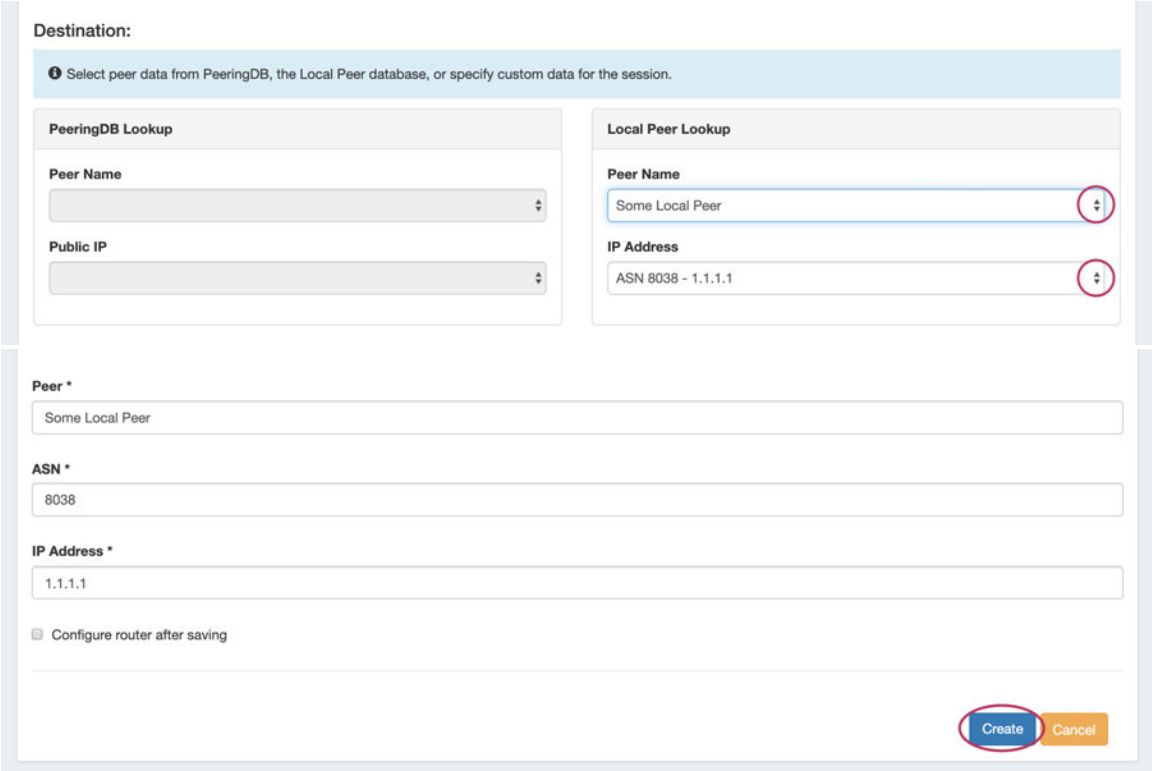





## Select or Add Destination

Under the **Destination** section, select or type in information for a peer. You may add Peer information from any of the three available methods:

- Use PeeringDB Lookup to select a PeeringDB Peer (the destination fields will be automatically populated).
- Look up an existing Local Peer under "Local Peer Lookup" by selecting the peer name and IP address (the destination fields will be automatically populated).
- Manually add a new Local or Custom Peer, by directly typing the Peer Name, ASN, and IP in the Destination fields.

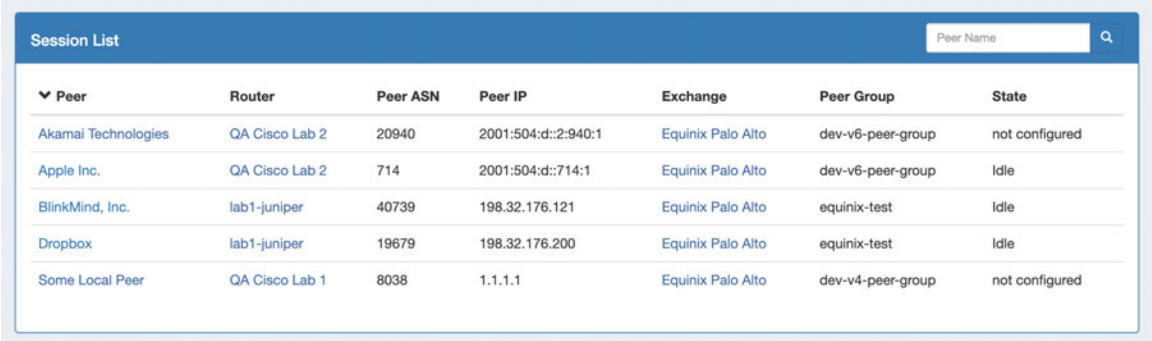



After selecting the Peer Destination information, you have the option of configuring the router immediately after saving. When done, click the "Create" button.

If "Configure router after saving" is selected, the router will configure immediately after session creation and automatically load the session page when done.

While Configuring, you may either wait for the configure to complete and automatically load the session details page, or immediately view the details by clicking "View Session" while the configure continues in the background.

The new Session will be added to the Session List.

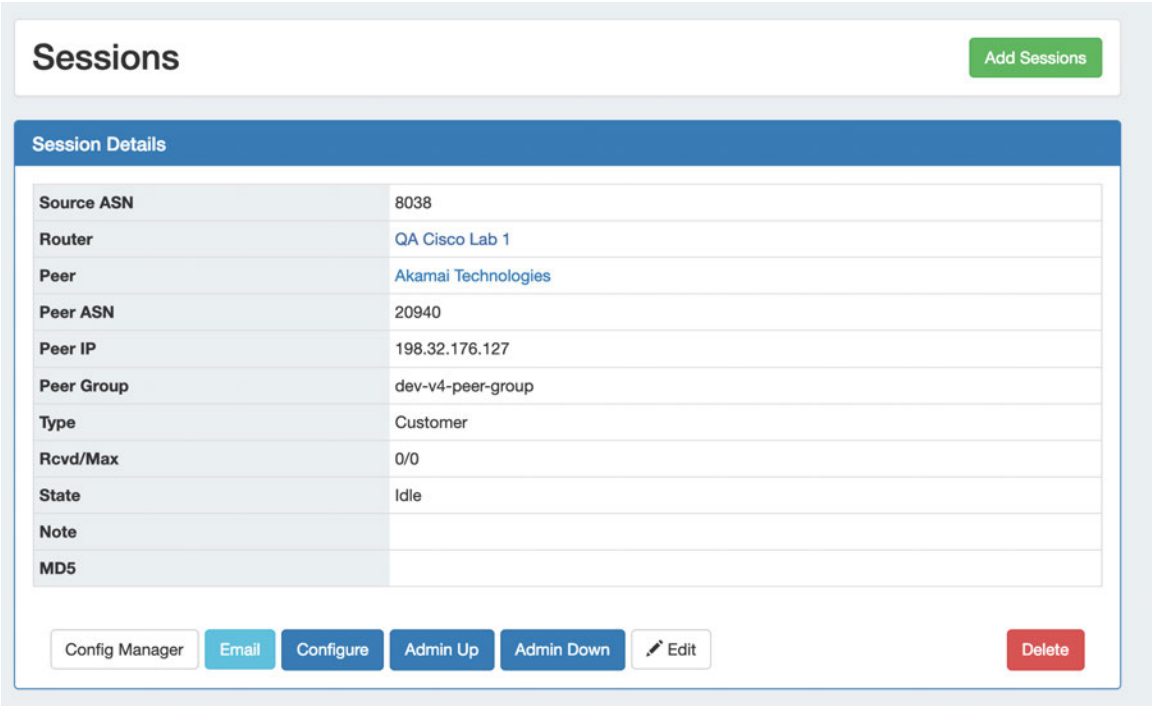



| Peer | Router | Peer ASN | Peer IP | Exchange | Peer Group | State |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Akamai Technologies | QA Cisco Lab 2 | 20940 | 2001:504:d::2:940:1 | Equinix Palo Alto | dev-v6-peer-group | not configured |
| Apple Inc. | QA Cisco Lab 2 | 714 | 2001:504:d::714:1 | Equinix Palo Alto | dev-v6-peer-group | Idle |
| BlinkMind, Inc. | lab1-juniper | 40739 | 198.32.176.121 | Equinix Palo Alto | equinix-test | Idle |
| Dropbox | lab1-juniper | 19679 | 198.32.176.200 | Equinix Palo Alto | equinix-test | Idle |
| Some Local Peer | QA Cisco Lab 1 | 8038 | 1.1.1.1 | Equinix Palo Alto | dev-v4-peer-group | not configured |

# Manage a Session (The Session Details Page)

Clicking on a Session entry from any Session List, or clicking "View Session" after creating a session, will open the Session details page.

From here, new session may be created by clicking "Add Sessions" if desired, but it is primarily for session management. You may also click on the Router link to view the Router Details page, or the Peer Name for Peer Details.




The Session may be manually configured via "Config Manager", or automatically via "Configure".

"Email" opens an Email communications form, with data automatically generated from PeeringDB. Other available tasks include Admin Up/Down, Edit, and Delete session.

## Session Details Actions

**Edit:** Edit session information such as Type, Prefixes, Notes or MD5.

**Configure:** 1-click configure which uses default router configuration, username, and password settings.

**Config Manager:** The Config Manager allows for custom configuration commands and user-level username/ password to be entered prior to pushing the config. This is a one time use configuration.

**Email:** Brings up the NOC (Network Operations Center), Policy, Technical, or other preset email template. The email template pre-populates data based on peeringdb data (To address, Subject line and Peering exchange information). You have the chance to edit the email prior to sending.

**Admin Up:** Ups a bgp session without removing it or adding it to the config.

**Admin Down:** Downs a bgp session without removing it or adding it to the config. On Cisco, Admin Down moves the session to Idle (Admin) state, on Juniper it deactivates the session.

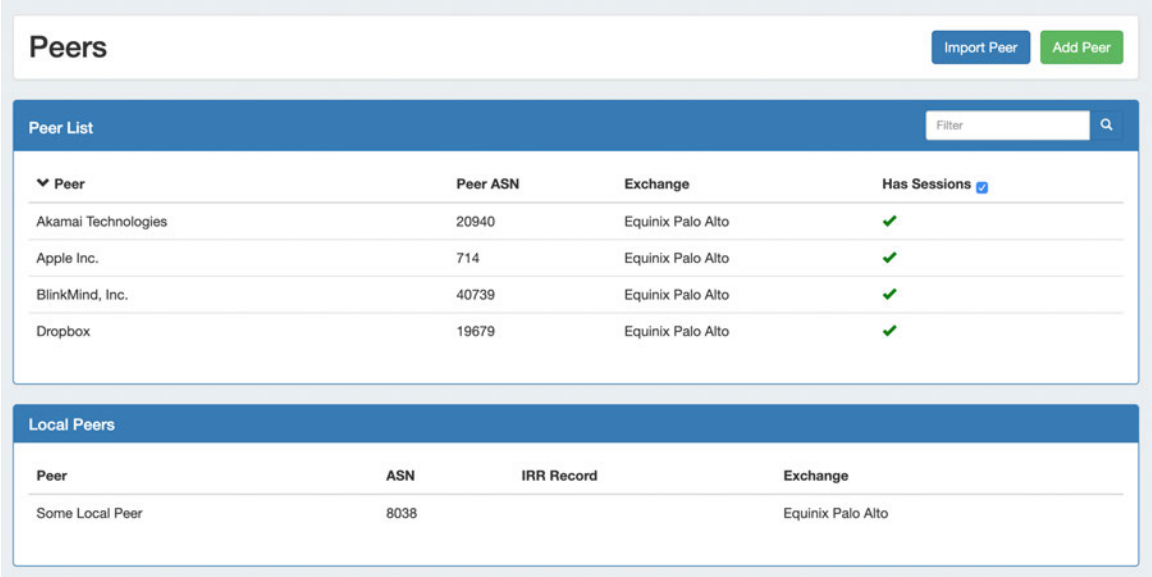
**Delete:** Sessions of type "Peer" are removed from the router when deleted in ProVision. Other sessions will only be removed from the sessions list in ProVision.

# Additional Information

- Peering
- Peering Exchanges
- Peering Routers
- Managing Peers
- Peering Emails

# Managing Peers

# Peers




The **Peers** subtab lists existing peers in ProVision. Here, you can add new peers and view peer details. ProVision supports Peer lookup from PeeringDB, as well as creation of "Local Peers". Local or custom Peers that are 'private' or not registered with PeeringDB may also be used for session creation.


- Peers
- Working with Peers
  - Peer List
  - Add Peers
    - Add PeeringDB Peer (Import Lookup)
    - Add Peer via Configure / Configure Multiple Sessions
    - Add a Local Peer
    - Add Peer via Session
      - Add Session Information
      - Select or Add Destination
  - Peer Details Page
  - Additional Information

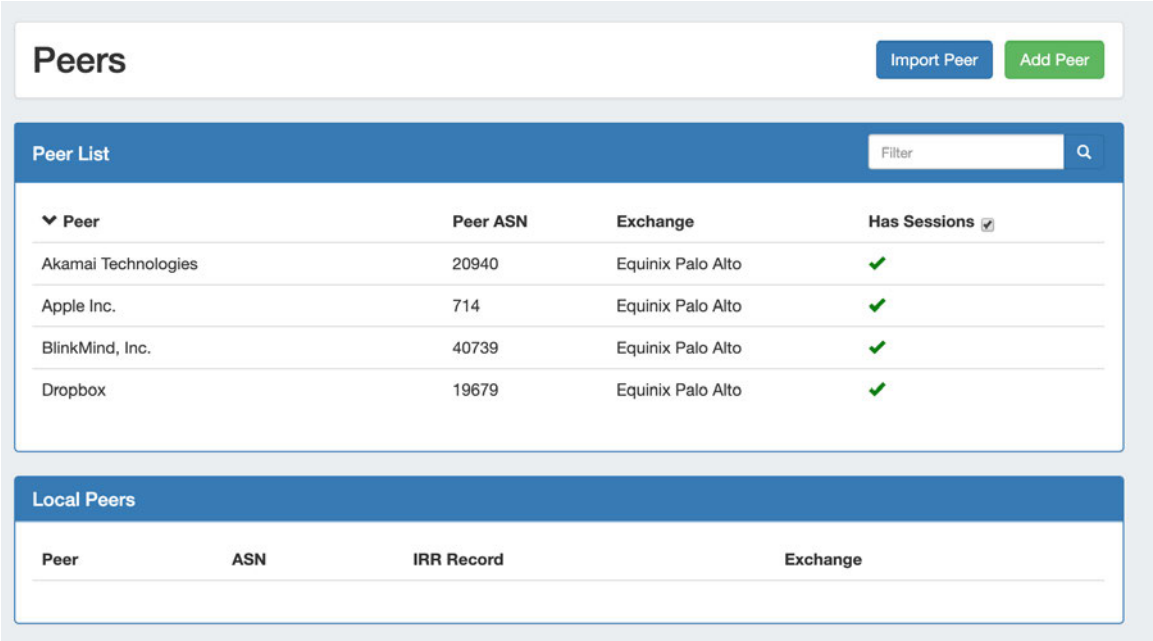

# Working with Peers

## Peer List

The Peer list shows peers currently in ProVision, their ASN, associated exchange, and whether session exist.

Filter the peer list by typing all or part of a peer name into the "Filter" text box in the right side of the list header, and the list will narrow down to matching Peers.

You may also sort by any field by clicking on the column name in the header.




Organizations will show as Peers in this list if:

- There is an existing session in Provision with the organization set as the destination - applies to both "Add Session" and "Add Peer" Configure Sessions
- The organization is marked "Existing Peer" in Exchange communications

Manually added Local Peers will show in the Local Peer list, below the standard Peer List.

# Add Peers

Adding a Peer can be done via many methods in ProVision, depending on whether the peer is from PeeringDB, Local, and what the peer/session status is.

In general, Peers will added from either:

- PeeringDB through "Import Peer", session creation, or exchange communications
- Local / Custom creation through "Add Peer" or session creation

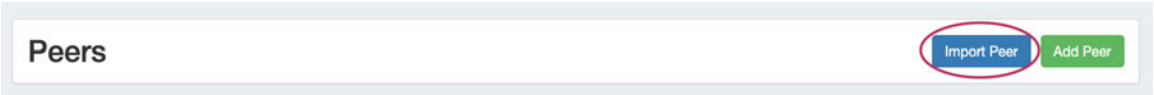
The following approaches will result in a Peer being added into ProVision:

- Create a session for a peer, selecting the Peer from PeeringDB options available under the Session tab "Add Session" form.
- Create a session for a local or custom peer, selecting an existing local peer or manually entering a custom destination in the Session tab "Add Session" form.
- Manually create a Local Peer, from "Add Peer".
- Import/search for a Peer from PeeringDB, then add the peer by configuring multiple sessions.
- Add a peer without creating sessions by marking the peer as "existing" under ExchangeCommunications. The Peer will show in the Peer List, but no sessions will exist for the peer until they are created in ProVision.

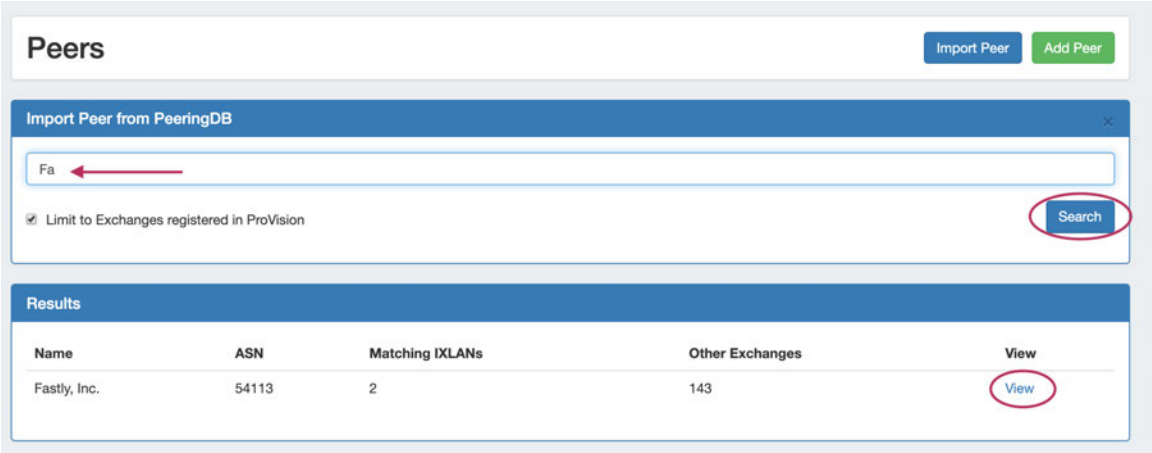
## Add PeeringDB Peer (Import Lookup)

Peers may be added via finding a peer from PeeringDB to import,

You can search for Peers by clicking "Import Peer" on the **Peers** or **Peer Details** pages.



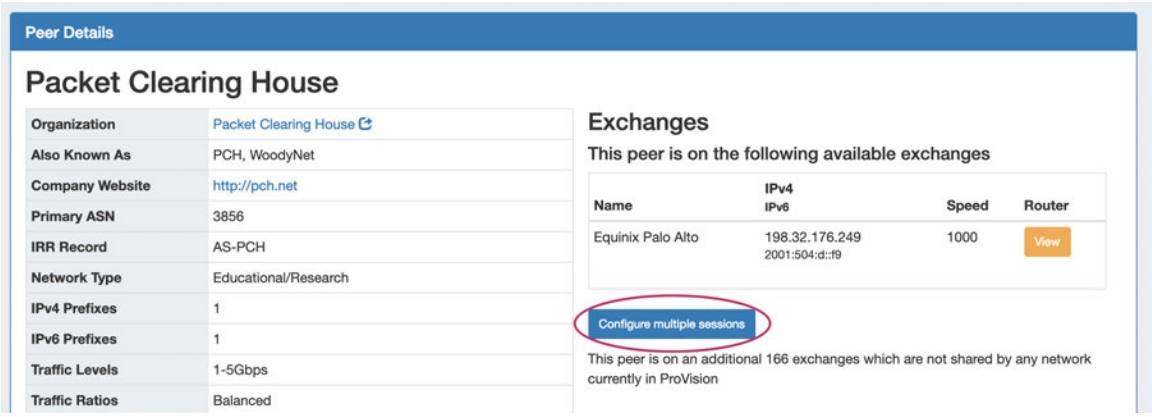

The "Import Peer from PeeringDB" search module will open. Enter all or part of the peer name, then click "Search". The results will show in a list below.



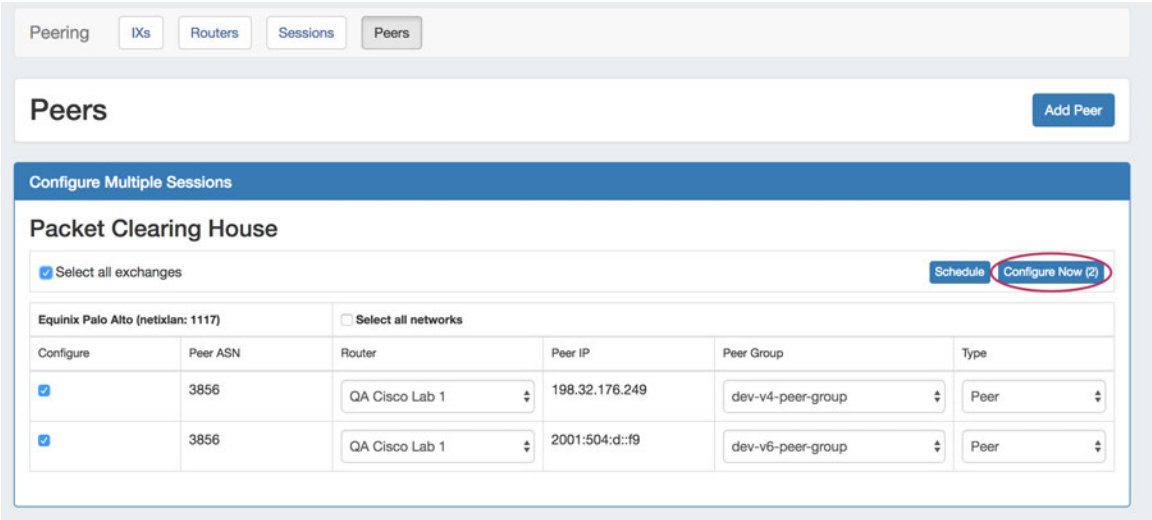

From the results list, click "View" - this will open the **Peer Details** page for the Peer, where you can view the peer's information, available exchanges, existing sessions, or add the peer via configuring multiple sessions.

## Add Peer via Configure / Configure Multiple Sessions

From the **Peer Details page**, click "Configure Multiple Sessions".




Clicking the configure multiple buttons opens a page where you may select and set up multiple sessions for that peer.

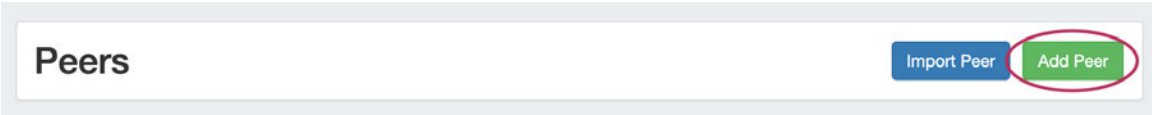



Select the desired exchanges, router, peer group, and type, and then choose to either "Configure Now" or Schedule the config to run later via the **Scheduler** Tab.

Configuring sessions here will create new sessions, and add the peer used to the Peer List.

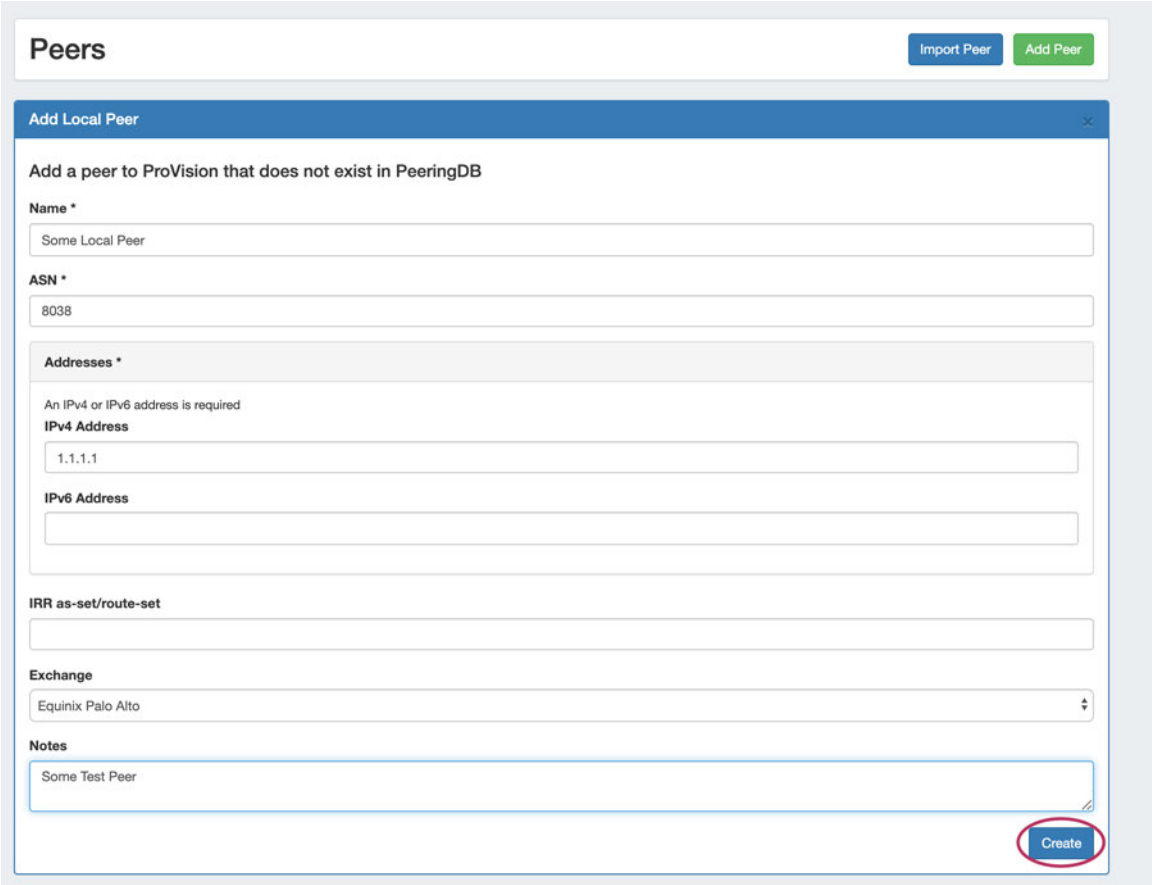
## Add a Local Peer

Add a new local peer by going to the **Peering** Tab  Peers subtab, and clicking "Add Peer".

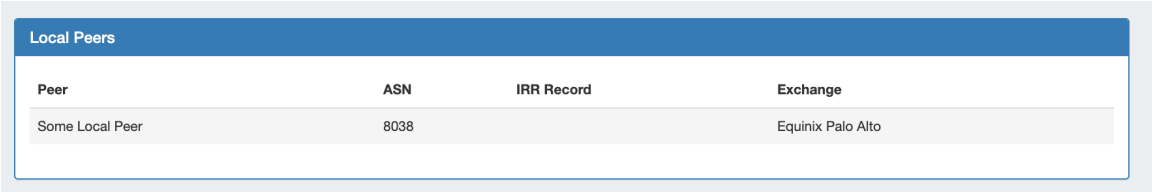



In the "Add Local Peer" form, enter the Peer details including Name, ASN, IPv4 or IPv6 Address, Route-Set, select an Exchange Option, and add notes if desired.

When finished, click "Create".




The Peer will be added to the "Local Peers" list, and be available to select while creating a session.



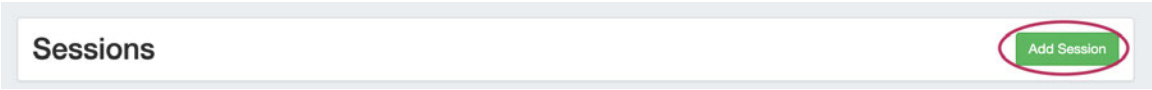

## Add Peer via Session

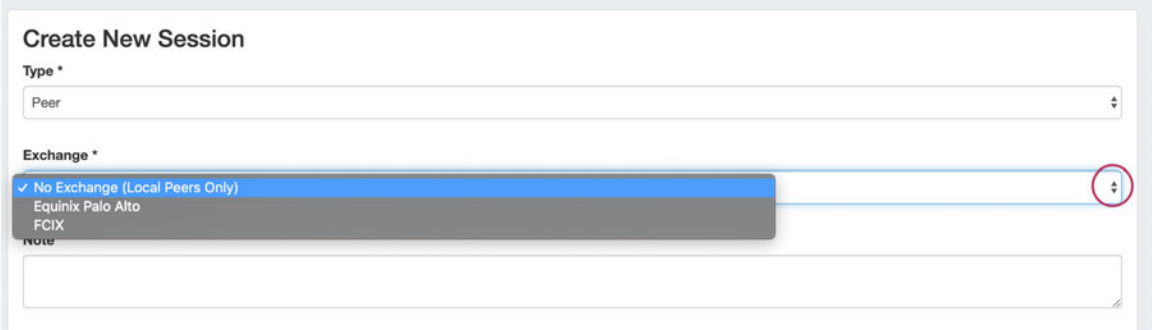
New Peers are added when creating a session with that Peer. While creating a new Session, you may select a PeeringDB Peer, an existing Local Peer, or create a new custom Peer.

## Add Session Information

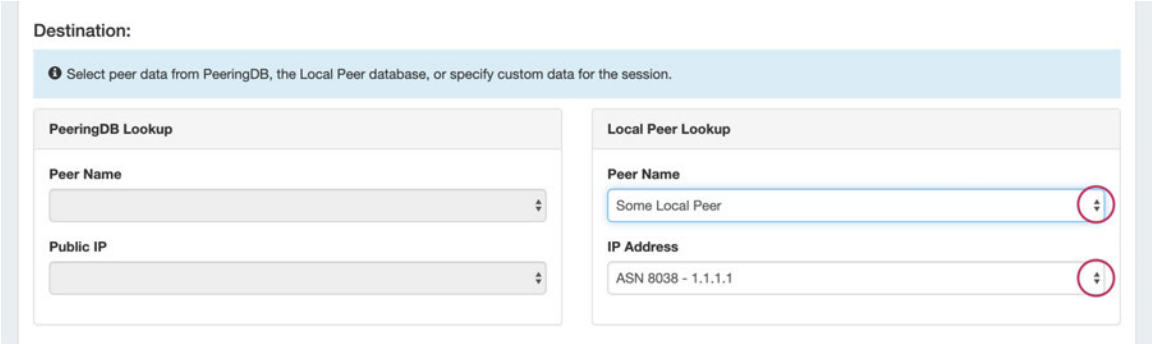
Click "Add Session" from the Peering  Sessions sub-tab.

In the Create New Session Form, type the session information, selecting the appropriate exchange type for the planned Peer. If using a Local Peer, "No Exchange" is an available option.



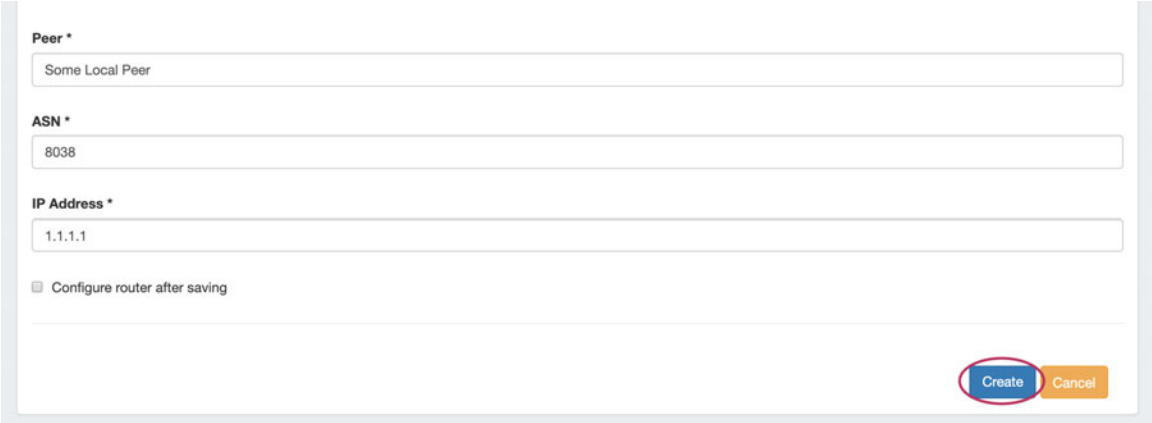




## Select or Add Destination



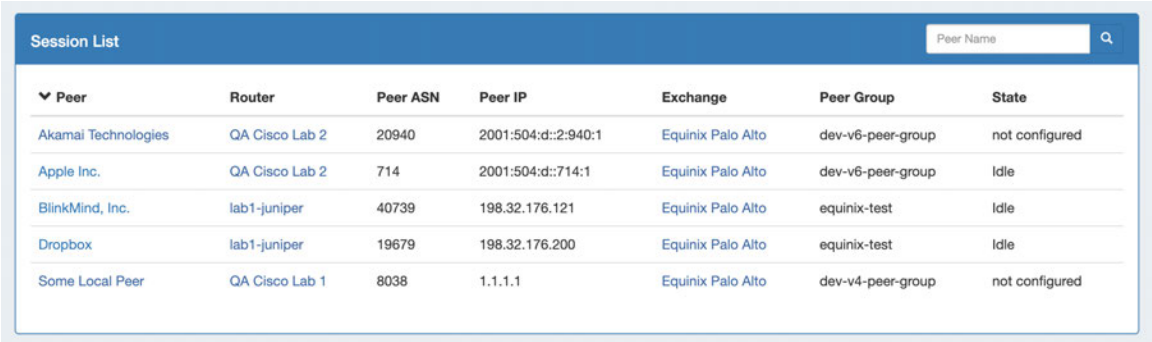

Under the **Destination** section, select or type in information for a peer. You may add Peer information from any of the three available methods:

- Use PeeringDB Lookup to select a PeeringDB Peer (the destination fields will be automatically populated).
- Look up an existing Local Peer under "Local Peer Lookup" by selecting the peer name and IP address (the destination fields will be automatically populated).
- Manually add a new Local or Custom Peer, by directly typing the Peer Name, ASN, and IP in the Destination fields.



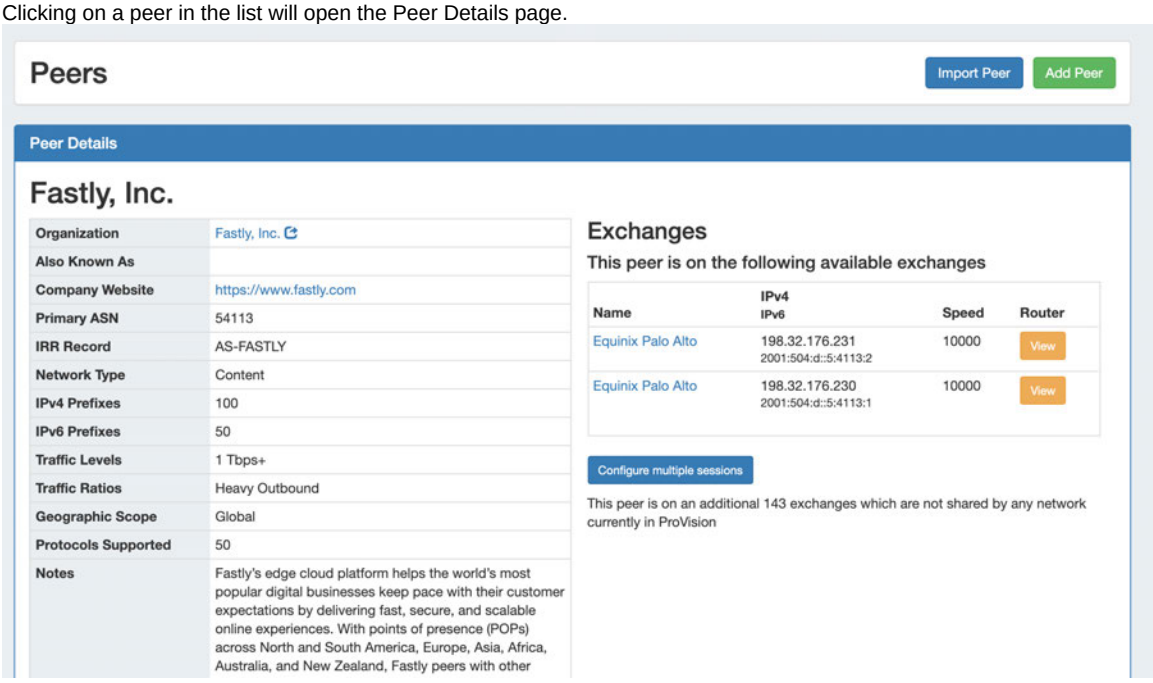

When complete, click "Create".

The new Session will be added to the Session List.




## Peer Details Page

Clicking on a peer in the list will open the Peer Details page.



From here, you can view details for the existing peer, including available exchanges and what routers you have available on that exchange. Additional, the peer may be added by configuring new sessions via Configure Multiple Sessions.

Existing sessions for the Peer may be viewed, managed and deleted under "Sessions".

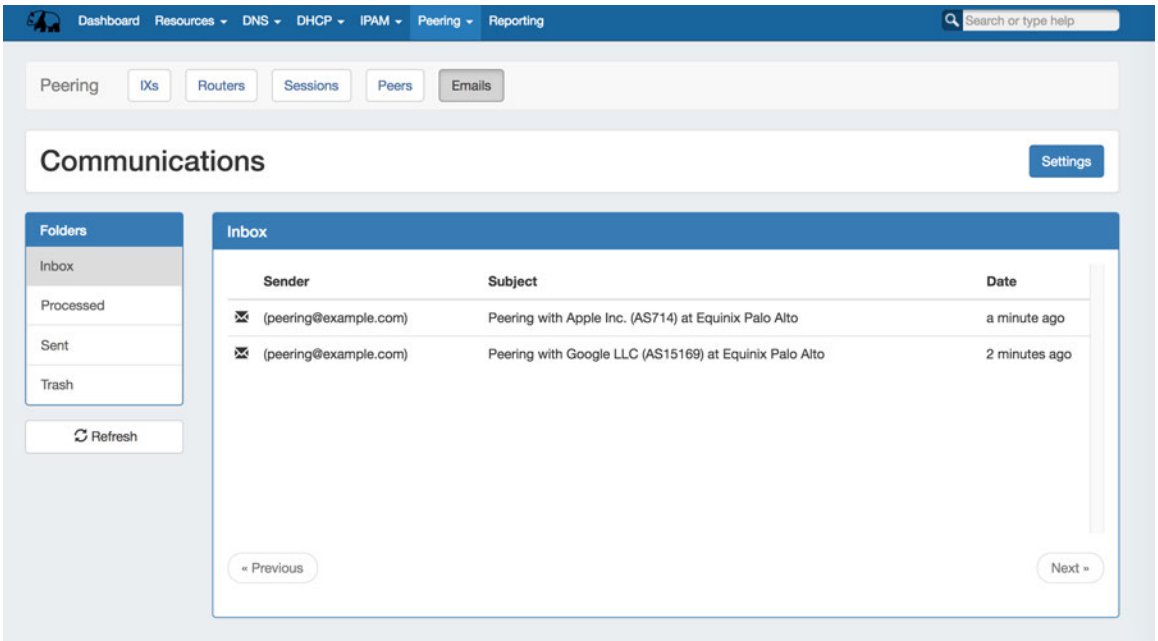
To edit, manage, or delete a single session, click on the session listing to open the Session detail page. All sessions under the Peer may be deleted by clicking "Delete All Sessions".

# Additional Information

- Peering
- Peering Exchanges
- Peering Routers
- Peering Sessions
- Peering Emails

# Peering Emails

# Peering Emails




The Peering **Email** subtab is an Admin-only page from which a company peering account can view and manage recent emails.

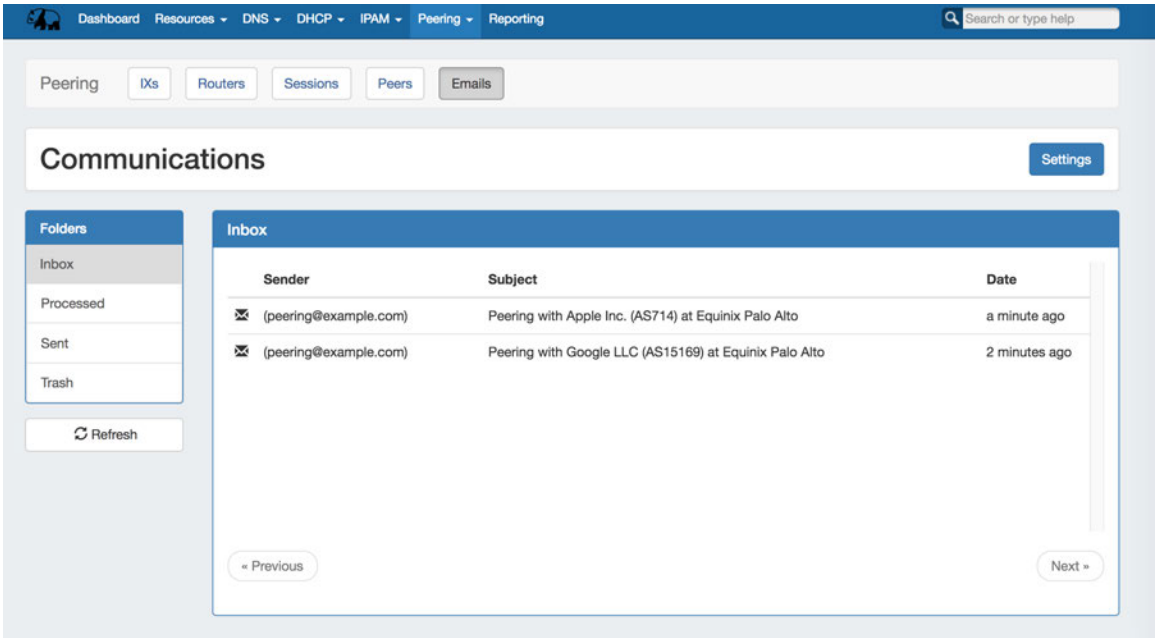
> The Peering Emails page is only accessible to Administrative users in the primary "Global Admins" User Group.
>
> Ensure that Peering Administrators using ProVision's Peering Emails area are included as members of that group for full access.


- Peering Emails
- Communications Page Overview
- Messages
  - Process a Message
  - Reply to a Message
  - Delete a Message
- Communications Settings
  - Add an Account
  - Edit or Delete an Existing Account
  - Additional Information


# Communications Page Overview

The Peering **Emails** subtab associates a single company peering email account (such as peering@company.com) with your ProVision instance, creating a 'shortcut' email system to keep on top of the most recent peering requests while in ProVision.

Here, you can load, view, and reply to emails received at that address, view requests sent from ProVision's Exchange Communications page, and process emails to associate the message with ProVision Peers.




Four folders are available to view, displayed on the left sidebar:

**Inbox:** Displays emails received at that address, barring any messages deleted from ProVision

**Processed:** Emails which have been associated ("Processed") with a ProVision Peer.

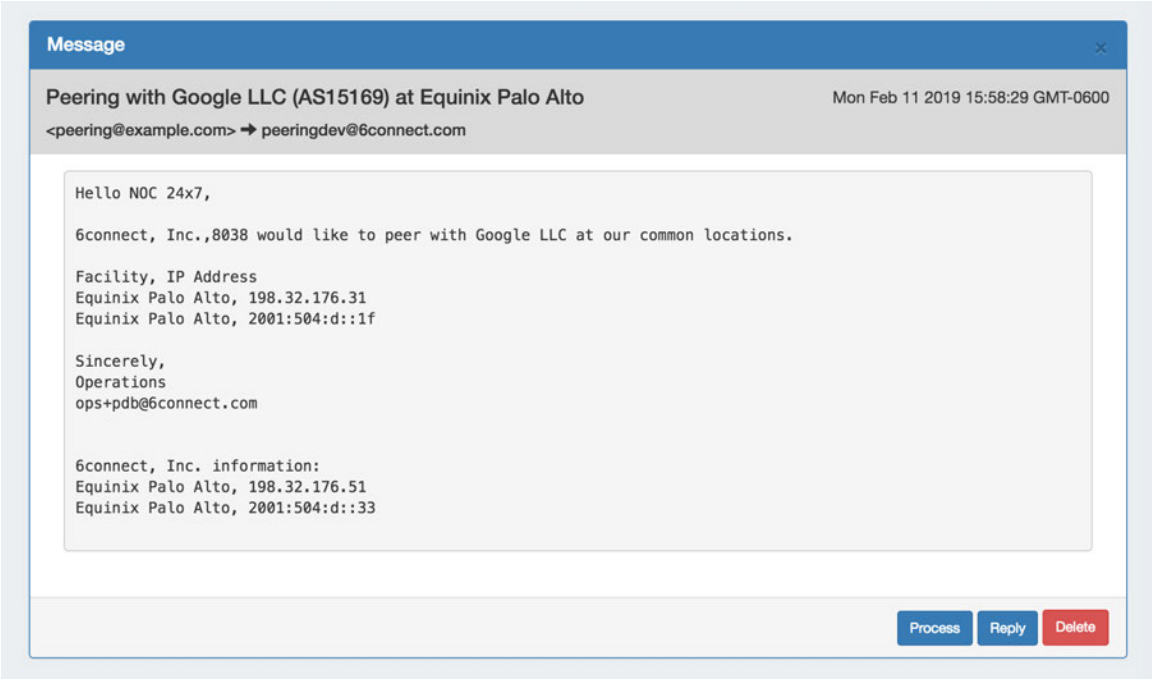
**Sent:** Emails sent from the set address from ProVision, either via "Reply" or from sending a peering request under "Exchange Details" Communications

**Trash:** Emails removed from ProVision folders - 'deleting' ProVision emails only affects what messages are loaded into the ProVision instance - your original messages remain intact on your original email server. So feel free to only keep only the emails relevant to peeringTo-Do list!

Messages are automatically checked for after 10 minutes, and refreshed when loading the page. When staying on the page for a period of time, you can manually check for and load new messages by clicking the "Refresh" button under the folder list.

# Messages

From any message folder, click on the message to view message details.

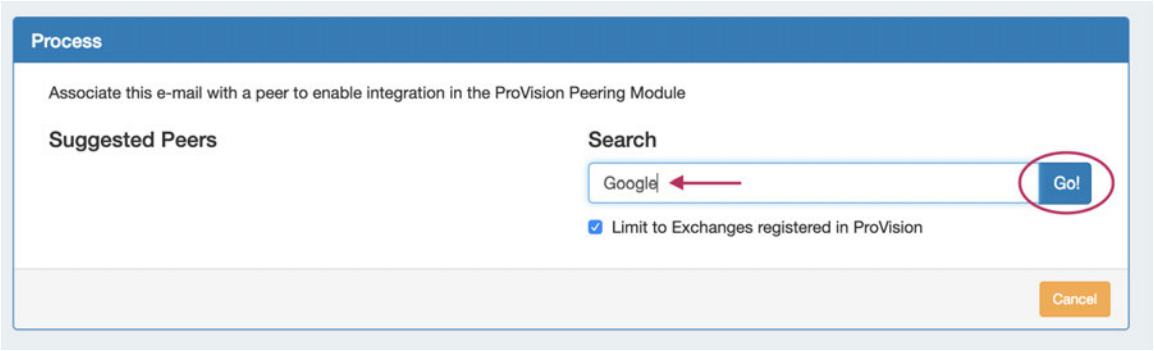



Three actions can be performed on messages: Process, Reply, or Delete.

## Process a Message

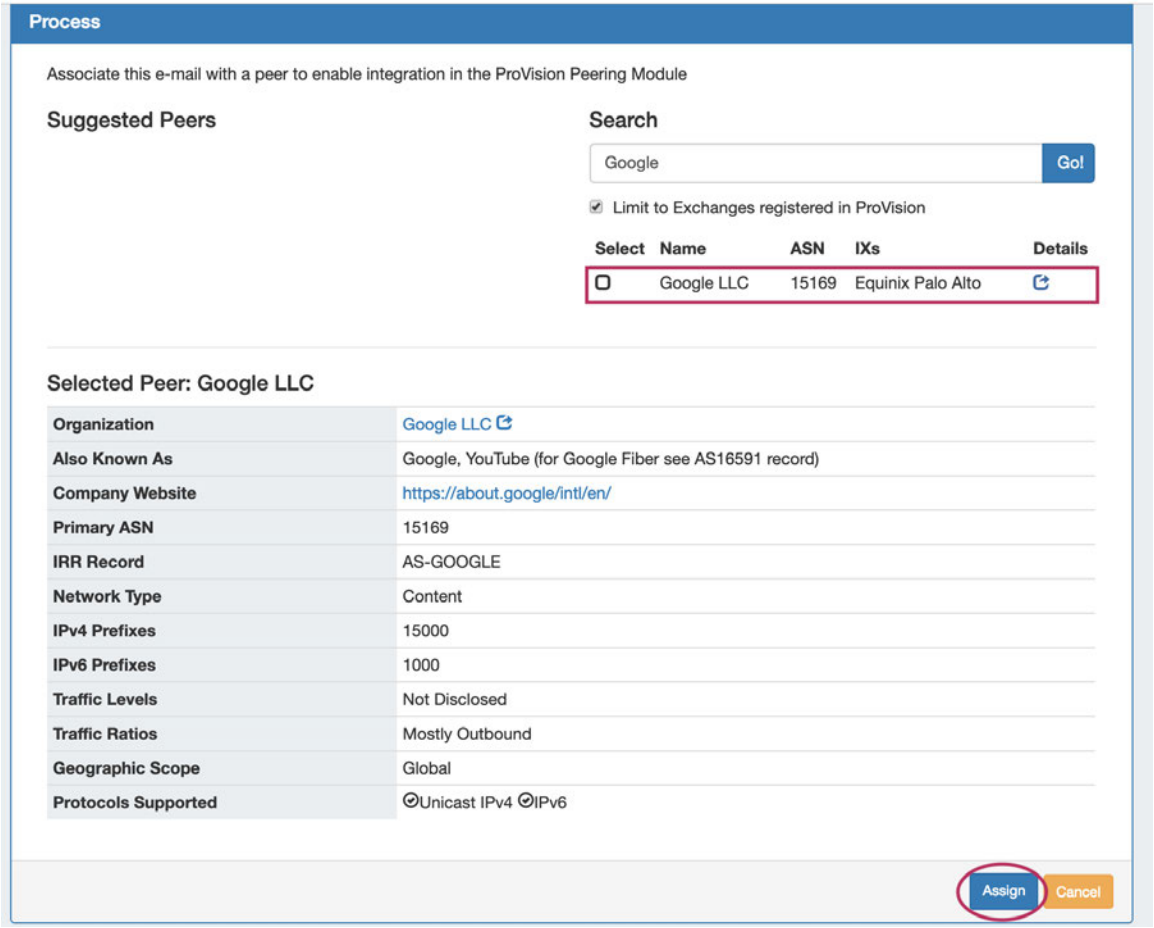
"Processing" a message in ProVision associates that message with a Peer, and moves it into the "Processed" message box. To do so, click "Process" on the message.

The "Process" email module open with a search field to select the Peer. Type in all or part of the peer name, then click "Go", or click "Cancel" if you want to skip the Processing and go back to the message.

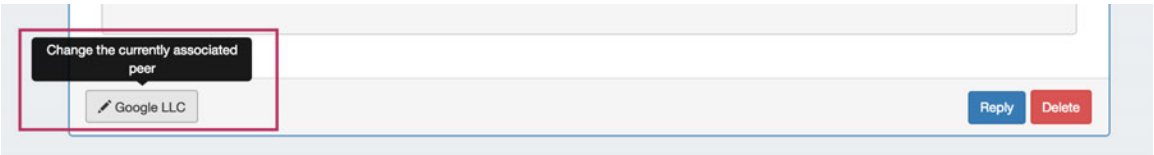



The search results for the peer will display under the search box.

Click on the Peer result that you wish to assign from the search results, then review the peer details to verify it is the correct Peer. When done, click "Assign".



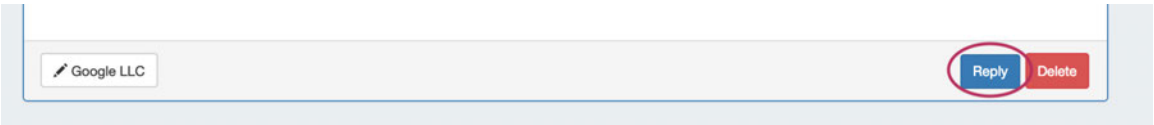

The Peer's name will be tagged to the bottom of the email message. If you need to change the associated Peer, you can click the tagged Peer to repeat the process and select a new Peer.



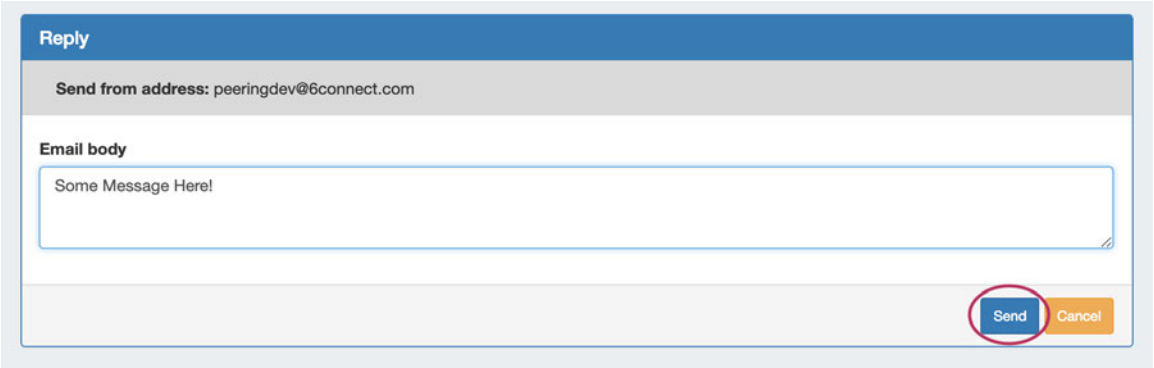

When done, the email will be move to the "processed" message box, to denote the message is associated with a peer.

## Reply to a Message

To reply to a message, from the message details click the "Reply" button at the bottom of the message.



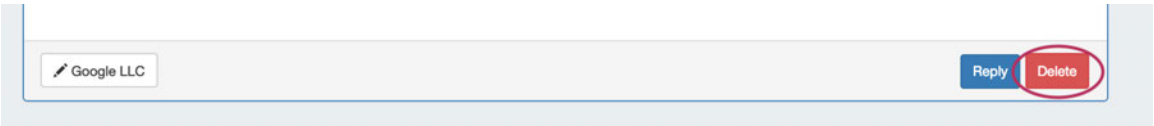

Type in your desired message reply, and click "Send".




The message reply will be sent to the original sender, and a copy will be saved in the "Sent" folder.

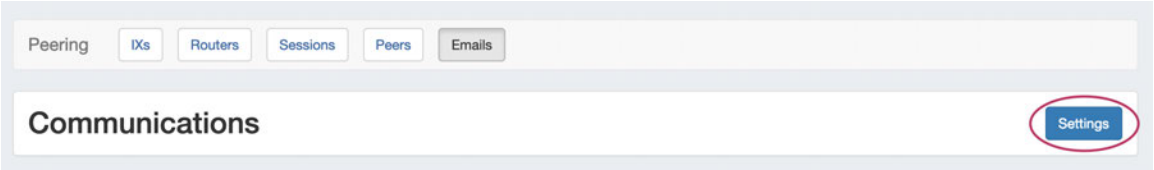
## Delete a Message

To delete a message from ProVision, click the "Delete" button at the bottom of the message. The message will be removed from the Provision inbox and placed in the "Trash" folder, but remains intact on the original email server.



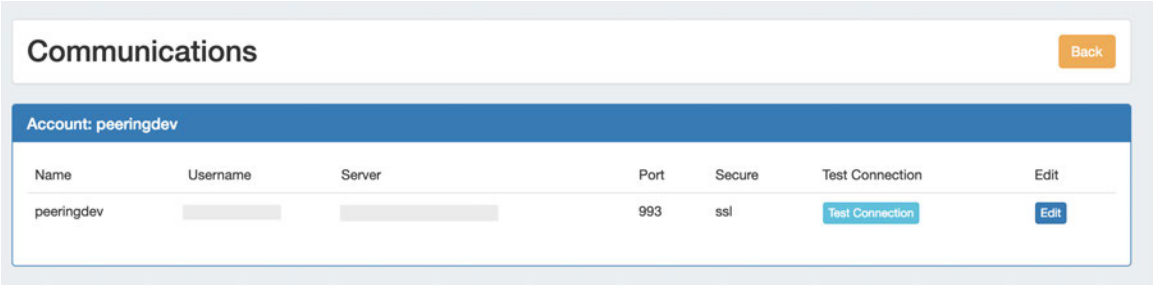

# Communications Settings

The "Settings" page allows you to set, edit, or delete the email account associated with ProVision. From the Email Tab, click "Settings".



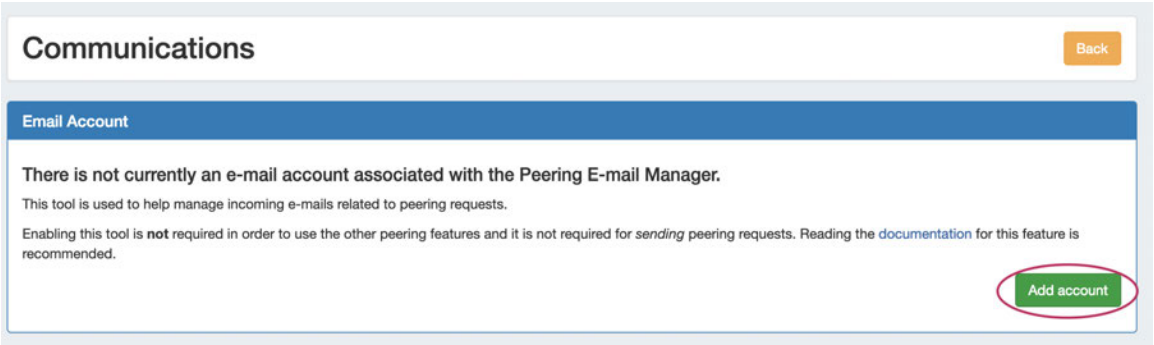

If no account is active, the option to add a new email account will be available.

Otherwise, if an account has already been set, details for the account will be visible as well as options to test or edit the account.

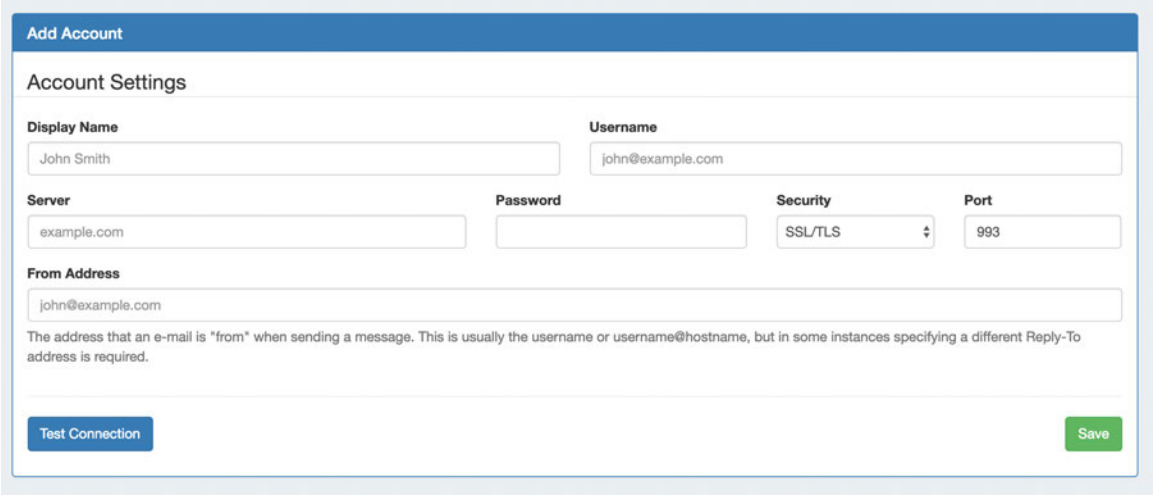


# Add an Account

If an account is not currently set, status information and and the option to add a new email account will be available. Click "Add Account".

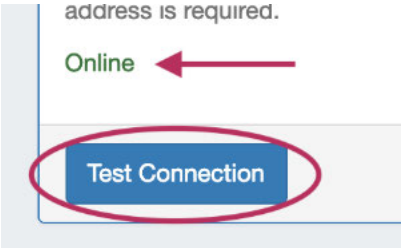



On the "Add Account" page, enter the account display name, email username/address, server, email password, and change the security and port settings if needed.



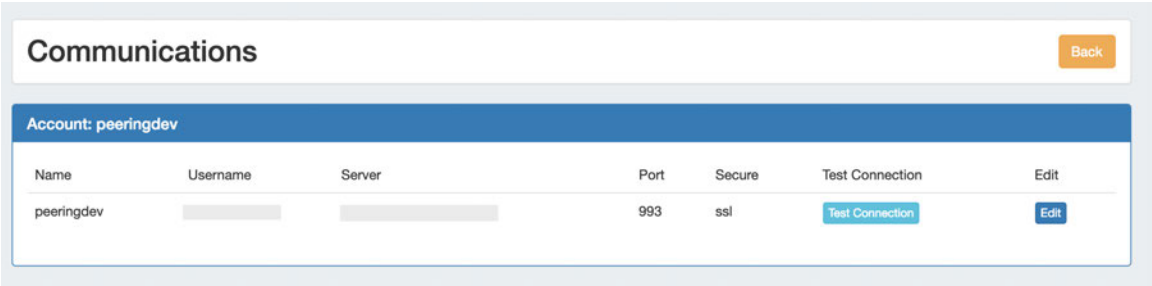

"From Address" is a field used if the email reply address is different than the username@serverhostname - in most cases, it will not be necessary.

When done, you can verify the information is correct by clicking "Test Connection" - if the account is valid and a connection succeeds, you will see a "Online" response.



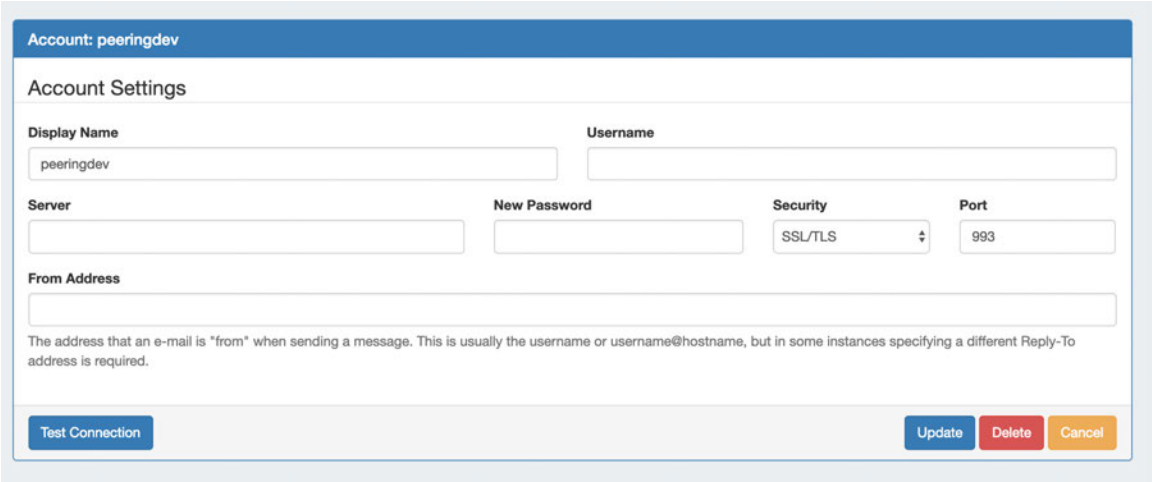

When done, click "Save", and the account information will display under "Settings" and the email folder will be available.

# Edit or Delete an Existing Account



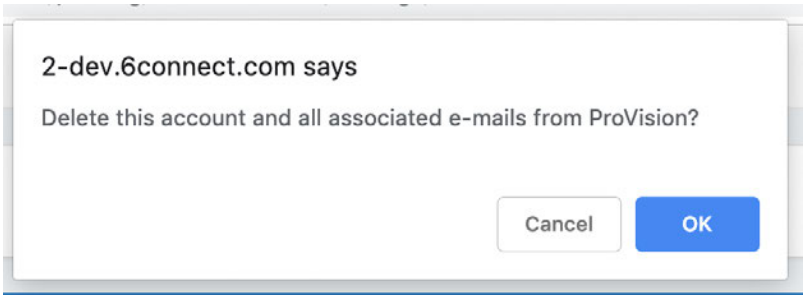

An existing account may have the connection tested by clicking "Test Connection" in Account Information. Additional Actions, such as editing account details or deleting the account from ProVision may be done by clicking "Edit" for the Account.

Click "Edit" to open the




Edit the account settings as needed, test the connection if desired, and click "Update".

Delete the account by clicking "Delete" - a confirmation message will appear confirming that the account will be deleted and all emails removed from the ProVision infterface - don't worry, the original emails stay fully intact on the email server.




# Additional Information

- Peering
- Peering Exchanges
- Peering Routers
- Peering Sessions
- Managing Peers

# Reporting

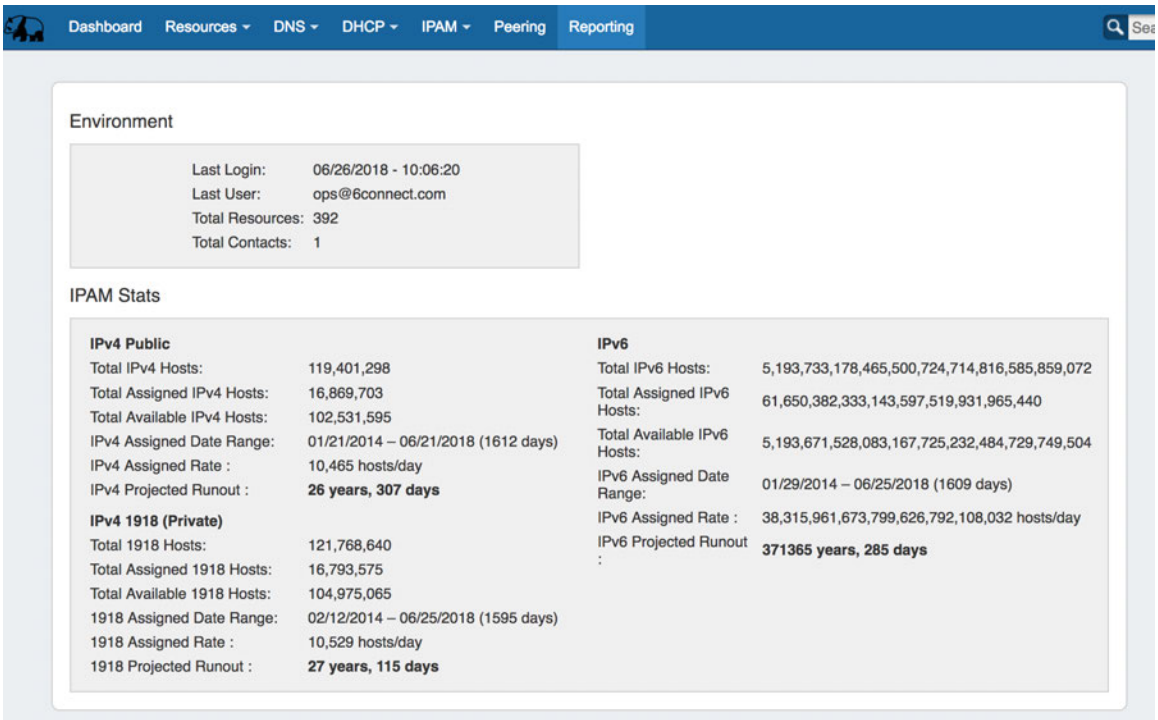
# Reporting

The ProVision **Reporting** tab provides an overview of program statistics, as well as a way to view and download activity information.


- Reporting
  - Stats
  - Reports
    - User Activity
    - Customer List
    - IPAM


## Stats

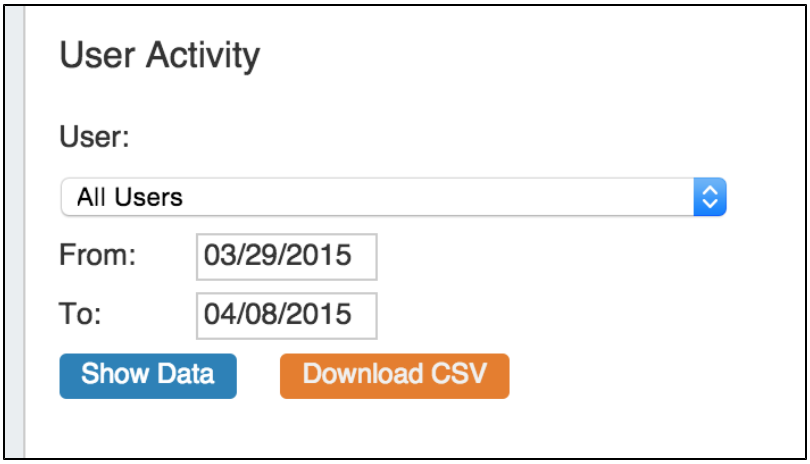
Items of interest provided under stats include most recent login, number of Resources, DNS zone breakdowns, IPAM hosts, and estimated IP runout time.




## Reports

### User Activity

To run a User Activity report, simply select the user from the drop down menu and a desired date range for the report. Clicking on "Show Data" will show the User, IP, Timestamp, and Action in a table at the bottom of the page. To export the data to .csv, simply select "Download CSV".




## Customer List

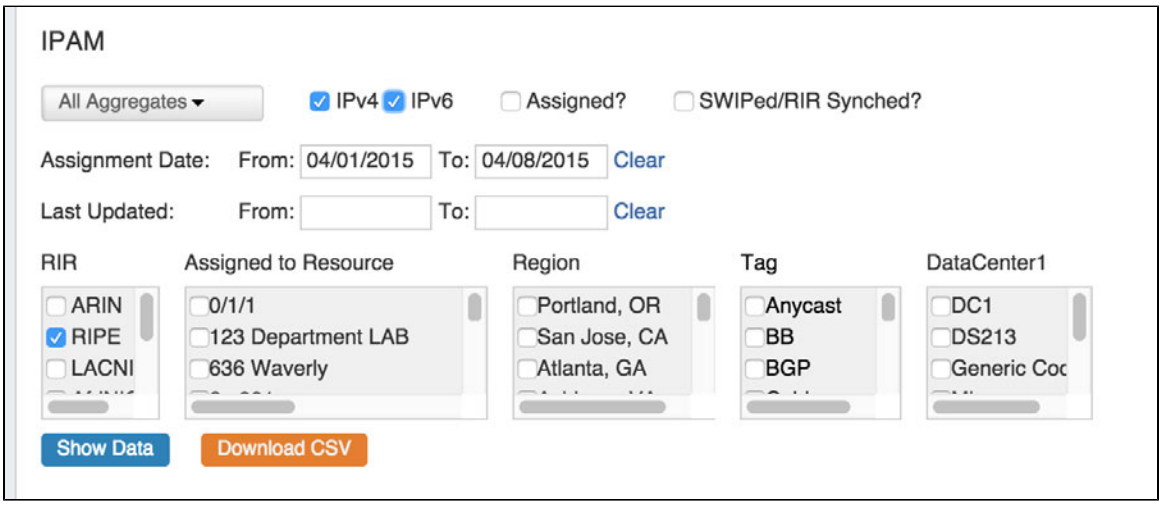
The Customer List report reflects all Resources created under the Category of "Customer". Clicking on "Show Data" will show information collected from the Contact Info and Tech Info gadgets, parent information, and IP / zone assignment counts. To export the data to .csv, simply select "Download CSV".

## IPAM

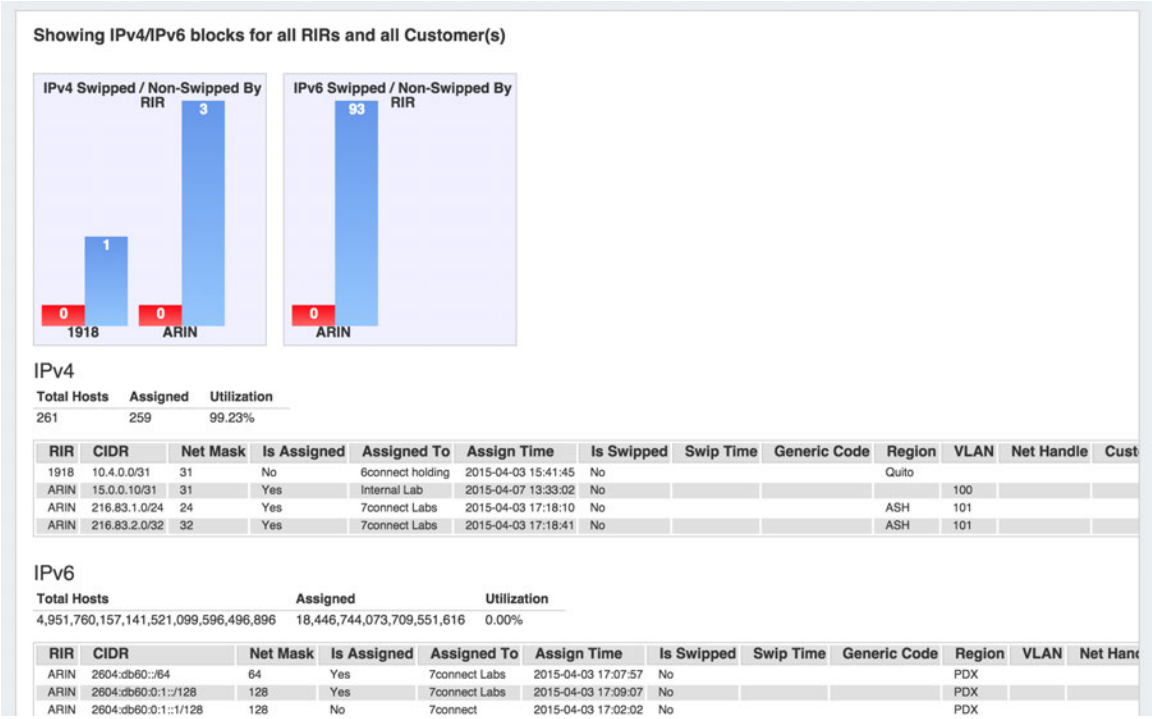
The IPAM report is highly customizable, allowing you to view information for all aggregates or selected blocks.

**Required Fields:** IPv4 and/or IPv6 must be selected for the report.

**Optional Fields:** Assigned, SWIP status, Assignment / Update dates, RIR, Assigned to Resource, Region, Tag, and Generic Code (in this case, "Datacenter1") are all optional parameters to narrow your results.




Clicking on "Show Data" will show bar charts for Swipped/ Non-Swipped by RIR, host and utilization stats, as well as detailed block information. To export the data to .csv, simply select "Download CSV".




Note: The default number of entries returned in the Reporting section for either html or .csv is limited to 5000 rows. If more rows are needed, the ProVision API may be used to retrieve larger datasets.

# User Preferences

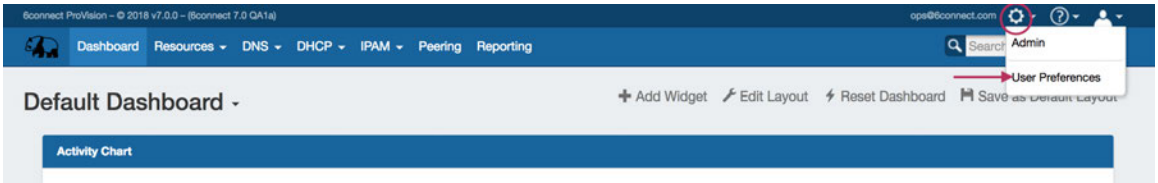
# User Preferences

The User Preferences page allows the logged in user to reset their password as well as adjust per-user settings.


- User Preferences
  - Accessing User Preferences
  - Editing Preferences

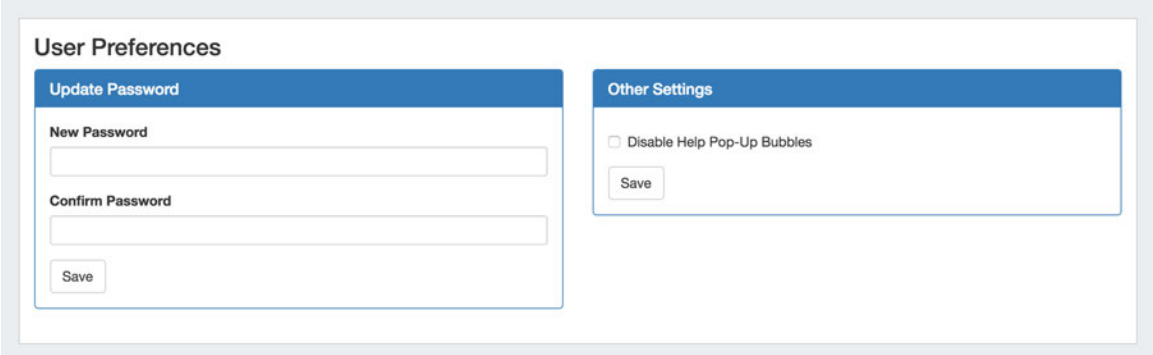

## Accessing User Preferences

To access the User Preferences page, click the gear icon at the top right section of the header from any page. From there, select "User Preferences". You will be redirect to the User Preferences page.




## Editing Preferences

The User Preferences page includes a section for updating the user's ProVision password, and Other Settings.




**Update Password:**

To update your password, type the new password in the "New Password" box, then retype under "Confirm Password" for verification. When complete, click the "Save" button.

**Other Settings:**

Under "Other Settings", help pop-up bubbles may be enabled or disabled. Click the check box next to "Disable Help Pop-Up Bubbles" to disable, or leave unchecked to keep enabled. When complete, click the "Save" button.

To leave the User Preferences page, click on any ProVision tab in the navigation bar.

# ProVision Admin Guide

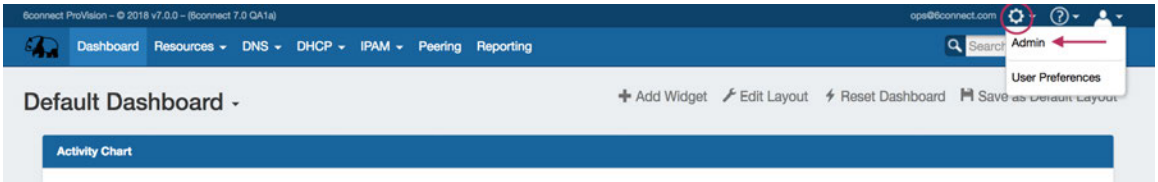
# Admin Guide

The ProVision Admin Guide provides information on features accessible with Admin level permissions within ProVision. For more detailed information on features accessible in the standard user tabs , see the ProVision User Guide.

## Accessing the ProVision Admin section

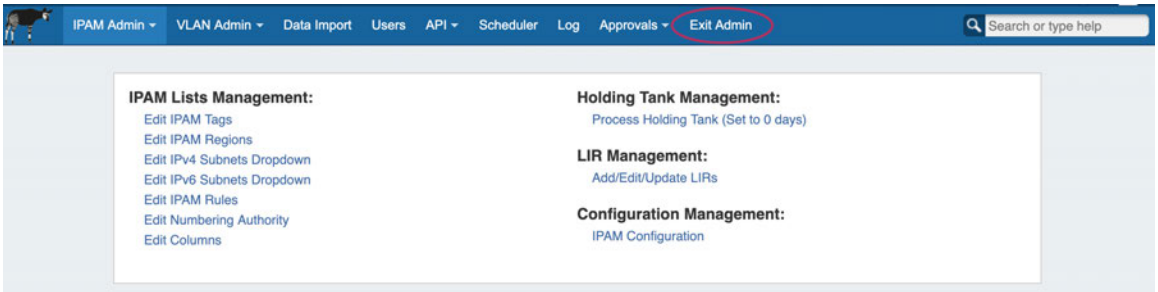
To access the Admin area, click the gear icon at the top right section of the header from any page.

From there, select "Admin". You will then have access the Admin section tabs of ProVision, and will see the Admin Preferences page.




## Leaving the ProVision Admin section

To leave the Admin area, simply click the "Exit Admin" link in the navigation bar. You will be redirected to the Dashboard.

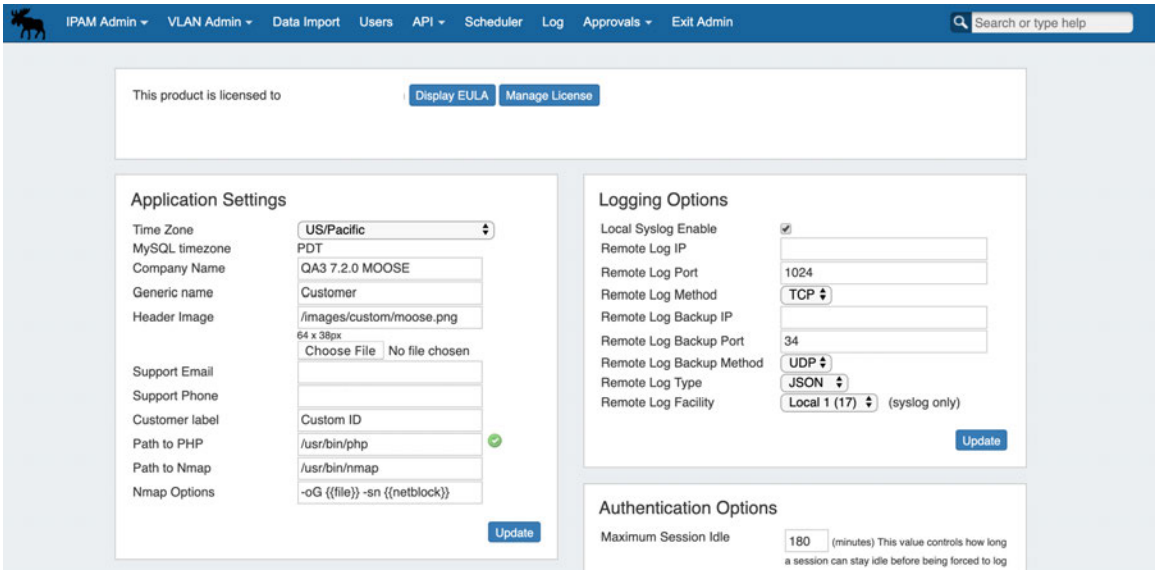



### Table of Contents


- Admin Preferences
- Authentication Options
- IPAM Administration
- VLAN Administration
- DNS Administration
- DHCP Administration
- Importing Your Data
- Users & Permissions
- API Tab
- Scheduler Tab
- Log
- Approvals

# Admin Preferences

# Overview




The Admin Preferences page is the home page of the Admin section of ProVision where general platform preferences may be set.

To access it, click the gear icon at the top right section of the header. From there, select "Admin". You will then have access the Admin section tabs of ProVision, and will see the Admin Preferences page.


- Overview
  - Video Walkthrough
  - License Info
  - Application Settings
    - Application Settings - Local Installation
  - DNS Settings
    - DNS Global Settings
    - DNSSEC Tools
  - Peering Settings
  - Backup Settings
    - Manual Backup - 6connect Cloud:
    - Manual Backup - Alternate Server:
    - Backup Settings - Local Installation
  - Logging Options
  - Authentication Options
    - Session Time
    - RADIUS authentication options (local install only)
    - LDAP authentication
    - SAML authentication
      - SAML Setup
      - SAML Login
    - DUO Mobile
  - Remote Authentication Tester
  - Templates

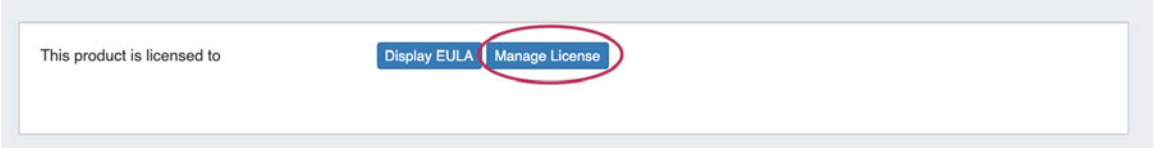

## Video Walkthrough

Note: Video at  applies to versions 6.0.0 to 7.0.0. For earlier versions, see Admin Preferences Page Overview (v5.1.0+) .

## License Info

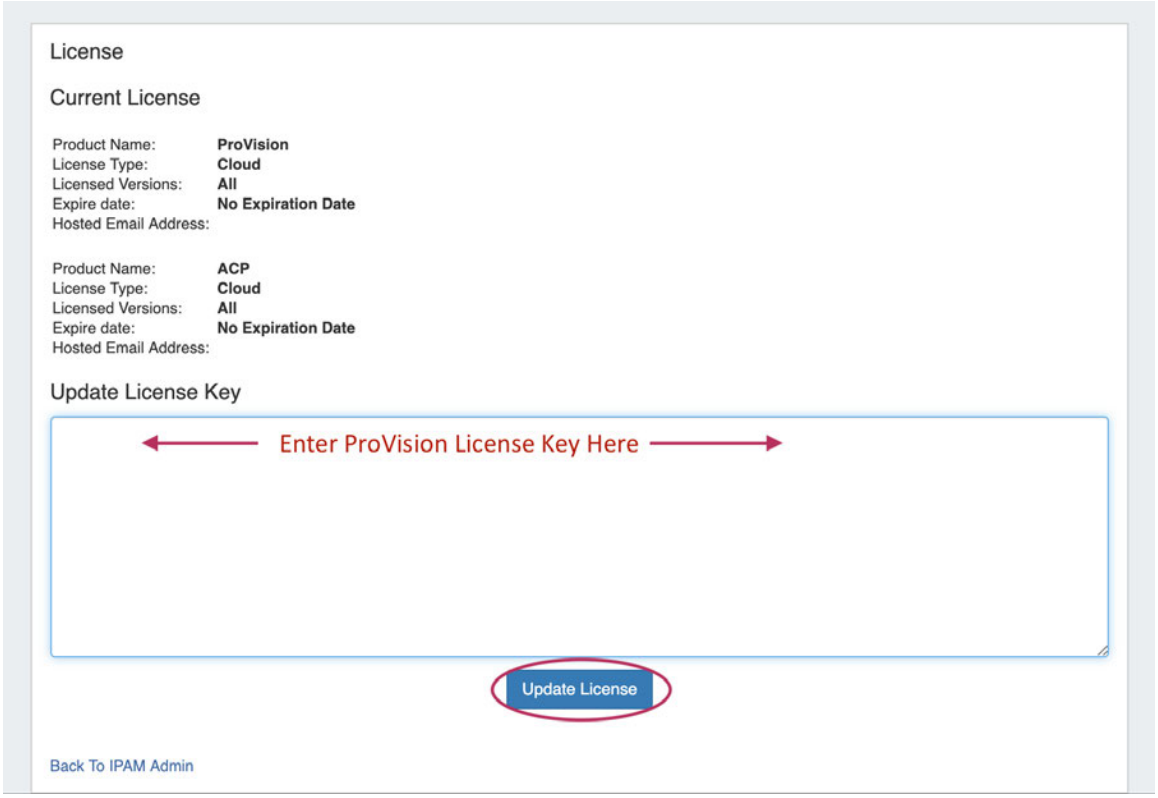
The License page displays current product license details such as Product, Type, Versions, Expiration, Email, and the option to add/update the 6connect License Key(s).

From the Admin Settings page, click "Manage License".



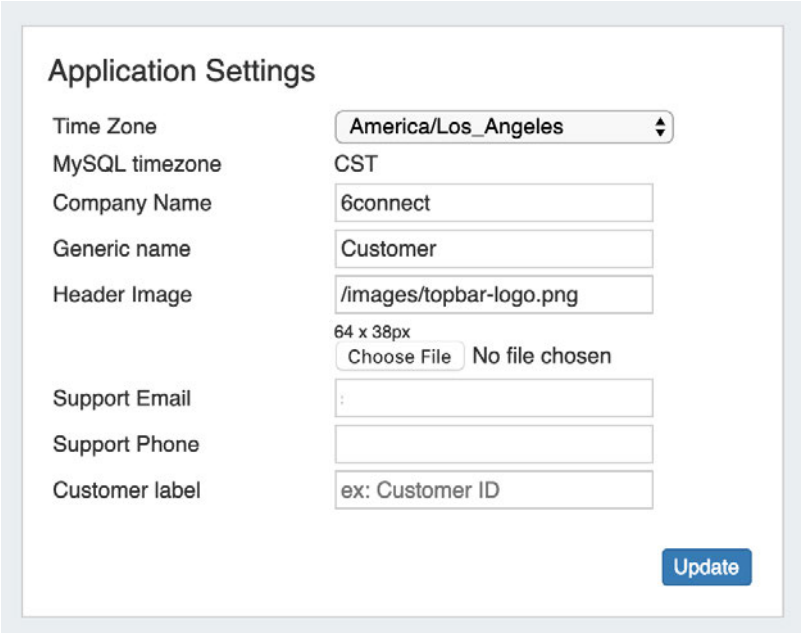

Current license details for ProVision, and other affiliated 6connect products will display.

To add/update a License Key, paste the key provided into the "Update License Key" box, and click "Update License".




## Application Settings

Application Settings is where you provide company specific info that appears in the header and Dashboard.




**Time Zone:** Supported Time zones are listed here: {EXT} http://www.php.net/manual/en/timezones.php. Default value is ('America /Los_Angeles') and can be modified at any time via the drop down menu

**Company Name:** Enter the preferred name for your company to be used.

**Generic Name:** This "short" name is used in abbreviated location for the "Customer" tab label, "Customer" and "Site" are common entries.

**Header Image:** Select an image file for the header

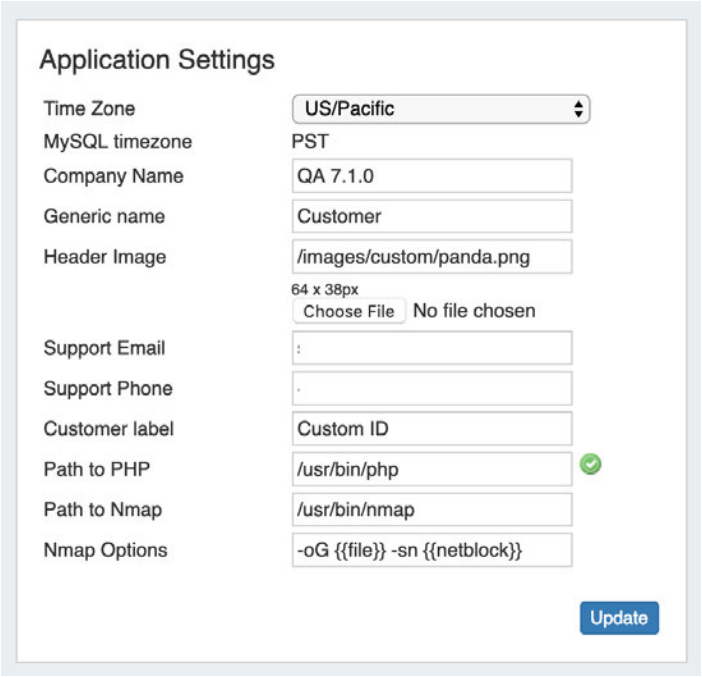
**Support Email:** Support Email address that displays on the Dashboard

**Support Phone:** Support phone number that displays on the Dashboard

**Customer Label:** The display name for the customizable label field available when creating or editing a resource.

## Application Settings - Local Installation

Additional settings are available for local installations:

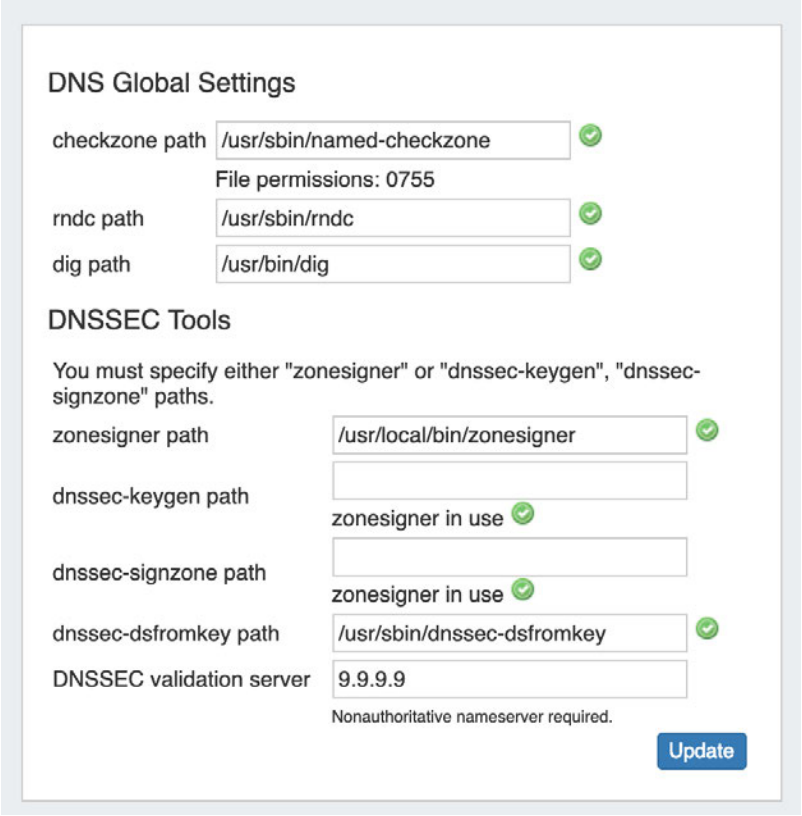



**Path to PHP (Local Installation):** The directory path to php location

**Path to Nmap (Local Installation):** The directory path to nmap location

**Nmap Options (Local Installation):** The directory path to nmap location

## DNS Settings




## DNS Global Settings

**Checkzone path :** Enter the checkzone path that will be used for DNS.

**rndc path :** Enter the rndc path that will be used for DNS.

**dig path :** Enter the dig path that will be used for DNS.

## DNSSEC Tools

If using DNSSEC, enter the following information:

**zonesigner path :** Enter the zonesigner path that will be used for DNS. Zonesigner is required if dnssec-keygen and dnssec-signzone are not set.

**dnssec-keygen path:** Enter the keygen path. Required if zonesigner is not set.

**dnssec-signzone path:** Enter the signzone path. Required if zonesigner is not set.

**dnssec-dsfromkey path :** Enter the dnssec-dsfromkey path that will be used for DNS. Required in all cases.

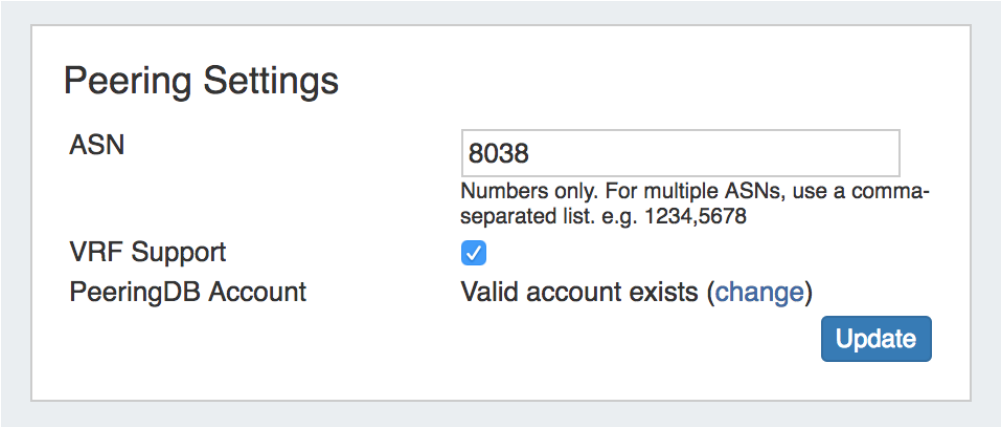
**DNSSEC validation server:** Enter the IP of the nonauthoritative DNSSEC validation nameserver. Optional.

Additional Entropy

If delays occur due to lack of available entropy on servers, see the following article on how to set up additional entropy using haveged here:

https://www.digitalocean.com/community/tutorials/how-to-setup-additional-entropy-for-cloud-servers-using-haveged

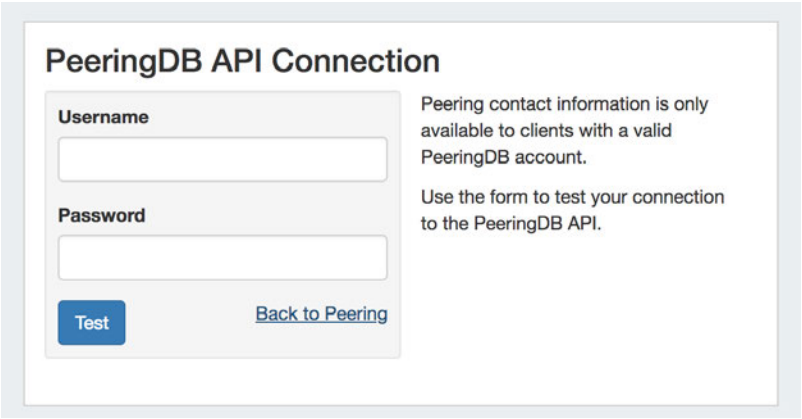
## Peering Settings




**ASN :** Enter the ASN(s) that will be used for Peering, or may leave blank. Separate multiple ASNs with a comma.

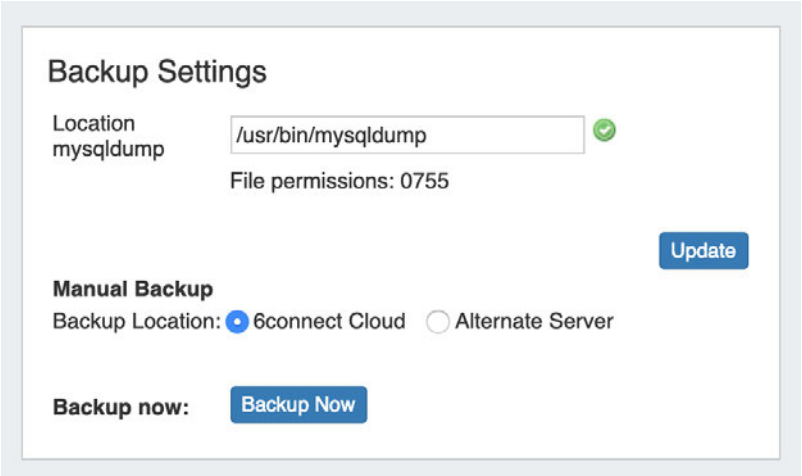
**VRF Support:** Check to enable adding the VRF gadget to the router Section. Currently, only supports Cisco routers.

**PeeringDB Account:** Click the "change" link to input PeeringDB account credentials. PeeringDB account information is required to retrieve and update peering information.




Enter a valid PeeringDB account Username and Password. When done, click the "Test" button to verify the account, and save.

## Backup Settings

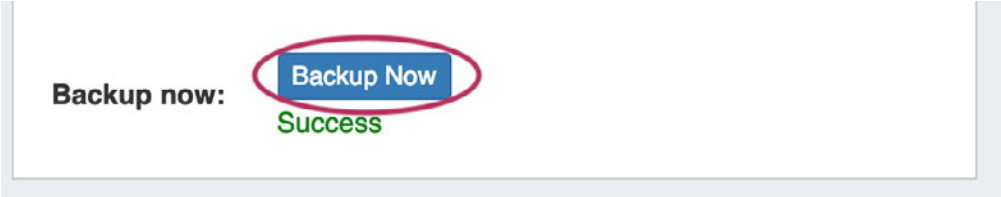



For cloud users, regular backups can be set up through the Scheduler. However, prior to imports or other large changes, you may wish to manually perform a backup.

**Backup Location:** The backups may be sent to the 6connect cloud, or to a specific server in the Resource system. Select the radio button for the desired location.

## Manual Backup - 6connect Cloud:

Select "6connect Cloud" as your backup location, then click on the "Backup Now" button. You will see a success message below the button if successful.




## Manual Backup - Alternate Server:

Manual Backup: Alternate Server saves a backup msql dump to a Server Resource already set up in ProVision.

This Resource needs to have the following information provided in the server section fields in order to establish a connection: Port, Hostname, Username, and Password.

Before selecting Alternate Server Backup:

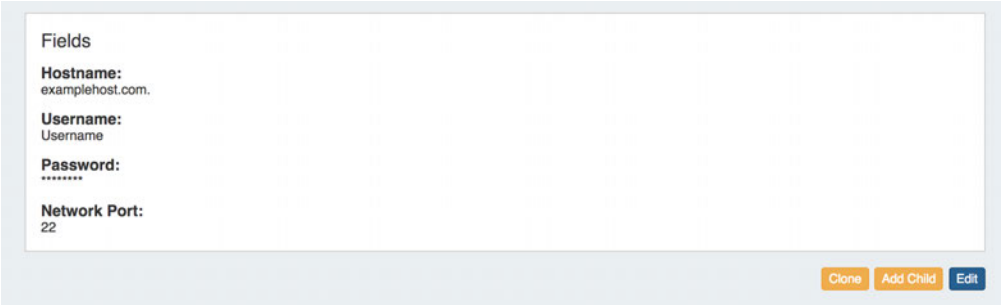
1) Ensure that the Server Resource exists in ProVision for the backup (Section = "Server"). If needed, create a new entry for the server.

2) Check that the following fields are added to the Server Section:

- Network Port (22 is typical)
- Hostname (this can also be an IP address)
- Username
- Password

See Customizing Sections and Customizing Fields for information on adding fields to sections. Hostname, Username, Password, and Network Port will all be contained under the "Existing Fields" selector when adding fields to the Section.

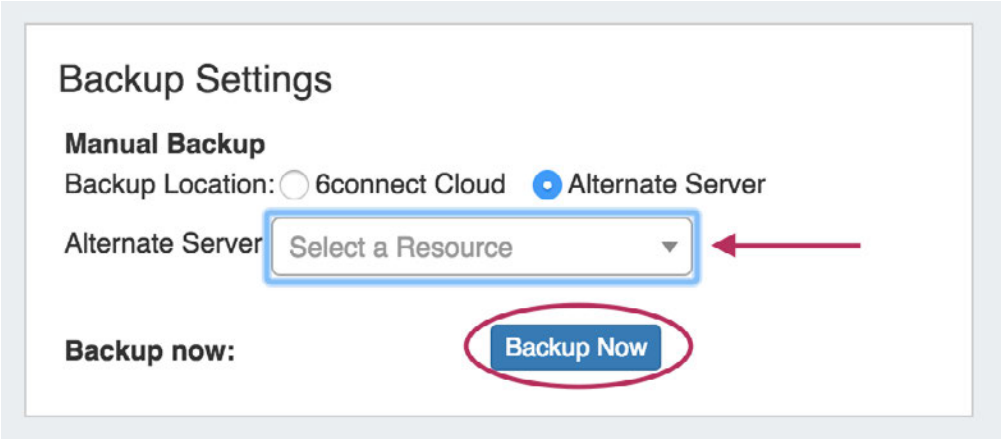
3) On the Backup Server's Entry page, verify that the server fields are filled in and correct for the ProVision server entry:



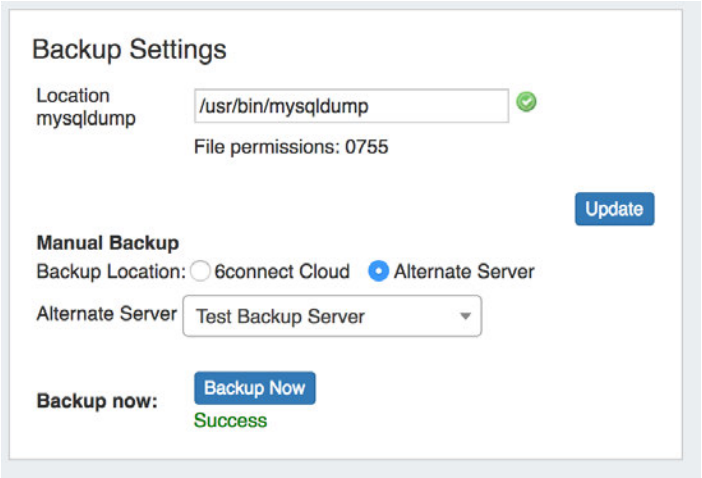

If needed, click "Edit" and add or update the information. See Working with Entries for additional information.

Once a Backup server has been set up in ProVision, it will be available to select under Backup Settings: Alternate Server.

Select "Alternate Server" as your backup location, then select the desired ProVision server Resource. After selecting your server, click on the "Backup Now" Button.



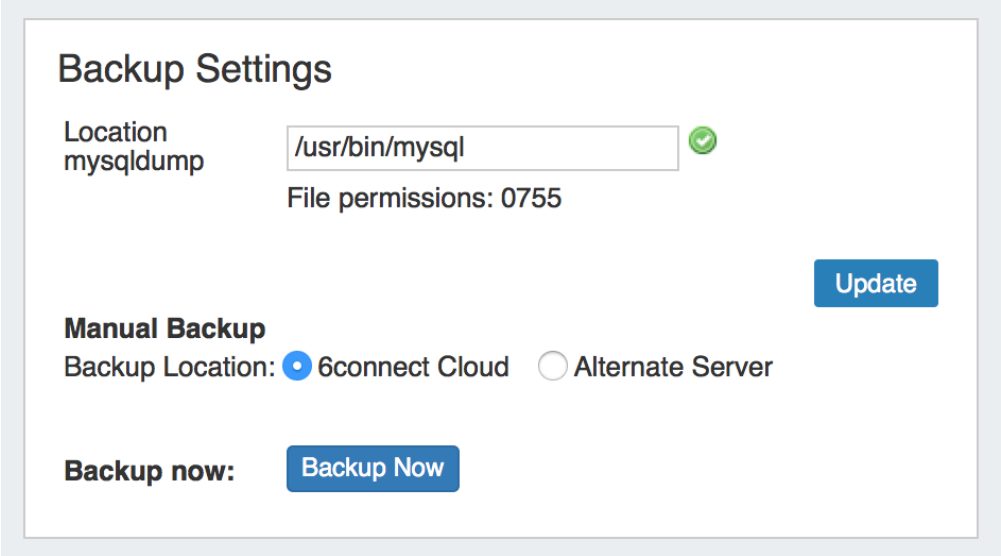

If successful, a mysql dump file will be sent to the selected server and a "Success!" message will appear.




Once the connection is confirmed successful, Backups to alternate servers may be scheduled on a recurring basis through the Scheduler Tab, or continued to be performed manually under Backup Settings.

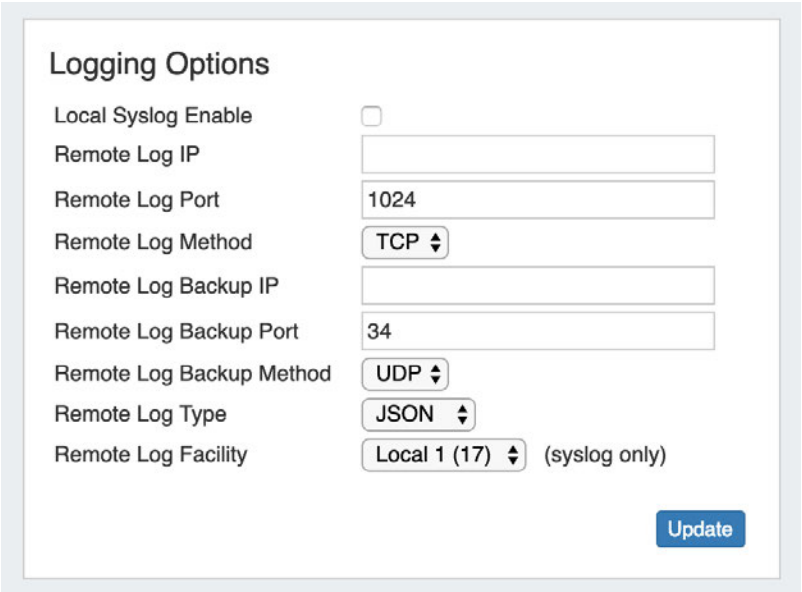
## Backup Settings - Local Installation

Additional settings are available for local installations:




**Location of mysqldump (Local Installation):** This is the location of the mysqldump directory.

## Logging Options




**Remote Log IP:** Target IP address that we will send log information to

**Remote Log Port:** Port number for the syslog server you will send log information to

**Remote Log Method:** Select TCP, UDP, SSL from the dropdown for the log delivery method

**Remote Log Backup IP:** Target IP address for the Backup syslog server you will send log information to

**Remote Log Backup Port:** Port number for the Backup syslog server you will send log information to

**Remote Log Backup Method:** Select TCP, UDP, SSL from the dropdown for the log delivery method

**Remote Log Type:** Select SysLog format or JSON output

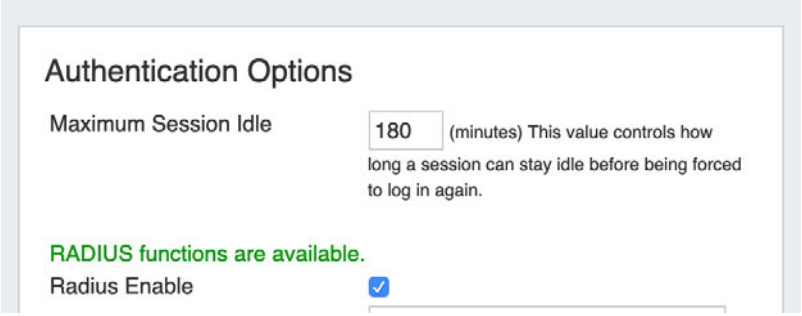
**Remote Log Facility:** Select the Facility - applies to syslog only

## Authentication Options

In this area, you may set the max session idle time, as well as setup additional authentication options.

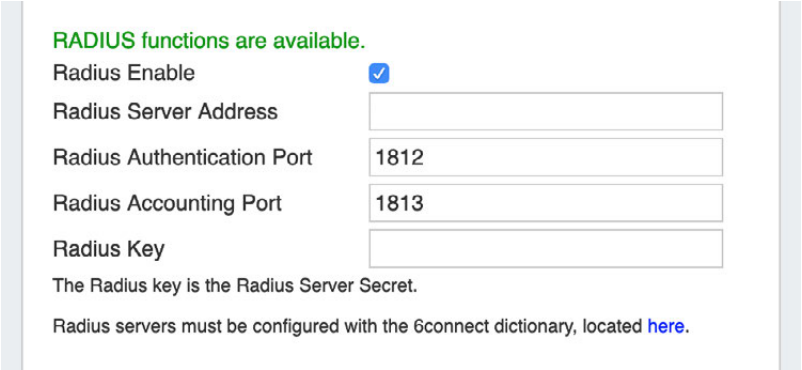
Four authentication types are available for ProVision: Radius, LDAP, SAML, and DUO Mobile.

### Session Time




**Maximum Session Idle**: This setting (minutes) controls how long a session can stay idle before being forced to log in again.

### RADIUS authentication options (local install only)




Note: For implementation details, go here.

**Radius Enable:** Check this box to enable RADIUS functionality.

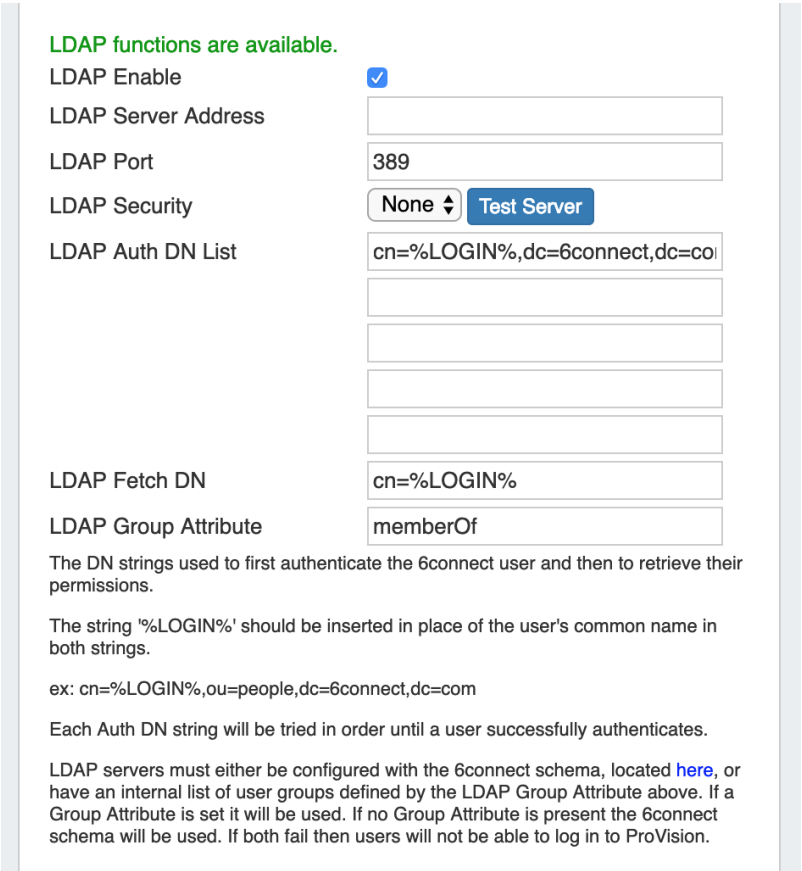
**Radius Server Address:** Set to the IP address of your radius server. If this is specified, it will force authentication over radius.

**Radius Authentication Port:** Set to the port for authentication. Default port is 1812

**Radius Accounting Port:** Set to the port for radius accounting. Default port is 1813

**Radius Key:** Set to the shared key of your radius server

## LDAP authentication




Note: For implementation details, go here.

**LDAP Enable:** check the box to enable LDAP functionality.

**LDAP Server Address:** Set the IP address of your LDAP server.

**LDAP Port:** Set the port for your LDAP server

**LDAP Security:** Select the security method of your LDAP server - SSL, TLS or None

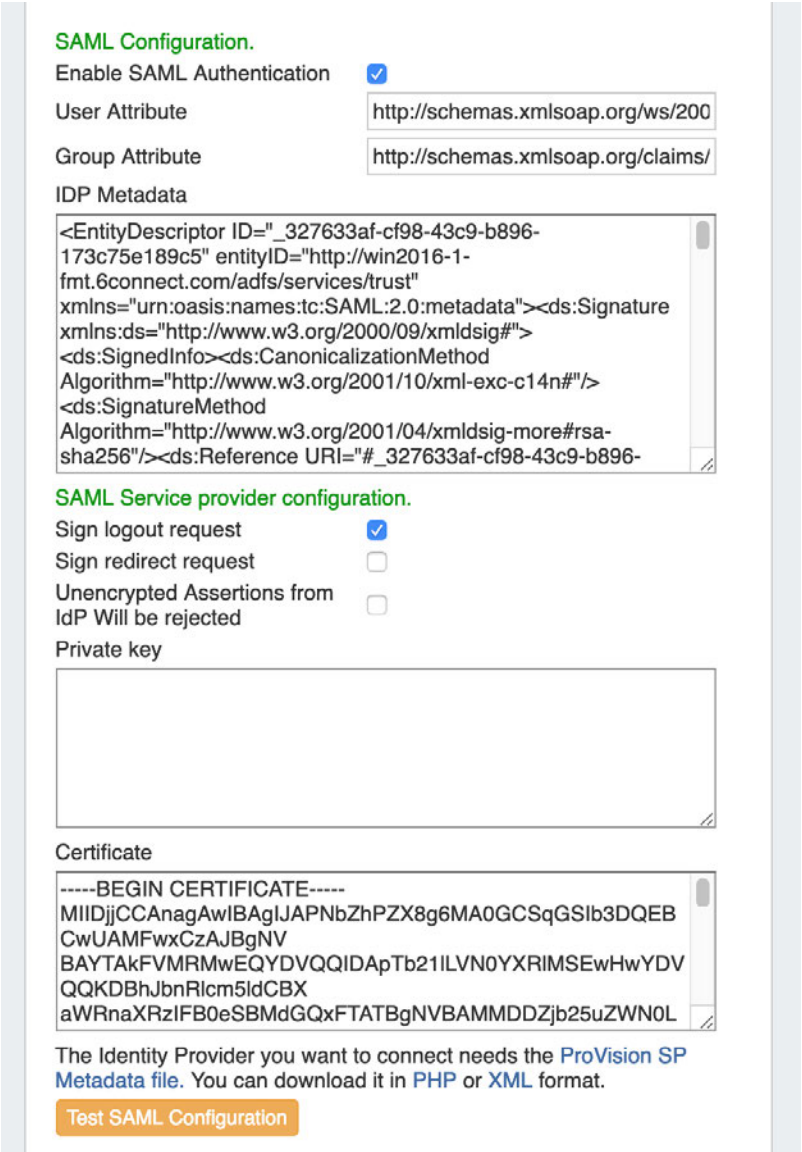
**Test Server:** Click to test the connection to the LDAP server.

**LDAP Auth DN/Fetch DN:** These strings are used to first authentication the 6connect user and then to retrieve their permissions. The string '%LOGIN%' should be inserted in place of the user's common name both strings. (ex: cn=%LOGIN%,ou=people,dc=6connect,dc=com)

**LDAP Group Attribute:** If using an internal list of user groups instead of 6connect groups, enter the attribute name for the LDAP groups here. If a Group Attribute is set, it will be used first, otherwise the 6connect schema will be used.

**Mapping Permissions to 6connect schema:** To integrate 6connect permissions with your existing directory structure then you will need the 6connect schema. It should snap in with any existing LDAP structure and allow you to assign 6connect permissions to your existing users. You can download a copy of the schema from this section.

## SAML authentication




SAML is a Single Sign On (SSO) authentication method that uses an external identity provider to authenticate a user at their first login, saving a token to the user's browser that is then used for subsequent logins, so that the user does not need to re-submit credentials.

### SAML Setup

Before configuring SAML in ProVision, you must have an account set up with an Identity Provider (IdP) and ProVision users / groups set up in the IdP.

**Set up the IdP**

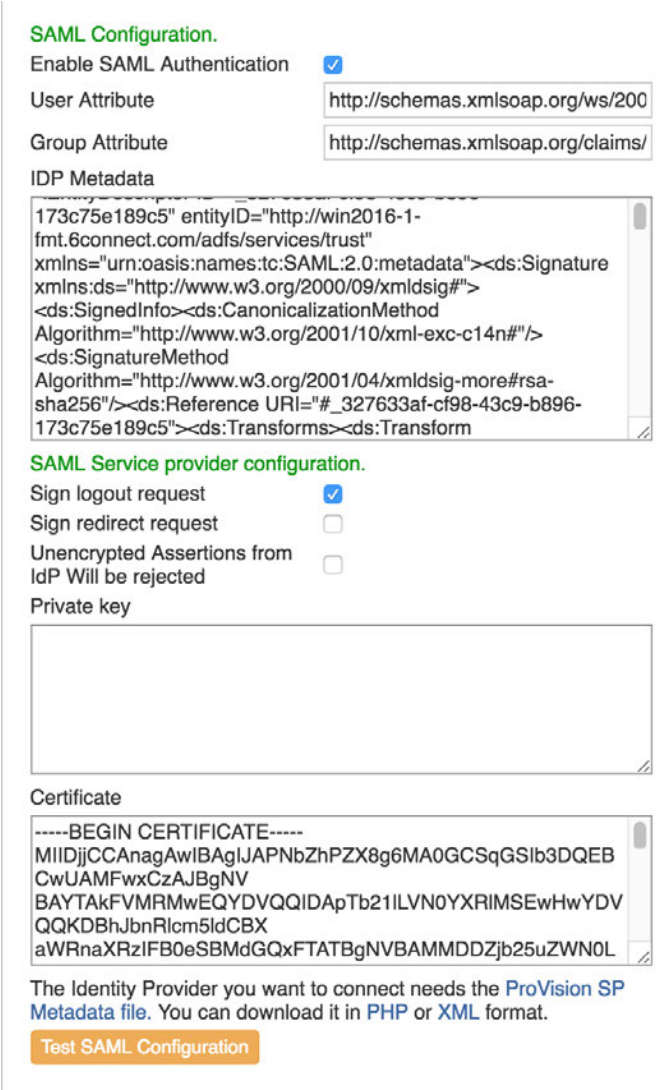
To use SAML authentication, you will need SAML set up for your instance with an Identity Provider (IdP), such as *Microsoft ADFS, OneLogin, Elastic SSO,* or others. You can view a list of available SAML IdPs at Wikipedia's SAML based products page.

**Users and Permissions:**

User credentials will need to be created and associated with ProVision permission group names via the IdP. All user creation, management and permissions handling occurs via the IdP, externally from ProVision.

**Configure SAML in ProVision**

ProVision setup for SAML is located in **Admin** **Admin Settings** Authentication Options.




Under **SAML Configuration**:

*Enable SAML authentication by clicking the checkbox next to "Enable".*

The following fields are required and will need to be obtained from the IdP:

- **User Attribute(Required):**
- **Group Attribute(Required):**
- **IdP Metadata(Required):**

Under **SAML Service Provider Configuration:**

- **Sign logout request:**
- **Sign redirect request:**
- **Unencrypted Assertions from IdP Will be rejected:**
- **Private Key:**
- **Certificate (Required):**

Links are provided below the configuration settings for the ProVision SP Metadata file in php and xml format, which will be needed to provide to the IdP.

*You can test the configuration by clicking the "Test SAML Configuration" button, a new page will open giving health check information for your provided attributes.*

## SAML Login

Once the correct configuration has been established and users set up for SAML in the IdP, users will be able to use SAML logins.

Documentation Note: Depending on the IdP used, some screens may appear different from what is shown here.

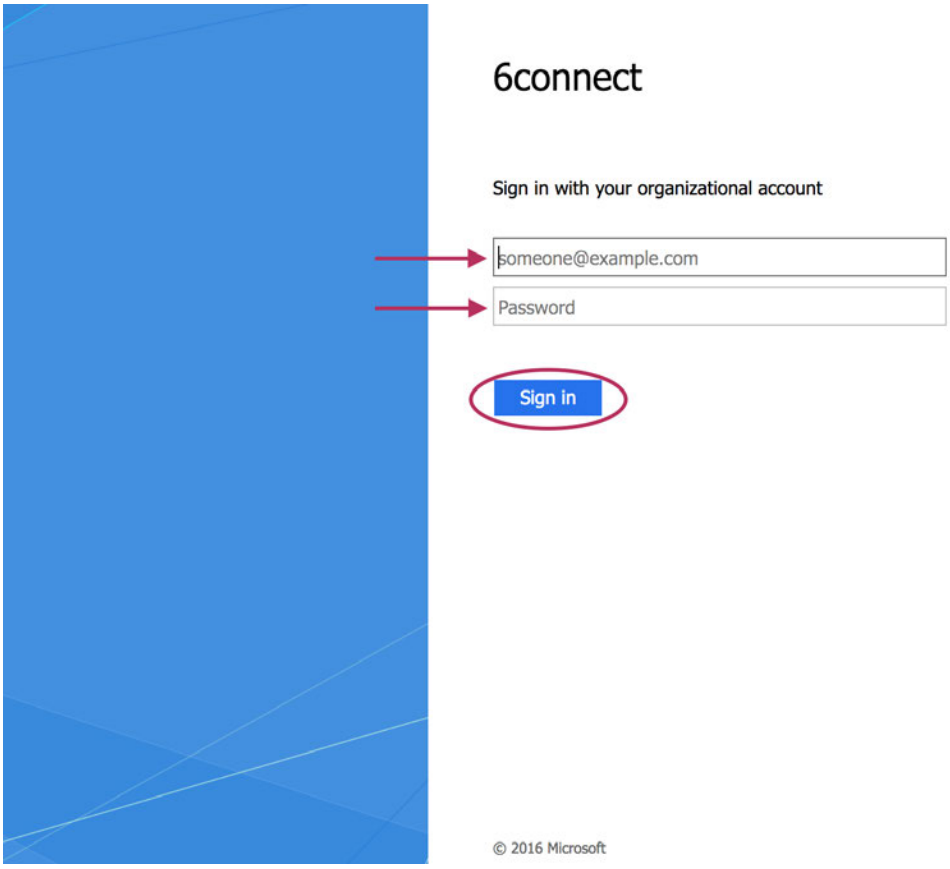
**Initial Login:**

The initial login process occurs for the first time a user logs in, and anytime afterwards if the browser token is not present (e.g., cookies are cleared from the browser, the browser closed, or a new browser is used).

From the ProVision login page, select SAML from the authentication options dropdown - you do not need to enter Username or Password.

You will be redirected to the IdP site as set up in the Admin Configuration - here, we are using Microsoft ADFS (Active Directory Federation Services).

Log into the IdP site using your SAML credentials, and click "Sign In".



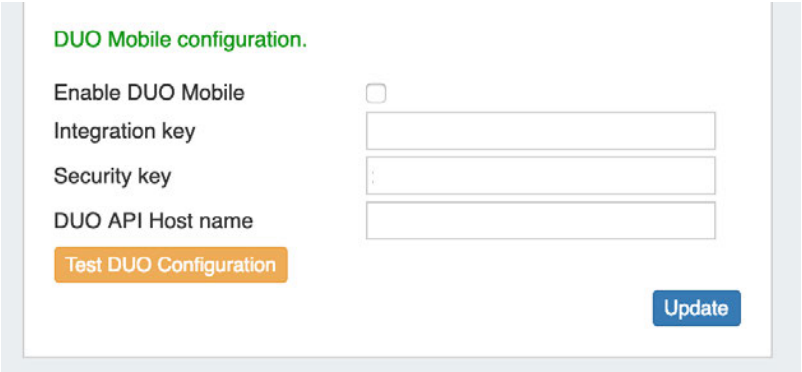

If the sign in is successful, you will be logged into the ProVision home page.

**Subsequent Logins:**

After the initial login via the IdP (as long as the auth token is present) users will be able to login to ProVision simply by selecting the "SAML" options from the ProVision login page without entering credentials.

The auth token may be destroyed or not available if browser cookies have been cleared, a different browser used, or the browser fully closed, depending on security settings. In these cases, the user will need to sign in again via the IdP.

## DUO Mobile




To use DUO Authentication, an account must first be set up with DUO.

Once an account is set up, obtain the Integration Key, Security Key, and DUO API Host name.

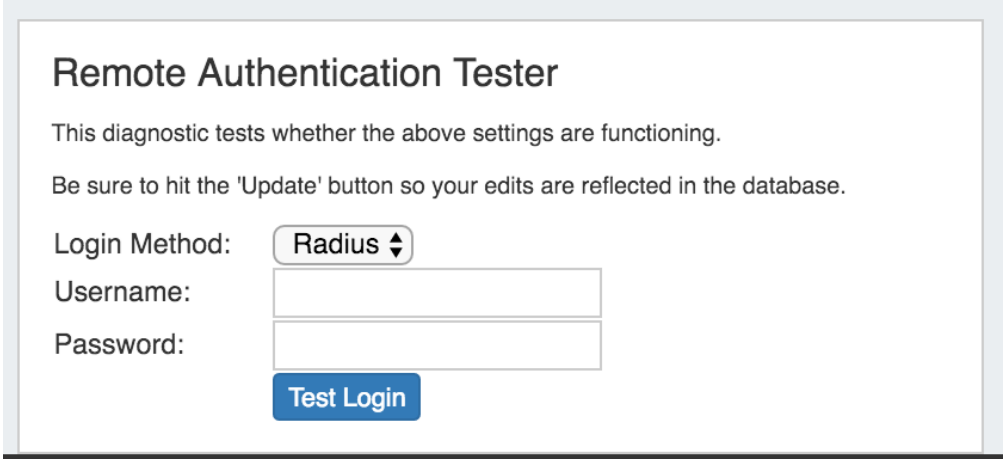
Enter those items into **Admin** **Authentication Options** DUO Mobile Configuration, and click "Update" to save your changes.

You may also test the current configuration by clicking "Test DUO Configuration".

If you need to disable DUO Mobile authentication from ProVision from outside of the GUI, a command-line disable tool is available. Run:

```
php tools/disable_duo.php
```

## Remote Authentication Tester




The Remote Authentication Tester checks Radius / LDAP settings for a user.

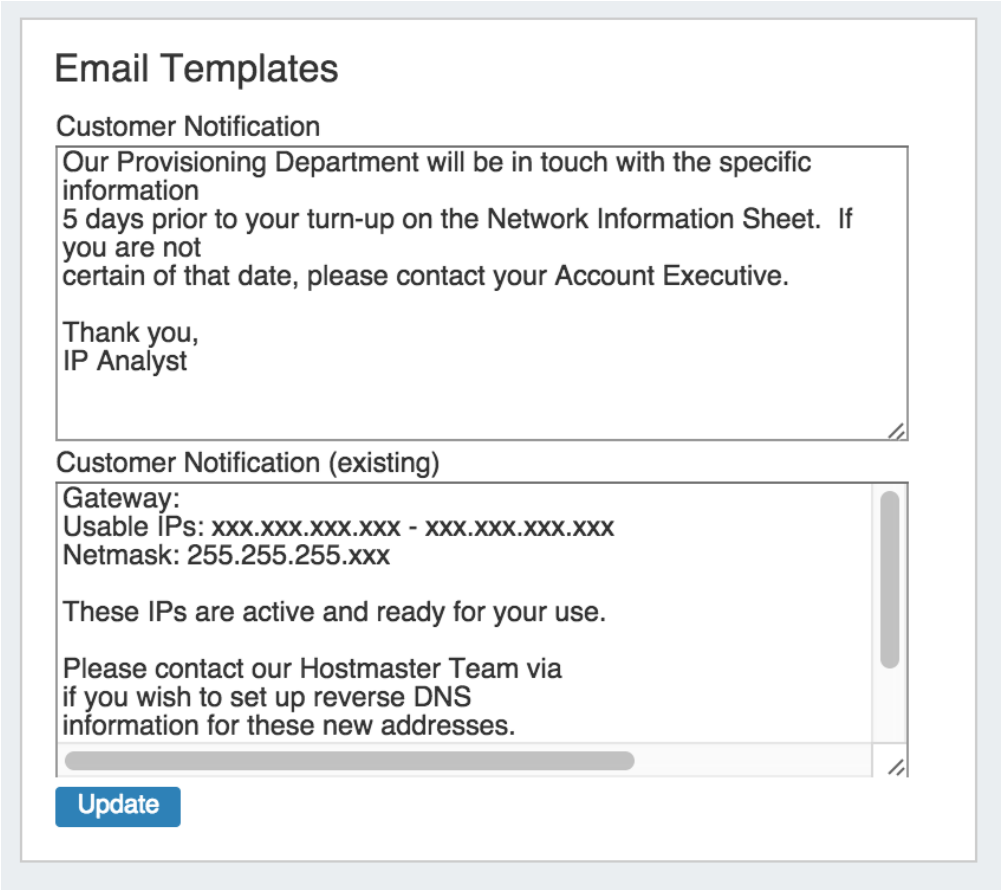
Select the Login Method (Radius or LDAP), enter the Username and Password for the user, and then click "Test Login".

**Login Method:** Select Radius or LDAP, according to your authentication settings.

**Username:** The username for the user you are testing.

**Password:** Password for the user you are testing.

## Templates



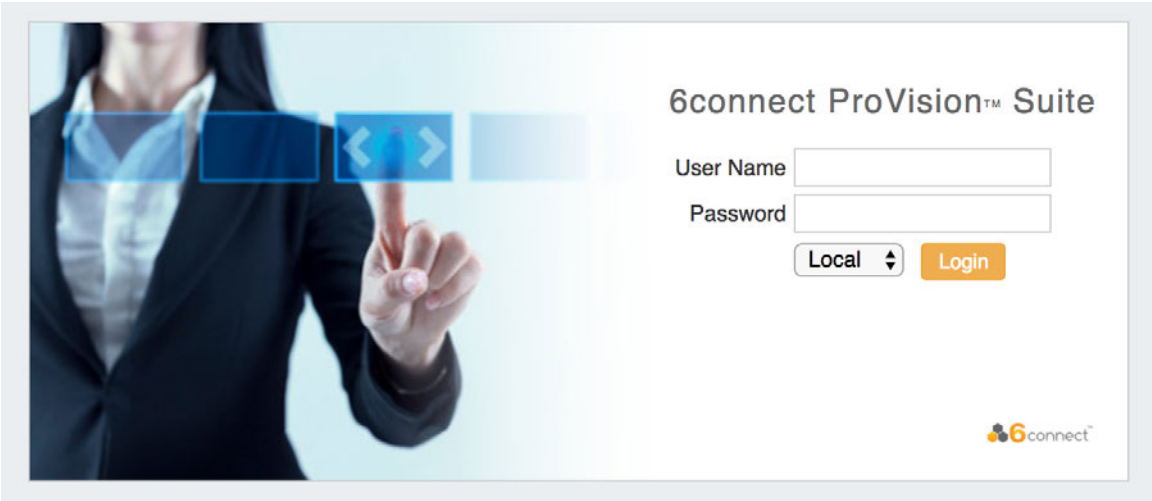

This is where you can edit outgoing email templates for IP block assignments.

To edit, click inside the text area box, make the desired changes, then click the "Update" button.

After making changes to settings, clicking any "Update" button will save your changes for all sections of the page, not just the section the update button is contained in.

# Authentication Options

# Authentication




Depending on the authentication method chosen by your organization, there may be a separate authentication to login or logout of the application via the drop down menu.

Change Order of Login Menu Dropdown

The drop down menu defaults to "local" - if you are using another authentication method, you can use the following to change the default ordering and improve usability.

In the file data/globals.php, add a line:

```
define('DEFAULT_LOGIN_TYPE', 'ldap');
```

Acceptable values instead of 'ldap' are 'local', 'radius' and 'ldap'.

By default, credentials are managed via the local authentication mechanism provided by 6connect. See the following sections for more detail authentication configurations:

- LDAP Authentication
- LDAP Authentication on Windows Server
- RADIUS Authentication

For information on SAML and DUO, see Admin Preferences.

# LDAP Authentication

# LDAP Authentication

To setup an LDAP server for authentication, you must perform the following three procedures:


- LDAP Authentication
  - Configure the LDAP Server:
    - LDAP Schema - Example
  - Creating a LDAP User:
    - Test the LDAP Server
  - Configure ProVision for LDAP Authentication


## Configure the LDAP Server:

Configuring the LDAP server involves ((adding the schema)) and adding LDAP users / groups to the server:

### LDAP Schema - Example

```
attributetype (1.3.6.1.4.1.5023215.2.3.21 NAME 'sixConnGroup' SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
objectclass ( 1.3.6.1.4.1.5023215.2.4.2 NAME 'sixConnectPermissionsV2' DESC '6Connect Permissions Object v2'
SUP top AUXILIARY MUST ( sixConnGroup ) )
```

## Creating a LDAP User:

SSH into your openLDAP server and create a new 'ldif' file.  Example:

```
dn: cn=JoeSmith,ou=people,dc=6connect,dc=com
cn: JoeSmith
sn: JoeSmith
objectclass: top
objectclass: person
objectclass: sixConnectPermissionsV2
sixConnGroup: "Global Admins"
sixConnGroup: "IT Engineering"
sixConnGroup: "Sales"
sixConnGroup: "Customer Admin"
userPassword: testpass
```

To create a new user, make a new ldif file and change all instances of "JoeSmith" to whatever username you wish to create and update the password.  Keep all of the object class definitions as listed above.  Add a sixConnGroup declaration for each ProVision user group a user is in.

After the file is created, run the following command to add the new user to LDAP server:

```
ldapadd -h [SERVER] -x -f [LDIF FILE] -D [ROOTDN] -w [ROOT PW] -v
```

Example:

```
ldapadd -h localhost -x -f 6connect.ldif -D "cn=Manager,dc=6connect,dc=com" -w secret -v
```

The user will now be active in openLDAP and can be used to login to ProVision.

### Test the LDAP Server

To query the LDAP server, run the following command on any server which has openLDAP enabled:

```
ldapsearch -b [BASE] -h [IPADDRESS] -D [DOMAIN] -w [PASSWORD] [USER]
```

*Note: We have not been able to use a v6 address at with this tool, even though multiple sources say it should work.*

At the end of the command where [USER] is specified, user or groups can be used (in LDAP format) to query.

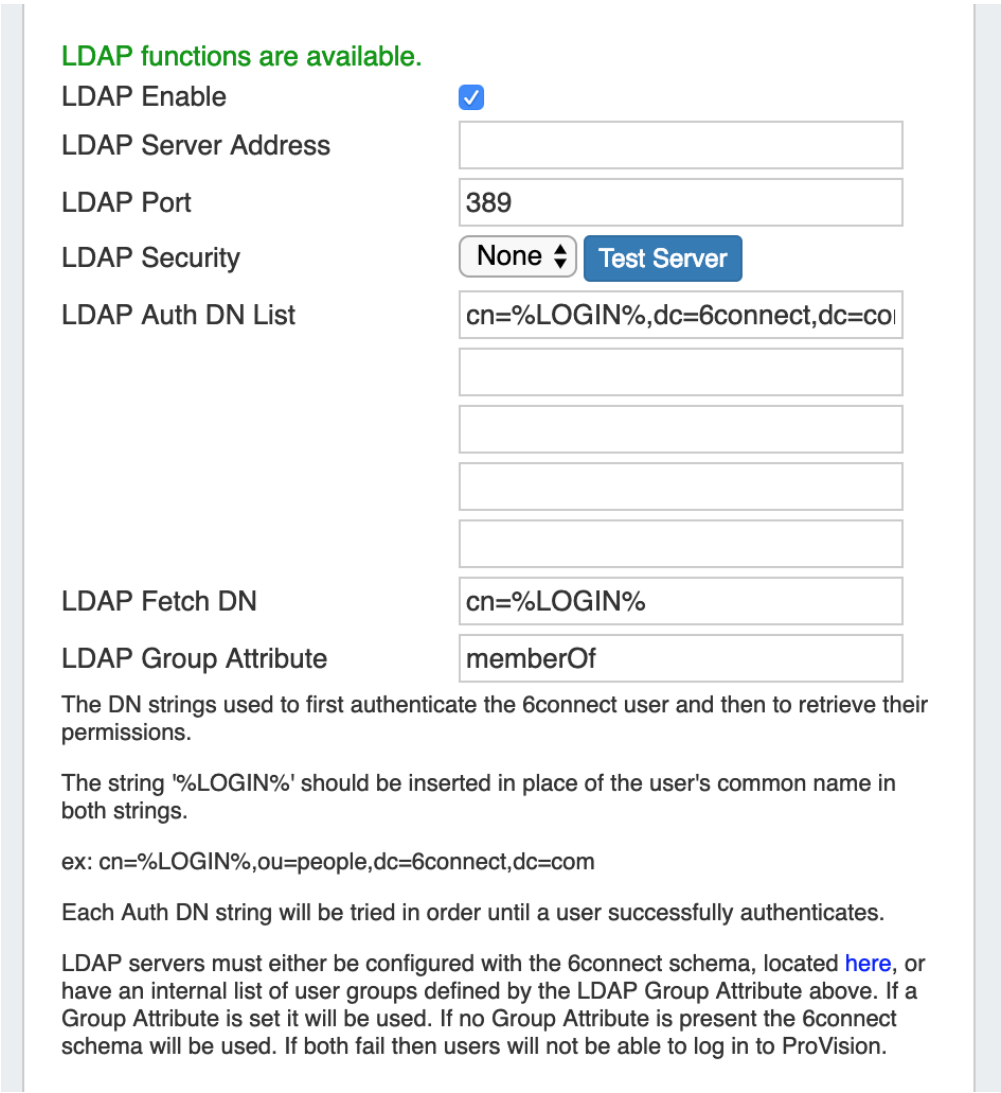
**Example:**

```
ldapsearch -b "dc=6connect,dc=com" -h 50.240.195.129 -D "cn=Mayor,ou=people,dc=6connect,dc=com" -w testpass
"cn=MajorMiner"
```

# Configure ProVision for LDAP Authentication

To configure the use of LDAP authentication with ProVision, follow the steps below.

- Log into 6connect ProVision
- Go to Admin -> General Settings -> Authentication
- Click the LDAP Enable checkbox.
- Fill in the hostname or ip address, authentication port, LDAP Security, Auth DN, and Fetch DN.




Example values in this case would be:

LDAP Enable: (Checked)

LDAP Server Address: 52.240.195.12

LDAP Port: 389 ( or SSL/TLS port is 636)

LDAP Security: None

LDAP Auth DN: cn=%LOGIN%,ou=people,dc=6connect,dc=com

LDAP Fetch DN: cn=%LOGIN%

Setting default login authentication options

In the login screen, you would select the authentication method from the dropdown. If you like, you can set the default login option in the following way:

Go to the /data/globals.php and open in vi (or other editor). Add in the following text as the last line of the file (before the closing ?>)

define('DEFAULT_LOGIN_TYPE', 'radius');

Acceptable values are "local", "radius" and "ldap". If this line is not present in globals.php, the default option is "local".

Using SSL encryption

To use SSL encryption with LDAP, the ldap.conf file must be correctly configured on the ProVision server.

Typically, the LDAP configuration file is kept at "/etc/ldap/ldap.conf". Make sure the following line is present:

```
TLS_REQCERT allow
```

and restart the webserver.

# LDAP Authentication on Windows Server

# LDAP Authentication on Windows Server

Starting in 3.6, ProVision supports LDAP authentication (including Windows Server!). To setup an LDAP server for authentication, you must perform the following procedures:


- LDAP Authentication on Windows Server
  - Configuring the LDAP functions on your Windows Server
    - LDAP Schema - Example
    - LDAP User Example
  - Test the LDAP Server
  - Configure ProVision for LDAP Authentication


## Configuring the LDAP functions on your Windows Server

You should confirm these steps with your LDAP admin - the purpose of this walkthrough is to provide some level of detail on how to extend LDAP functionality to support integration with an application like ProVision.

**Step 1:** Prepare to extend the Schema (http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc961754.aspx)

This is not a minor operation and requires interaction with various control modification areas of Windows Server:

- If you have not modified the schema before, you will need to use the Active Directory Schema console on a DC (Domain Controller) to permit write access to the DC schema.
- Since the schema object has dedicated permissions, admins must be a member of the Schema Administrator group (Schema Admins).
- Note that the DC that is holding the Schema Master Role is the only one allowed to write to it.

**Step 2:** Decide on method for Installing/executing Schema Extensions (http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc961742.aspx)

If you have already used other AD integrations, this should be straightforward. We recommend using the LDIF script method

**Step 3:** Add and Modify a Schema Object (http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc961575.aspx)

To add a new attribute to the schema, you first have to create a attribute object. The you will need to complete the following steps:

- Select a name for the attribute (ProVision assumes that the name will be '**sixConnGroup**')
- Get a valid Object Identifier (OID) from an issuing authority (http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms677620.aspx)
  - Generate an Object Identifier

    Microsoft has released a script that can generate an Object Identifier (OID): https://gallery.technet.microsoft.com/scriptcenter/56b78004-40d0-41cf-b95e-6e795b2e8a06
- Document the attribute syntax
- Confirm that the attribute should be single-value
- Confirm the attribute indexing behavior
- Decide if the attribute needs to be distributed to the Global Catalog

### LDAP Schema - Example

```
attributetype (1.3.6.1.4.1.5023215.2.3.21 NAME 'sixConnGroup' SYNTAX 1.3.6.1.4.1.1466.115.121.1.15 )
objectclass ( 1.3.6.1.4.1.5023215.2.4.2 NAME 'sixConnectPermissionsV2' DESC '6Connect Permissions Object v2'
SUP top AUXILIARY MUST ( sixConnGroup ) )
```

### LDAP User Example

SSH into your openLDAP server and create a new 'ldif' file.  Example:

```
dn: cn=JoeSmith,ou=people,dc=6connect,dc=com
cn: JoeSmith
sn: JoeSmith
objectclass: top
objectclass: person
```

```
objectclass: sixConnectPermissionsV2
sixConnGroup: "Global Admins"
sixConnGroup: "IT Engineering"
sixConnGroup: "Sales"
sixConnGroup: "Customer Admin"
userPassword: testpass
```

To create a new user, make a new ldif file and change all instances of "JoeSmith" to whatever username you wish to create and update the password. Keep all of the object class definitions as listed above. Add a sixConnGroup declaration for each ProVision user group a user is in.

After the file is created, run the following command to add the new user to LDAP server:

```
ldapadd -h [SERVER] -x -f [LDIF FILE] -D [ROOTDN] -w [ROOT PW] -v
```

Example:

```
ldapadd -h localhost -x -f 6connect.ldif -D "cn=Manager,dc=6connect,dc=com" -w secret -v
```

The user will now be active in openLDAP and can be used to login to ProVision.

# Test the LDAP Server

To query the LDAP server, run the following command on any server which has openLDAP enabled:

```
ldapsearch -b [BASE] -h [IPADDRESS] -D [DOMAIN] -w [PASSWORD] [USER]
```

*Note: We have not been able to use a v6 address at with this tool, even though multiple sources say it should work.*

At the end of the command where [USER] is specified, user or groups can be used (in LDAP format) to query.

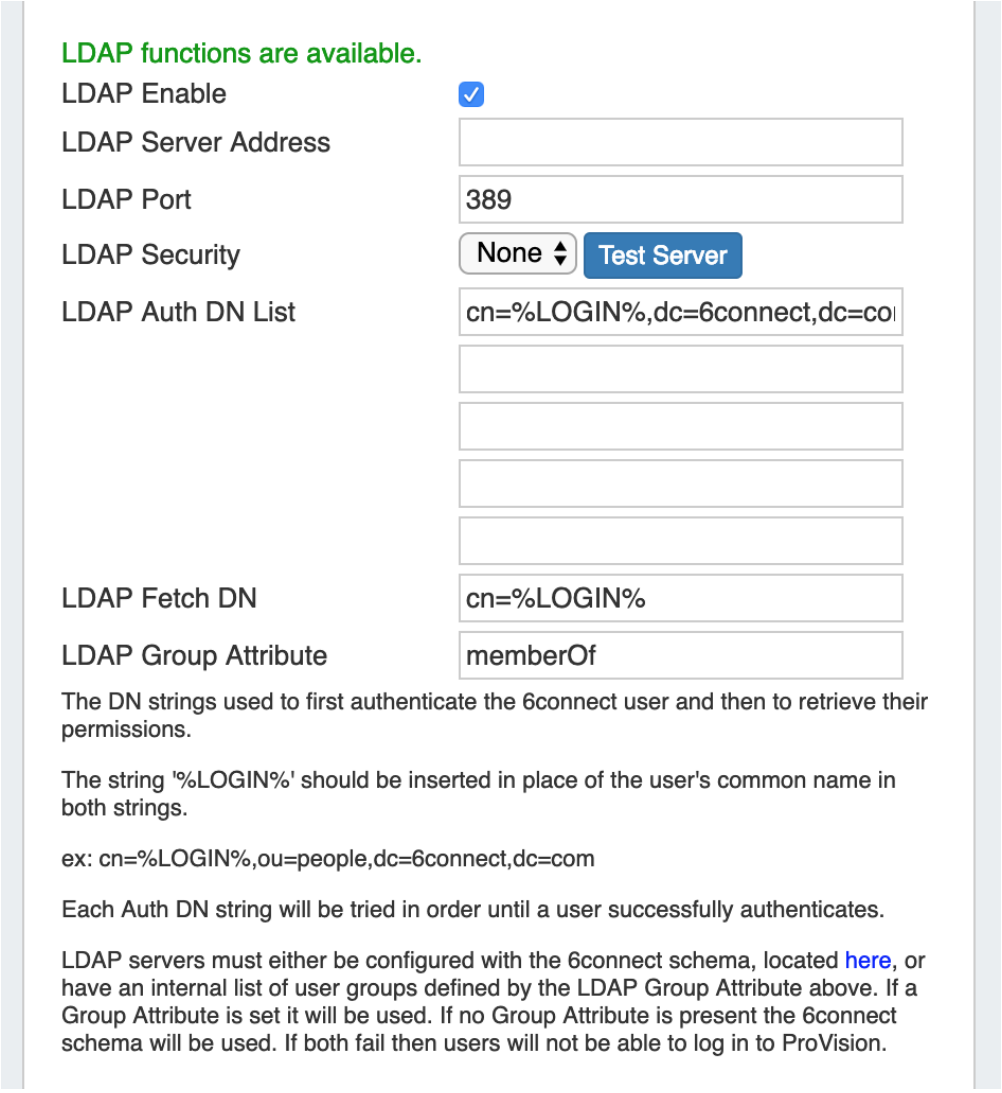
**Example:**

```
ldapsearch -b "dc=6connect,dc=com" -h 50.240.195.129 -D "cn=Mayor,ou=people,dc=6connect,dc=com" -w testpass
"cn=MajorMiner"
```

# Configure ProVision for LDAP Authentication

To configure the use of LDAP authentication with ProVision, follow the steps below.

- Log into 6connect ProVision
- Go to Admin -> General Settings -> Authentication
- Click the LDAP Enable checkbox.
- Fill in the hostname or ip address, authentication port, LDAP Security, Auth DN, and Fetch DN.




Example values in this case would be:

LDAP Enable: (Checked)

LDAP Server Address: 52.240.195.12

LDAP Port: 389 ( or SSL/TLS port is 636)

LDAP Security: None

LDAP Auth DN: cn=%LOGIN%,ou=people,dc=6connect,dc=com

LDAP Fetch DN: cn=%LOGIN%

Setting default login authentication options

In the login screen, you would select the authentication method from the dropdown. If you like, you can set the default login option in the following way:

Go to the /data/globals.php and open in vi (or other editor). Add in the following text as the last line of the file (before the closing ?>)

define('DEFAULT_LOGIN_TYPE', 'radius');

Acceptable values are "local", "radius" and "ldap". If this line is not present in globals.php, the default option is "local".
Using SSL encryption

To use SSL encryption with LDAP, the ldap.conf file must be correctly configured on the ProVision server.

Typically, the LDAP configuration file is kept at "/etc/ldap/ldap.conf".  Make sure the following line is present:

```
TLS_REQCERT allow
```

and restart the webserver.

# RADIUS Authentication

# RADIUS Authentication

ProVision supports 6connect vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) for use with RADIUS authentication. To use these attributes, you must perform the following procedures:


- RADIUS Authentication
  - Add the 6connect VSA to the Radius Installation
  - Configure Radius Accounts
  - Test Radius Accounts
  - Configure ProVision for Radius Authentication


## Add the 6connect VSA to the Radius Installation

To use the 6connect VSA, the attributes must be defined on the RADIUS server. Add the following RADIUS dictionary file to your RADIUS server and name it dictionary.6connect:

**ProVision 4.0 and greater:**

```
VENDOR 6connect 36009

BEGIN-VENDOR 6connect

ATTRIBUTE 6connect_user_group 10 string
#A 6connect User Group to which this user belongs.

END-VENDOR 6connect
```

Make sure to add the following to the primary dictionary file:  $INCLUDE dictionary.6connect

## Configure Radius Accounts

On the Radius server, configure the user accounts that will have access to the ProVision system.

An example of a ProVision account configuration for the user file on a Freeradius system for ProVision 4.0 and greater:

**Example:** To add a new radius user, edit the 'users' file found at /etc/raddb/users and add a block like:

**Setting up a RADIUS account**

```
bobber Cleartext-Password := "hello"
6connect_user_group = "Global Admins,Group 2,Group 1,Group Nonexistant"
```

The Radius server must be restarted every time you add, remove, or modify users. To restart the Radius server, use this command:

```
/etc/init.d/radiusd restart
```

Note on RADIUS attributes

There are many Radius attributes, but '6connect_user_group' is the one used by 6connect ProVision. It is a comma-separated list of all the group names that the user belongs to.

## Test Radius Accounts

For ProVision 4.0 and higher, test and response should look like the following:

To query a radius server, use the following command format:

```
radtest [USERNAME] [USERPASSWORD] [SERVER] 0 [SECRET]
```

**Example:**

```
radtest bobber hello 208.39.140.106 0 6connect
```

A successful response will look like this:

```
Sending Access-Request of id 198 to 208.39.140.106 port 1812
User-Name = "bobber"
User-Password = "hello"
NAS-IP-Address = 67.221.240.229
NAS-Port = 0
Message-Authenticator = 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
rad_recv: Access-Accept packet from host 208.39.104.106 port 1812, id=198, length=69
Attr-10 = 0x476c6f62616c2041646d696e732c47726f757020322c47726f757020312c47726f7570204e6f6e6578697374616e74
```

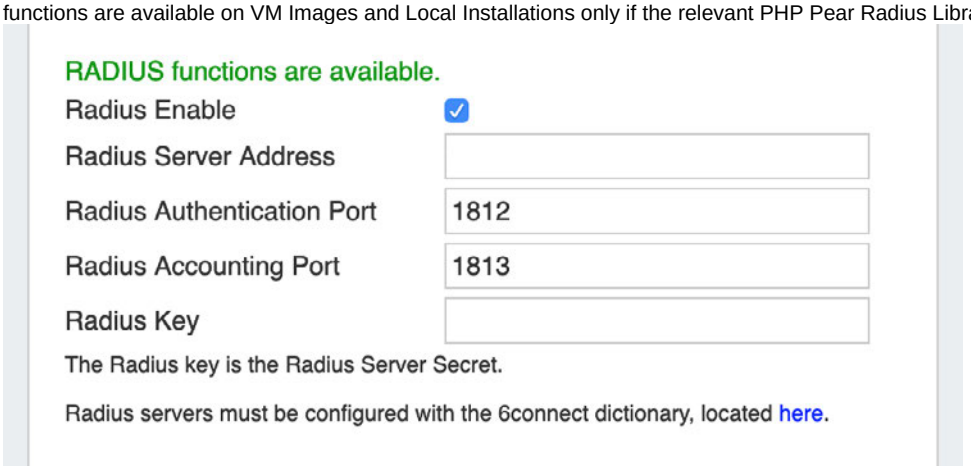
A rejected response may look like this:

```
Sending Access-Request of id 68 to 208.39.140.106 port 1812
User-Name = "bobberbro"
User-Password = "hello"
NAS-IP-Address = 67.221.240.229
NAS-Port = 0
Message-Authenticator = 0x00000000000000000000000000000000
rad_recv: Access-Reject packet from host 208.39.104.106 port 1812, id=68, length=20
```

# Configure ProVision for Radius Authentication

To configure the use of Radius authentication with ProVision, follow the steps below.

- Log into 6connect ProVision
- Go to Admin -> Authentication
- Ensure that Radius functions are marked as available.  Radius functions are always available on 6connect cloud instances.  Radius functions are available on VM Images and Local Installations only if the relevant PHP Pear Radius Libraries have been installed.




- Click the Radius Enable checkbox.
- Fill in the hostname or ip address, authentication ports, accounting port, and shared Radius key as specified.

Setting default login options

In the login screen, you would select the authentication method from the dropdown. If you like, you can set the default login option in the following way:

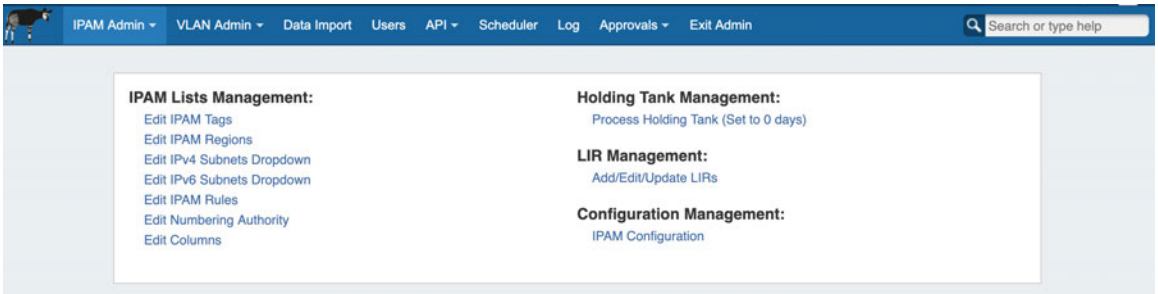
Go to the /data/globals.php and open in vi (or other editor). Add in the following text as the last line of the file (before the closing ?>)

define('DEFAULT_LOGIN_TYPE', 'radius');

Acceptable values are "local", "radius" and "ldap". If this line is not present in globals.php, the default option is "local".

# IPAM Administration

## Overview




IPAM Administration is accessed through the Admin area of ProVision. It includes sections to manage IPAM Lists, the Holding Tank, LIR, and IPAM Configuration.


- Overview
  - IPAM Lists Management
  - Holding Tank Management
  - LIR Management and Use
  - IPAM Configuration
  - Additional Information:


## IPAM Lists Management

These links are to the respective IPAM Parameters that are available for customization - tags, regions, subnets, IPAM Rules, Numbering Authority, and Columns.

See the IPAM Parameters page for additional details and examples for updating IPAM Parameters, IPAM customization, and IPAM Rules for additional information on managing IPAM Rules.

## Holding Tank Management

When IPv4/IPv6 resources are reclaimed, they are placed into the "Holding Tank". This feature allows for a block to stay out of the available address pools until the administrator approves it.

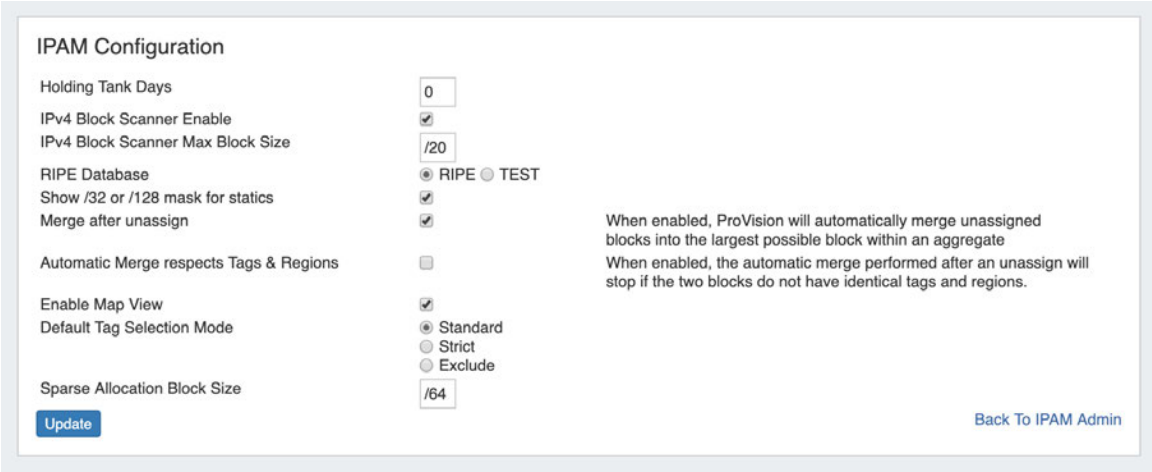
See the Holding Tank Management page for more details.

## LIR Management and Use

ProVision supports multiple LIRs from the UI. This allows users to select from various LIRs when they want to update SWIP/RPSL information for a subnet allocation.

See the LIR Management and Use page for more details.

## IPAM Configuration




**Holding Tank Days:** This is the number of days that a block will be held in "Holding" status before being available to be moved to the Available pool, and thus ready to be assigned. By default this is initially set to 30 days.

**IPv4 Block Scanner Enable:** This is a beta feature that allows a user to scan a block of IPv4 space and show host counts of responding addresses.

**IPv4 Block Scanner Max Block Size:** The max size (mask) the IPv4 Block Scanner considers (Command Line tool only).

**RIPE Database:** Select the desired database - RIPE or TEST.

**Show /32 or /128 mask for statics:** Enable to show /32 or /128 masks.

**Merge after unassign:** Select to automatically merge adjacent blocks when they become available after unassign.

**Automatic Merge respects Tags & Regions:** When "Merge after unassign" is selected, the automatic merge will stop if the two blocks do not have matching tags and regions.

**Enable Map View:** Select to enable a map view of assigned aggregates on the IPAM tab, determined by assigned region.

**Default Tag Selection Mode:** Set which radio button will be selected by default when working with tags in the IPAM Gadget

**Sparse Allocation Block Size:** Sets the size of the blocks generated for IPv6 Sparse Allocation

# Additional Information:

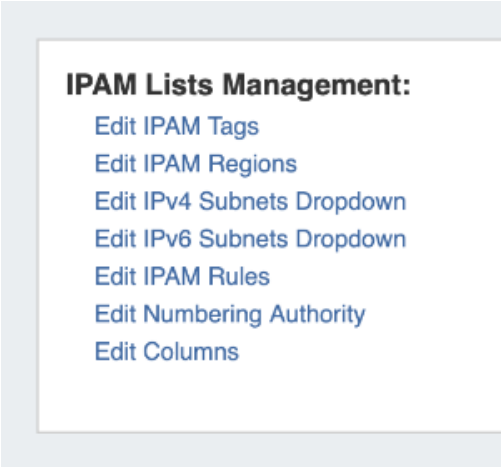
- IPAM Parameters
- IPAM Rules
- Holding Tank Management
- RIR Integration: SWIP/RPSL
- LIR Management and Use

# IPAM Parameters

# IPAM Parameters - Overview

IPAM Lists Management is access from the Admin section of ProVision, under the **IPAM Admin** tab.

Through this area, admin users can update IPAM tags, IPAM Regions, IPv4 / IPv6 subnets, IPAM Rules, Numbering Authority, and IPAM Columns.



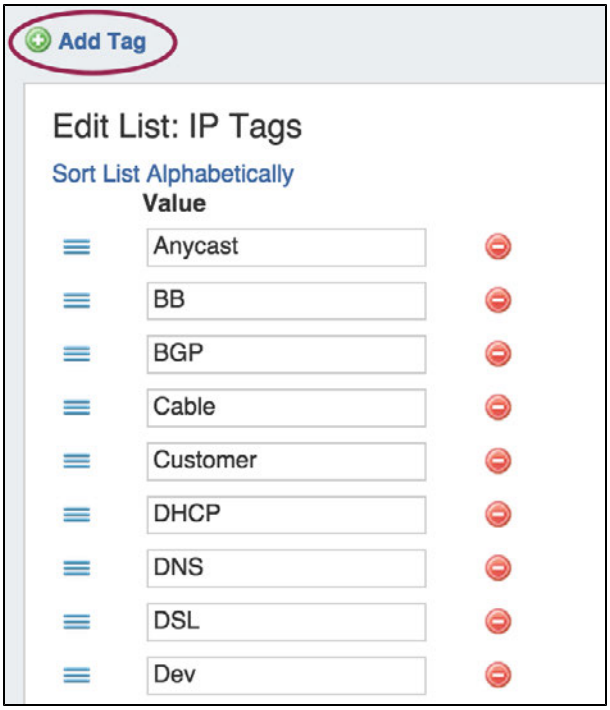


- IPAM Parameters - Overview
  - Add / Edit IPAM Tags
  - Add / Edit Regions
    - Applying a Google Geocoding API Key:
    - Managing Regions
    - Valid / Invalid Regions
  - Add / Edit IPv4 / IPv6 Subnet Dropdowns
  - Edit IPAM Rules
  - Numbering Authority
    - Available Domain Types
    - Working with Numbering Domains
      - Create a Numbering Domain
      - Number Domain Actions
  - Edit IPAM Columns
  - Additional Information


## Add / Edit IPAM Tags

When you are applying properties to IP blocks, you have the option to edit tags. IPAM Tags are used in a number of areas in ProVision and can be added or edited from this screen.

To add a new IPAM tag, click on "Add Tag" at the top of the Edit IPAM Tags page.




Then, type in the desired name value for the new tag, and hit "Add Tag".

To **edit** a tag, simply type your changes in to the text box with the tag name. Tags with unsaved changes will be highlighted until saved.

To **reorder** the tag list, click and hold on the "list" icon (three lines) to the left of the tag name, then drag to the desired location in the list and release.

To **delete** a tag, click on the red "delete" symbol to the right of the tag name.

When complete, be sure to click on the "Save" button to save your changes.

# Add / Edit Regions

Google Geocode API Key Requirement

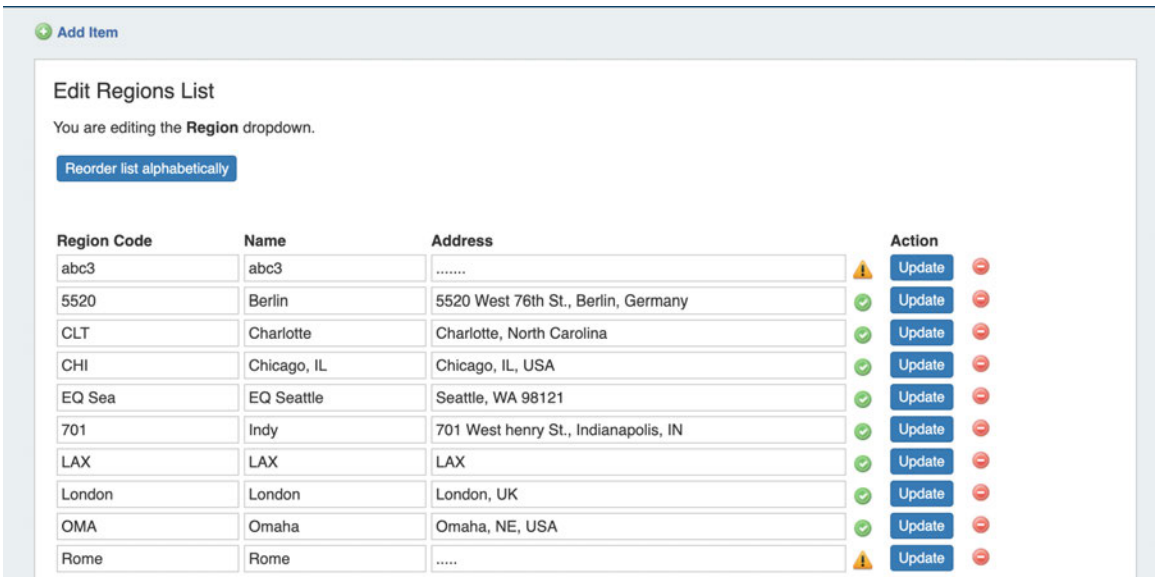
⚠️ *Due to changes in Google's licensing and Geocoding API, the previous geolocation method used in ProVision is no longer supported. IPAM Regions now requires a Google Geocode API Key in order for IPAM Maps to properly determine a Region's location.*

*6connect is exploring adding additional map integration options for ProVision.*

*Any customers who require an alternative geocode option supported apart from Google Geocode API key, please contact us at feedback@6connect.com.*

If enabled, Regions can function as a way to further define your network segments (regional tie-downs, etc.). This gives you flexibility for allocations and assignments beyond simply using Tags. Regions are used by the IPAM Gadget, the IPAM Manage UI, and IPAM Map View.

Access IPAM regions from **IPAM Admin** **Edit IPAM Regions**.




The Regions display includes fields for Region Code, Name, and Address.

- 'Region Code' is the shorthand name that will show in the IPAM Gadget and IPAM Manage screens.
- 'Name' is the long form name value that will be written to the database, used for API calls, and is also used for some filter selectors.
- The 'Address' field is used by IPAM map view (via Google Geocode API) to geolocate aggregates with that assigned region. Address may be in the form of a City / State / Country, a full street address, a company name, or other search term that Google API can return a location for. The more accurate your address information, the more accurate map view will be with your aggregate locations. An "address" value that appears invalid to Google Geocode API will display a yellow ⚠️ warning symbol.

To use regions, you will need to apply a Google Geocode API Key.

## Applying a Google Geocoding API Key:

**Step 1: Obtain a Google Geocoding API Key**

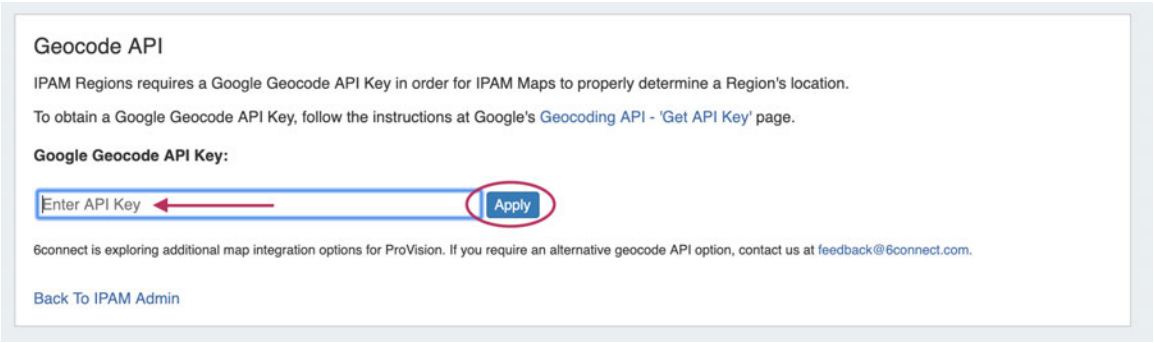
*To get a Google Geocoding API Key, follow the instructions listed here:*

*How to get a Google Geocoding API Key*

*Note: In order to obtain a Google Geocoding API Key, a company must have a subscription enabled to Google Cloud Platform Console.*

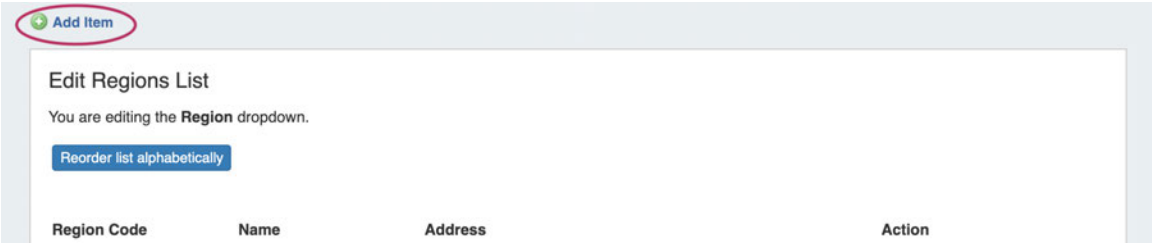
**Step 2: Assign the API Key to IPAM Regions**

*Once assigned a Google Geocoding API Key, paste the API key into the IPAM regions page under "Apply google geocode api key" and click the "Apply" button.*

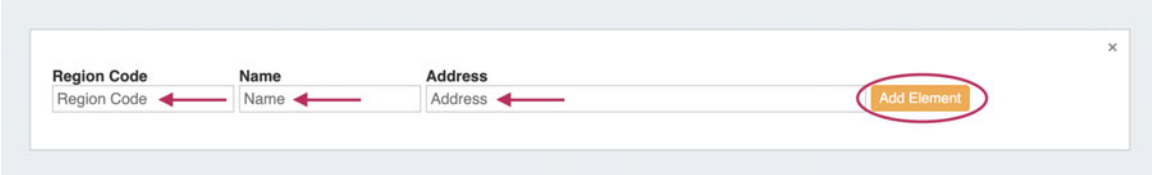


# Managing Regions

To **add** a new Region item, click the "Add Item" link at the top of the screen.




In the form that appears, type in a new Region Code, Name, and Address into the empty fields and click "Add Element".




The new Region will be added to the Region list.

To **edit** a region, simply type your changes in to the text box with the region name. Then, click on the "Update" Button.

To **delete** a region, click on the red "delete" symbol to the right of the region name.

To **reorder** the regions list, click on the "Reorder list alphabetically" button.

# Valid / Invalid Regions

Valid addresses (according to Google's API) will show a green check mark next to the address field, invalid addresses (unable to be mapped) will show a yellow exclamation mark.

If you are getting unexpected results from the Regions validity checker, copy the address input into to ProVision into Google Search, and check out the top result(s) - sometimes, Google's API may be finding different results than you expected. For best results, be as specific as possible in

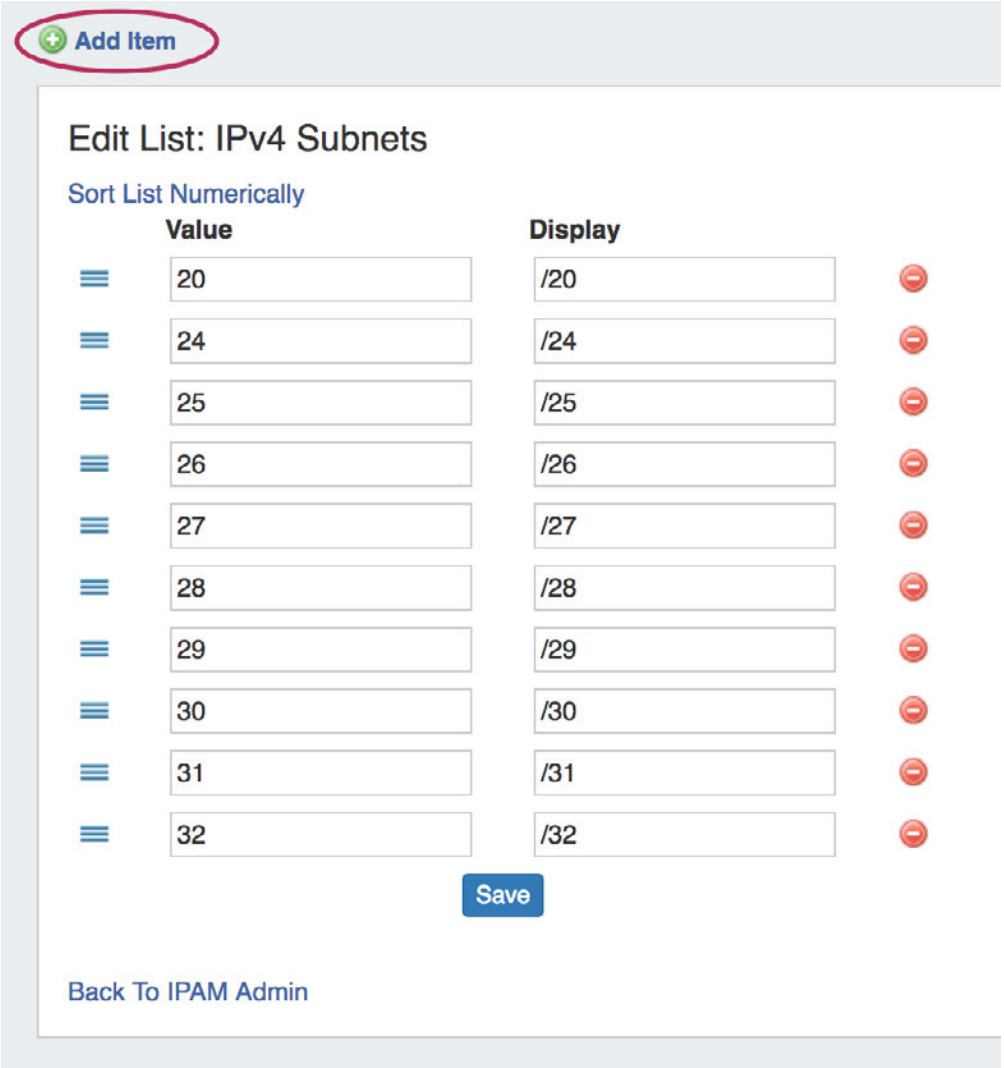
# Add / Edit IPv4 / IPv6 Subnet Dropdowns

When assigning blocks using the "Smart Assign" function in the IPAM Gadget, the user has an option to assign an IP resource by allocation size. ProVision supports assignments down to a single host level (/32 for IPv4, /128 for IPv6).

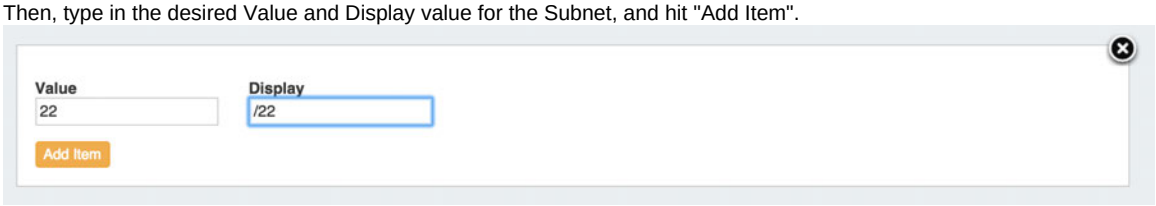
Note on Editing the Subnet Dropdown

Keep in mind that this is a global edit. If the values in the dropdown are changed, it will affect ALL users of the ProVision application.

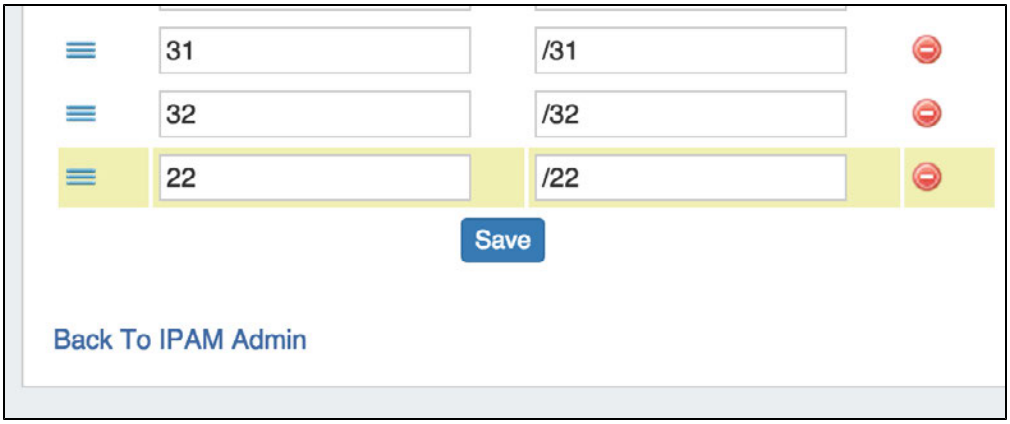
To add a new Subnet item, click on "Add Item" at the top of the Edit List: IPv4 or IPv6 Subnets page.




Then, type in the desired Value and Display value for the Subnet, and hit "Add Item".




After adding a new item, it will show at the bottom of the list highlighted in yellow. Hit "Save" to save your changes.




To **edit** a subnet, simply type your changes in to the text box. Entries with unsaved changes will be highlighted until saved.

To **reorder** the subnet list, click and hold on the "list" icon (three lines) to the left of the subet, then drag to the desired location in the list and release.

After adding or editing a subnet, you may wish to clean up the list order by hitting "Sort List Numerically" at the top of the page to reset the list order including the new entry.

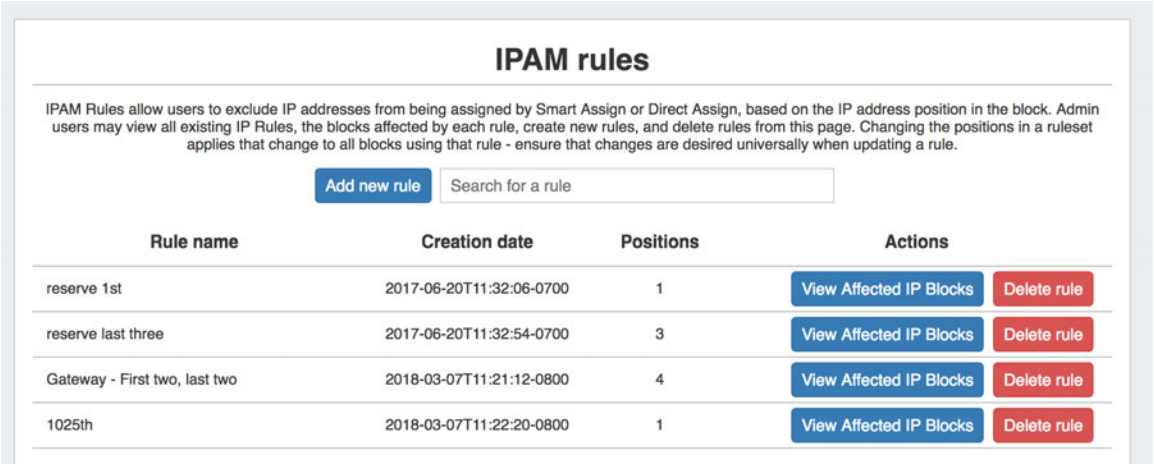
To **delete** a subnet, click on the red "delete" symbol to the right of the subnet entry.

When complete, be sure to click on the "Save" button to save your changes.

# Edit IPAM Rules

IPAM Rules allow for certain address positions within an IP Block to be reserved when utilizing Direct Assign and Smart Assign.

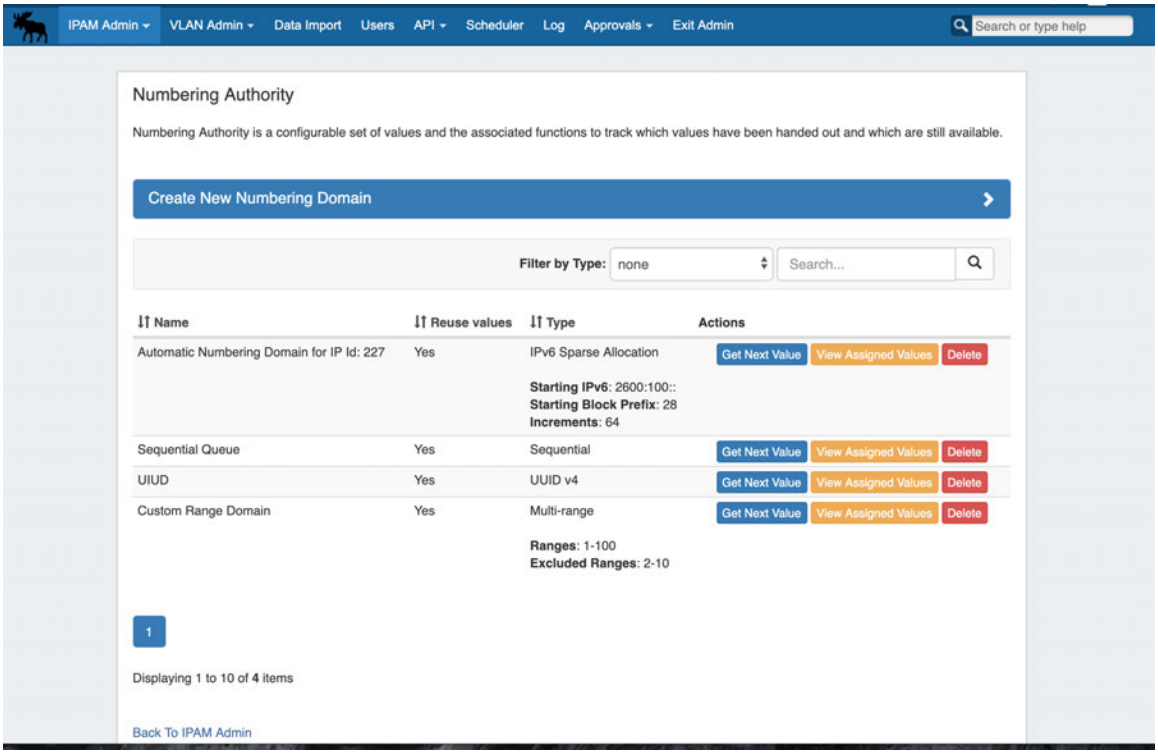
These rulesets may be managed in the "Edit IPAM Rules" section of IPAM Admin.




For additional details, see IPAM Rules.

# Numbering Authority

Numbering Authority allows Admin users to configure domain sets of values, for use with associated ProVision functions or external number tracking.




With Numbering Authority, you can create new numbering domains, track which values have been handed out, free values no longer in use, generate the next sequence value, and associate keys-value pairs to a number value. Numbering Domains may be used with ProVision's APIv2 to generate numbers for use within ProVision instances or custom applications.

## Available Domain Types

Four numbering domain types are available in Numbering Authority: Sequential, Multi-Range, UIUDv4, and IPv6 Sparse Allocation.

**Sequential:**

Provides a sequential number domain starting with '0' and progressing in numerical order. Potential Applications: Ticketing Queues, Customer Numbers

**Multi-Range:**

User-defined numbers and number ranges (e.g.: 2-3,4-6, 25, 27-28) to include or exclude as available. Potential Applications: VLANs

**UIUD v4:**

Generates a Universally Unique Identifier according to v4 (Random) standard. Potential Applications: Unique Identifiers

**IPv6 Sparse Allocate:**

Determines the next IPv6 block to assign to evenly distribute assignments throughout the provided range. Used with the IPAM IPv6 Aggregate Sparse Allocate function. See: Working with IP Aggregates . Applications: ProVision IPv6 Sparse Allocation

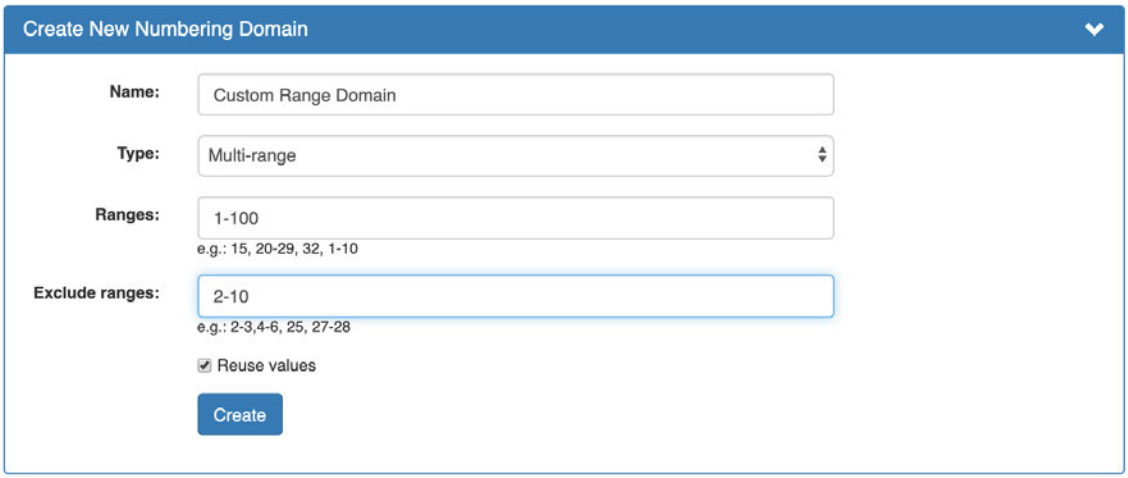
## Working with Numbering Domains

See below for additional information on creating Numbering Domains and using domain actions.

### Create a Numbering Domain

Go to Admin  IPAM Admin, and select the "Numbering Authority" page.

Create a new numbering domain by expanding the "Create New Numbering Domain" section, then typing in a name for the new domain and selecting a domain type.



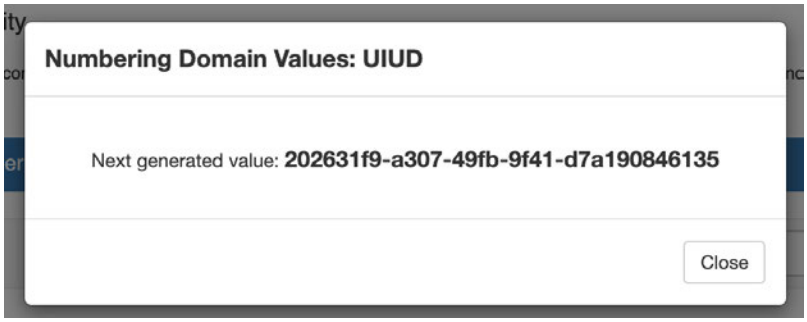

Enter information for the specific domain type, if necessary, and select whether to allow number reuse.  When done, click "Create".

## Number Domain Actions

Once a numbering domain is created, you may perform the following actions:

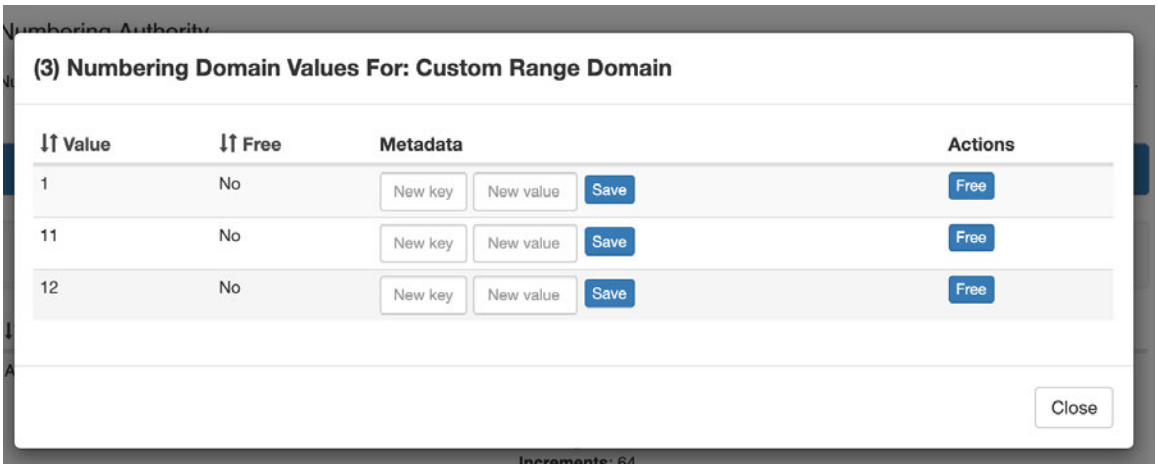
### Get Next Value:

Gets the next value in the domain, adds it to the list of used domain values (assigns to the domain), and displays that value to the user.




### View Assigned Values:

View values that are assigned to the domain, view used/free status, free assigned blocks, and save key-value metadata to values.




- Sort by Value and Free/Used values by clicking the column names
- To add metadata to a value, enter your information into the "Key" and "Value" fields under Metadata, then click "Save".
- Free a value for reuse, if allowed, by clicking "Free" under the value Actions column.

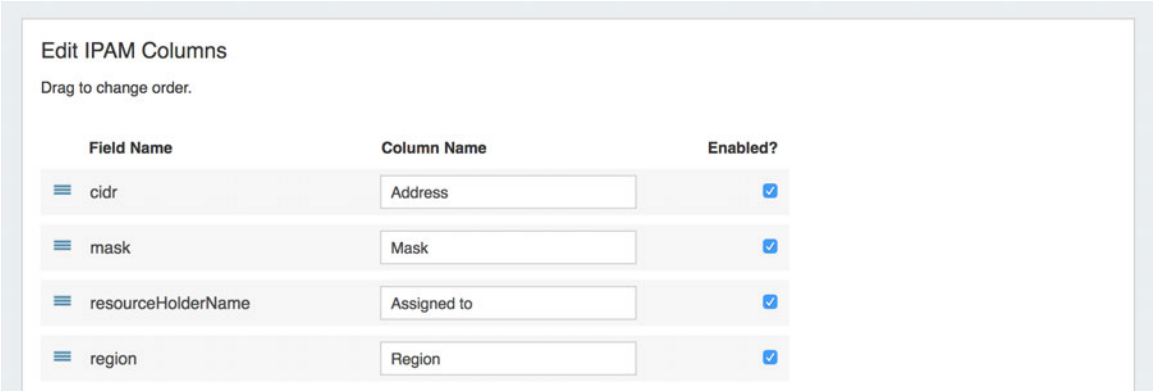
### Delete:

Deletes the numbering domain.

## Edit IPAM Columns

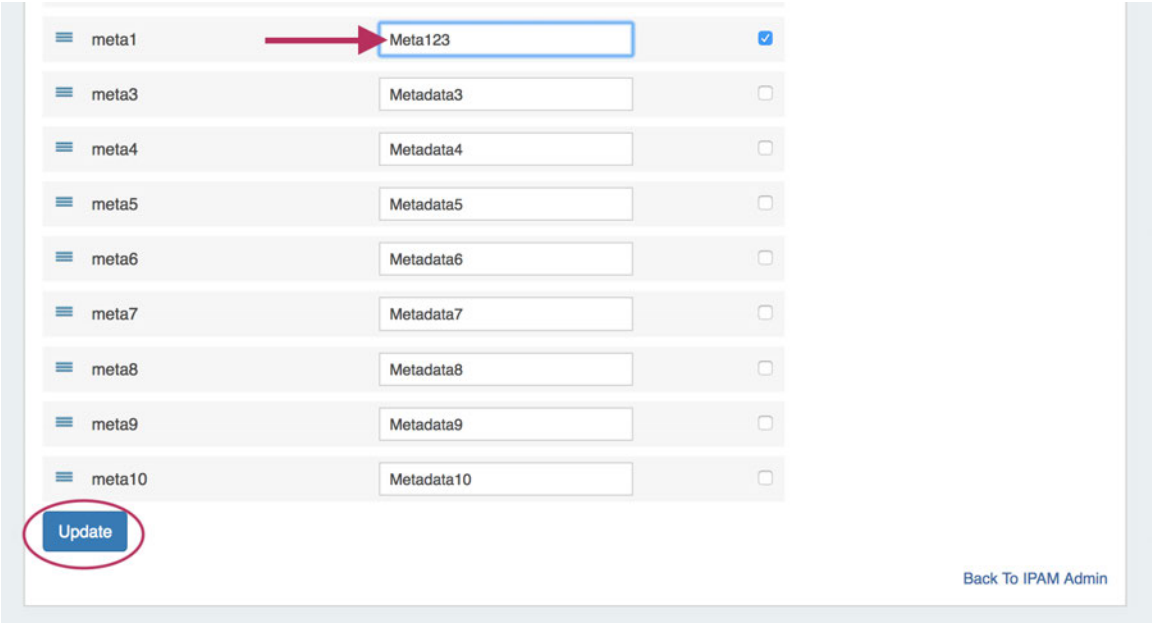
The Edit IPAM Columns page lets you change the order, column name, and visibility of IPAM columns globally for IPAM areas in ProVision.

Eleven default ProVision fields and ten user-defined "Metadata" fields are available for customization.




Keep in mind that "Edit Columns" is a global edit. If the values for order, header, or visibility are changed, it will affect ALL users of the ProVision application!

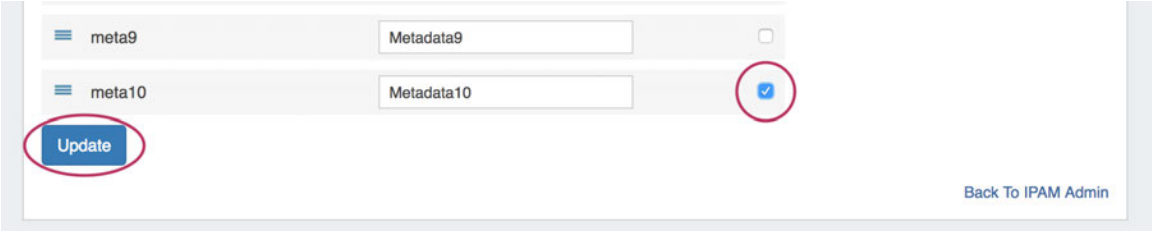
To **edit** a column name, simply type your changes in to the text box. and click the "Update" button.




To **reorder** the columns, click and hold on the "list" icon (three lines) to the left of the subet, then drag to the desired location in the list and release.

To **toggle visibility** for a column, click in the checkmark field to the right of the column name to enable / disable visibility.

This shows or hides the column in both IPAM Manage and the IPAM Gadget, and affects all users.




When complete, be sure to click on the "Update" button to save your changes.

# Additional Information

Continue on to the following pages for additional information on IPAM Admin tasks in ProVision:

- IPAM Rules
- Holding Tank Management
- LIR Management and Use

For additional information on non-admin IPAM areas, see:

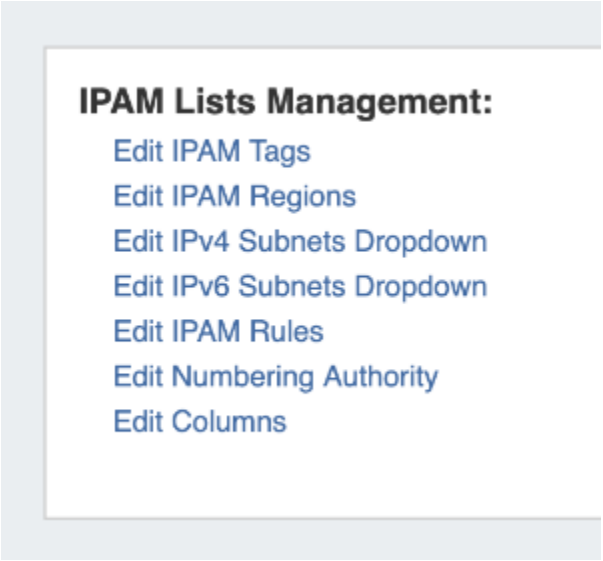
- IPAM Tab

# IPAM Rules

# IPAM Rules

IPAM Rules are accessed from the Admin section of ProVision, under the **IPAM Admin** tab by clicking on "Edit IPAM Rules".

In the IPAM Admin "Edit IPAM Rules" section, Admin users may view all existing IPAM Rules, the blocks affected by each rule, and delete rules.





- IPAM Rules
  - IPAM Rules Overview
  - IPAM Rules Behavior and Bounds:
  - Edit IPAM Rules Page
  - Add an IPAM Rule:
    - IP Rule Positions
  - Edit an IPAM Rule:
  - View Affected IP Blocks:
  - Delete an IP Rule:
  - Working with IP Rules:
  - Additional Information


## IPAM Rules Overview

IPAM Rules allow users to exclude IP addresses from being assigned by Smart Assign or Direct Assign, based on the address position in the block (ie, first address, last address, $n^{th}$ from last).

Reserved addresses are set by their position in the block, starting with position '1' to represent the first address, '2' the second, and so on (1,2,3). The last position in the block is represented as '0', with each step backwards set as the next lowest negative integer (0, -1, -2, 3). Rulesets may reserve one or many positions in a block, so you can choose to reserve only the first address (1), only the last address (0), or combinations as desired - reserving the first three and last three addresses on a block would look like (1,2,3,0,1,-2).

IPAM Rules may be created and applied to blocks under the IPAM Tab -> IPAM Manage screen, in the Action Menu for the desired block. Additional management tasks are available under the IPAM Admin -> "Edit IPAM Rules" page.

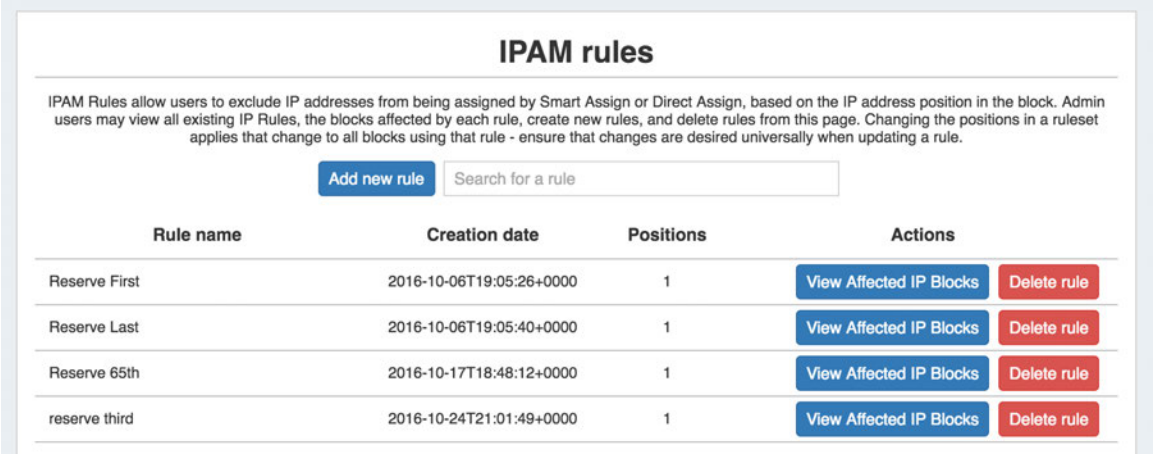
## IPAM Rules Behavior and Bounds:

- Rules may be applied to IPv4 or IPv6 blocks
- Once a rule has been applied to a block, the addresses at the selected rule positions will by bypassed when Smart Assigning from that block, or return an error when Direct Assigning that position from the IPAM Gadget.

- Only one ruleset may be applied per block - so if a rule already exists for reserving the first address in a block, and a second rule exists for reserving the last address, and you would like to use both, a third, new ruleset must be created that combines reserving both first and last.
- Rules cascade down the IP tree. If a rule is applied to a /24, child blocks under that /24 (/30s, etc) will have the same ruleset applied.
- Changing the positions in a ruleset applies that change to all blocks using that rule - ensure that changes are desired universally when updating a rule.
- If a rule's position(s) is outside of the boundary of the selected block (for example, trying to reserve the 60th address of /30), an error message will notify the user and prompt for a different rule selection.

# Edit IPAM Rules Page

In the IPAM Admin "Edit IPAM Rules" section, Admin users may view all existing IPAM Rules, the blocks affected by each rule, create new rules, and delete existing rules.




**Add New Rule:** Opens the "Manage Ruleset" interface where a new rule may be created. This module is also accessible from the "IP Rules" option on the IPAM Manage Action Menu.

**Search:** Filter the list of rules by searching for a rule name.

**Rule Name:** The user-created name of the rule. **Clicking** on the rule name will bring up the Manage Ruleset screen, showing an editable list of rule positions.

**Creation Date:** Date the rule was created.

**Positions:** How many positions are reserved by the rule.

**View Applied Networks:** Shows a list of blocks that have the rule applied.

**Delete Rule:** Deletes the selected rule.

# Add an IPAM Rule:

Adding an IPAM Rule from the Admin area of ProVision functions the same way as if accessed from IPAM Manage.

Click on "Add new Rule", and the Manage Ruleset screen will appear, prompting you to enter a Ruleset name, and select positions to reserve.

## IP Rule Positions

Reserved addresses are set by their position in the block. Positions start at '1', for the first address in a block, and step up by one for each subsequent IP address.  The last position in a block is '0', representing the last address, and steps down a negative integer for each position from last - so the last three addresses in a block would be represented by (0, -1, -2). When reserving multiple positions, the typed order of the positions does not matter.

**Position examples:**

(1) - Reserves the first IP

(0) - Reserves the last IP

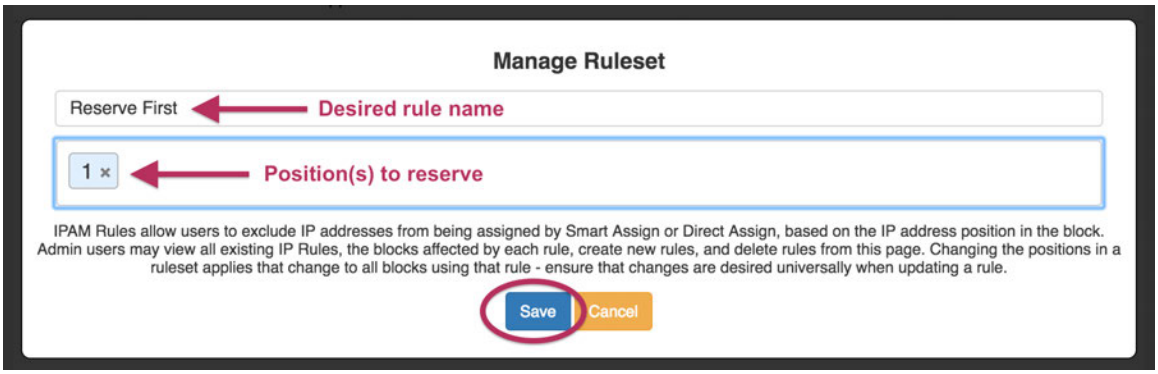
(1,2,3) - Reserves the first three IPs

(0, -1, -2) - Reserves the last three IPs.

(1,2,3,0,-1,-2) - Reserves the first three and last three IPs

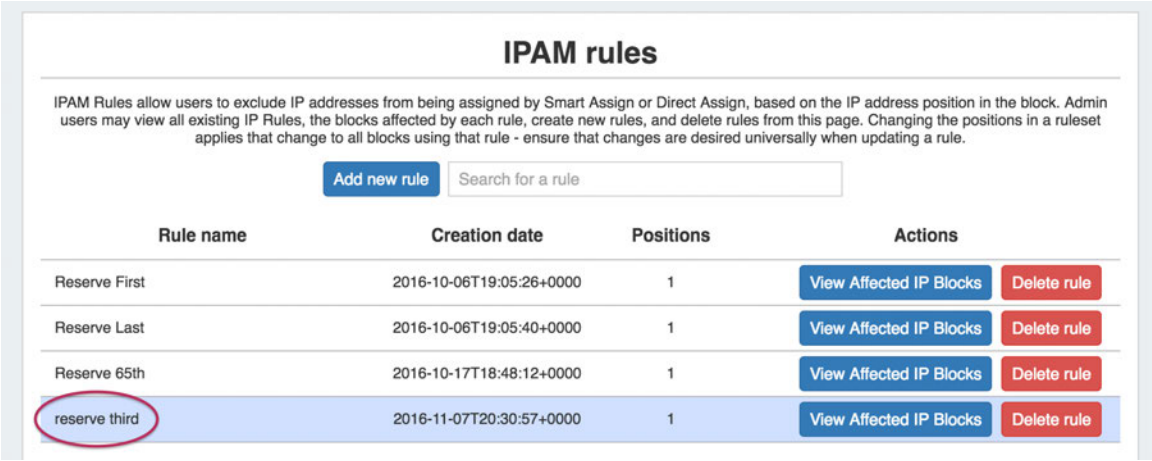
Type in the desired name for the new rule, and one or multiple positions (denoted by integers separated by commas) into the box below the name.

When complete, click the "Save" button, or hit "Cancel" to exit without saving. The Rule preview screen will appear.



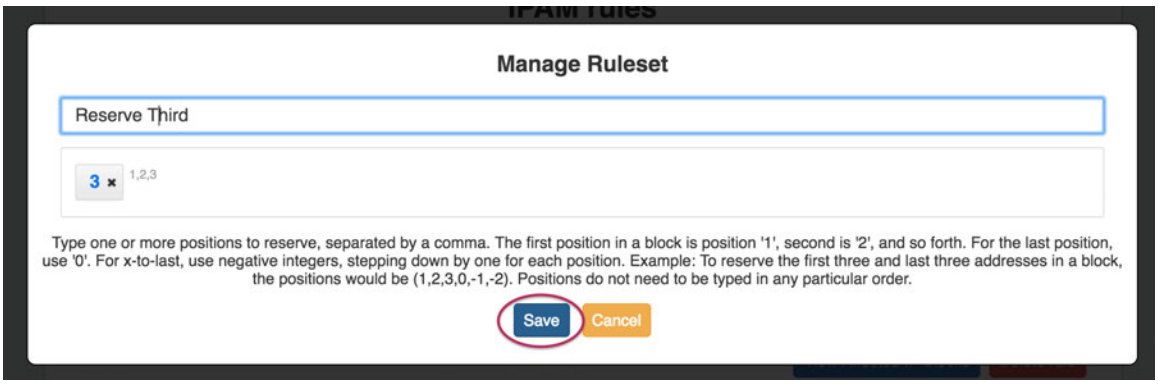

## Edit an IPAM Rule:

From the Admin IPAM Rules page, click on the Rule entry in the list when highlighted.




This will bring up the "Manage Ruleset" module, showing the rule name and the currently reserved positions for the ruleset.

To change the rule name, simply type the desired changes into the Rule Name text box, and click "Save".



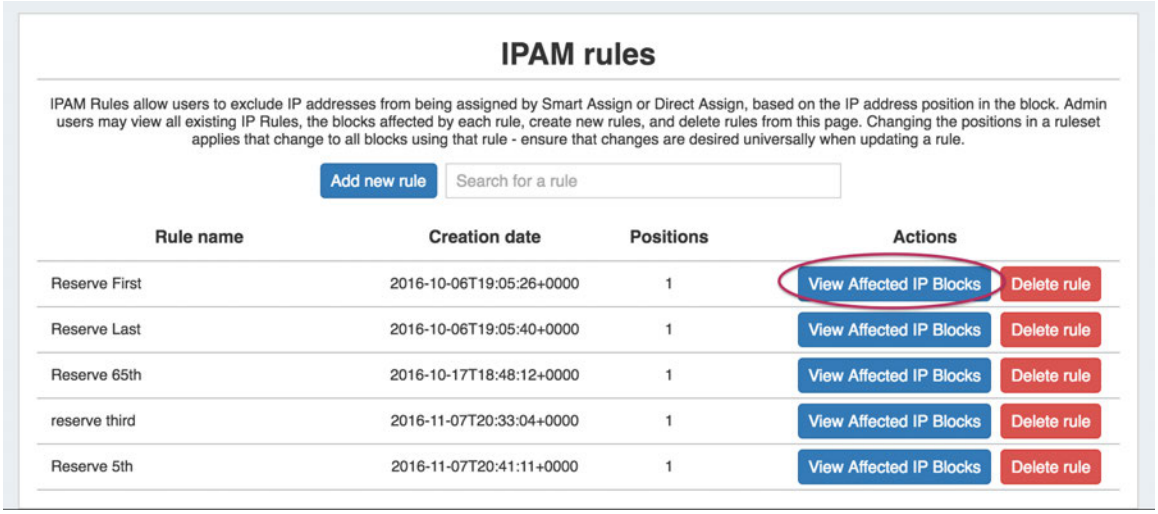
To edit the positions in the rule, either delete a position by clicking on the "x" for the position, or add a new position by typing the position number and then hit enter.

When you are done with your changes, click the "Save" button.

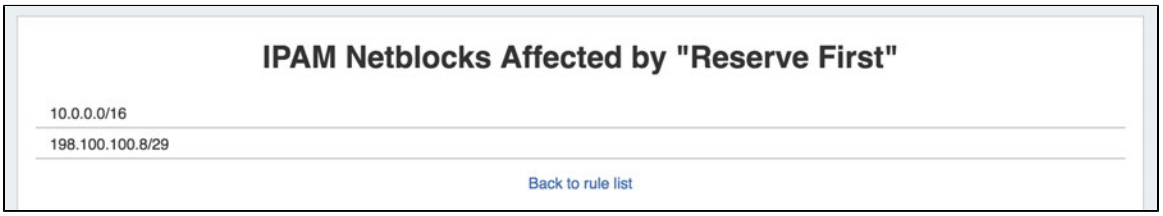
To discard changes, or exit the module, click "Cancel".

Note: When positions are changed, the change applies to all blocks using that rule! Ensure that the change is desired universally for all blocks using that rule prior to updating.

## View Affected IP Blocks:



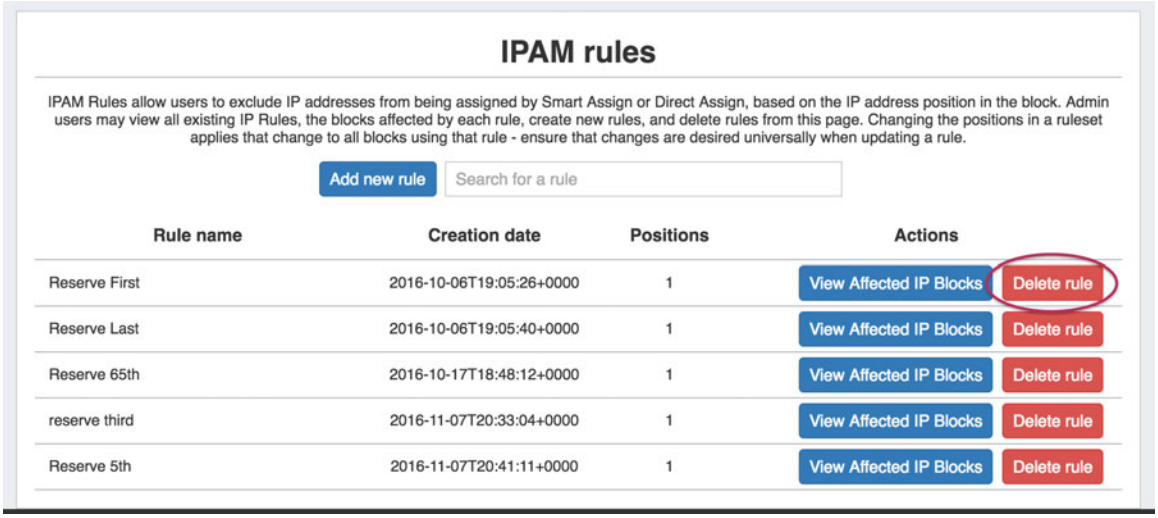

Clicking on "View Affected IP Blocks" in the IP Rules list for a rule will show a list of blocks that currently have the rule applied. It is recommended that you check the affected blocks list before editing or deleting an IP Rule to ensure that the changes are desired for the affected blocks.




## Delete an IP Rule:

To delete an IP Rule, click on the "Delete Rule" button for the rule in the IPAM Rules list. This will permanently delete the rule and remove it from any blocks currently affected by the rule.

If you only wish to remove a rule from a block, but retain the rule for future use (or to retain use by other blocks), please see "Remove a rule from a block" detailed at Working with IP Rules.




## Working with IP Rules:

For additional information on common IP Rules tasks that do not require Admin access, see Working with IP Rules in the ProVision User Guide.

Detailed walkthroughs of creating a new rule, applying an existing rule to a block, and removing a rule from a block are provided.

## Additional Information

See the following pages for additional information on IPAM Admin tasks in ProVision:

- IPAM Parameters
- Holding Tank Management
- LIR Management and Use

For additional information on non-admin IPAM areas, see:

- IPAM Tab

# Holding Tank Management

# Holding Tank Management

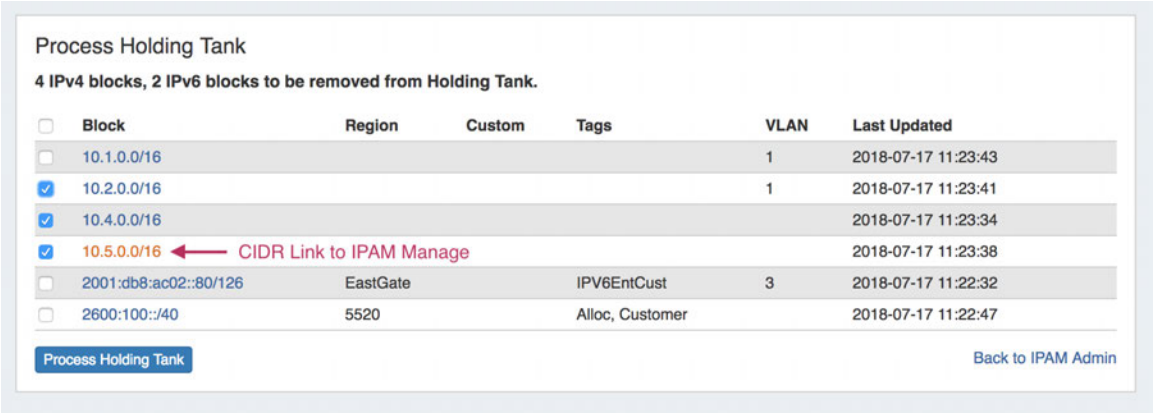
## How it Works

The "**Process Holding Tank**" link will process all selected blocks with the "Holding" status older than the "Holding Tank Days" setting, and change them to the "Available" status.

The default time for blocks to be held prior to showing the in holding tank is 30 days, but this number is customizable from the IPAM Configuration page.

While in the Holding Tank, you may open the IPAM Manage page for a specific block by clicking on the block's CIDR - this allows you to review the block or manually manage it otherwise.

Regardless of the holding tank days setting, blocks may be manually reset to available at any time.




Select individual blocks to release from holding by clicking the checkbox for the desired block(s), then click "Process Holding Tank".

To release all blocks from the Holding Tank, click the "select all" checkbox at the top left header of the table, ensuring all blocks are selected, then click "Process Holding Tank".

When an administrator elects to process the Holding Tank, it will show the information above.

Pro-Tip!

If you need to do a bulk "empty" of the holding tank, set the "Holding Tank Days" setting to "0" days. This will allow you to process all blocks in holding immediately.

## Holding Tank Permissions

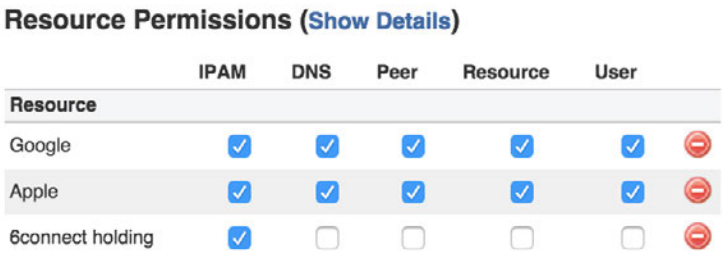
For blocks with subassignments, the Holding Tank can utilize ProVision's permissions structure in order to override holding. This allows the subbassigned block to be set as assigned to the parent resource.

**Using this feature requires:**

1) A block (block 1) assigned to a Resource (Resource A) that allows subassignments.

2) A block (block 2) subassigned to another Resource (Resource B) from the parent (block 1).

3) A User assigned to a Group with permissions to both Resource A and Resource B, and IPAM permissions for the 6connect Holding Resource. See Users and Groups for additional information on setting up Users and Group permissions.




**Steps:**

1) While logged in as the user with the above permissions, go to the IPAM manage screen for the subassigned block (block 2).

2) Select "Unassign" from the Action Menu. The 'Assigned To' column will change from showing "Resource B" to "Holding"

3) For the same block, select "Override Holding" from the Action Menu. This is the step that setting the 6connect Holding resource permissions allows, that would otherwise be unaccessible.

4) You will then see the 'Assigned To' field change from "Holding" to "Resource A", as the assignment is reverted to match the parent level.

Override Holding through the permissions structure is intended only for blocks that are subassigned. It is not intended for blocks that are not subassigned. Setting holding permissions for non-subassigned blocks simply allows viewing of the block(s) in holding, and permissions do -not- extend to allowing overrides by design.

# Additional Information

See the following pages for additional information on IPAM Admin tasks in ProVision:

- IPAM Parameters
- IPAM Rules
- LIR Management and Use

For additional information on non-admin IPAM areas, see:

- IPAM Tab

# RIR Integration: SWIP/RPSL

# Overview

ProVision supports updating SWIP/RPSL functions for ARIN and RIPE blocks through simple reassigns using the RIR Integration action.


- Overview
  - RIR Integration
    - When do I use RIR Integration and Why?
    - What is Simple Re-assign?
  - Workflow
    - 1) LIR Setup
    - 2) Assign IP blocks to the ARIN or RIPE RIRs
    - 3) RIR Integration
      - ARIN / Update SWIP
      - RIPE / Update RPSL


## RIR Integration

### When do I use RIR Integration and Why?

From ARIN.net:

Organizations that receive space allocations from ARIN, either directly or as a downstream customer, must provide reassignment information back to ARIN. This information must be sent within seven days of the reassignment so that the WHOIS database may be maintained. ARIN also uses utilization history, projected requirements, and other information in order to make future space allocations.

From RIPE.net:

All RIPE assignments and allocations must be registered in the RIPE Database. This is necessary to ensure uniqueness and to support network operations.
Only allocations and assignments registered in the RIPE Database are considered valid. Registration of objects in the database is the final step in making an allocation or assignment. Registration data (range, contact information, status etc.) must be correct at all times (i.e. they have to be maintained).The RIPE community's policies require LIRs to register an inetnum object in the RIPE Database for their own infrastructure and customers' networks. LIRs must ensure registration information is correct and up to date at all times.

RIPE Integration

⚠️ You must be using an MD5 password to update RIPE objects from ProVision! Please refer to RIPE's authentication page for additional details:

https://www.ripe.net/manage-ips-and-asns/db/support/security/protecting-data#solving-authentication-problems

### What is Simple Re-assign?

From ARIN.net:

Used to subdelegate IP addresses to a customer that does not need to:

- subdelegate the addresses to their own customers
- maintain their own in-addr.arpa delegation
- display their own point of contact (POC) information.

It can also be used to change the customer name and address information (but not the range) on an existing simple reassignment and to remove simple reassignments. It is submitted by an ARIN Online user account linked to the parent organization's Admin or Tech POC, or the Tech POC for the resource.

# Workflow

## 1) LIR Setup

ProVision supports multiple LIRs (Local Internet Registries) in a single instance. This means that you have the ability to update SWIP/RPSL functions for a given allocation with the LIR information that you wish. LIRs are set up and managed from the IPAM Admin area of ProVision, and thus require Admin level permissions to set up.

While setting up the LIR, the POCs / Contact fields that are filled in will later be used for the RIR Integration.

For detailed step by step instructions, see:

LIR Management and Use

ARIN LIR Setup and Use

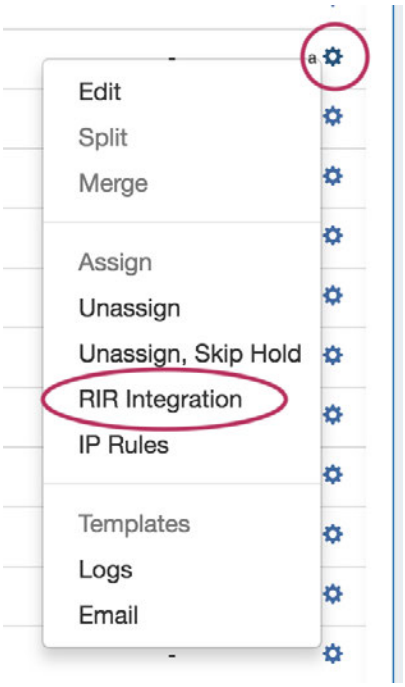
RIPE LIR Setup and Use

## 2) Assign IP blocks to the ARIN or RIPE RIRs

Assign an IP block to a Resource using the IPAM Gadget or the Assign function from the IPAM Manage screen. See Working with IP Blocks for additional detail.

## 3) RIR Integration

Once LIRs have been configured, and blocks assigned under the applicable RIR, you will be able to use the **RIR integration** feature from the Action Menu on the IPAM Manage screen or IPAM Gadget.

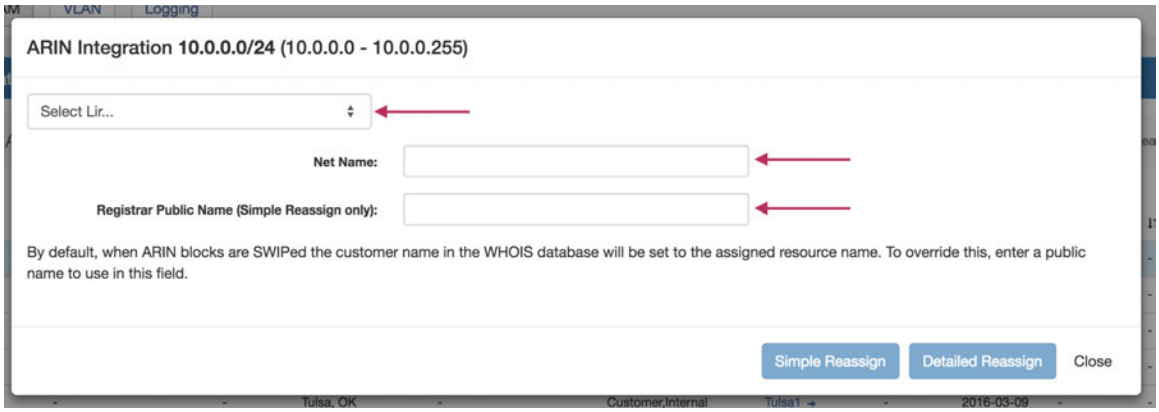



Depending on the RIR associated with the block, either an ARIN or RIPE Integration box will pop up.

### ARIN / Update SWIP

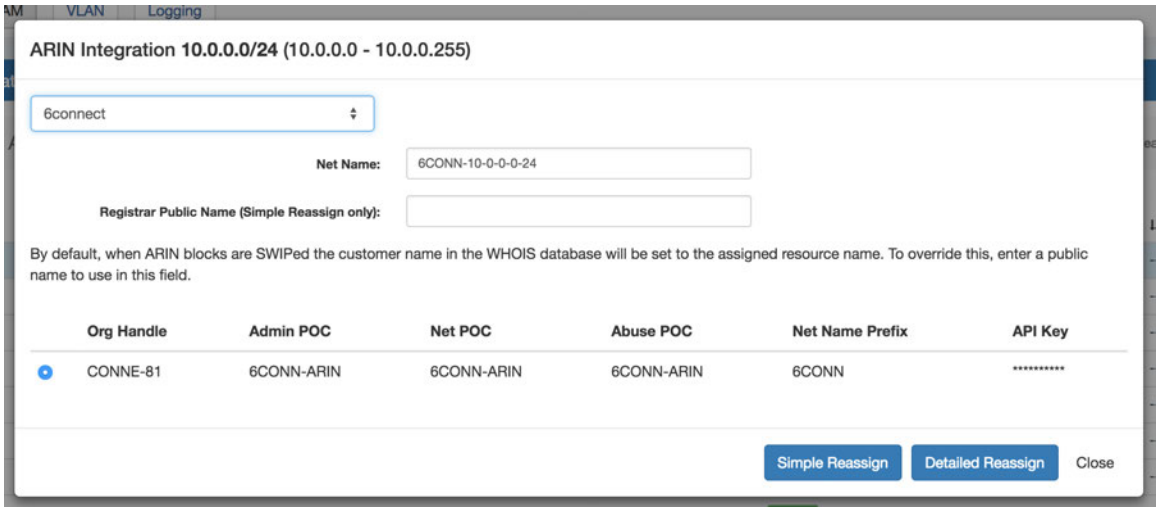
**Select LIR:**

Select the desired LIR, and verify the Net Name / Public Name if desired.




Reassign:

Once the LIR and Handle is selected, you can click either "Simple Reassign", "Detailed Reassign" or "Close" to exit.




For detailed step by step instructions, see:

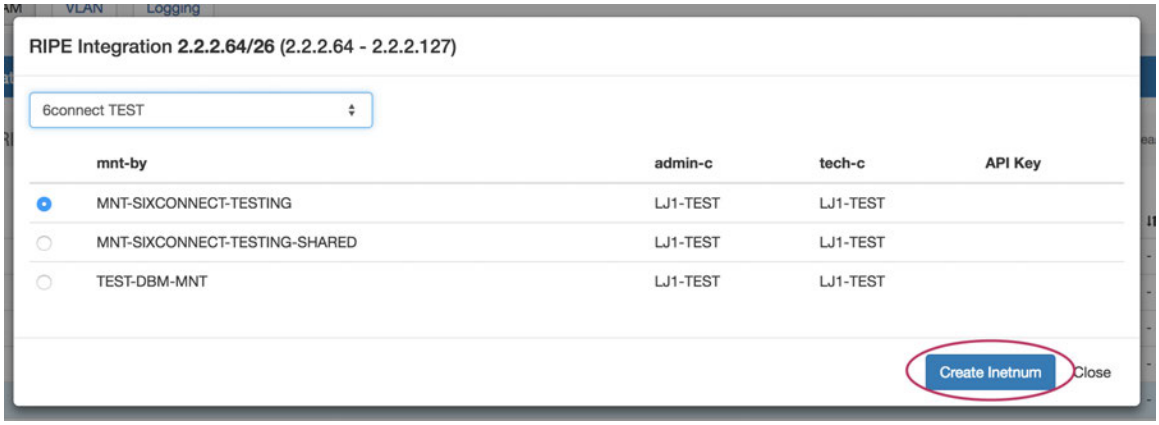
ARIN LIR Setup and Use

## RIPE / Update RPSL

**Select LIR:**

**Select Data Set / Create Inetnum**

Identify which LIR data you want to use for the netnum update, and select either "Create Inetnum" or "Close" to exit.




For detailed step by step instructions, see:

RIPE LIR Setup and Use

# LIR Management and Use

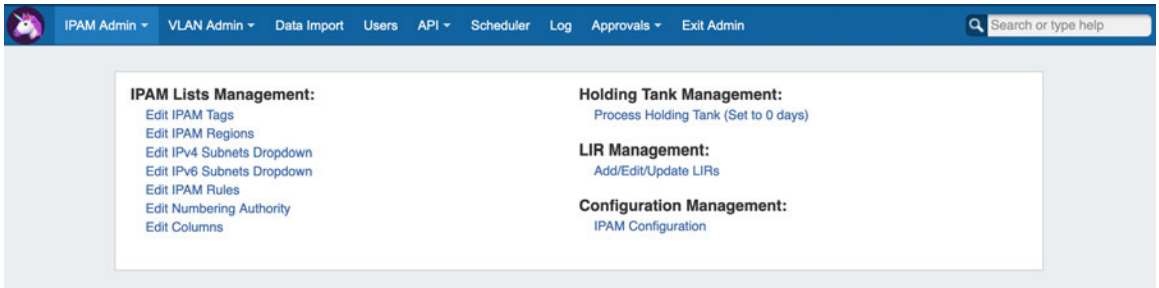
## Overview

ProVision supports multiple LIRs (Local Internet Registries) in a single instance. This means that you have the ability to update SWIP/RPSL functions for a given allocation with the LIR information that you wish.

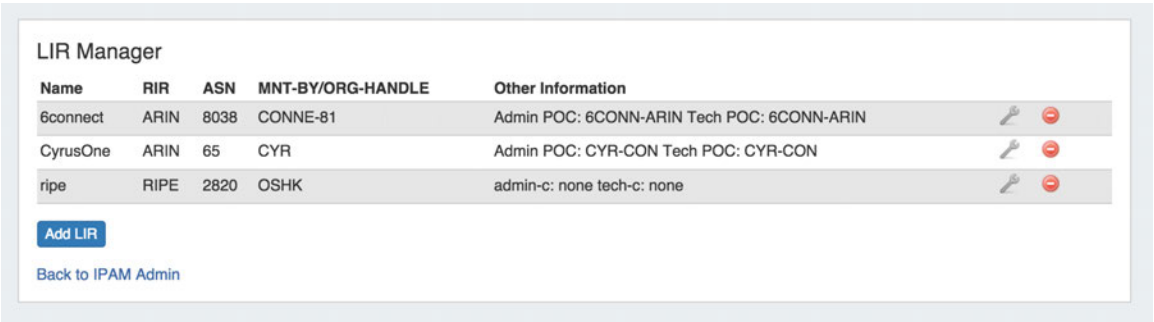

- Overview
  - LIR Setup and Use
  - Edit a LIR
  - Add a LIR
    - ARIN
    - RIPE
  - RIR Integration


## LIR Setup and Use

There is an LIR Manager available from the IPAM Admin page. In the Admin section of ProVision, select the **IPAM Admin** tab, then "LIR Management: Add / Edit / Update LIRs".

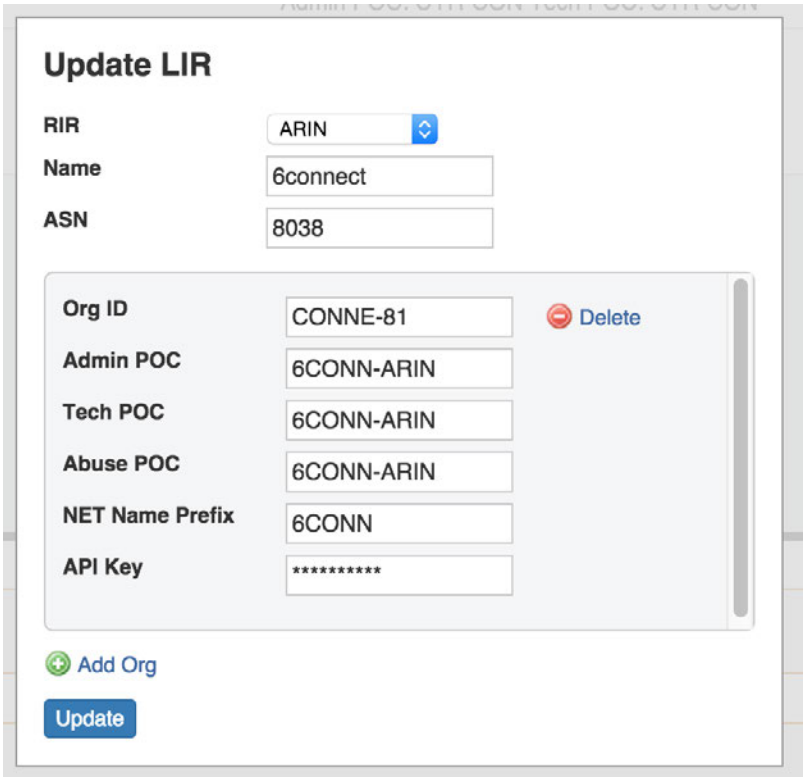



You will be taken to the LIR Manager page, showing your current LIRs. You may Add LIRs, edit the existing LIRS by hitting the Action Menu (wrench icon), or delete LIRs through the red delete icon.




## Edit a LIR

Edit a LIR by clicking on the Action Menu (wrench icon) next to the entry in the LIR Manager. The Update LIR dialog will open. From here, you can edit RIR, Name, ASN, and Org information, as well as add / delete Orgs.

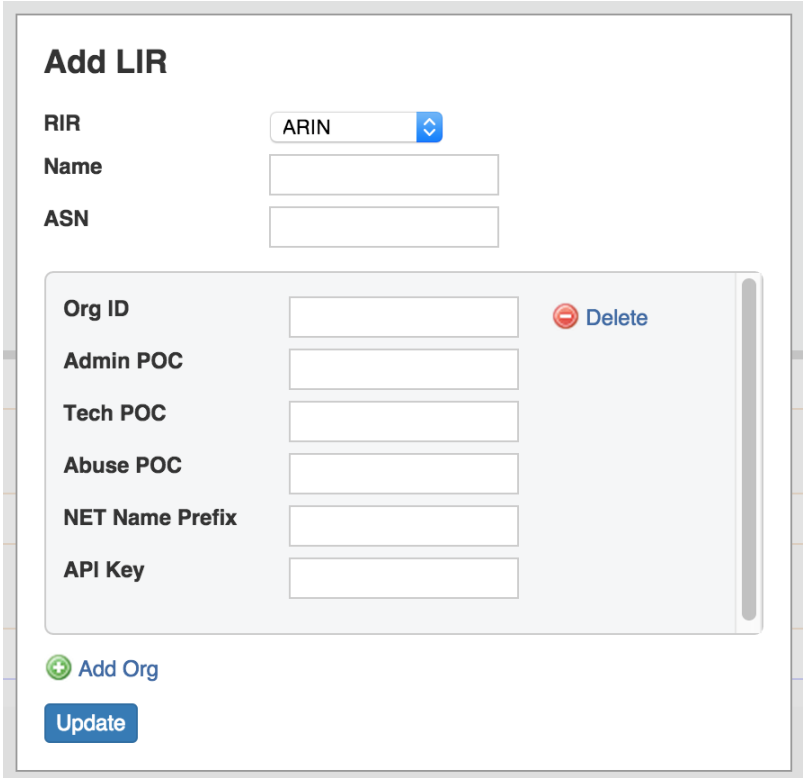



## Add a LIR

After clicking on the **Add LIR** button, you can setup the required data for the specific RIR/LIR combination:

### ARIN

Adding a new LIR with ARIN selected for RIR will bring up the following fields.




Enter the Name, ASN, ORG ID, POC information, NET Name Prefix, and API Key. Additional Orgs may be added by selecting the "Add Org" button.

Be sure to click the "Update" button when done to save your changes.

Press UPDATE to SAVE!

Make sure to press the Update button or else the LIR data will not save.

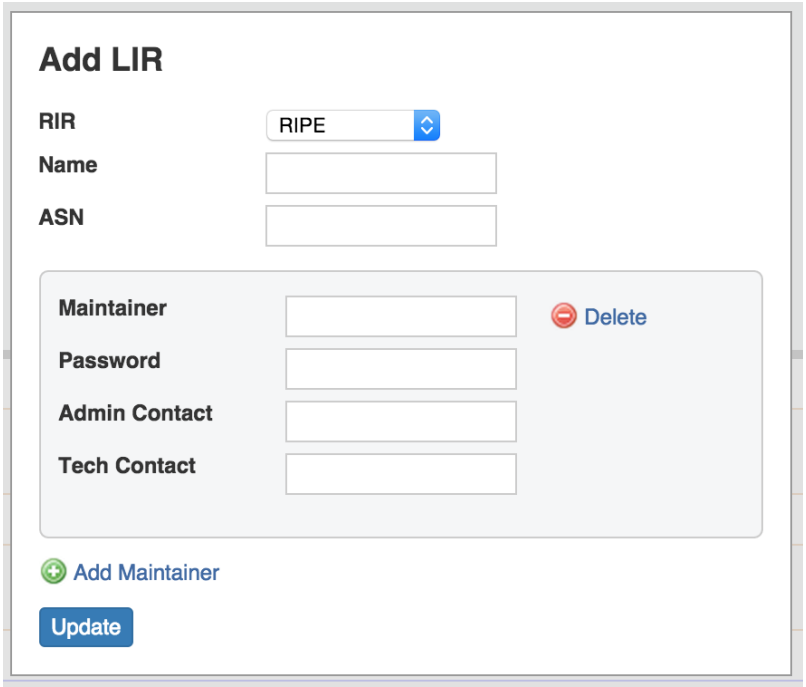
## RIPE

Adding a new LIR with RIPE selected for RIR will bring up the following fields.

RIPE Integration

You must be using an MD5 password to update RIPE objects from ProVision! Please refer to RIPE's authentication page for additional details:

https://www.ripe.net/manage-ips-and-asns/db/support/security/protecting-data#solving-authentication-problems




Enter the Name, ASN, Maintainer, Password, and Contact information. Additional Maintainers may be added by selecting the "Add Maintainer" button.

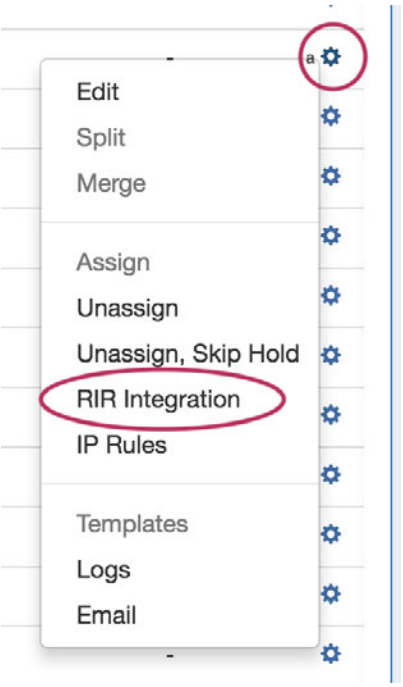
Be sure to click the "Update" button when done to save your changes.

Press UPDATE to SAVE!

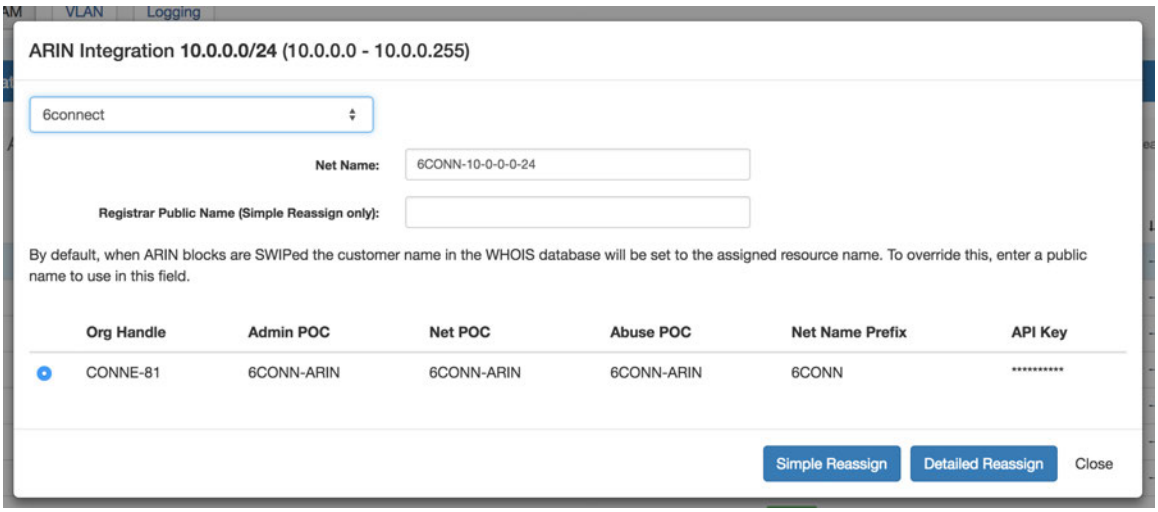
Make sure to press the Update button or else the LIR data will not save.

## RIR Integration

Once these have been configured, you will be able to use the **RIR integration** feature from the Action Menu on the IPAM Manage screen or IPAM Gadget:



RIR specific options will pop up (see ARIN example below) and give the options for "Simple Reassign", "Detailed Reassign", or "Close" to exit.




For additional detail, continue on to:

- ARIN LIR Setup and Use
- RIPE LIR Setup and Use

# ARIN LIR Setup and Use

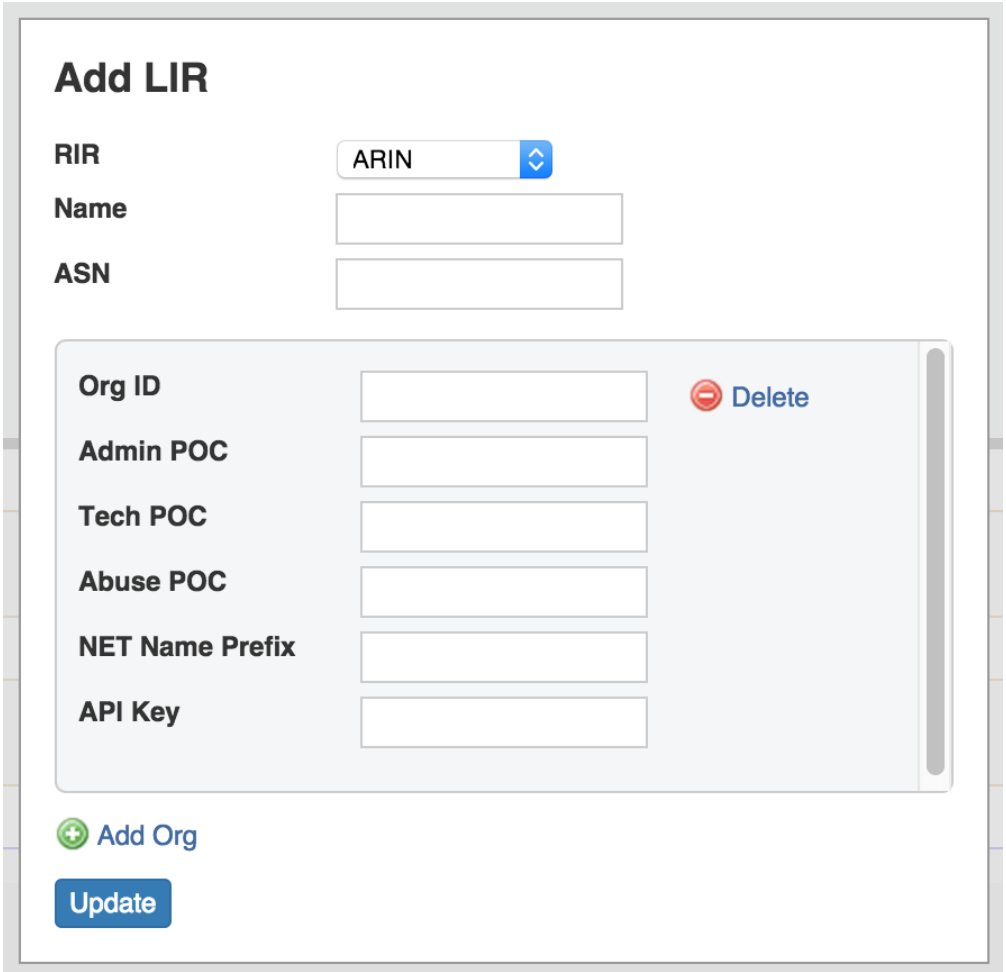
# LIR Setup


- LIR Setup
  - Step 1: Setup the LIR information via the LIR Manager
  - Step 2: Assign an IP block to a Resource using the IPAM Gadget or the Assign function from the IPAM Manage screen.
  - Step 3: Update SWIP information
    - Simple Re-assign
    - Detailed Re-assign


## Step 1: Setup the LIR information via the LIR Manager

You will be prompted to the select the RIR

Add in the requisite Org and POC information

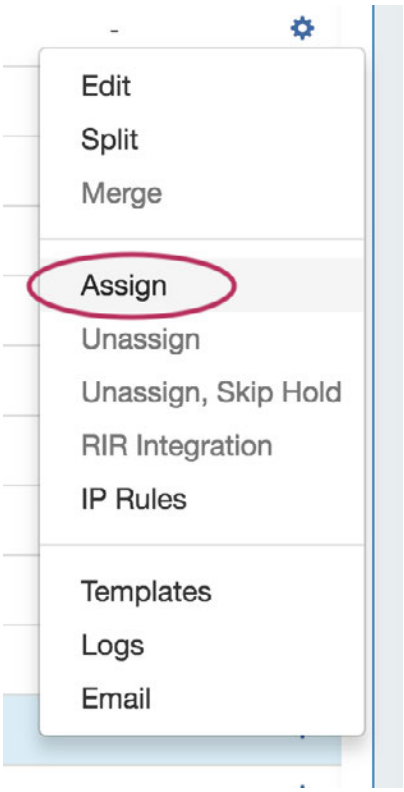



Multiple Org Support

Note that we support multiple Org Handles per ARIN entry. Simply click on the Add Org link at the bottom of the Add LIR dialog box.

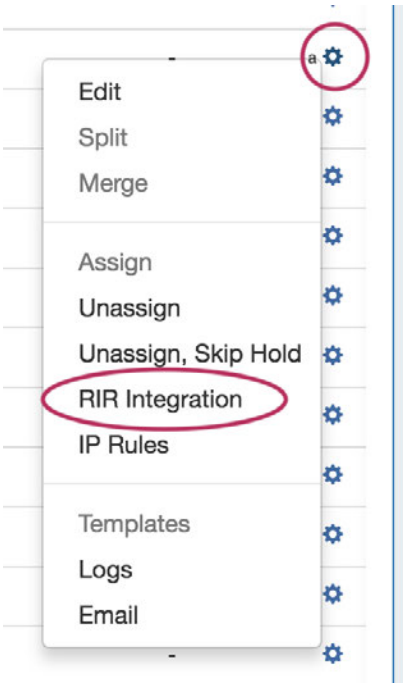
## Step 2: Assign an IP block to a Resource using the IPAM Gadget or the Assign function from the IPAM Manage screen.

Go into IPAM Manage or the IPAM Gadget, and assign a block. See Working with IP Blocks for additional detail.

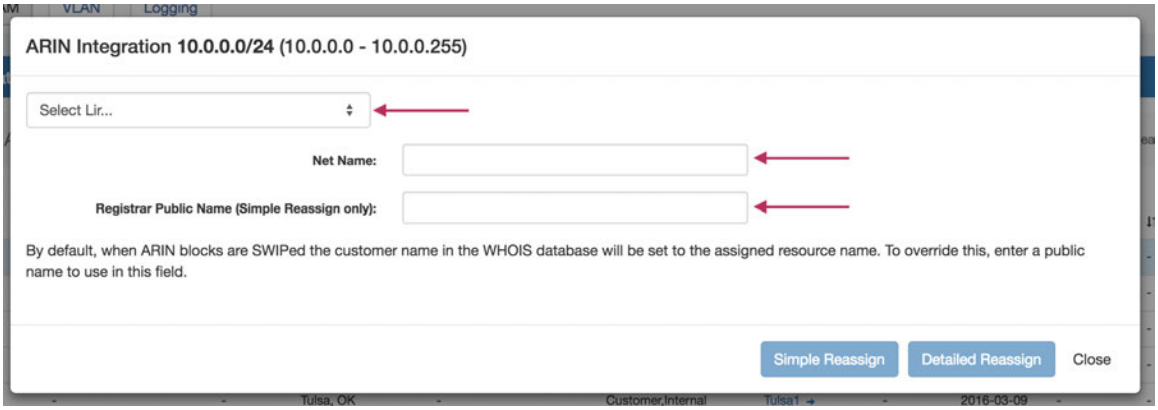



## Step 3: Update SWIP information

Select "RIR Integration" from the Action Menu in IPAM Manage.

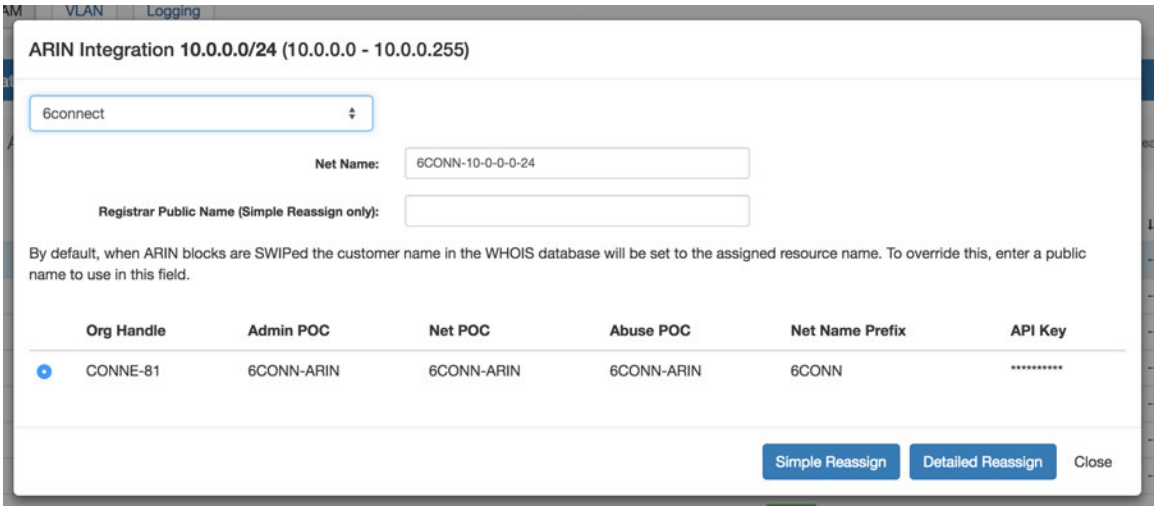



It will bring up an RIR Integration dialog, dependent on the selected RIR (ARIN example shown):




Select the ARIN LIR that has been created in ProVision, and add the Net Name / Registrar Public Name if desired.

Afterwards, you can select the Org Handle and chose "Simple Reassign", "Detailed Reassign", or "Close" to exit.




SWIP Update Functionality Details

In the case when a user already has SWIPped blocks to ARIN, 6connect checks prior to actually performing a SWIP. In the process, if the IP block is already SWIPped, it will check for existing ARIN customer data and update the 6connect data to reflect what ARIN has on file. Once that is complete, the user can then perform a de-SWIP function using ProVision.

## Simple Re-assign

From ARIN.net:

Used to subdelegate IP addresses to a customer that does not need to:

- subdelegate the addresses to their own customers
- maintain their own in-addr.arpa delegation
- display their own point of contact (POC) information.

It can also be used to change the customer name and address information (but not the range) on an existing simple reassignment and to remove simple reassignments. It is submitted by an ARIN Online user account linked to the parent organization's Admin or Tech POC, or the Tech POC for the resource.

## Detailed Re-assign

From ARIN.net:

Used to subdelegate IP addresses to a downstream organization that does not need to further subdelegate the IP addresses, but does need to maintain its own reverse name servers and/or display separate point of contact (POC) information.  It is submitted by an ARIN Online user account linked to the parent organization's Admin or Tech POC, or the Tech POC for the resource.

# RIPE LIR Setup and Use

# LIR Setup - RIPE


- LIR Setup - RIPE
  - Before you begin:
  - Step 1: Setup the LIR information via the LIR Manager
  - Step 2: Assign an IP block to a Resource using the IPAM Gadget or the Assign function from the IPAM Manage screen.
  - Step 3: Update RPSL information


## Before you begin:

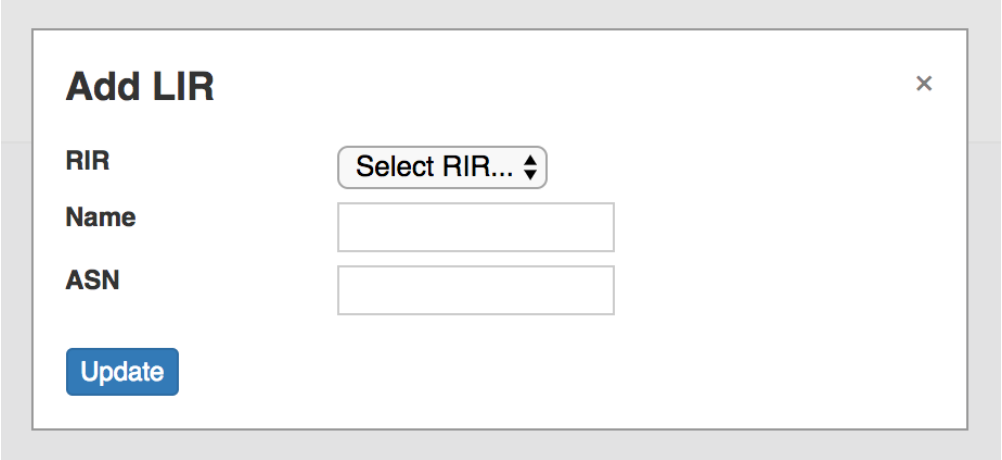
RIPE Integration

⚠ You must be using an MD5 password to update RIPE objects from ProVision! Please refer to RIPE's authentication page for additional details:

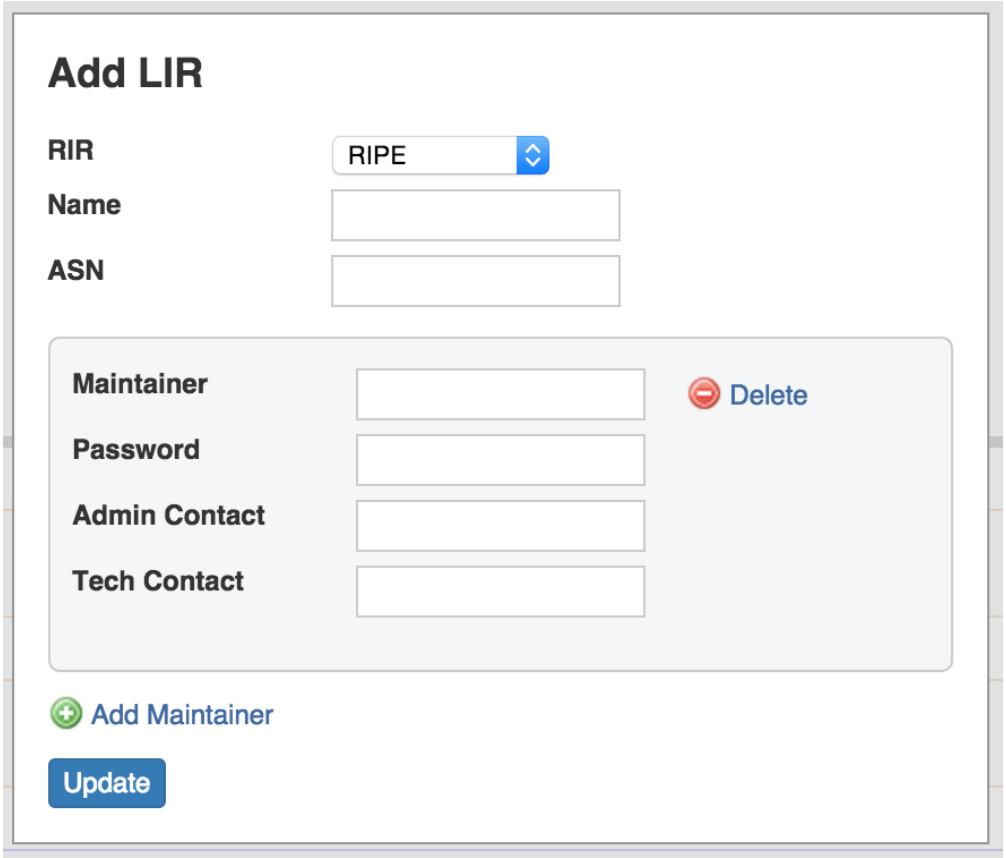
https://www.ripe.net/manage-ips-and-asns/db/support/security/protecting-data#solving-authentication-problems

## Step 1: Setup the LIR information via the LIR Manager

You will be prompted to the select the RIR




Then add in the requisite Maintainer Object related information:



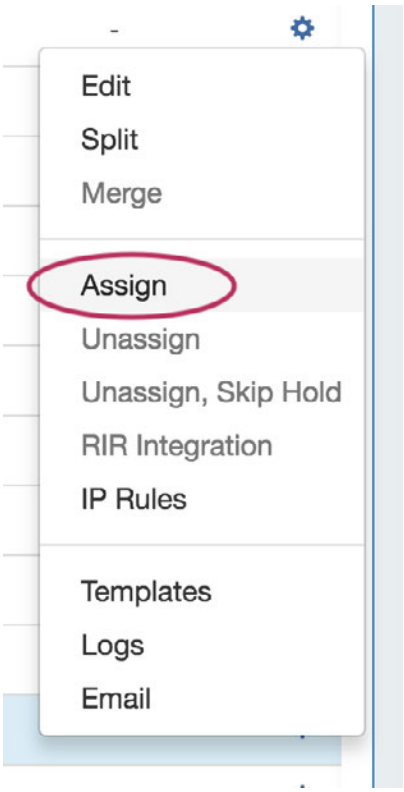

Be sure to hit "Update" when done to save your changes.

Multiple Maintainer Object Support

Note that we support multiple maintainer objects per LIR entry. Simply click on the Add Maintainer link at the bottom of the Add LIR dialog box.

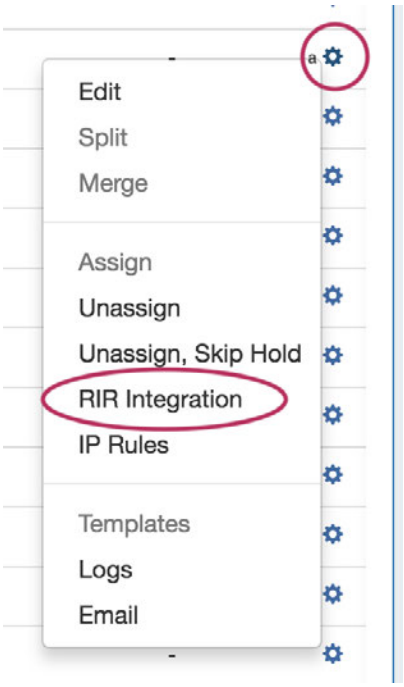
## Step 2: Assign an IP block to a Resource using the IPAM Gadget or the Assign function from the IPAM Manage screen.

Go into IPAM Manage or the IPAM Gadget, and assign a block under the RIPE RIR. See Working with IP Blocks for additional detail.

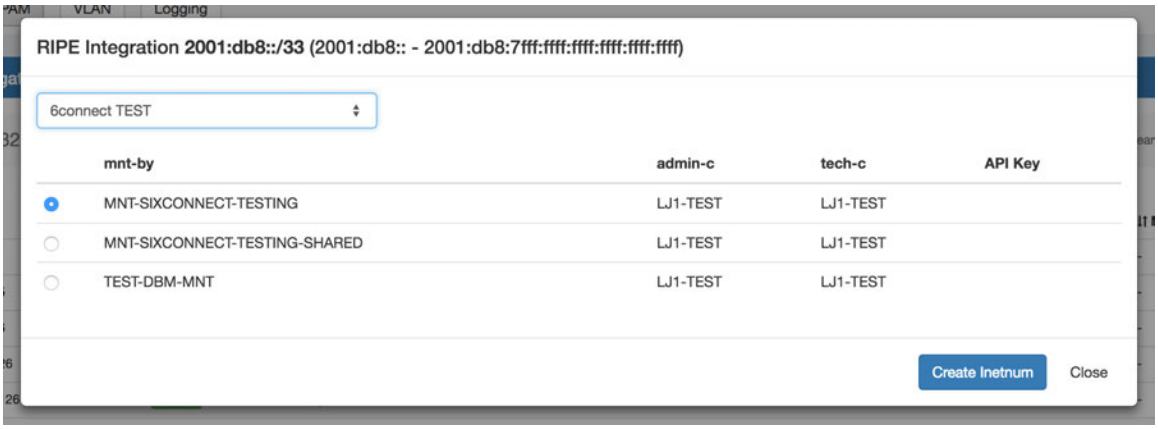



## Step 3: Update RPSL information

Select "RIR Integration" from the Action Menu in IPAM Manage.

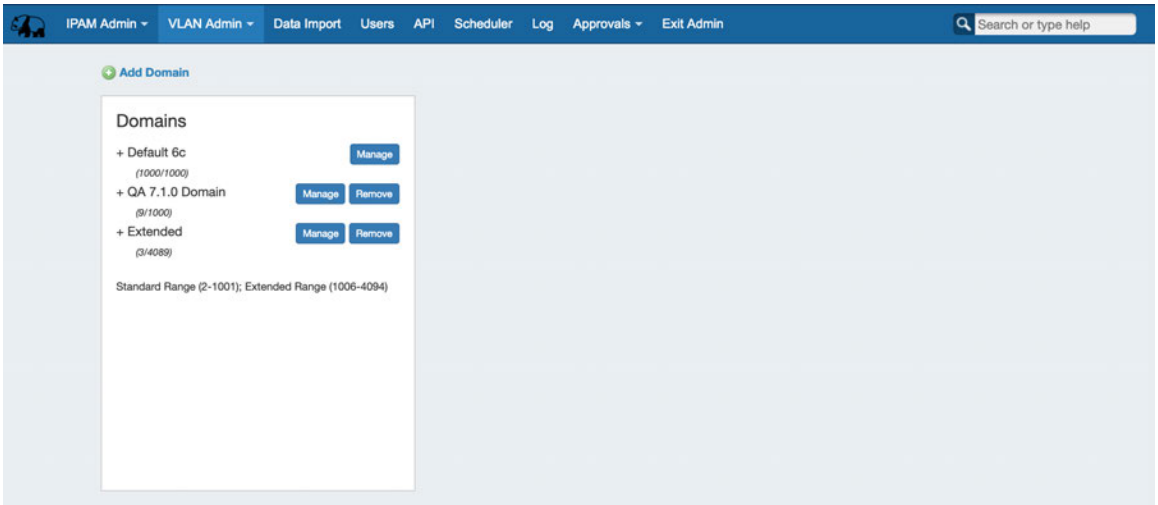



Identify which LIR data you want to use for the netnum update, and select either "Create Inetnum" or "Cancel" to exit.


RIPE Integration 2001:db8::/33 (2001:db8:: - 2001:db8:7fff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff)
6connect TEST
mnt-by
admin-c
tech-c
API Key
MNT-SIXCONNECT-TESTING
LJ1-TEST
LJ1-TEST
MNT-SIXCONNECT-TESTING-SHARED
LJ1-TEST
LJ1-TEST
TEST-DBM-MNT
LJ1-TEST
LJ1-TEST
Create Inetnum
Close

# VLAN Administration

# VLAN Manager Overview




The VLAN Manager allows Admin users to add domains and VLANs to their ProVision instances, and associate them with IP Blocks. Optionally, VLAN tags may be associated with ranges or individual VLANs under a domain, to help limit VLAN search results when enabling VLANs.

Although some VLAN functionality occurs under the "standard user" area of ProVision (IPAM Tab), only Admin-level users may access the IPAM -> VLAN page and perform higher level VLAN Management tasks.

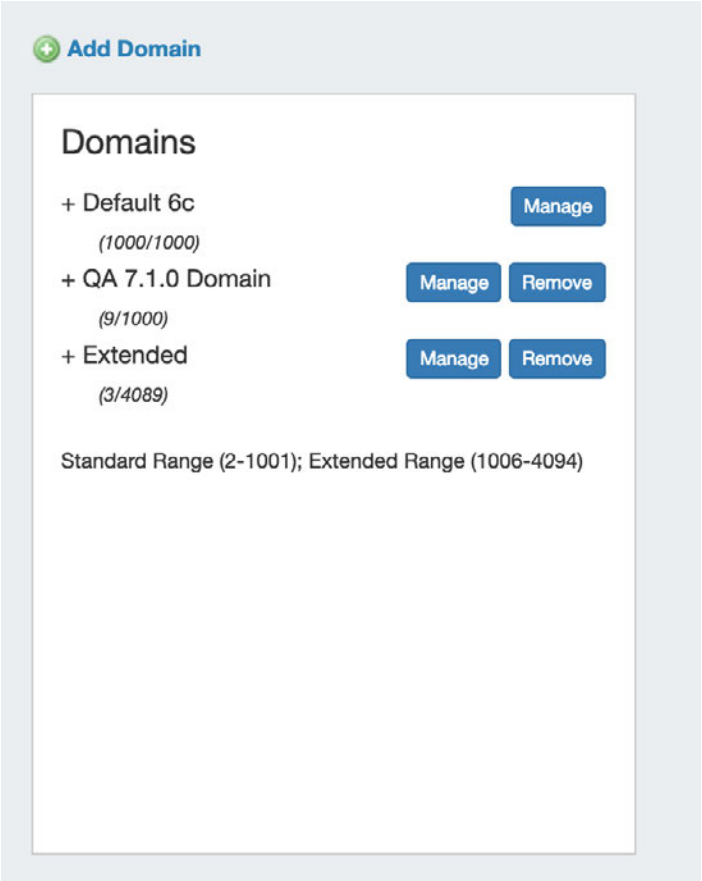
Three work areas are available under the VLAN Tab: **Domain Setup** (default page), **Metadata Fields**, and **VLAN Tags**, accessed from the VLAN Tab navigation drop-down menu.


- VLAN Manager Overview
  - VLAN Manager Overview
    - Domain Setup
    - VLAN Tags
    - Metadata Fields
  - VLAN Manager Workflow
    - Standard flow (without VLAN tags):
    - Optional flow (with VLAN tags):
  - Additional Information:

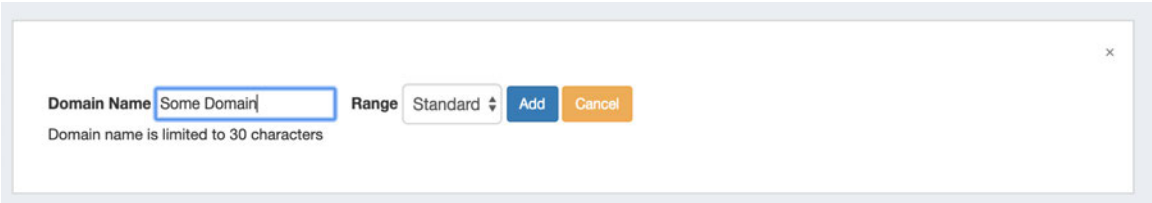

# VLAN Manager Overview

## Domain Setup

The Domain Setup page is the default page that displays when accessing the **VLAN** Tab. Here, you can add new domains, view/edit existing domains, or remove non-default domains (the "Default Domain" is not deletable).




To add a new Domain, click the "Add Domain" link above the Domain list. In the panel that appears, add your domain name, select a range, and click "Add".




When adding new Domains, the domain range may be one of the following range types:

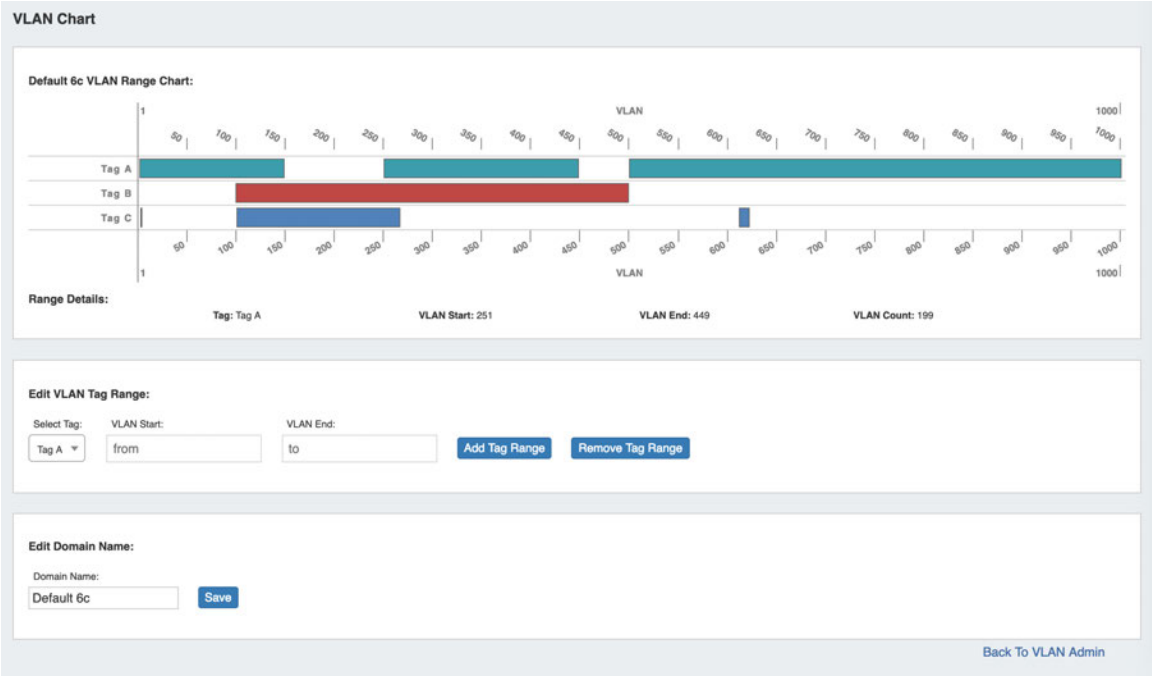
- "Standard" range (2-1001) with vlan 1 marked as reserved
- "Extended" range (2-1001, 1006 - 4094), with vlans 1 and 1002-1005 marked as reserved

Once a domain is created, it will display in the Domain List, where you may click "Manage" edit the domain, or click "Remove" to delete the domain.

If a domain already has VLANs enabled for it, clicking on the "+" sign in front of the domain name will expand the domain list to show enabled VLANs.

### Manage Domain

Clicking "Manage" next to a Domain in the VLAN Domain list opens the VLAN Chart / Manage Domain page.



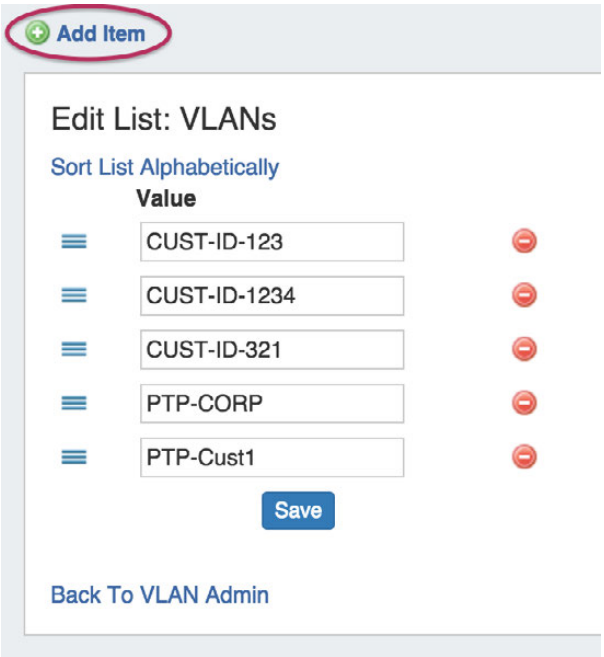

Here, VLAN tags associated with VLANs in this domain will display in the VLAN chart. To see the details of each tag range, hover over a segment with the mouse cursor, and details will display at the bottom of the chart. Add or remove tag ranges from the "Edit VLAN Tag Range" area below the chart - just select the tag, the desired range, and choose whether to add  or remove that tag range to or from the chart.

At the bottom of the page, you may edit the domain name if desired. Just type in the new name (30 characters or less), and click "Save".

## VLAN Tags

The VLAN Tags page is accessed from the VLAN Tab dropdown. Here, you may add, edit, or remove the vlan tags used in VLAN Chart View and in IPAM.

To add a new VLAN tag, click on "Add Item" at the top of the Edit List: VLAN Tags page and add the Tag Name. When saved, the tag will be added to the tag list, the VLAN chart, and VLAN tag filter options in IPAM.

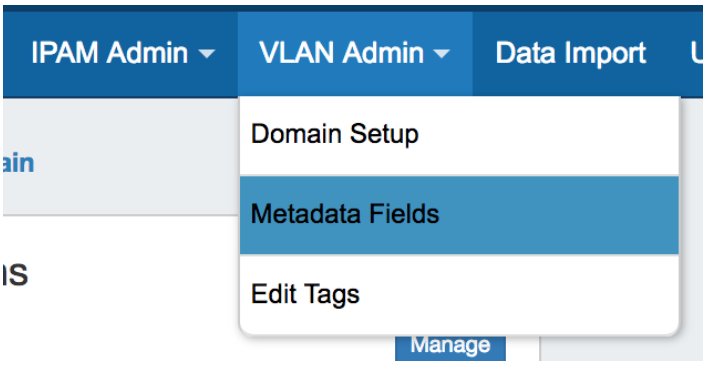



The VLAN Tag list may be sorted Alphabetically or manually. To sort automatically by name, click the "Sort List Alphabetically" link at the top of the list. To manually sort, click the list icon (three lines) for the tag, then drag and release into the desired location. Delete tags by clicking the "Delete" icon to the right of the tag name.

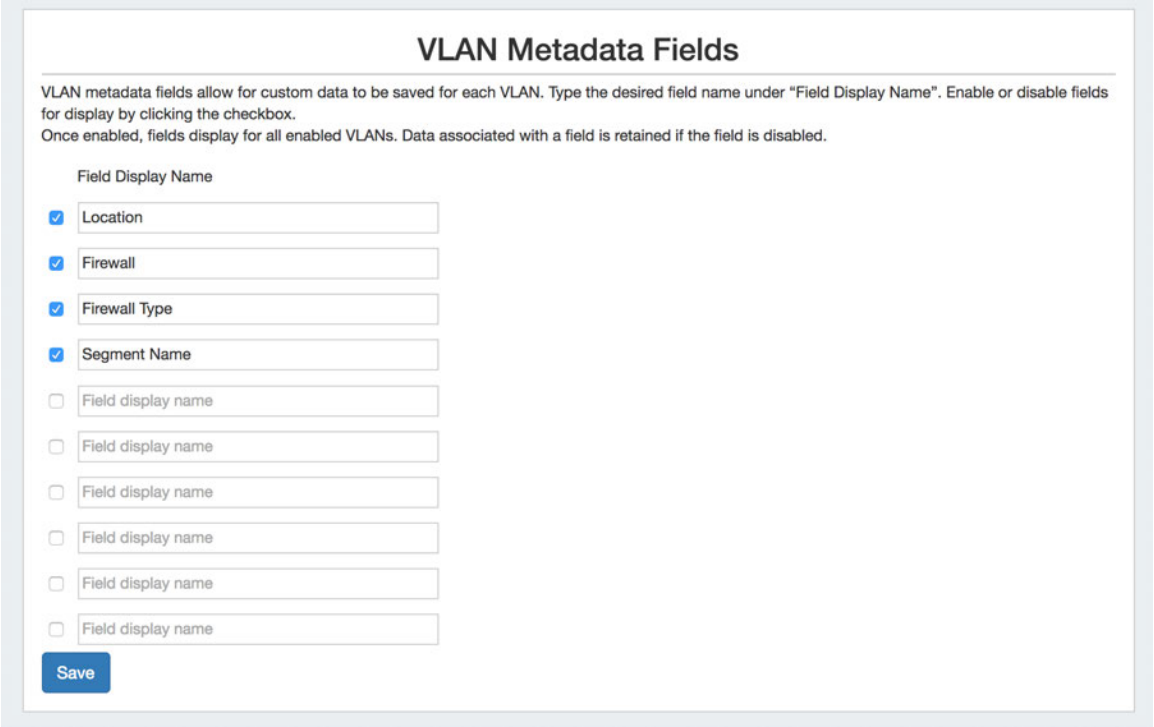
## Metadata Fields

Metadata Fields allow for custom data to be saved for each VLAN, when accessed from the IPAM VLAN list.

VLAN Metadata fields is accessed from the "Metadata Fields" link in the VLAN tab dropdown.




To enable a new Metadata Field, navigate to the Admin section of ProVision, and select "Metadata Fields" from the dropdown.




To enable a new field, type the desired field name in an empty text input box under "Field Display Name", and select the check box next to the new name. Then, click "Save" to save your changes. Field display names may be edited at any time by simply typing the desired change into the "Field Display Name" box and saving your changes.

Once enabled, a metadata field displays for all enabled VLANs.

To disable a metadata field, deselect the check box next to the Field Display Name and click "Save". Any data that exists under a disabled field is retained, and will reappear once the field is re-enabled.

# VLAN Manager Workflow

Most of VLAN Manager workflow is split between the Admin area of ProVision (VLAN Admin Tab), and the IPAM Tab, under the VLAN submenu. There are two types of workflow. One is the "Standard" flow, where the VLAN tag system is not used - the only primary tasks are adding domains, VLANs, and associating the domain/VLAN pairs with IP Blocks. The second workflow is using optional VLAN tags, which requires creating the VLAN tags and associating them with domains / VLANs during the domain / VLAN add processes.

For detailed information on each of these workflows, click below:

## Standard flow (without VLAN tags):

The workflow starts with creating a domain in the VLAN Admin section of ProVision. During creation, domains may be selected as "standard" or "extended" domains, declaring the size of the VLAN pool from which VLANs are available to be enabled.

Next, VLANs must be enabled and added to the domain. This is done under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision. Add VLANs to the domains by clicking "Add", searching for the desired range of VLANs to enable from the standard / extended pool, and selecting the desired VLANs to enable.

Once enabled, VLANs may be edited or have IP blocks associated with that VLAN. Editing VLANs and Direct / Smart Browse / Search IPs functions for adding blocks to VLANs are available from the Domain/ VLAN list under under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision by expanding the desired domain and clicking on the VLAN link. IP blocks may also be edited individually through the IPAM gadget, IPAM Manage, and VLAN Manage areas to add domain and VLAN information to the block.

## Optional flow (with VLAN tags):

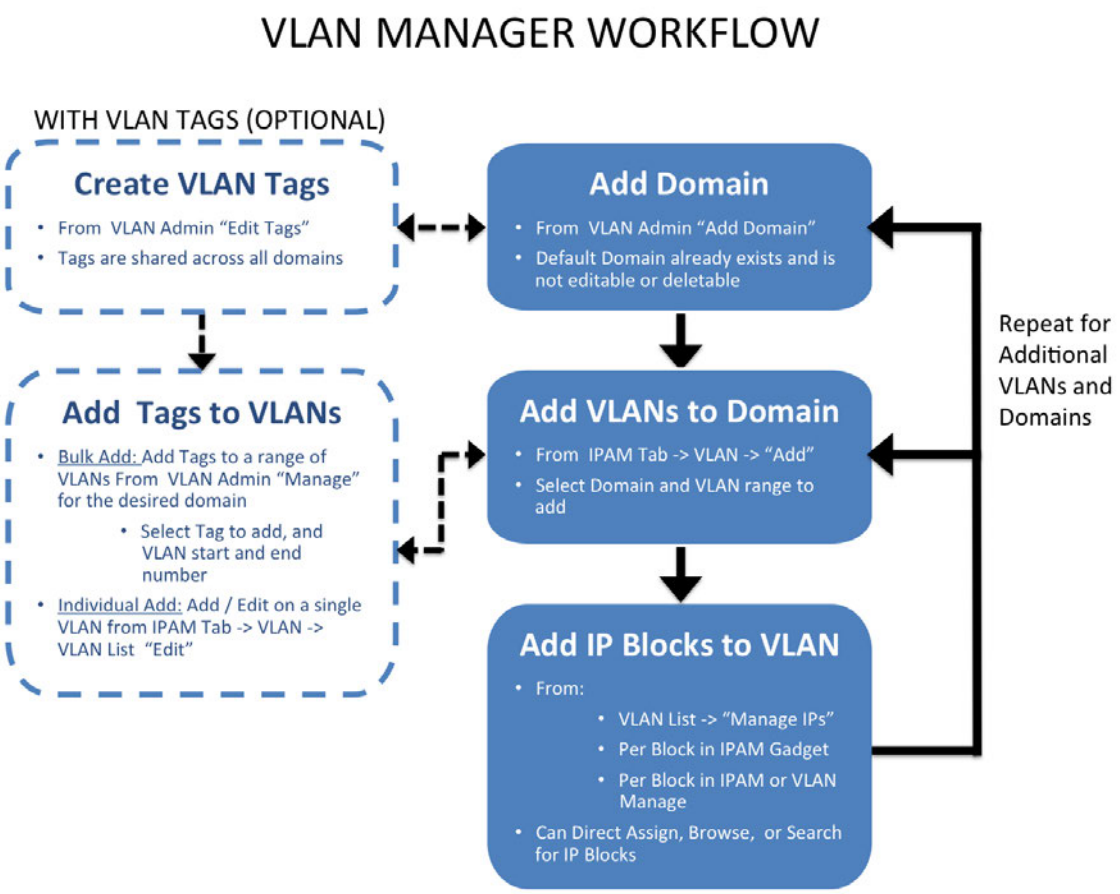
The workflow starts with creating a domain in the VLAN Admin section of ProVision. During creation, domains may be selected as "standard" or "extended" domains, declaring the size of the VLAN pool from which VLANs are available to be enabled. VLAN tags may be added (from the VLAN Admin Tab -> Edit Tags submenu) before or after domain creation. Tags created in this area are available to all domains and VLANs.

If the tags created need to be added to a large range of VLANs, the next step would be to add tags to the desired range(s) of VLANs from the VLAN Admin -> Domain "Manage" button. Domain Manage allows you to select an existing tag, type in the numeric VLAN start and end point, and assign that tag to that entire range of VLANs under the current domain.

Once a bulk range of tags is associated with VLANs, you can use the tag as a search criteria when adding VLANs to a domain. This is done under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision. Add VLANs to the domains by clicking "Add", using the tag name as a search field for the desired range of VLANs, and then selecting the desired VLANs to enable.

If tags are only desired for individual VLANs, they may be added when editing a VLAN <u>after</u> the VLAN has already been added/enabled for the domain. Editing VLANs may be accessed from the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section, then expanding the desired domain and clicking on the VLAN link, selecting "Edit".

Next, VLANs must be enabled and added to the domain. This is done under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision. Add VLANs to the domains by clicking "Add", searching for the desired range of VLANs to enable from the standard / extended pool, and selecting the desired VLANs to enable. Once enabled, VLANs may be edited or have IP blocks associated with that VLAN. Editing VLANs and Direct / Smart Browse / Search IPs functions for adding blocks to VLANs are available from the Domain/ VLAN list under under the IPAM Tab -> VLAN section of ProVision. IP blocks may also be edited individually through the IPAM gadget, IPAM Manage, and VLAN Manage areas to add domain and VLAN information to the block.




## Additional Information:

For details on performing specific tasks with the VLAN Manager, proceed to Working with the VLAN Manager.

# Working with the VLAN Manager

# Working with the VLAN Manager (Standard Flow)

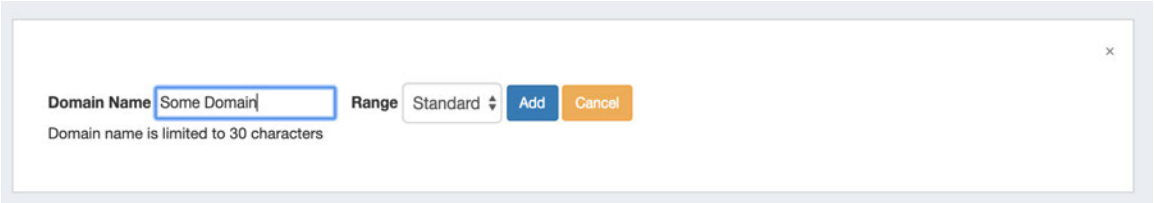

- Working with the VLAN Manager (Standard Flow)
  - Step 1) Add Domain
    - Viewing the Domain List
    - Edit a Domain
    - Remove a Domain
  - Step 2) Add VLANs to a Domain (Enable)
    - The IPAM VLAN Page
    - Add VLANs to a Domain (Enable)
    - Remove VLANs from a Domain (Disable) - API
    - Edit a VLAN
  - Step 3) Add Blocks to VLANs
    - Add / Update Blocks to VLAN from VLAN - Manage IPs:
      - Direct Add Block to VLAN:
      - Browse IP Blocks to add to VLAN:
      - Search IP Blocks to add to VLAN:
    - Add / Update VLAN to Blocks from IPAM Manage or VLAN Manage:
    - Add / Update VLAN to Blocks from IPAM Gadget:
  - Working with VLAN Tags - (Optional)
    - Creating VLAN Tags
    - Add VLAN Tags to VLANs
      - Add Tag to an Enabled VLAN
      - Add Tag to a Range of  the VLAN Pool
  - Working with VLAN Metadata - (Optional)
    - Enable / Disable VLAn Metadata Fields
    - View / Edit Metadata Field Information


## Step 1) Add Domain

Users will already have a non-editable Default Domain created, which may house VLANs entered under the previous VLAN text field, however, you may choose to create new domains.

To create a new VLAN domain, navigate to the **VLAN Admin** Tab, in the Admin area of ProVision, and click on "Add Domain".

Enter the domain name, and select whether it is standard or extended - Standard has a range of VLAN IDs from 1-1005;  Extended includes up to 4094.




NOTE: The ProVision UI and API has restricted usage of VLANs 1 and 1002-1005 in tagging and selecting or searching VLANs.

Click "Add", and your new domain will be added to the Domain list below.

### Viewing the Domain List

If a domain already has VLANs enabled for it, clicking on the "+" sign in front of the domain name will expand the domain list to show enabled VLANs.

The numbers in parentheses under the domain name (shown as 21/1000 in the above image for a standard domain; an extended domain would show as 21/4089) indicate the quantity of enabled VLANs over the available pool of VLANs to select from. There are 5 VLANs (1, 1002-1005) which are reserved, and not included in the count.

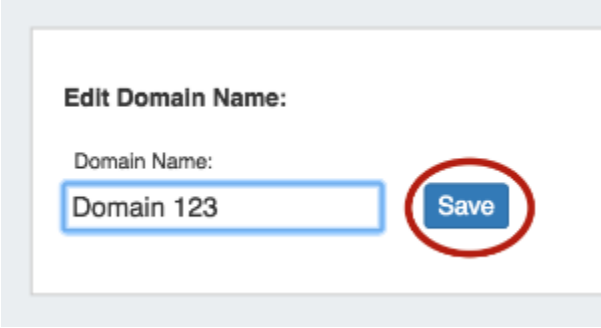
## Edit a Domain

The Default Domain is not editable, however users may edit the name of user-created domains.

Once a domain has been created, users may not edit the range (standard / extended) of a domain - if a domain is created with a mistaken range, it must be deleted and re-created.

To edit a domain name, click on the "Manage" button next to the domain name.

Under the "Edit Domain Name" section of the page, edit the name as desired, then hit "Save".




## Remove a Domain

To edit a domain, click on the "Manage" button next to the domain name.

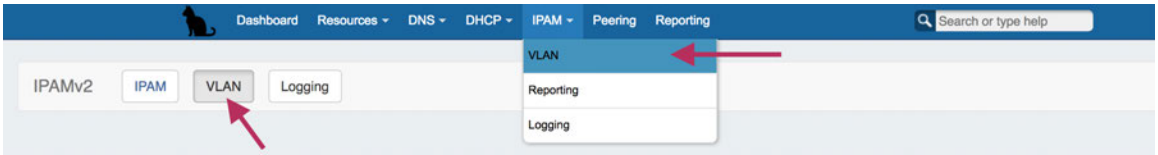
Then, edit the name as desired and hit "Save".

# Step 2) Add VLANs to a Domain (Enable)

After creating domains, VLANs need to be added (enabled) for that domain out of the pool of available VLANs.

## The IPAM VLAN Page

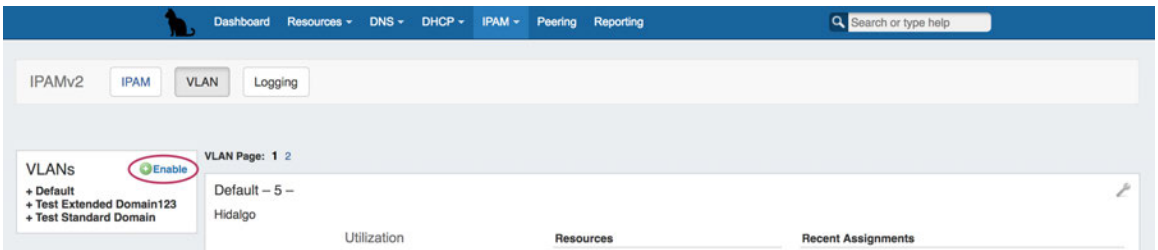
Go to the IPAM Tab, and then either select VLAN from the IPAM dropdown menu, or click "VLAN" from the subtab buttons that appear on the IPAM page.



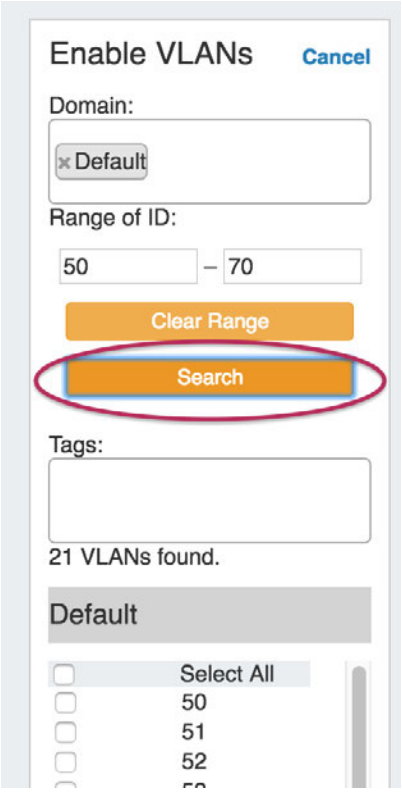

This takes you to the IPAM - VLAN page, which shows an overview of Domains and VLANs on the left sidebar (click the + next to the domain names to see the enabled VLANs under each domain), and similar to the IPAM page, shows IPAM Utilization data for each Domain / VLAN pair. Clicking on the wrench will open "VLAN Manage", which has the same type of functionality for IP blocks as IPAM Manage, but organized under the scope of that VLAN.

## Add VLANs to a Domain (Enable)

In the IPAM - VLAN page VLAN sidebar, click "Enable".



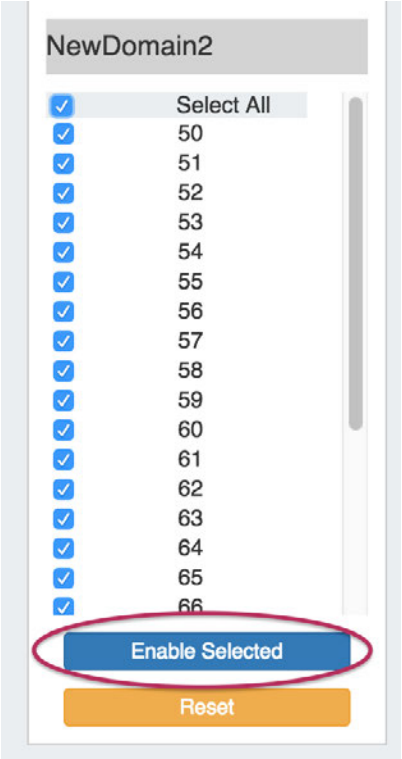

This changes the sidebar into a VLAN search module. Select the desired domain, range of VLANs to view, and click "Search".




Note: If VLAN Tags have already been applied to a range of VLANs, you may also include VLAN tag criteria in your search. If tags have not been created or applied to a range of VLANs, searching by tags will not return results.

Below the search criteria, the results list will show VLANs meeting your criteria.

Select the desired VLANs to enable for the domain - you may either select all VLANs in your results list, or check VLANs individually.




When done selecting the VLANs, click "Enable Selected". The selected VLANs will now be enabled for the domain, show in Domain / VLAN lists, and be available to edit or add blocks to. To add more VLANs to another domain, click "Reset" and repeat the process. If done, hit the "Cancel" button at the top of the Add VLAN module, and you will return to the main IPAM - VLAN page view.

## Remove VLANs from a Domain (Disable) - API

Disabling a VLAN (removing the VLAN from a domain) may be done through the VLAN API "update" endpoint.

A VLAN may be enabled or disabled by setting its "enabled" parameter to true (enable) or false (disable), after providing the required id.

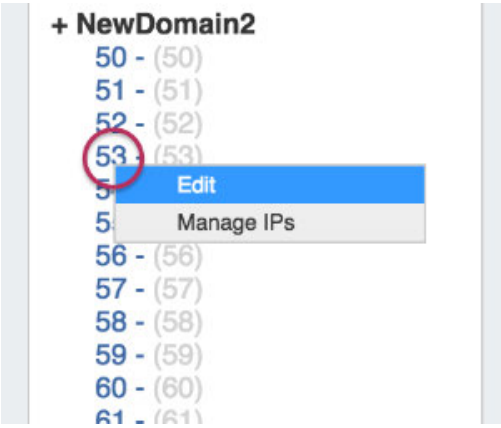
An example API call to disable a VLAN with id=41438 would look like:

```
(instance url)/api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=update&id=41438&enabled=false
```

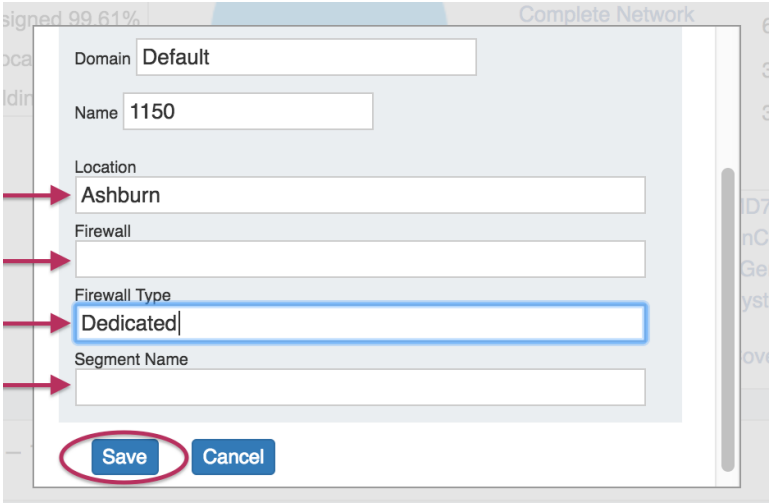
For details on the VLAN update endpoint, see API Module - VLAN - (update).

## Edit a VLAN

You can edit a VLAN by clicking on the VLAN in the VLAN List sidebar, then selecting "Edit".



You cannot change the Domain of the VLAN, but you can add a descriptive text name, apply a VLAN tag (if using the tag system), or edit VLAN Metadata (if enabled).



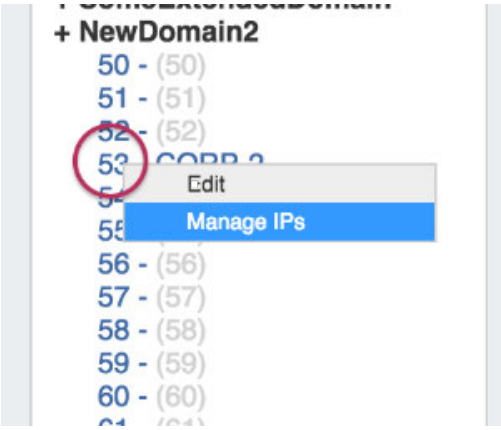

After making your changes, click the "Save" button. The named VLAN will now show both VLAN number and name when viewing Domain / VLAN lists or when working with blocks.

# Step 3) Add Blocks to VLANs

After VLANs have been enabled for domains, you can associate those VLANs with IP blocks.

## Add / Update Blocks to VLAN from VLAN - Manage IPs:

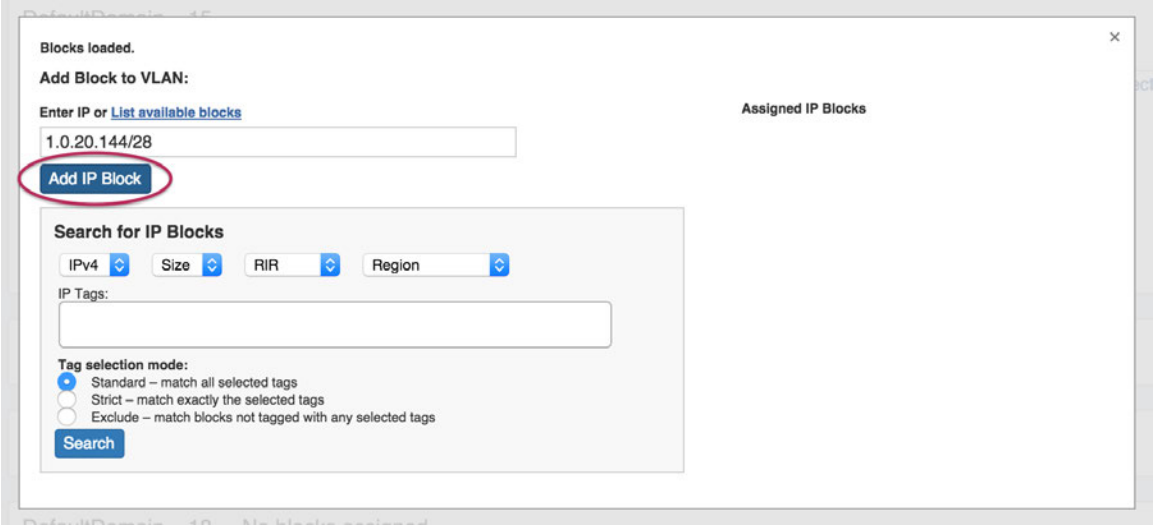
While in the IPAM Tab -> VLAN Page, expand the desired domain and click on a VLAN. Then select "Manage IPs".



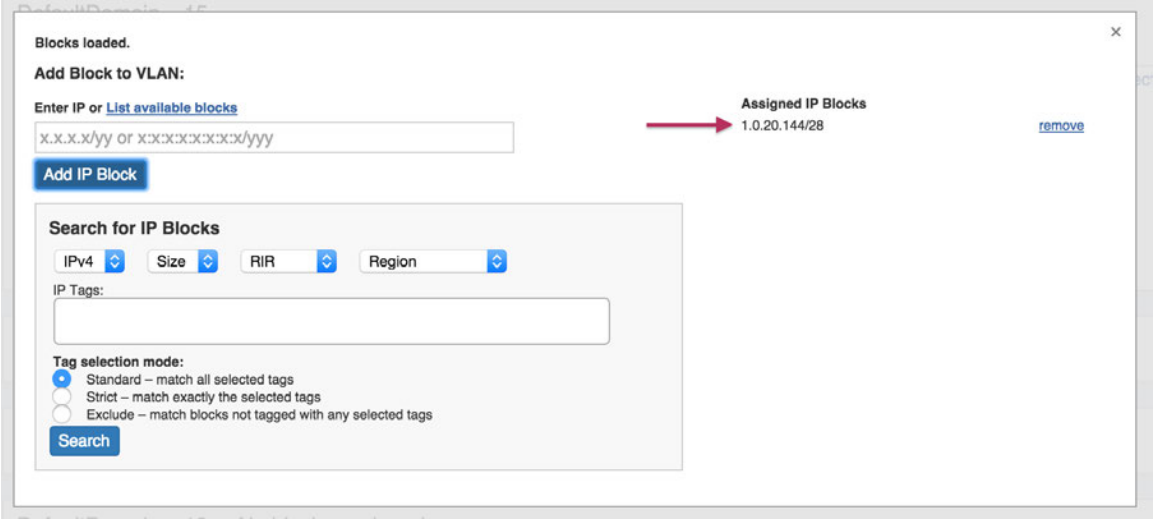

This opens up a window where IP Blocks may be associated to the VLAN. From here, you can "Direct Assign" a block to the VLAN, "Browse Assign" blocks, or Search for a block to add to the VLAN.

## Direct Add Block to VLAN:

Directly add a known, available IP Block by typing in the CIDR, then hitting "Add IP Block".

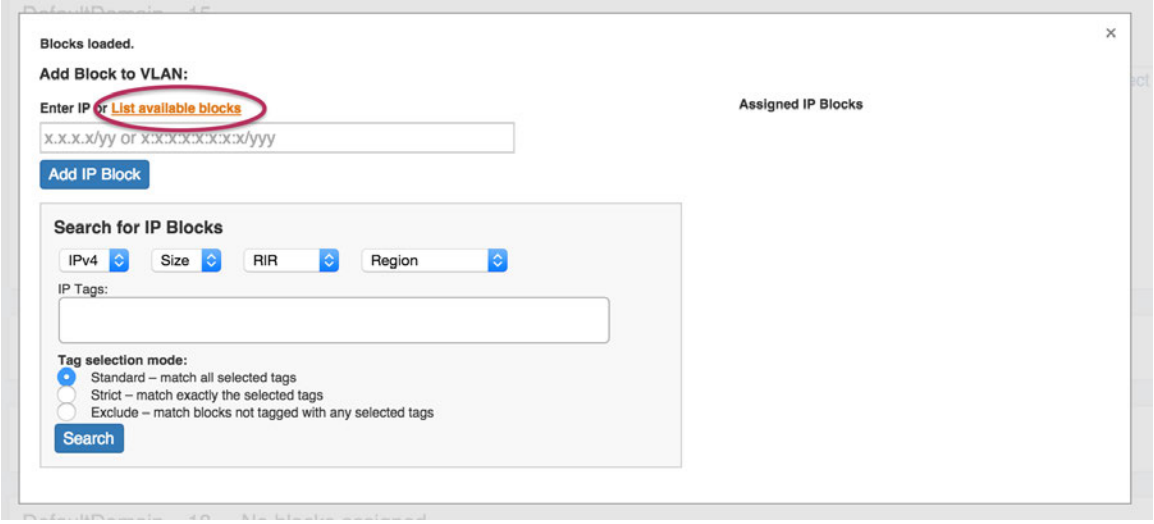



When complete, the block will be added to the "Assigned IP Blocks" list on the right of the window, with the option to remove if desired.



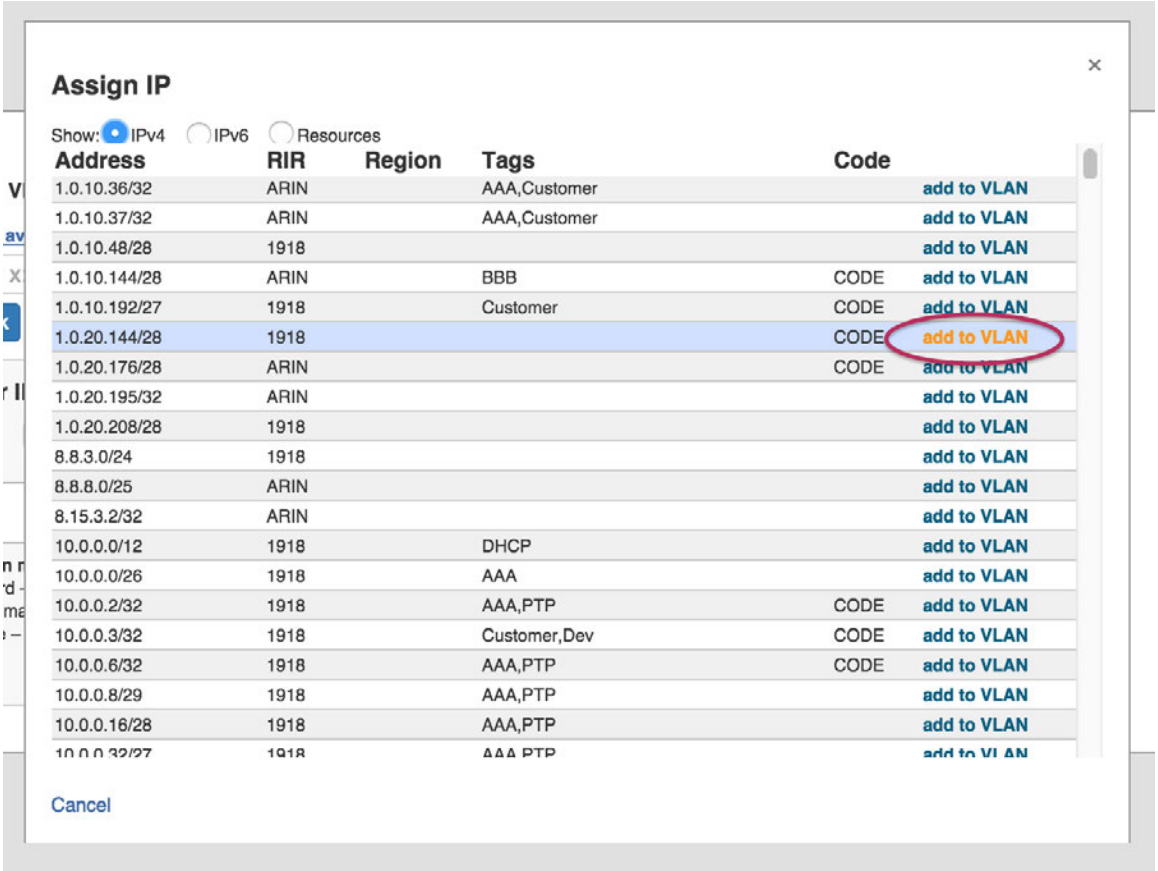

## Browse IP Blocks to add to VLAN:

Browse blocks available to add to the VLAN by clicking on the "List available blocks" link above the IP block input box.

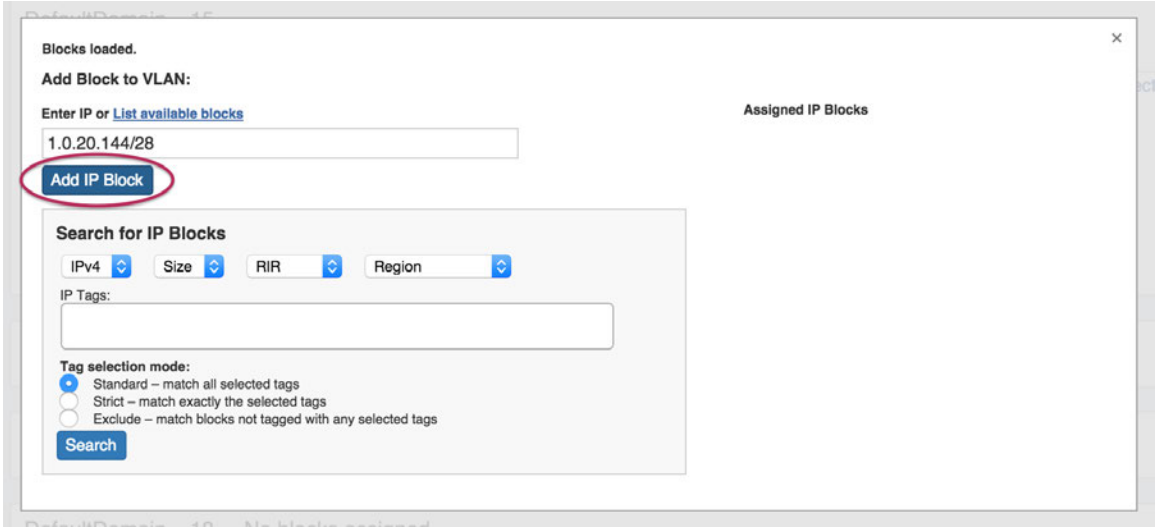


This opens a window similar to the "Smart Browse" used in assigning IPs to a resource - just select IPv4, IPv6 blocks, or Resources to browse from the radio buttons at the top of the list.

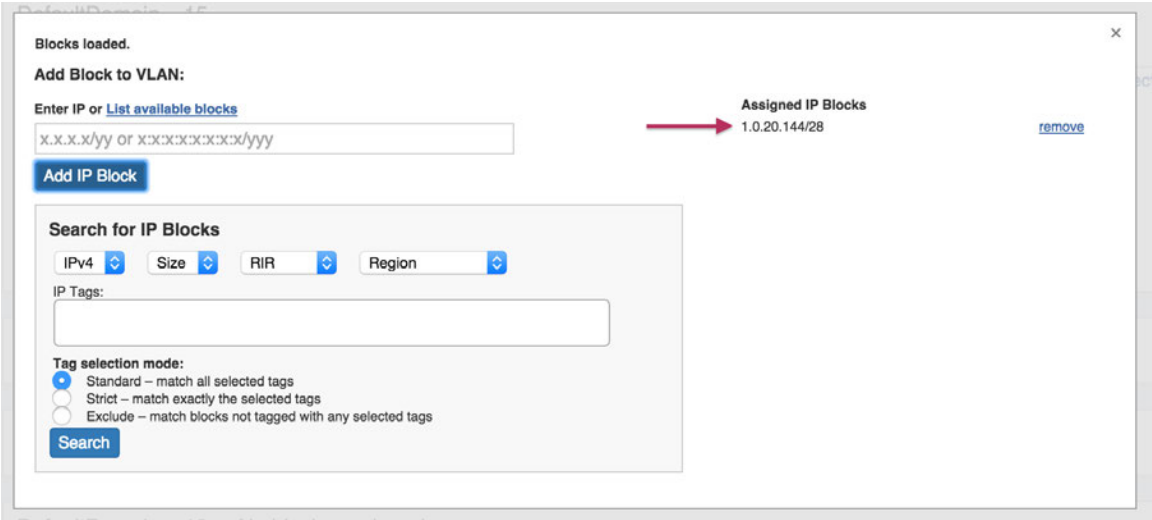
When you have selected the block to add, click "add to VLAN".




The selected block will automatically fill in the block input box - just hit "Add to IP Block" below the input to finalize the addition.

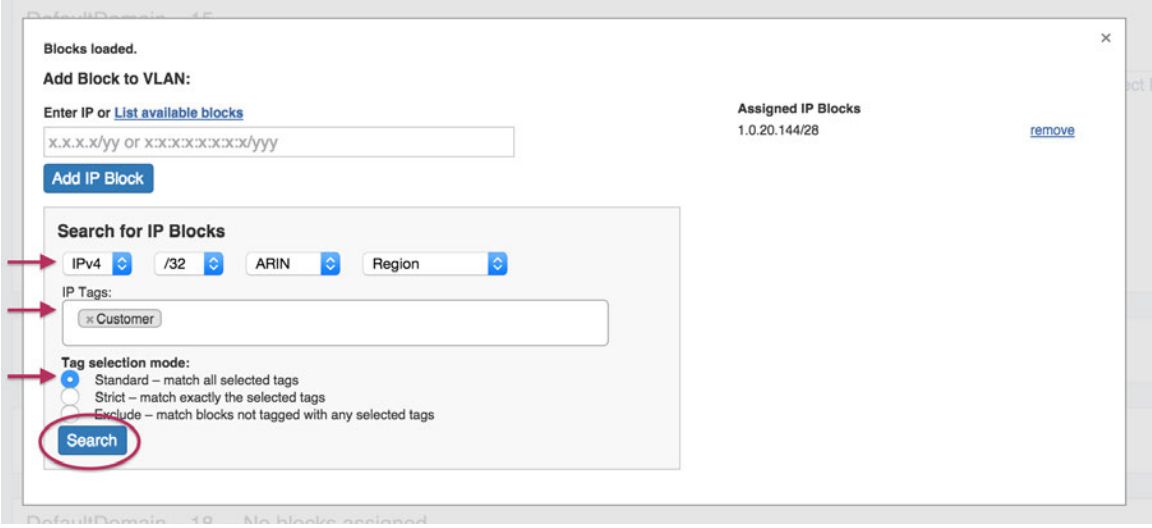



When complete, the block will be added to the "Assigned IP Blocks" list on the right of the window, with the option to remove if desired.



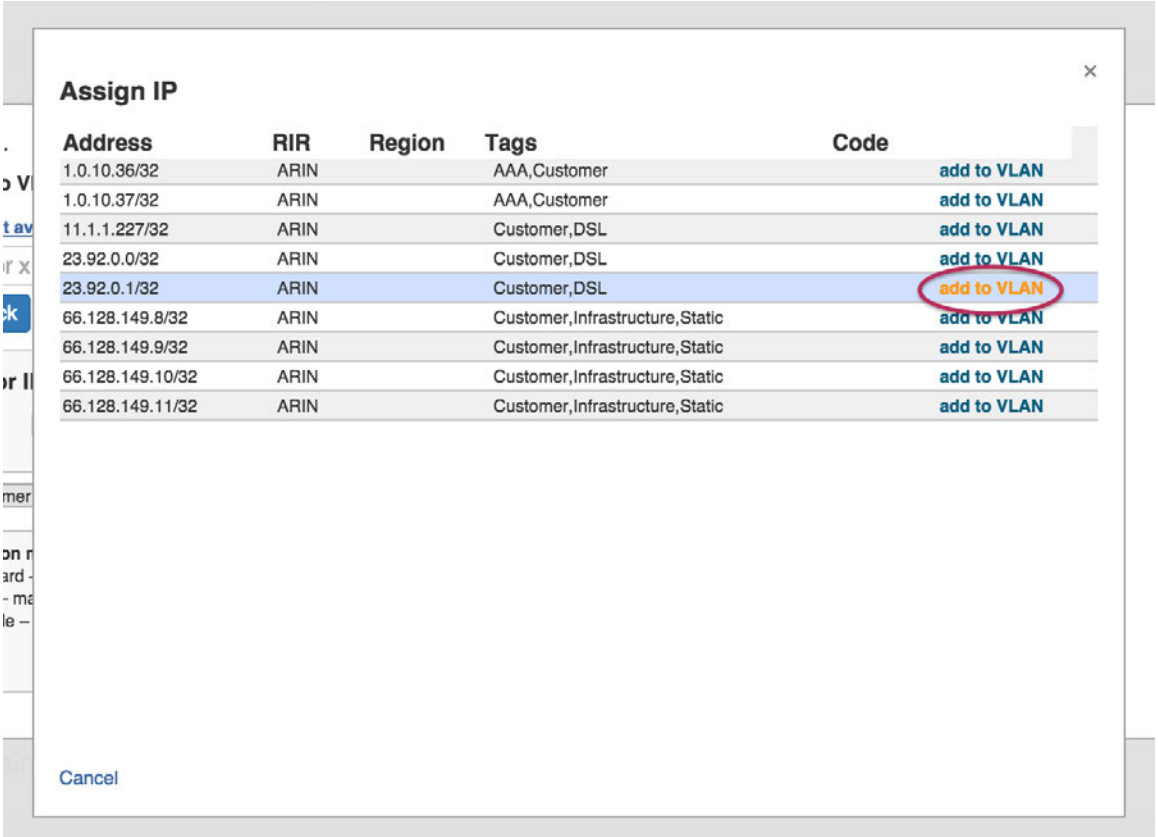

## Search IP Blocks to add to VLAN:

Select search criteria of IPv4 / IPv6, size, RIR, Region, or Associated Tags / Tag selection mode to create a filtered list of IP blocks meeting that criteria. Then, click "Search".

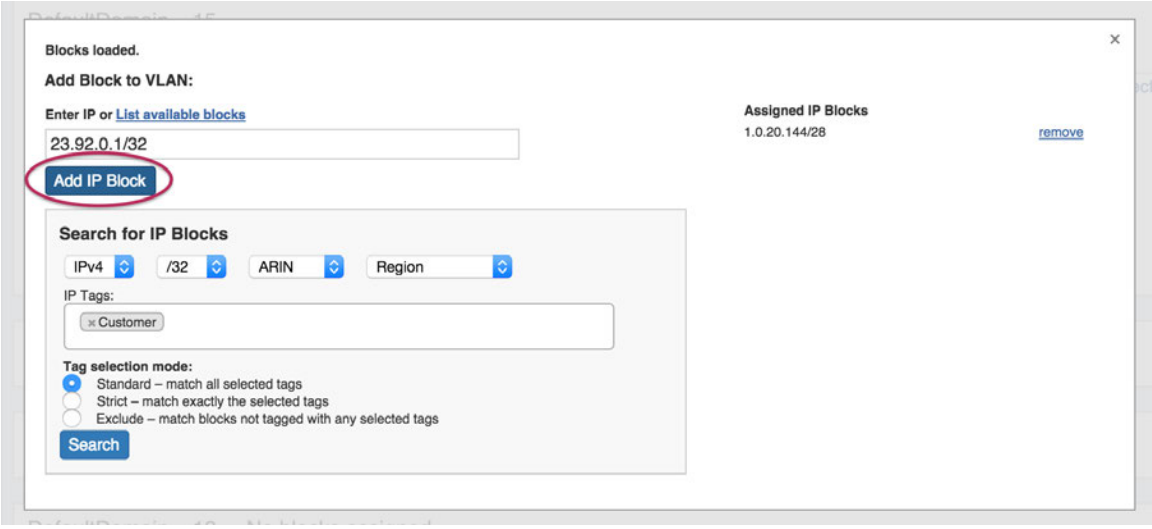



This opens a window with filtered results matching your criteria.

When you have selected the block to add, click "add to VLAN".




The selected block will automatically fill in the block input box - just hit "Add to IP Block" below the input to finalize the addition.



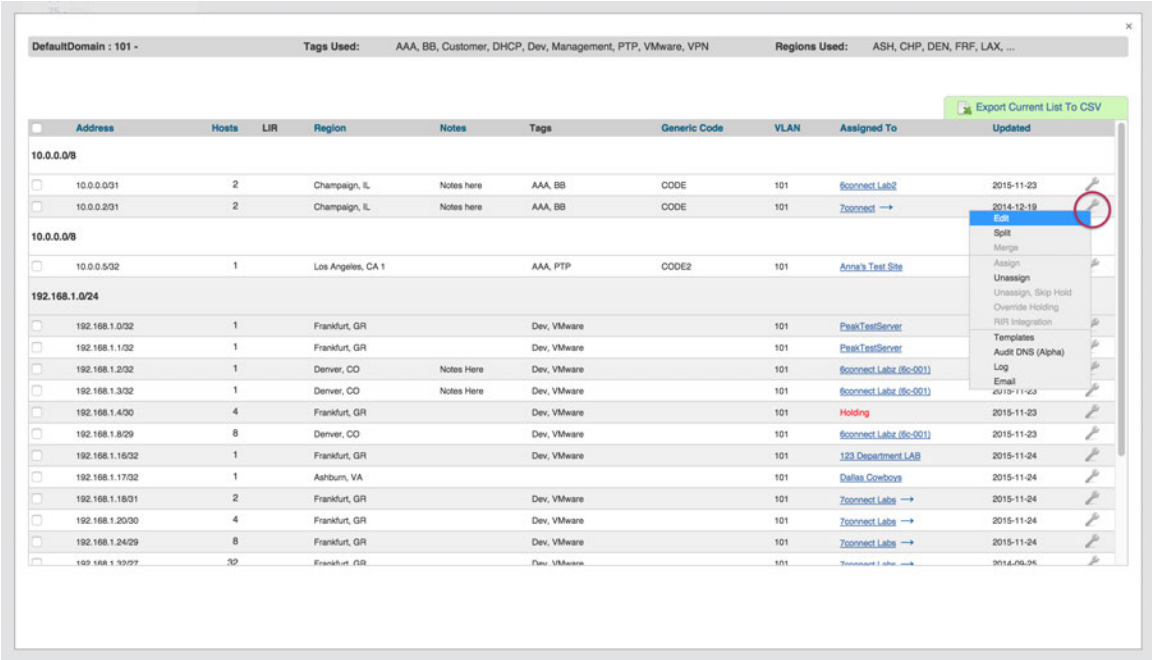

When complete, the block will be added to the "Assigned IP Blocks" list on the right of the window, with the option to remove if desired.

## Add / Update VLAN to Blocks from IPAM Manage or VLAN Manage:

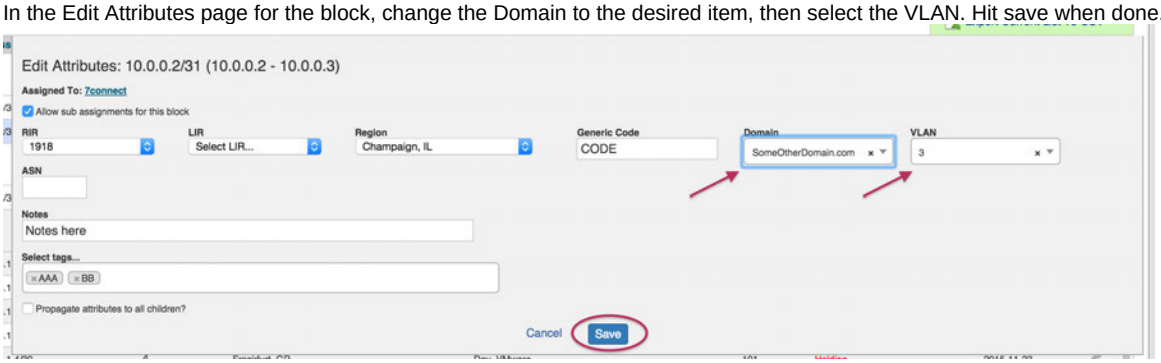
When editing a block in either IP Manage (IPAM Tab -> Action Menu (wrench) -> Manage), or VLAN Manage (IPAM Tab - VLAN -> Action Menu (wrench)) , you can select an existing domain and VLAN to associate to the block.

**VLAN Manage:**

From the VLAN Manage screen, click on the Action Menu (wrench icon) for the desired block, the select "Edit".

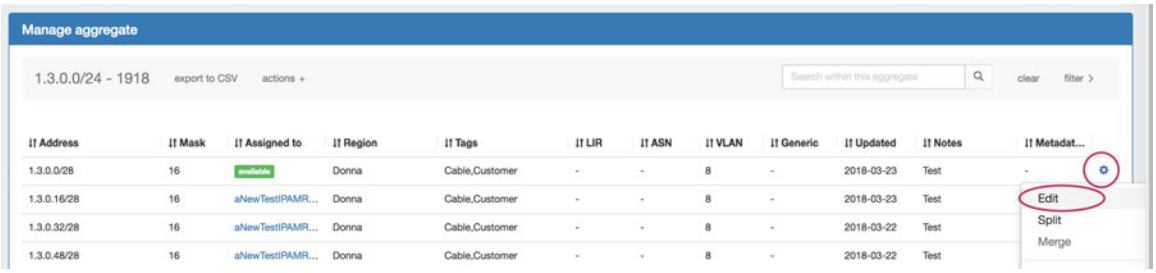



In the Edit Attributes page for the block, change the Domain to the desired item, then select the VLAN. Hit save when done.

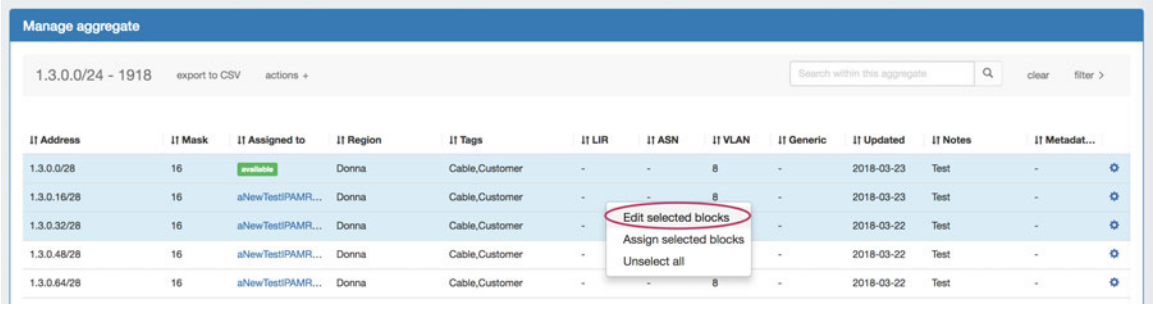



**IPAM Manage:**

From the IPAM Manage screen, right click on the Action Menu (gear icon) for the desired block, the select "Edit".

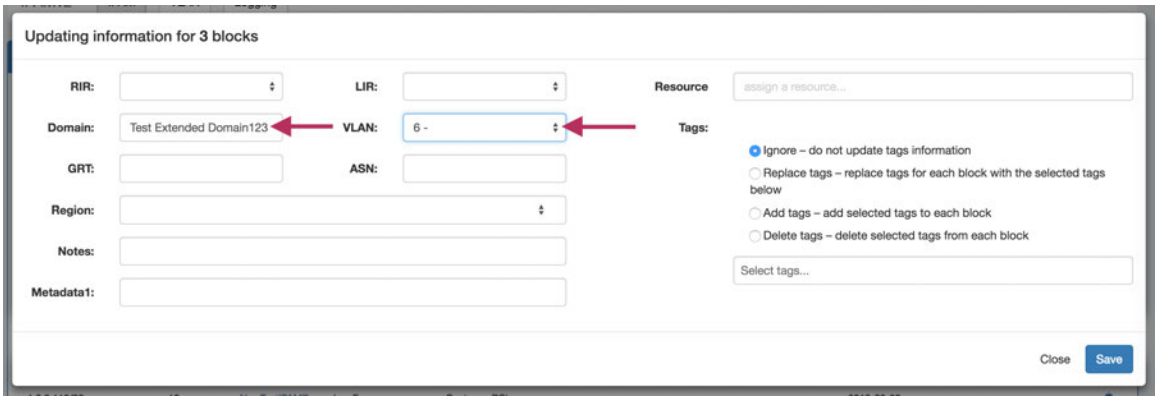



To select multple blocks to edit, hold down the shift key and click on the blocks you wish to edit - the selected blocks will be highlighted. Right click anywhere in the blue highlighted area, and select "Edit selected blocks".



The "Edit Block" modal window will pop up for the selected block(s). Edit the domain by clicking in or typing in the domain search box, and select the desired Domain.

Then, select the VLAN for the blocks from the enabled VLAN list. When done, click "Save".



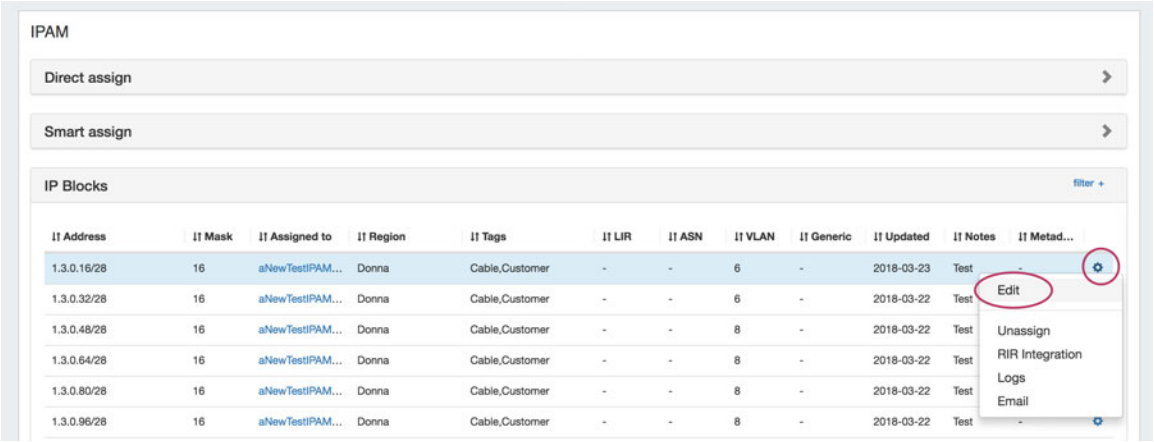

VLANs and Child Blocks

NOTE: Child blocks whose Parent blocks already have an assigned Domain / VLAN, may not have domains and VLANs changed to be different than the Parent Block's values. If you attempt to save domain / VLAN changes to a child block under this situation, an error will occur.

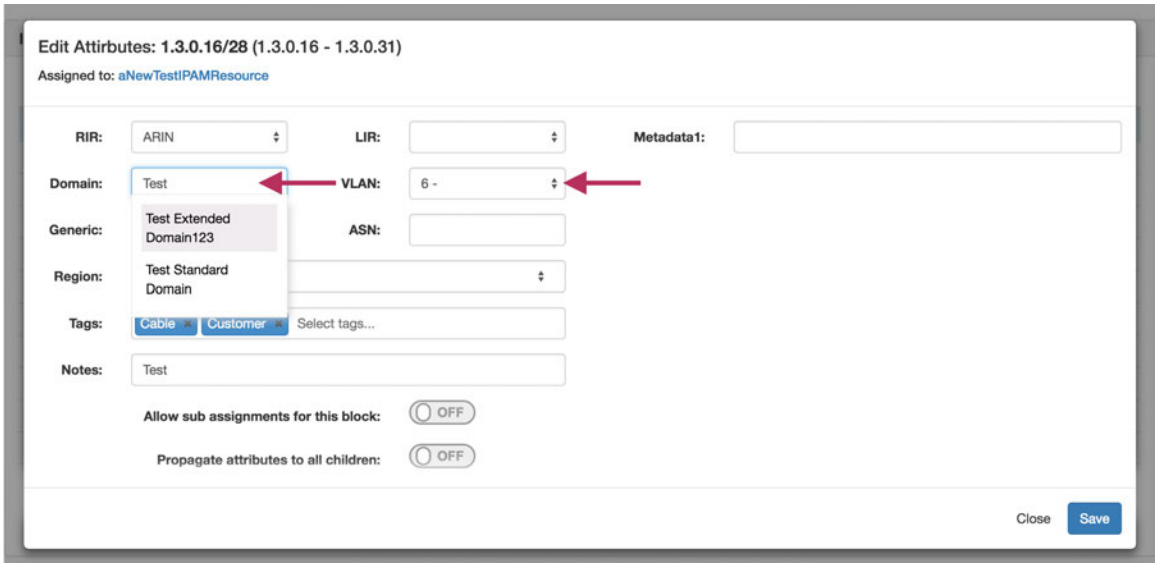
i.e., Parent and Child IP Blocks must have matching Domain / VLAN values.

## Add / Update VLAN to Blocks from IPAM Gadget:

You may also add / edit Domain /VLAN information when editing a block in the IPAM Gadget. From the IP block's Action Menu (gear icon), select "Edit".




Then, in the Edit Attributes box that pops up, search for or type the desired Domain, select VLAN information, and click "save".

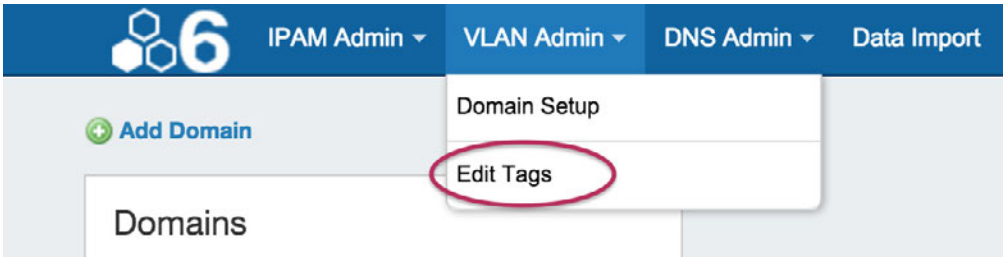



# Working with VLAN Tags - (Optional)

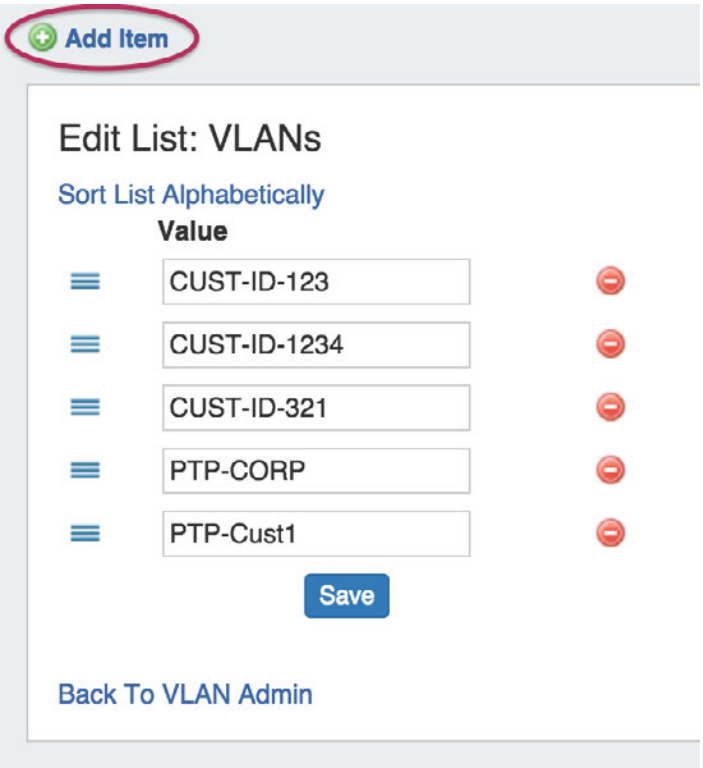
VLAN tags provide further organizational / search criteria when searching for VLANs to enable.

## Creating VLAN Tags

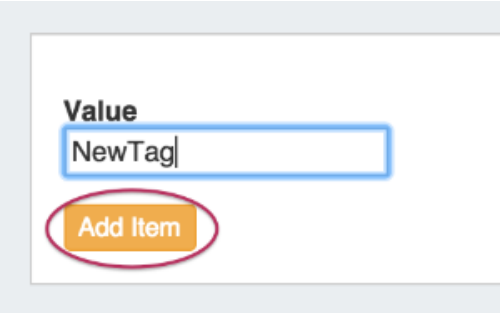
Create VLAN Tags from the VLAN Admin Tab, in the Admin area of ProVision, and select "Edit Tags" from the dropdown.




To add a new VLAN tag, click on "Add Item" at the top of the Edit List: VLAN Tags page.

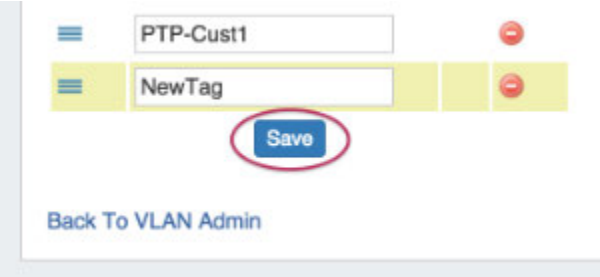



Then, type in the desired name value for the new tag, and hit "Add Item". The new tag will be added to the list below.




To **edit** a tag, simply type your changes in to the text box with the tag name. Tags with unsaved changes will be highlighted until saved.

To **delete** a tag, click on the red "delete" symbol to the right of the tag name.




When complete, be sure to click on the "Save" button to save your changes.

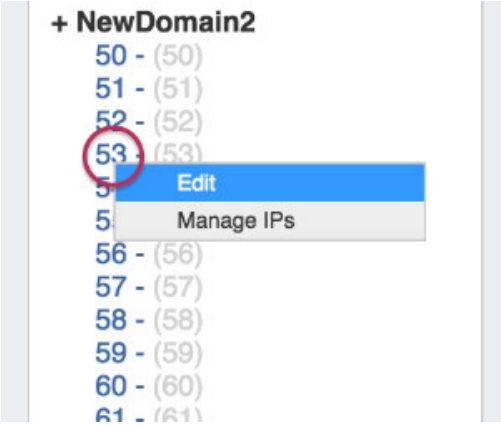
Once VLAN tags have been created, they will be available to add to VLAN ranges and use in the "Add VLAN" search function.

## Add VLAN Tags to VLANs

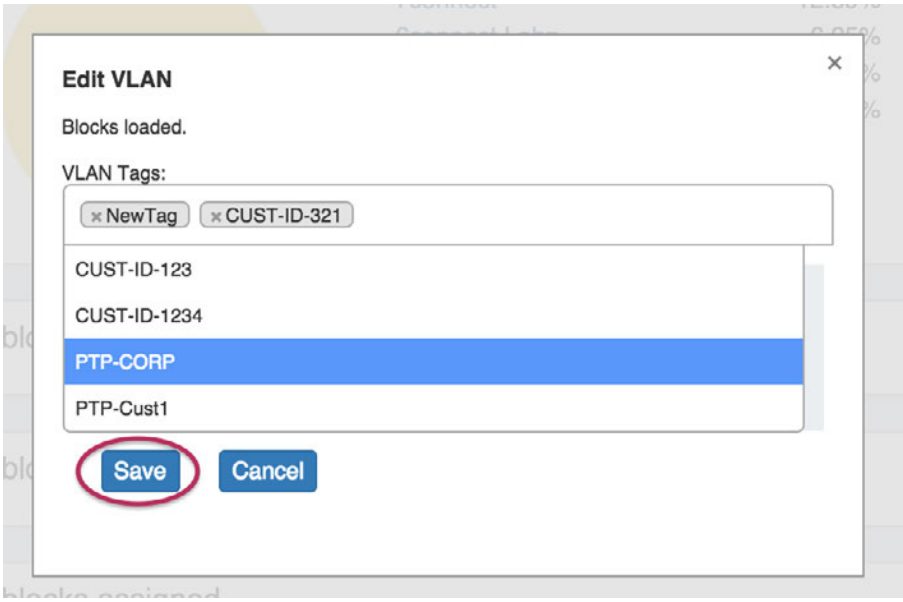
VLAN tags may be added to VLANs in two ways: Editing an already-enabled VLAN (VLAN Edit), or by assigning the tag to a range of VLANs from the Domain VLAN pool (un-enabled VLANs, which are then available to search by VLAN tag to enable).

## Add Tag to an Enabled VLAN

Edit an existing, already enabled VLAN by clicking on the VLAN in the VLAN List sidebar, then selecting "Edit".




Apply a VLAN tag from clicking in the "VLAN Tags" box, and selecting one or more VLAN Tags.

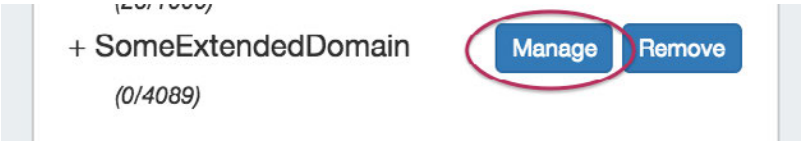



After making your changes, click the "Save" button. Tagged VLANs will be viewable in the VLAN Chart a single tag points under VLAN Admin - Domain Manage.

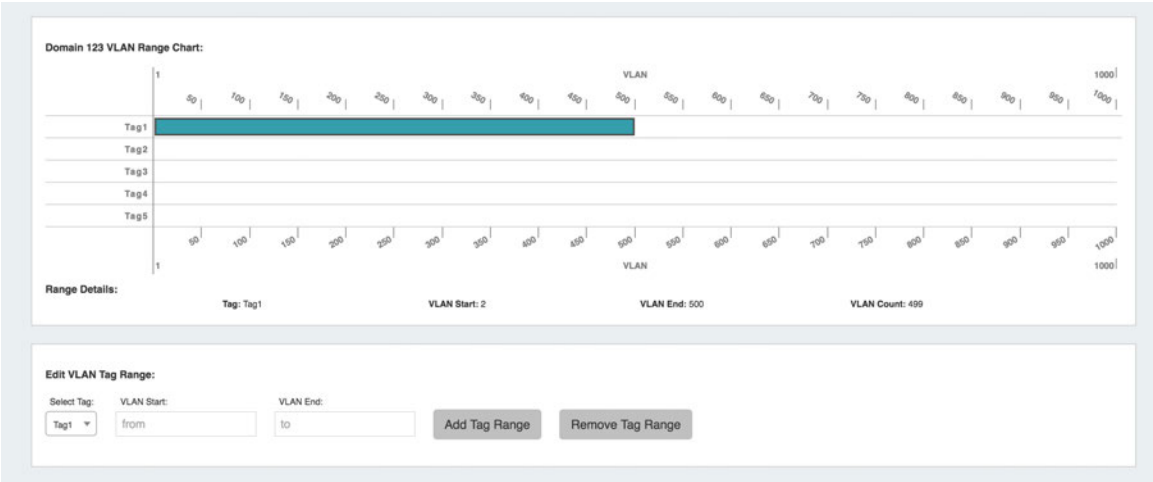
## Add Tag to a Range of  the VLAN Pool

You can also tag a range of the (un-enabled) VLANs in a domain's VLAN pool. Then, when moving on to enable a set of VLANs for a Domain, you can select those VLANs by tag.

Go to the VLAN Admin Tab in the Admin area of ProVision. Then, next to the desired domain, click "Manage".



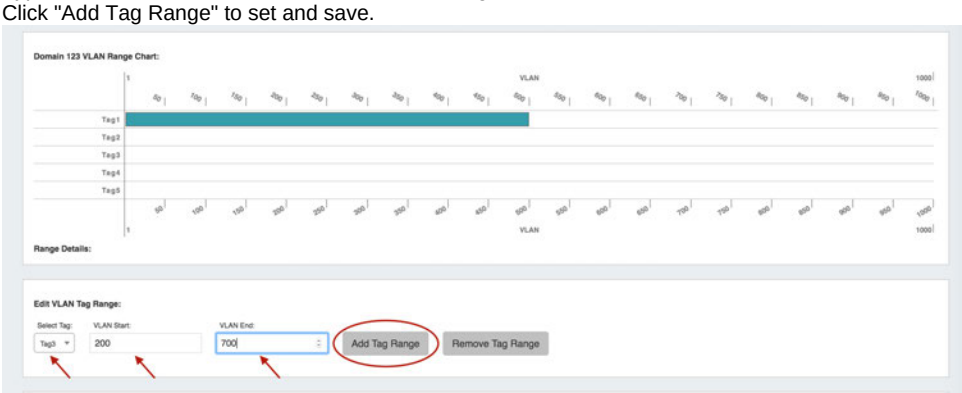

This brings up the page to edit the domain or view a chart of VLAN tags (y axis) to VLANs in the available pool (x axis).




Hovering the mouse over a tag range will show details such as the range start, end, and count of vlans in the range.

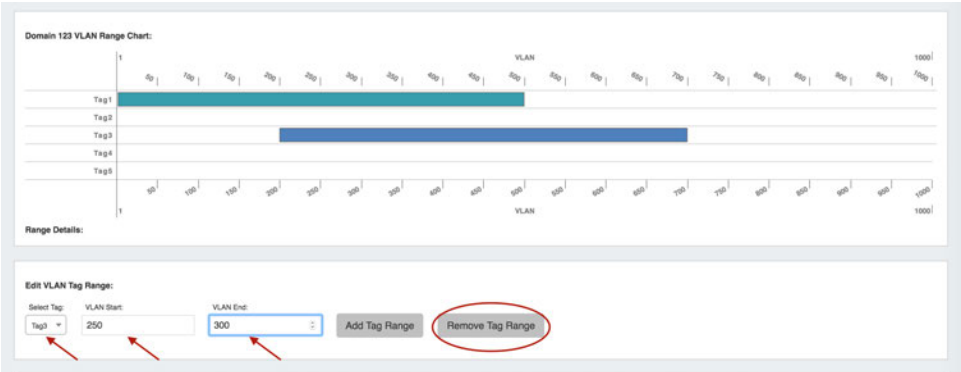
Under the "Edit VLAN Tag Range" section, you can bulk assign tags to ranges by:

1. Select the tag to edit in dropdown below chart
2. Type desired VLAN start and end value for the range
3. Click "Add Tag Range" to set and save.

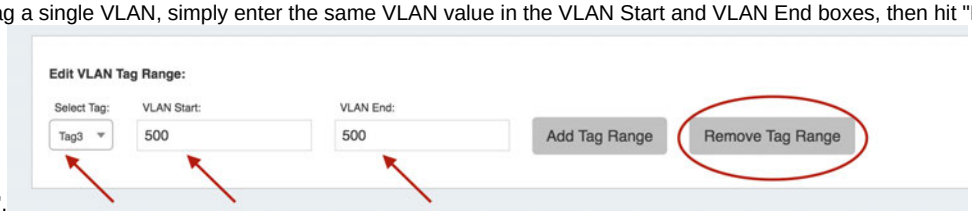



To remove a range of tags, under "Edit VLAN Tag Range":

1. Select tag to edit in dropdown below chart
2. Type desired VLAN start and end value for the range to remove
3. Click "Remove Tag Range" to set and save.




4. To untag a single VLAN, simply enter the same VLAN value in the VLAN Start and VLAN End boxes, then hit "Remove Tag Range".



5. Changes to tag ranges are automatically saved when clicking "Add Tag Range" or "Remove Tag Range", so after all desired changes are made, you may immediately exit the page.

Once assigned, the tags show as a property of the VLAN block in the VLAN edit menu and may be used for VLAN Searches / Assignments.

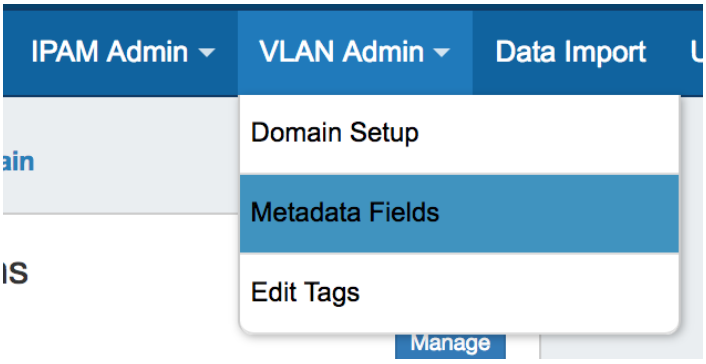
# Working with VLAN Metadata - (Optional)

Customizable metadata fields are available to hold VLAN-specific information such as Location, Client, Firewall, Gateway, and more.

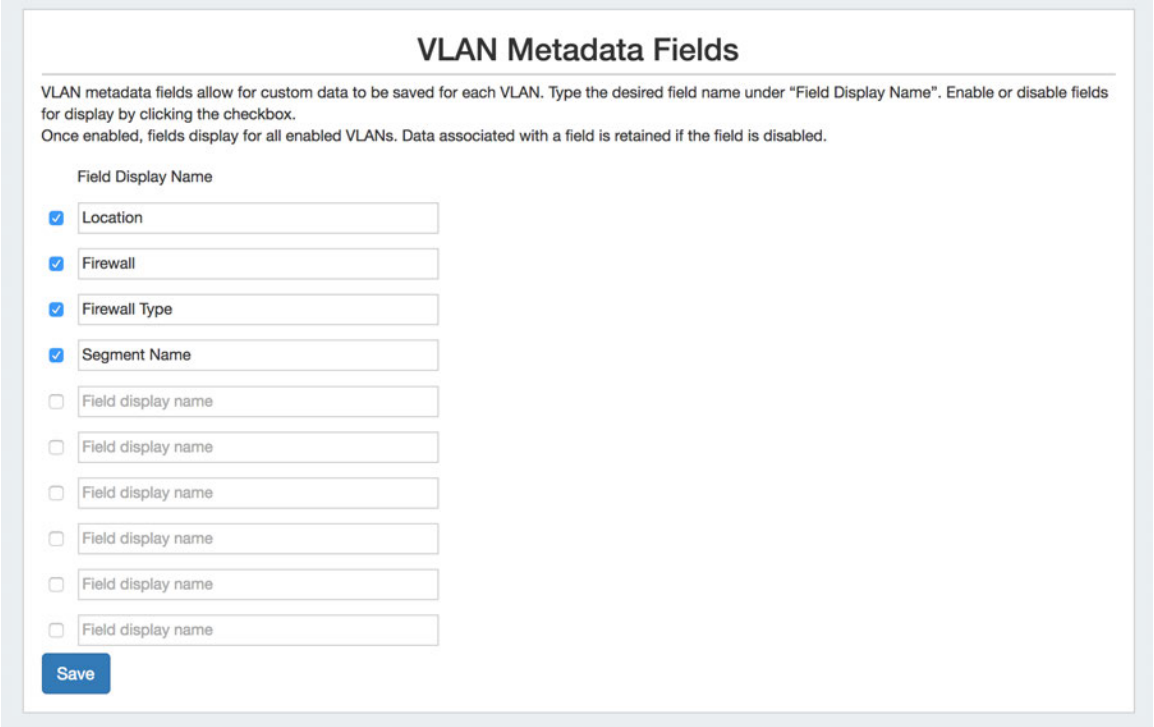
These fields can be enabled and disabled in the VLAN Admin section of ProVision, and viewed / edited under "Edit VLAN" in the VLAN Tab.

## Enable / Disable VLAn Metadata Fields

VLAN Metadata fields can be enabled and disabled under the **VLAN Admin** area of ProVision.




To enable a new Metadata Field, navigate to the Admin section of ProVision, and select "Metadata Fields" from the dropdown.




To enable a new field, type the desired field name in an empty text input box under "Field Display Name", and select the check box next to the new name. Then, click "Save" to save your changes. Field display names may be edited at any time by simply typing the desired change into the "Field Display Name" box and saving your changes.

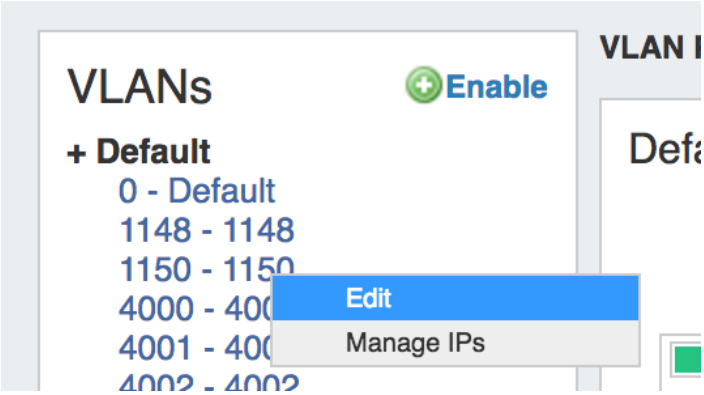
Once enabled, a metadata field displays for all enabled VLANs.

To disable a metadata field, deselect the check box next to the Field Display Name and click "Save". Any data that exists under a disabled field is retained, and will reappear once the field is re-enabled.

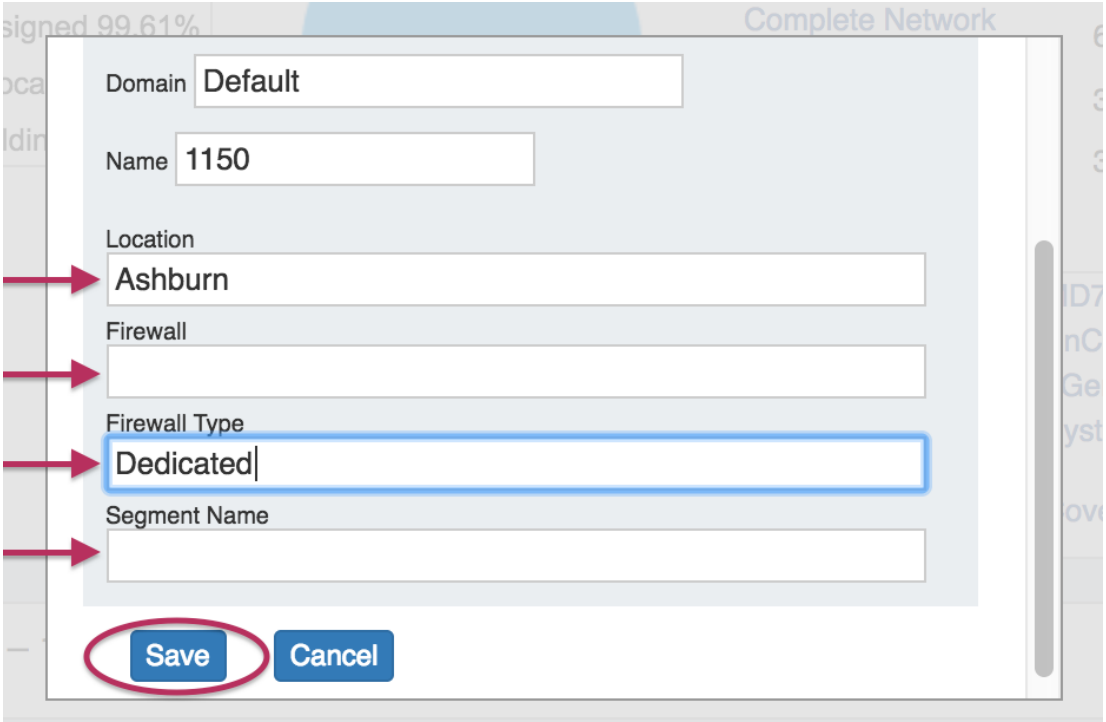
## View / Edit Metadata Field Information

VLAN Metadata may be viewed and edited in from the IPAM - VLAN Tab.

While in the IPAM Tab -> VLAN Page, expand the desired domain from the left sidebar and click on a VLAN. Then select "Edit".

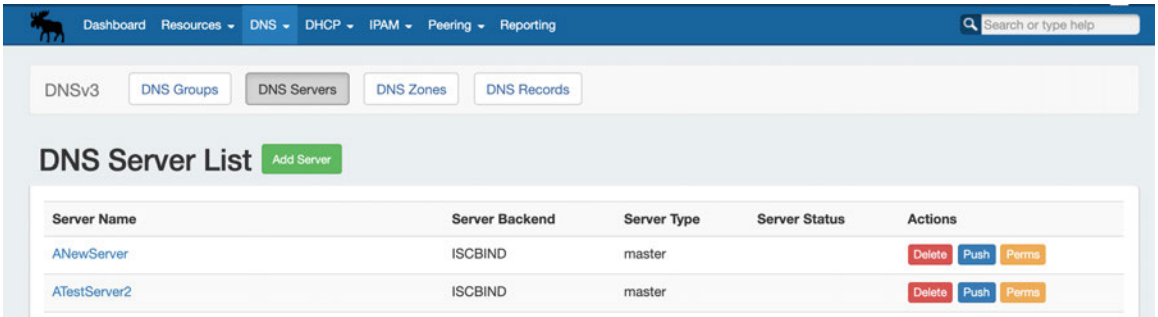



In the Edit VLAN screen, you may view the Metadata or enter your desired changes and click "Save" when done.



# DNS Administration

# DNS Administration




DNS Administration in DNSv3 is primarily handled under the **DNS** tab **DNS Servers** sub-tab.

The **DNS Servers** tab is only accessible to Admin users, and contains functions for adding, updating, and managing DNS servers as well as scheduling server tasks.

Additional DNS Admin tasks occur in other ProVision areas, and not all management tasks require Admin-level permissions - some only require appropriate resource permissions on the DNS Groups, Zones, and servers involved. See additional sections on this page for more detailed information:


- DNS Administration
  - DNSv3 Overview
    - DNSv3 Permissions
      - Permission Shortcut Button ("Perms")
    - DNS Approvals
    - DNSv3 Administrative Tasks
  - Manage DNS Servers
  - ACLs / Views
  - DNS Zone Transfers (Pushes)
    - Manual DNS Pushes:
    - Scheduled DNS Pushes:
  - DNS Record Types
  - Global DNS Settings (Local Installation Only)
    - DNS Global Settings:
    - DNSSEC Tools:
  - DNS Export Functions
    - Exporting Zones
  - Importing DNS Zones:
  - Additional Information:
    - System Information for Local Installations
    - Additional Sections:


## DNSv3 Overview

DNSv3 reorganizes ProVision's DNS system into a more unified and accessible interface, combining both admin and non-admin DNS tasks together under the **DNS** tab.

In DNSv3, zones are gathered under DNS Groups, servers are attached to those Groups, and Nameservers, Default SOA values, and ACLs are managed at a per-Group level.

Users can then view and manage Groups, individual zones, default SOA values, ACLs, attach servers, and perform pushes all on the same page.

DNSv3 Zone Name Response Change

Note: In DNSv3, zone name responses will enforce and return a trailing period (i.e., "example.com" will be converted and returned as "example.com.").

DNSv3 is designed to reflect RFC 1035 standards for valid data formats and will return error messaging for data not meeting those formats.

## DNSv3 Permissions

DNSv3 incorporates DNS zones and Groups into ProVision's Resource System. Zones and Groups are Resources just like Customers, Servers, Routers, or Contacts (See The Resource System for a more detailed explanation of Resources in ProVision).

This allows for DNS zones and Group permissions to be managed similarly to other ProVision resources, where users with Resource permissions (Create / Read / Update / Delete) on the parent resource of the DNS Group can create groups and zones, manage those groups and zones, push (if a server is attached), and delete.

A user with full Resource permissions on a DNS Server, as well as the parent resource of a Group, may view and attach that server to a Group.

Users with Admin permissions can access the **DNS Servers** area under the **DNS** tab manage DNS server creation, edits, and deletion.

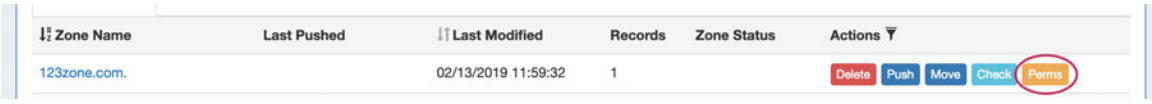
For more information on setting up permissions groups in ProVision, see Users & Permissions.

## Permission Shortcut Button ("Perms")

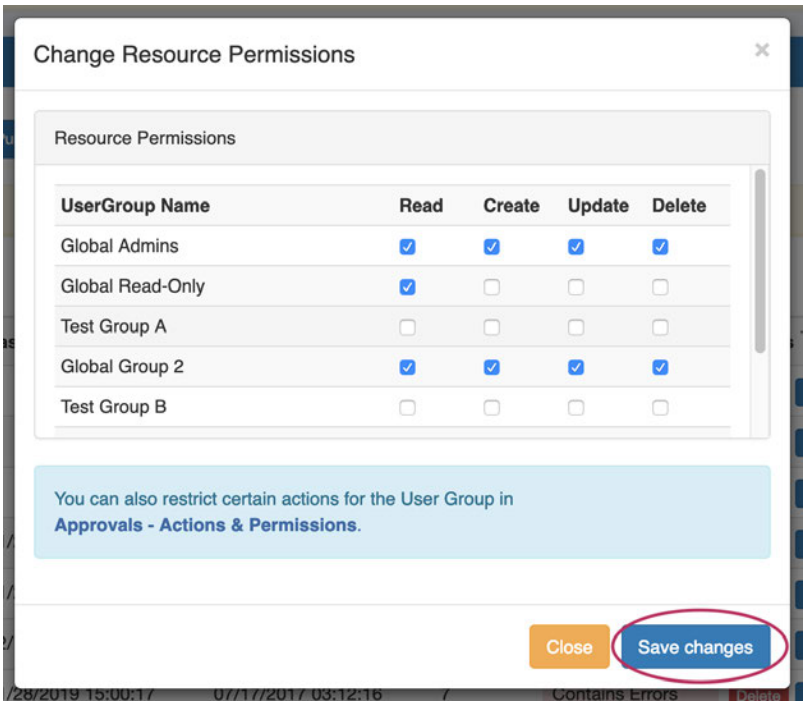
Throughout DNS, a shortcut permissions button ("Perms") is available on a per-item level, accessible only to Admin users.

This permissions button allows for direct, point-of-use permissions adjustments to DNS Groups, Servers, Zones, and Records. It uses the same CRUD permissions and groups available in the Admin Users tab, but removes the need to remember and search for the DNS item name.

To open the Change Resource Permissions module, click on the "Perms" Button for any DNS item.




Edit the CRUD permissions for any ProVision user group by clicking the checkbox for the desired group and permission type. When done, click "Save Changes". The permission changes will be also be reflected in the Admin **User** tab Group settings.

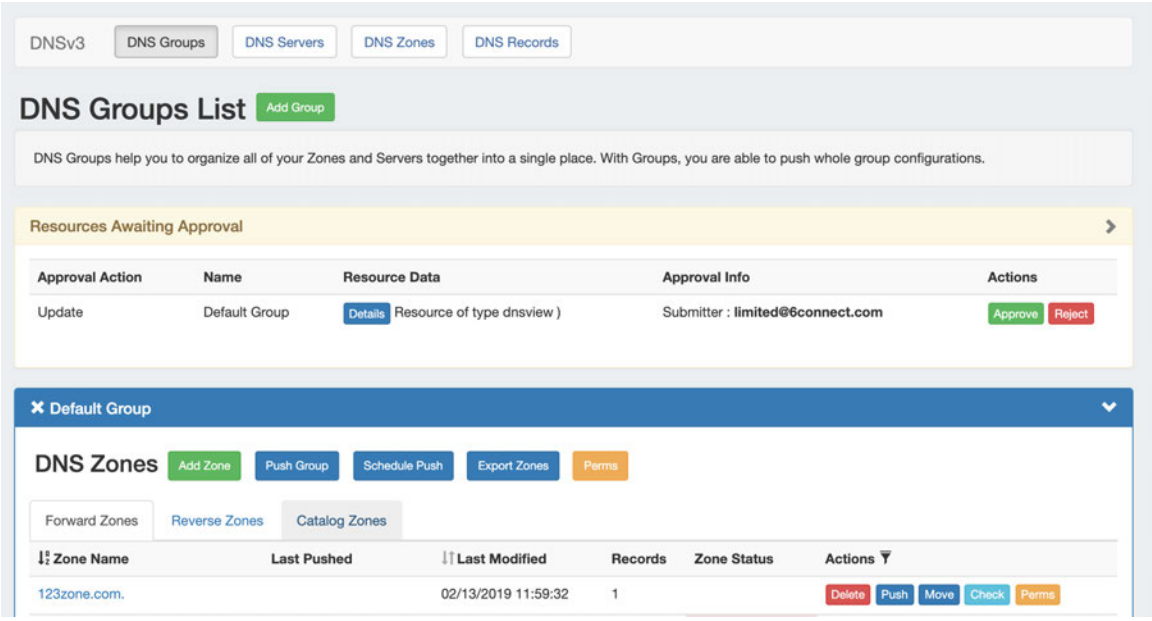



## DNS Approvals

The Approvals module stores and queues DNS actions made by selected User Groups, and sends those actions to a Pending Changes list for administrative review.  Later, an administrator (or combination of administrators) can approve or reject these stored actions.

Approvals is primarily set up and managed via the Admin **Approvals** Tab. See the ProVision Admin Guide - Approvals Tab for details on setting up and using Approvals from the Administrative viewpoint.

In the **DNS** Tab, a "Resources Awaiting Approval" module will display near the top of DNS Groups, DNS Zone Lists, and DNS Servers pages, if a change has been submitted on that page that is pending approval.




Users who submitted a change for approval will see the details of their change request in this module.

Admin users with permissions to approve or reject the request will have the option to Approve or Deny the change.

## DNSv3 Administrative Tasks

Admin-only tasks in DNSv3 include setting DNS Globals, importing zones, scheduling pushes, managing DNS Servers, and managing DNS Approvals.

These tasks may be accessed in the following areas:

- DNS Global Settings (Local Installs): Admin Preferences page.
- Importing DNS Zones: the **Data Import** tab, see Import DNS Zones.
- Scheduling DNS Pushes:
    - May be set up from the Scheduler Tab or,
    - Set by server from the **DNS Servers** page, or
    - Set by DNS Group from the **DNS Groups** page, or
    - Set by individual zone from the View Zone page
- Managing DNS Servers: The **DNS Servers** page
- Approvals: The Approvals Tab.

Tasks such as working with zones, DNS Groups, adding ACLs, attaching servers to Groups, and manually pushing zones do not require ProVision Admin permissions.

Instead, these tasks simply require that the user be included in a User Group that has appropriate permissions (either direct, or inherited) on the DNS zones, Groups, and servers involved.

## Manage DNS Servers

Adding, configuring, and managing DNS Servers occurs in the Admin-only **DNS Servers** page under the **DNS** Tab.

Supported DNSv3 server types include:

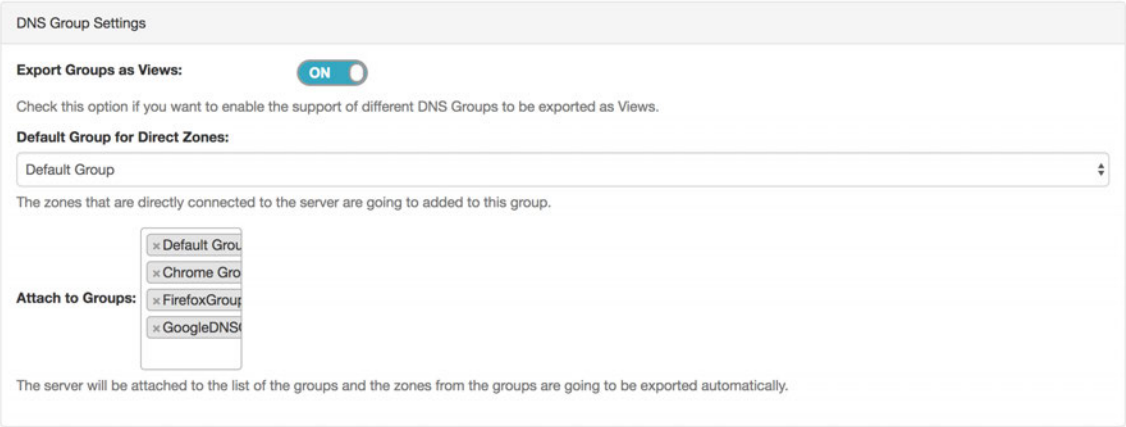
- ISC BIND
- Secure 64 (Authority, x86 Authority, KNOT Authority, Cache, Signer)
- PowerDNS (BIND and MySQL)
- InfoBlox

- Knot DNS
- NS ONE
- DynDNS (Beta)
- DNSMadeEasy
- Dummy (a fake server entry used for servers outside of ProVision access, in order to manage master / slave configurations)

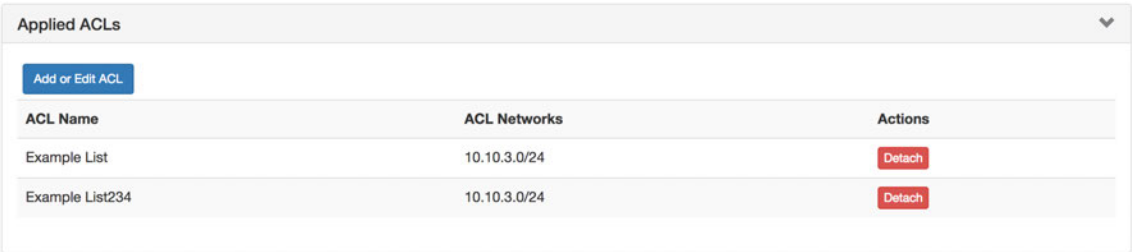
For detailed information on adding, editing, and deleting DNS Servers, see Working with DNS Servers.

# ACLs / Views

In DNSv3, Views may be created by selecting the "Export Groups as Views" toggle and selecting a DNS Group under the server details sections "DNS Group Settings".




ACLs are managed on a per-DNS Group level, and may be added, edited, or removed by any user with appropriate resource permissions on the DNS Group.




For details on working with ACLs, see Configuring ACLs/Views.

# DNS Zone Transfers (Pushes)

In DNSv3, zones may be pushed manually or scheduled for a future time, and may be performed for a single zone, all zones in a DNS Group, or all zones on a server.

Scheduling DNS pushes requires administrative access, but manual pushes only require permissions on the DNS Group / DNS Zone, and the server(s) attached.

## Manual DNS Pushes:

Manual pushes may be performed from the following locations in ProVision:

- Single Zone: From the DNS Groups Zone list "Push" button. See Working with DNS Zones - Pushing Zones
- Single Zone: From the DNS View Zone page "Push Zone Now" button. See Working with DNS Zones - Pushing Zones
- Group: From the DNS Groups Zone list "Push Group" button. See Working with DNS Groups - Pushing a Group

- Server: From the DNS Servers list "Push" button. See Working with DNS Servers - Pushing a server
- Server: From the DNS Server Settings page "Push Zones" button. See Working with DNS Servers - Pushing a server

## Scheduled DNS Pushes:

Scheduled pushes may be performed from the following locations in ProVision:

- May be set up from the Scheduler Tab for single zones, all zones in a Group, or all zones on a server.
- Set by server from the **DNS Servers** page, or
- Set by DNS Group from the **DNS Groups** page, or
- Set by individual zone from the View Zone page

# DNS Record Types

DNSv3 Record Types are a static list comprised of:

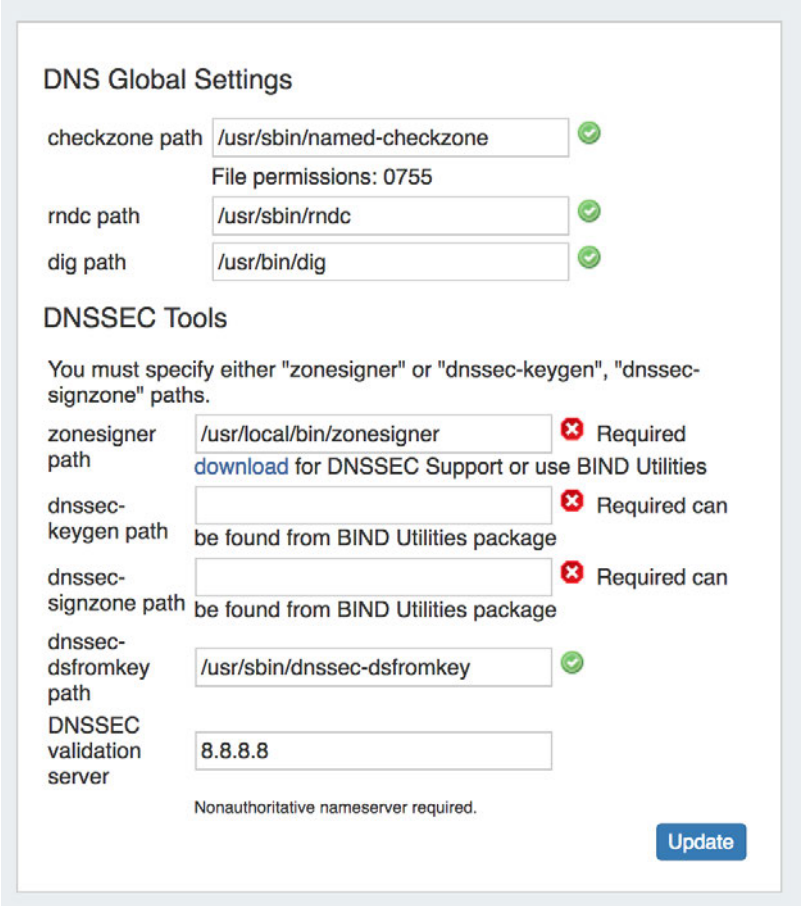
- A, AAAA, CNAME, DNAME, DNSKEY, DS, MX, NAPTR, NS, PTR, SOA, SRV, SPF, HINFO, TXT.

Any user with appropriate resource permissions on the DNS Zone / DNS Group may add, edit, or delete DNS Records.

See Working with DNS Zones for detailed information on managing DNS Records.

# Global DNS Settings (Local Installation Only)

DNS Global Settings is accessible from the Admin Preferences page by users with Admin level permissions.




## DNS Global Settings:

- **Checkzone path:** Path to checkzone

- **rndc path:** Path to rndc
- **dig path:** Path to dig

### DNSSEC Tools:

- **zonesigner path :** Enter the zonesigner path that will be used for DNS.  Zonesigner is required if dnssec-keygen and dnssec-signzone are not set.
- **dnssec-keygen path:** Enter the keygen path.  Required if zonesigner is not set.
- **dnssec-signzone path:** Enter the signzone path. Required if zonesigner is not set.
- **dnssec-dsfromkey path :** Enter the dnssec-dsfromkey  path that will be used for DNS. Required in all cases.
- **DNSSEC validation server:** Enter the IP of the nonauthoritative DNSSEC validation nameserver. Optional.

# DNS Export Functions

## Exporting Zones

**Individual Zones:**

DNS zones may be exported individually from the zone's View Zone page "Export Zone" button, by any user with appropriate zone permissions (see: DNS Zones Overview).

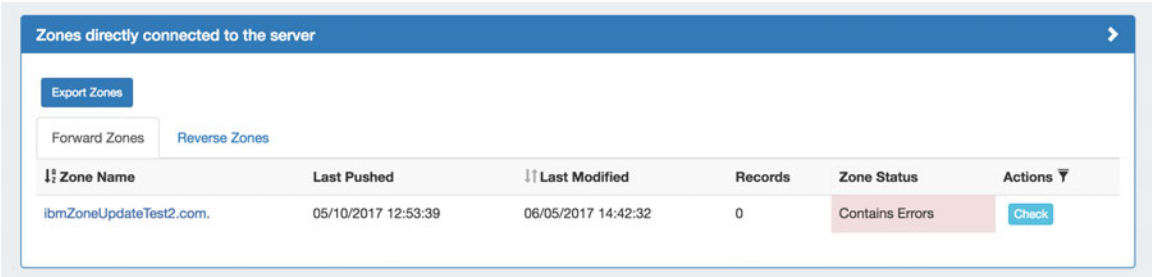
**Zones in a DNS Group:**

All zones under a DNS Group may be exported from the DNS Group "Export Zones" button, by any user with the appropriate group permissions (see: Working with DNS Groups).

**Zones directly connected to a server:**

Zones directly connected to a server may be exported by Admin users from the DNS Server Details page, under the section "Zones connected directly to the server".

Expand the module by clicking the (>) arrow, and then click the "Export Zones" button.




# Importing DNS Zones:

ProVision offers six DNS zone import options, available under the **Data Import** tab in the Admin section. For more information on importing DNS zones, see Importing your Data and Import DNS Zones.

**BIND Zone Upload / Import:** Imports DNS zones using the named.conf configuration file tied to the zones you are uploading, a .zip or .tar file of the zones themselves, and an optional .csv file mapping zones to customers and DNS Servers. This is the simplest and most commonly used import method. Refer to Import DNS Zones for more information.

**PowerDNS Zone Import:** This tool is available after configuring a PowerDNS server with a MySQL backend. The PowerDNS Import connects to the selected server and imports all zones.

**InfoBlox Zone Import:** Imports DNS zones using a provided Host, Username, and Password. The InfoBlox import pulls all zones on the InfoBlox LOCAL grid and adds them to a designated Group. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**NS ONE Zone Import**: Imports DNS zones using a NS One API Key. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**Dyn DNS Zone Import**: Imports DNS zones using a Dyn DNS Customer Name, Username, and Password. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**DNSMadeEasy Zone Import**: Imports DNS zones using a DNSMadeEasy API Key and API Secret. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**IPPlan Zone Import**: Imports DNS zones using IPPlan MySQL database options. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

# Additional Information:

## System Information for Local Installations

Zones are stored in the 6connect web root under /zones.

DS keys are stored in the 6connect web root under /keys.

Global DNS Settings may be set from the Admin Preferences page.

## Additional Sections:

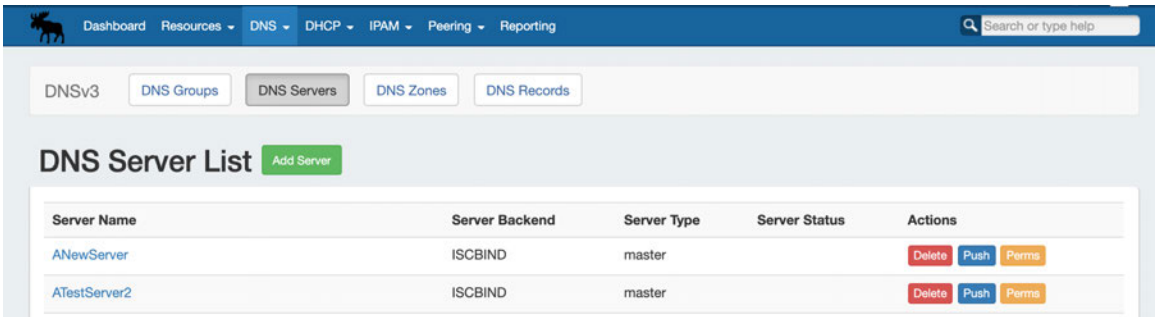
For more information on DNS and configurations, see the following sections:

- Working with DNS Servers
- Configuring ISC BIND Support
- Configuring PowerDNS Support
- Configuring Secure64 Support
- Configuring ACLs/Views
- Configuring DNSSEC

# Working with DNS Servers

# DNS Servers

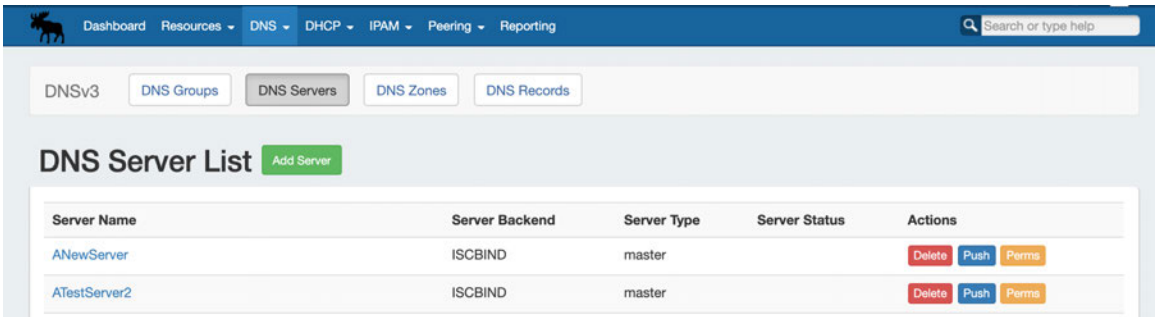
ProVision's DNSv3 combines server management, group organization, and zone management under the **DNS** tab.




The **DNS Servers** tab is only accessible to Admin users, and contains functions for adding, updating, and managing DNS servers as well as scheduling server tasks.


- DNS Servers
  - DNS Server List Interface
- Working with DNS Servers
  - Add a Server
    - Server Settings
      - 1) Set Server Common Settings
      - 2) Set Server Specific Settings
      - 3) Set DNS Group Settings for Server
      - 4) Save Changes
  - Edit Servers
  - Review Zones Connected to a Server
    - Zones Directly Connected to the Server
    - Zones Connected via a Group
  - Pushing a Server
    - Manual Push
    - Scheduled Push
  - Delete a Server
- Additional Information


## DNS Server List Interface




**1) Add Server Button**: Opens a dialog for creating a DNS server.

**2) Server List:**

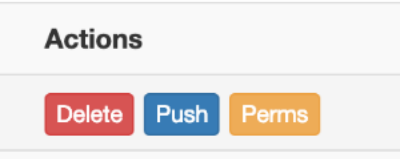
**3) Server Name:** Name of the DNS server. Click to open server details.

**4) Server Backend:** The DNS Service backend type for the server.

**5) Server Type:** Whether the server is a master or slave type.

**6) Server Status:** Currently a placeholder column for future display of server error and connection status messages.

**7) Actions:** The actions that may be performed on each server:




**8) Delete:** Deletes the server from ProVision.

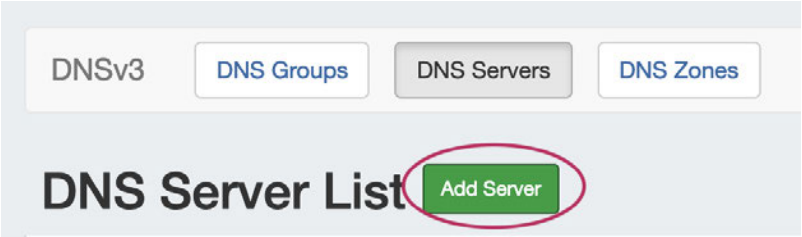
**9) Push**: Pushes all zones associated with the selected server.

**10) Perms**: Opens a shortcut to edit permissions for the selected server.

# Working with DNS Servers

## Add a Server

To create a new server, start from the **DNS** Tab, select the **DNS Servers** sub menu. Then, click the "Add Server" button next to "DNS Server List".

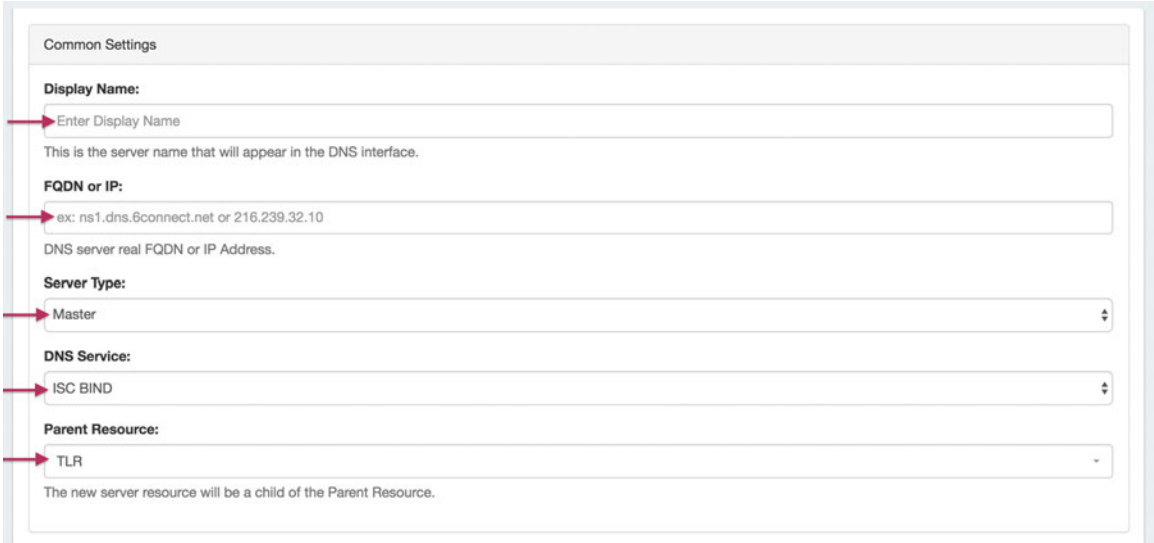



This will open the "Server Settings" page.

## Server Settings

### 1) Set Server Common Settings

In the "Common Settings" section of Server Settings, enter the new server's Display Name (the name that will appear on the ProVision interface), the FQDN / IP, server type, service type, and desired parent Resource (may be left at the default Top Level Resource).



**Display Name:** Name you want the server to display.

**FQDN or IP:** The FQDN or ip address of the DNS server.

**Default:** Specify if the server should be added to new zones by default or not.

**Server Type:** Specify if the server is a master or slave.  Different configuration files are created master vs. slave on the Bind, PowerDNS /Bind, and Secure64 platforms.

**DNS Service:** Select the DNS service type (ISC Bind, Secure64, KnotDNS, etc).

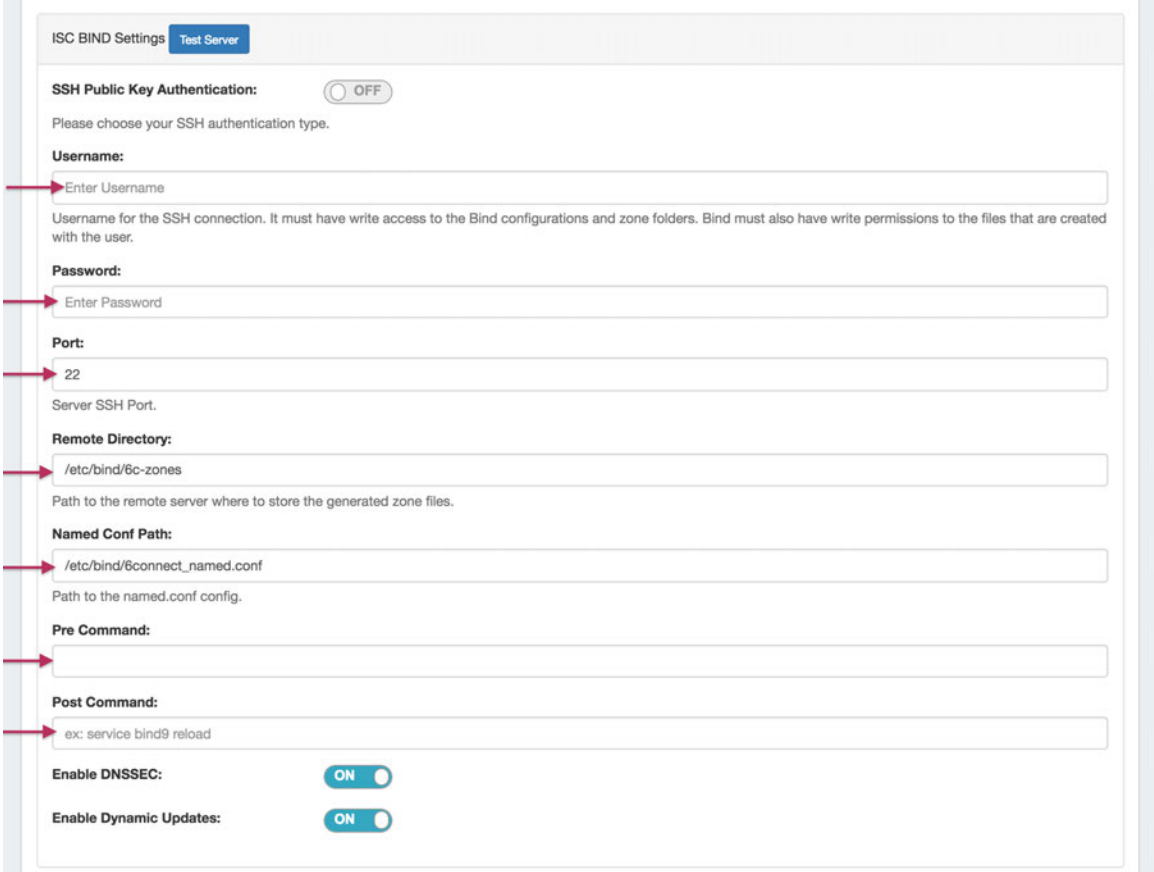
**Parent Resource:** Select the ProVision resource to be the "parent" of the server - typically TLR (Top Level Resource), but may be a lower level resource such as a Customer or Location. The parent resource selection is the basis of access permissions for the server.

## 2) Set Server Specific Settings

The next section is entering server service-type specific settings. The options visible in this section will depend on the "DNS Service" type chosen under "Common Settings".

Here, we see the fields for ISC BIND server settings. Enter the server Username, Password, Port, Remote Director, Named Conf. Path, and Pre /Post Command (if desired). Your fields may vary for other server types.

For SSH Public Key Authentication, DNSSEC, and Dynamic Option updates, click on the ON / OFF toggle to select "ON" or "OFF" for each as needed.




**SHH Public Key Authentication:** If applicable, toggle "On" or "Off"

**Username:** Login/username for the target DNS server.  The specified account needs to be valid, and have write permission to the remote directory and execute permission for any pre/post commands.

**Password:** Password for the target account.  All passwords are stored encrypted in the database.

**Port:** Port to contact the target server on.  This is port used for SSH on Bind and Secure64 server types.

**Remote Directory:** The target directory to transfer zone files to on the DNS system.

**Named Conf Path:** The path to other zones on the Bind systems.

**Pre Command:** Any valid system command on the target DNS system. This command will be run before any files are transferred.

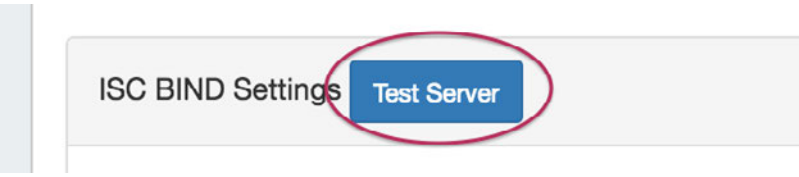
**Post Command:** Any valid system command on the target DNS system. This command will be run after any files are transferred. For example, on a Bind system you would need to run "rndc reload" to reload the zones.

**Enable DNSSEC:** If available for the server type, toggle to "On" or "Off". See Configuring DNSSEC for additional information.

**Enable Dynamic Updates:** Toggle to "On" or "Off", if the server allows dynamic updates.

After entering the server-specific settings in this section, you can click the "Test Server" button at the top of the section to test the server connection and authentication.

The "Test Server" button will attempt to login to the target system and write to the target directory.

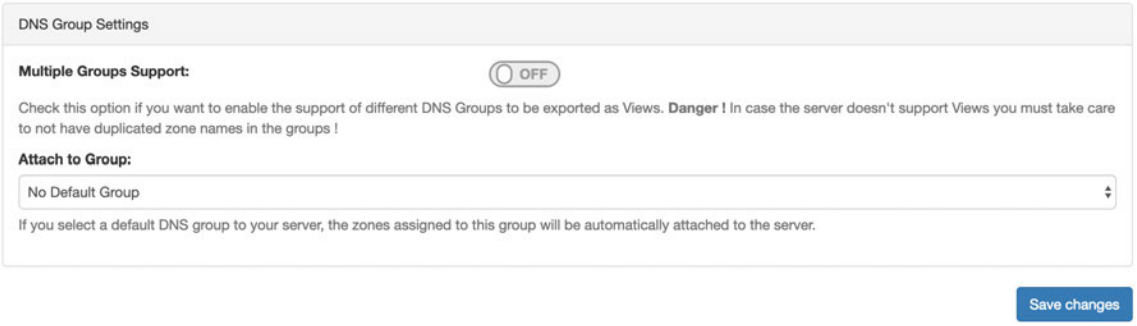



A window will pop up showing a success or failure response.

If any failures are encountered, an error will be written with some detail. If the test is successful, the word "Success!" will show verifying that files can be transferred. This does not test if the user can execute pre/post commands. This needs to be checked manually.

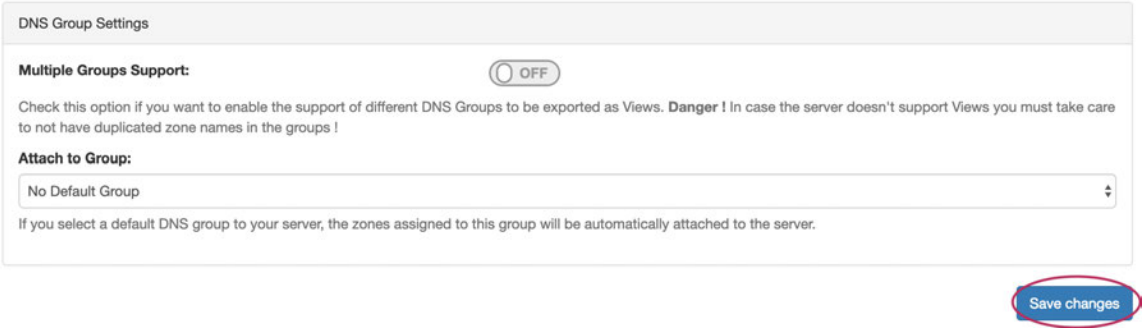
## 3) Set DNS Group Settings for Server

In the last section, select whether to enable Multiple Groups Support for exporting Groups as View (click to toggle ON / OFF), and select a default Group, if desired, to be associated with the server. Zones assigned to the selected Group will automatically be attached to the server.




## 4) Save Changes

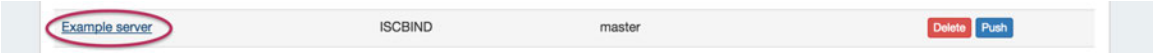
Save your changes when done! Just click the "Save Changes" button at the bottom right of the page.



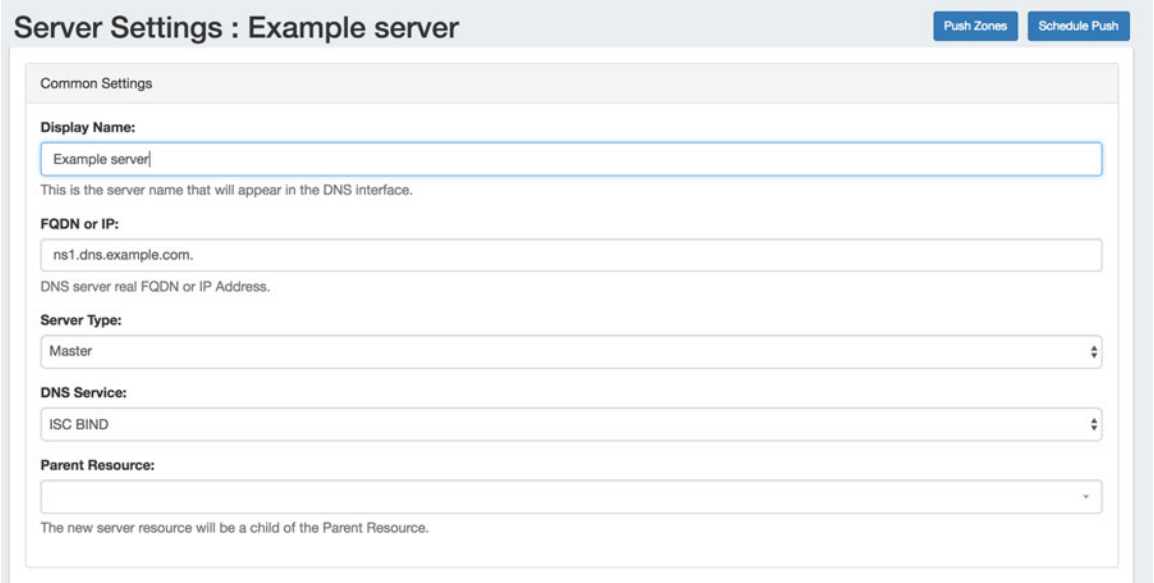

The new server will now be added to the DNS Servers list. These settings may be changed at any time by selecting the server from the server list and editing the information.

# Edit Servers

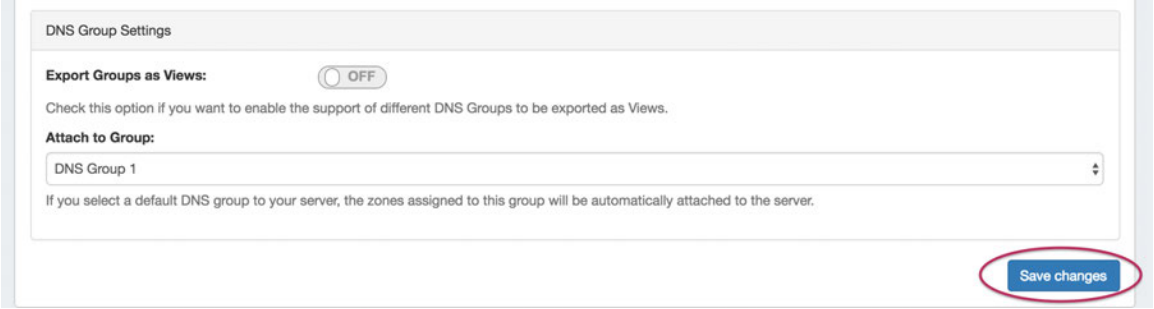
Edit an existing server by clicking once on the server name in the DNS Servers list.




The "Server Settings" page will open.




Click inside the field that you want to change, type your changes, and then click "Save Changes" at the bottom of the page.




# Review Zones Connected to a Server

There are two ways that zones may be connected to a DNS server:

1) Directly connected, by attaching the zone to a server from the View Zone page.

or,

2) Connected by a Group that has been set as the default DNS Group for the server, selected under "DNS Group Settings".

Both are able to be viewed on the DNS Server Settings page.

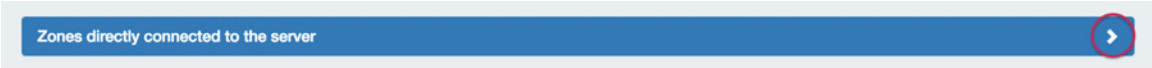
To view either, open the Server Settings page for the server by clicking on the server name in the DNS Servers list.

Edit an existing server by clicking once on the server name in the DNS Servers list.

The "Server Settings" page will open.

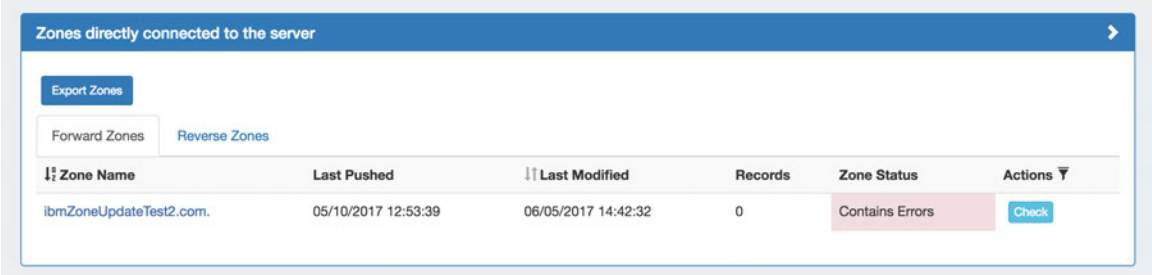
## Zones Directly Connected to the Server

Scroll to the bottom of the page, and open the module titled "Zones directly connected to the server" by clicking on the expansion arrow.




A zone list will show the zone(s) that have been directly connected to this server.

Here, you may browse through forward and reverse zones by selecting the "Forward Zones" or "Reverse Zones" tabs, sort the list by Zone Name or Last Modified, open the zone's page by clicking on the name, or check the zone's status by clicking the "Check" button.

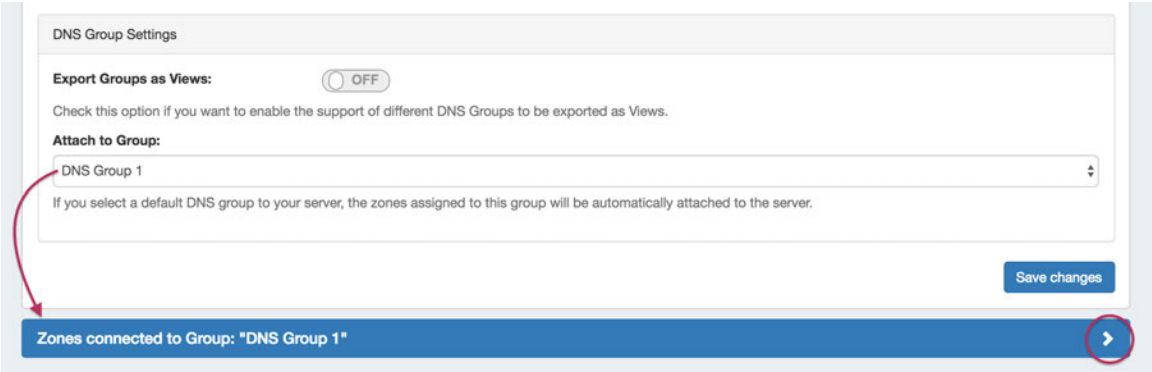



Zones may be exported by clicking the "Export Zones" button.

## Zones Connected via a Group

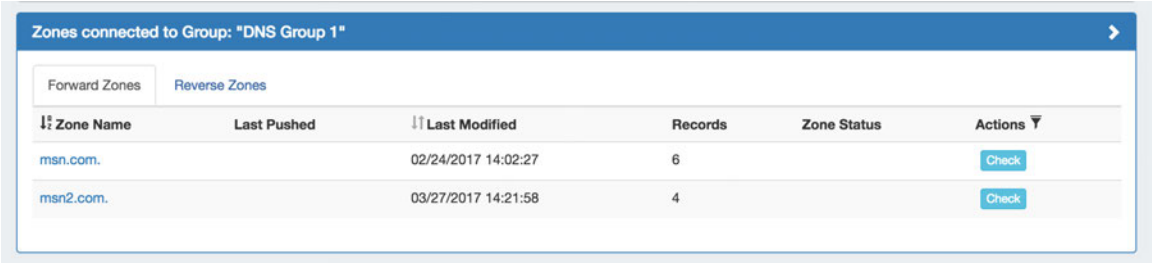
If a default Group has been selected under "DNS Group Settings" for the server, Zones under that Group will be connected to the server and able to be viewed on the Server Settings page.

Scroll to the bottom of the page, and open the module titled "Zones connected to Group '(Group Name)' " by clicking on the expansion arrow.




A zone list will show the zone(s) that connected to this server via a selected Group.

Here, you may browse through forward and reverse zones in that Group by selecting the "Forward Zones" or "Reverse Zones" tabs, sort the list by Zone Name or Last Modified, open the zone's page by clicking on the name, or check the zone's status by clicking the "Check" button.



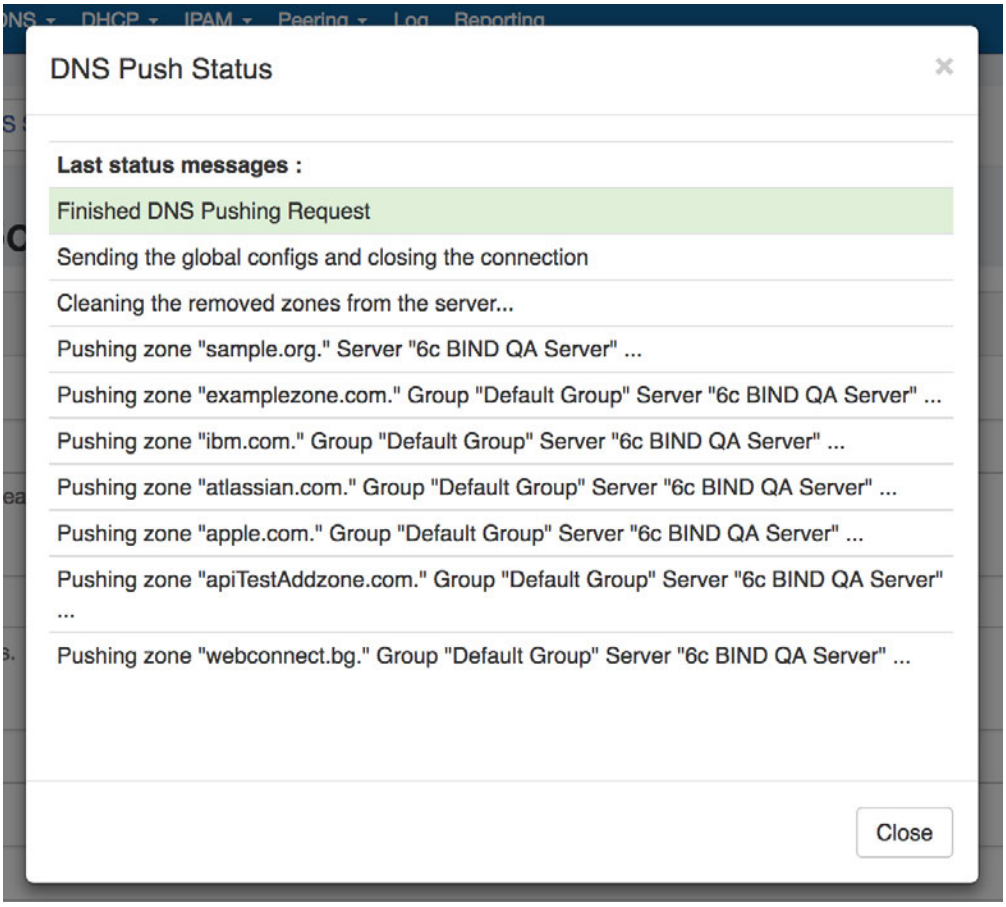

# Pushing a Server

## Manual Push

Manually pushing all zones on a server may be done directly from the DNS Server list. Under the "Actions" section of the Server List, click the "Push" button for the desired server.

Pushing may also be done while in the Server Settings page. While in the Server Settings page, click the "Push Zones" button at the top right of the page.

A "DNS Push Status" box will appear, showing the status of each zone as it is pushed. Once all zones have been pushed successfully, a green status message of "Finished DNS Pushing Request" will appear. At this point, the push is complete and the window may be closed.

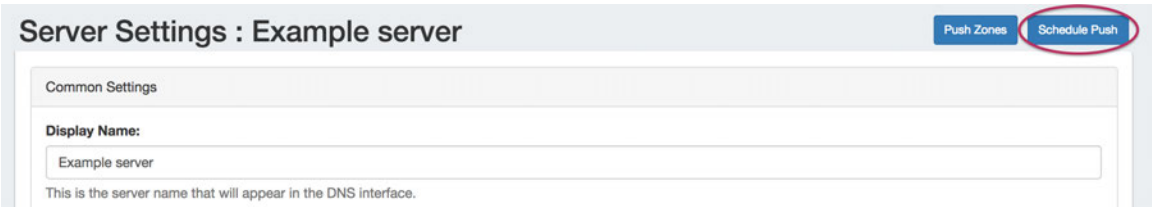



## Scheduled Push

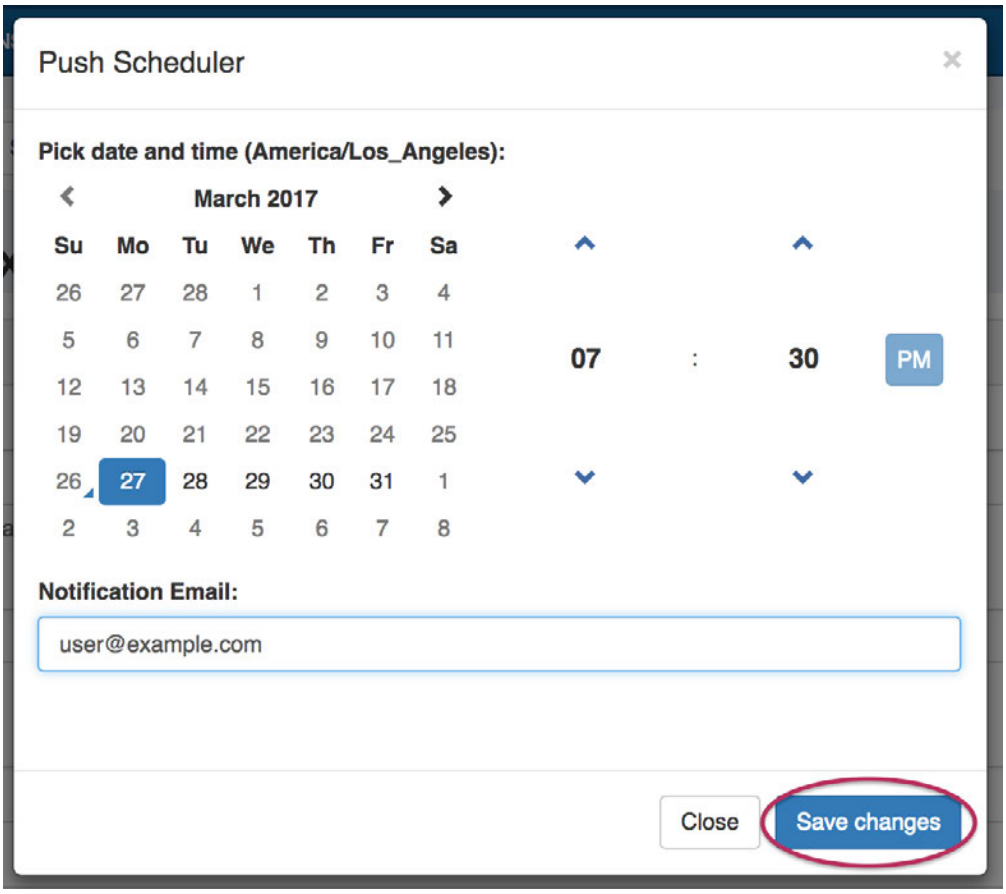
DNS server pushes may be scheduled from either the Admin Area **Scheduler** Tab, or from within the DNSv3 Server Settings page. Scheduled pushes require Admin access.

For information on scheduling a push from the **Scheduler** Tab, see Scheduler Tab documentation.

To schedule a push from a server's Settings page, open the Server Settings page for the desired server, and click on the "Schedule Push" button.



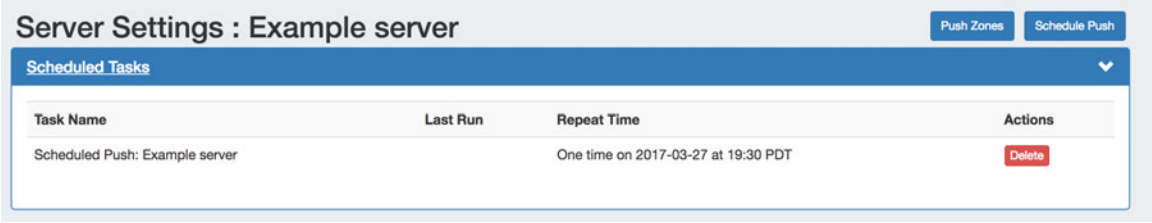

The Push Scheduler dialog will open. Click on the calendar on the left to select a date for the push, set the desired push time on the right, enter a notification email address, and then click "Save Changes".




Once a schedule push has been created, a "Scheduled Tasks" module will appear at the top of the Server Settings page.

Click on the expansion arrow for the module to open and view the tasks.

Scheduled pushes for the server will be listed in the "Scheduled Tasks" module, and may be viewed or deleted (by clicking the "Delete" button under "Actions").




If necessary, the Scheduled Push may be edited from the **Scheduler** Tab in the Admin area of ProVision. See the Scheduler Tab for information on editing scheduled tasks.

# Delete a Server

Delete a server by clicking the "Delete" button under the "Actions" section of the Server List for the desired server.

# Additional Information

For additional information on working in DNS, see the following sections:

- Configuring ISC BIND Support
- Configuring PowerDNS Support
- Configuring Secure64 Support
- Configuring ACLs/Views
- Configuring DNSSEC
- Import DNS Zones
- DNS Tab

# Configuring ISC BIND Support

# Configuring ISC BIND Support


- Configuring ISC BIND Support
  - Getting Started
  - Adding a BIND Server to ProVision
    - Server Settings
      - 1) Set Server Common Settings
      - 2) Set Server Specific Settings
      - 3) Set DNS Group Settings for Server
      - 4) Save Changes
- Additional Information


## Getting Started

BIND Version Compatibility

BIND 9 Support is officially supported. Please note that as of May 24, 2018, ISC implemented a different release numbering scheme. From the ISC BIND 9.13 release notes (https://kb.isc.org/article/AA-01612):

Previously new feature development releases were tagged as "alpha" and "beta", leading up to the first stable release for a given development branch, which always ended in ".0".

Now, however, BIND has adopted the "odd-unstable/even-stable" release numbering convention. There will be no "alpha" or "beta" releases in the 9.13 branch, only increasing version numbers. So, for example, what would previously have been called 9.13.0a1, 9.13.0a2, 9.13.0b1, and so on, will instead be called 9.13.0, 9.13.1, 9.13.2, etc.

The first stable release from this development branch will be renamed as 9.14.0. Thereafter, maintenance releases will continue on the 9.14 branch, while unstable feature development proceeds in 9.15.

You will need a user who can log in to the DNS server and make changes to the directory in which the zones are being stored. Additionally, it is often useful for this user to have the ability to restart the DNS server. The login and password for this user will be required to configure this server on the DNS Admin page.

6connect Zone files are written out in the following format:

/path/to/zone/directory/viewName/zoneFirstLetter/zonefile.zone

If no views are configured, or if views are expressly disabled, then the default viewName "6connectGeneric" is used. The zoneFirstLetter is the first letter of the zone name, so the subdirectory 'microsoft.com.zone' is placed in would be /m/.

All 6connect-managed Zones are managed by a dedicated 6connect configuration file named 6connect_named.conf. This file is created to act a supplementary conf file to work in concert with any existing named.conf which might exist. To include the 6connect configuration file, edit named.conf and append the following line:

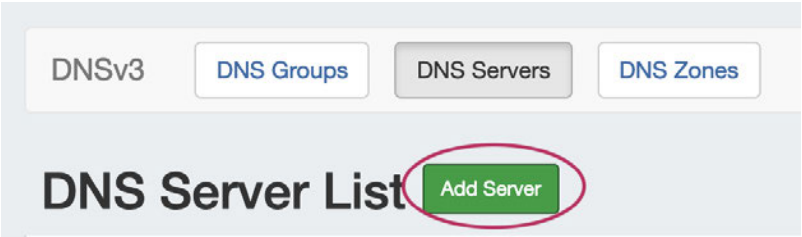
include "/path/to/conf/directory/6connect_named.conf";

You must remember to include the 6connect configuration file or none of the changes managed by 6connect ProVision will take effect!

It is also important to note that if your existing named.conf file contains zones within Split Horizon views, then the 6connect-managed zones must also be view-enabled. Likewise, if existing zones are not grouped into views, then views must be disabled on ProVision.

## Adding a BIND Server to ProVision

To create a new server, start from the **DNS** Tab, select the **DNS Servers** sub menu. Then, click the "Add Server" button next to "DNS Server List".

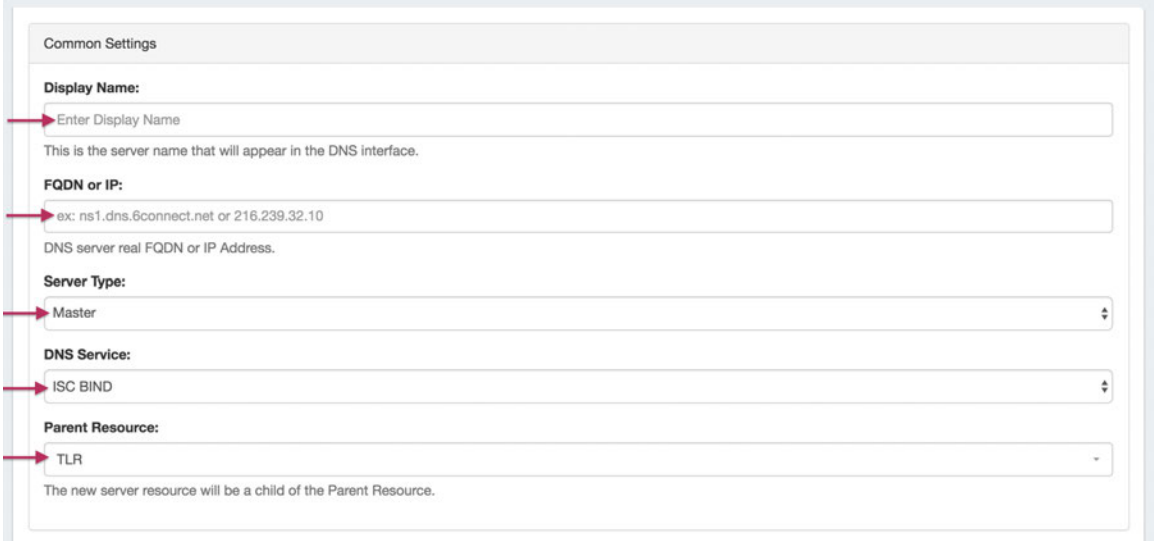



This will open the "Server Settings" page.

# Server Settings

## 1) Set Server Common Settings

In the "Common Settings" section of Server Settings, enter the new server's Display Name (the name that will appear on the ProVision interface), the FQDN / IP, server type, service type, and desired parent Resource (may be left at the default Top Level Resource).

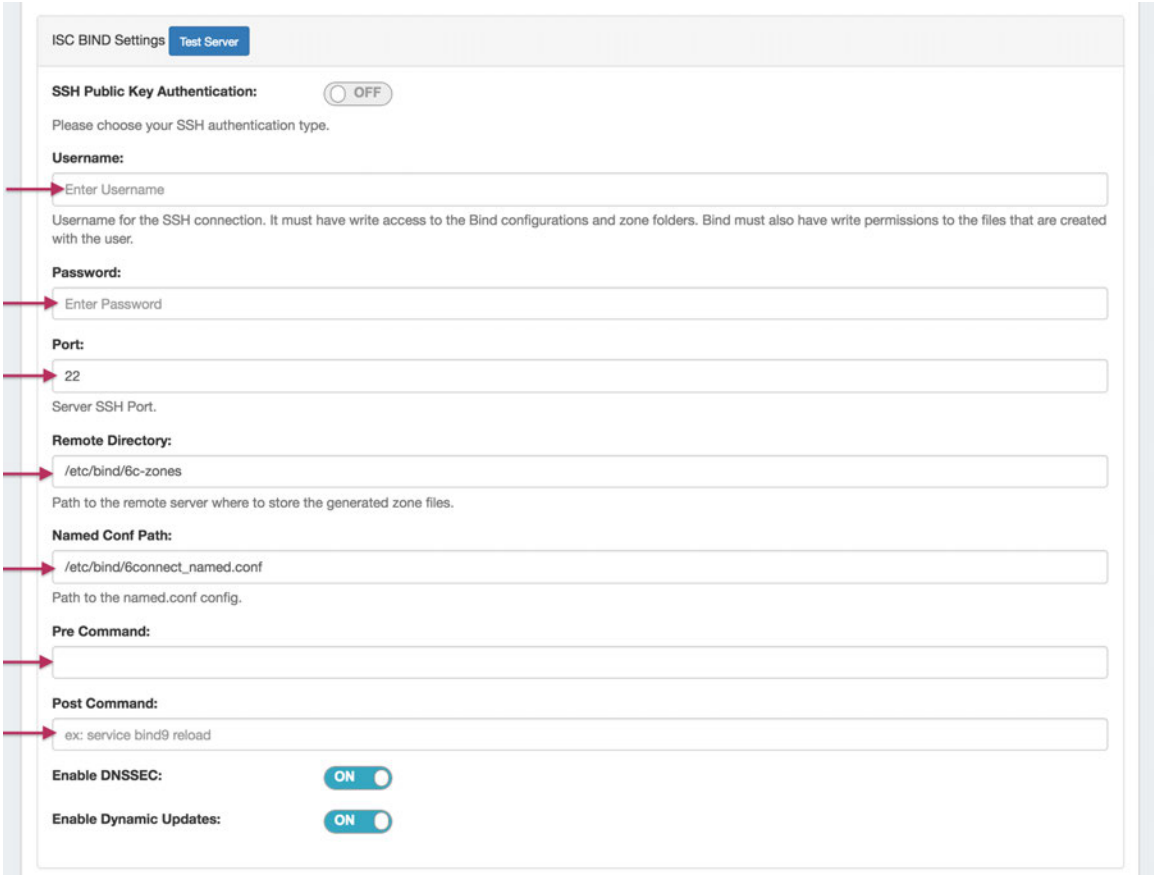



## 2) Set Server Specific Settings

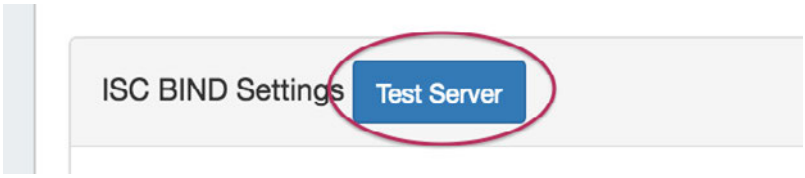
The next section is entering server service-type specific settings. The options visible in this section will depend on the "DNS Service" type chosen under "Common Settings".

Here, we see the fields for ISC BIND server settings. Enter the server Username, Password, Port, Remote Director, Named Conf. Path, and Pre /Post Command (if desired). Your fields may vary for other server types.

For SSH Public Key Authentication, DNSSEC, and Dynamic Option updates, click on the ON / OFF toggle to select "ON" or "OFF" for each as needed.



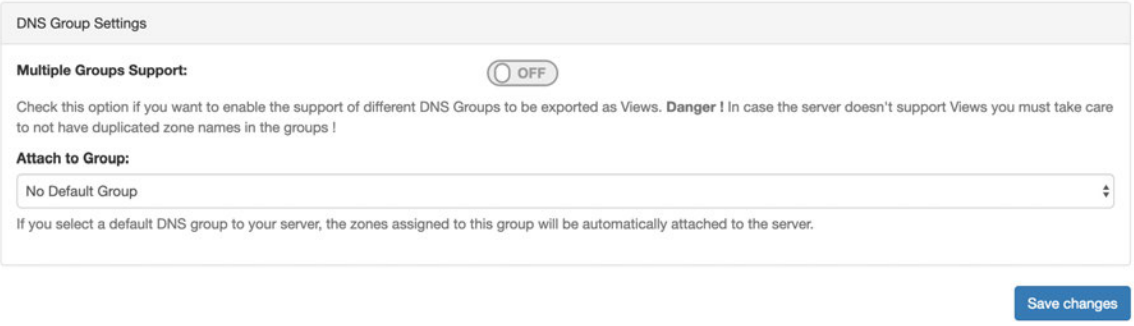

After entering the server-specific settings in this section, you can click the "Test Server" button at the top of the section to test the server connection and authentication.




A window will pop up showing a success or failure response.

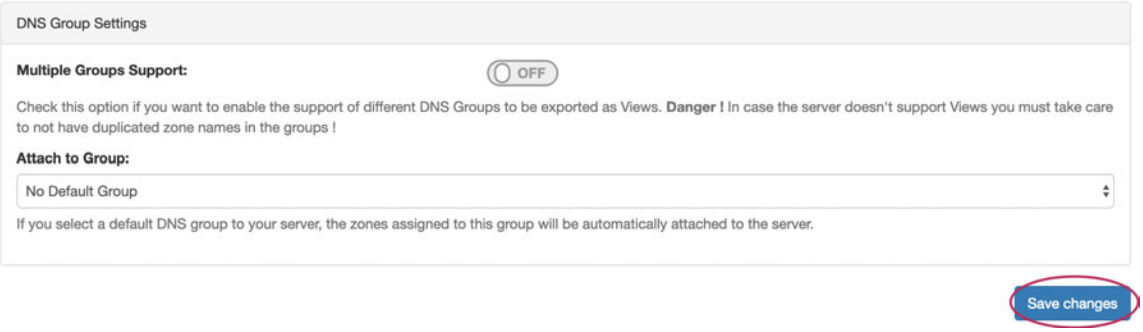
## 3) Set DNS Group Settings for Server

In the last section, select whether to enable Multiple Groups Support for exporting DNS Groups as Views (click to toggle ON / OFF), and select a default Group, if desired, to be associated with the server. Zones assigned to the selected Group will automatically be attached to the server.




## 4) Save Changes

Save your changes when done! Just click the "Save Changes" button at the bottom right of the page.




The new server will now be added to the DNS Servers list. These settings may be changed at any time by selecting the server from the server list and editing the information.

# Additional Information

For additional information on working in DNS, see the following sections:

- Working with DNS Servers
- Configuring PowerDNS Support
- Configuring Secure64 Support
- Configuring ACLs/Views
- Configuring DNSSEC
- Import DNS Zones
- DNS Tab

# Configuring PowerDNS Support

# Configuring PowerDNS Support

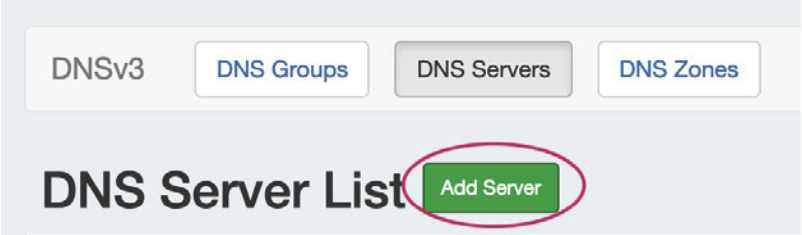

- Configuring PowerDNS Support
  - Environments supported
  - Step 1: Add a PowerDNS Server
    - Server Settings
      - 1) Set Server Common Settings
      - 2) Set Server Specific Settings
      - 3) Set DNS Group Settings for Server
      - 4) Save Changes
  - Step 2: Import PowerDNS Zones
  - Step 3: Push zones to PowerDNS
  - BIND Backend
  - MySQL Backend
- Additional Information


## Environments supported

- PowerDNS version 3.0 or above on the target server(s)
- BIND or MySQL backend

## Step 1: Add a PowerDNS Server

To create a new server, start from the **DNS** Tab, select the **DNS Servers** sub menu. Then, click the "Add Server" button next to "DNS Server List".

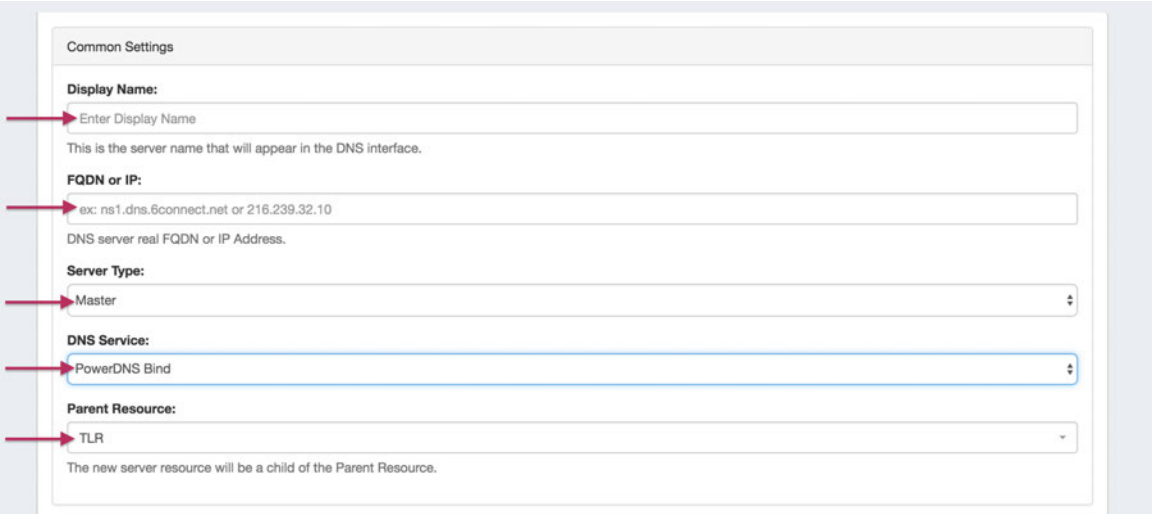



This will open the "Server Settings" page.

### Server Settings

#### 1) Set Server Common Settings

In the "Common Settings" section of Server Settings, enter the new server's Display Name (the name that will appear on the ProVision interface), the FQDN / IP, server type, DNS service type, and desired parent Resource (may be left at the default Top Level Resource). For PowerDNS servers, ensure that either "PowerDNS BIND" or "PowerDNS MySQL" is selected under DSN server type.

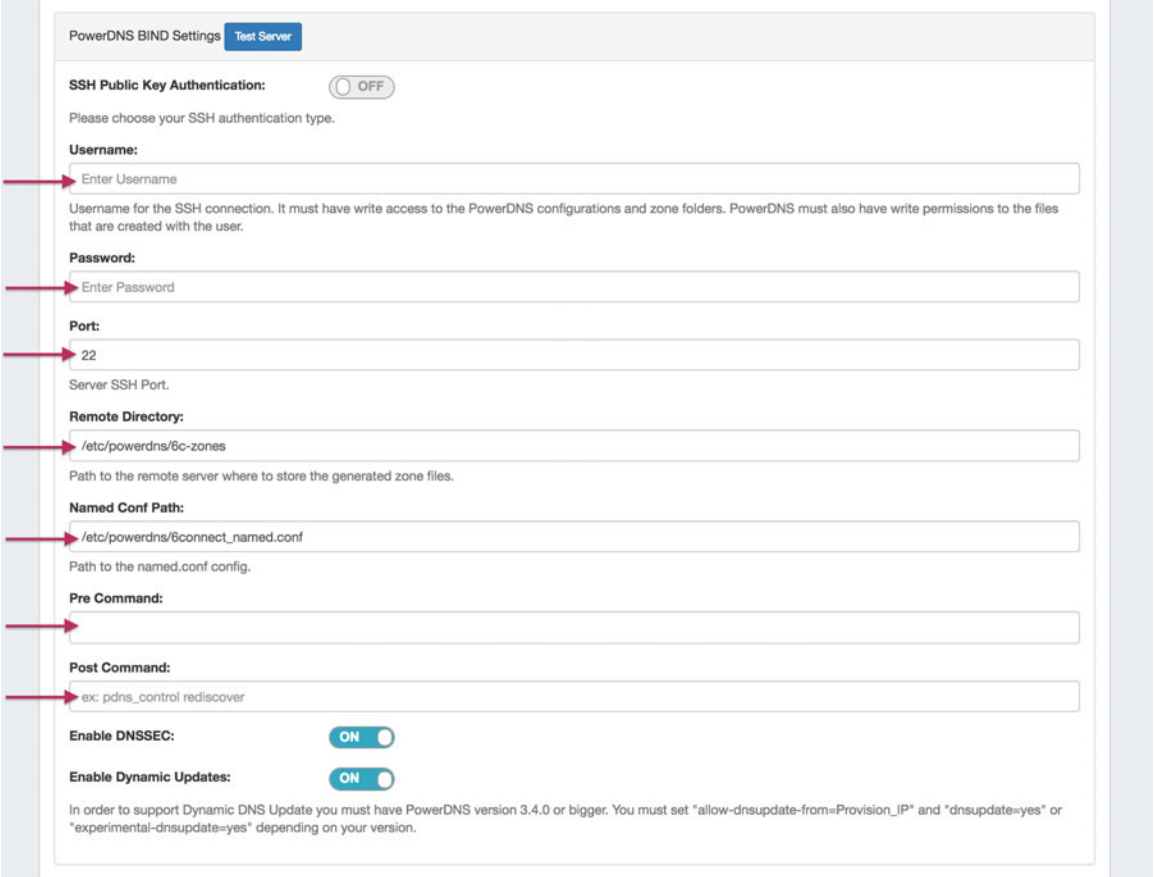



## 2) Set Server Specific Settings

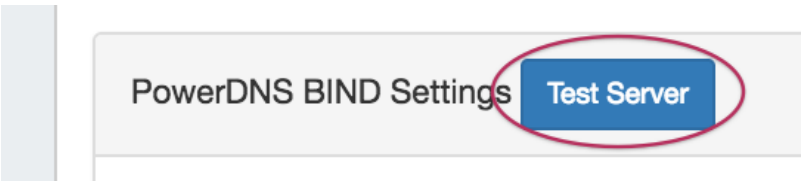
The next section is entering server service-type specific settings. The options visible in this section will depend on the "DNS Service" type chosen under "Common Settings".

Here, we see the fields for PowerDNS BIND server settings. Enter the server Username, Password, Port, Remote Director, Named Conf. Path, and Pre/Post Command (if desired). Your fields may vary for other server types.

For SSH Public Key Authentication, DNSSEC, and Dynamic Option updates, click on the ON / OFF toggle to select "ON" or "OFF" for each as needed.



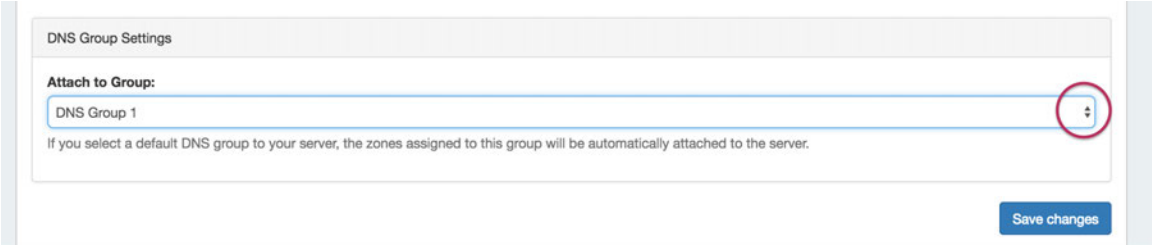

After entering the server-specific settings in this section, you can click the "Test Server" button at the top of the section to test the server connection and authentication.




A window will pop up showing a success or failure response.

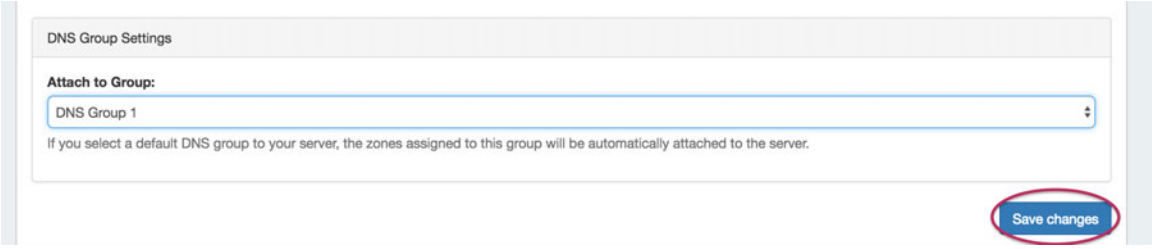
## 3) Set DNS Group Settings for Server

In the last section, select a default Group to be associated with the server. Zones assigned to the selected Group will automatically be attached to the server.




## 4) Save Changes

Save your changes when done! Just click the "Save Changes" button at the bottom right of the page.




The new server will now be added to the DNS Servers list. These settings may be changed at any time by selecting the server from the server list and editing the information.

# Step 2: Import PowerDNS Zones

While in the **Admin** section, navigate to the **Data Import** Tab. Select the "Power DNS Zone Import" link.

To import your data, simply choose your PowerDNS server and click "Import".

## Step 3: Push zones to PowerDNS

Navigate back to the **DNS** tab, and select the "**DNS Servers**" tab.

Locate the PowerDNS server in the DNS Servers list, and then click the "Push" button under "Actions" at the end of the row.

## BIND Backend

Note on SSH

The integration does not require a remote database connection, but it does require an SSH account and a writable directory. The SSH account must have access to the server. This account will also be used for DNSSEC functionality within PowerDNS.

## MySQL Backend

Note on SSH

The integration requires a remote database connection, so will need a mysql user with permissions for remote administration. We highly recommend using ACLs to ensure that configuration only occurs from intended sources.

For DNSSEC functionality, you will need a standard SSH user account withing your PowerDNS user group

Please note that Views are not supported with the MySQL backend
Only BIND and MySQL backends are supported.

# Additional Information

For additional information on working in DNS, see the following sections:

- Working with DNS Servers
- Configuring ISC BIND Support
- Configuring Secure64 Support
- Configuring ACLs/Views
- Configuring DNSSEC
- Import DNS Zones
- DNS Tab

# Configuring Secure64 Support

# Configuring Secure64 Support


- Configuring Secure64 Support
  - Step 1: Create an nsd.conf file under the root directory / of your S64 Auth server
  - Step 2: Make a directory for 6connect ProVision to push zone files to on the Secure64 DNS Server
  - Step 3: Setup and Configure 6connect ProVision for your Secure64 DNS Server
    - Server Settings
      - 1) Set Server Common Settings
      - 2) Set Server Specific Settings
      - 3) Set DNS Group Settings for Server
      - 4) Save Changes
  - Step 4: Associate zones to your Secure64 DNS Server(s)
  - Step 5: Push Zones to Secure64 Server(s)
  - Step 6: Verify DNS Zone push on Secure64 Server(s)
  - Step 7: Validate Zone data in Your Infrastructure
- Additional Information


A note on Ports

ProVision uses port 22 to communicate with and configure Secure64 infrastructure - please ensure that this is addressed in any ACLs/firewalls

ProVision also uses port 53 to do zone checks if the DNS Module is enabled and in use. Please ensure that your Secure64 infrastructure is configured to accept DNS lookups from the ProVision server

The initial setup of the Secure64 Authoritative server is as follows:

## Step 1: Create an nsd.conf file under the root directory / of your S64 Auth server

DO THIS

Make sure to add the line include: 6connect_nsd.conf to the nsd.conf file

**Output/Input**

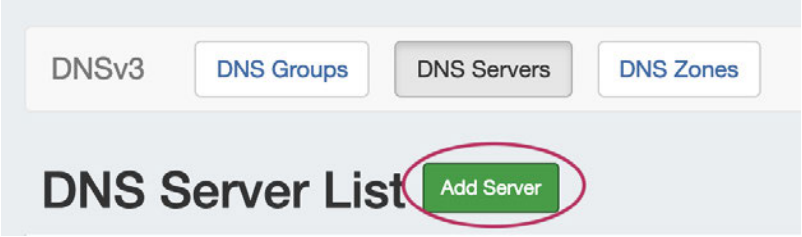
```
[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# cat nsd.conf
server:
ip-address: 50.198.192.141

axfr-logfile: /axfr_log/axfr.log
axfr-logfile-flush-count: 1
axfr-logfile-max-size: 100000
axfr-logfile-max-size: 10

request-logfile: /request_log/request.log
request-logfile-flush-count: 10
request-logfile-max-size: 1000000
request-logfile-max-files: 10

include: 6connect_nsd.conf
```

## Step 2: Make a directory for 6connect ProVision to push zone files to on the Secure64 DNS Server

```
[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# mkdir test12
[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# ls
/:
322 2013-08-19 06:07:42 nsd.conf
<DIR> 1024 2013-08-16 17:30:12 test12
```

## Step 3: Setup and Configure 6connect ProVision for your Secure64 DNS Server

To create a new server, start from the **DNS** Tab, select the **DNS Servers** sub menu. Then, click the "Add Server" button next to "DNS Server List".

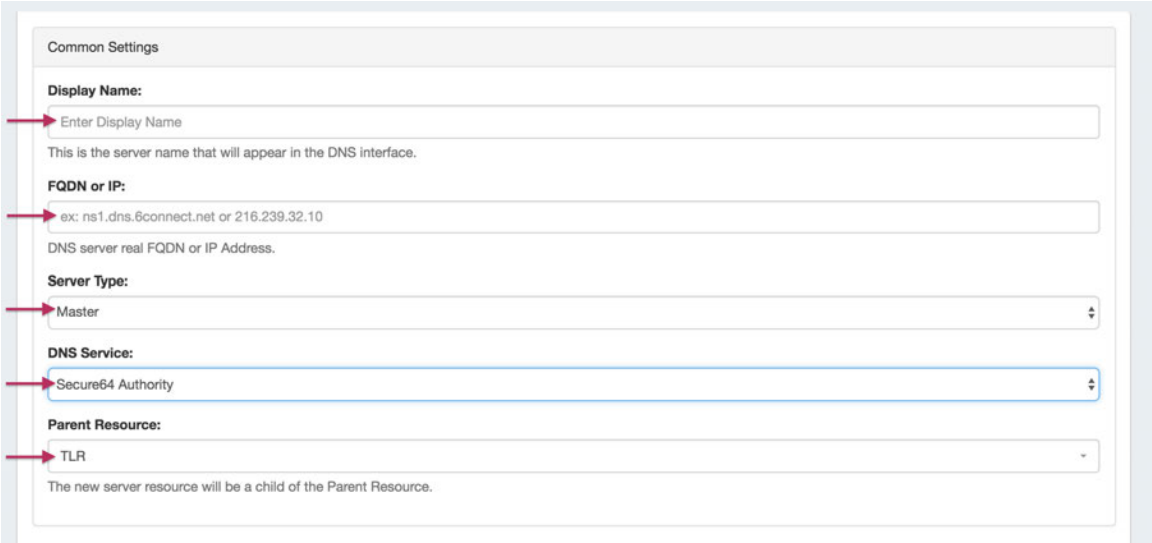



This will open the "Server Settings" page.

### Server Settings

#### 1) Set Server Common Settings

In the "Common Settings" section of Server Settings, enter the new server's Display Name (the name that will appear on the ProVision interface), the FQDN / IP, server type, DNS service type, and desired parent Resource (may be left at the default Top Level Resource). For Secure64 servers, ensure that DNS Service is set to "Secure64 Authority", "Secure64 x86 Authority", "Secure64 KNOT Authority", or "Secure64 Cache".



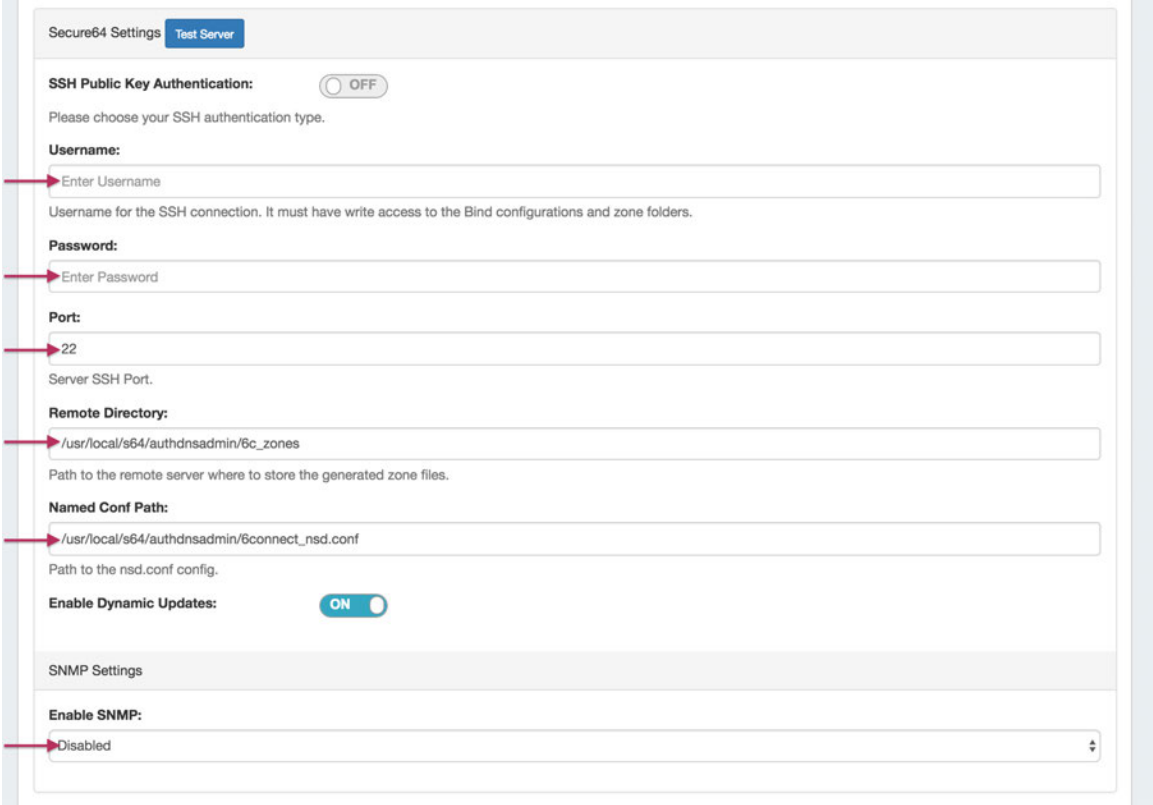

#### 2) Set Server Specific Settings

The next section is entering server service-type specific settings. The options visible in this section will depend on the "DNS Service" type chosen under "Common Settings".

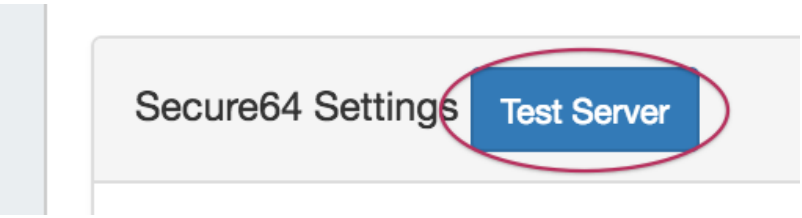
Here, we see the fields for Secure64 server settings.

Enter the server Username, Password, Port, Remote Directory, Named Conf. Path, and whether to enabled SNMP.

For SSH Public Key Authentication and Dynamic Option updates, click on the ON / OFF toggle to select "ON" or "OFF" for each as needed.



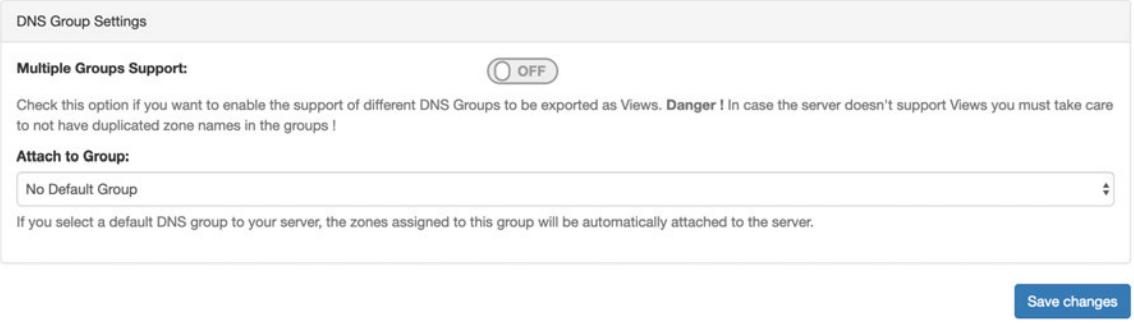

After entering the server-specific settings in this section, you can click the "Test Server" button at the top of the section to test the server connection and authentication.




A window will pop up showing a success or failure response.

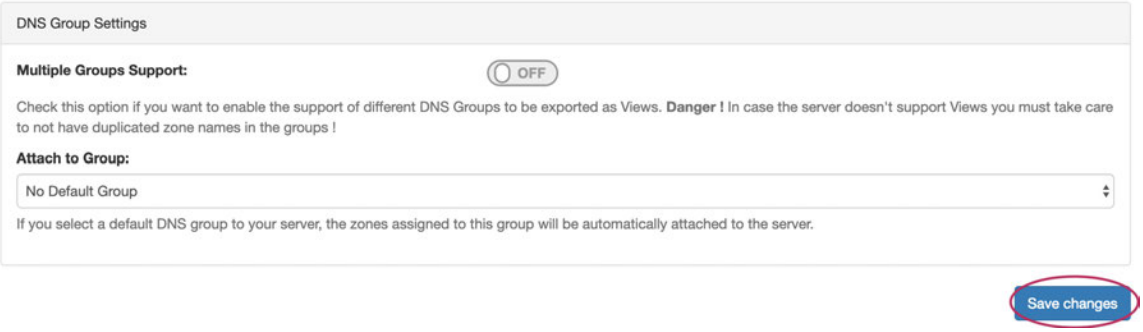
### 3) Set DNS Group Settings for Server

In the last section, select whether to enable support for exporting DNS Groups as Views (click to toggle ON / OFF), and select a default Group, if desired, to be associated with the server. Zones assigned to the selected Group will automatically be attached to the server.




### 4) Save Changes

Save your changes when done! Just click the "Save Changes" button at the bottom right of the page.

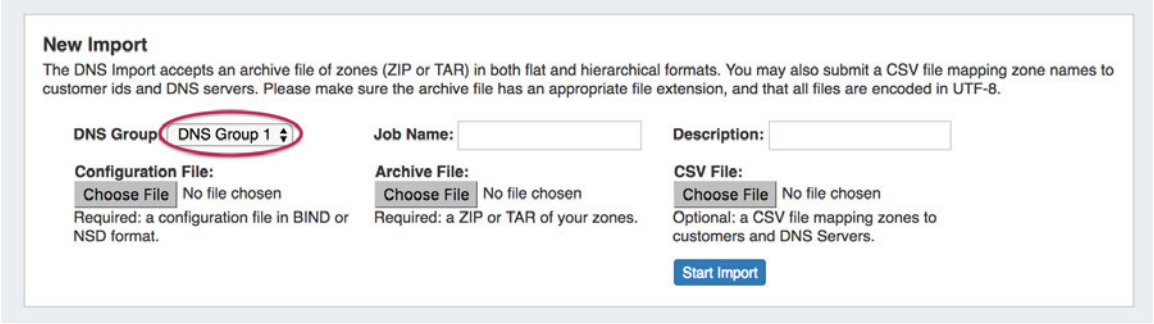



## Step 4: Associate zones to your Secure64 DNS Server(s)

If a default Group was selected while setting up the S64 server, then any zones in that Group will automatically be associated with the server.

Zones may be manually added, moved, or imported into the Group - see Working with DNS Zones and Working with DNS Groups for details on associating zones with Groups.

If zones are to be imported, a DNS Group may be selected during the import process to associate with the zones.




Select the group specified as the default S64 server Group, then import the zones as described in the Import DNS Zones documentation.

## Step 5: Push Zones to Secure64 Server(s)

Navigate back to the **DNS** tab, and select the "**DNS Servers**" tab.

Locate the Secure64 server in the DNS Servers list, and then click the "Push" button under "Actions" at the end of the row.

## Step 6: Verify DNS Zone push on Secure64 Server(s)

The result of the Push can be checked/verified by checking the Secure64 server as follows:

Verifying Zone pushes

ssh to 50.198.192.141
Login using the designated login account and password
Enable cachednsadmin
ls

Now, verify that the "788 2013-08-21 12:35:04" 6connect_nsd.conf file now exists.

```
[authdnsadmin@eval138.secure64.com]# ls
/:
6728 2013-08-13 00:15:30 nsd.conf
8416071 2013-08-21 12:35:07 nsd.db
788 2013-08-21 12:35:04 6connect_nsd.conf
<DIR> 1024 2013-08-21 12:34:50 test12
```

You can verify the Push contents by doing a cat of the 6connect_nsd.conf

[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# cat 6connect_nsd.conf

AutoGenerated by 6connect ProVision. Do not manually edit.

zone:

name: atestzone.com

zonefile: /test12/6connectGeneric/m/atestzone.com.zone

zone:

name: Testzone2.com

zonefile: /test12/6connectGeneric/m/Testzone2.com.zone

In the example above, two Zones have transferred.

To look at the contents of each zone you can cd to the proper directory /test12/6connectGeneric and find the zone files in an alphabetical directory structure as follows:

[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# cd 6connectGeneric

[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# cd test12

changed to test12
[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# ls
/test12/:
<DIR> 1024 2013-08-16 19:43:21 6connectGeneric
[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# cd 6connectGeneric
changed to 6connectGeneric
[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# ls
/test12/6connectGeneric/:
<DIR> 1024 2013-08-16 17:30:13 e
<DIR> 1024 2013-08-16 17:30:16 m
<DIR> 1024 2013-08-16 18:49:21 d
<DIR> 1024 2013-08-16 19:43:23 s
[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# cd m
changed to m
[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]# ls

```
/test12/6connectGeneric/m/:
[authdnsadmin@eval138.secure64.com]# ls
5192 2013-08-21 15:35:01 atestzone.com.zone
6758 2013-08-21 15:35:02 Testzone2.com.zone
[authdnsadmin@Secure64DNS]#
```

## Step 7: Validate Zone data in Your Infrastructure

Finally, do a **dig** of the zones to verify the DNS configuration has been successfully deployed.

Using dig to validate your Secure64 Server installation

```
[authdnsadmin@eval138.secure64.com]# dig @50.198.192.141 atestzone.com
; <<>> DiG SourceT 3.x <<>> @50.198.192.141 atestzone.com
;; Got answer:
;; >>HEADER<< opcode: QUERY, status: NOERROR, id: 59591
;; flags: qr aa rd; QUERY: 1, ANSWER: 0, AUTHORITY: 1, ADDITIONAL: 0
;; QUESTION SECTION:
;atestzone.com. IN A
;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
atestzone.com. 3600 IN SOA ns1.dns.6connect.net. hostmaster.6connect.net. (2013082102 10800 3600 604800 38400 )
[authdnsadmin@eval138.secure64.com]#
```

For any questions regarding the integration of Secure64 products into 6connect ProVision, please email 6connect at support@6connect.com, or Secure64 at support@secure64.com

Changing Secure64 Server IP addresses

When you setup ProVision to communicate via SSH to a Secure64 server, a ley/fingerprint is saved to the local hosts file. If you modify the IP address, but do not clear out the hosts file, then ProVision will think this is an attack and prevent communication with the Secure64 server.

To rectify this issue, you may need to reset the host file so that a new SSH host key can be added for the IP address. To do this manually, please follow the following steps:

1) The admin needs to login to the ProVision server via SSH/CLI
2) Open the file “known” in the /tmp folder in your preferred editor (vi, etc.)
3) Delete the line in the file with the server IP/fingerprint
4) Save the changes and exit the editor

To verify the functionality - attempt to connect to the DNS Server(s) using the “Test Server” button from the ProVision GUI

If you have any issues, please contact 6connect support per your Support Agreement/Plan.

# Additional Information

For additional information on working in DNS, see the following sections:

- Working with DNS Servers
- Configuring ISC BIND Support
- Configuring PowerDNS Support
- Configuring ACLs/Views
- Configuring DNSSEC
- Import DNS Zones
- DNS Tab

# Configuring Split Horizon/Views

# Configuring ACL Views

ProVision's ACL module applies the specified network lists to the in the named.conf for zones inside the group and the servers that belongs to the group, when exporting the group or zone.


- Configuring ACL Views
  - Create an ACL View
  - Edit an ACL
  - Delete an ACL
  - Add an existing ACL to another Group
- Additional Information

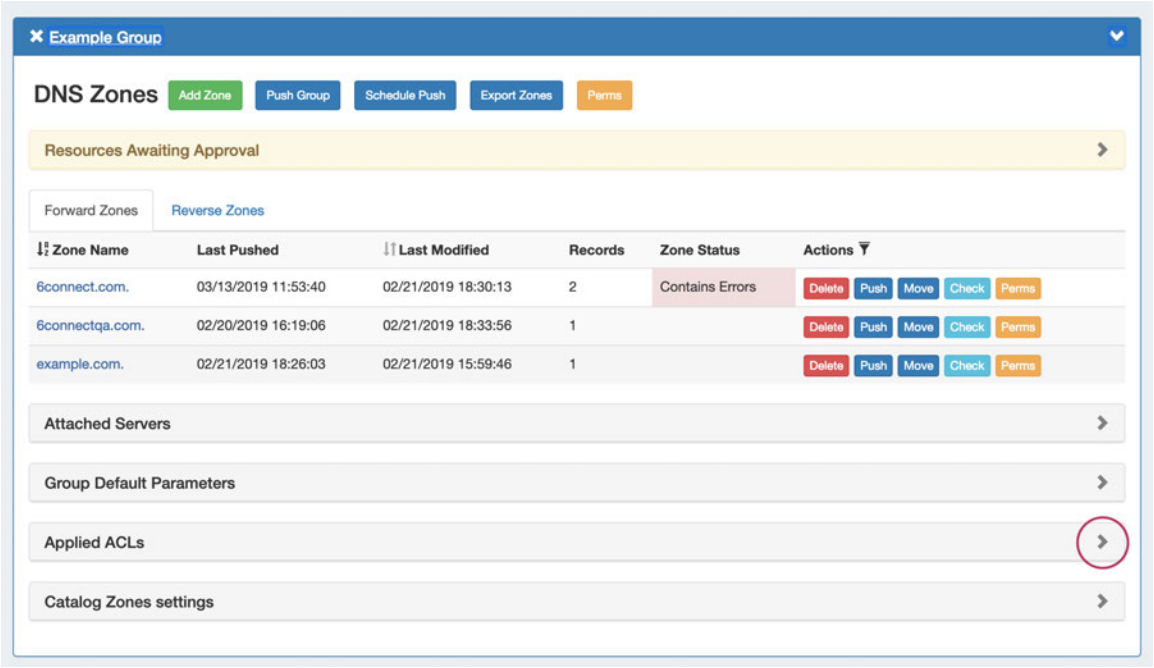

WARNING

If you see a view named "_6connectDefault" - DO NOT DELETE IT.

## Create an ACL View

ACL views may be created under each DNS Group, accessed from the **DNS** tab **DNS Groups** sub-tab.

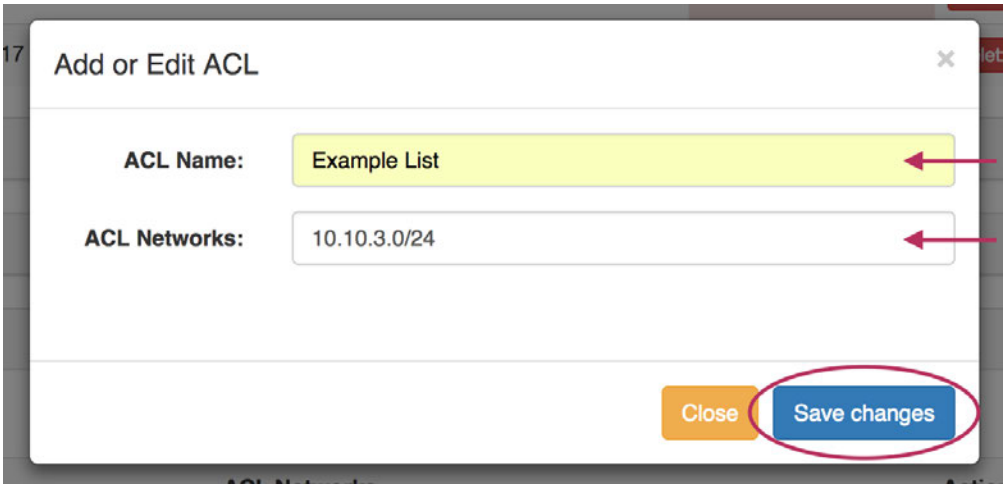
Expand the Group that you want the view applied to, and then expand the section "Applied ACLs" by clicking on the expansion arrow to the right of the section name.




If ACLs already exist, they will be shown under this section.

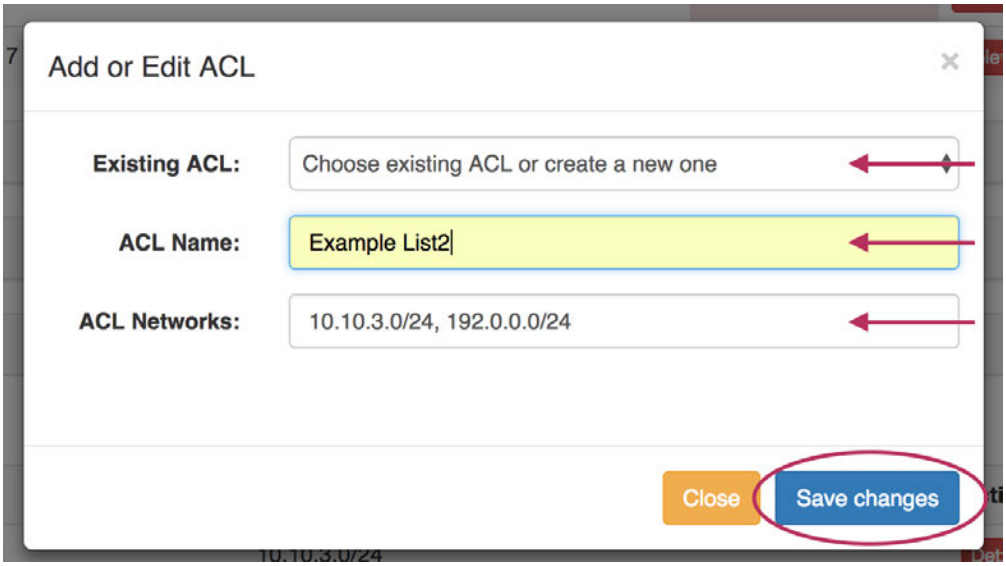
To add a new list, click the "Add or Edit ACL" button.

If no ACLs currently exist, the dialog will only show inputs for ACL Name and ACL Networks - enter a Name and Network and click "Save Changes".

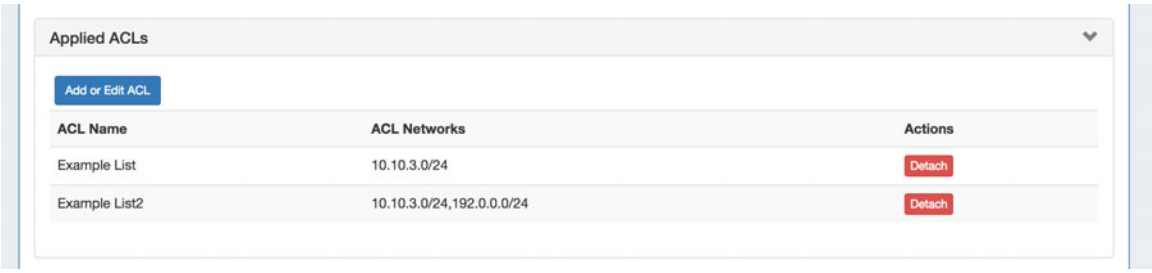



If previous ACLs exist, a selector will be be available for "Existing ACL:".

Since we are creating a new ACL, just keep this at the default value ("Choose Existing ACL or create a new one"), and enter in the Name and Network(s) for the new ACL. Separating multiple CIDRs with a comma (,).



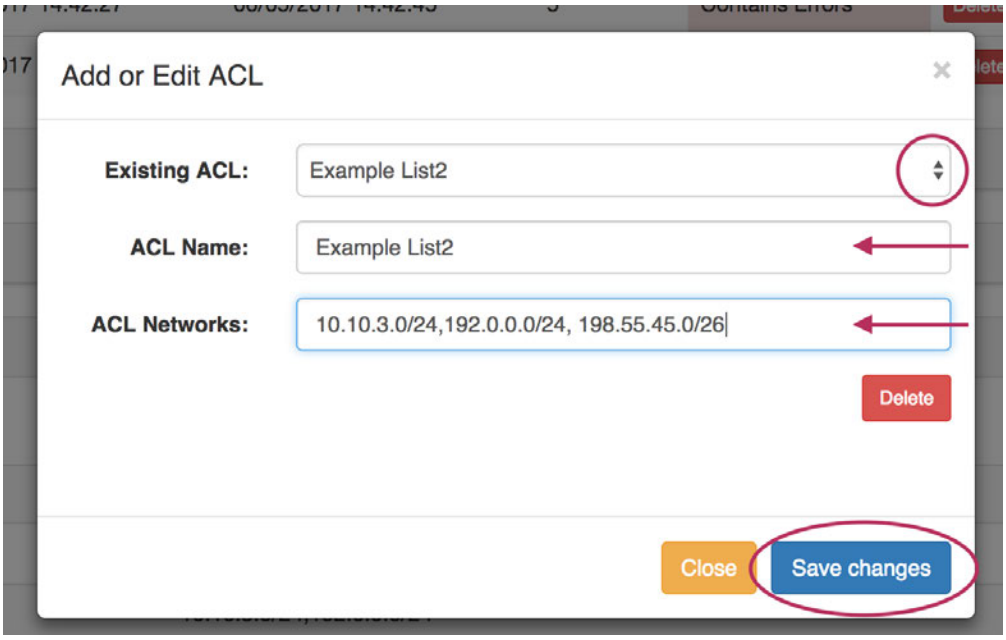

When done, save the ACL by clicking "Save changes". The new ACL will be added to the Group's Applied ACL list.



# Edit an ACL

ACLs may be edited similarly to how they are created. Click the "Add or Edit ACL" button under the "Applied ACLs" module for the DNS Group.

Select the ACL you wish to edit from the "Existing ACL" Selector. Then, edit the Name or Network fields as desired.




When done, click "Save Changes".

## Detach an ACL from a Group

Detaching an ACL removes it from the Group, but the ACL will still exist in ProVision for re-use in other Groups.

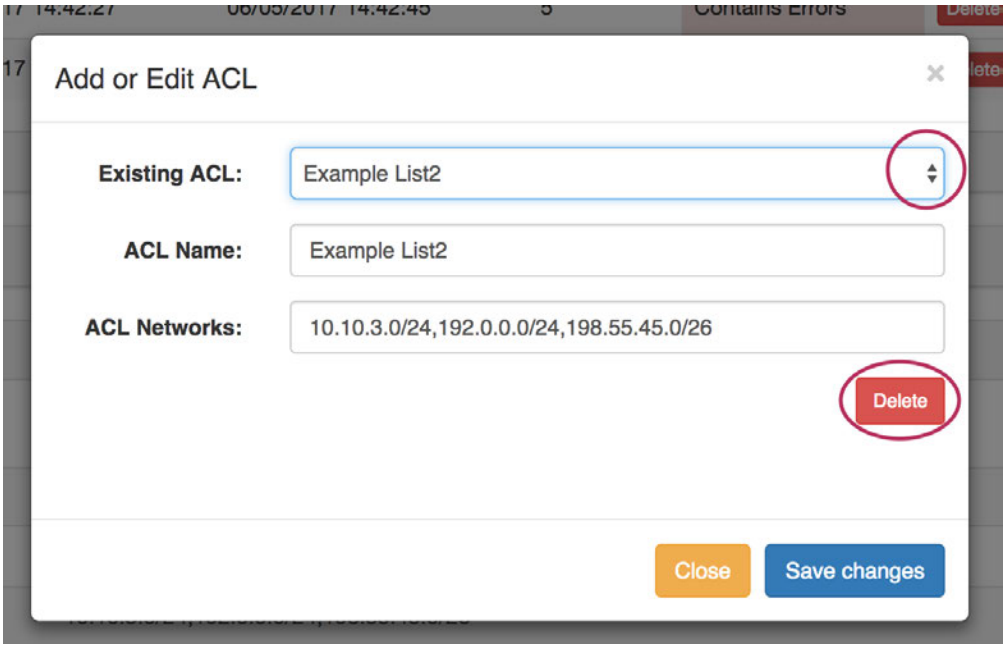
To detach an ACL, expand the "Applied ACLs" section under the desired Group, and click on the "Detach" button under the "Actions" column.

The ACL will be removed from under the Group, but will remain in other Groups it exists under, as well as be selectable from the "Add ACL" window.

# Delete an ACL

ACLs may be deleted through the "Edit ACL" interface. Click the "Add or Edit ACL" button under the "Applied ACLs" module for the DNS Group.

Select the ACL you wish to delete from the "Existing ACL" Selector. Then, click the red "Delete" button under the Networks field.

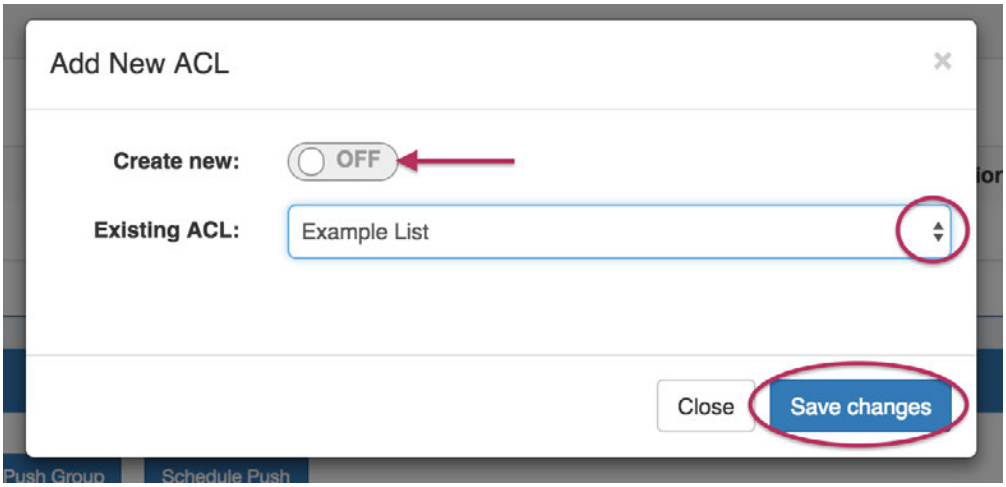



The ACL will be permanently deleted, and will no longer show under any Groups to which it has been attached, nor show in the "Existing ACLs" list.

## Add an existing ACL to another Group

Existing ACLs may be added to as many Groups as desired. If ACLs already exist in ProVision, clicking the "Add ACL" button will give an additional option to "Create New".

To select a previously created ACL, turn the "Create New" toggle to the "OFF" position.




An "Existing ACL" list appears. Select the desired existing ACL from the list, and then click "Save changes" when done.

# Additional Information

For additional information on working in DNS, see the following sections:

- Working with DNS Servers
- Configuring ISC BIND Support
- Configuring PowerDNS Support

- Configuring Secure64 Support
- Configuring DNSSEC
- Import DNS Zones
- DNS Tab

# Configuring DNSSEC

# Configuring DNSSEC


- Configuring DNSSEC
  - Enable DNSSEC for a Server (ProVision GUI)
  - Enable DNSSEC for a Zone (ProVision GUI)
    - Enabling DNSSEC (for a single zone)
    - Update Registrar and Confirm
  - For BIND server(s)
  - For Secure64 and PowerDNS
- Additional Information


## Enable DNSSEC for a Server (ProVision GUI)

DNSSEC may be enabled on a per-server basis in the ProVision DNS Server Settings.

Navigate to the **DNS** Tab, and select the **DNS Servers** section.

Find the desired server in the DNS Server List, and then click on the server name to open the settings for that server.

In the server settings page, scroll to the bottom of the second section, containing server-specfic settings.

Near the bottom of the section is a toggle to "Enable DNSSEC" for the server; click the toggle to the "ON" position.

## Enable DNSSEC for a Zone (ProVision GUI)

DNSSEC may be enabled on a per-zone basis in the ProVision Zone Advanced Settings.

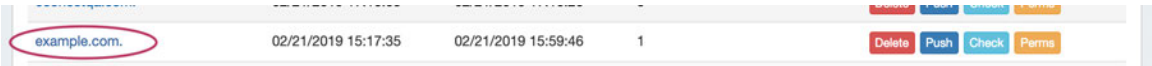
Before you enable DNSSEC for a zone, make sure that do the following:

- Make sure DNSSEC is enabled on the DNS server(s) you will be pushing zones to (see "Enable DNSSEC for a Server", above)
- run **configTest.php** to make sure that your directories/permissions are correct
- Set external server for Authenticated Data verification
- Create/Edit a zone - see Working with DNS Zones for additional information.
- Ensure that the zone is associated with a DNS server(s)

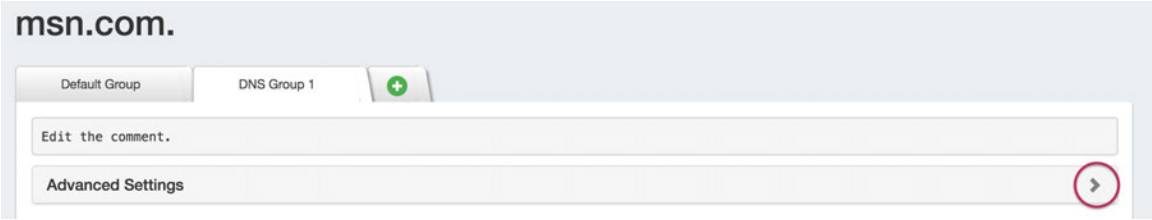
### Enabling DNSSEC (for a single zone)

Navigate to the **DNS** Tab, and select the **DNS Groups** section.

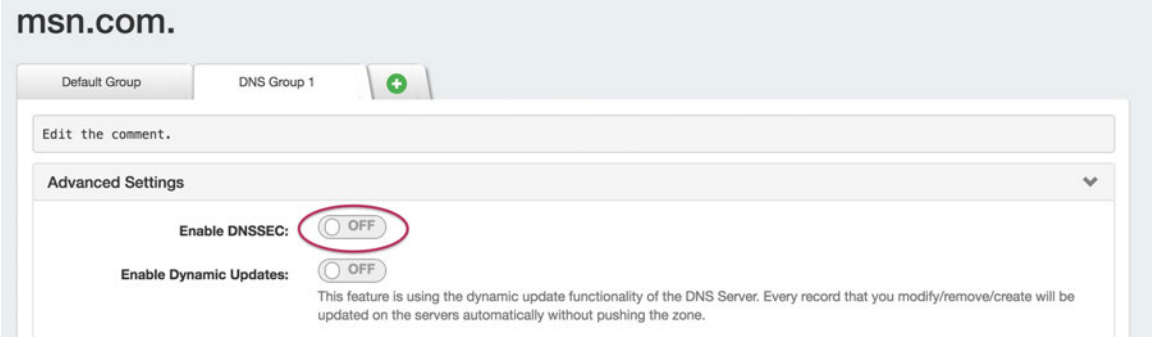
Find the desired Group and Zone in the Groups List, and then click on the zone name to open the details for that zone.



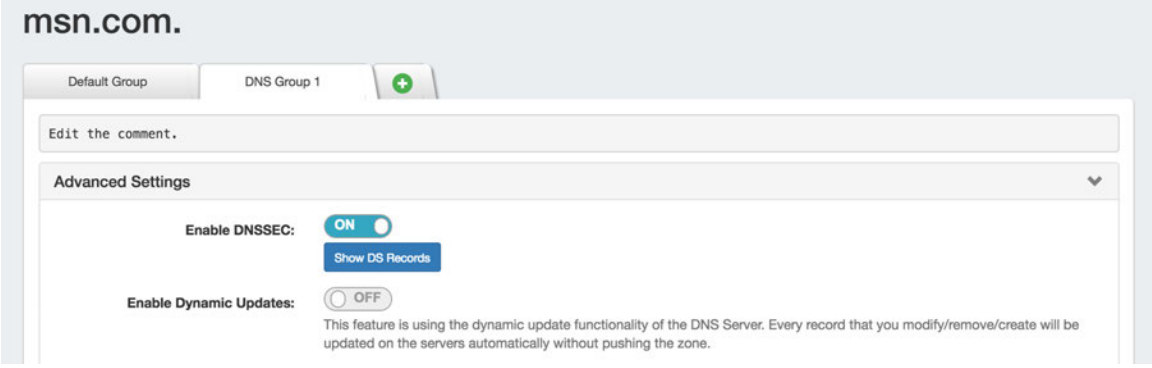
The view zone details page will open. Expand the zone details section "Advanced Settings" by clicking on the expansion arrow.




At the top of the "Advanced Settings" section will be a toggle to "Enable DNSSEC". Click the toggle to enable to the ON position.

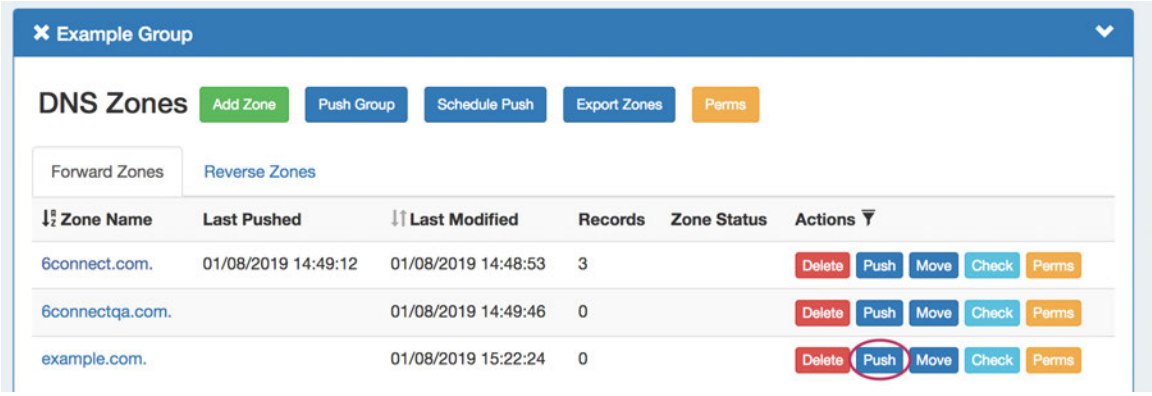



Once enabled, the toggle will show as "ON", and a "Show DS Records" button will appear. At this point, no records exists, so clicking "Show DS Records" will result in a message telling you so.

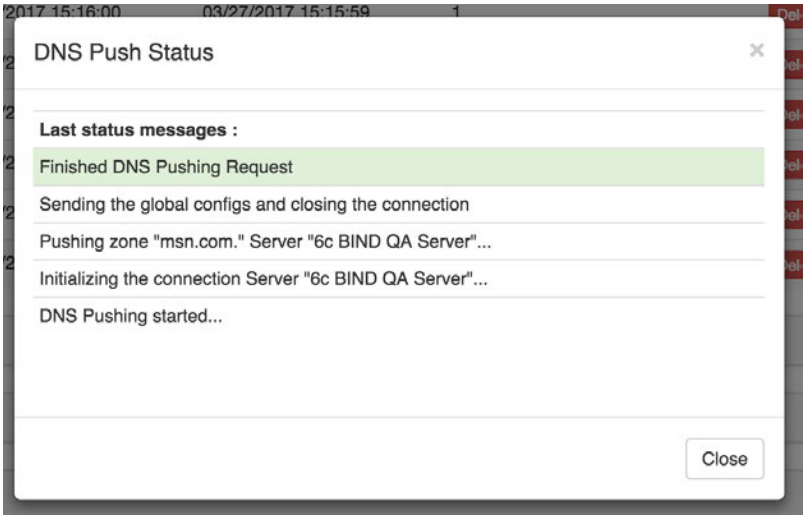



In order for DS Records to be created, the zone must be successfully pushed. Push the zone, Group, or Server containing the zone successfully and DS records will be created (see Working with DNS Zones and Working with DNS Groups for details on how to schedule and push zones).

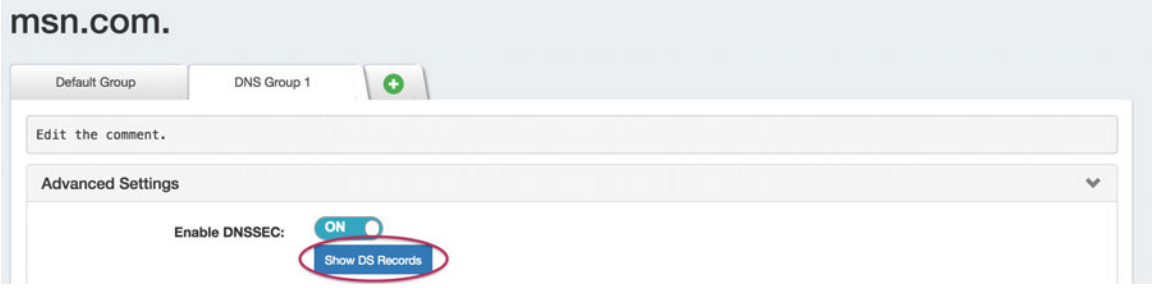
To quickly push just a single zone, go back to the DNS Groups section, and click on the "Push" button for the zone.



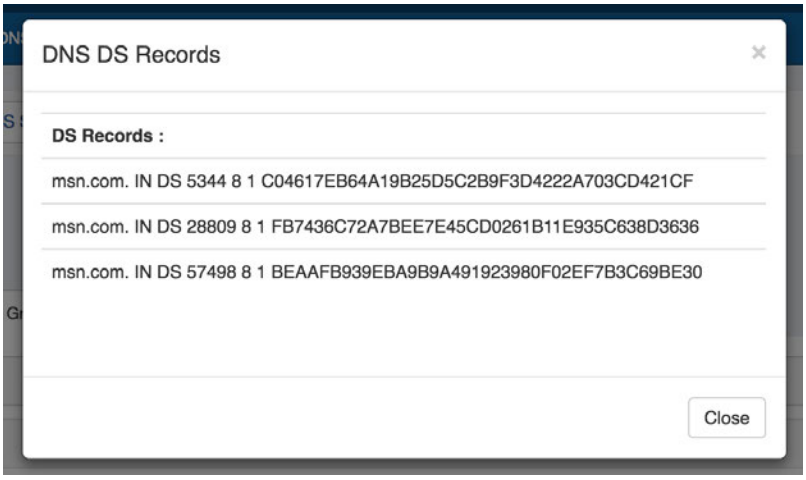

If successfully pushed, a green "Finished DNS Pushing Request" message will appear.




At this point, you will now have DS records available in the view zone details - Advanced Settings section. Open Advanced Settings for the zone and click on the "Show DS Records" button.




The DS records will be shown in a pop-up. Note these values for Registrar confirmation.




## Update Registrar and Confirm

Once DS records have been created in ProVision, you will need to update and confirm the Zone Registrar:

- Upload these values to your Zone Registrar, obtained from the "Show DS Records" button
    - DS Record #, Key Tag, Algorithm, Digest Type, Digest
- Confirm values are saved at the Zone Registrar
- External sites
    - http://dnssec-debugger.verisignlabs.com/
    - http://dnsviz.net/

## For BIND server(s)

To enable DNSSEC on BIND9 you need to modify **named.conf.options** with following parameters in the **options { }** section:

```
dnssec-enable yes:
dnssec-validation yes:
dnssec-lookaside auto;
```

These parameters may already be enabled in some Linux distributions by default, so please confirm before making changes.

Your DNSSEC implementation may need other options for your environment - please contact support@6connect.com if you have ny

Please note that you will need to restart the BIND service after these changes.

## For Secure64 and PowerDNS

DNSSEC Signatures

In this scenario, 6connect ProVision uses the DNSSEC signing functions of the respective environment we write the zones to. We are evaluating how to properly integrate DNSSEC functions to ProVision for these platforms. Please contact support@6connect.com if you have feedback or specific questions.

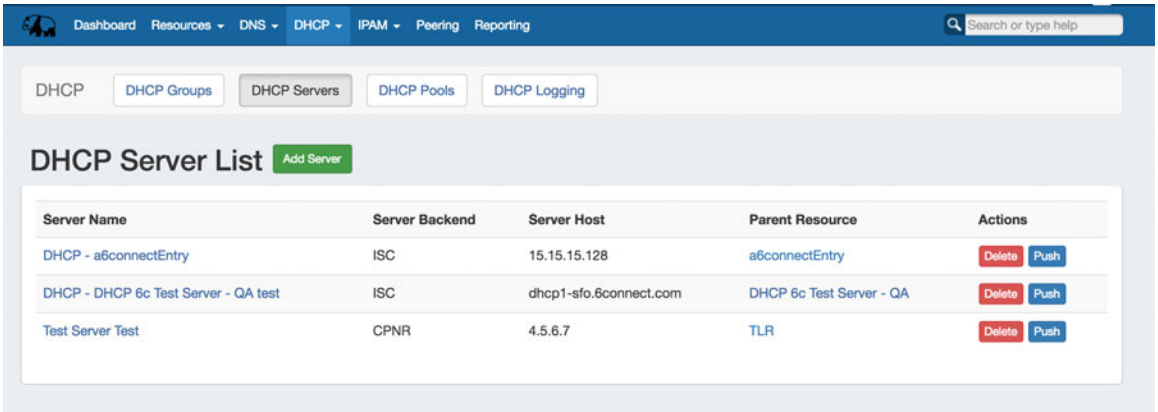
# Additional Information

For additional information on working in DNS, see the following sections:

- Working with DNS Servers
- Configuring ISC BIND Support
- Configuring PowerDNS Support
- Configuring Secure64 Support
- Configuring ACLs/Views
- Import DNS Zones
- DNS Tab

# DHCP Administration

# DHCP Administration




DHCP Administration is primarily handled under the **DHCP** tab **DHCP Servers** sub-tab.

The **DHCP Servers** tab is only accessible to Admin users, and contains functions for adding, updating, and managing DHCP servers as well as scheduling server tasks.

Additional DHCP Admin tasks occur in other ProVision areas, and not all management tasks require Admin-level permissions - some only require appropriate resource permissions on the DHCP Groups, Zones, and servers involved. See additional sections on this page for more detailed information:


- DHCP Administration
  - DHCP Overview
    - DHCP Permissions
    - DHCP Administrative Tasks
  - Manage DHCP Servers
  - DHCP Pool Pushes
    - Manual DHCP Pushes:
    - Scheduled DHCP Pushes:
  - Additional Information:


## DHCP Overview

The **DHCP** Tab organizes ProVision's DHCP system into a more unified and accessible interface, combining both admin and non-admin DHCP tasks together under the **DHCP** tab.

DHCP pools are gathered under DHCP Groups and servers are attached to those Groups. Pools, attached servers, and failovers are managed at a per-Group level.

Users can then view and manage Groups, individual pools, failover values, attach servers, and perform pushes all on the same page.

### DHCP Permissions

DHCPv2 (ProVision 7.0.0 and later) more effectively utilizes ProVisions resource permissions system to allow fine-grain permissions in DHCP.

In order for a user to work with DHCP Groups, Pools, and servers, they must have User Group permissions for:

- One or more Parent Resources under which the DHCP Group and DHCP Pools will be associated ( it can be a specific resource, or the all-encompassing "TLR")
- IPAM permissions sufficient to access and manage the desired blocks from which to assign DHCP Pools

- Permissions on the specific DHCP Server(s) in order to attach, detach, and push.

Creation and management of DHCP servers, as well as scheduled DHCP pushes, are Admin-only tasks.

## DHCP Administrative Tasks

Admin-only tasks in DHCP include scheduling pushes, and creating / managing DHCP servers.

These tasks may be accessed in the following areas:

- Scheduling DHCP Pushes:
    - May be set up from the Scheduler Tab or,
    - Set by server from the **DHCP Servers** page, or
    - Set by DHCP Group from the **DHCP Groups** page, or
    - Set by individual pool from the Pool Details page
- Managing DNS Servers: The **DHCP Servers** page

Tasks such as working with pool, DHCP Groups, editing Group Settings, attaching servers to Groups, and manually pushing pools do not require ProVision Admin permissions.

Instead, these tasks simply require that the user be included in a User Group that has appropriate permissions (either direct, or inherited) on the Parent Resources, DHCP Groups, and servers involved.

# Manage DHCP Servers

Adding, configuring, and managing DHCP Servers occurs in the Admin-only **DHCP Servers** page under the **DHCP** Tab.

Supported DHCP server service types include:

- ISC DHCP
- Cisco Prime Network Registrar

For detailed information on adding, editing, and deleting DHCP Servers, see Working with DHCP Servers.

# DHCP Pool Pushes

In DHCPv2, pools may be pushed manually or scheduled for a future time, and may be performed for a single pool, all pools in a DHCP Group, or a full DHCP server.

Scheduling DHCP pushes requires administrative access, but manual pushes only require permissions on the DHCP Group / Parent Resource, and the server(s) attached.

## Manual DHCP Pushes:

Manual DHCP pushes may be performed from the following locations in ProVision:

- Single Pool: From the DHCP Groups pool list "Push" button. See Working with DHCP Pools - Pushing DHCP Pools
- Single Pool: From the DHCP Pool Details page "Push Now" button. See See Working with DHCP Pools - Pushing DHCP Pools
- Group: From the DHCP Groups list "Push Group" button. See Working with DHCP Groups - Pushing a DHCP Group
- Server: From the DHCP Servers list "Push" button. See Working with DHCP Servers - Pushing a server
- Server: From the DHCP Server Settings page "Push Pools" button. See Working with DHCP Servers - Pushing a server

## Scheduled DHCP Pushes:

Scheduled pushes may be performed from the following locations in ProVision:

- May be set up from the Scheduler Tab for a DHCP Group or server
- Set by server from the **DHCP Servers** page, or
- Set by DHCP Group from the **DHCP Groups** page, or
- Set by individual pool from the Pool Details page

# Additional Information:

For more information on DHCP Adminsitrative tasks, see the following sections:

- Working with DHCP Servers

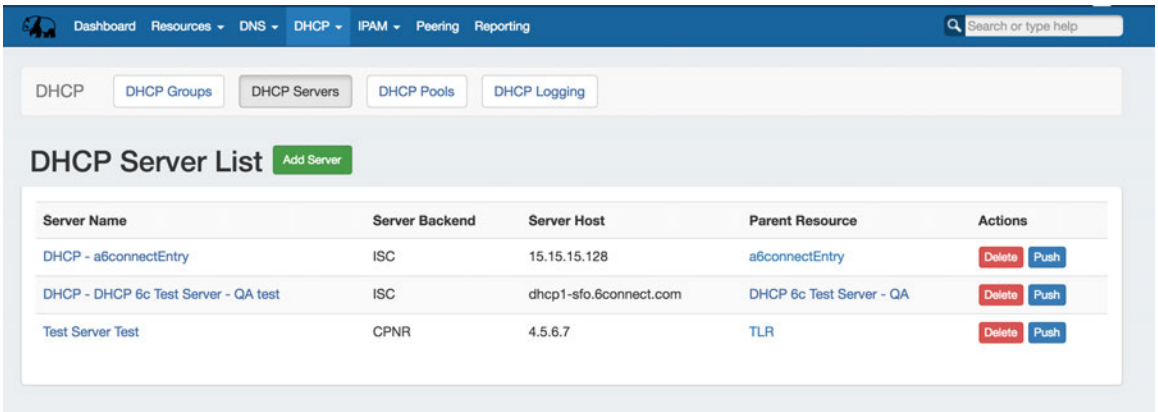
For non-admin level tasks, see:

- DHCP Tab
- Working with DHCP Groups
- Working with DHCP Pools
- Working with DHCP Gadgets

# Working with DHCP Servers

# DHCP Servers

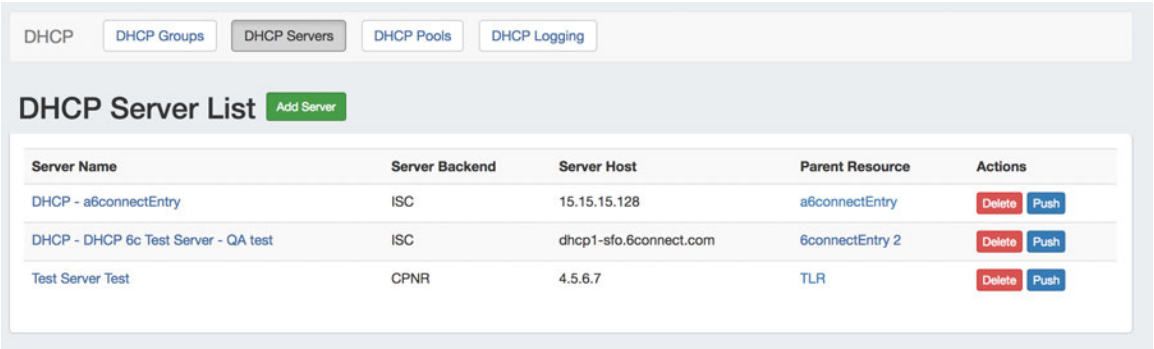
ProVision's DHCPv2 combines server management, group organization, and pool management under the **DHCP** tab.




The **DHCP Servers** tab is only accessible to Admin users, and contains functions for adding, updating, and managing DHCP servers as well as scheduling server tasks.


- DHCP Servers
  - DHCP Server List Interface
- Working with DHCP Servers
  - Add a Server
    - Server Settings
      - 1) Set Server Common Settings
      - 2) Set Server Specific Settings
      - 3) Set Advanced Server Settings
      - 4) Set DHCP Group Settings for Server
      - 5) Save Changes
  - Edit Servers
  - Review Pools Connected to a Server
    - Pools Directly Connected to the Server
    - Zones Connected via a Group
  - Pushing a Server
    - Manual Push
    - Scheduled Push
  - Review Pushed / Unpushed Configurations
  - Scan a Server
  - Delete a Server
- Additional Information


## DHCP Server List Interface




**1) Add Server Button**: Opens a dialog for creating a DHCP server.

**2) Server List:**

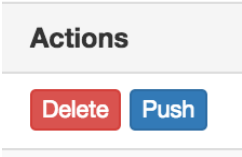
**3) Server Name:** Name of the DHCP server. Click to open server details.

**4) Server Backend:** The DHCP Service backend type for the server. Available types are ISC and CPNR.

**5) Server Host:** The server host.

**6) Parent Resource:** The ProVision resource set as the Parent for the server.

**7) Actions:** The actions that may be performed on each server:



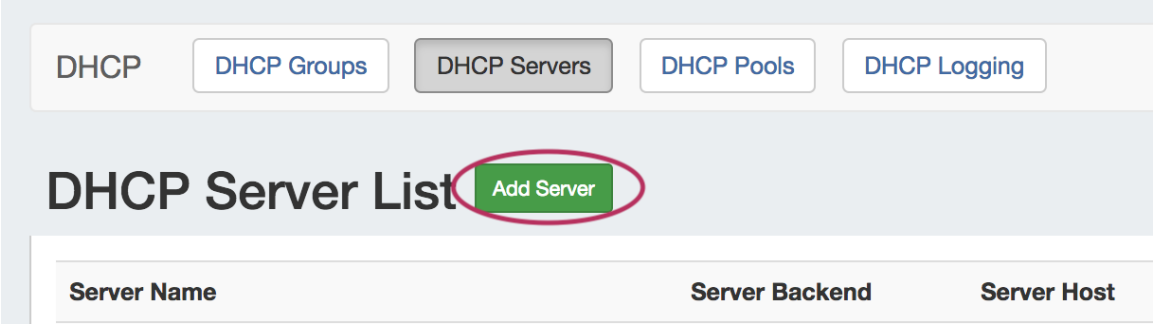

**8) Delete:** Deletes the server from ProVision.

**9 Push**: Pushes all pools associated with the selected server.

# Working with DHCP Servers

## Add a Server

To create a new server, start from the **DHCP** Tab, select the **DHCP Servers** sub menu. Then, click the "Add Server" button next to "DHCP Server List".

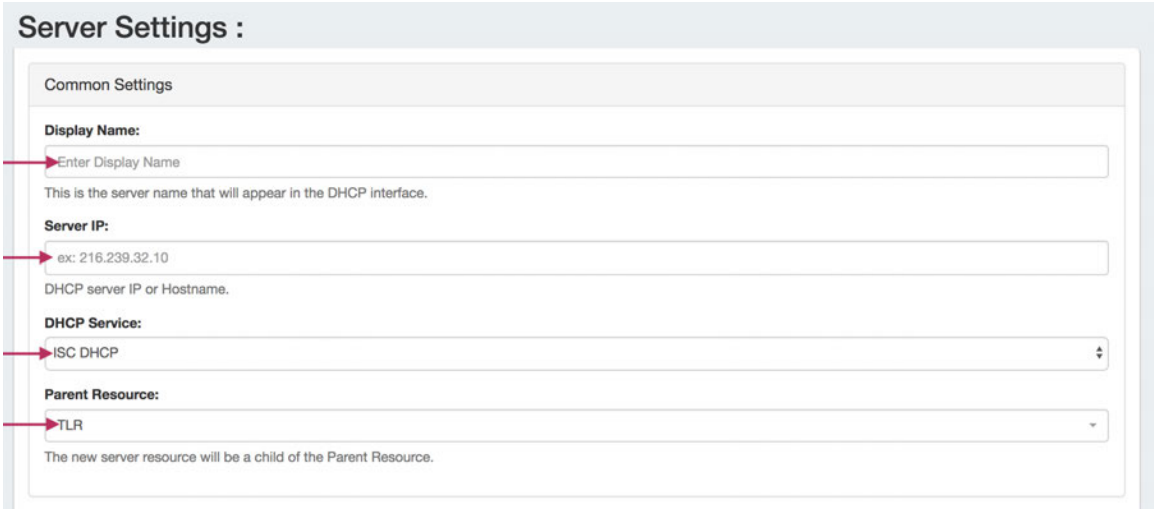



This will open the "Server Settings" page.

## Server Settings

### 1) Set Server Common Settings

In the "Common Settings" section of Server Settings, enter the new server's Display Name (the name that will appear on the ProVision interface), the FQDN / IP, server type, service type, and desired parent Resource (may be left at the default Top Level Resource).




**Display Name:** Name you want the server to display.

**Server IP:** The IP or Hostname of the DHCP server.

**DHCP Service:** Select the DHCP service type - ISC DHCP, or Cisco Prime Network Registrar (CPNR).

**Parent Resource:** Select the ProVision resource to be the "parent" of the server - typically TLR (Top Level Resource), but may be a lower level resource such as a Customer or Location. The parent resource selection is the basis of access permissions for the server.

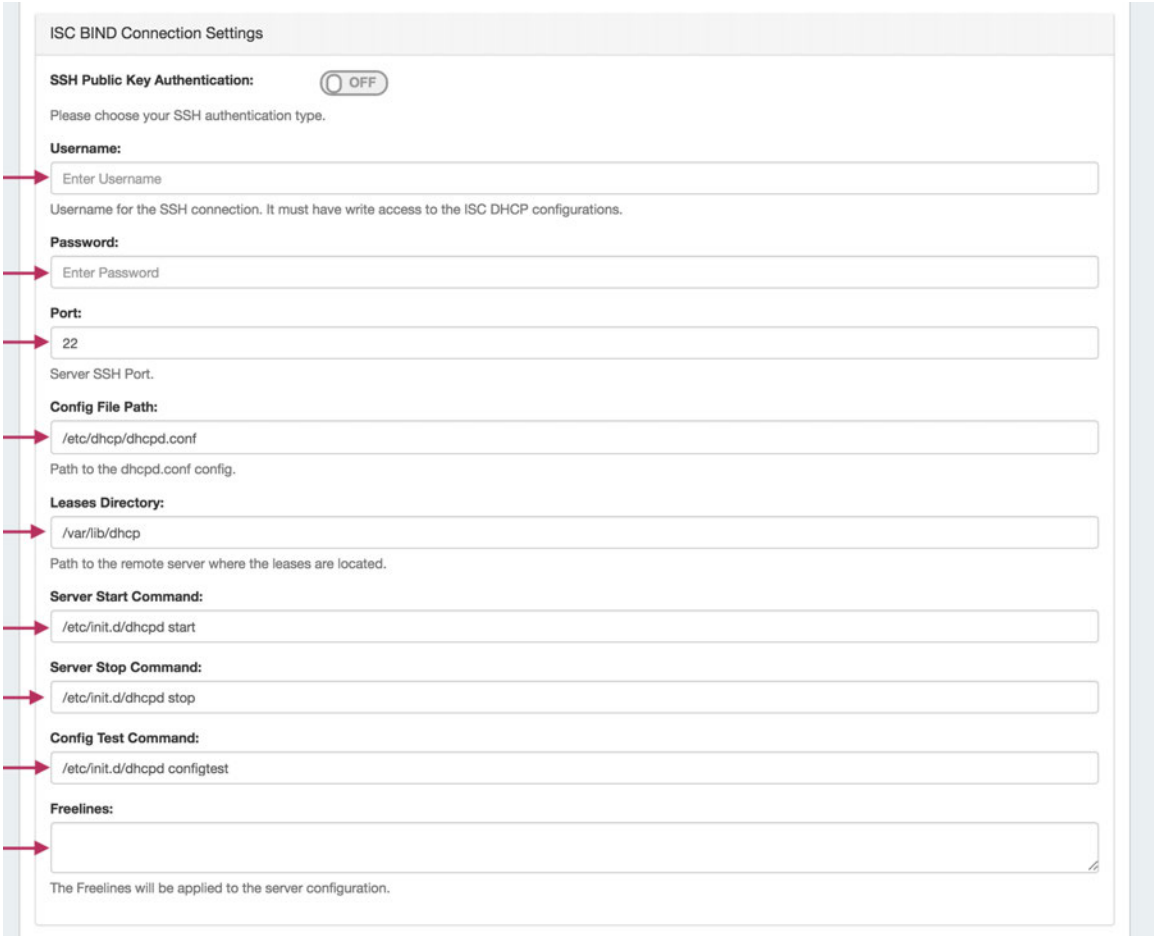
## 2) Set Server Specific Settings

The next section is entering server service-type specific settings. The options visible in this section will depend on the "DHCP Service" type chosen under "Common Settings".

Here, we see the fields for ISC DHCP server settings. Enter the server Username, Password, Port, Leases Directory, Server Start / Stop Commands, Server Test Command and Freelines (if desired).

Your fields may vary for other server types.

For SSH Public Key Authentication, click on the ON / OFF toggle to select "ON" or "OFF" as needed.

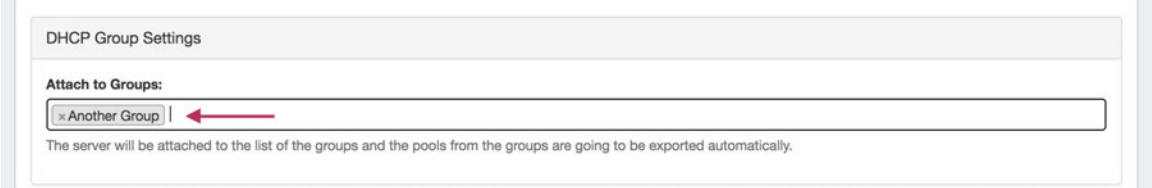



## 3) Set Advanced Server Settings

If desired, Advanced Settings for the DHCP Server may be entered. Toggle "Authorative Server" to "On" or "Off", and fill in the fields for Routers, Domain Name Servers, Domain Name, Default Lease Time, Max Lease Time, Local Port, or Log Facility.

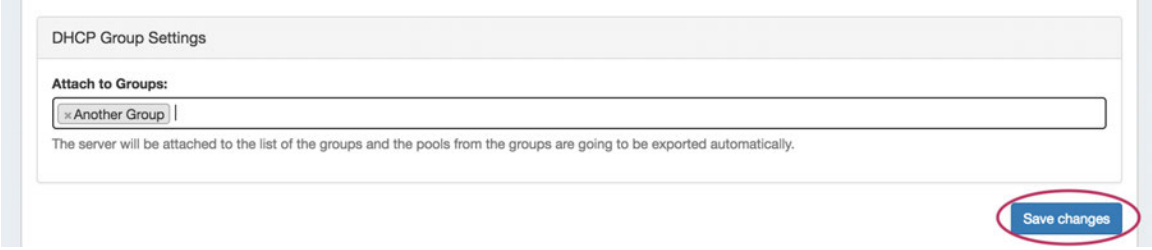
## 4) Set DHCP Group Settings for Server

In the last section, select whether to attach the server to an existing DHCP Group. Pools assigned to the selected Group will automatically be attached to the server.




## 5) Save Changes

Save your changes when done! Just click the "Save Changes" button at the bottom right of the page.




The new server will now be added to the DHCP Servers list. These settings may be changed at any time by selecting the server from the server list and editing the information.

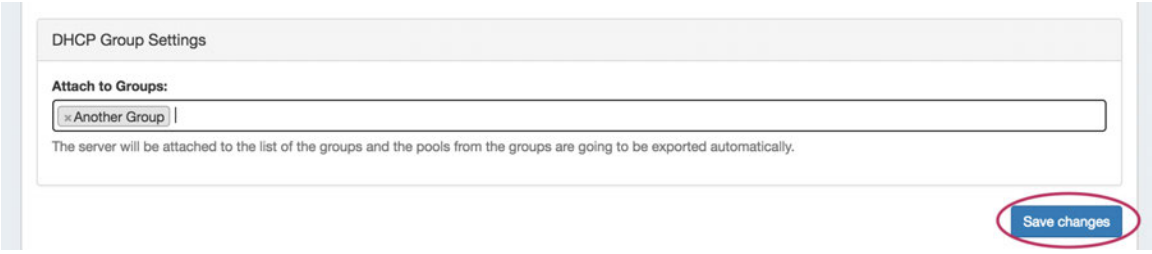
# Edit Servers

Edit an existing server by clicking once on the server name in the DHCP Servers list.

| Server Name | Server Backend | Server Host | Parent Resource | Actions |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| DHCP - a6connectEntry | ISC | 15.15.15.128 | a6connectEntry | Delete Push |
| DHCP - DHCP 6c Test Server - QA test | ISC | dhcp1-sfo.6connect.com | 6connectEntry 2 | Delete Push |
| Test Server Test | CPNR | 4.5.6.7 | TLR | Delete Push |

The "Server Settings" page will open.

Click inside the field that you want to change, type your changes, and then click "Save Changes" at the bottom of the page.




# Review Pools Connected to a Server

There are two ways that pools may be connected to a DHCP server:

1) Directly connected, by attaching the pool to a server from the Pool Details page.

or,

2) Connected by a Group that has been set as the default DHCP Group for the server, selected under "DHCP Group Settings".

Both are able to be viewed on the DHCP Server Settings page.

To view either, open the Server Settings page for the server by clicking on the server name in the DHCP Servers list.

Edit an existing server by clicking once on the server name in the DHCP Servers list.

| Server Name | Server Backend | Server Host | Parent Resource | Actions |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| DHCP - a6connectEntry | ISC | 15.15.15.128 | a6connectEntry | Delete Push |
| DHCP - DHCP 6c Test Server - QA test | ISC | dhcp1-sfo.6connect.com | 6connectEntry 2 | Delete Push |
| Test Server Test | CPNR | 4.5.6.7 | TLR | Delete Push |

The "Server Settings" page will open.

## Pools Directly Connected to the Server

Scroll to the bottom of the page, and open the module titled "Pools directly connected to the server" by clicking on the expansion arrow.

Pools directly connected to the server

Subnet Pools | Host Pools

| Pool Name | Last Modified | IP | MAC | Actions |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6connectHostPool | 06/22/2018 19:13:09 | 16.5.4.0 | 00:11:22:33:44:55 | Detach |

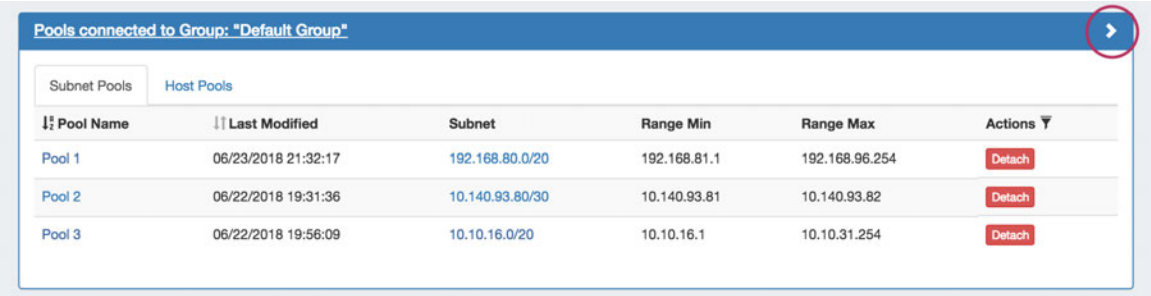
A pool list will show the pool(s) that have been directly connected to this server.

Here, you may browse through subnet and host pools by selecting the appropriate tabs, sort the list by Pool Name or Last Modified, or open the Pool Details page by clicking on the name.

## Zones Connected via a Group

If a default Group has been selected under "DHCP Group Settings" for the server, pools under that Group will be connected to the server and able to be viewed on the Server Settings page.

Scroll to the bottom of the page, and open the module titled "Pools connected to Group '(Group Name)' " by clicking on the expansion arrow.



Pools connected to Group: "Default Group"

Subnet Pools | Host Pools

| Pool Name | Last Modified | Subnet | Range Min | Range Max | Actions |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pool 1 | 06/23/2018 21:32:17 | 192.168.80.0/20 | 192.168.81.1 | 192.168.96.254 | Detach |
| Pool 2 | 06/22/2018 19:31:36 | 10.140.93.80/30 | 10.140.93.81 | 10.140.93.82 | Detach |
| Pool 3 | 06/22/2018 19:56:09 | 10.10.16.0/20 | 10.10.16.1 | 10.10.31.254 | Detach |

A pool list will show the pool(s) that have been directly connected to this server.

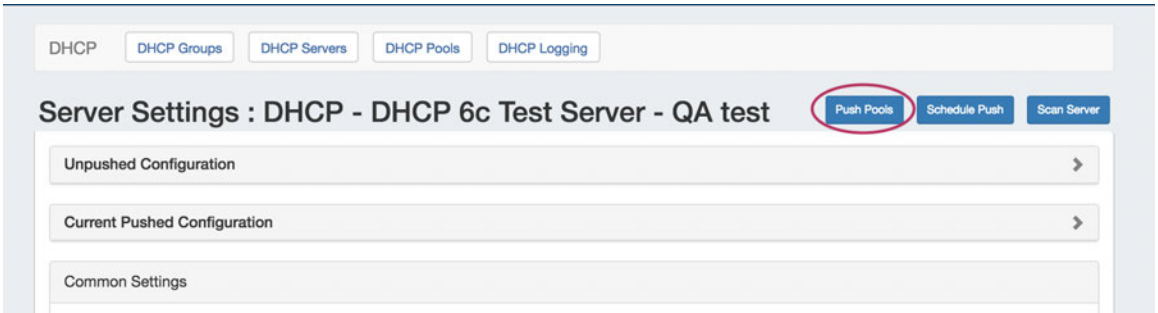
Here, you may browse through subnet and host pools by selecting the appropriate tabs, sort the list by Pool Name or Last Modified, or open the Pool Details page by clicking on the name.

# Pushing a Server

# Manual Push

Manually pushing all pools on a server may be done directly from the DHCP Server list. Under the "Actions" section of the Server List, click the "Push" button for the desired server.

Pushing may also be done while in the Server Settings page. While in the Server Settings page, click the "Push Pool" button at the top right of the page.



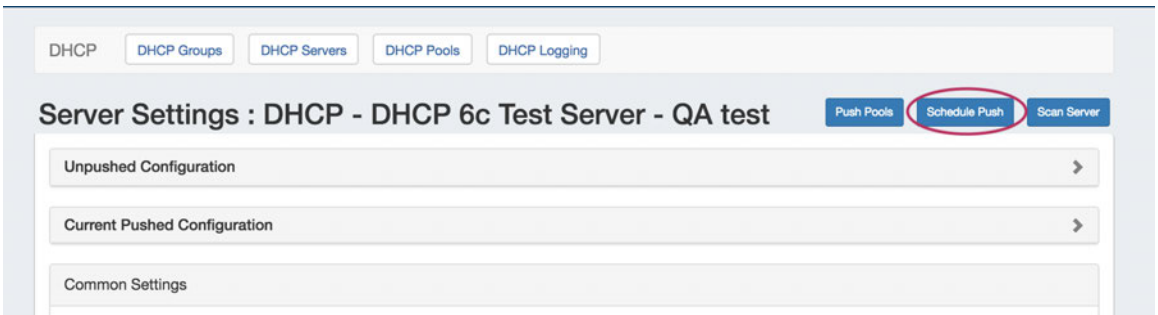

A "DHCP Push Status" box will appear, showing the status as the server is pushed. Once all pools have been pushed successfully, a green status message of "Finished DHCP Pushing Request" will appear. At this point, the push is complete and the window may be closed.

# Scheduled Push

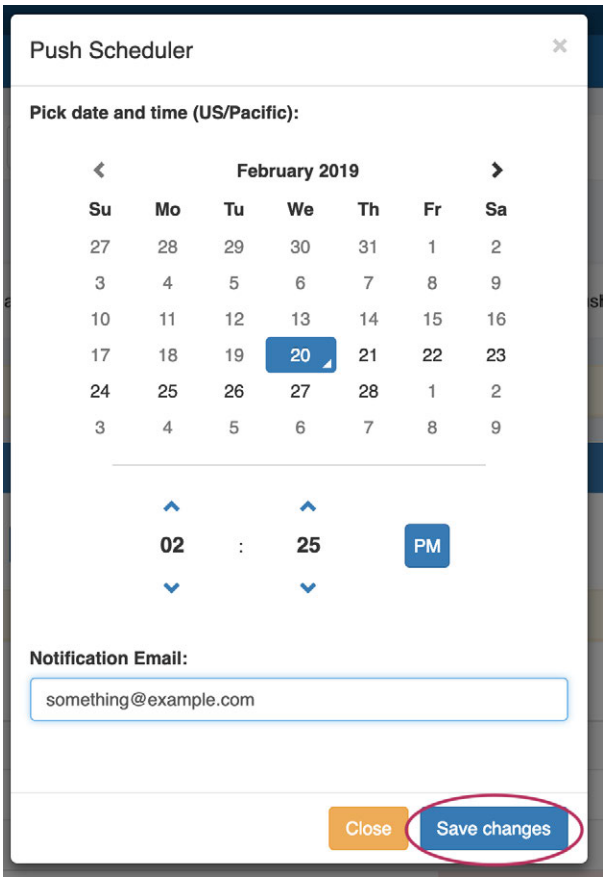
DHCP server pushes may be scheduled from either the Admin Area **Scheduler** Tab, or from within the DHCP Server Settings page. Scheduled pushes require Admin access.

For information on scheduling a push from the **Scheduler** Tab, see Scheduler Tab documentation.

To schedule a push from a server's Settings page, open the Server Settings page for the desired server, and click on the "Schedule Push" button.

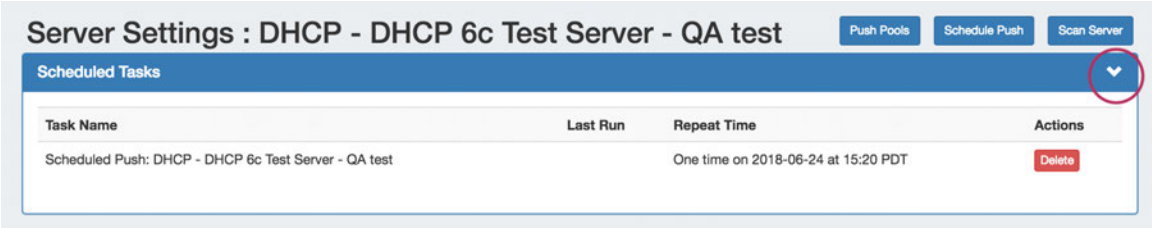



The Push Scheduler dialog will open. Click on the calendar on the left to select a date for the push, set the desired push time on the right, enter a notification email address, and then click "Save Changes".




Once a schedule push has been created, a "Scheduled Tasks" module will appear at the top of the Server Settings page.

Click on the expansion arrow for the module to open and view the tasks.  Scheduled tasks may be deleted by clicking the "Delete" button under "Actions".



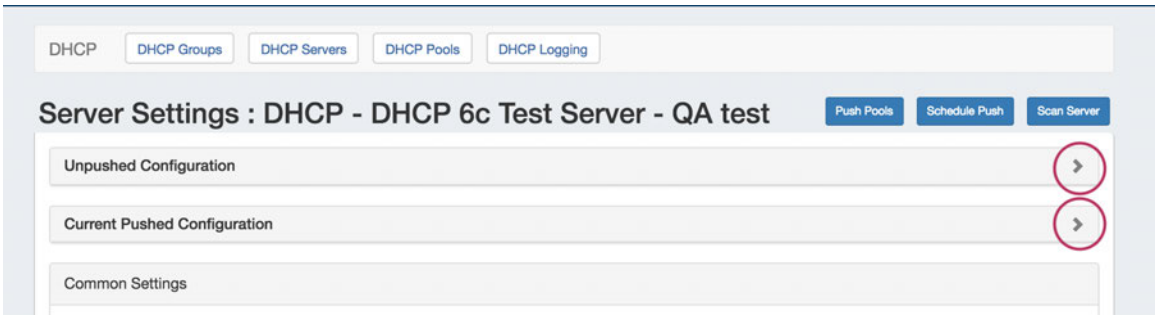

If necessary, the Scheduled Push may be edited from the **Scheduler** Tab in the Admin area of ProVision. See the Scheduler Tab for information on editing scheduled tasks.

# Review Pushed / Unpushed Configurations

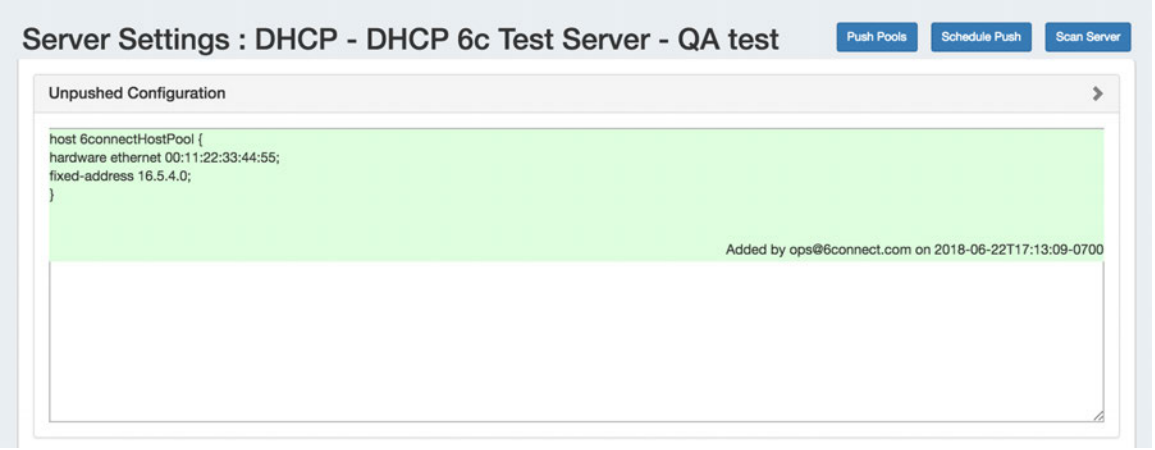
After a server has been created, unpushed edits may be viewed under the "Unpushed Configurations" module in Server Settings.

After a push, the most recent pushed configuration may be viewed under the "Current Pushed Configuration" module in Server Settings.

To open either, click the expansion arrow for the module on the top right of the header.



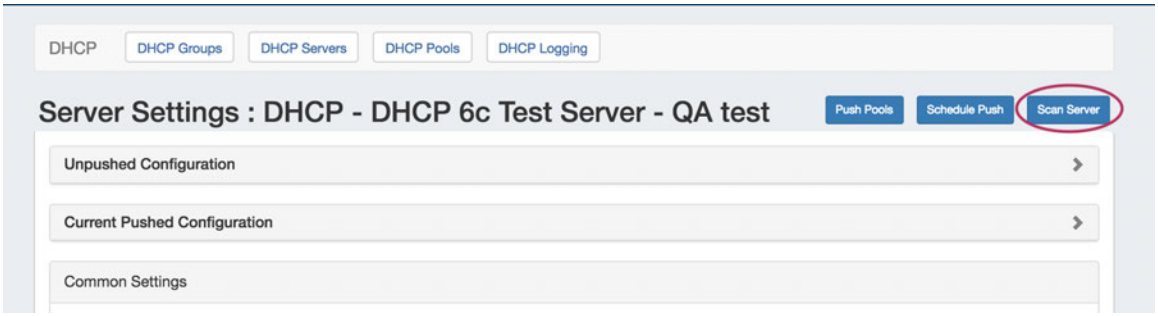

The Unpushed Configuration module will show the edits made to the configuration since the last successful push, and the user, time, and date of the change.




In Current Pushed Configuration, you may search for a specific line by entering a term in the search bar and hitting the "Enter" key - the config will jump to the appropriate line for review.

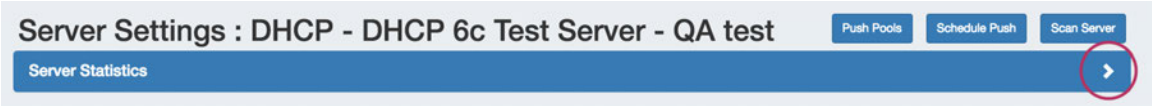
# Scan a Server

Scan a DHCP Server by clicking the "Scan Server" button at the top of the Server Settings page.




When complete, a "Server Statistics" module will appear. Expand the module, and if the server permissions allow, the scanned statistics will show in the module.

If permissions or directory location fails during the scan, an error message will show instead.




## Delete a Server

Delete a server by clicking the "Delete" button under the "Actions" section of the Server List for the desired server.

| Server Name | Server Backend | Server Host | Parent Resource | Actions |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| DHCP - a6connectEntry | ISC | 15.15.15.128 | a6connectEntry | Delete Push |
| DHCP - DHCP 6c Test Server - QA test | ISC | dhcp1-sfo.6connect.com | 6connectEntry 2 | Delete Push |
| Test Server Test | CPNR | 4.5.6.7 | TLR | Delete Push |

# Additional Information

For more information on working with DHCP in ProVision, see the following areas:

- DHCP Tab
- Working with DHCP Groups
- Working with DHCP Pools
- Working with DHCP Gadgets

# Importing Your Data

# Preparing for Data Import

Before importing your data into ProVision, there are a few steps we recommend in order to make the import process as smooth as possible:


- Preparing for Data Import
  - Step 1: Normalize your Data
  - Step 2: Prep your Data
  - Step 3: Import your Data
- Data Import Overview: Which Import Tool Should I Use?
  - Resource Import
  - Peering Import
  - IP Import
  - DNS Import
  - Import Templates
  - Additional Information


## Step 1: Normalize your Data

Prior to importing your data, there is a key step of Data Normalization to ensure that information is accurate. If you need assistance with parsing your data prior to importing, 6connect can help with our Data Analyst service. Email us at support@6connect.com for more information.
You can also use off the shelf tools like Microsoft Excel, MySQL, or Google Refine if you intend to take on the task of data cleanup in house.

Common normalization steps required for ProVision imports include:

- Remove any empty rows in the data range
- Remove any empty columns in the data range
- Remove stray data from inside and outside the data range, such as:
  - notes, comments, and placeholder text as field values, when not set as their own data column
  - nested secondary information located in additional rows under a primary record
- Ensure proper data formatting
  - Check for data formatting errors - a common issue is leading zeros being dropped from a ZIP field when a file is opened. Re-specify format as needed.
  - Ensure each field has consistent formatting for values
- Ensure unique values for primary identifiers, such as Resource Name and ID Fields

  Data Encoding Format

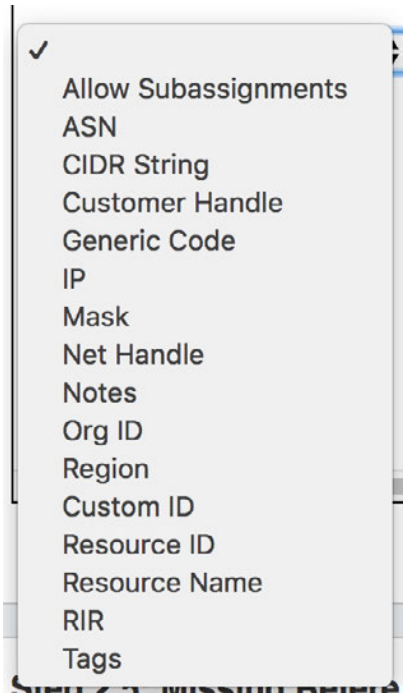
  ⚠️

  To ensure correct importing of any special characters, make sure to use UTF-8 encoding for your CSV file!

## Step 2: Prep your Data

You can download data import templates from the **Dashboard Tab** or **Data Import Tab**. We recommend that you open the CSV import templates and get familiar with the data fields that you can import into the platform.

- **For Company information** you can import relevant data including mailing/billing address information as well as ARIN specific SWIP fields, and specific DNS servers.
- **For Contact information** you can import contact records assigned to a given **Company**. We support typical fields for this data including Name, multiple email fields, phone numbers as well as Timezone and Role (Roles can be customized from the **IPAM Admin Tab)**.
- **For IP Block information** you can import the following fields:

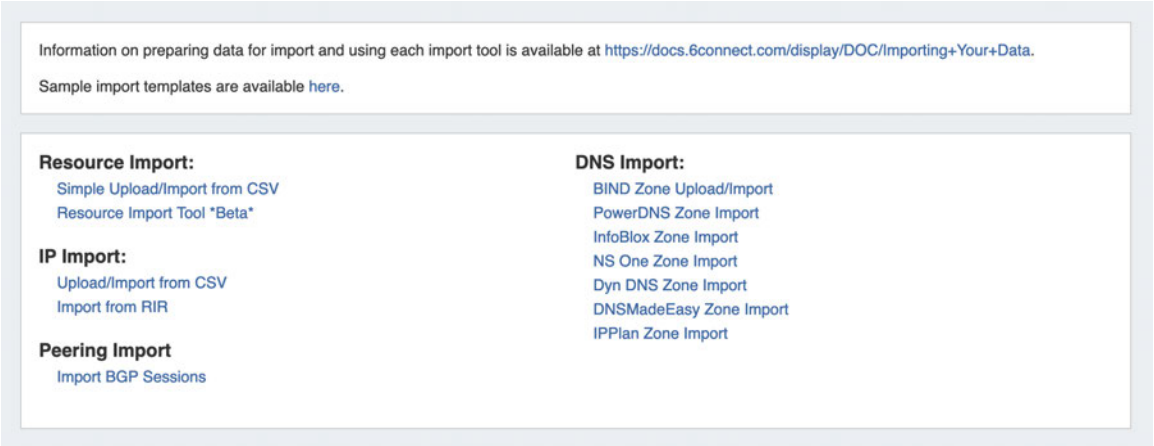



Allow Subassignments option

When importing the field "Allow Subassignments" - the parameters accepted are "TRUE", "1", "Y", "yes"

## Step 3: Import your Data

Get to the **Data Import Tab** from the **Admin button** to import your data. For larger data import runs, feel free to contact 6connect at any time for assistance at support@6connect.com.

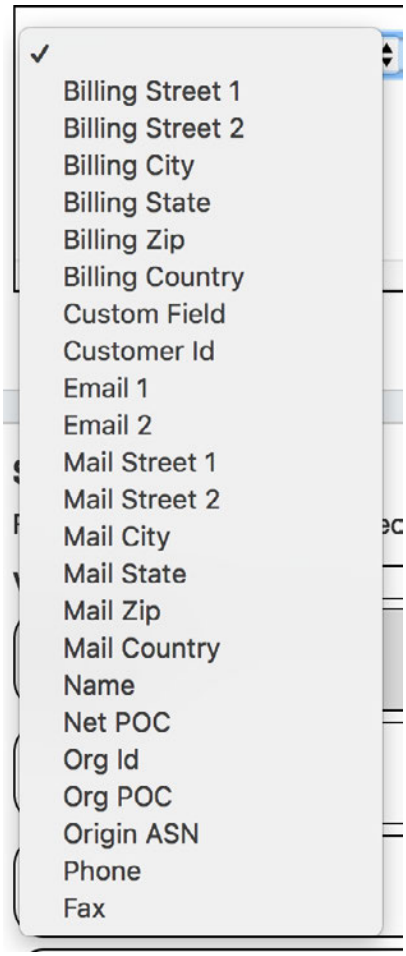



# Data Import Overview: Which Import Tool Should I Use?

## Resource Import

**Simple Upload / Import from CSV:** Use this tool if you have a  simple .csv file of customer / contact information, such as Name, Address, Billing Address, Phone numbers, POC, etc. See Resource Import from CSV for more details.

This tool supports the following fields:




For Resource Import from .csv, the following fields are REQUIRED:

- Name (Unique Resource / Customer Name)
- Customer ID (Unique non-name identifier)

All other fields are optional.

**Resource Import Tool:** The Resource Import tool is designed for importing .csv files for any Resource type (company, physical devices, contacts, customers, etc), and allows for customized headers through integrating ProVision's Section fields. It also allows for data editing within the tool. Use the Resource Import Tool if you have resource data that does not fit under the Simple Upload / Import from CSV field options, and can equate that data to an existing or newly created Section.

Additional Information

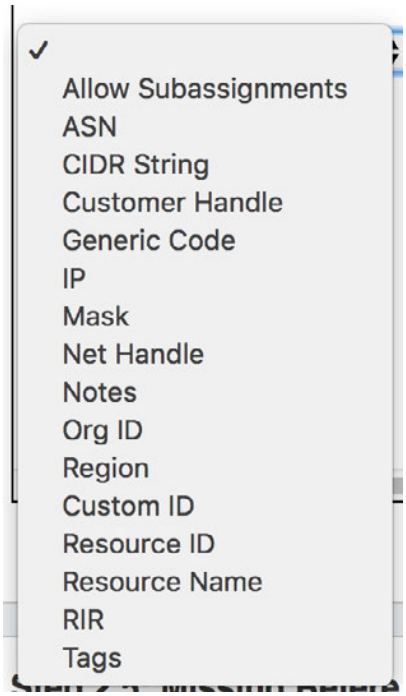
A tutorial / walkthrough for this tool is available at the Resource Import Tool page.

# Peering Import

**Import BGP Sessions:**  This section imports peering sessions from a selected exchange and router. Routers must be created prior to using this importer. See Peering Routers and Importing Sessions for additional information.

# IP Import

**Upload / Import from CSV:** Use this tool if you have a .csv file of IP block information, such as CIDR, Mask, ASN, RIR, etc.
This tool supports the following fields:




For IP Import from .csv, the following fields are REQUIRED:

- CIDR String OR both IP and Mask
- RIR OR a selected default RIR

All other fields are optional.

**Import from RIR:** This tool automatically lookups your ARIN or RIPE information based on the IP address you are connected to. Once it identifies the blocks assigned to your company, you can import both 1918 aggregates as well as public IP space from ARIN and RIPE. See Import Aggregate Blocks for more detail on this tool.

# DNS Import

**BIND Zone Upload / Import:** Imports DNS zones using the named.conf configuration file tied to the zones you are uploading, a .zip or .tar file of the zones themselves, and an optional .csv file mapping zones to customers and DNS Servers. This is the simplest and most commonly used import method. Refer to Import DNS Zones for more information.

**PowerDNS Zone Import:** This tool is available after configuring a PowerDNS server with a MySQL backend. The PowerDNS Import connects to the selected server and imports all zones.

**InfoBlox Zone Import**: Imports DNS zones using a provided Host, Username, and Password. The InfoBlox import pulls all zones on the InfoBlox LOCAL grid and adds them to a designated Group. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**NS ONE Zone Import**: Imports DNS zones using a NS One API Key. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**Dyn DNS Zone Import**: Imports DNS zones using a Dyn DNS Customer Name, Username, and Password. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**DNSMadeEasy Zone Import**: Imports DNS zones using a DNSMadeEasy API Key and API Secret. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**IPPlan Zone Import**: Imports DNS zones using IPPlan MySQL database options. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

# Import Templates

Import template sample files are available for selected ProVision import tools. A link is provided for a download page, both here and on the **Data Import** Tab.

These may be viewed as an example of .csv setup for their respective importers, or used for tutorials.

They are:

**All Import Samples** - Links to the CSV import templates page of the documentation, showing all available import template .csv files.

**IP Import Sample File** - Download the IP-import-sample_v1.csv file, used in the IP Import: Upload / Import from CSV Tool.

**Customer Sample Import** - Download the customer-import-sample.csv file, used in the Resource Import: Simple Upload / Import from CSV Tool.

# Additional Information

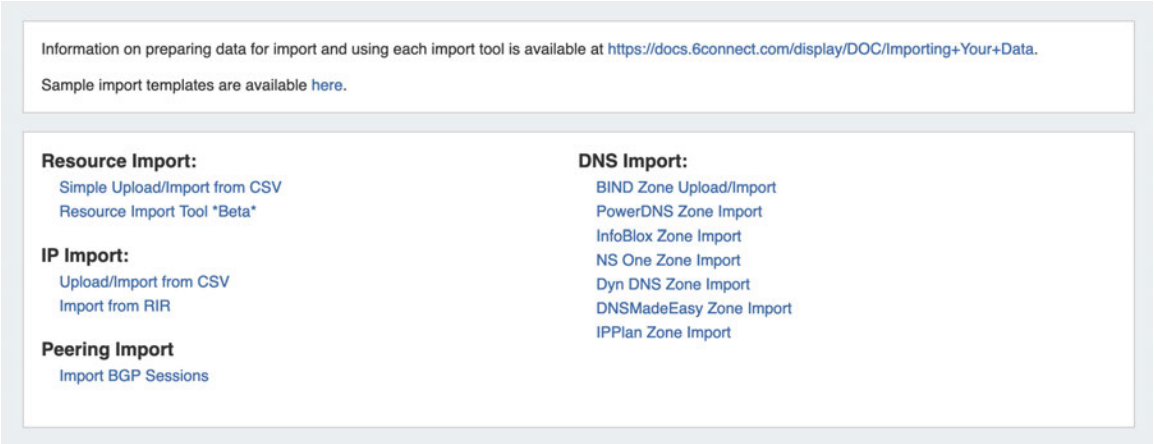
For more details, see:

- Resource Import from CSV
- Resource Import Tool
- Import Peering Sessions
- IP Import from CSV
- Import Aggregate Blocks
- Import DNS Zones

# Resource Import from CSV

# Simple Upload / Import from CSV

The Simple Upload / Import from CSV tool is used if you have a simple .csv file with customer / contact information, such as Name, Address, Billing Address, Phone numbers, POC, etc. It is accessed from the **Data Import Tab** from the **Admin** section of ProVision.




To import your customer / contact information, follow the following steps:

- Before you Begin: Prepare your Data for Import
- Step 1: Create a new Resource / Customer Import Job
- Step 2: Define Columns
- Step 3: Reviewing Data
- Additional Information

## Before you Begin: Prepare your Data for Import

The Simple Upload / Import from CSV tool requires only a .csv file for importing.

Be sure to review "Preparing Data for Import" on the Importing your Data page before you begin. Verify that your .csv is correctly parsed and cleanly formatted with your customer/contact information (using your choice of the available field list shown below), and is UTF-8 encoded for best results.

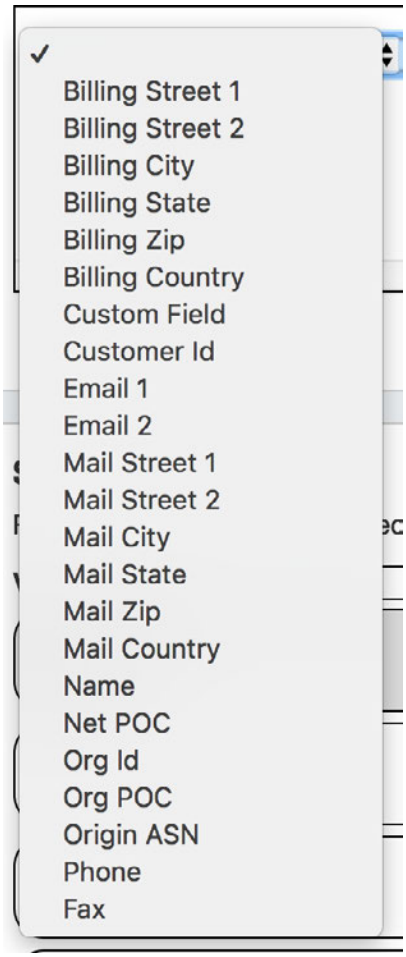
Be sure to check that your data is cleaned up with the following steps:

- Remove any empty rows in the data range
- Remove any empty columns in the data range
- Remove stray data from inside and outside the data range, such as:
  - notes, comments, and placeholder text as field values, when not set as their own data column
  - nested secondary information located in additional rows under a primary record
- Ensure proper data formatting
  - Check for data formatting errors - a common issue is leading zeros being dropped from a ZIP field when a file is opened. Re-specify format as needed.
  - Ensure each field has consistent formatting for values
- Ensure unique values for primary identifiers, such as Resource Name and ID Fields

  Data Encoding Format

  ⚠ To ensure correct importing of any special characters, make sure to use UTF-8 encoding for your CSV file!

This Resource Import from .csv tool supports the following fields:



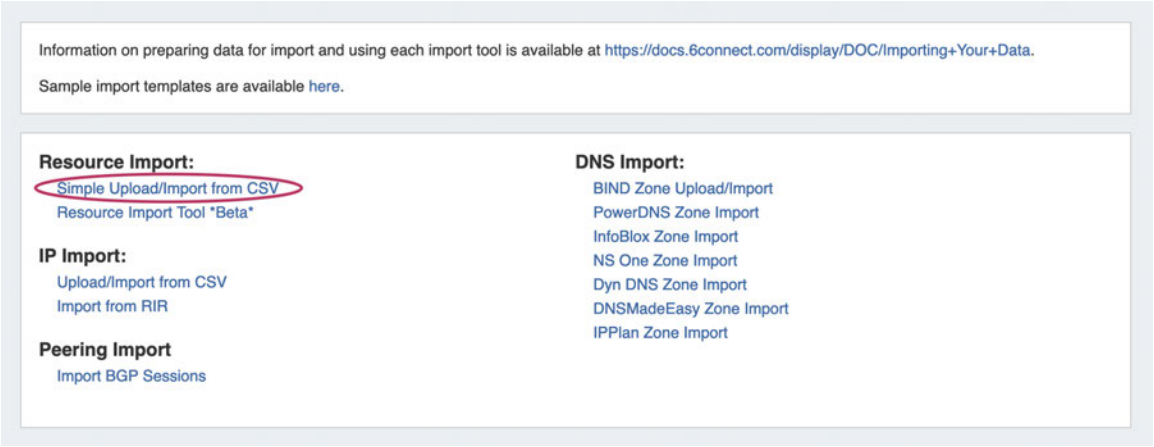

Note: the following fields are REQUIRED:

- Name (Unique Resource / Customer Name)
- Customer ID (Unique non-name identifier)

All other fields are optional.

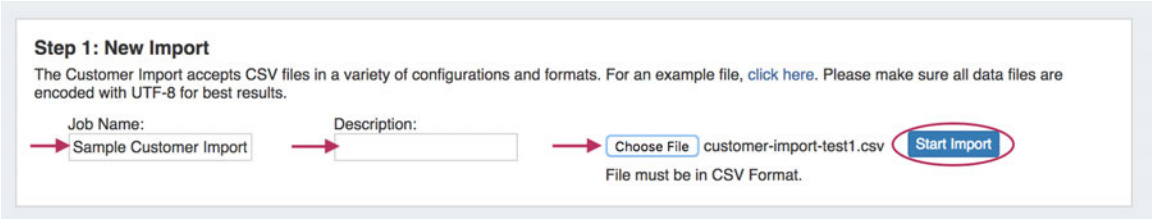
## Step 1: Create a new Resource / Customer Import Job

Navigate to the **Data Import** Tab from the **Admin** button. Select "Simple Upload / Import from CSV" under "Resource Import".




Create a Job Name and Description for the import. This is especially useful to keep track of progress in cases the data arrives from multiple sources, or will require multiple stages of manual review.

Select the .csv file that you prepared above by selecting the "Choose File" button, and browsing to the correct file location. Then hit "Start Import".



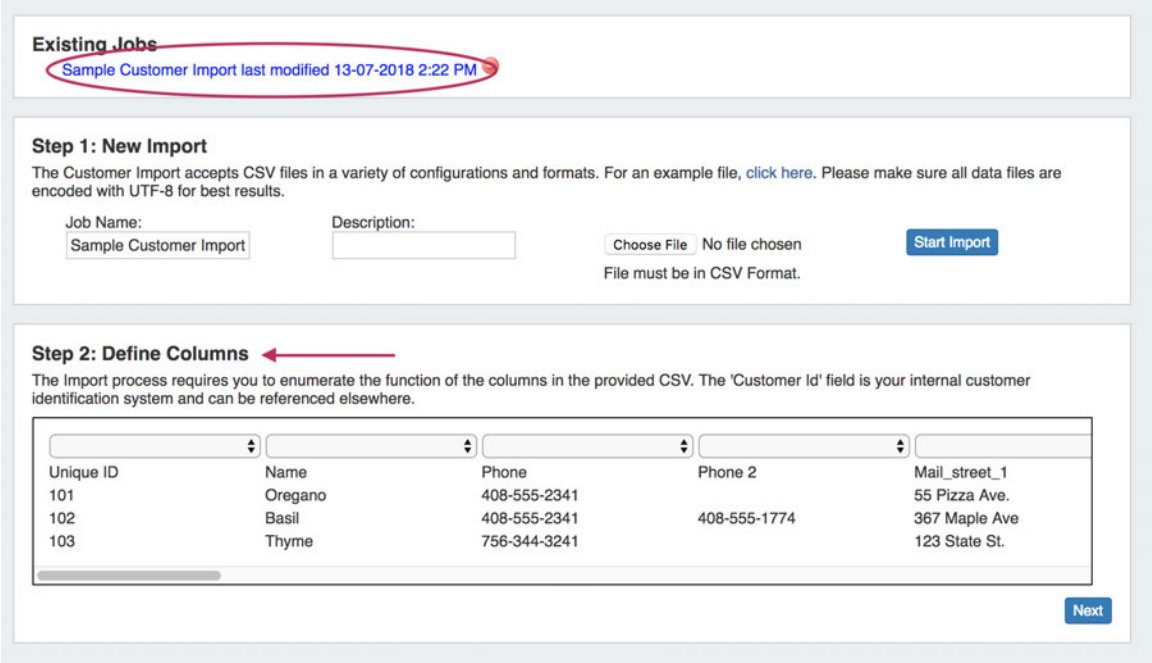

Working with Large or Multiple Data Sets

Although you cannot add new files to an existing job, for jobs with multiple sources for data (which may have different formatting), you can simply create separate jobs and descriptions for each source - no need to manually combine the data into one file before importing. The Import tool's mapping and editing functions will allow for the data to be reconciled in ProVision.

For large data sets where multiple stages of manual review might be needed, you can create a new job using the same set of data files in order to work in parallel on a different portion of the data.

After importing, the new job will appear under the "Existing Jobs" section.

To continue working with this job, select it from the list (by clicking on the link) and the next step ("Define Columns") will appear at the bottom of the page.




# Step 2: Define Columns

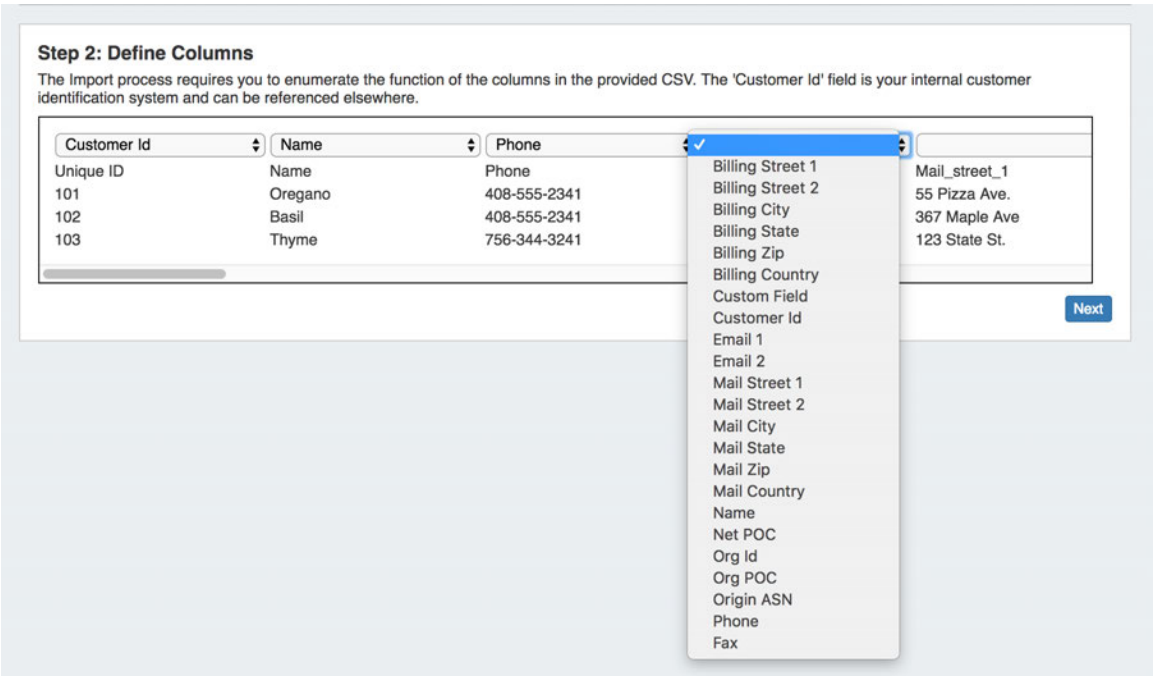
Using the dropdown menu above each data field, select the appropriate definition for each of the imported columns. **Phone** and **Fax** may have multiple columns associated with the data. Other columns which do not apply under the available definitions should be left as blank, and will be skipped during the upload process.

Note: the following fields are REQUIRED:

- Name (Unique Resource / Customer Name)
- Customer ID (Unique non-name identifier)

Make sure that you have defined all desired fields by using the scroll bar below your data to view additional columns.

When completed, hit "Next".




## Step 3: Reviewing Data

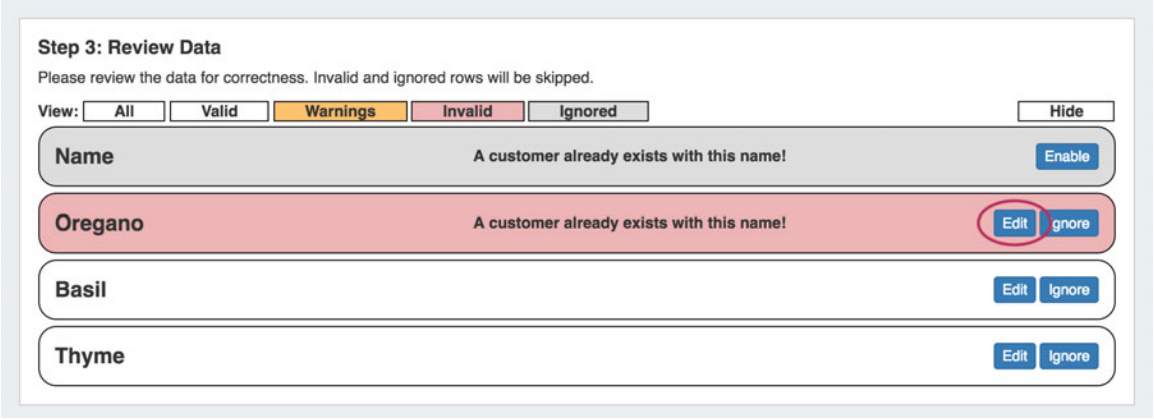
After supplying the file and defining columns, a review step is provided. Records with errors will show as color coded, and can be filtered to be viewed by All, Valid, Warnings, Invalid, or Ignored.

From here, the records can be edited or ignored. Select "Ignore" for records that you do not wish to import at this time. Records that are Ignored or Invalid will automatically be skipped.

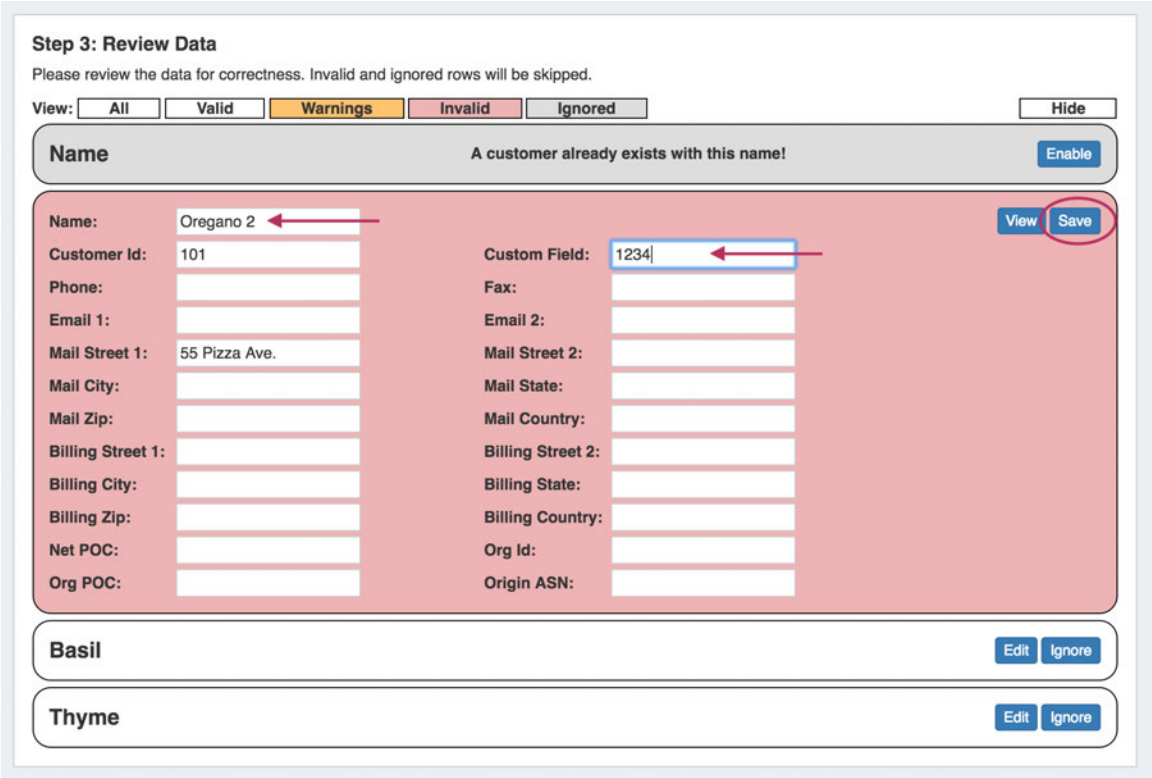
Header Rows

If your .csv has a header row as the first line, that row will be shown as the first record in review data as well. Simply click "Ignore" on the first record to disregard the row.

For rows with an "Invalid" or "Warning" status, you may wish to edit the record to change information to a valid option.



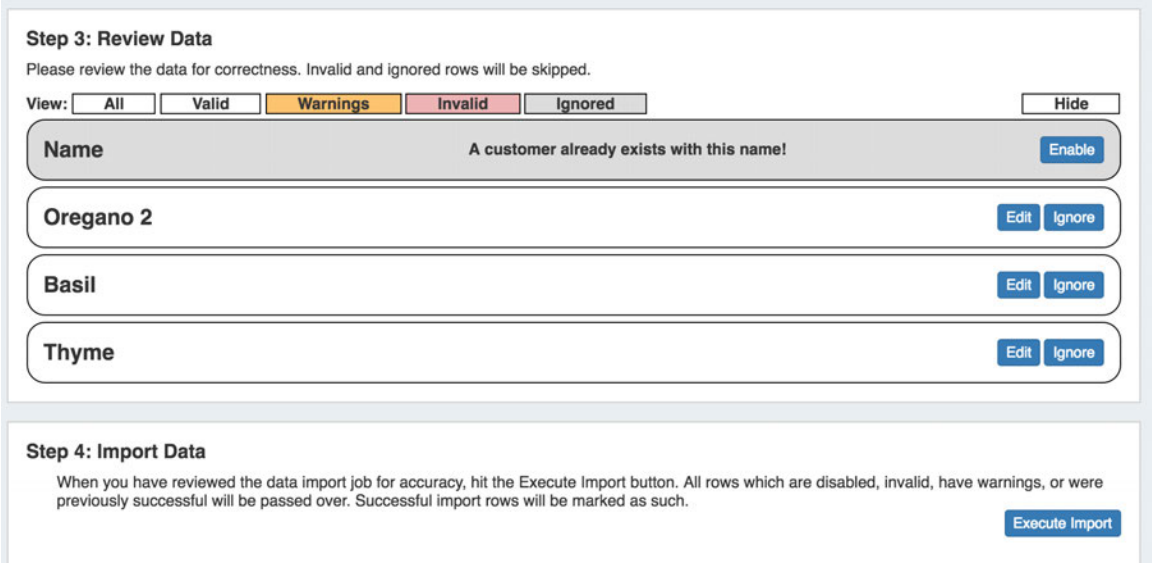

Hitting the "Edit" button for the record provides options to change or add information for available fields.




In this example, as "Name" was the invalid field, it has been updated to a unique value. The "Custom Field" value has been added as well.

After making the desired edits, hit "Save".

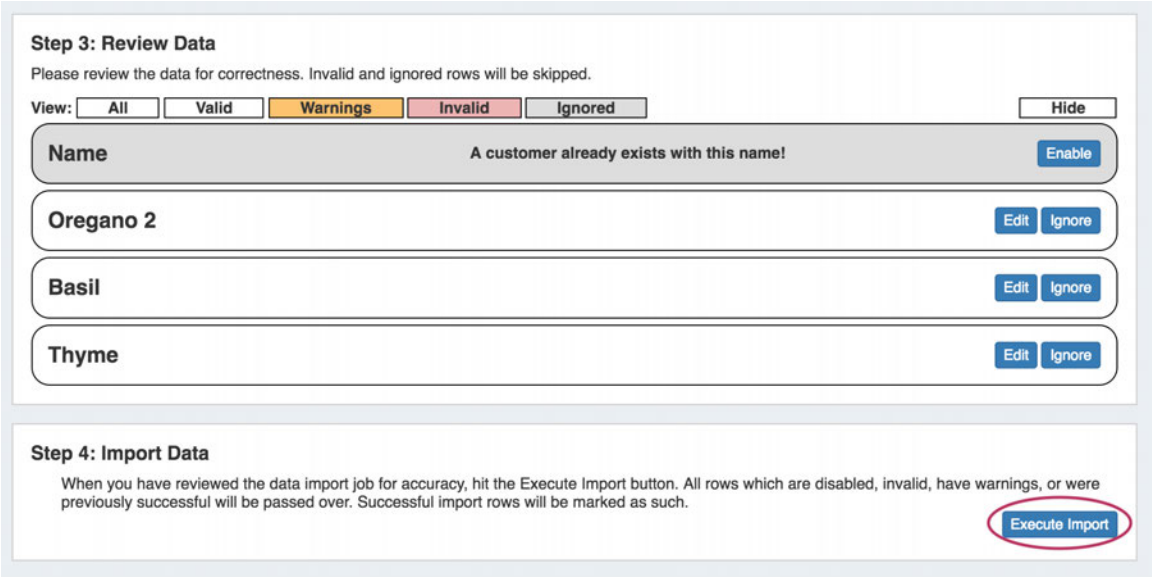
The data record will be re-checked for validity, and will have a white background if it is now valid for import.




After data has been reviewed for accuracy, you may execute the import.

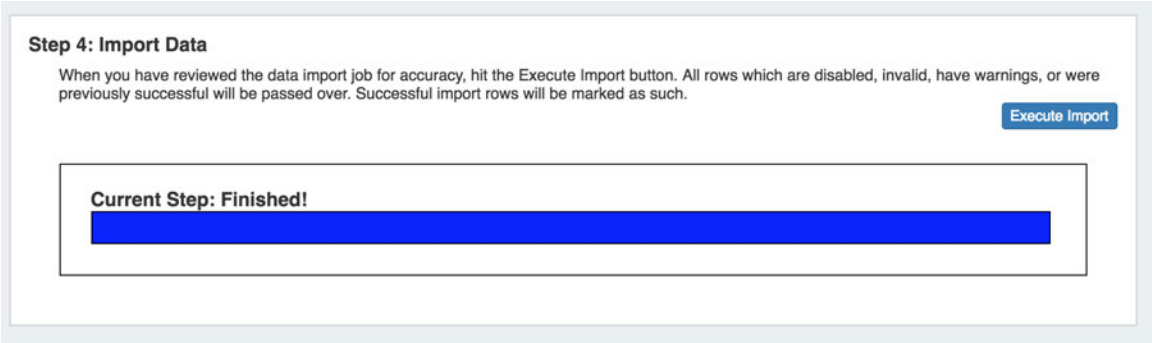
## Step 4: Execute Import

When the review step is completed, hit the "Execute Import" button.




A progress bar will appear to and display the records as they are imported.

When the bar reaches 100%, and displays "Current Step: Finished!" the import is complete, and you may leave the page.




# Additional Information

For more import options, see:

- Resource Import Tool
- Import Peering Sessions
- IP Import from CSV
- Import Aggregate Blocks
- Import DNS Zones

# Resource Import Tool

# Importing Resources


- Importing Resources
  - The Resource Import Tool
  - Before You Begin
  - Opening the Resource Import Tool
    - The Resource Import Tool UI
  - Resource Importer Walkthrough


## The Resource Import Tool

The Resource Import Tool (in beta) allows you to import resource data from a .csv file into ProVision. In the Resource Import Tool, you can open one or more user-created .csv spreadsheets, perform basic editing functions if needed, associate the data to a specific Section, and correlate the data columns to specific Section Fields.

In ProVision, since Resources can be any desired entity, and Sections can be anything from "customers" to "firewalls" to "racks", you have total flexibility in what type of data to import with the Resource Importer to meet your specific company needs. Check out Working With Resources, Customizing Sections, and Customizing Fields for more details on how to fit these elements to your business.

## Before You Begin

There are a few items that you will need have set up prior to using the Resource Importer Tool. Ensure that you have:

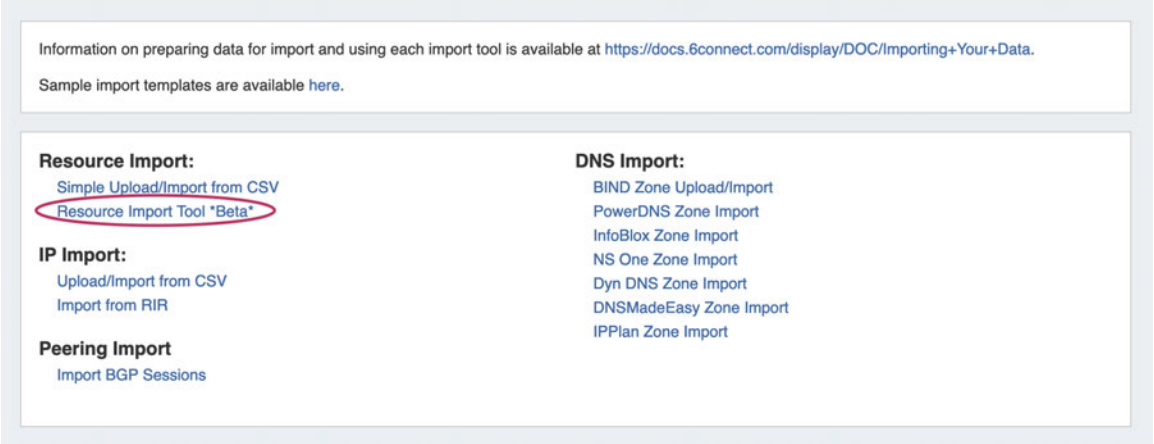
- The .csv document you wish to import saved with UTF-8 encoding. Windows, Mac, and Linux type .csv files are supported.
- A header row for the data in the .csv.
- The .csv file should be "clean", that is, only contain the data to be imported and a header row for that data.
- A Section created in ProVision with fields that correlate to the import data. For example, if you wish to import a list of contact information, there will need to be a Section in ProVision created for "Contacts", with fields such as "First Name", "Last Name", "email address", "Phone number", and so on. To create a new Section, or edit an existing Section, refer to Working With Resources, Customizing Sections, and Customizing Fields.

  If the above preconditions are not met, the Resource Importer Tool may not be able to correctly read the .csv file or complete the import. Verify UTF-8 .csv encoding, a clean dataset with a header row, and that an appropriate Section exists in ProVision prior to import.
  Best Practice

  To ensure a fast and straightforward resource import, best practice is to verify ahead of time that your .csv data is correct and contains all the necessary column information for the Section. This includes a top-level Name and Unique ID, as well as a column per Section field. Data edits and column adjustments can be performed inside the Resource Importer Tool if necessary, but will require additional time and steps.

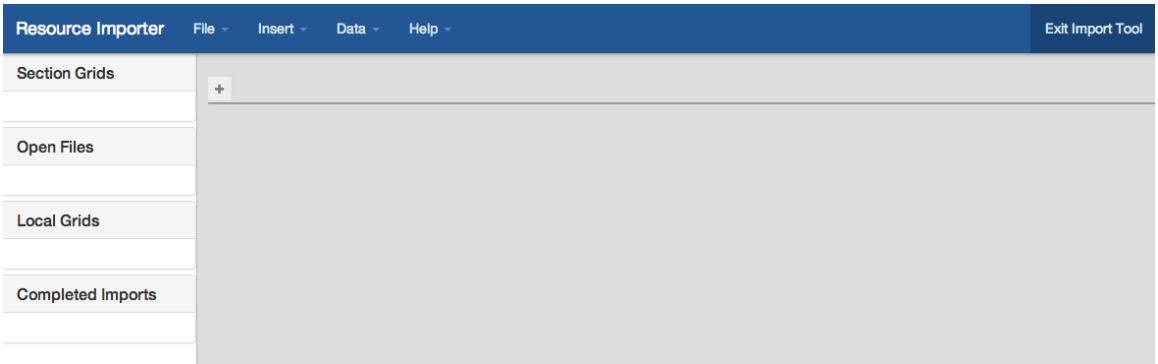
## Opening the Resource Import Tool

To open the Resource Import Tool, navigate to the **Data Import Tab** from the **Admin button** to import your aggregate blocks. Select "Resource Import Tool" under "Resource Import".




## The Resource Import Tool UI

When you first open the Resource Importer, you will be given the option to view a short on-screen guide to using the tool. After stepping through the guide and/or exiting out of it, the tool will look like this:




On the top are standard menu options of "File", "Insert", and Data" and "Help". Under those menus, you may see greyed-out functions listed. Those functions are items under development, or not available to use at the current Importer step.

On the left side of the screen is a listing of currently opened files:

**Sections Grids** lists grids currently open that were created from a ProVision Section

**Open Files** lists the current user created .csv spreadsheets that are open

**Local Grids** lists any grids that were created in the tool itself, instead of opened from an external file

**Completed Imports** show imports which have been completed and imported into ProVision

If, at any time, you need to leave the Resource Importer Tool, select the "Exit Import Tool" in the top right corner of the screen, and you will be taken back to the ProVision Dashboard.

Exiting the Resource Importer Tool prior to completing the import process will result in the current open grids being discarded.

# Resource Importer Walkthrough

For a step by step walkthrough of the Resource importer, continue on to the Resource Importer Walkthrough , which shows how to import a sample contact list and perform minor editing tasks.

Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 1 Upload your .csv data file

Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 2 Open a Template Grid from an existing Section

Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 3 Reorder .csv columns to match the Section Grid column order

Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 4 Edit Data as Needed

Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 5 Drag rows from the .csv Grid to the Section Grid

Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 6 Import into ProVision

# Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 1

## Importing Resources

### Before You Begin

Ensure that you are familiar with the overview and "Before you Begin" requirements listed on the Resource Import Tool page.

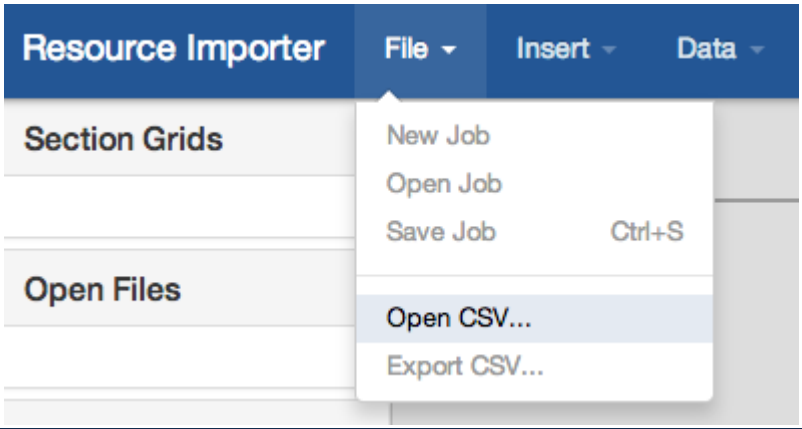
For this tutorial, we will be using the Contact Import Sample .csv available on the Import Templates page as an example, and associating it to an existing Section called "Contact" having the fields: First Name, Last Name, Email, 2nd Email, Phone, 2nd Phone, Mobile Phone, Role, and Time Zone. To create this Section, or edit an existing Section, refer to Working With Resources, Customizing Sections, and Customizing Fields.

In order to illustrate the abilities of the Resource Importer to edit data and adjust for formatting issues, the Contact Import Sample .csv is used intentionally leaving a few less-than-ideal conditions (much like you may encounter in real life) such as leaving typos, having an extra data column, and missing a needed column. If you follow the "Before you Begin" requirements and "Best Practice" notes, however, you may be able to skip any editing or column adjustment steps.

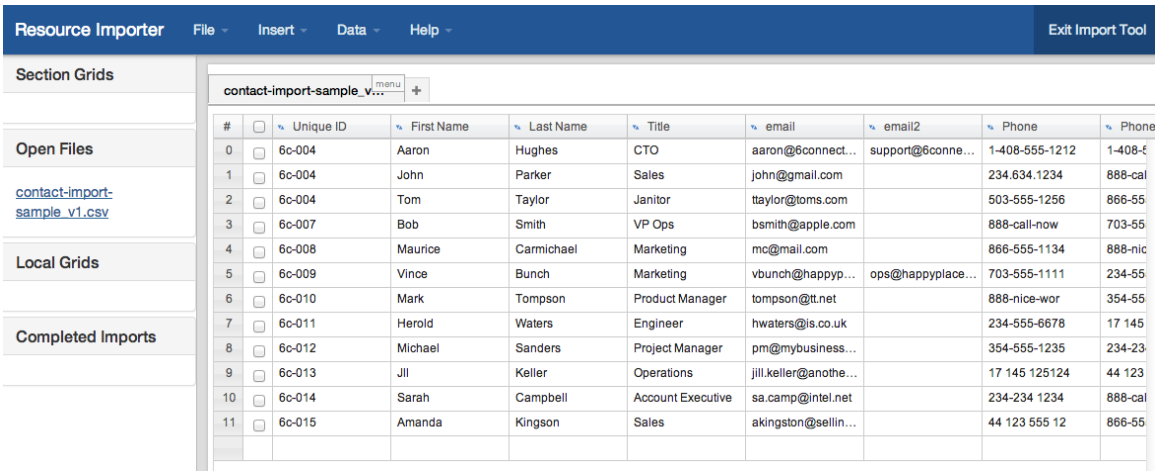
When you are ready to begin, open the Resource Importer and proceed to Step 1.

### Step 1: Upload your .csv data file

Under the "File" Menu, select "Open .csv". Browse to and select your UTF-8 encoded data file.



After hitting "OK", your file should be visible in the workspace, as well as listed under "Open Files" like this:



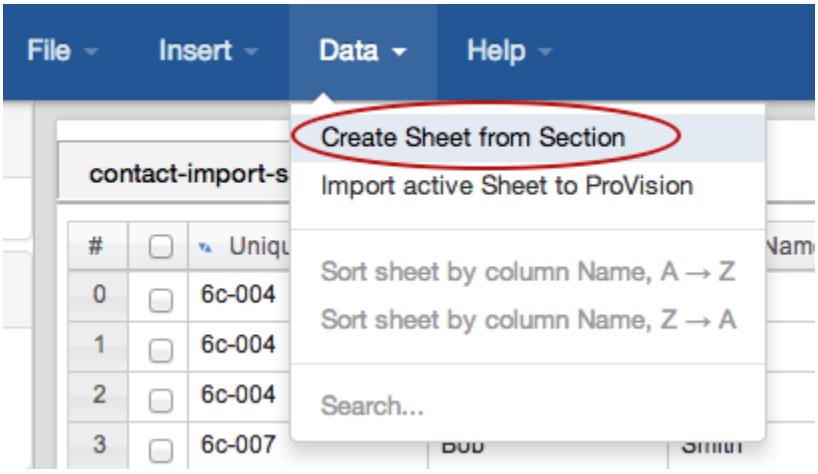

After opening your .csv grid, proceed to Step 2 - Open a template grid from an existing Section

# Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 2

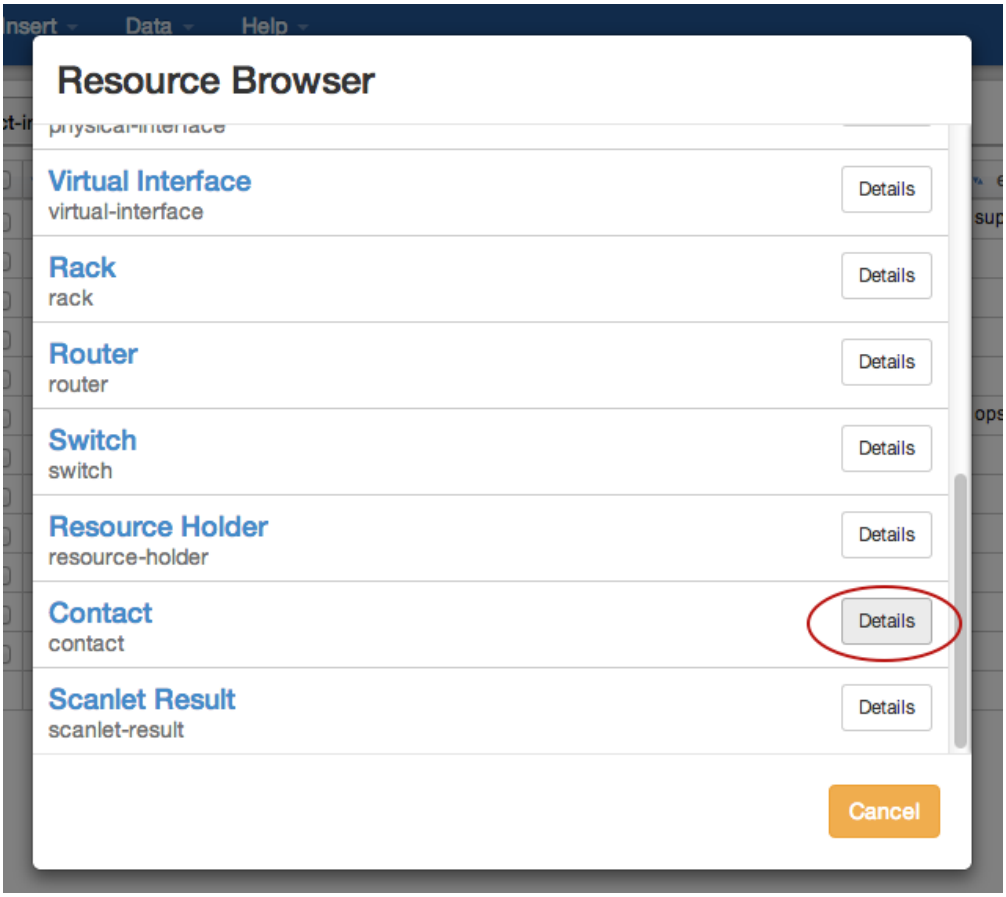
## Importing Resources

### Step 2: Open a Template Grid from an existing Section

Under the "Data" menu, select "Create Sheet from Section".

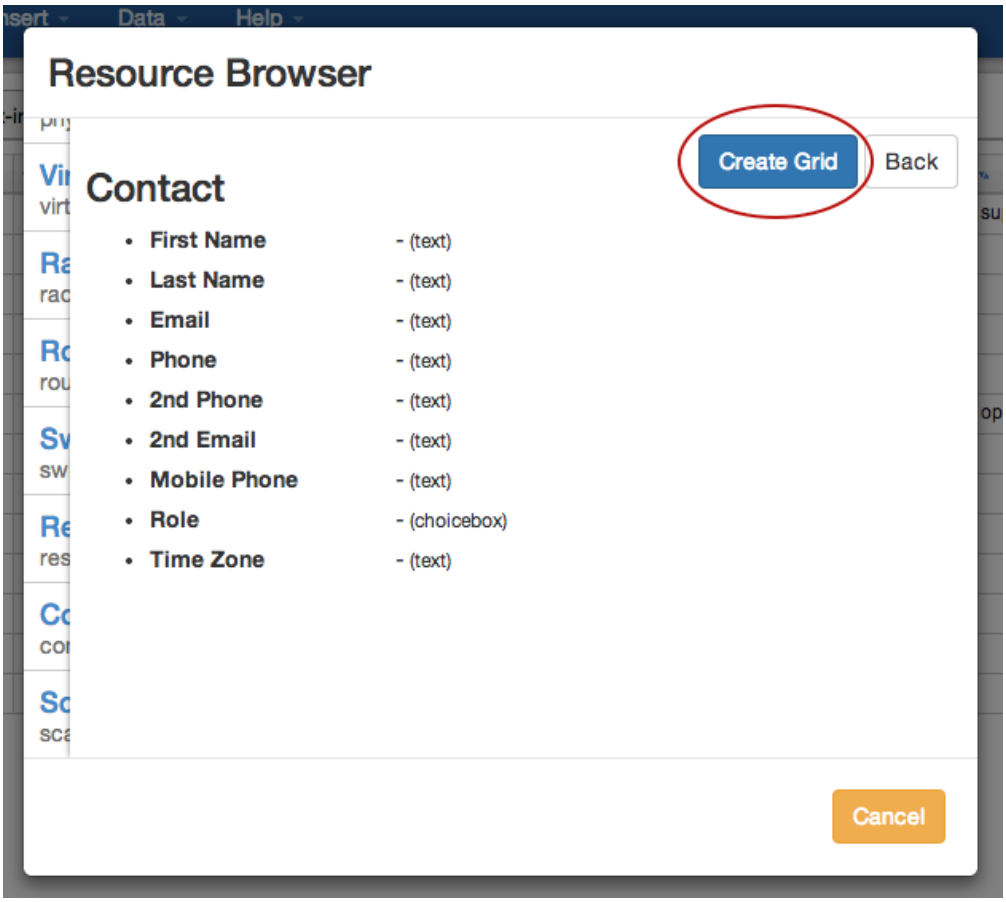



The Resource Browser will pop up, showing the list of Sections currently available in Provision. Clicking on the "Details" button will show the fields for that Section.

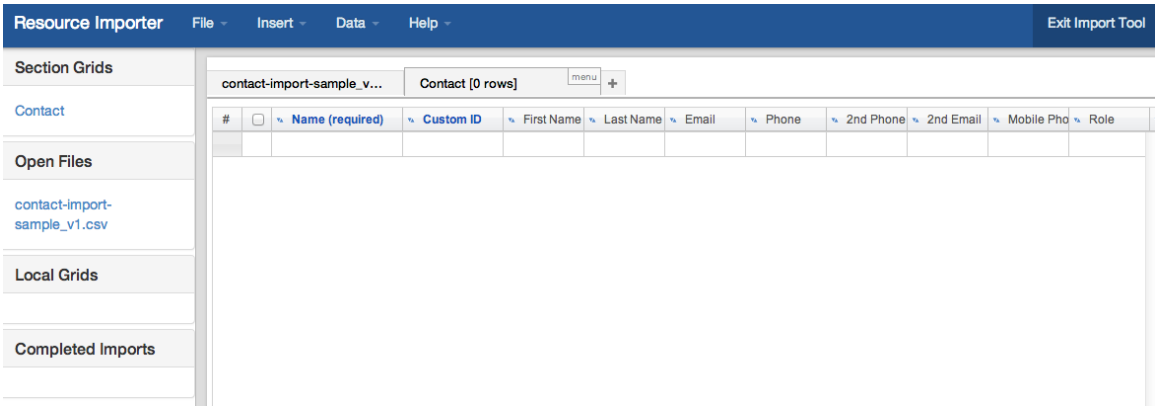


Verify that the Section and available fields match the type of data you are trying to import. In this case, the Section "Contact" has the fields that correlate to our spreadsheet data.

Select "Create Grid" to create a grid based off this Section.




When the Section Grid has been created, required fields will show in blue font with (required) after the header, in this case, "Name" is a required field. The "Custom ID" field is metadata allowing for a unique ID to be associated with each entry, but is not necessary for a successful import. The remainder of the headers directly match the Section's fields.




After you have opened your Section Grid, proceed to Step 3: Reorder .csv columns to match the Section Grid

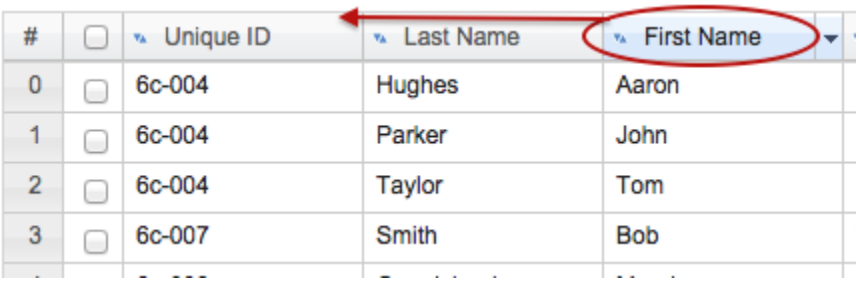
# Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 3

## Importing Resources

### Step 3: Reorder .csv columns to match the Section Grid column order

One of the most important steps is to reorder the columns from the .csv data to match the order of the Section Grid headers - think of the importer as copying and pasting the csv data into the "Contact" Section grid- we want to ensure that the data is under the correct headers!

### Click on the column header to Drag and Drop to the desired location:



| # | | Unique ID | Last Name | First Name |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | 6c-004 | Hughes | Aaron |
| 1 | | 6c-004 | Parker | John |
| 2 | | 6c-004 | Taylor | Tom |
| 3 | | 6c-007 | Smith | Bob |

Click back and forth between the tabs to verify the column order, then click on a header and drag and drop into the desired order. This moves not only the header, but also the data below it.

### Common Column Editing Questions

What if just my column headers are in the wrong place?

What if I have too many / too few columns in my .csv to match the Section Grid?

If you see any of these issues, proceed to Step 4 - Edit data as needed.

Otherwise, if your columns match up perfectly and none of the data needs editing, skip to Step 5 - Drag rows to the Section Grid

# Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 4

## Importing Resources

### Step 4: Edit data as needed

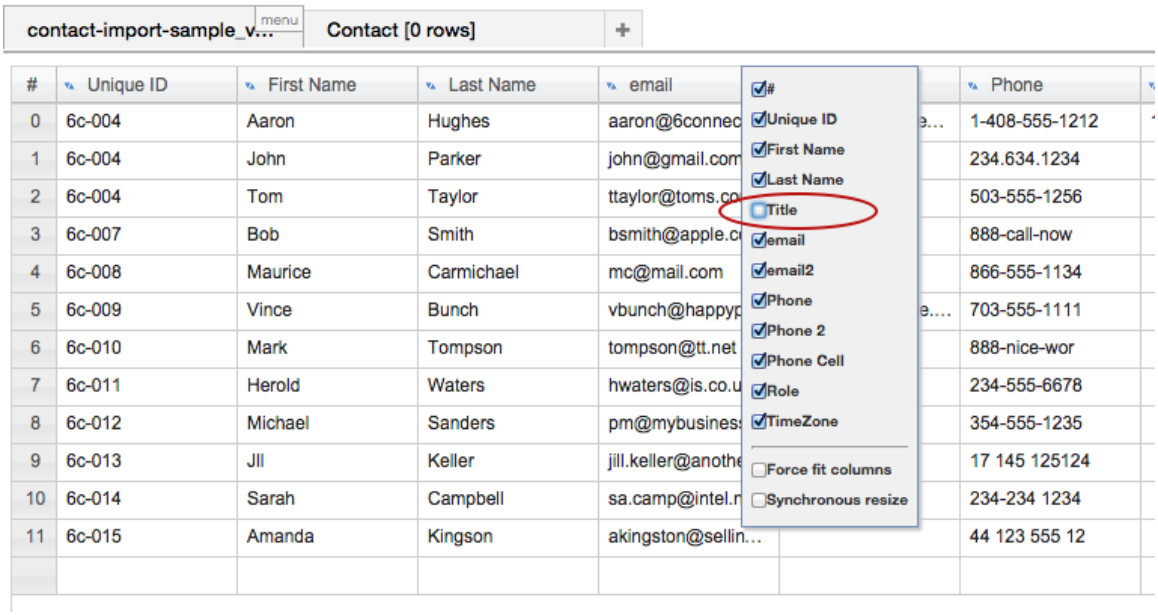
As you may have noticed in Step 3, with this example we have a couple of columns that don't quite match up to the Section Grid. The "Title" column in the .csv data is an additional column we are not tracking in our Section. Also, although we have a "First Name" and "Last Name", we are missing a data column for the top-level "Name" required in the Section Grid.

### Common Editing Questions:

- What if I have too many / too few columns in my .csv to match the Section Grid?
- What if I see a typo in the .csv data?
- What if just my column headers are in the wrong place?

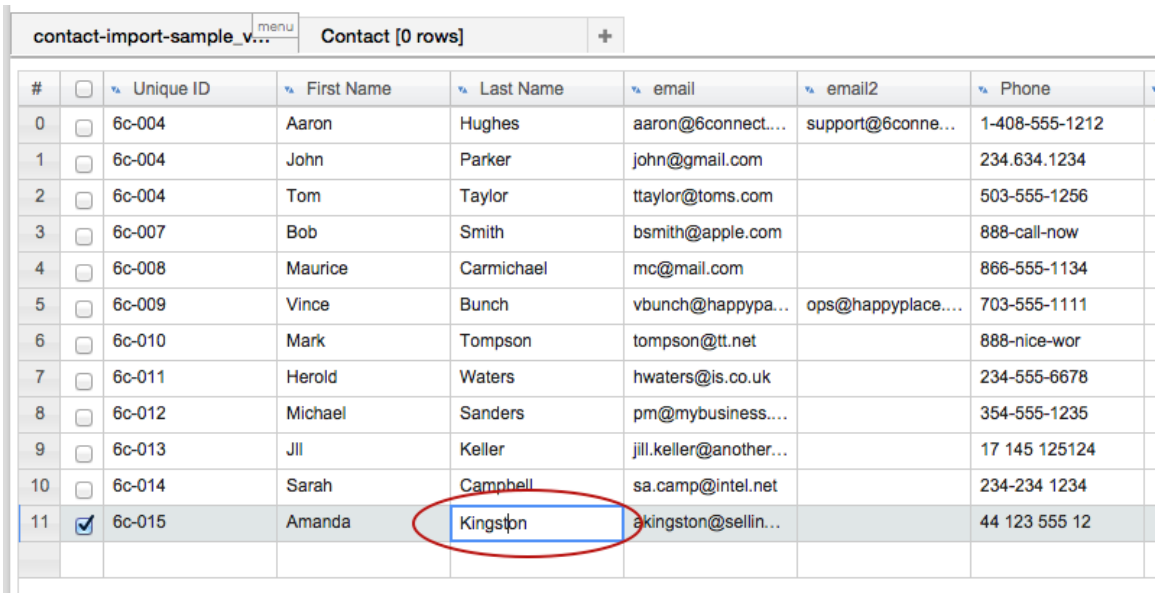
### To hide extraneous column information:

Right click on a header and deselect the check box for the column you wish to hide. In this case, we want to hide "Title".




### To Edit Data in the Resource Importer

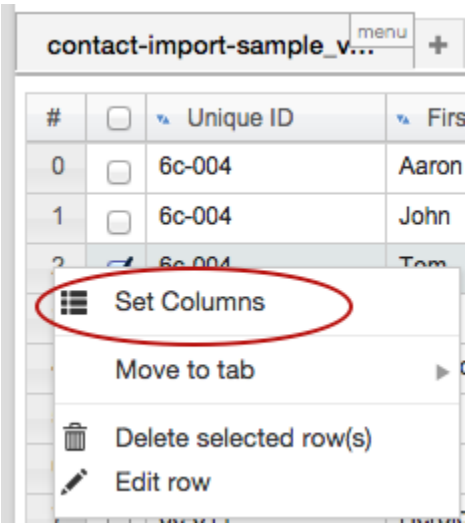
Data in the grids can be edited directly by clicking on the cell(s). In our example, we can see that "Amanda Kingson" should really be "Amanda Kingston". Let's fix that! Click in the cell, type in the edit you wish to make, and then click outside of the cell to exit edit mode. To edit a full row of data, you can right click on the row, select "Edit" row, and make multiple changes in the form box.



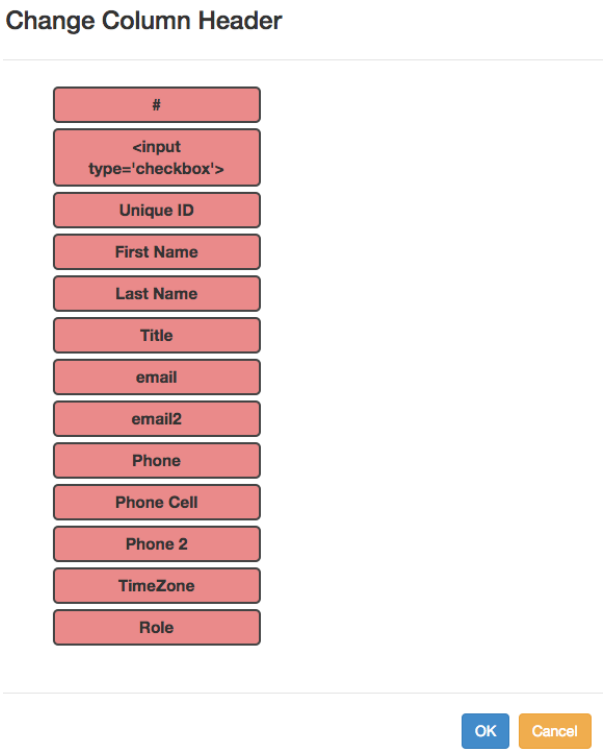

## If a column header is over the wrong data:

If just the header is in the wrong spot (doesn't match the data below it), you can move just the column header in the Resource Importer, without moving the data below it.

1) Right click on a row of the grid to edit and select "Set Columns":




2) In the "Change Column Header" dialog box, drag and drop the column header(s) into the desired order. Remember, this only moves the headers, not the data below them! Then, hit "OK".




## If your .csv data is missing a data column needed for the Section grid:

In our case, the .csv data is missing the required "Name" column for the Section grid. Think of the "Name" as the information you would want to search for in Provision. We wouldn't want to search just for "Bob" or "Smith" when looking down a list of names, so under the "Name" column, we need to see the full first and last names, like "Bob Smith".

Currently, our options to fix this are:

1) Edit the .csv directly in your spreadsheet program: (Recommended) Simply revise the .csv to include another column for "Name", and re-open the .csv in the importer. The benefit to this method is your .csv file will be set up as a template for future imports.

Or:

2) In the Resource Importer, temporarily hide the extra column in the Section Grid: Make the columns between the .csv and the Section Grid match exactly by temporarily hiding the column (in this case, "Name") in the Section Grid, proceed to move the data into the Section grid (see Step 5), then unhide the "Name" column and manually add the data as needed prior to completing the import.

contact-import-sample_v... | Contact [12 rows] | menu | +

| # | Name (required) | Custom ID | First Name | Last Name | Email | 2nd Email | Phone | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | Aaron Hughes | 6c-004 | Aaron | Hughes | aaron@6c... | support@... | 1-408-555... | 1- |
| 1 | Amanda Kingston | 6c-015 | Amanda | Kingston | akingston... | | 44 123 55... | |
| 2 | Bob Smith | 6c-007 | Bob | Smith | bsmith@a... | | 888-call-now | |
| 3 | Herold Waters | 6c-011 | Herold | Waters | hwaters@i... | | 234-555-6... | |
| 4 | Jill Keller | 6c-013 | Jll | Keller | jill.keller@... | | 17 145 12... | |
| 5 | John Parker | 6c-004 | John | Parker | john@gm... | | 234.634.1... | |
| 6 | Mark Tompson | 6c-010 | Mark | Tompson | tompson... | | 888-nice-... | |
| 7 | | 6c-008 | Maurice | Carmichael | mc@mail.... | | 866-555-1... | |
| 8 | | 6c-012 | Michael | Sanders | pm@myb... | | 354-555-1... | |
| 9 | | 6c-014 | Sarah | Campbell | sa.camp... | | 234-234 1... | |
| 10 | | 6c-004 | Tom | Taylor | ttaylor@to... | | 503-555-1... | |
| 11 | | 6c-009 | Vince | Bunch | vbunch@... | ops@hap... | 703-555-1... | |

When edits and adjustments are complete, move to Step 5 - Drag rows to the Section Grid

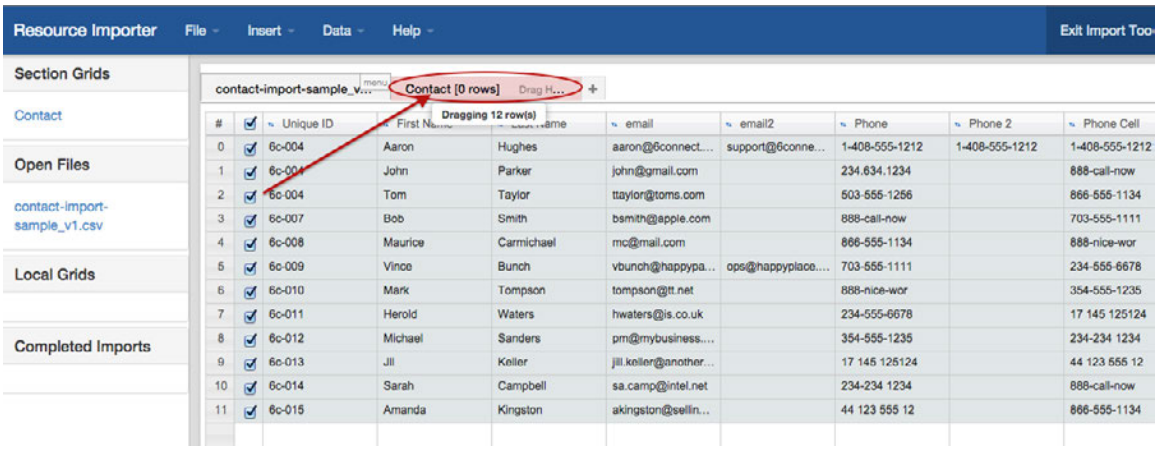
# Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 5

## Importing Resources

### Step 5: Drag rows from the .csv Grid to the Section Grid

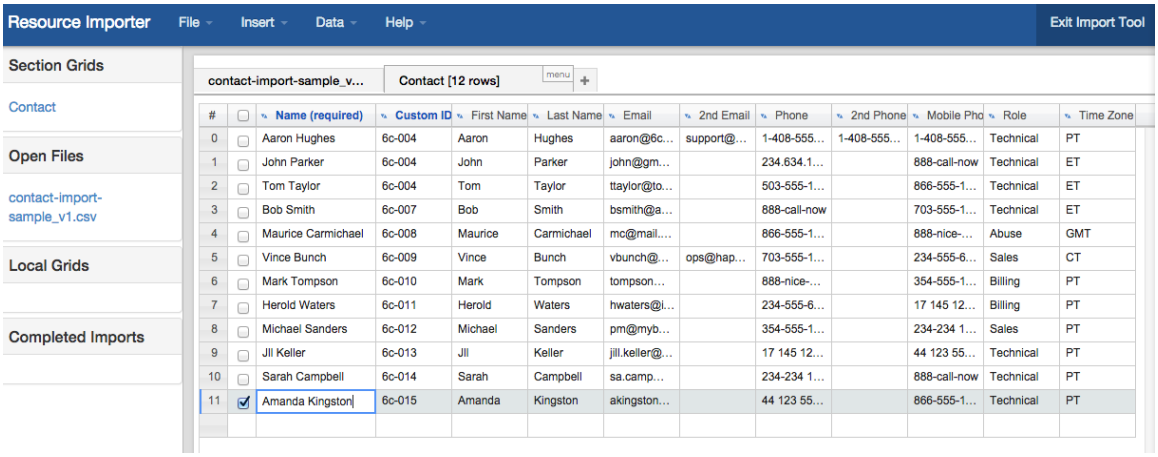
Once you have set the columns to match exactly between the .csv Grid and the Section grid, it's time to pull in the data from one to the other.

Simply click the checkboxes for the rows you wish to import (or use the "Select all" checkbox at the top), click anywhere on the row, and drag & drop onto the Section Grid tab ("Contact"). The tool will tell you how many rows you are moving as you drag them.




Click on the "Contact" tab when you are done, and you will now see your data in there, instead of the original .csv.

If you had to hide columns in the Section Grid prior to moving the .csv data, verify that all columns are visible and the required data filled in. In this case, we filled in the "Name" Column that was missing in the original .csv.



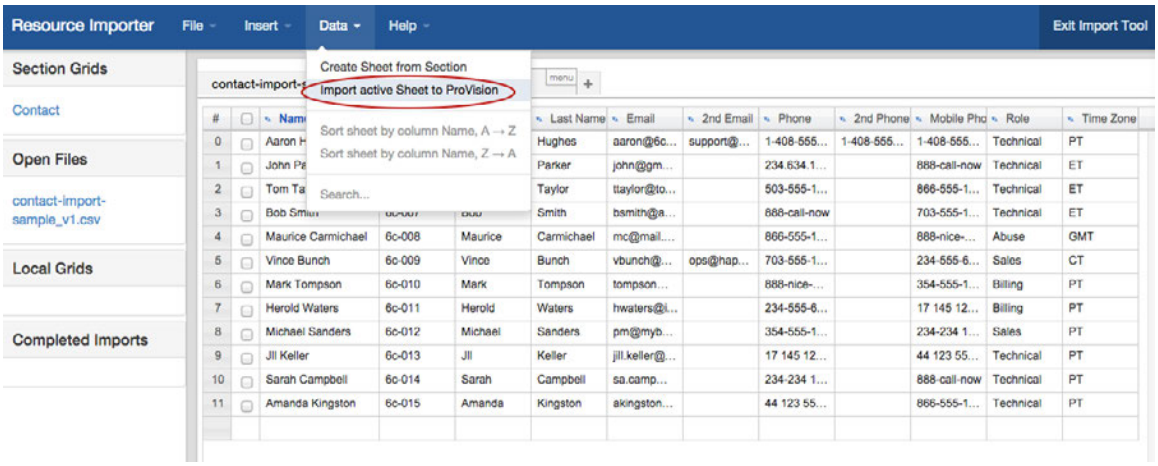

After moving your data into the Section grid, proceed to Step 6 - Importing into ProVision.

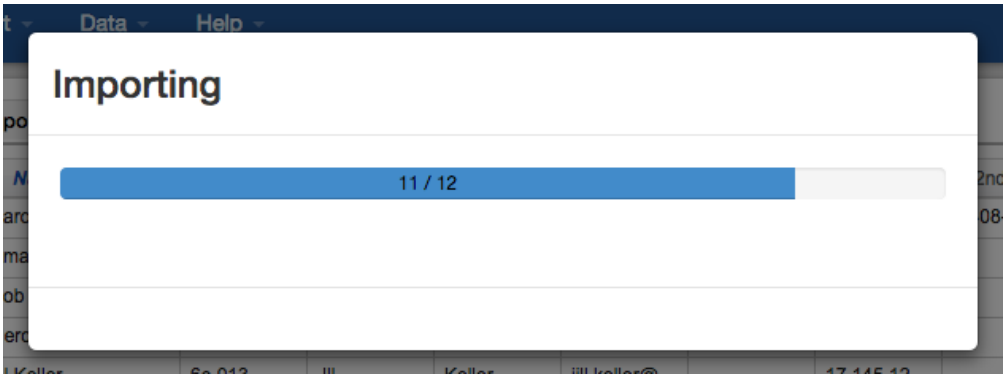
# Resource Importer Walkthrough - Step 6

## Importing Resources

### Step 6: Import into ProVision

When all of the data is under the Section Grid tab, and any required field data filled in, you can import the data into Provision! From the Data menu, select "Import active Sheet into ProVision". You will see an import progress bar. Once complete, you data will be in provision, filled into the Section fields for your chosen Resource.



# Import Sessions

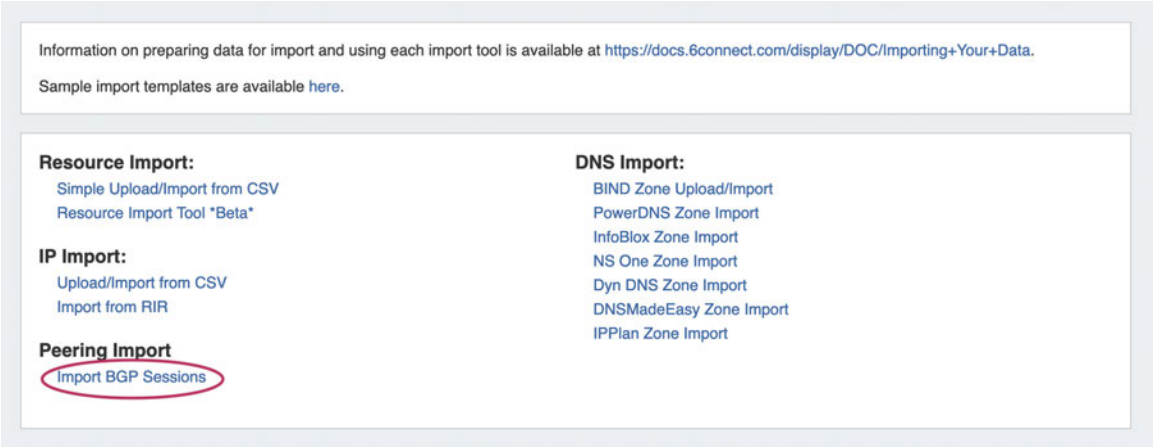
# Importing Sessions


- Importing Sessions
  - Peering Import
    - Load Router Sessions
    - Edit Sessions (Optional)
    - Select Groups and Sessions
  - Additional Information


## Peering Import

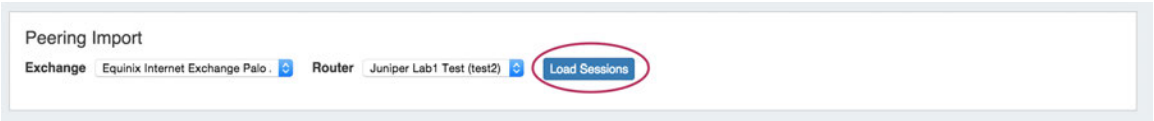
Importing peering sessions requires Admin-level permissions, and is accessible only from the Admin section of ProVision.

From the Admin section of ProVision, navigate to the **Data Import Tab.** Under Peering Import, select **Import BGP Sessions.** This will take you to the Peering Import section of ProVision.




## Load Router Sessions

First, select the desired exchange and router. Routers with Logical Systems information will show up as the router name with the Logical System info in parenthesis (e.g. "Juniper (test)"). Then click "Load Sessions".




Peer Group and Sessions will then display below your selections.

## Edit Sessions (Optional)

The available peer Groups and Sessions will display below your selected exchange and router.

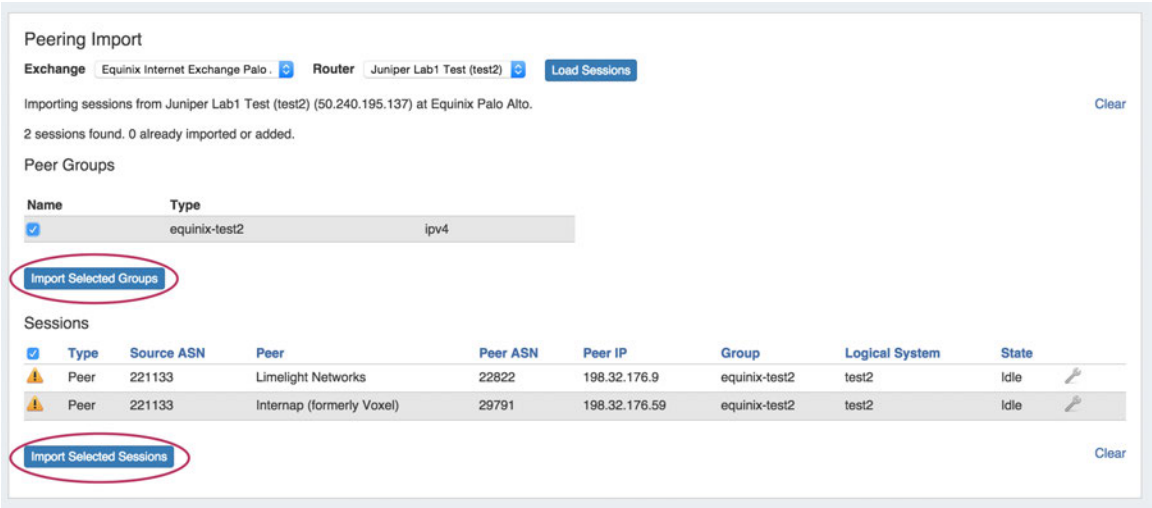
If edits need to be made to the session prior to import, click on the wrench icon to open field edits.

Make the changes to desired field(s), then click "Done" to save your changes and proceed to importing.

## Select Groups and Sessions

Lastly, select the check box next to each Session to import (or the check box at the top to select all sessions) and click "Import Selected Sessions".

Successful imports will then display with a green check mark at the beginning of the row.




Once imported, you can manage and configure your sessions from the Peering Tab.

# Additional Information

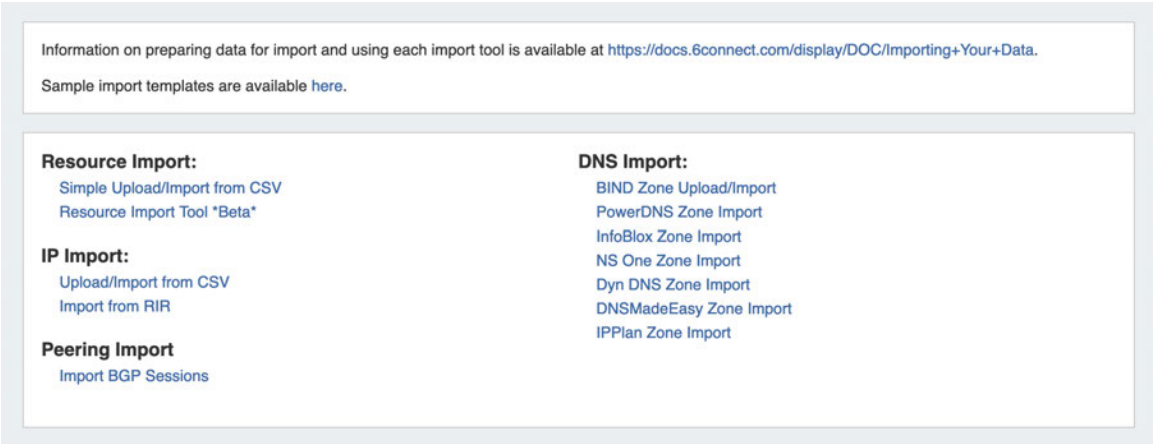
See the following areas for more information on working with Peering tasks:

- Peering
- Peering Exchanges
- Peering Routers
- Peering Sessions

# IP Import from CSV

# Simple Upload / Import from CSV

The Upload / Import from CSV tool is used if you have a simple .csv file with IP block information, such as CIDR, Mask, ASN, RIR, etc. It is accessed from the **Data Import Tab** from the **Admin** section of ProVision.




To import your IP block information, follow the following steps:


- Simple Upload / Import from CSV
  - Methodology
  - Before you Begin: Prepare your Data for Import
  - Import Your Data
    - Step 1: Create a new IP Import Job
    - Step 2: Define Columns
    - Step 2.5: Missing References
    - Step 3: Reviewing Data
    - Step 4: Execute Import
    - Post Import Followup
  - Additional Information


## Methodology

The Import from CSV tool will create Top-Level Aggregates and place blocks under those aggregates based on the following method:

First, the importer will parse through the provided data, order all blocks from largest to smallest, then attempt to split the largest block out of an existing block matching the IP space and RIR. If that fails (no larger block exists), then that block is added in the system as its own Top-Level-Aggregate. Subsequent blocks will undergo the same process.

This method ensures that your list of IP blocks does not need to be organized in any particular order.

> If your import includes a large number of small blocks (/30s, /32s), be sure you've included at least one large block which encompasses them (/24, /22). This will ensure that the smaller blocks are neatly organized under the larger block, rather than imported as their own Top-Level Aggregates.

## Before you Begin: Prepare your Data for Import

The Upload / Import from CSV tool requires only a .csv file for importing.

Be sure to review "Preparing Data for Import" on the Importing your Data page before you begin. Verify that your .csv is correctly parsed and cleanly formatted with your IP block information (using your choice of the available field list shown below), and is UTF-8 encoded for best results.

Common normalization steps required for ProVision IP imports include:

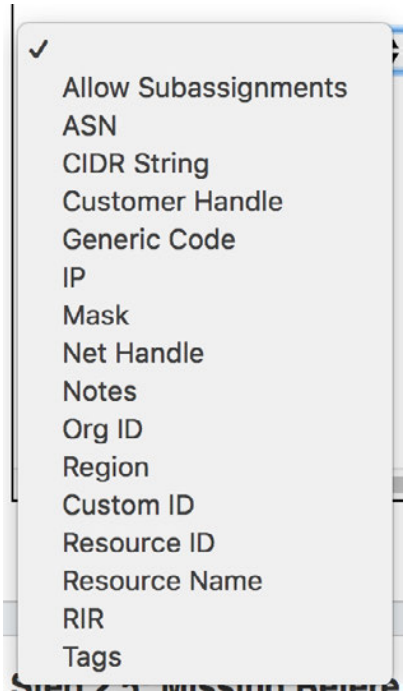
- Remove any empty rows in the data range

- Remove any empty columns in the data range
- Remove stray data from inside and outside the data range, such as:
    - notes, comments, and placeholder text as field values, when not set as their own data column
    - nested secondary information located in additional rows under a primary record
- Ensure proper data formatting
    - Check for data formatting errors - a common issue is leading zeros being dropped from a ZIP field when a file is opened. Re-specify format as needed.
    - Ensure each field has consistent formatting for values

Data Encoding Format

To ensure correct importing of any special characters, make sure to use UTF-8 encoding for your CSV file!

This tool supports the following fields:




Required Fields

For IP Import from .csv, the following fields are REQUIRED:

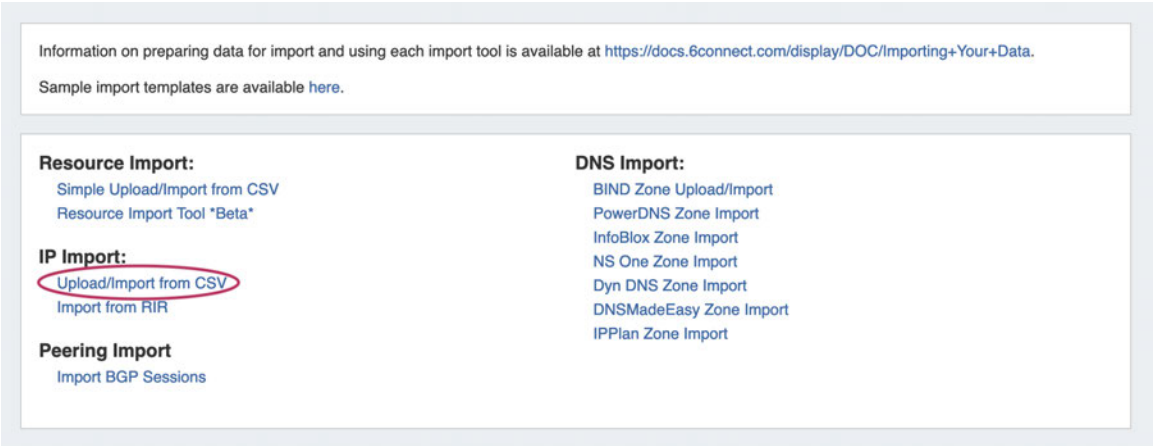
- CIDR String OR both IP and Mask
- RIR OR a selected default RIR

All other fields are optional.

# Import Your Data

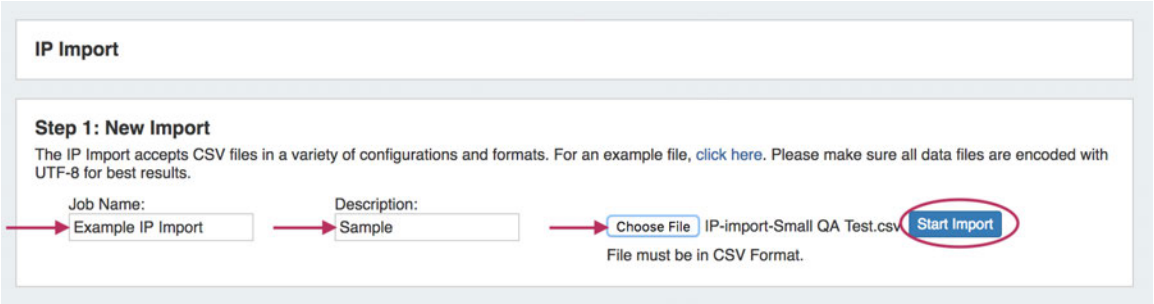
## Step 1: Create a new IP Import Job

Navigate to the **Data Import** Tab from the **Admin** button. Select "Upload / Import from CSV" under "IP Import".




Create a Job Name and Description for the import. This is especially useful to keep track of progress in cases the data arrives from multiple sources, or will require multiple stages of manual review.

Select the .csv file that you prepared above by selecting the "Choose File" button, and browsing to the correct file location. Then hit "Start Import".

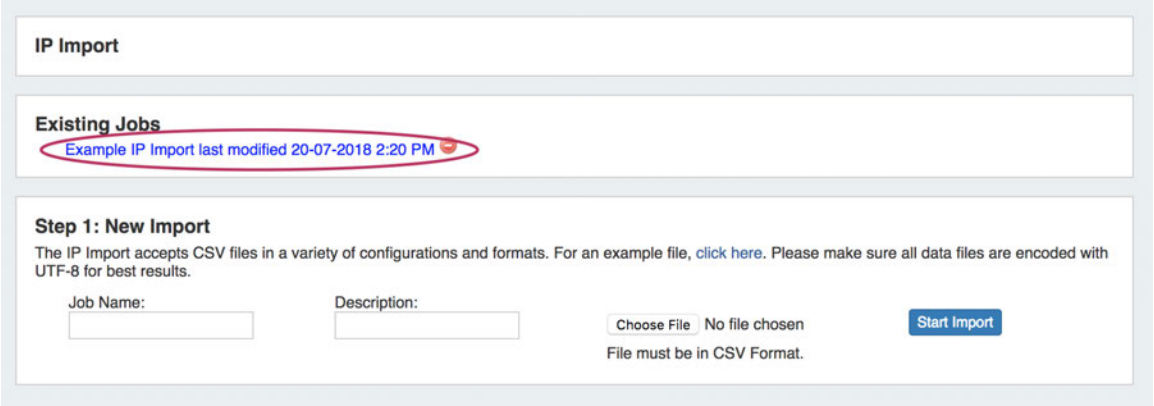



Working with Large or Multiple Data Sets

Although you cannot add new files to an existing job, for jobs with multiple sources for data (which may have different formatting), you can simply create separate jobs and descriptions for each source - no need to manually combine the data into one file before importing. The Import tool's mapping and editing functions will allow for the data to be reconciled in ProVision.

For large data sets where multiple stages of manual review might be needed, you can create a new job using the same set of data files in order to work in parallel on a different portion of the data.

After importing, the new job will appear under the "Existing Jobs" section. To continue working with this job, select it from the list (by clicking on the link) and the next step will appear on the page.

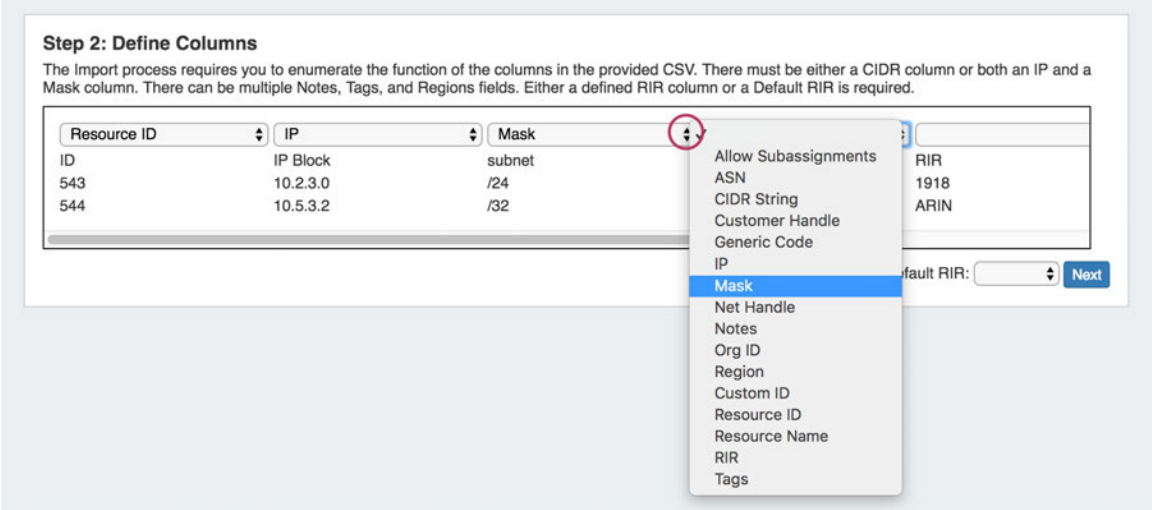



## Step 2: Define Columns

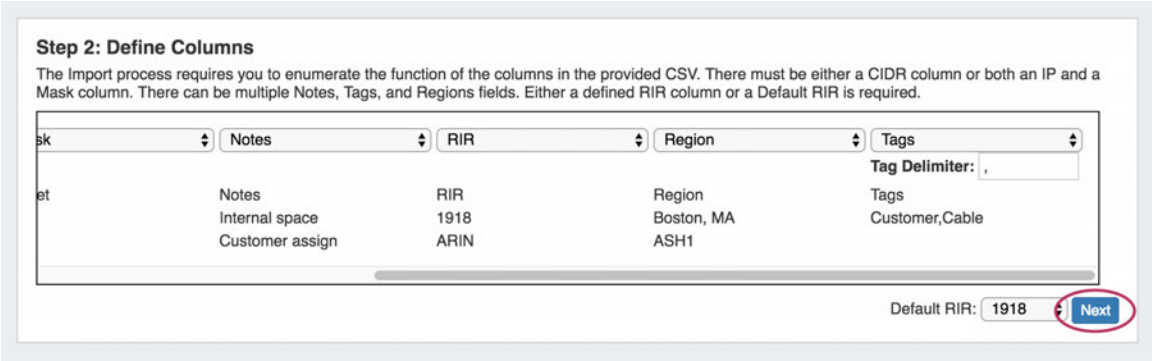
Using the dropdown menu above each data field, select the appropriate definition for each of the imported columns.

- **CIDR** or **IP/Mask** fields must be provided
- **Notes, Tags,** and **Regions** may have multiple columns associated with the data.
- If you do not have a defined **RIR** column, you must select a default RIR to associated the blocks to.

Other columns which do not apply under the available definitions should be left as blank, and will be skipped during the upload process.




Make sure that you have defined all desired fields by using the scroll bar below your data to view additional columns.




When completed, hit "Next".

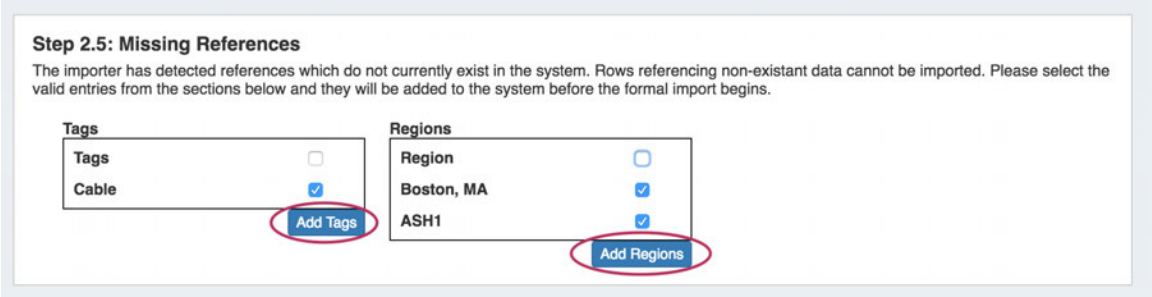
## Step 2.5: Missing References

If references exist in your data that do not currently exist in ProVision (such as new tags or resources) the import tool will alert you to the missing references, and give you the option to create those references in ProVision. If you wish to add these elements, select the checkboxes next to the element and click the "Add (Element name)" button below.

Header Rows

If your .csv has a header row as the first line, that row may give information that produces a missing reference notice - such as "Tag", "Region", "Block", and so forth.

If this is the case, simply uncheck that item and add only the desired references.




In this example, we get a notification that we are missing a tag named "Tags". However, we know by looking at our data that is simply an item that was part of the header line in the .csv, so we want to bypass this step.

## Step 3: Reviewing Data

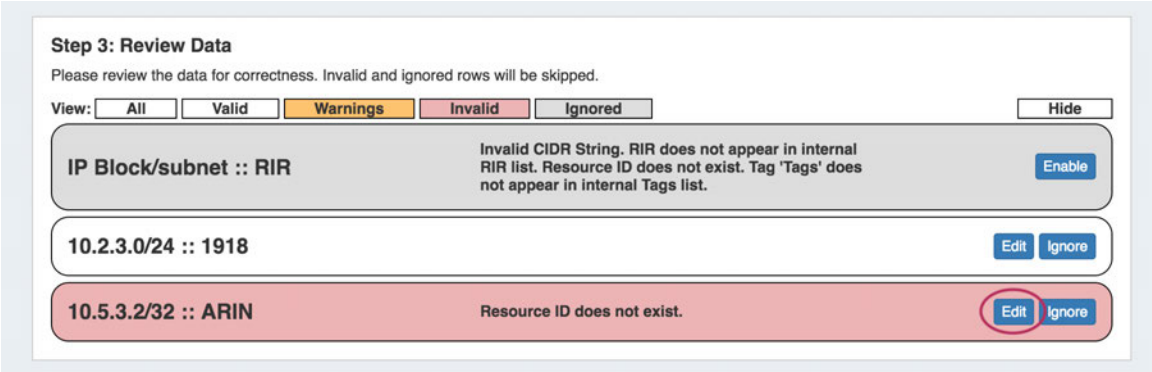
After supplying the file and defining columns, a review step is provided. Records with errors will show as color coded, and can be filtered to be viewed by All, Valid, Warnings, Invalid, or Ignored.

From here, the records can be edited or ignored. Select "Ignore" for records that you do not wish to import at this time. Records that are Ignored or Invalid will automatically be skipped.

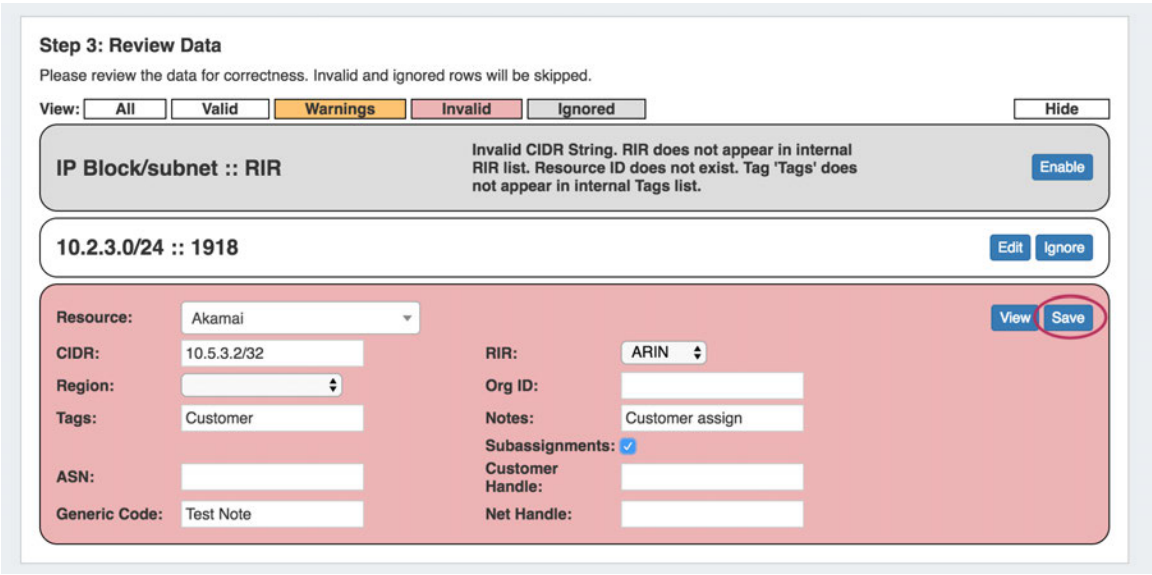
Header Rows

If your .csv has a header row as the first line, that row will be shown as the first record in review data as well. Simply click "Ignore" on the first record to disregard the row.

If warnings or invalid entries are found, you may edit the data by clicking the "Edit" button.

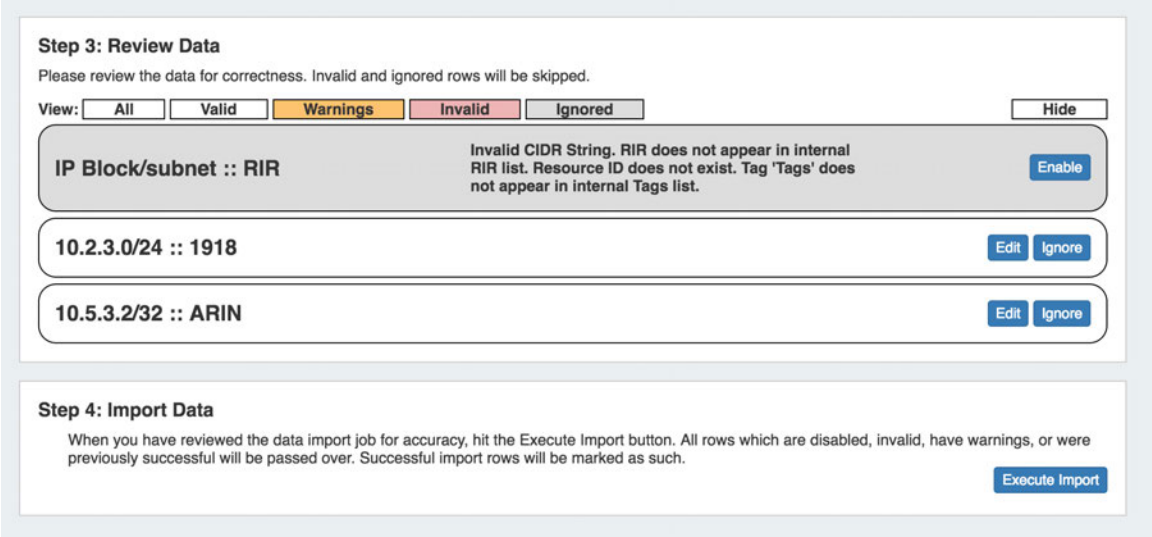



Here you can edit the invalid field, or add /change information for any other available field.



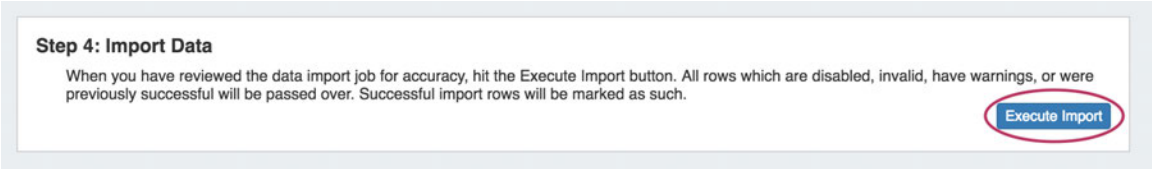
After editing, hit "Save". If the edits are valid, the background color for the data row will be white.

Continue reviewing and editing data as desired. When done, proceed to Step 4.

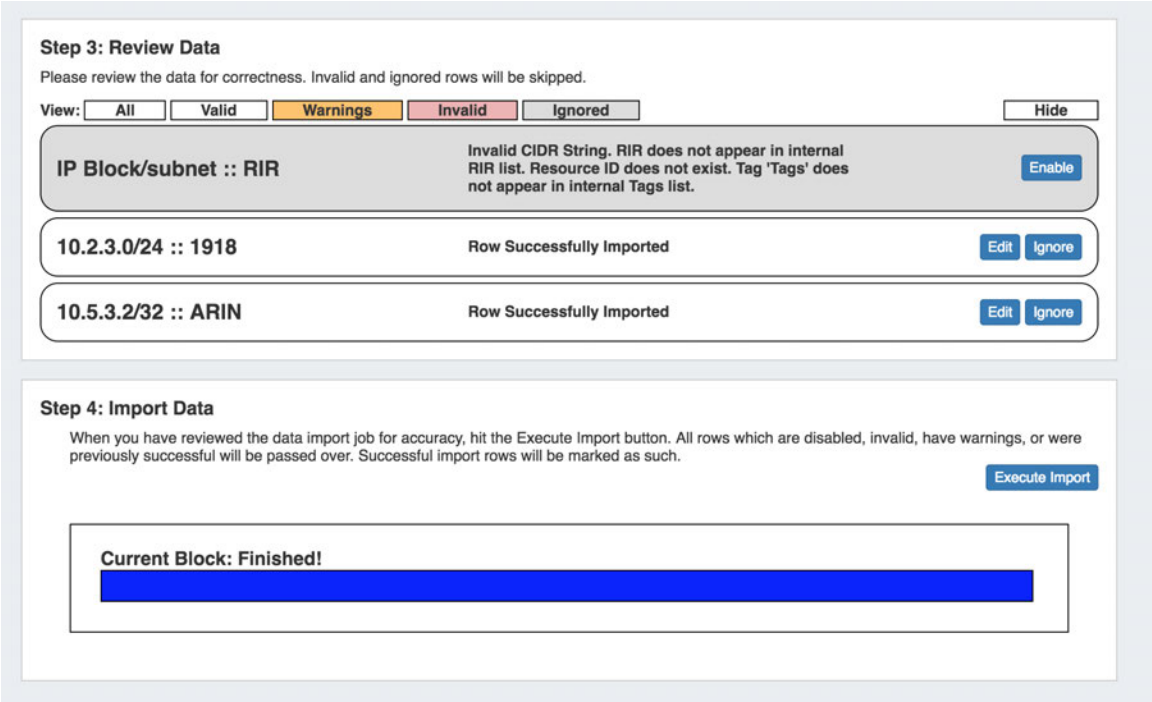



## Step 4: Execute Import

When the review step is completed, hit the "Execute Import" button. A progress bar will appear to show progress and note errors if they occur.




When the bar reaches 100%, the import is complete. The Data Review section will show which data rows were successfully imported.

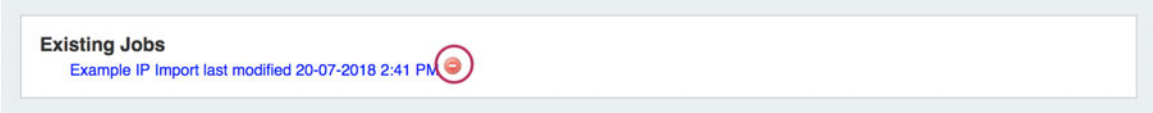



## Post Import Followup

After the Import is complete, there are a few followup options for working with the import job or imported blocks. We recommend:

- Reviewing the imported blocks in the IPAM Tab, adding additional IPAM data, custom metadata, rules, or subassignments. See Working with IP Blocks and Working with IP Rules.
- If the IP Import was only partially successful or requires additional review, you may keep the import job in the "Existing Jobs" list and revise the failed / invalid blocks at a later time. Re-running the import from the same job will allow you to re-attempt import on only the previously unsuccessful / ignored / edited blocks - successfully imported and unchanged blocks will not be affected.

If the IP Import was fully successful, and you do not wish to retain the job data, the Import Job may be deleted from the "Existing Jobs" list by clicking the delete icon next to the job name.




Deleting an import job is permanent and non-recoverable!

When working with large or sensitive import jobs, consider performing a backup of your instance before and after the import job as a safeguard.

# Additional Information

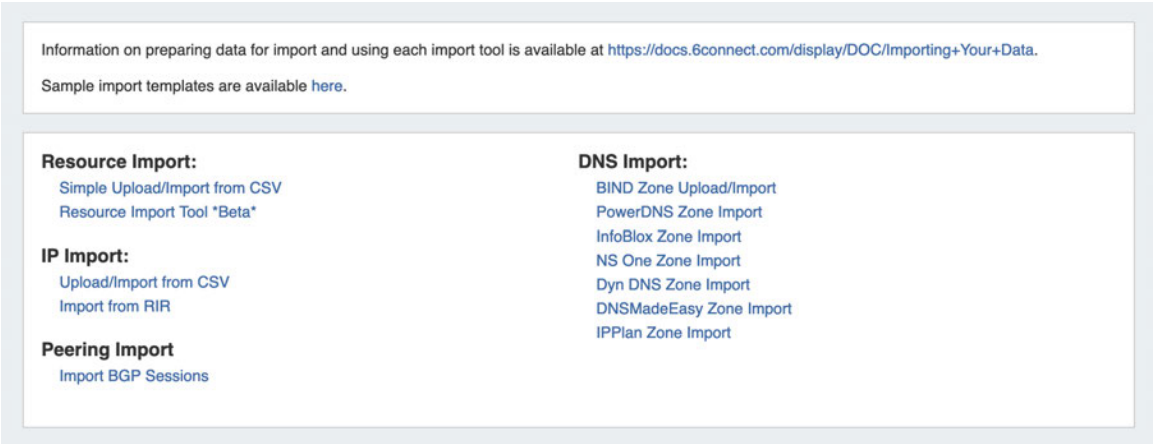
See the following areas for information on working with IPAM / IP Blocks post-import:

- IPAM Tab
- Working with IP Blocks
- Working with IP Rules
- IPAM Administration

# Import Aggregate Blocks

# Import Aggregates

Importing blocks from your RIR Source IP is available from the **Data Import Tab** in the Admin area of ProVision. This feature uses the RIR Org ID to identify a Source IP and determine blocks assigned to your organization that are available for import.

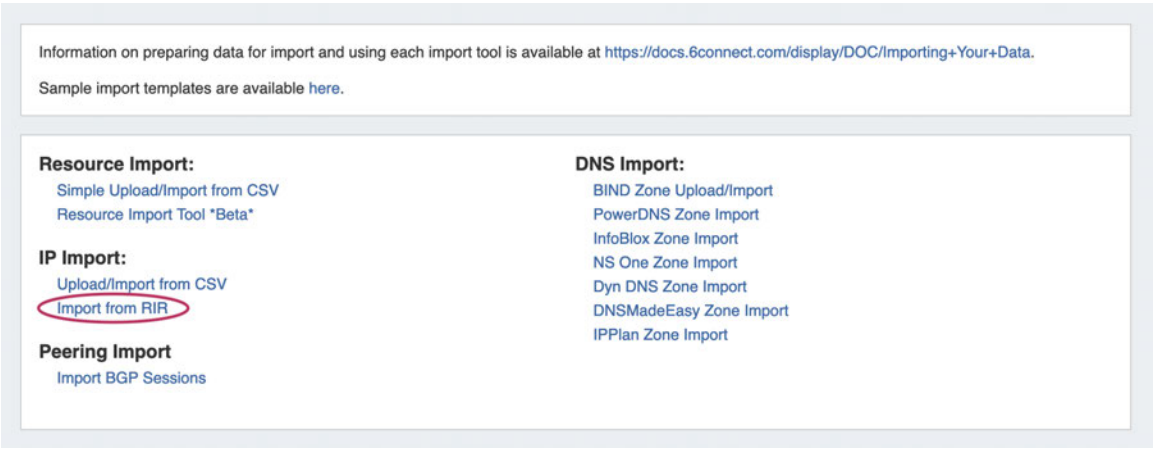




- Import Aggregates
  - Import from RIR
    - Step 1: Lookup from Source IP
    - Step 2: Import your aggregate blocks
    - Step 3: Customizing Block Data
  - Additional Information

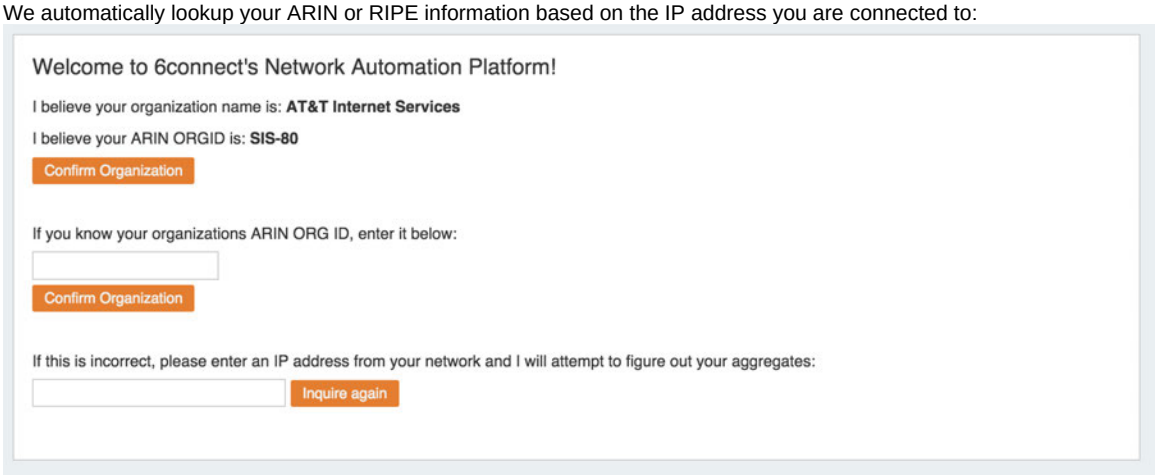

## Import from RIR

From the **Data Import Tab,** select "Import from RIR" under "IP Import".




### Step 1: Lookup from Source IP

We automatically lookup your ARIN or RIPE information based on the IP address you are connected to:

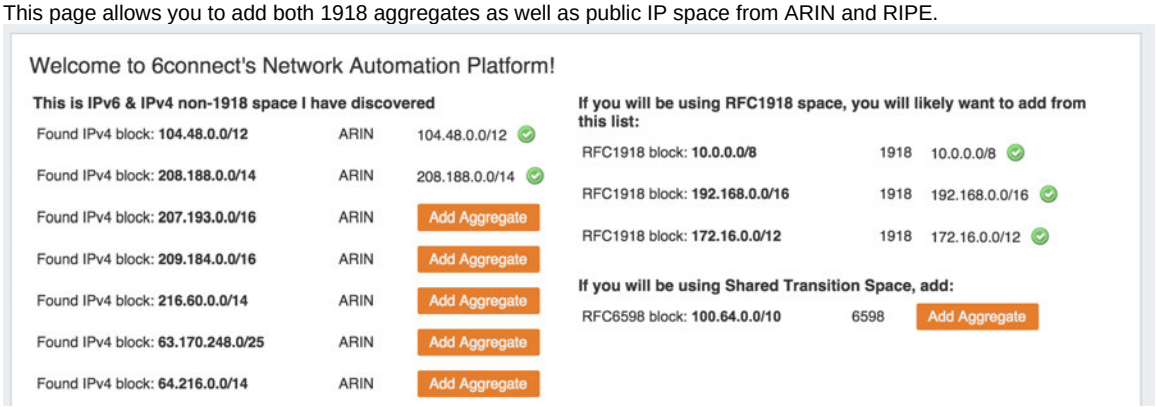



If you have another source IP that you would like to use for the lookup function, you can edit the IP and click on the "Inquire Again" button.
If the organization name and ORGID are correct, then click on the "Confirm" button to go to the next screen.

## Step 2: Import your aggregate blocks

Once we have identified the blocks assigned to your company, you can import the aggregates by pressing the "Add Aggregate" buttons.

This page allows you to add both 1918 aggregates as well as public IP space from ARIN and RIPE.




When done adding aggregates, hit the "Continue to ProVision" button at the bottom of the page.

You will be redirected to the **IPAM** tab to manage the aggregates as desired.

## Step 3: Customizing Block Data

With your aggregates added, you are now ready to customize the tool and import additional data! From here, you can manage your aggregates under the **IPAM** tab, edit administration functions under **IPAM Admin**, or import resources using the Resource Import Tool.

# Additional Information

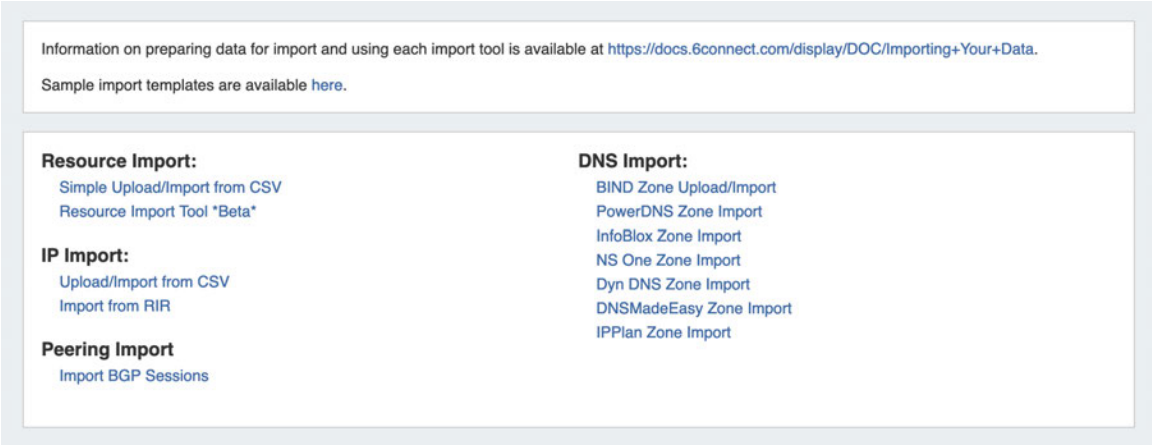
See the following areas for information on working with IPAM / IP Blocks post-import:

- IPAM Tab
- Working with IP Blocks
- Working with IP Rules
- IPAM Administration

# Import DNS Zones

# Importing DNS Zones

ProVision offers multiple DNS zone import options, available under the Data Import tab in the the Admin section of ProVision.




# DNS Import Options

ProVision offers various DNS zone import options available under the **Data Import** tab in the the Admin section of ProVision:

**BIND Zone Import**

- Imports using the named.conf configuration file tied to the zones you are uploading, a .zip or .tar file of the zones themselves, and an optional .csv file mapping zones to customers.

**PowerDNS Zone Import**

- Option is available after configuring a PowerDNS server with a MySQL backend. Connects to the selected server and imports all zones.

**InfoBlox Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using a provided Host, Username, and Password. The InfoBlox import pulls all zones on the InfoBlox LOCAL grid and adds them to a designated Group. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**NS One Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using a NS One API Key. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**Dyn DNS Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using a Dyn DNS Customer Name, Username, and Password. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**DNSMadeEasy Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using a DNSMadeEasy API Key and API Secret. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

**IPPlan Zone Import**

- Imports DNS zones using IPPlan MySQL database options. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.

Continue to the following sections for details on performing each import method:

- BIND DNS Zone Upload / Import
- PowerDNS Zone Import
- InfoBlox Zone Import
- NS One Zone Import
- Dyn DNS Zone Import
- DNSMadeEasy Zone Import
- IPPlan Zone Import

# BIND DNS Zone Upload / Import

# BIND DNS Zone Import

The BIND DNS Zone Upload / Import tool uses the named.conf configuration file tied to the zones you are uploading, a .zip or .tar file of the zones themselves, and an optional .csv file mapping zones to customers. The following steps are used when importing BIND DNS zones:


- BIND DNS Zone Import
  - Preparing your DNS Zones for Import
  - Importing your DNS Zones (BIND)
    - Video Walkthrough
    - Step 1: Create a new DNS Import Job
    - Step 2: Map Data Columns (Optional)
    - Step 3: Reviewing Data
    - Step 4: Execute Import


## Preparing your DNS Zones for Import

If your zone data is currently in BIND format - this is very straightforward.

There are three components for the upload process:

**1) The named.conf configuration file tied to the zones you are uploading (required)**

This tells the importer the Zone Name and where the zone file is written. It could be as simple as a multi-line file:

**Simple DNS Config File**

```
zone "my-zone.com" { type master; file "my-zone.com.zone"; };
zone "my-other-zone.com" { type master; file "my-other-zone.com.zone"; };
zone "my-third-zone.com" { type master; file "my-third-zone.com.zone"; };
```

or could be more complex like this file structure directory:

**Complex DNS Config File**

```
zone "my-zone.com" { type master; file "/usr/local/zones/my-zone.com.zone"; };
zone "my-other-zone.com" { type master; file "/usr/local/zones/more/my-other-zone.com.zone"; };
zone "my-third-zone.com" { type master; file "/usr/local/zones/more/even more/my-third-zone.com.zone"; };
```

This configuration file can be taken directly from the DNS server, and can be in either ISC BIND or NSD format. The system auto-detects which one is being supplied.

For a sample Simple Config: conf.conf

**2) A ZIP or TAR file of the DNS zones themselves (required)**

This is as it sounds - a file archive where we can find the zones and it should match the configuration file uploaded in Step 1.

Zone Order

These zone files can be in any order, or in sub-directories, so long as the configuration file (Step 1) correctly points to them

For a sample simple ZIP: zones.zip

**3) Match CSV for assigning DNS Zones to Resources (optional)**

This file allows the administrator to "assign" zone files to a given Resource. If you have Imported a group of Resources, they have Resource IDs associated with them. You can then import DNS zones and assign them to those Resource IDs. When complete, you will be able to pull up the Resource Record and see the DNS Zones associated to that Resource ID.

**Sample CSV File**

```
my-zone.com,test-01,fun stuff, 174.23.14.4, 174.23.14.9
my-otherzone.com,test-02,great stuff, dns1.dns.net, dns2.dns.net
even-reverse-zones.arpa,test-03,amazing stuff
```

Note the columns are the "Zone Name", the "Resource ID", "Notes", "Master Server", "Slave Server"

Importing DNS Server Linkages

When importing zones, you can use the "Master Server" and "Slave Server" columns to assign zones to specified DNS Servers. Please note that the IP address or FQDN of the DNS Server is supported in this field.
To successfully map to a DNS server, that server must already exist within Provision.

For a sample CSV: config.csv

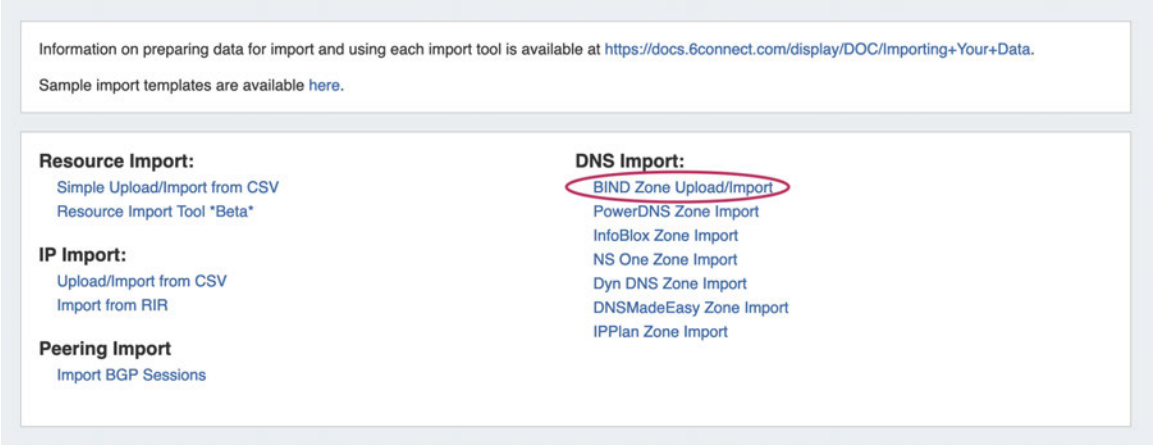
# Importing your DNS Zones (BIND)

## Video Walkthrough

Note: Video walkthrough is from ProVision version 5.1.x - however, import steps and descriptions still apply to current version. Updated videos are in progress!

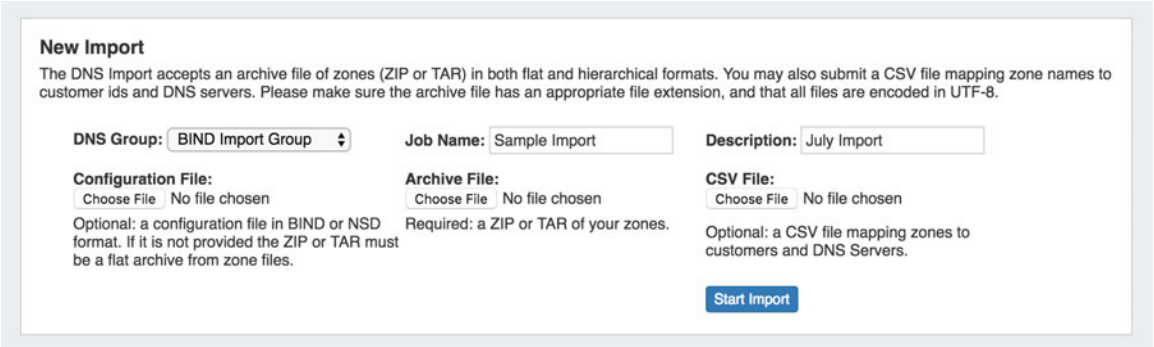
## Step 1: Create a new DNS Import Job

Navigate to the **Data Import** Tab from the **Admin** button to import your data. Select "BIND Zone Upload/Import" under "DNS Import".




Under the "New Import" section, select the DNS Group under which you want the zones to be imported, then create a Job Name and Description for the import. This is especially useful to keep track of progress in cases the data arrives from multiple sources, or will require multiple stages of manual review.

Select the appropriate **Configuration File** (required if the .zip is not a flat archive file), **Archive File** (required), and **CSV File** (optional) that you prepared above by selecting the "Choose File" button(s) under each section, and browsing to the correct file location. Then hit "Start Import".

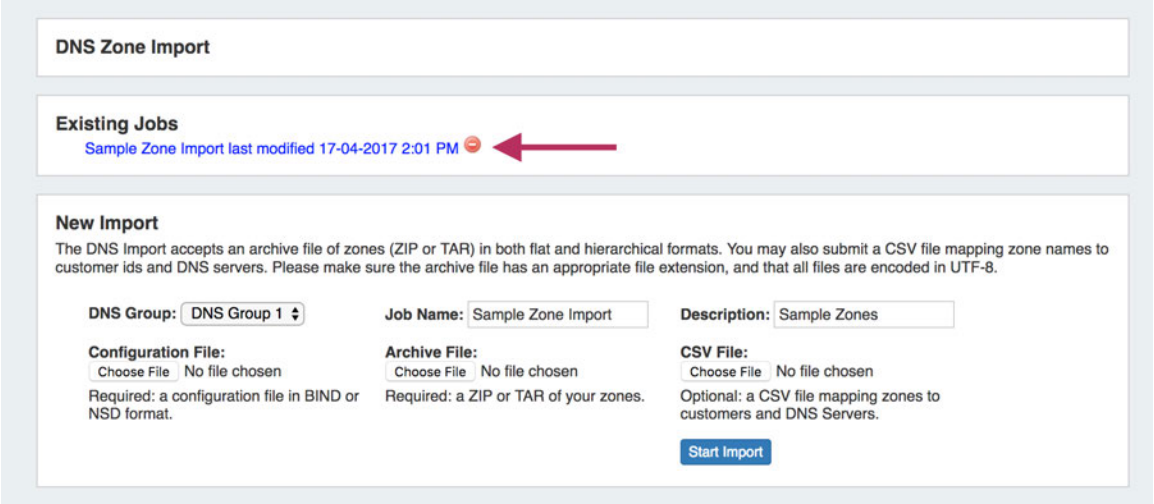



Working with Large or Multiple Data Sets

Although you cannot add new files to an existing job, for jobs with multiple sources for data (which may have different formatting), you can simply create separate jobs and descriptions for each source - no need to manually combine the data into one file before importing. The Import tool's mapping and editing functions will allow for the data to be reconciled in ProVision.

For large data sets where multiple stages of manual review might be needed, you can create a new job using the same set of data files in order to work in parallel on a different portion of the data.

After importing, the new job will appear under the "Existing Jobs" section. To continue working with this job, select it from the list and the next step will appear on the page.




## Step 2: Map Data Columns (Optional)

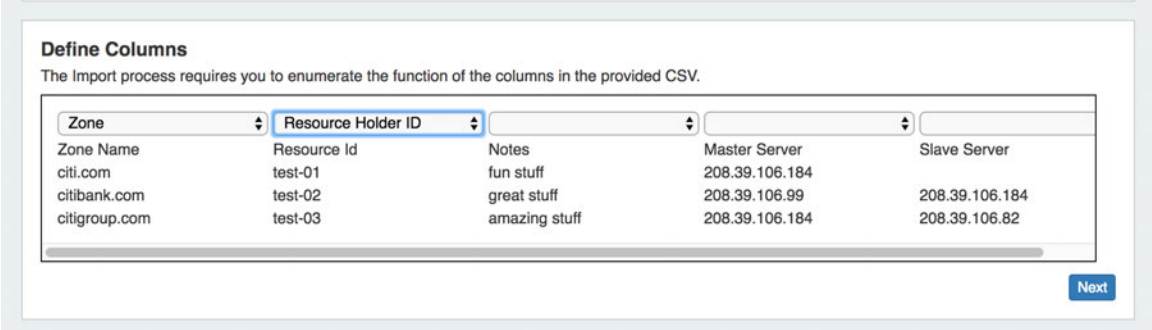
If you chose to load an optional match CSV file to assign DNS Zones to Resource, a mapping step will be available. Otherwise, proceed to Step 3: Reviewing Data.

For DNS imports, two column definitions are available: **Zone** and **Resource Holder ID**. Using the dropdown menu, select the appropriate column for the zone name and Resource Holder (customer) associated with zone. The Resource Holder ID field will be used to set the Parent Resource of the individual zone once imported.

Server associations will not be imported. Instead, the associated server will be the server attached to the selected DNS Group.

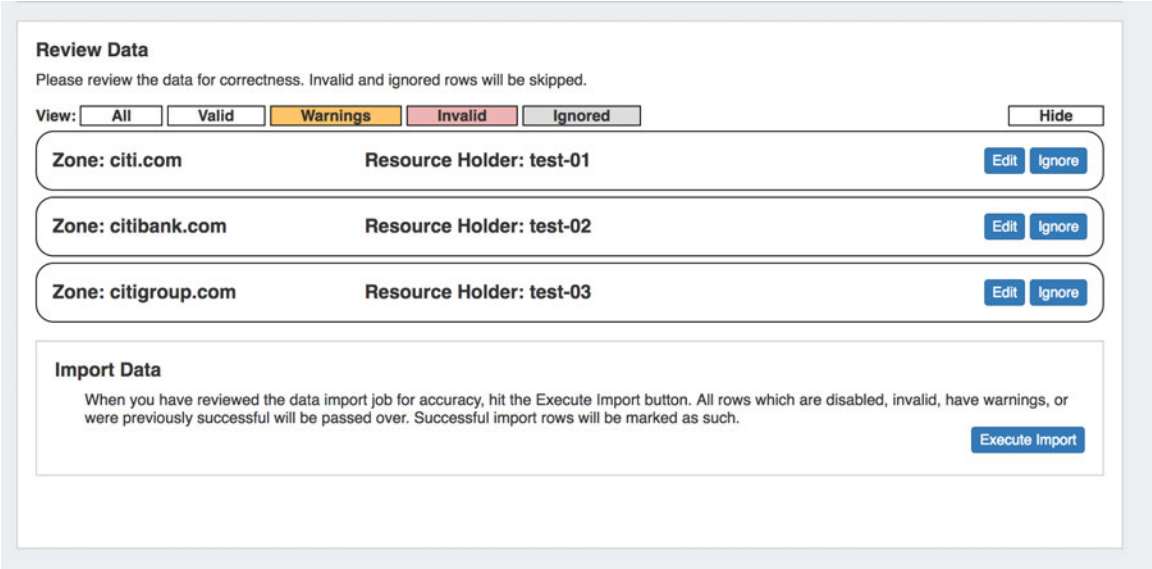
Other columns which do not apply under the available definitions should be left as blank, and will be skipped during the upload process.

When completed, hit "Next".



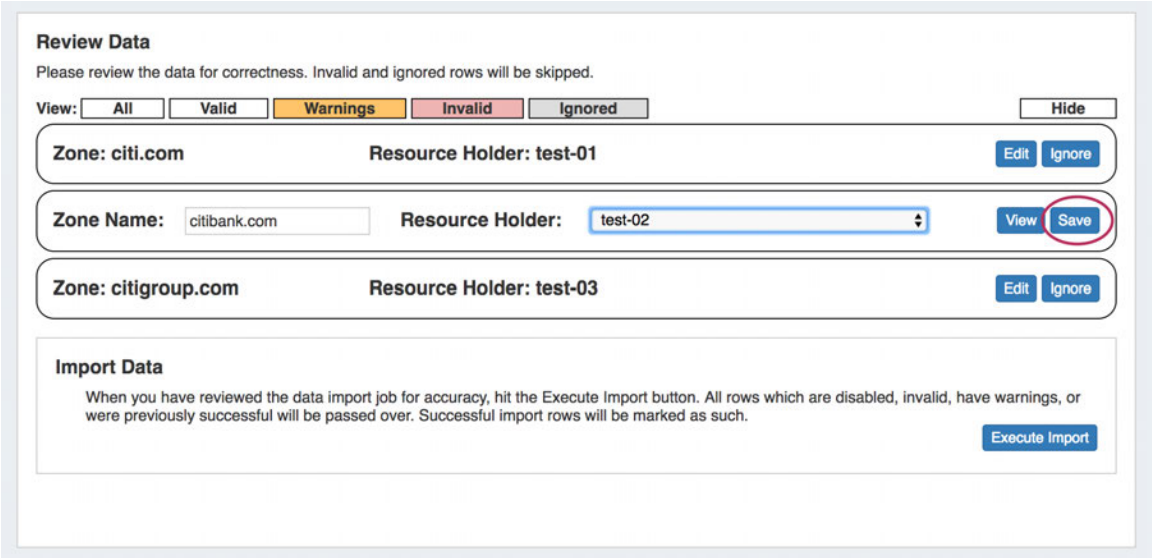

## Step 3: Reviewing Data

After supplying the file set and defining columns (if applicable), a review step is provided. The configuration file is broken into individual jobs, scanned for errors, and shown by row (in batches of 100) to be reviewed. Zones with errors will show as color coded. and can be filtered to be viewed by All, Valid, Warnings, Invalid, or Ignored. From here, the zone can be edited or ignored.



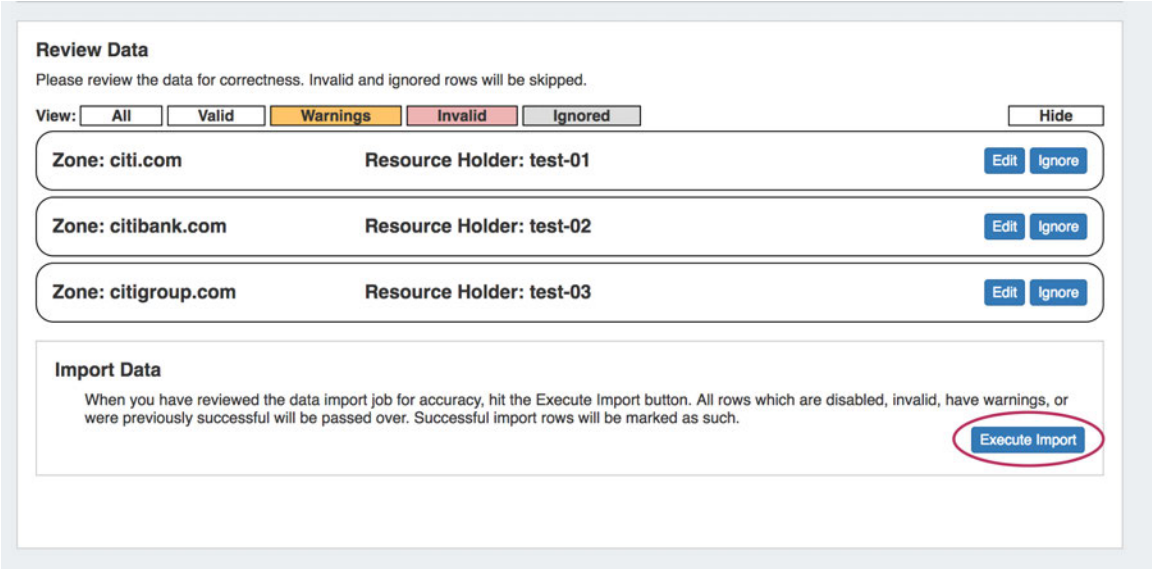

To edit the zone name or select a different Resource Holder, hit "Edit" on the zone record.

After editing, hit "Save", and continue reviewing / editing data as desired.

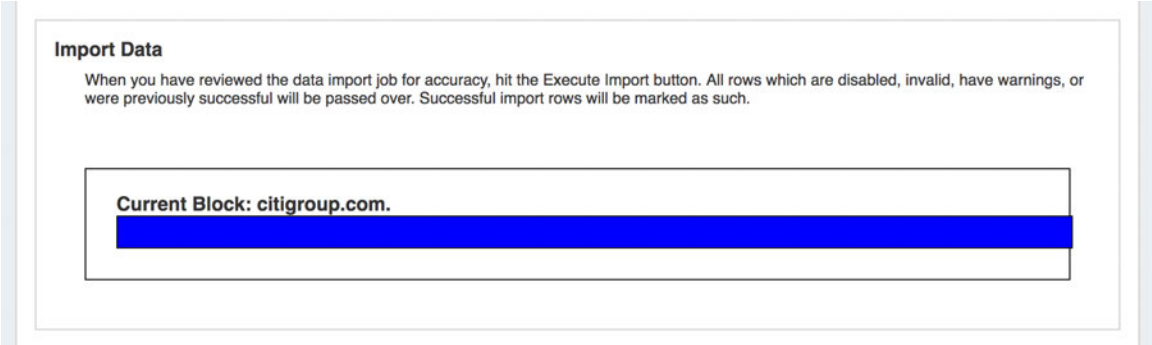


## Step 4: Execute Import

When the review step is completed, hit the "Execute Import" button. A progress bar will appear to show progress and note errors if they occur.




When the bar reaches 100%, the import is complete.



# PowerDNS Zone Import

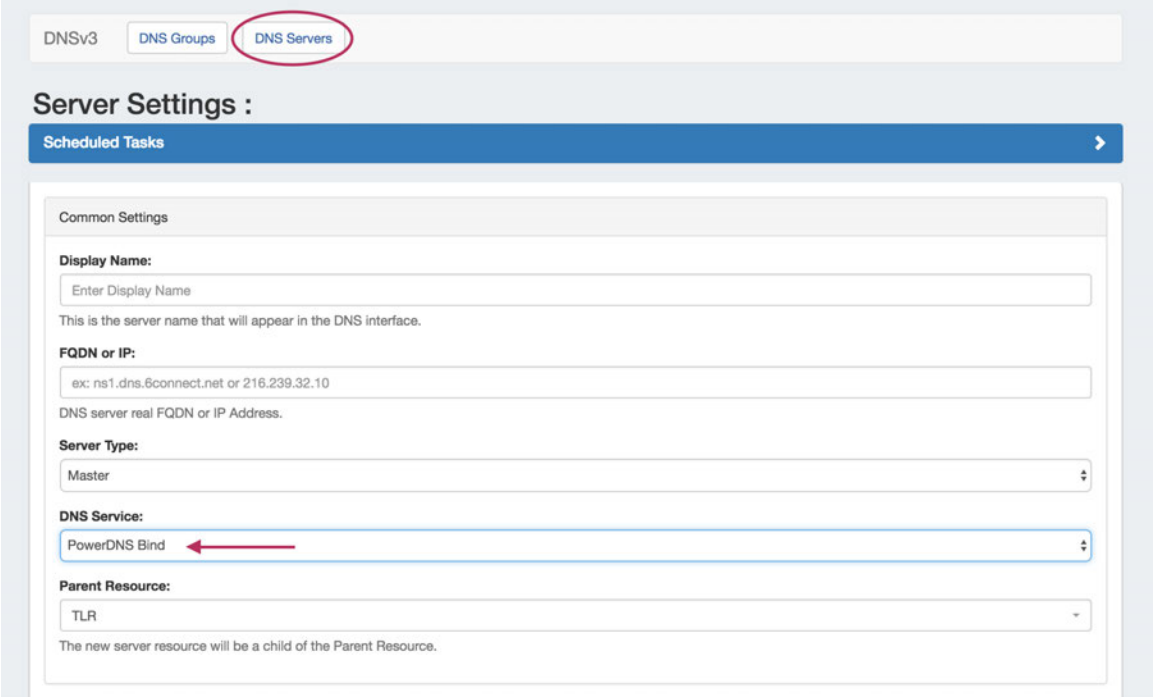
# PowerDNS Zone Import

The PowerDNS Zone Import Option is available after configuring a PowerDNS server with a MySQL backend. It connects to the selected server and imports all zones.


- PowerDNS Zone Import
  - Step 1: Verify PowerDNS server setup
  - Step 2: Import your PowerDNS zones

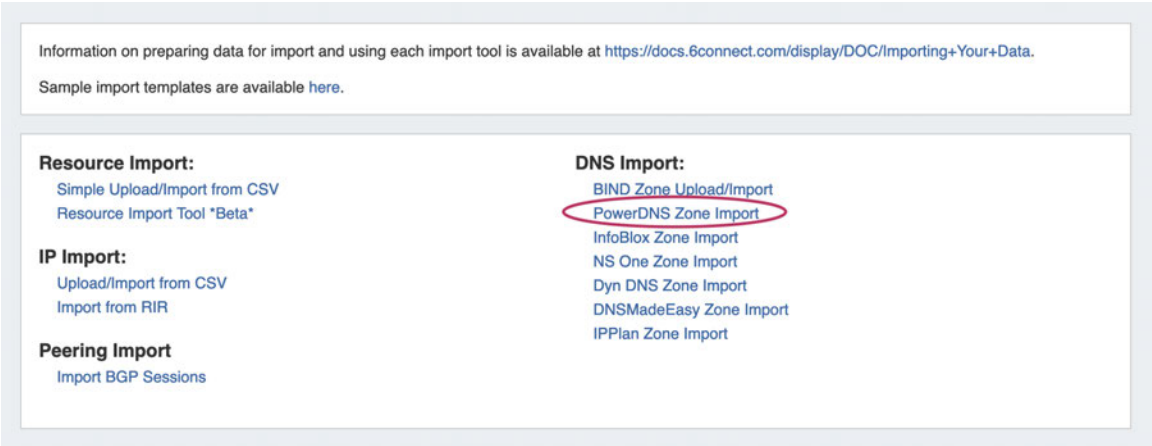

## Step 1: Verify PowerDNS server setup

To import PowerDNS zones, first ensure the PowerDNS server has been set up under the **DNS** Tab, DNS Servers section (see: Working with DNS Servers and configuring a PowerDNS server).




## Step 2: Import your PowerDNS zones

Once server setup has been verified, navigate to the **Data Import** Tab in the Admin section. Select the "Power DNS Zone Import" link.




Then, to import your data simply choose your PowerDNS server and click "Import".

# InfoBlox Zone Import

# InfoBlox Zone Import

The ProVision Data Import InfoBlox option imports InfoBlox DNS zones using a provided Host, Username, and Password. It pulls all zones on the InfoBlox LOCAL grid and adds them to a designated DNS Group. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.


- InfoBlox Zone Import
  - Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup
  - Step 2: Verify InfoBlox server setup
  - Step 3: Import your InfoBlox zones


## Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup

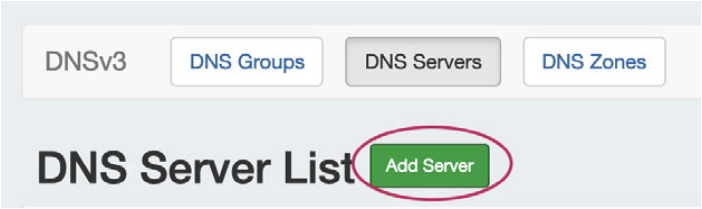
It is recommended to have a DNS Group created in advance with the proper default parameters and records to be inherited by the imported InfoBlox zones and records.

Review the existing DNS Groups in the **DNS** tab, and create a new DNS Group if necessary. See Working with DNS Groups for details on editing or creating DNS Groups.

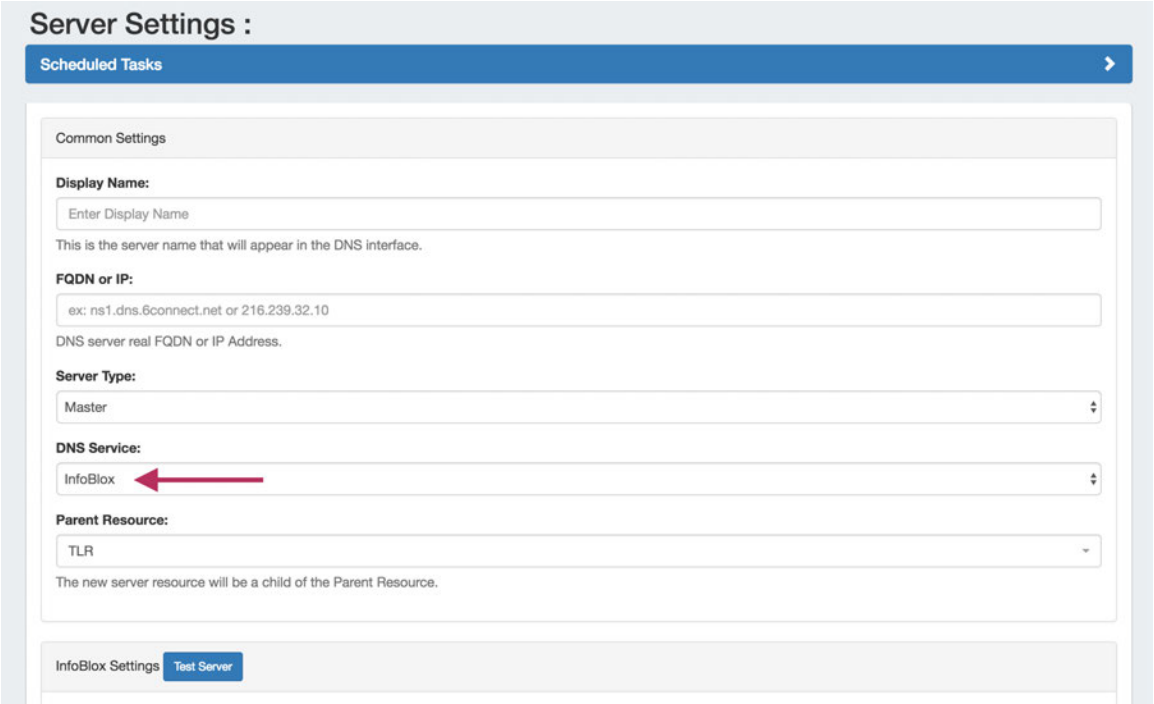
## Step 2: Verify InfoBlox server setup

Although it is not strictly necessary to have the InfoBlox server created in ProVision prior to import, creating or verifying the server at this point gives you an opportunity to test the connection and attach the InfoBlox server to the DNS Group selected in step 1.

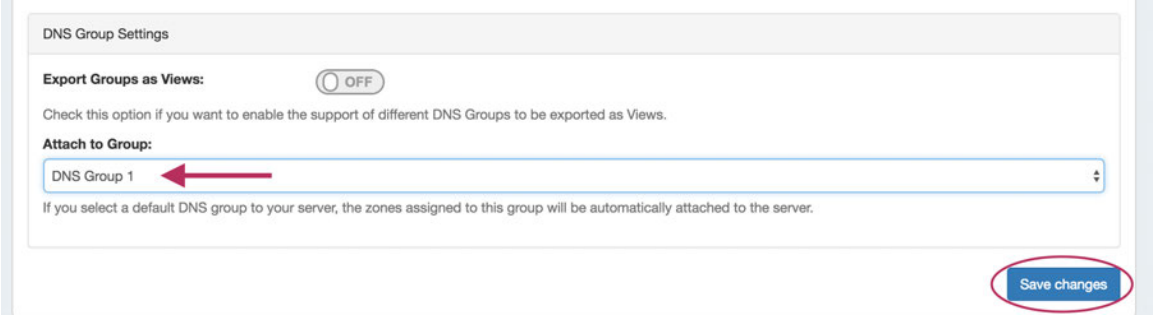
Go to the **DNS** Tab, DNS Servers section, and either verify that the desired server is shown in the server list, or click the "Add Server" button to create a new InfoBlox server.




If creating a new server, ensure that "InfoBlox" is selected for the DNS Service.

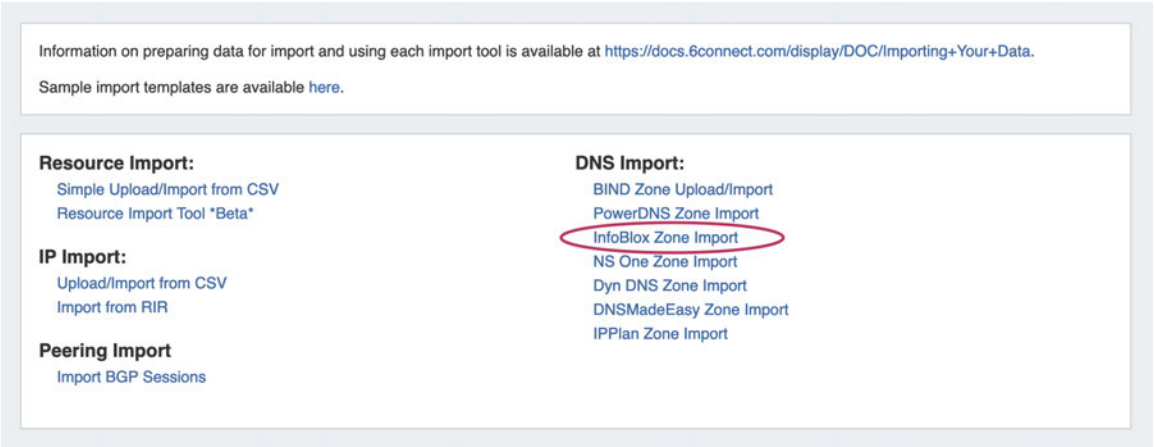



Under the "DNS Group Settings" section of the server detail page, ensure that the DNS Group from step 1 is selected as the server's Attach to Group setting, and click "Save".



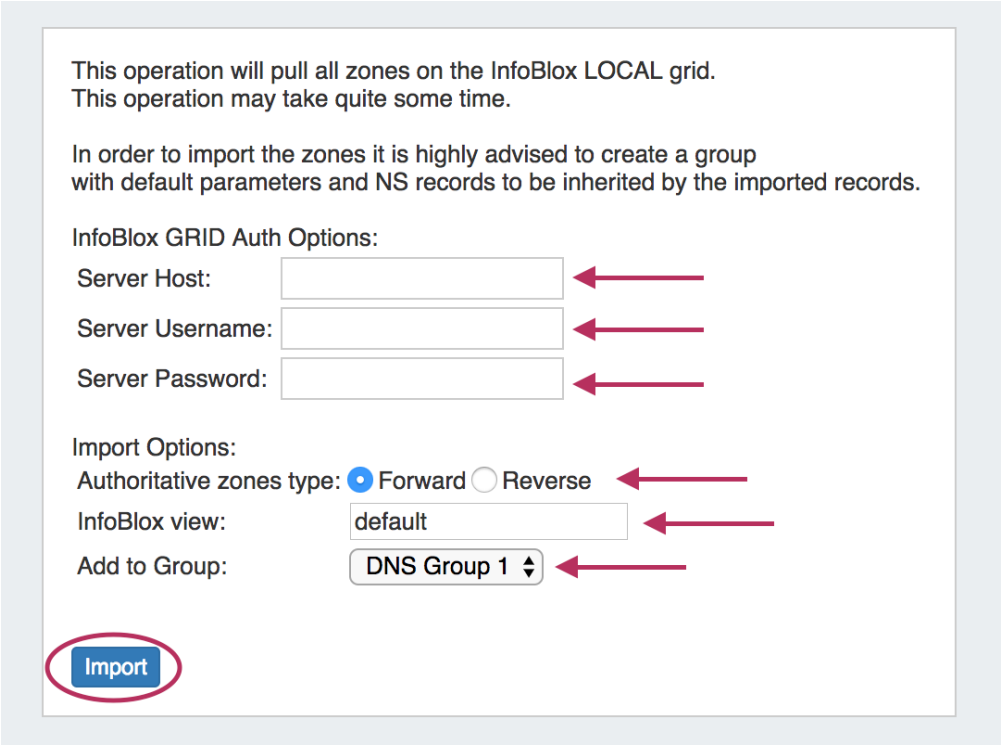

## Step 3: Import your InfoBlox zones

Once server setup has been verified, navigate to the **Data Import** Tab in the Admin section. Select the "InfoBlox Zone Import" link.




Then, enter the InfloBlox server Host, Username, and Password. Select Forward or Reverse zone type, the InfoBlox view, and the ProVision DNS Group to add the zones to.

Once all information has been entered, click the "Import" button.




The import may take a couple of minutes. If errors occur, they will show under the Pull in Progress message.

When completed, a successful import will show a green Complete! status message.

Verify the zones by exiting the Admin area of ProVision, clicking on the **DNS** tab, and reviewing the zones under the Group previously selected for the import.

# NS One Zone Import

# NS One Zone Import

The ProVision "NS One Data Import" option imports NS One DNS zones using a provided NS One API key. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.


- NS One Zone Import
  - Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup
  - Step 2: Verify NS One server setup
  - Step 3: Import your zones


## Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup

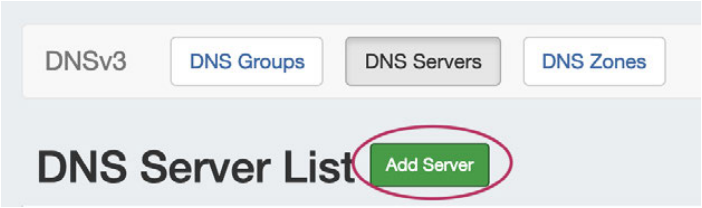
It is recommended to have a DNS Group created in advance with the proper default parameters and records to be inherited by the imported NS One zones and records.

Review the existing DNS Groups in the **DNS** tab, and create a new DNS Group if necessary. See Working with DNS Groups for details on editing or creating DNS Groups.

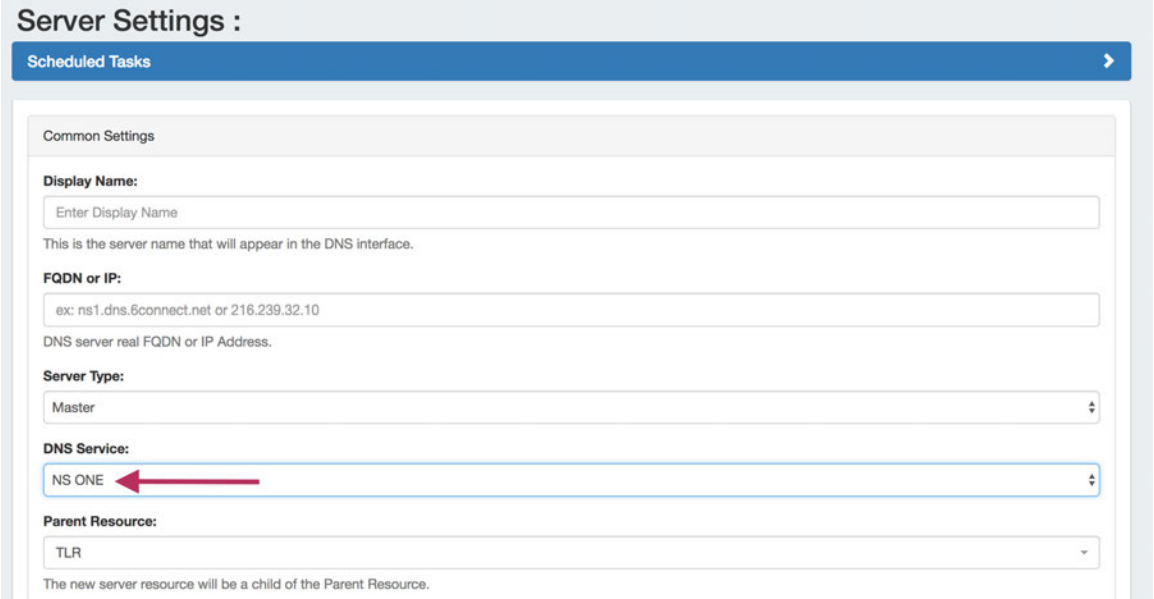
## Step 2: Verify NS One server setup

Although it is not strictly necessary to have the NS One server created in ProVision prior to import, creating or verifying the server at this point gives you an opportunity to test the connection and attach the NS One server to the DNS Group selected in step 1.

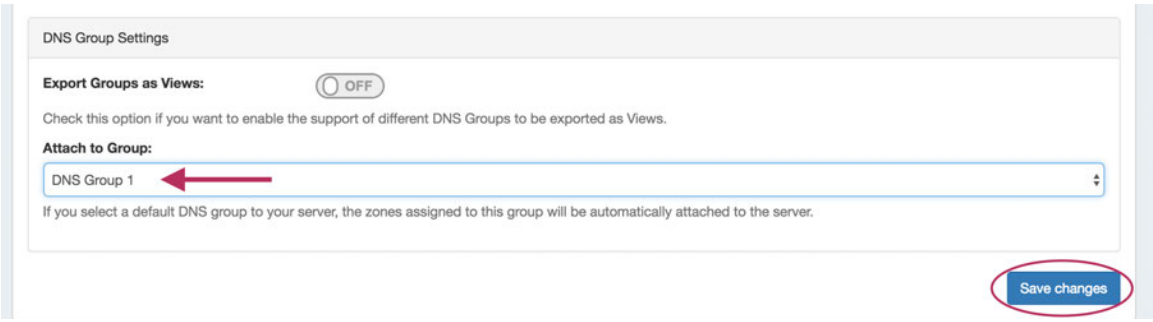
Go to the **DNS** Tab, DNS Servers section, and either verify that the desired server is shown in the server list, or click the "Add Server" button to create a new NS One server.




If creating a new server, ensure that "NS One" is selected for the DNS Service.

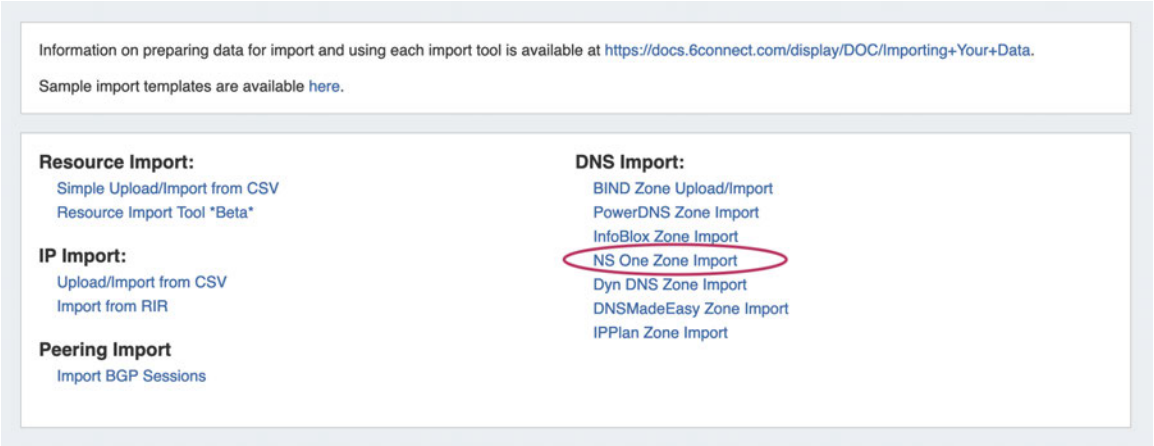



Under the "DNS Group Settings" section of the server detail page, ensure that the DNS Group from step 1 is selected as the server's Attach to Group setting, and click "Save".



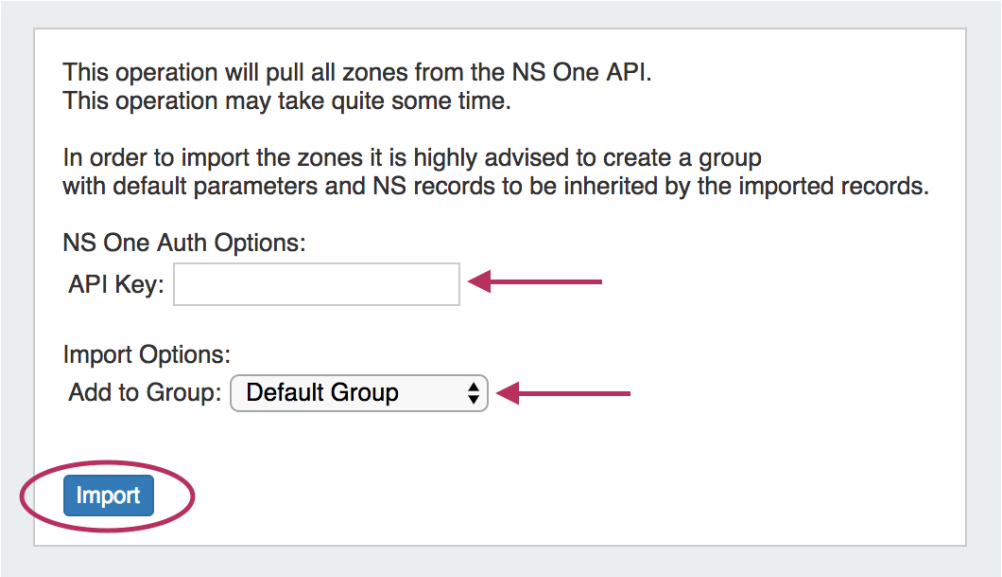

## Step 3: Import your zones

Once server setup has been verified, navigate to the **Data Import** Tab in the Admin section. Select the "NS One Zone Import" link.




Then, enter the NS One API key and the ProVision DNS Group to add the zones to.

Once all information has been entered, click the "Import" button.




The import may take a couple of minutes. If errors occur, they will show under the Pull in Progress message.

When completed, a successful import will show a green Complete! status message.

Verify the zones by exiting the Admin area of ProVision, clicking on the **DNS** tab, and reviewing the zones under the Group previously selected for the import.

# Dyn DNS Zone Import

# Dyn DNS Zone Import

The ProVision "Dyn DNS Zone Import" option imports Dyn DNS zones using a provided Customer Name, Username, and Password. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.


- Dyn DNS Zone Import
  - Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup
  - Step 2: Verify server setup
  - Step 3: Import your DynDNS zones


## Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup

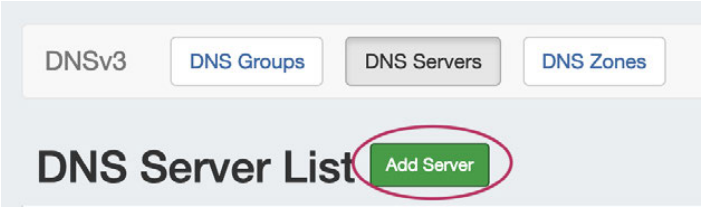
It is recommended to have a DNS Group created in advance with the proper default parameters and records to be inherited by the imported Dyn DNS zones and records.

Review the existing DNS Groups in the **DNS** tab, and create a new DNS Group if necessary. See Working with DNS Groups for details on editing or creating DNS Groups.

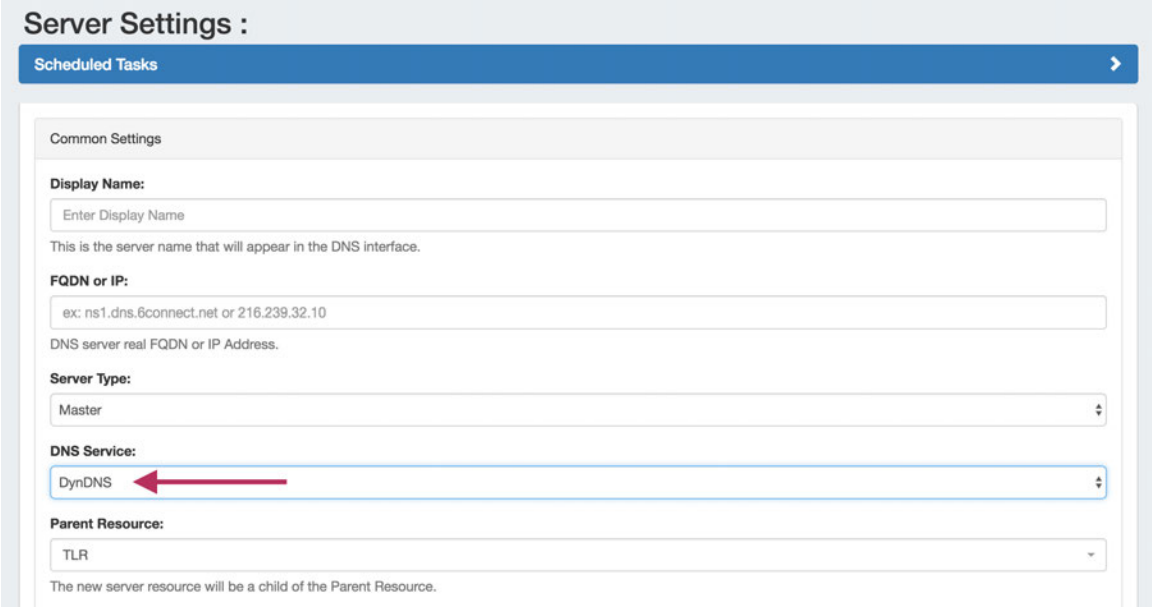
## Step 2: Verify server setup

Although it is not strictly necessary to have the Dyn DNS server created in ProVision prior to import, creating or verifying the server at this point gives you an opportunity to test the connection and attach the Dyn DNS server to the DNS Group selected in step 1.

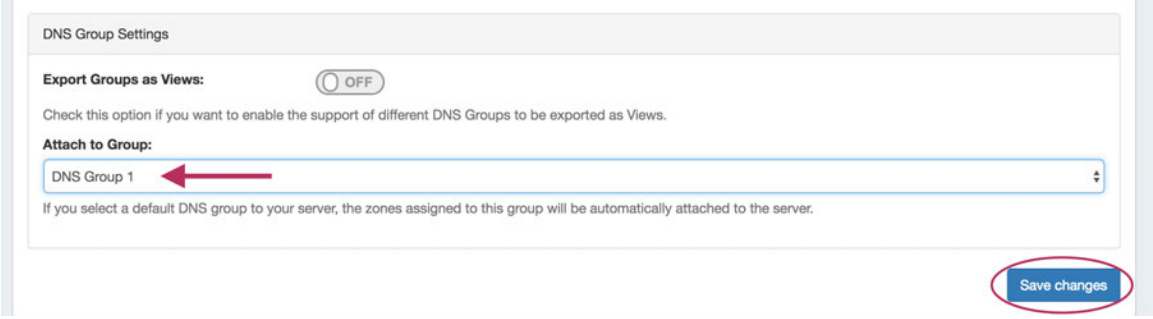
Go to the **DNS** Tab, DNS Servers section, and either verify that the desired server is shown in the server list, or click the "Add Server" button to create a new Dyn DNS server.




If creating a new server, ensure that "Dyn DNS" is selected for the DNS Service.

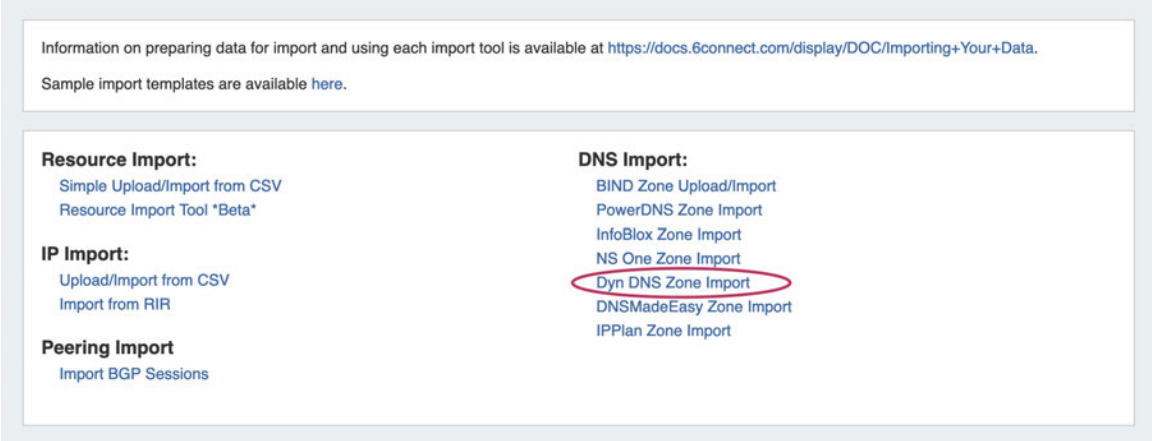



Under the "DNS Group Settings" section of the server detail page, ensure that the DNS Group from step 1 is selected as the server's Attach to Group setting, and click "Save".



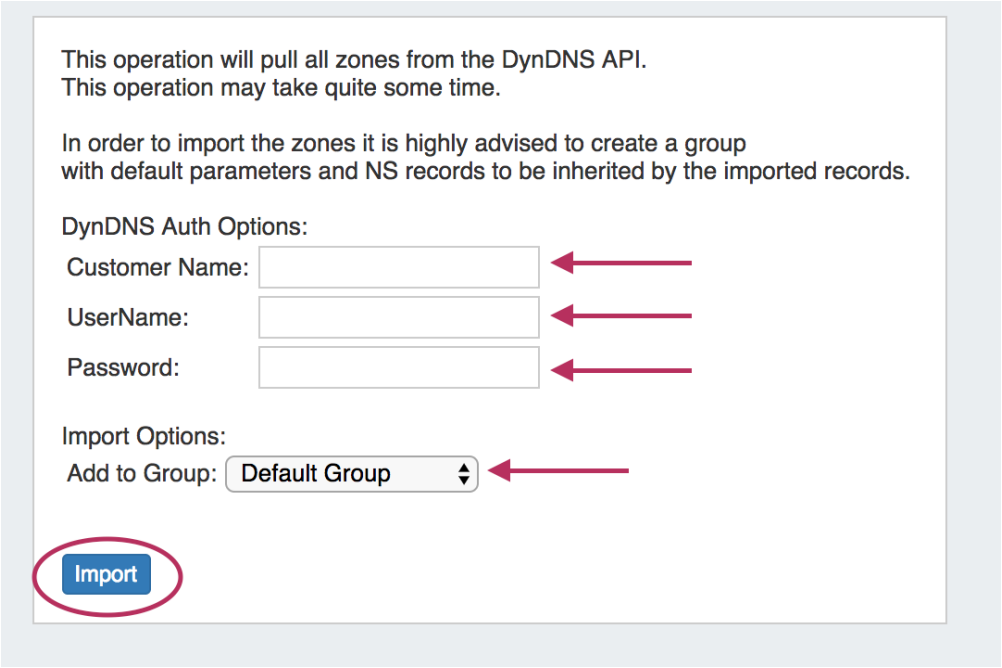

## Step 3: Import your DynDNS zones

Once server setup has been verified, navigate to the **Data Import** Tab in the Admin section. Select the "Dyn DNS Zone Import" link.




Then, enter the Dyn DNS Customer Name, Username, and Password. Then, select the ProVision DNS Group to add the zones to.

Once all information has been entered, click the "Import" button.




The import may take a couple of minutes. If errors occur, they will show under the Pull in Progress message.

When completed, a successful import will show a green Complete! status message.

Verify the zones by exiting the Admin area of ProVision, clicking on the **DNS** tab, and reviewing the zones under the Group previously selected for the import.

# DNSMadeEasy Zone Import

# DNSMadeEasy Zone Import

The ProVision "DNSMadeEasy Zone Import" option imports DNSMadeEasy zones using a provided API Key and API Secret. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.


- DNSMadeEasy Zone Import
  - Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup
  - Step 2: Verify server setup
  - Step 3: Import your DNSMadeEasy zones


## Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup

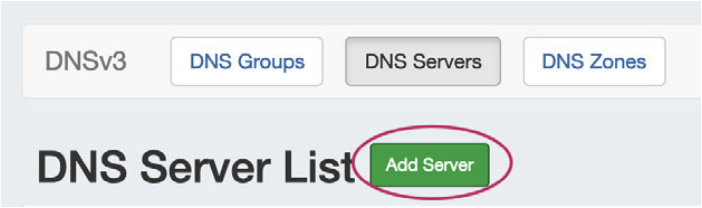
It is recommended to have a DNS Group created in advance with the proper default parameters and records to be inherited by the imported zones and records.

Review the existing DNS Groups in the **DNS** tab, and create a new DNS Group if necessary. See Working with DNS Groups for details on editing or creating DNS Groups.

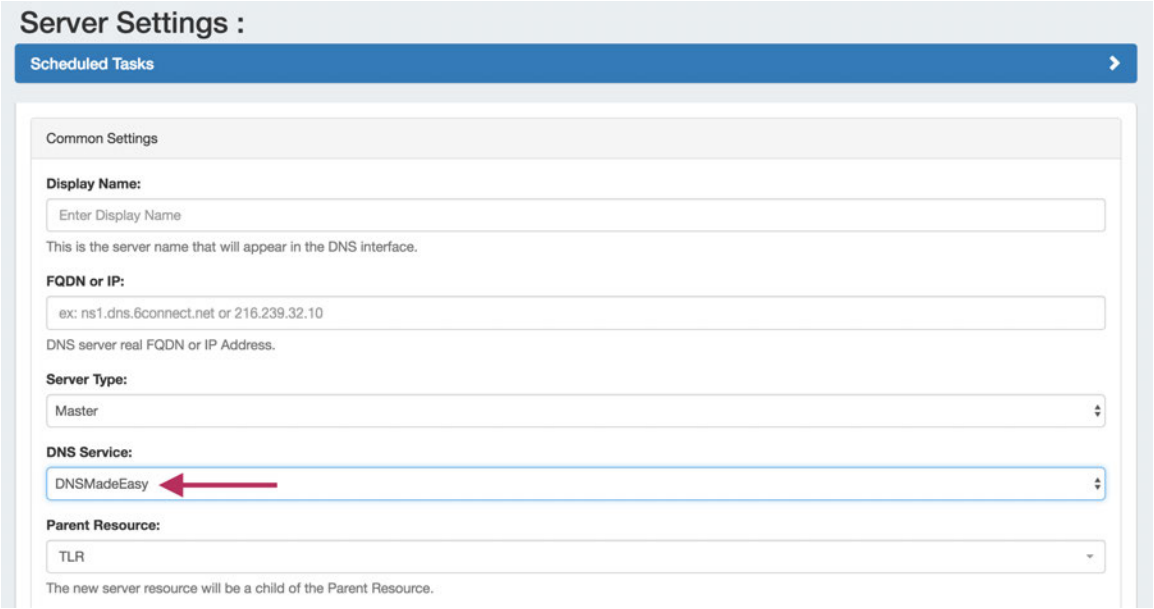
## Step 2: Verify server setup

Although it is not strictly necessary to have the DNSMadeEasy server created in ProVision prior to import, creating or verifying the server at this point gives you an opportunity to test the connection and attach the DNSMadeEasy server to the DNS Group selected in step 1.

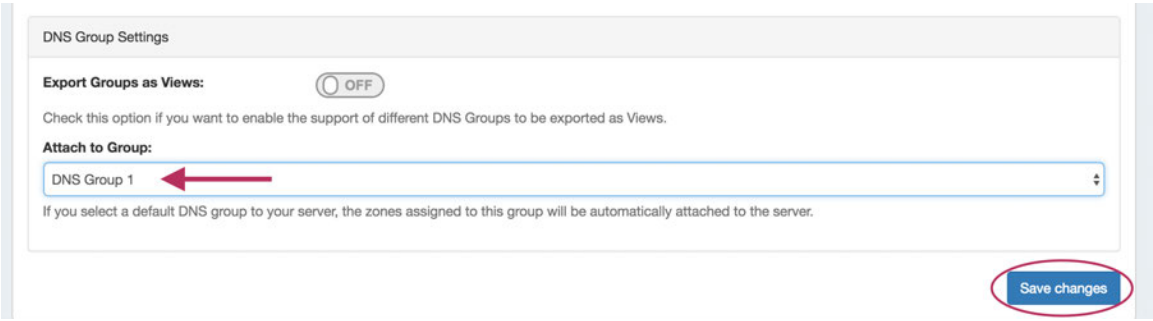
Go to the **DNS** Tab, DNS Servers section, and either verify that the desired server is shown in the server list, or click the "Add Server" button to create a new DNSMadeEasy server.




If creating a new server, ensure that "DNSMadeEasy" is selected for the DNS Service.

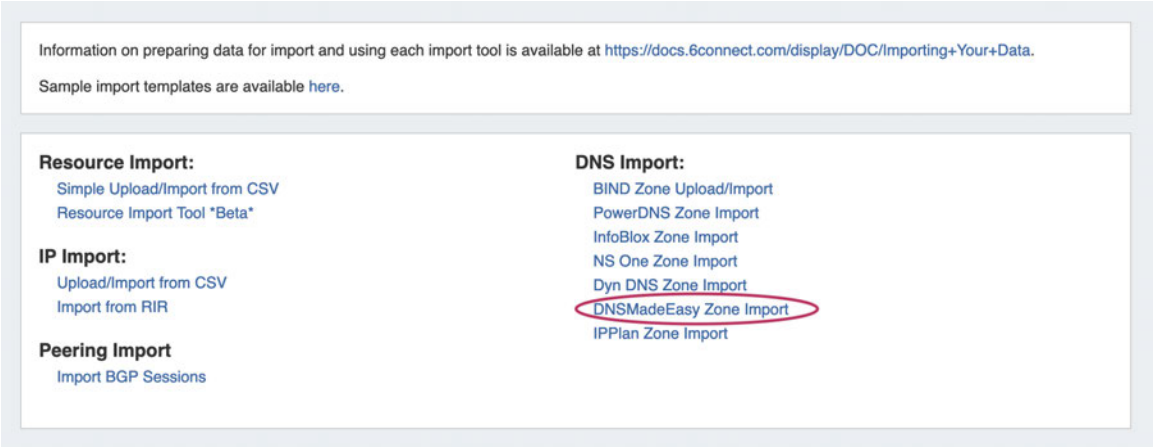



Under the "DNS Group Settings" section of the server detail page, ensure that the DNS Group from step 1 is selected as the server's Attach to Group setting, and click "Save".



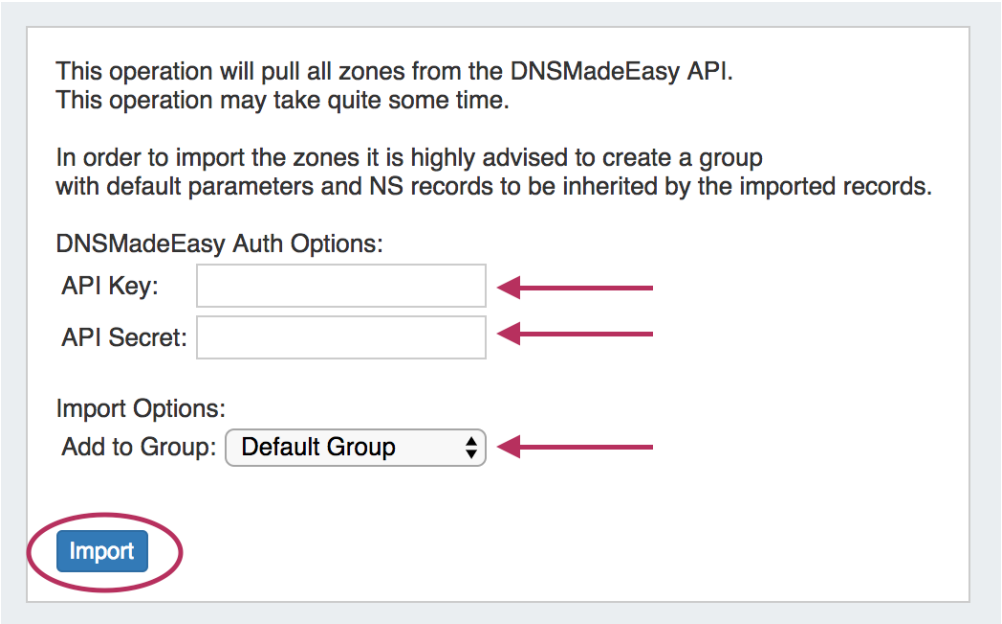

## Step 3: Import your DNSMadeEasy zones

Once server setup has been verified, navigate to the **Data Import** Tab in the Admin section. Select the "DNSMadeEasy Zone Import" link.




Then, enter the DNSMadeEasy API Key, Secret Key, and the ProVision DNS Group to add the zones to.

Once all information has been entered, click the "Import" button.




The import may take a couple of minutes. If errors occur, they will show under the Pull in Progress message.

When completed, a successful import will show a green Complete! status message.

Verify the zones by exiting the Admin area of ProVision, clicking on the **DNS** tab, and reviewing the zones under the Group previously selected for the import.

# IPPLAN Zone Import

# IPPlan Zone Import

The ProVision "IPPlan Import" option imports IPPlan zones using provided MySQL database credentials. It is advised to create a DNS Group prior to the import with default parameters and NS records to be inherited by the imported records.


- IPPlan Zone Import
  - Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup
  - Step 2: Import your IPPlan zones

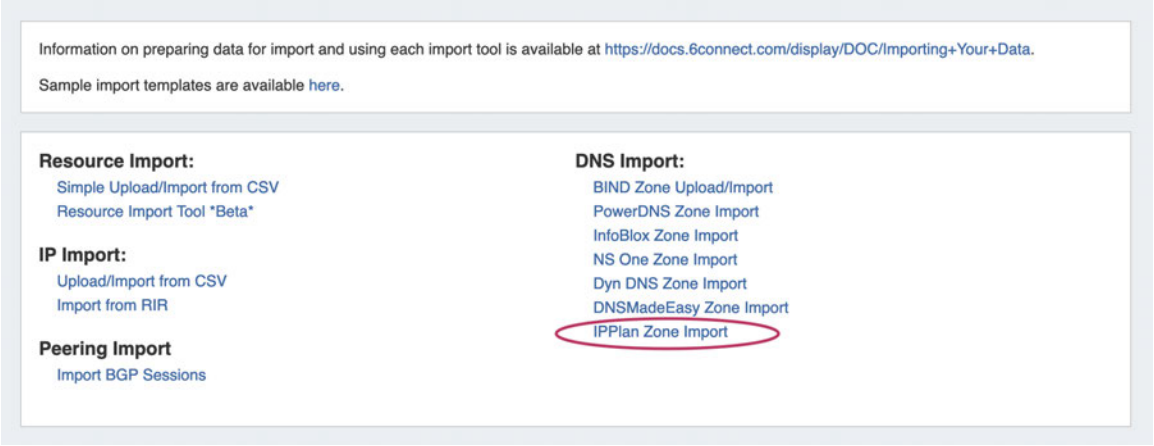

## Step 1: Verify DNS Group setup

It is recommended to have a DNS Group created in advance with the proper default parameters and records to be inherited by the imported zones and records.

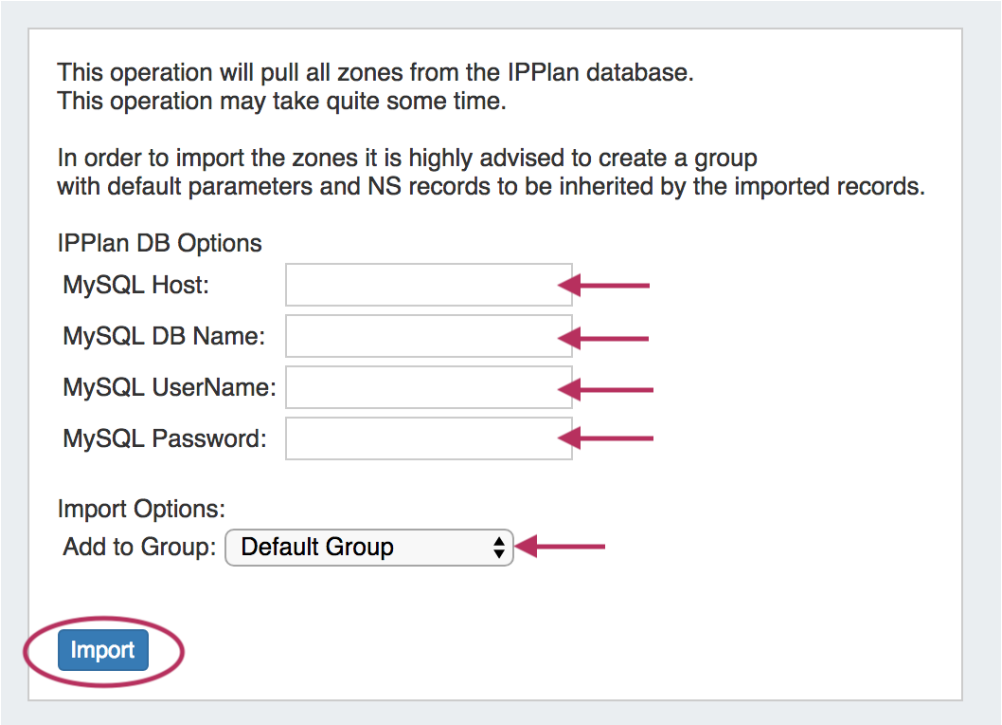
Review the existing DNS Groups in the **DNS** tab, and create a new DNS Group if necessary. See Working with DNS Groups for details on editing or creating DNS Groups.

## Step 2: Import your IPPlan zones

Once DNS Group setup has been verified, navigate to the **Data Import** Tab in the Admin section. Select the "IPPlan Zone Import" link.




From there, enter the IPPLAN DB Options - Host, Database Name, MySQL Username, and MySQL Password, then select the desired DNS Group to add the zones under.



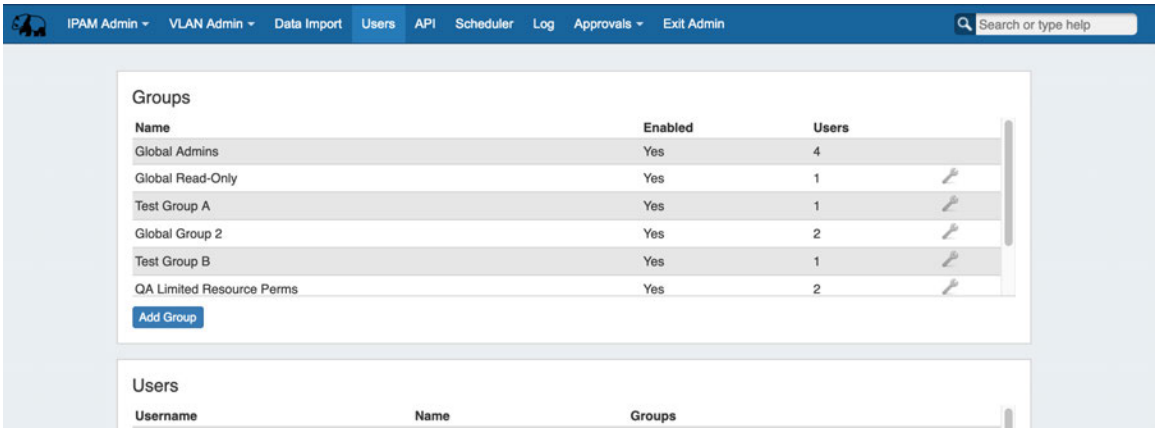

The import may take a couple of minutes. If errors occur, they will show under the Pull in Progress message.

When completed, a successful import will show a green Complete! status message.

Verify the zones by exiting the Admin area of ProVision, clicking on the **DNS** tab, and reviewing the zones under the Group previously selected for the import.

# Users & Permissions

# Users



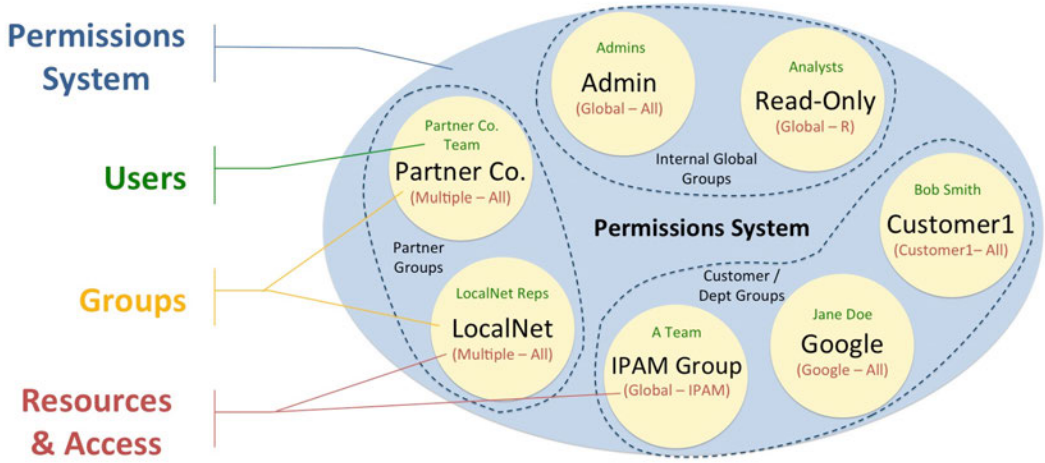

Users & Permissions is accessed from the Admin screen under the **Users** tab. Here, you will find tools for adding and managing permissions groups, users, and running queries for verifying a user's specific permissions.


- Users
  - The Permissions Structure
  - Video Overview
  - Permission Levels
    - Global Permissions
    - Resource Permissions
    - Table of contents:


# The Permissions Structure

The Permissions structure in ProVision is designed to give you as much flexibility as you need to accommodate most use cases. When mapping out the permissions structure for your organization, keep in mind who you want to access to application:

- Internal Users and Roles (Admins, Read Only, etc.)
- Partners related to multiple specific Resources/Accounts
- Customers/Departments with limited view to only their respective Resources/Accounts




In this diagram, we have created groups for each of those scenarios – we have internal groups, Partner Groups, and Customer groups. Each of these groups has access to different resources, permission levels, and users assigned to them.

The components of the Permissions System include:

**Users:** A User is a single login account that accesses ProVision. Users are assigned to Groups.

**Groups:** A Group is a set of permission conditions that apply to selected Users. Allowed Resources and access levels (C/R/U/D permissions) are set inside the Group.

**Resources & Access:** Inside a Group, Resource access may be set to Global (applies to all Resources), or to the Resource level (applies to only the selected Resources). For each Resource selected, access permissions can be set with C/R/U/D permissions under each ProVision functional area (IPAM, DNS, Resource, Peering).

As a whole, this makes up the ProVision permissions system.  The Permissions system allows you to fine-tune access to resource data to be as detailed as you need.

# Video Overview

Video overview applicable to ProVision version 5.3.3 and earlier.

# Permission Levels

## Global Permissions

When you see a reference to a "TLR" - that is a "Top Level Resource". This Is the primary Resource under which all other resources fall under. ProVision currently only allows a single level of administrator permissions: Global Administrator.

Users with "Admin" access can assign/modify permissions for other users.

See Global Permissions for more details on configuring these elements.

## Resource Permissions

An administrator can also set respective permissions for a given Resource (single or multiple). These permissions fall under Groups. So a Group is configured for the given group of Resource permissions, and then the User account is added.

See Working With Users and Groups to learn how Resource Permissions are assigned.

See Resource Permissions for more details on configuring these elements.

## Table of contents:


- Global Permissions
- Resource Permissions
- Working With Users and Groups
- Verifying Permissions

# Global Permissions

# Global Permissions

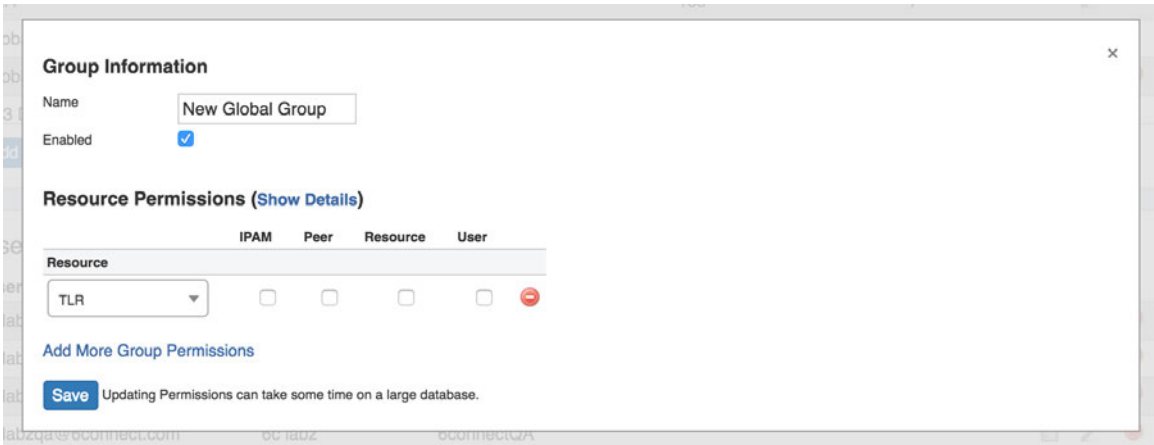
Global Permissions apply to the "TLR" or "Top Level Resource" within ProVision. By default, ProVision includes two groups with Global Permissions access - Global Admins and Global Read-Only. Initial Users are typically placed in the "Global Admins" group, and have administrative access to the entire platform. Global Read-Only users have full access to the platform, but with only read permissions.

Administration of these permissions require Administrative privileges. As an Admin, the user can then assign global permissions to groups and users. Depending on the requirement, the user can also have Resource specific permissions depending on how their group is configured.

## Global Permission Details

Global groups are visible under the "Groups" section of the **Users** tab. In addition to the two default Global groups, new Global groups may be created through the "Add Group" button.

Under the resource selector, chose the "TLR"  Resource ("Top Level Resource"), and then check permissions as desired.




Global groups may also be edited just like standard groups, through selecting the Action Menu (Wrench Icon) to bring up the group information details. Groups may be deleted by selecting the red circle icon.

Group details are the same for Global groups as for non-global groups, excepting that the resource selected is TLR (Top Level Resource). You may choose to edit the name, enable/disable the group, show or hide C/R/U/D permission details, and view users assigned to that group. Be sure to save any changes after editing.

Details on each global permission option is as follows:

| Global Permission | Description |
|---|---|
| Create | Ability to create records of a certain type |
| Read | Ability to read records of a certain type |
| Update | Ability to update existing records of a certain type |
| Delete | Ability to delete records of a certain type |

| Functional Area | Description |
|---|---|
| IPAM | IP Address Management functionality - this covers the IPAM Tab in addition to the IPAM "Gadget" that can be present in Resources. |
| Peer | Peering functionality - covers the Peering Tab, both the Communication Manager and the Session Manager. |
| Resource | Resource functionality - this controls access for Resources depending on either the TLR or the individual Resource(s) selected. DNS zones, records, and servers are included as "Resources". |
| User | User/Group management - this controls access for User and Group functions within the administrative area for ProVision. |
| SWIP* | This affects the SWIP/RPSL integration for ARIN/RIPE. This way a user can either be enabled to have this capability or not. |
| Admin* | This controls whether a user is a administrator for the global ProVision application. |

*
SWIP and Admin functions are only visible when Show Details is selected

# Additional Information

For more information on Users and Groups, see the following areas:

Users & Permissions

Resource Permissions

Working With Users and Groups

Verifying Permissions

# Resource Permissions

# Resource Permissions

Resource Permissions apply to designated Resources within ProVision. Rather than allowing a user full access to the ProVision platform, you can choose to limit a user's access to only certain resources or functional areas.

Administration of these permissions require Administrative privileges. As an Admin, the user can then assign resource permissions to groups and users.

## Resource Permission Details

Resource Permission groups are visible under the "Groups" section of the **Users** tab. New groups may be created through the "Add Group" button.

Under the resource selector, chose one or more resources for which you want to define permissions, and then check permissions as desired.

Additional Resources may be added to the list by clicking on "Add more Group Permissions".

Keep in mind when working with individual Resource permissions that tasks which require moving entities (zones, IPAM blocks, attaching servers, etc) from one resource to another, require the user to have permissions on both the originating Resource and the destination Resource.

Thus, moving IP blocks from "6connect Labz" to "7connect Labs" requires the user to have IPAM and Resource permissions on both Lab resources.

Similarly, attaching a DNS server to a DNS Group requires Resource permissions on both the DNS Group and the intended DNS server to attach.

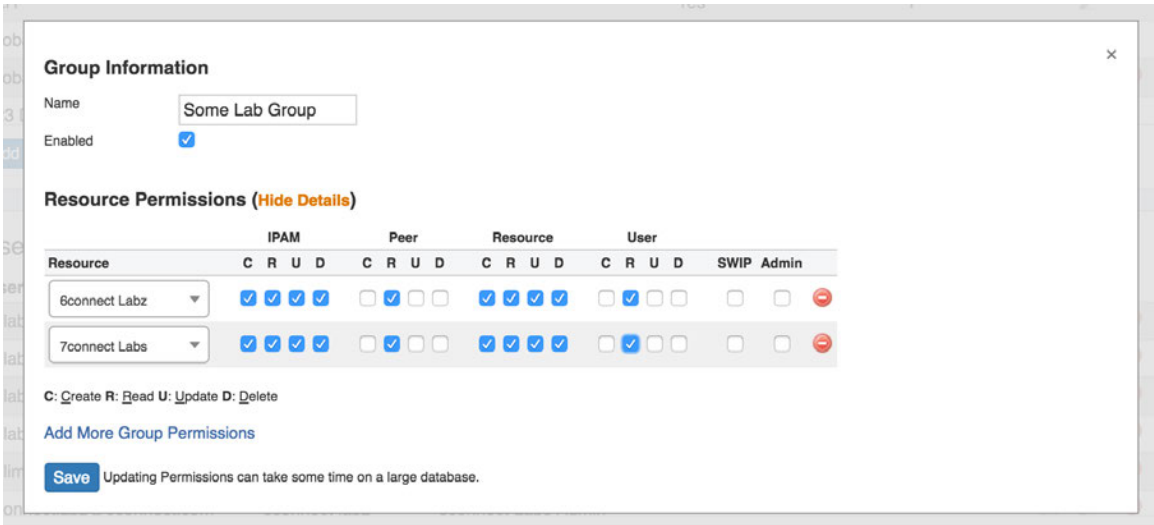
Here, we show making a group called "Some Lab Group", whose users we want to be able to access two resources: 6connect Labz and 7connect Labs.

These users will be working extensively in IPAM and Resources, so we give them full access to those areas of ProVision.

However, we also want them to view other information in Peering and Users, but not edit it.

Click on "Show Details" to fine-tune the permissions, and then check the "R" column under Peer and User.

Lastly, hit "Save" to save our changes.




Details on each resource permission option is as follows:

| Resource Permission | Description |
|---|---|
| Create | Ability to create records of a certain type |
| Read | Ability to read records of a certain type |
| Update | Ability to update existing records of a certain type |
| Delete | Ability to delete records of a certain type |

| Functional Area | Description |
|---|---|
| IPAM | IP Address Management functionality - this covers the IPAM Tab in addition to the IPAM "Gadget" that can be present in Resources. |
| Peer | Peering functionality - covers the Peering Tab, both the Communication Manager and the Session Manager. |
| Resource | Resource functionality - this controls access for Resources depending on either the TLR or the individual Resource(s) selected. DNS zones, records, and servers are included as "Resources". |
| User | User/Group management - this controls access for User and Group functions within the administrative area for ProVision. |
| SWIP* | This affects the SWIP/RPSL integration for ARIN/RIPE. This way a user can either be enabled to have this capability or not. |
| Admin* | This controls whether a user is a administrator for the global ProVision application. |

*

SWIP and Admin functions are only visible when Show Details is selected

# Additional Information

For more information on Users and Groups, see the following areas:

Users & Permissions

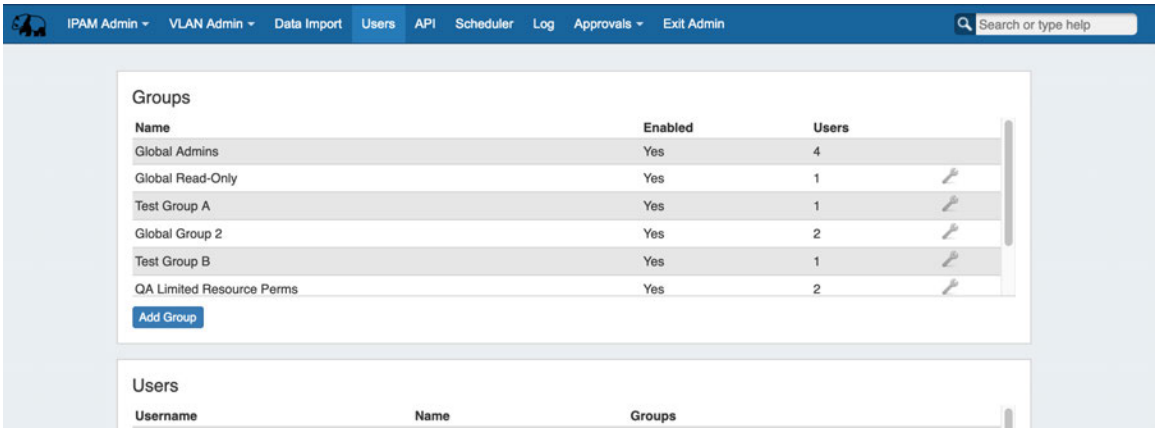
Global Permissions

Working With Users and Groups

Verifying Permissions

# Users and Groups

# Managing Users and Groups

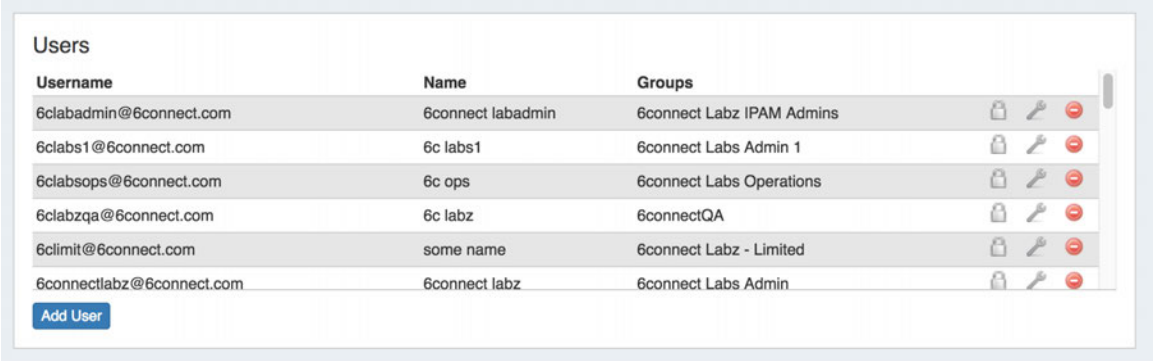



Users and Groups are managed from the Admin area of ProVision, under the **Users** tab. Both Global and Resource level groups are shown.


- Managing Users and Groups
  - Users Overview
    - Creating/Editing User Accounts
    - Setting/Resetting User Passwords
    - Removing a User
  - Groups
    - Default Groups
    - Add or Edit a Group
    - Removing a Group
  - Additional Information

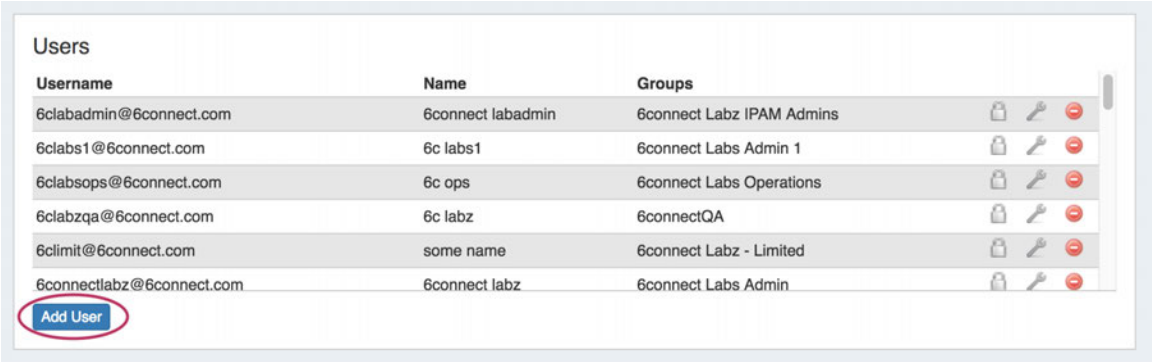

## Users Overview

A User is defined as a single login account that accesses ProVision. In the Users section, users may be added, edited, assigned to groups, have password information reset, or be removed.




### Creating/Editing User Accounts

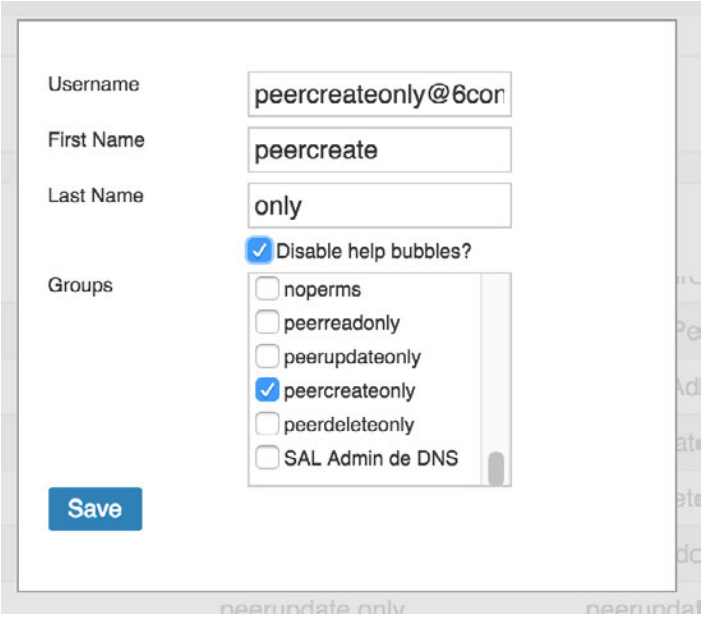
Add Users by click on the "Add User" button at the bottom of the "Users" section of the page. The Edit User dialog will pop up.




You can also bring up the same dialog to edit a user's information by clicking on the Action Menu (wrench icon) at the end of the row for the user.

When creating or editing User accounts, you will be presented with the following options.

You may enter or edit the Username, First Name, Last Name, whether to enable help bubbles, and select one or more permissions groups to which to assign the user.



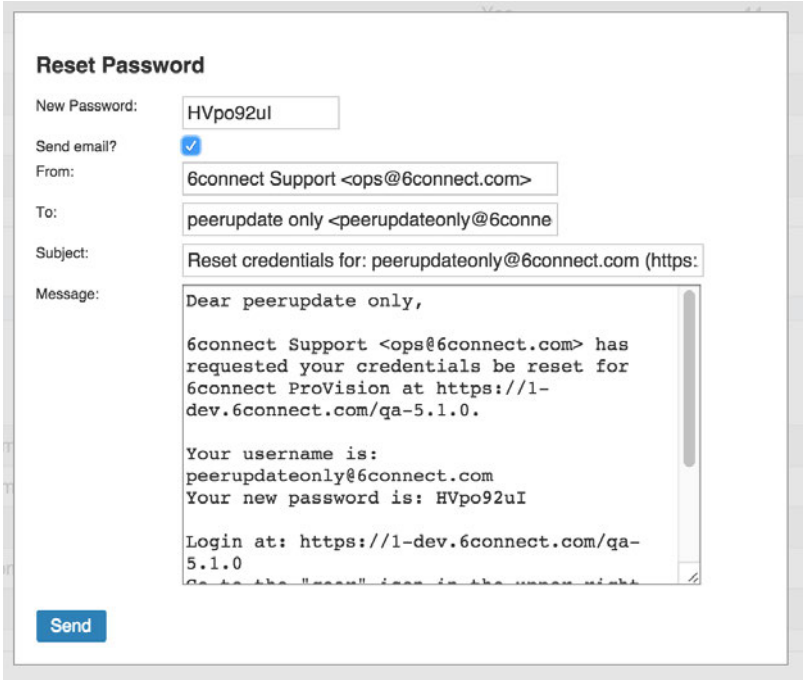

When assigning users to multiple permissions groups, be sure to review the group permission details to ensure that they do not conflict with eachother!

## Setting/Resetting User Passwords

When you click on the padlock icon, you will be presented with options to set a new password and/or send a password reset email to the intended user account.

From here, you can choose a new password, or use the automatically generated random password.

If you select the checkbox next to "Send email?", email fields will appear that may be edited as desired. When complete, hit "Send".




## Removing a User

To remove a user from the Users list, click on the red circle "delete" icon next to that user.

# Groups

ProVision administrators can also create permission groups to assign users to. This allows more control over user roles.

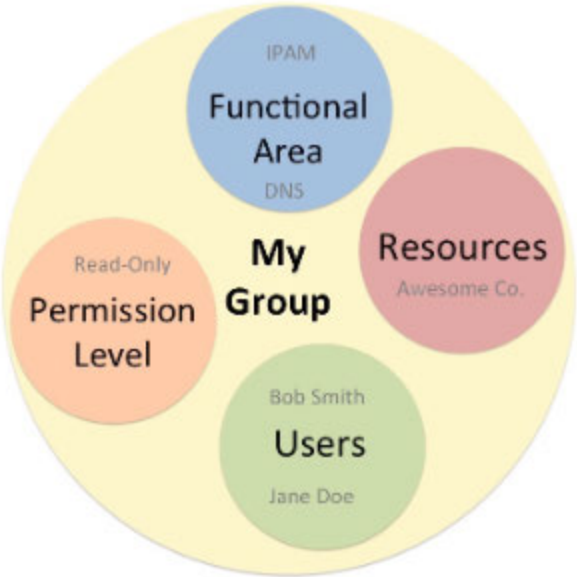
A Group has four elements associated with it:

**Users:** The Users that are assigned to the group, and will be limited by the selected permissions.

**Resources:** Resources access may be set to Global TLR (applies to all resources), or to the level of individually selected resources.

**Functional Area:** The ProVision functional area (IPAM, Resources, Peering, etc) for the selected resource(s) that permissions are set under.

**Permission Level:** Create, Read, Update, and Delete (C/R/U/D) permissions may be set under each functional area for each resource selected.




In the example above, the group “MyGroup” allows the users Bob Smith and Jane Doe to only read IPAM and DNS data for the Resource  “Awesome Co”.

Through the use of these four elements, Groups can create permissions structures that are as flexible as you need.

## Default Groups

Two default groups are available initially in ProVision:

- Global Admin (May not be edited or deleted)
- Global Read-Only

These Global groups allow for access to the entire ProVision platform. You may add additional Global groups by creating a new group using the TLR (Top Level Resource). You may also add detailed resource level group permissions by selected individual resources.

For more detail on top-level and resource permissions, see Global Permissions and Resource Permissions.

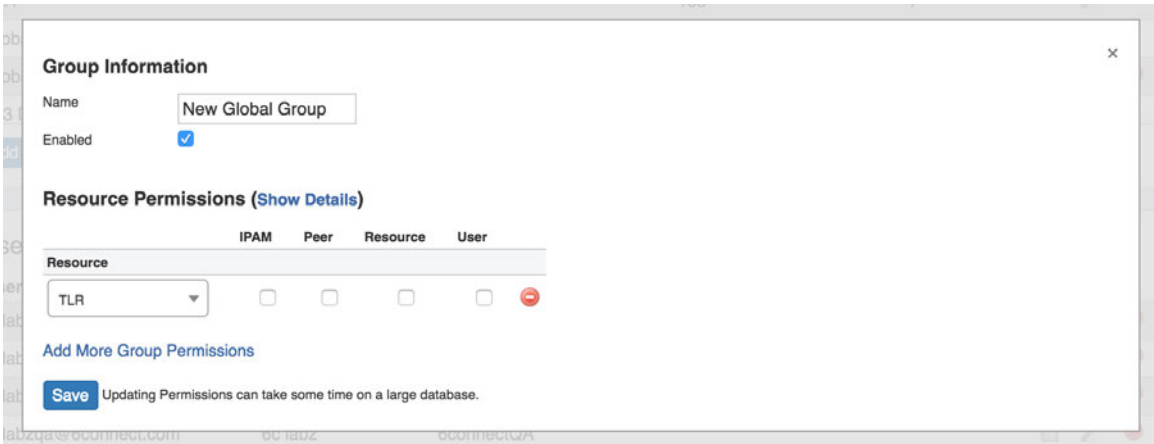
Overlapping group and user permissions

Permissions are inherited based on the hierarchy of the objects, unless you specify a different permission!

## Add or Edit a Group

New Groups can be created by ProVision administrators by pressing the green "Add Group" button. To edit a group, you may click on the Action Menu (wrench icon) for the group.

After hitting the "Add Group" button or wrench icon, the Group Information screen will pop up.



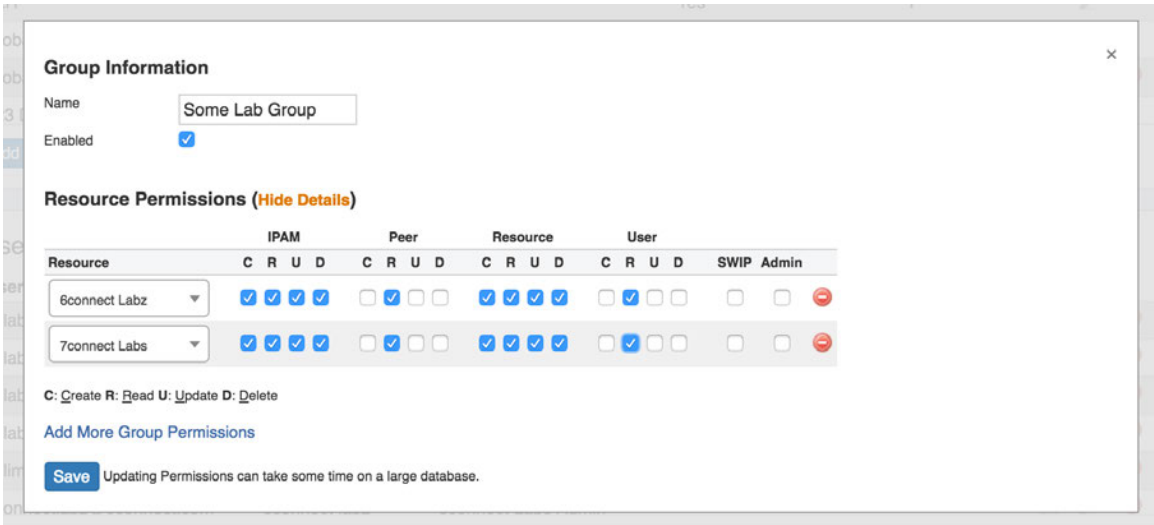

Add in the name of the new group, and set the permissions for that group by defining the resource(s) in the dropdown menu, checking the functional areas that you want accessible.

Click "Show Details" to fine tune the functional areas into Create/Read/Update/Delete level permissions.

To add permissions for additional Resources, click "Add More Group Permissions", select the Resource, and check the desired permissions.

To delete a Resource from the permissions list, simply click the red icon.

In the example below, we make a group called "Some Lab Group", whose users we want to be able to access two resources: 6connect Labz and 7connect Labs. These users will be working extensively in IPAM and Resources, so we give them full access to those areas of ProVision. However, we also want them to view other information, but not edit it. We click on "Show Details" to fine-tune the permissions, and then check the "R" column under Peer and User.




Click "Save" when complete. After adding the group, you can add users to the group by selecting the group when editing a user account.

## Removing a Group

To remove a user from the Users list, click on the red circle "delete" icon next to that user.

Note: Users cannot edit or delete permissions for the Group to which they currently belong, unless they are also a member of the default Global Admin Group.

## Additional Information

For more information on Users and Groups, see the following areas:

Users & Permissions

Global Permissions

Resource Permissions

Verifying Permissions

# Verifying Permissions

# Verifying Permissions

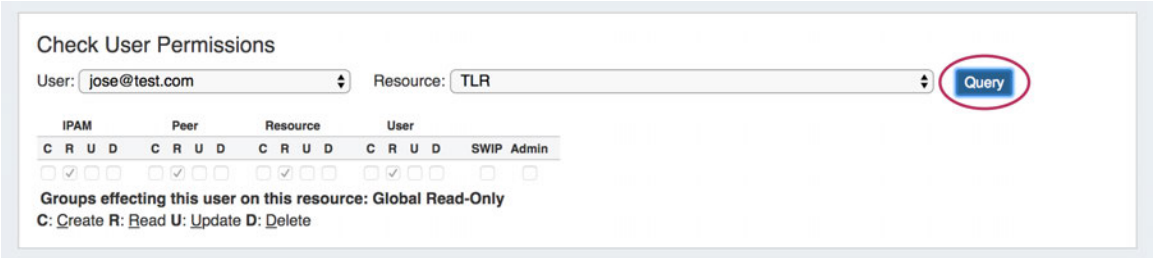

- Verifying Permissions
  - Check User Permissions
  - User Permissions Chart
  - Additional Information


## Check User Permissions

Users & Permissions is accessed from the Admin screen under the **Users** tab. Here, you will find tools for adding and managing permissions groups, users, and running queries for verifying a user's specific permissions.

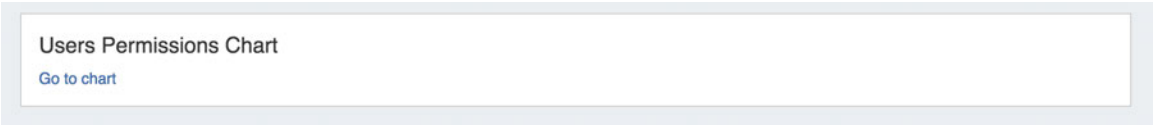
To verify the permissions of a certain user, simply select their user account from the dropdown menu, the resource you are checking against,  and click on the green "Query" button.

The resulting output will display the detailed permissions for that user and resource combination, as well as list groups effecting the user.

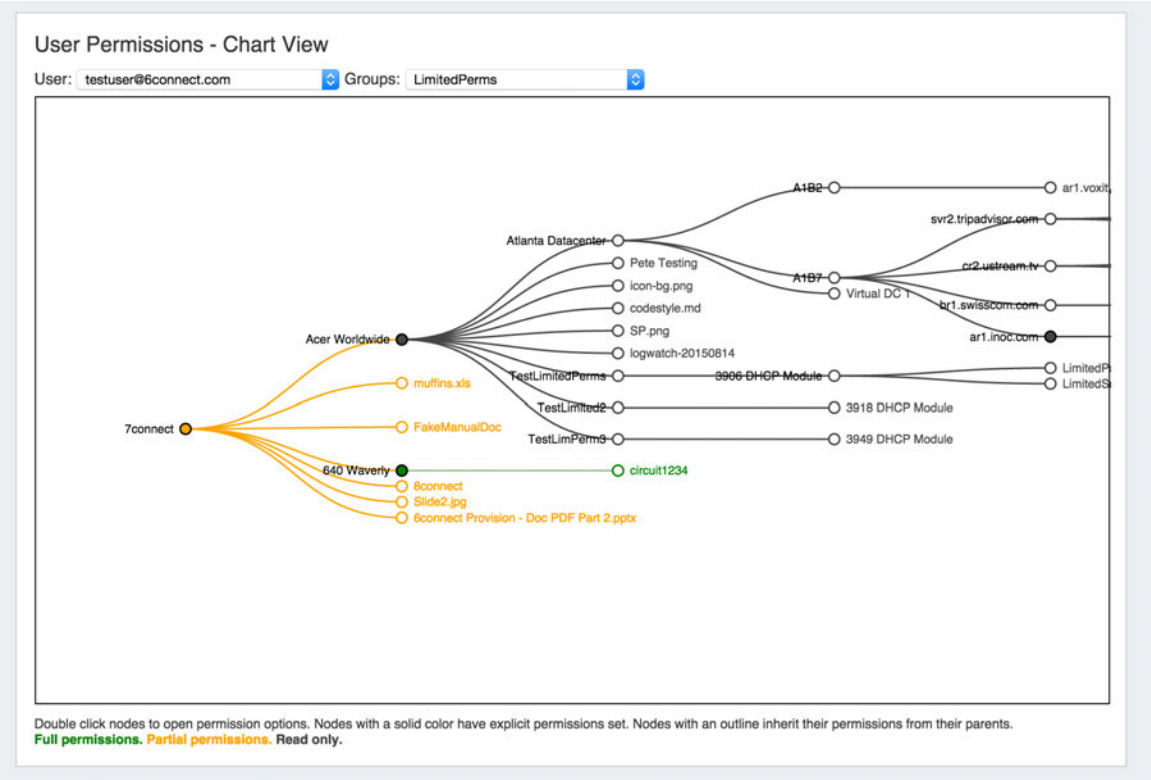



## User Permissions Chart

The User Permissions Chart is accessed from the bottom of the **Users** tab page. Click "Go to Chart" and the chart page will open.

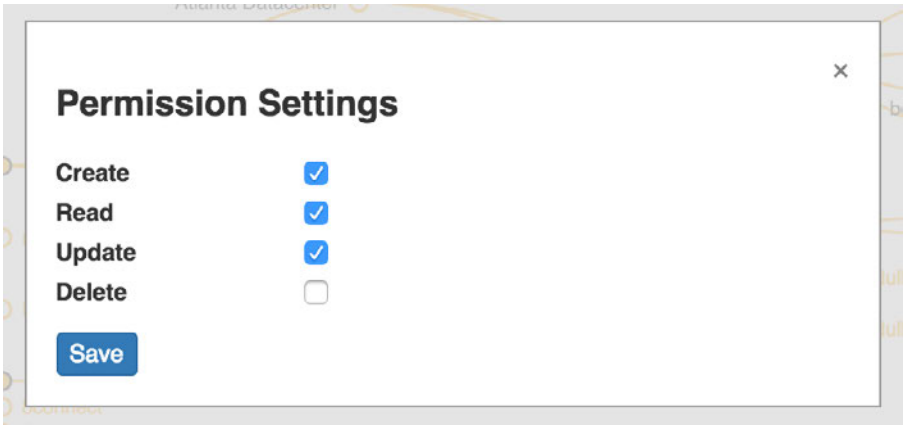



You can graphically view the permissions level of a user by selecting their user name and group from the dropdowns at the top of the chart. The resulting chart will be color coded depending on permissions level.




Single clicking on a filled circle resource node will expand and collapse the node.

Double clicking on a resource will open up the Edit Permissions box, where CRUD permissions may be updated for allowed Resources. Check / Uncheck the desired permissions level, and click save.




# Additional Information

For more information on Users and Groups, see the following areas:

Users & Permissions

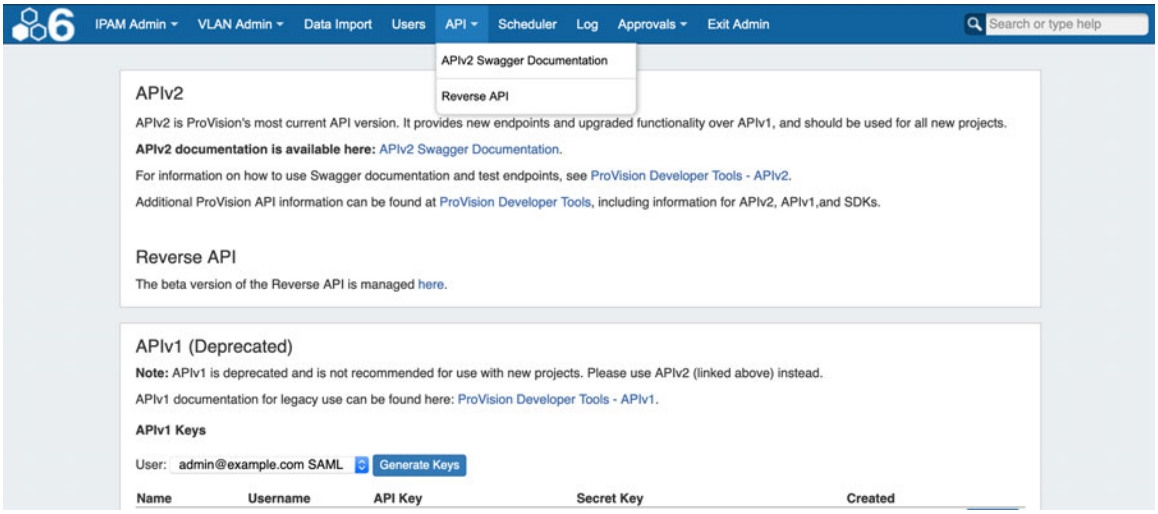
Global Permissions

Resource Permissions

Working With Users and Groups

# API Tab

# API Tab




The API tab provides links to APIv1 / APIv2 documentation and beta Reverse API management. It also allows you to create and manage APIv1 keys for users.

## APIv2

APIv2 documentation is available at ProVision Developer Tools and APIv2.

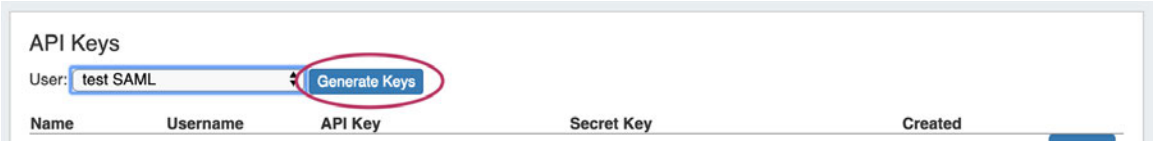
Detailed endpoint descriptions are available at APIv2 Swagger Documentation, or from the instance-specific link provided on the API Tab page / Navigation dropdown.

## APIv1

An APIv1 area is provided for legacy users, containing a link to APIv1 Documentation and a tool to create / revoke APIv1 access keys.

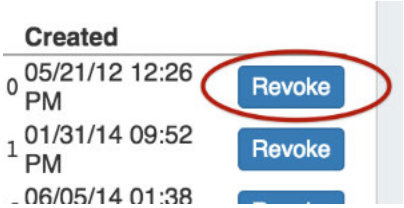
## Create / Revoke a Key

To create a key, simply select the user, and click on "Generate Keys".




The Name, Username, API Key, Secret Key, and Created date information will be added to the list below.

To revoke a user's key, click "Revoke" at the end of their entry.



For detailed information on working with API features, please refer to ProVision Developer Tools, API v1, and APIv2 Swagger specifications linked in your instance on the API page.

## Table of Contents:


- Reverse API UI

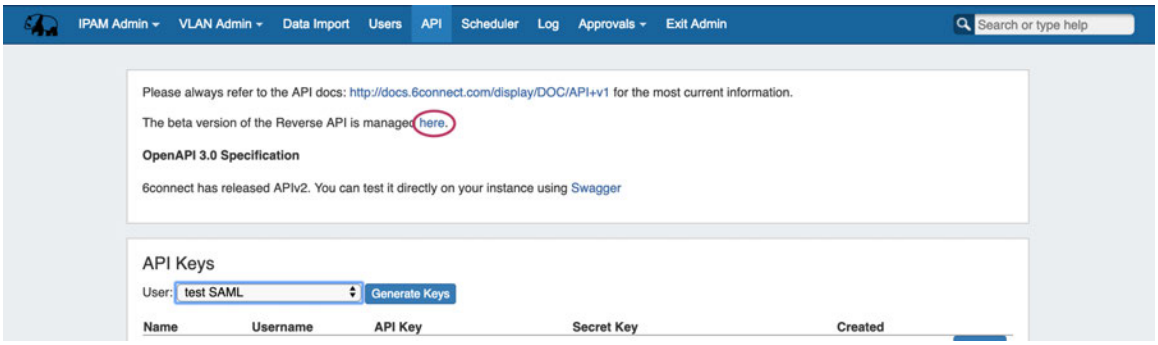
# Reverse API 1

# Reverse API User Interface

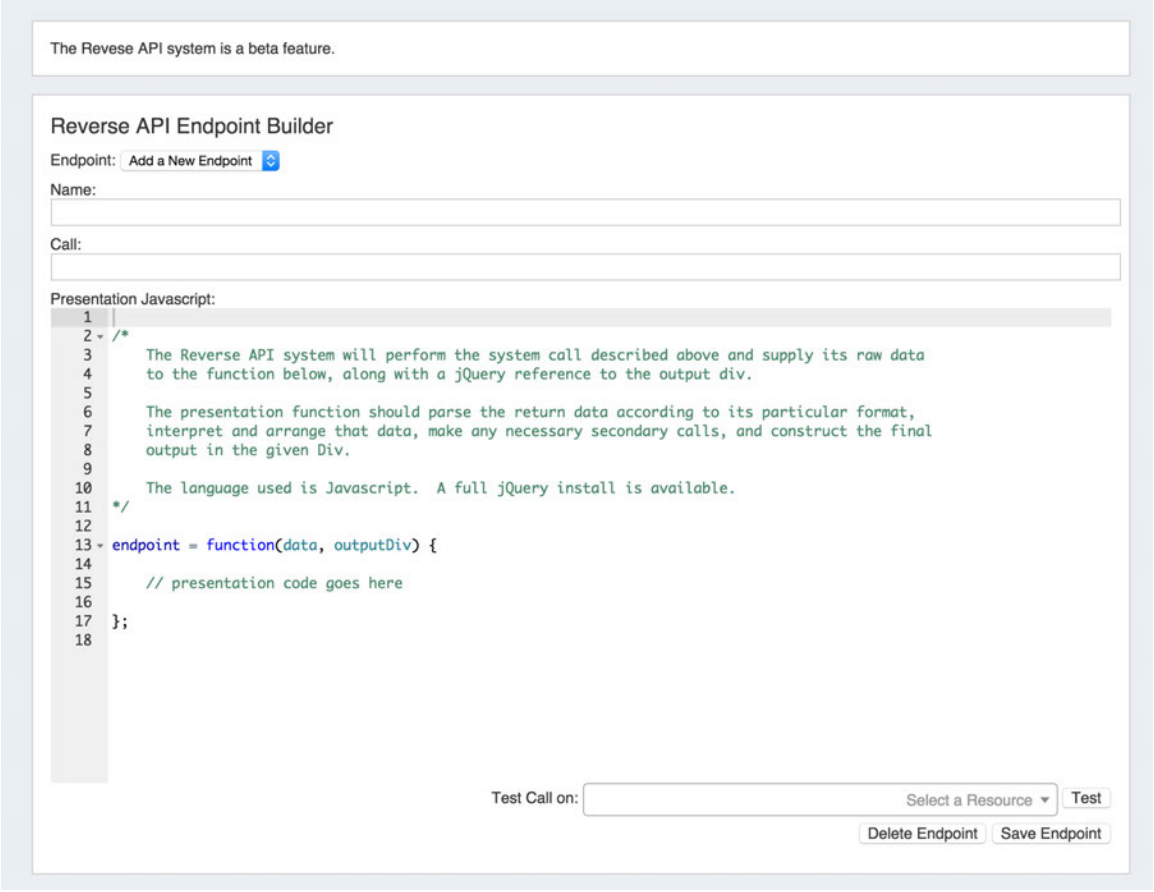

- Reverse API User Interface
  - Add a New Endpoint
  - Delete an Endpoint
  - Edit an Endpoint
  - Displaying the Endpoint


***This is a beta feature***

The Reverse API endpoint builder is accessed from the Admin section of ProVision, under the **API** tab.



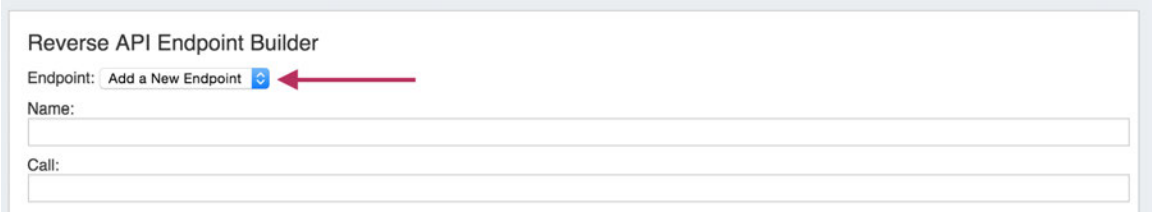

Clicking on the link circled above will take you to the Reverse API Endpoint Builder interface.



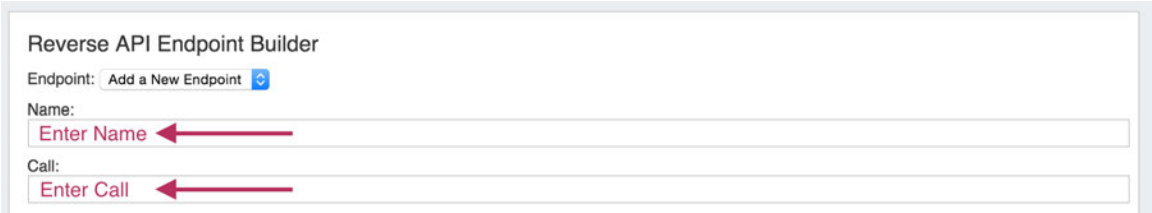
# Add a New Endpoint

To add a new endpoint

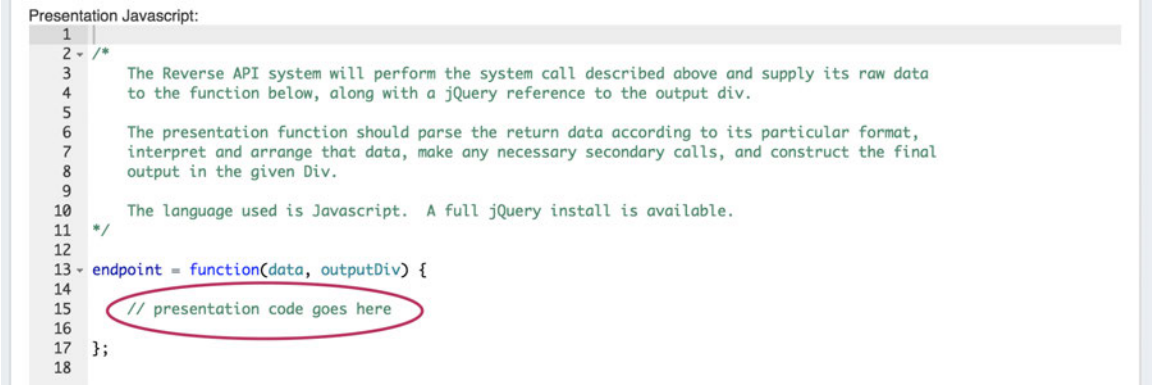
1) Select "Add a New Endpoint" next to "Endpoint".



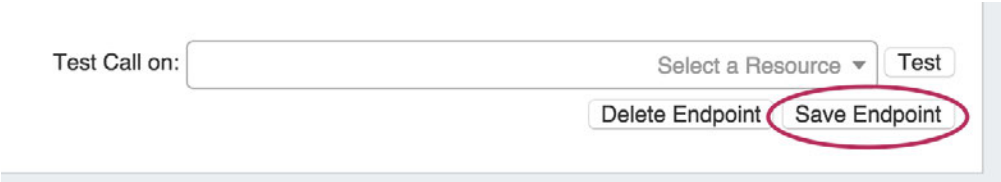

2) Type in the desired endpoint name and call



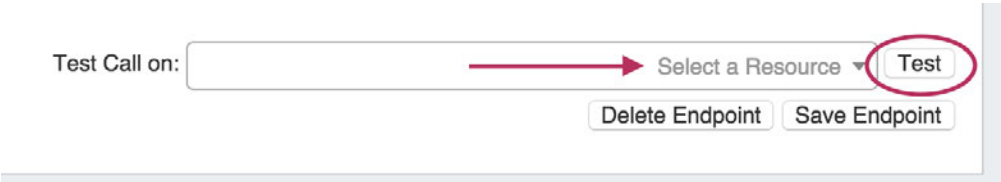

3) Review / Edit the presentation Javascript as desired for your output




4) Save your new endpoint



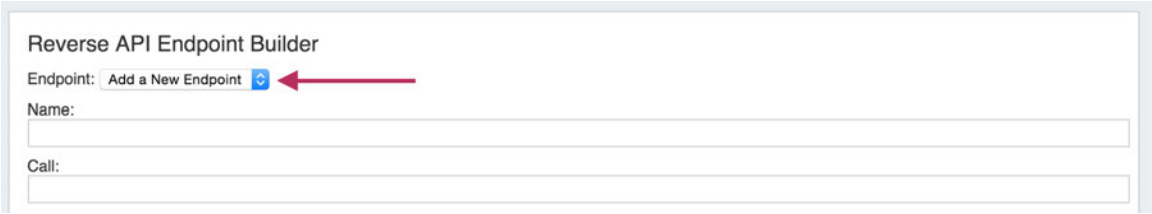

5) Test the call on a selected Resource by selecting a Resource from the dropdown, then hitting the "Test" button.




Note: The selected Resource must have a Reverse API gadget enabled section! See Customizing Sections and Gadgets for information on enabling gadgets for a section.

# Delete an Endpoint

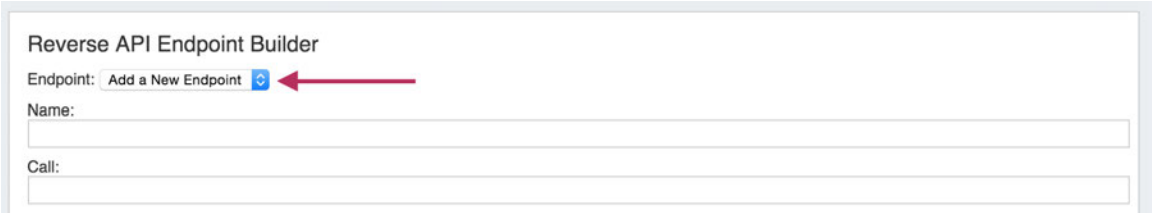
1) Select the endpoint name next to "Endpoint".



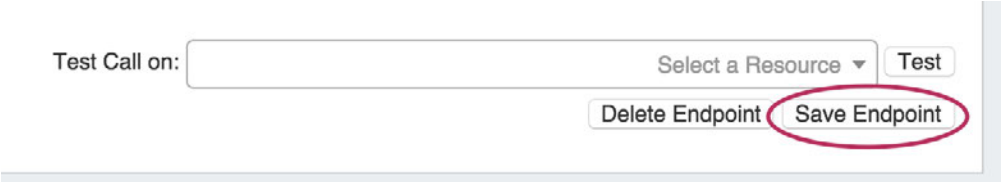

2) At the bottom of the screen, click "Delete Endpoint"

# Edit an Endpoint

1) Select the endpoint name next to "Endpoint".




4) Save the endpoint




# Displaying the Endpoint

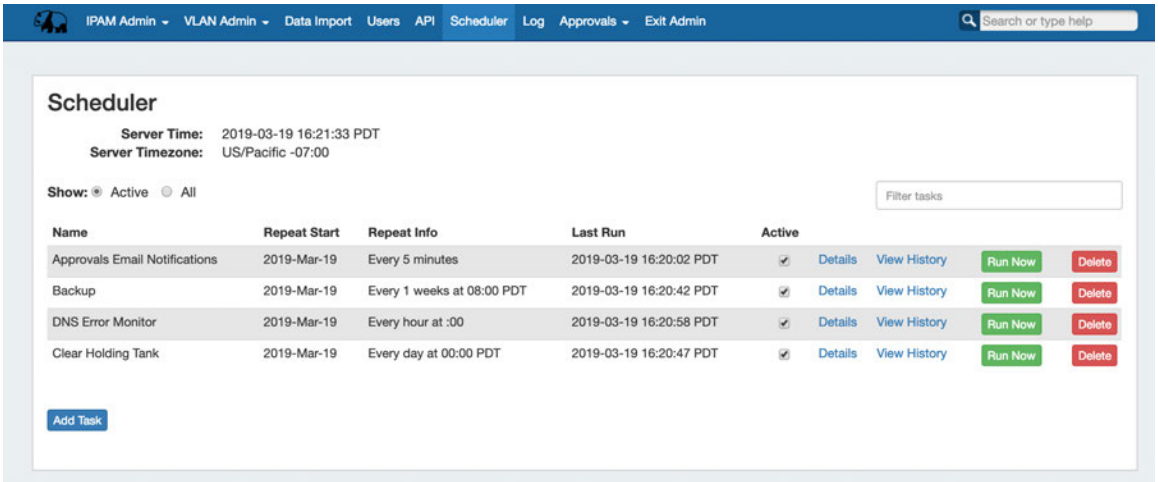
The created Reverse API endpoint may be added to the Reverse API Console Gadget, and shown on a Resource's Entry Page.

To add the Reverse API Gadget to a Section, see Customizing Sections.

For information on working in the Gadget, see Gadgets.

# Scheduler

# Scheduler




The Scheduler tab allows you to manage and schedule repeating tasks in ProVision.


- Scheduler
  - Available Task Types
    - Enter Task Details
    - Add Repeat Settings
    - Verify Repeat Settings and Save
  - Managing Tasks
    - Activate / Deactivate Tasks
    - Edit a Task
    - View Task Log
    - Delete a Task


## Available Task Types

Twelve predefined task types are available through the scheduler:

- **IPAM Alerts:**

  Set a time / frequency for IPAM aggregate alert emails to be sent to alert recipients. Alert recipient email and available space threshold percentage is set through the action menu for individual aggregates under the IPAM Tab. For information on setting up an alert for an aggregate, see Working with IP Aggregates.

- **DHCP Server Push:**

  Pushes configuration updates to the selected DHCP server(s). Select push to a single server, or all DHCP servers. See DHCP Tab for additional information on setting up DHCP Servers and Push options.

- **DNS Resource Monitor:**

  Checks Records/Zones periodically to monitor DNS server response.

- **Test Task**:

  Tests the scheduler and notification system - it simply sends a notification email to the provided address at the specified run time.

- **DNS Zone Transfer:**

  Pushes zone updates to the DNS servers. Select pushes to apply to all zones in a DNS Group, all zones on one server, or one particular zone. Requires the intended Group / Server / Zone to already exist in ProVision. See DNS Tab for additional information on setting up DNS Servers, Groups, Zones, and Push options.

- **DNS Zone Error Monitor:**

Checks the DNS records in theError state to determine if they have been fixed. Default setup is once a day, and you can set it to run more often if necessary. This task may replace or supplement the manual DNS Zone / Record "Check" button, depending on set frequency.

- **Process Holding Tank:**

Removes IP Blocks from the Holding Tank and returns them to the available pool. See Holding Tank Management.

- **Backup:**

Performs a data backup to the 6connect cloud servers, or to a selected resource server existing in ProVision.

- **Reports Importer:**

Checks ProVision logs and imports them into mysql to generate statistical reports that measures the money saved by Provision, viewable on the Reporting tab.

- **Approvals - Process Subscription Events:**

The "Approvals - Process Subscription" task processes approval request events and handles the sending of notification emails to subscribed Approvals Groups. If Approvals are in use with notifications, it is recommended to create this task with a run time of "every 5 minutes" and no end date. For information on working with Approvals, see DNS Tab and Approvals.

- **Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month:**

The "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month" task deletes any Approvals history events older than 30 days. It is recommended to run this task monthly to clear out obsolete approvals items and reduce approvals page load time. For information on working with Approvals, see DNS Tab and Approvals.

- **Delete old archived data and logs:**

The "Delete old archived data" task removes data older than 30 days from archived resources, logs, systems logs, and statistics from your ProVision instance. Be sure to use care with running this task to prevent accidental deletion of log data that may still be necessary for reference. It is typically recommended to run this task once every 1-3 months to reduce log data volumes.

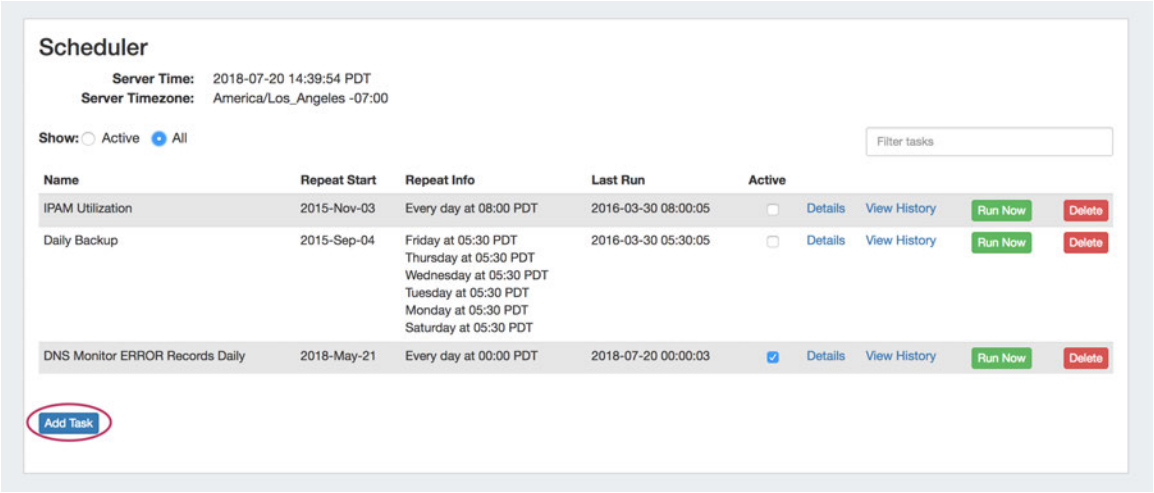
- **IPAM - Rotate Dynamic IPs:**

The Scheduler task "Rotate Dynamic IPs" reassigns single IPv4 NAT addresses (/32s) after 'x' days post-config to an available address denoted by the Dynamic_Available tags.

Prior to using this task, two blocks (one public, one private) must be NAT'ed in IPAM, the NAT Config pushed to a router, and appropriate blocks tagged with "Dynamic_Base" and "Dynamic_Available". For information on working with NAT'ed Blocks, see Working with IP Blocks .

# Add Task

To add a new scheduled task, hit the "Add Task" button below the Scheduler task list. You will then see the Task Detail Settings area.



# Enter Task Details

Under "Task Detail", fill in the following fields:

**Name:** Create a name for your task

**Task:** Select a pre-created task from the dropdown menu.

**Process Holding Tank Settings:** When selecting the Process Holding Tank task, you will have the following setting options:

> **Email From / Email To**: Enter an email address to send task notifications from, and the desired recipient. This is an optional setting.

**DNS Zone Transfer Settings:** When selecting the DNS Zone Transfer task, you will have the following setting options:

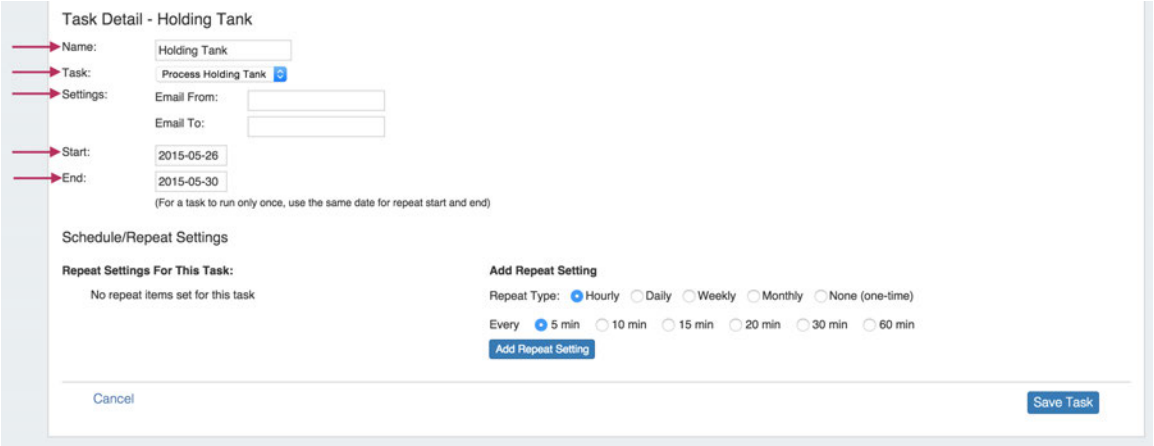
> **Select Action Type / Select Server:** When selecting the DNS zone transfer task, you can choose the action type to a) push all zones to all servers b) push all zones on a single server (then select server) or c) push one zone (then select zone).

**Backup the Database Settings:** When selecting the Backup task, you will have the following setting options:

> **Email From / Email To**: Enter an email address to send task notifications from, and the desired recipient. This is an optional setting.
>
> **Location:** Choose "Cloud" to save the backup to the 6connect cloud, or "Server" to save to a specified server resource already defined in ProVision. If "Server" is selected, choose the server resource from the dropdown list.

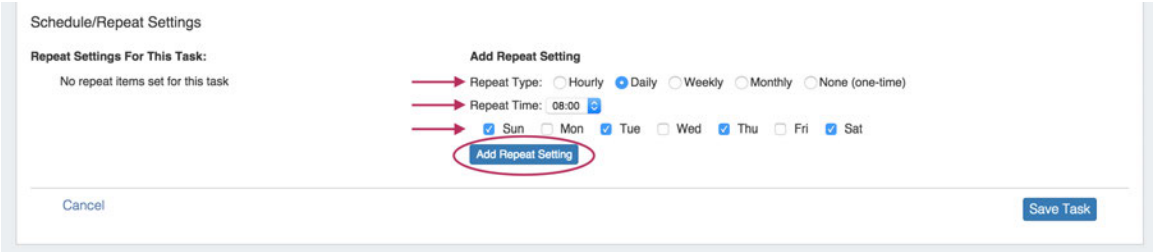
**Start:** The start date you wish the task to begin repeatedly occurring. By default, the current day is entered.

**End:** The date you wish repeat settings to end. For one-time tasks, enter the next calendar day after the start (run) date. To have a task run indefinitely, leave the end date blank




# Add Repeat Settings

Add repeat settings for your tasks. First, select your repeat type - hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, or none (one time). The type that you select will prompt different additional setting options.




Repeat Type options and details:

**Hourly:** Selecting the hourly repeat type will then prompt for the number of repeat times per hour - every 5,10, 15, 20, 30, or 60 minutes. All minute selections start from the top of the hour. For example, if every 20 minutes is selected, the task will run at :00, :20, :40 during each hour.

**Daily:** Selecting the daily repeat type will prompt for the specific time to repeat the task, and which days you wish the task to occur. The Repeat Time is based on a 24 hour clock set at UTC time. To assist in any time zone conversions, the current UTC time is shown at the top of the scheduler page.

**Weekly:** Selecting the weekly repeat type prompts for the specific time to repeat the task as well as frequency by week. Weekly tasks occur on the day selected as the start date. Using the weekly option, you may choose from a range of weekly (every 1 week) to once every two months (every 8 weeks).

**Monthly:** Selecting the monthly repeat type prompts for a repeat time and a day. For the day option, you can either choose a specific day (ie, the 15th of each month) or a relative day (the 1st Friday of each month).

For Monthly repeat settings, verify that the calendar day you select the task to occur exists! For example, if you select the 5th Saturday of each month, the task will repeat only in months which have 5 Saturdays and skip all other months.

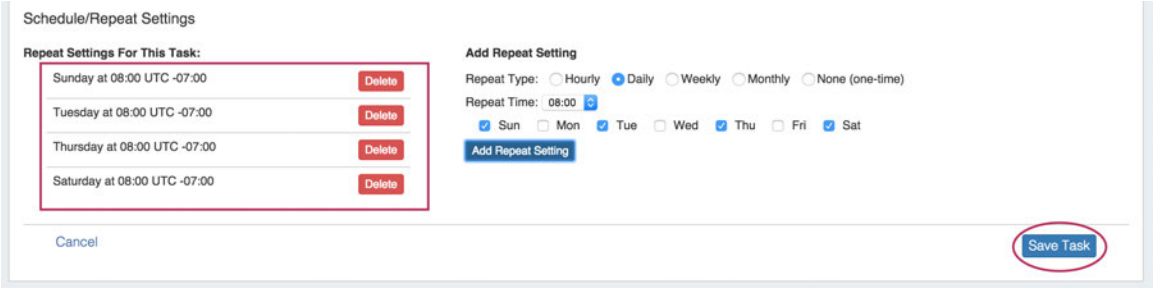
**None (one-time):** Select the time and day that you wish the single occurrence task to run. (Ensure that "End Date" in task details is set to the day after the desired run date).

After you have selected your Repeat Setting options, click the "Add Repeat Setting" button.

## Verify Repeat Settings and Save

When you add repeat settings, they will appear under the "Repeat Settings For This Task" area. Verify your settings, and if desired, you may delete individual repeat settings by hitting the "Delete" button.

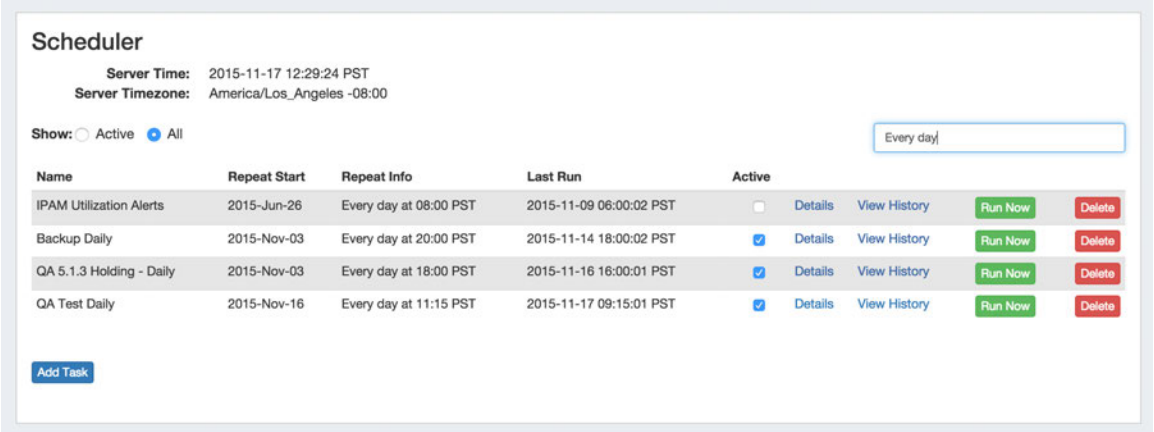
When complete, hit the "Save Task" button to finalize your changes and add your new task to the task list.




# Managing Tasks

After tasks have been added, they will show in the task list along with their basic settings. The list may be filtered to show all tasks or active tasks only by selecting the radio buttons next to "Show:". Further filtering may be done by typing a Name or Repeat Info keyword into the "Filter Tasks" input box above the task list.

From the task list itself, you can enable/disable tasks, view details, view history, run tasks, and delete tasks.




**Filters:**

**Show:** Select "Active" to show only active tasks (checkbox enabled under "Active" for the task), or "All" to show all tasks

**Filter Tasks (Text box):** To further filter the task list, type a Name or Repeat Info keyword (ie, "Backup" or "Every day") into the Filter Tasks text box.

**Task List:**

**Name:** The task name assigned during the "Add Task" creation process.

**Repeat Start:** The date selected for the repeat settings to start

**Repeat Info:** The repeat settings chosen for the task.

**Last Run:** The date and time the task was last run, if applicable.

**Active:** To activate tasks, simply click the check box under "Active" in the task list. To deactivate a task, uncheck it. By default, tasks are checked as active once created.

**Details:** This link will bring up the task details and repeat settings, which then may be edited and re-saved if needed.

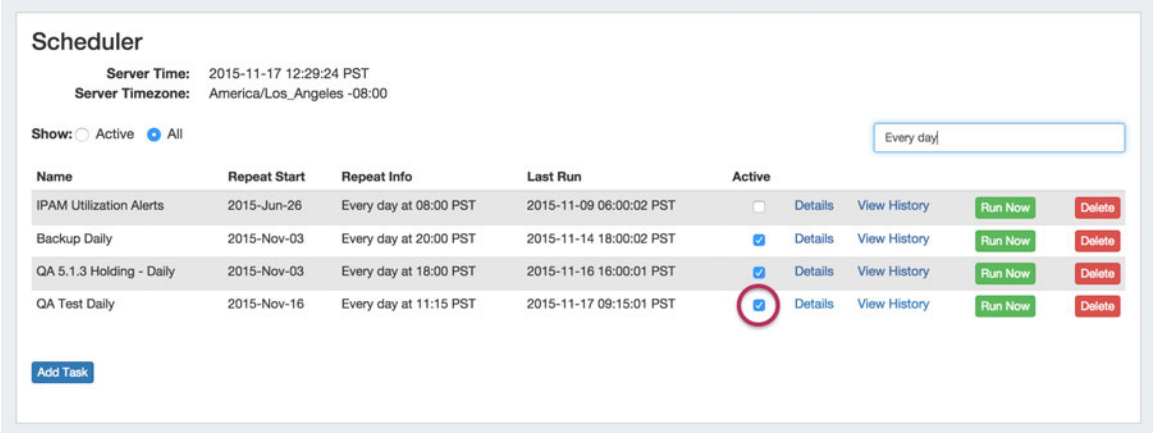
**View History:** This link will show the log for task actions.

**Run Now:** The "Run Now" button will run the scheduled task when pressed, regardless of the scheduled repeat settings.

**Delete:** Deletes the task.

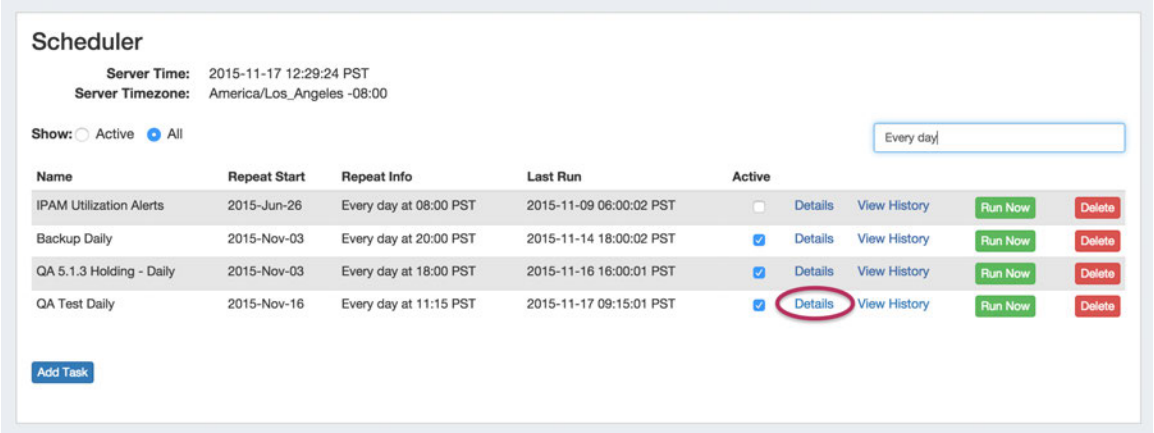
## Activate / Deactivate Tasks

Click on the check box under "Active" for the task

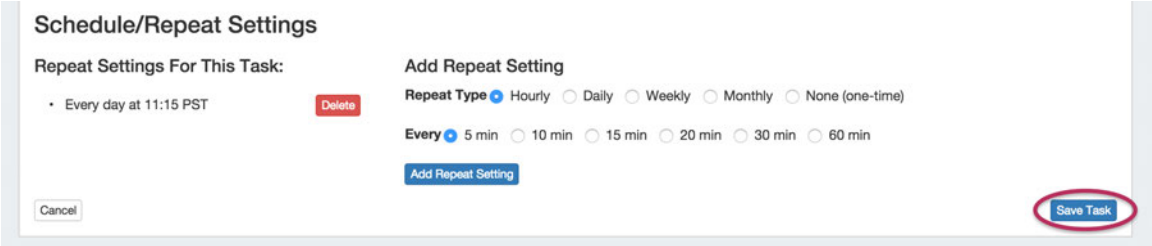



## Edit a Task

Click on the "Details" link for the task, then edit the Task Detail and Repeat Settings that appear below as needed.

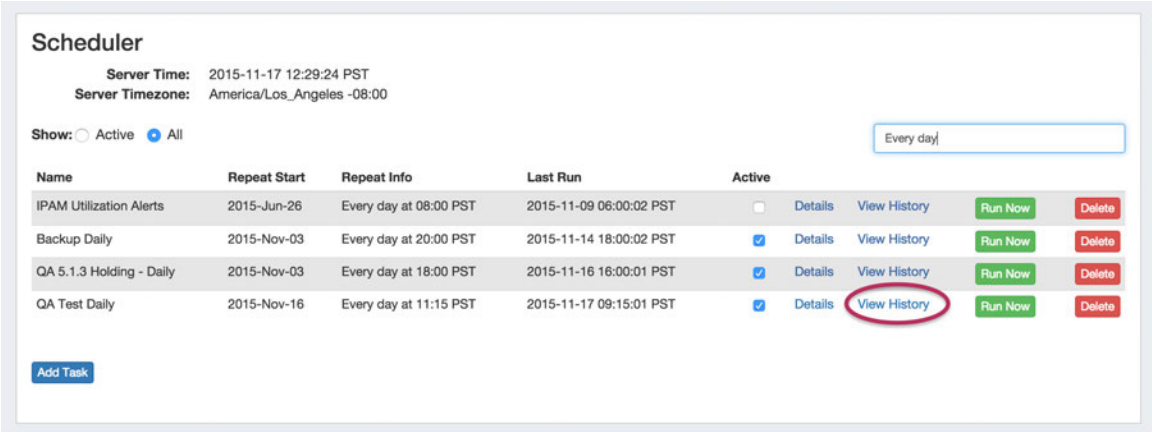



Hit "Save Task" when finished to save your changes, or select "Cancel" to close the view without saving.




## View Task Log

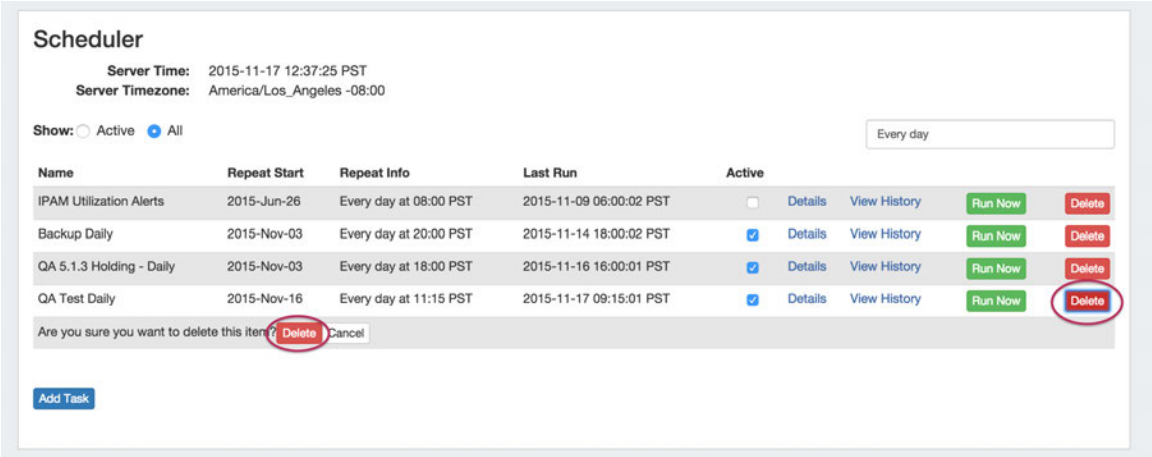
Click on the "History" link for the task.




The log details for the task will be shown below. When done, click on the "Close" button to exit the view.

## Delete a Task

To delete a task, hit the "Delete" button at the end of the row in the Task List. You will be presented with message asking if you are sure you wish to delete the task. Click on the "Delete" button next to the message to verify the deletion, or hit "Cancel" to exit without deleting.

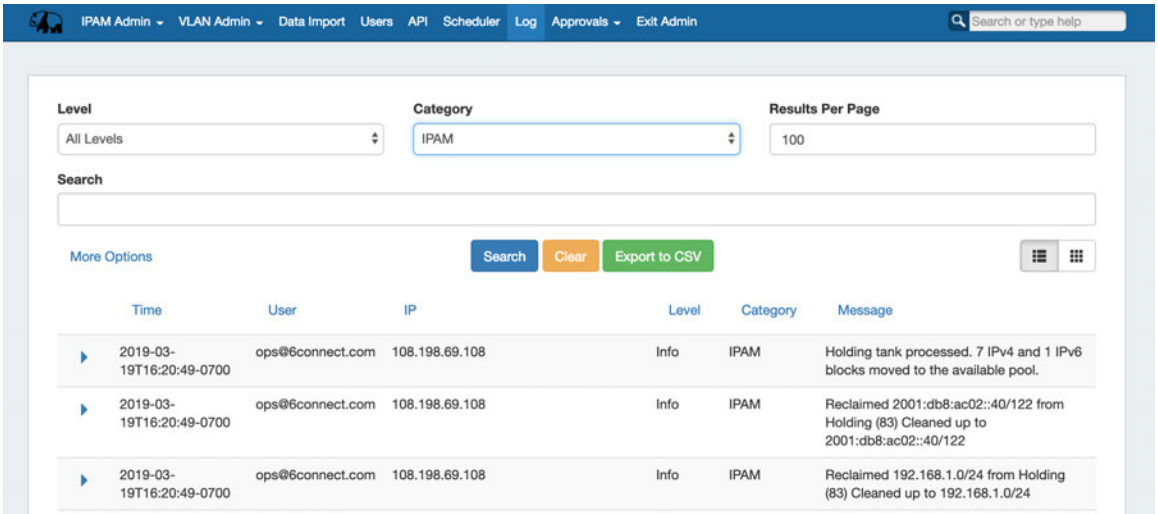


Enabling the Scheduler

To enable the scheduler in a local instance, add the following to cron:
* * * * * /path/to/php /path/to/ProVision/scheduler/task-runner.php

# Log

# Log




The 6connect ProVision log provides detailed information on actions performed in ProVision. The Log is only available to Admin users.

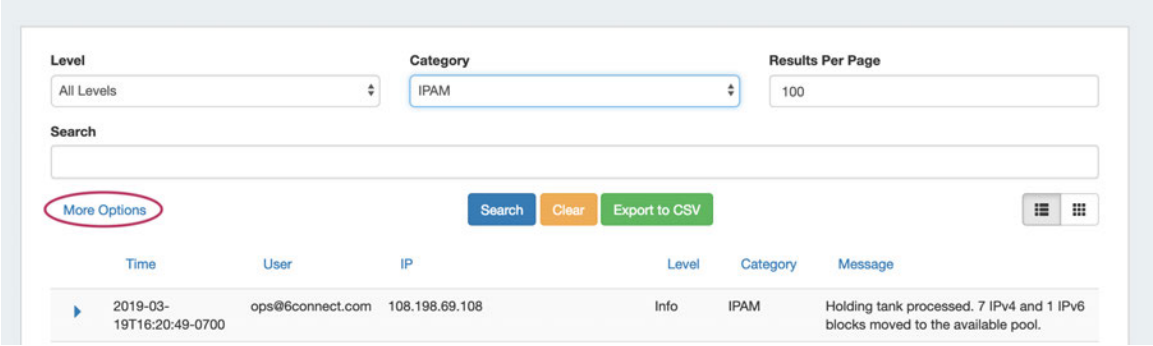
To access the Log, either navigate to the Admin area of ProVision, then click the **Log** Tab, or follow an area-specific Log link.

# Log Features

## Filters and search options:

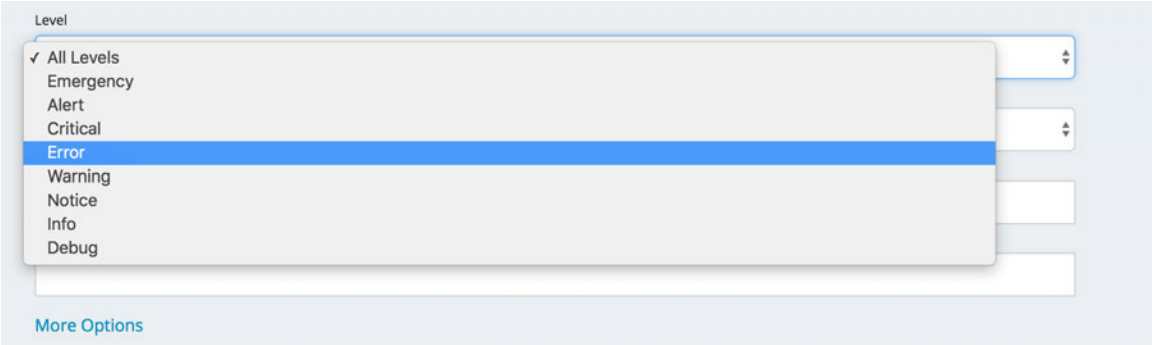
Filter the log list by selecting (or typing) the desired filter value at the top of the Log page, then click on the "Search" button.

Additional options are made visible by clicking on the "More Options" link below "Search".

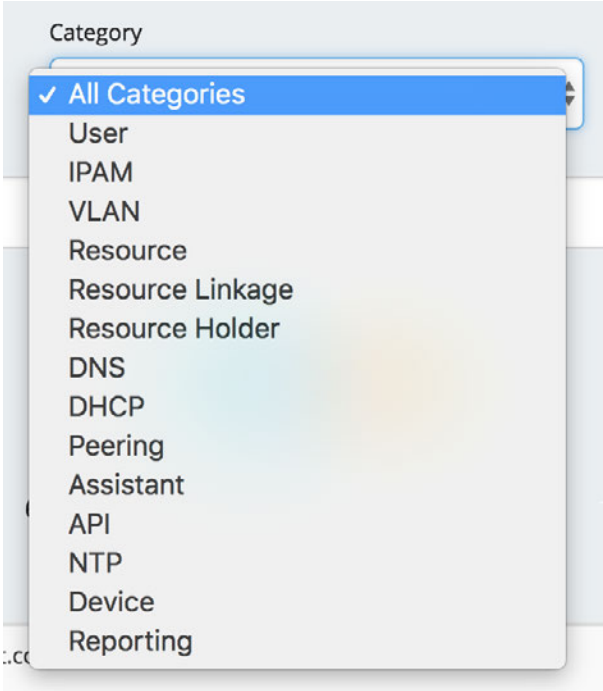



The following filters and options are available:

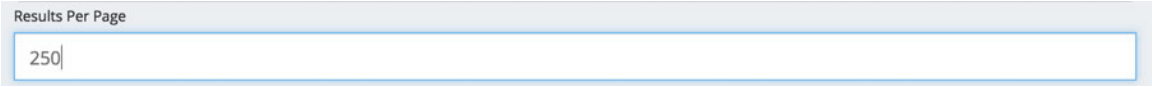
**Level:** Under the "Level" dropdown box, select "All Levels", "Emergency", "Alert", "Critical", "Error", "Warning", "Notice", "Info", or "Debug".




**Category:** Under the "Category" dropdown box, select "All Categories", "User", "IPAM", "VLAN", "Resource", "Resource Linkage", "Resource Holder", "DNS", "Peering", "Assistant", "API", "NTP", "Device", or "Reporting".




**Results per page:** In the "Results per page" text box, type the desired number of log entries to see per page. By default, this value is set to 100.




**Search:** Type a search string, such as the name of a resource, then click the "Search" button.

## More Options:

Additional detailed filter and search options are available under the "More Options" link.

**Log ID:** Retrieve a specific log entry from its log_id parameter.

**IP:** Search by IP of the machine that created the event in the log.

**Username:** Filter logs by ProVision username, or by "Unknown" user.

**Time:** Filter log entries by exact time created. Must be in datetime format (2016-08-14 16:41:18).

**Time Minimum:** The earliest day and time of log entries to show in results. Must be in datetime format (2016-08-14 16:41:18).

**Time Maximum:** The latest day and time of log entries to show in results. Must be in datetime format (2016-08-14 16:41:18).

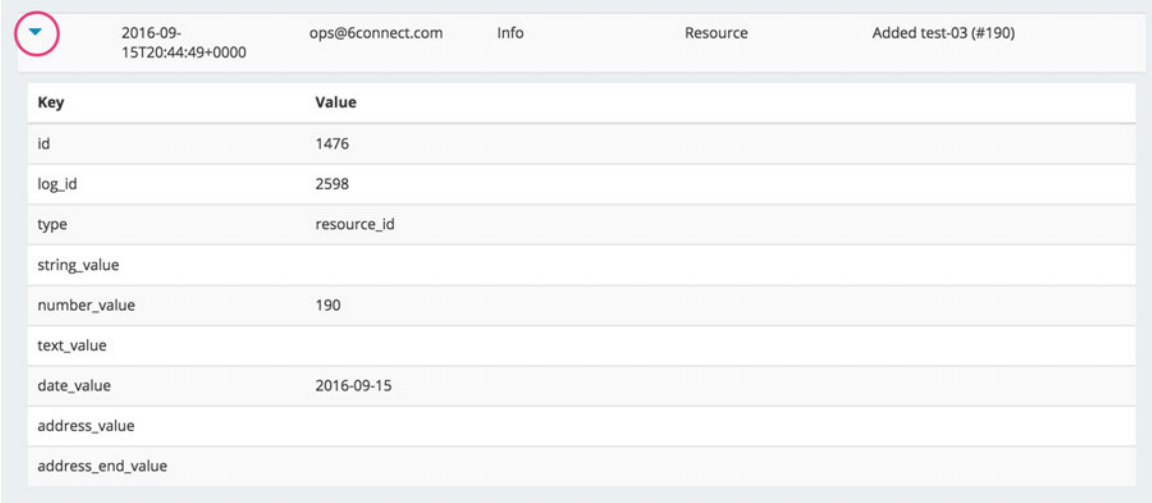
Tip

Use "Time Minimum" and "Time Maximum" together to specify a specific date / time range, such as one 24 hour period:

## Log Details:

Clicking on the blue arrow on the left side of each log entry expands the entry to show additional details pertaining to that entry.

Not all fields may be populated, and not all log types have applicable details.




Detail fields may include:

**id:** The id of the log detail record.

**log_id:** The id of the parent log entry (the entry that was clicked to reveal details).

**type:** Log category value.

**string_value:** String details.

**number_value:** For resource type log entries, the number_value is the associated resource id.

**text_value:** API details for API type log entries.

**date_value:** Day of the log entry.

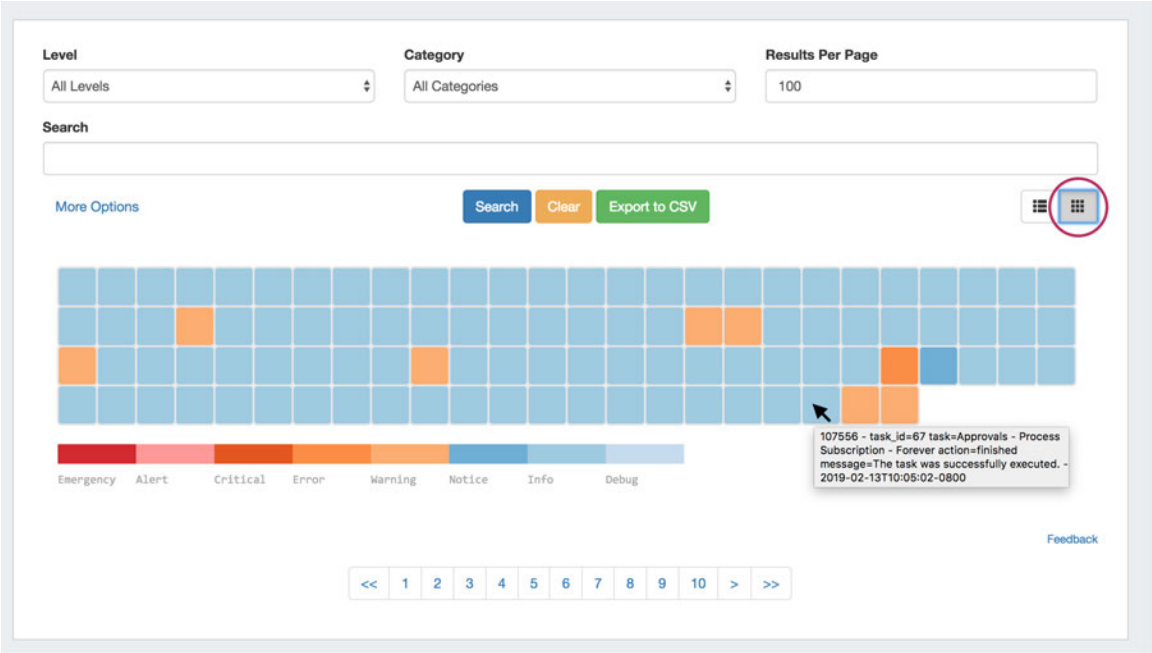
**address_value:** For IPAM type log entries, address_value is the starting integer value of the IP Block.

**address_end_value:** For IPAM type log entries, address_value is the ending integer value of the IP Block.

## Log Chart View

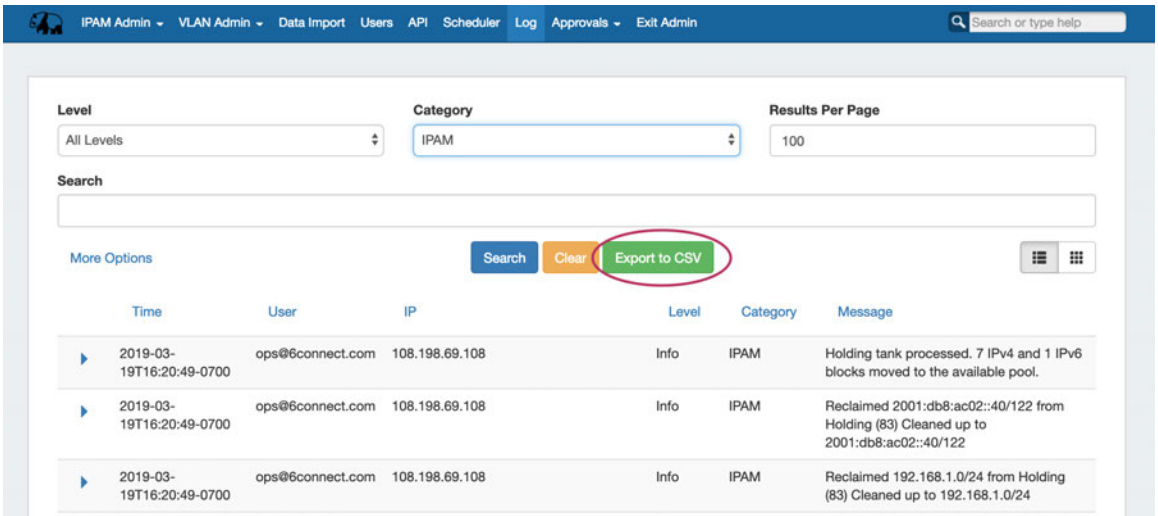
To view the graphical chart version of Logs, click the "chart" toggle on the bottom right of the search fields.

Each log event will be displayed as a color-coded box. You may view log details by hovering the mouse arrow over an event box.



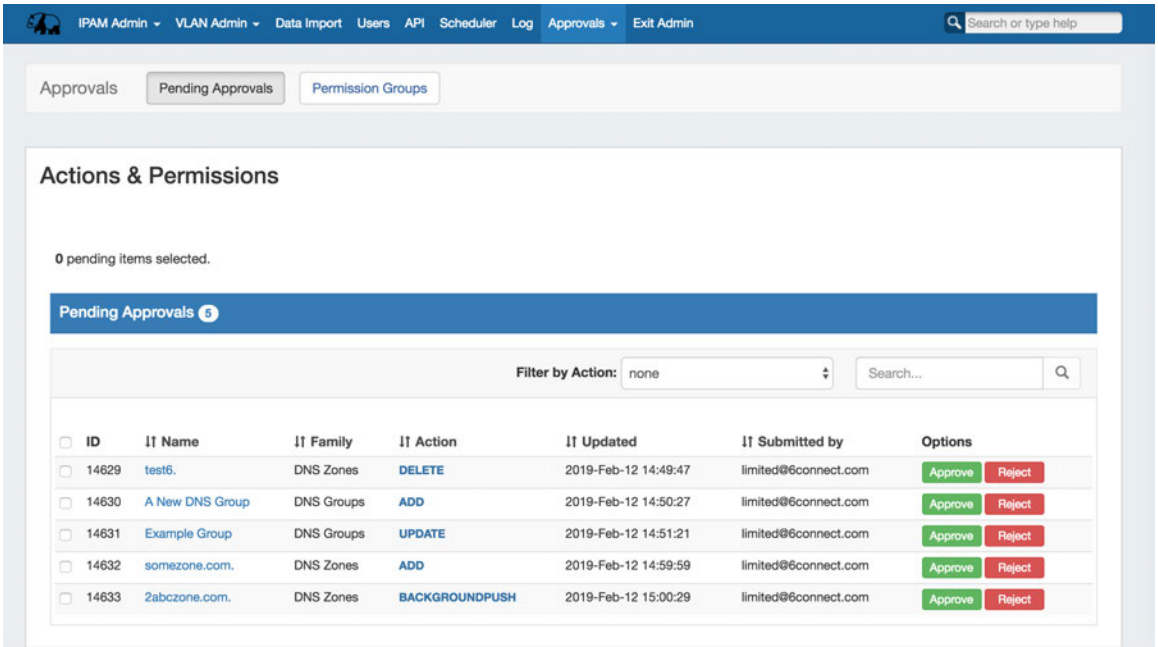

## Export Logs

Export the current log search results by clicking the "Export to CSV" button after performing your search.



# Approvals

# Approvals



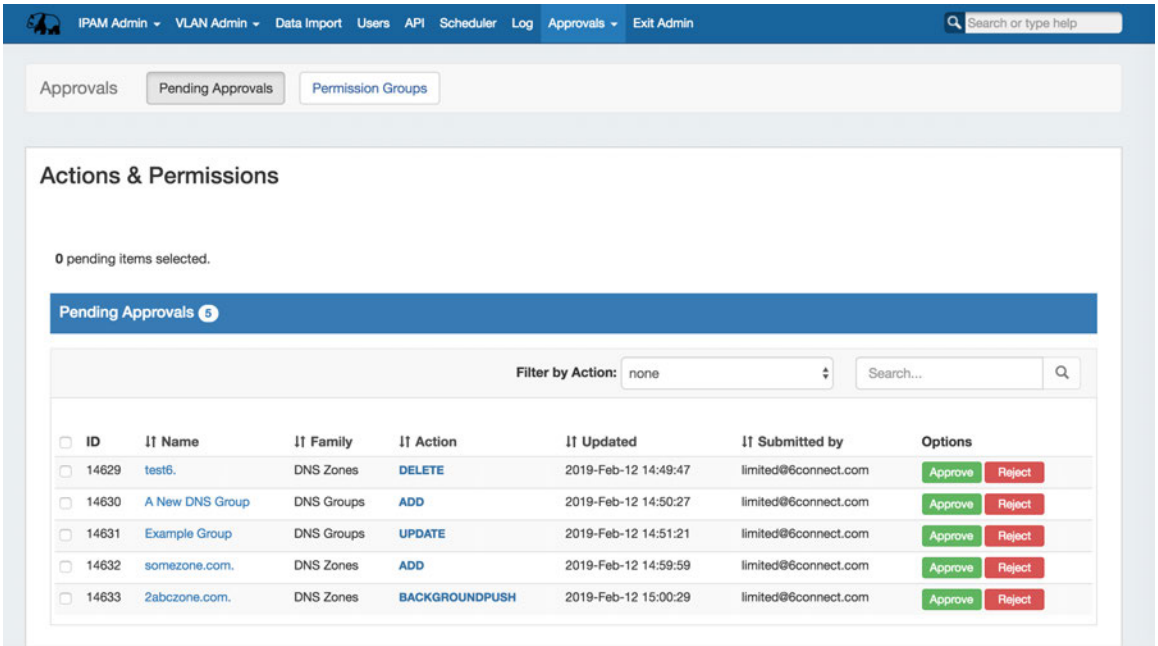

The Approvals module stores and queues DNS actions made by selected User Groups, and sends those actions to a Pending Changes list for administrative review.  Later, an administrator (or combination of administrators) can approve or reject these stored actions.

The admin **Approvals** Tab contains two sub-tabs: **Pending Approvals** and **Permission Groups**, which are the primary areas to manage Approvals items.

Currently, **Approvals** is available only for **DNS** related actions, while we gather feedback and use cases to inform possible future updates. If you are interested in providing feedback, a use case, or requests for future additions to the Approvals system, please contact feedback@6connect.com.


- Approvals
- Approvals Tab - Overview
  - Approvals Fundamentals (Before you Begin)
    - Policies
    - Family-Action Types
    - User Groups
  - Sample Group Scenarios
    - Scenario 1: One Approver Group, with Restricted Actions
    - Scenario 2: Multiple Approver Groups/Specific user, with Restricted Families
- Approval Workflows
  - Initial Setup
    - Step 1 - Review Existing User Groups and Process Needs
    - Step 2 - Add or Edit ProVision User Groups
    - Step 3 - Assign Approval Action Settings to Groups
    - Step 4 - Enable Notifications (Optional)
    - Step 6 - Add Scheduler Task: "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month"
  - Daily Use
- Additional Information


# Approvals Tab - Overview




The ProVision Approvals system gives administrators an additional layer of flexibility and oversight to manage which changes are allowed to DNS items by users.

With Approvals, administrators can set group permission rules requiring that certain types of DNS changes made by a user are either 1) automatically denied or 2) approved by an administrator. In the latter case, one or more admin group(s) must be assigned to approve those action types.

Viewing requested changes and managing the group permission rules are both managed from the admin **Approvals** tab, under the **Pending Approvals** and **Permission Groups** sub tabs**.**

# Approvals Fundamentals (Before you Begin)

The approvals system revolves around three primary concepts: Policies, Family-Action Types, and User Groups. An understanding of all three is necessary before setting up Approvals, and additional steps may need to be taken to ensure proper use of Approvals - such as creating additional User Groups.

## Policies

When setting up Approvals Permission Groups, a policy will need to be selected to apply to the User Group / Family-Action Type combination selected. The set policy determines how the Approvals system handles an attempted change by a member of the associated User Group.

There are three available policies:

- **Deny:** The type of change is immediately denied when a member of the User Group attempts to perform that action.
- **Action to be Approved:** The type of change made by any user in the associated User Group will require an administrative user to approve the change (The approver must be included under a "Must Approve" group for the same action).
- **Must Approve:** A user from the group must approve the action for it to be removed from the "Pending" list, and sucessfully execute. If more than one group is assigned with the "Must Approve" policy for an action, all groups must have a user from that group approve the action for it to execute. If the change has only been partially approved, its status will be "Pending, awaiting approval from others" and no action will be executed until all groups have provided a response to the action.

Ensure that for any group/action set with an "Action to be Approved" policy, another group is set with "Must Approve" for the same family-action type. Failure to provide groups for both submitter and approver may result in changes not being processed, due to not having a user assigned to approve the request.

## Family-Action Types

In Approvals, the "Action" listed in the Pending Approval information or when setting Approval Permission Groups will be one of the following change types:

- **Add:** Creating a new Group, Zone, Record, or Server

- **Delete:** Deleting a Group, Zone, Record, or Server
- **Update:** Any change to an item that isn't Add, Delete, or Push - such as a settings change, renaming, or entering a value in a field.
- **Push / BackgroundPush:** DNS Server Pushes - manual or scheduled

It is important to note that Action types in Approvals is related-to-but-different than CRUD permissions as set in User groups - although the "Add" Action type and "Create" CRUD permission seem the same, the action type "Add" only applies to *a specific event* occurring, rather than a holistic overarching system-level permission. In order to perform a certain Approval Action Type, a user must already have the CRUD permissions to attempt it.The CRUD permissions determine whether the user can even view an area or attempt an action to begin with, Approvals Policies on Action Types determine what is done with the Action *after* the attempted change.

Further fine-tuning of the action types for permissions is done by selecting the combination of "Family" (type of DNS item) with the Action Type. DNS Families include DNS Servers, DNS Groups, DNS Zones, and DNS Records. Each type of action can be performed on each family, so when setting up Approval Permission Groups you may choose to set the policy for the entire Family (ex:"All DNS Group actions"), Action (ex:"Add actions for all DNS Families"), or just a specific combination (ex: "Only DNS group Delete").

## User Groups

Approvals uses ProVision User Groups to determine which users must have a change approved, denied, or can approve others' actions. Therefore, User Groups must be set up with the appropriate users and basic permissions under each group before using Approvals. For information on setting up User Groups and how the basic permissions structure works in ProVision, see Users & Permissions, Global Permissions , and Working With Users and Groups.

Before using Approvals, a review of your user and User Groups is highly recommended to ensure the following:

- That administrators who will be approving change requests are included in a Global Admin (TLR level + Admin) group, in order to access the "Approvals" tab and perform Approve/Reject responses.
- That users included under the same User Groups are similar in terms of what types of tasks they perform and what level of Approval oversight is needed.
    - Example: If "Group A" consists of seven users - four who will need all Add and Delete actions approved, two who do not, and their manager (who will approve their actions)- you may need to move those users under three groups: 1) A group for those requiring action approvals, 3) a group for the users not requiring approvals, and 3) the manager associated with a Global Admin group in order to access Approvals.
- That any user that will be performing DNS Actions with Approvals are in a User Group with appropriate 'resource' CRUD permissions to perform the actions subject to approval.
    - Example: If a user needs zone creations approved, ensure that they have (at the very least) "Create" and "Read" resource permissions so that they can view DNS information and create a zone!
- Consider limiting groups associated with Approvals to *only* those users relevant to the Approvals system, especially if using Approval Notifications. Approval Change Notifications are emailed to all users of the associated User Group - not just the submitter / approver. Be conscientious of colleagues' email boxes and consider which users may not appreciate being included with notifications.

# Sample Group Scenarios

Below are a couple of sample scenarios to illustrate common Approval situations, with example notes on Approval Settings.

## Scenario 1: One Approver Group, with Restricted Actions

One Admin group and two DNS worker groups with different levels (high - low) of oversight needed, with restrictions set for particular Action types.

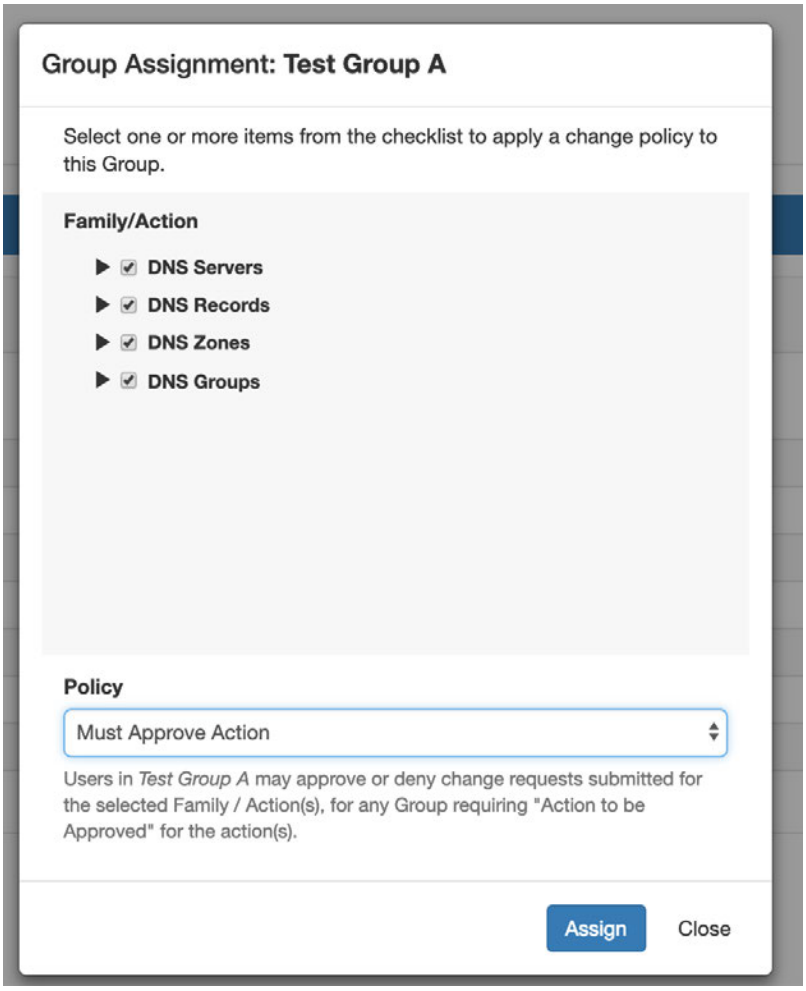
| Group 1A (Admin) | Group 1B | Group 1C |
|---|---|---|
| • Global Admins (Full TLR User Group Perms + Admin)<br>• All Admins in this group can approve any change requests<br>• It doesn't matter which Admin user approves a request<br><br>**Approval Group Settings:**<br><br>• Set to policy "Must Approve" for all DNS Family / Action types<br>• Tip: Click the quick select checkbox next to each DNS Family name to select all actions under that family | • Users with minimal oversight<br>• Can work fully in all DNS family areas<br>• Only needs admin approval for DNS Pushes<br><br>**Approval Group Settings:**<br><br>• Set to policy "Action to be Approved" for "Push" and "Background Push" actions only, under each DNS Family in Group Assignment | • Users with high oversight<br>• Not allowed to Add or Delete any DNS item<br>• Needs admin approval for all DNS Push and Updates<br><br>**Approval Group Settings:**<br><br>• Set to policy "Deny" for "Add" and "Delete" actions under each DNS Family; save<br>• Open again, select "Update" and "Push / Background Push" actions under each DNS family, and set the policy to "Action to be Approved"; save. |

Expand the following link to view example images of setting the assignments for all three groups:

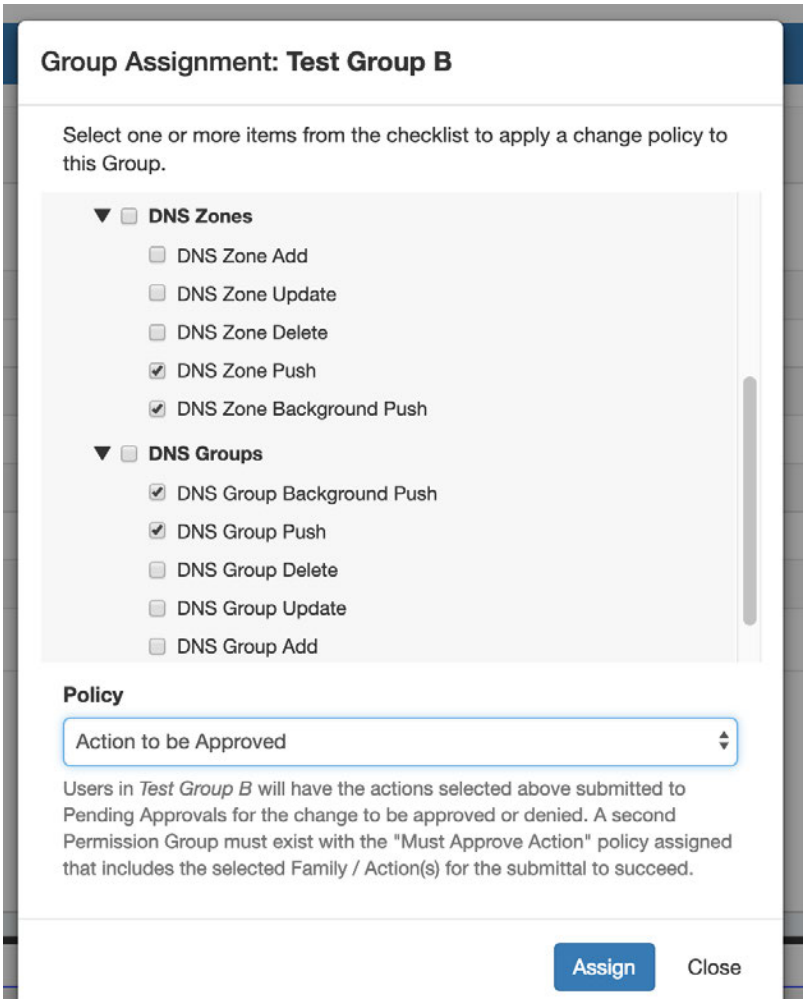
These examples use the "Assign" button for the Group under the **Approvals** **Permission Groups** sub-tab, Groups page.

**Scenario 1**

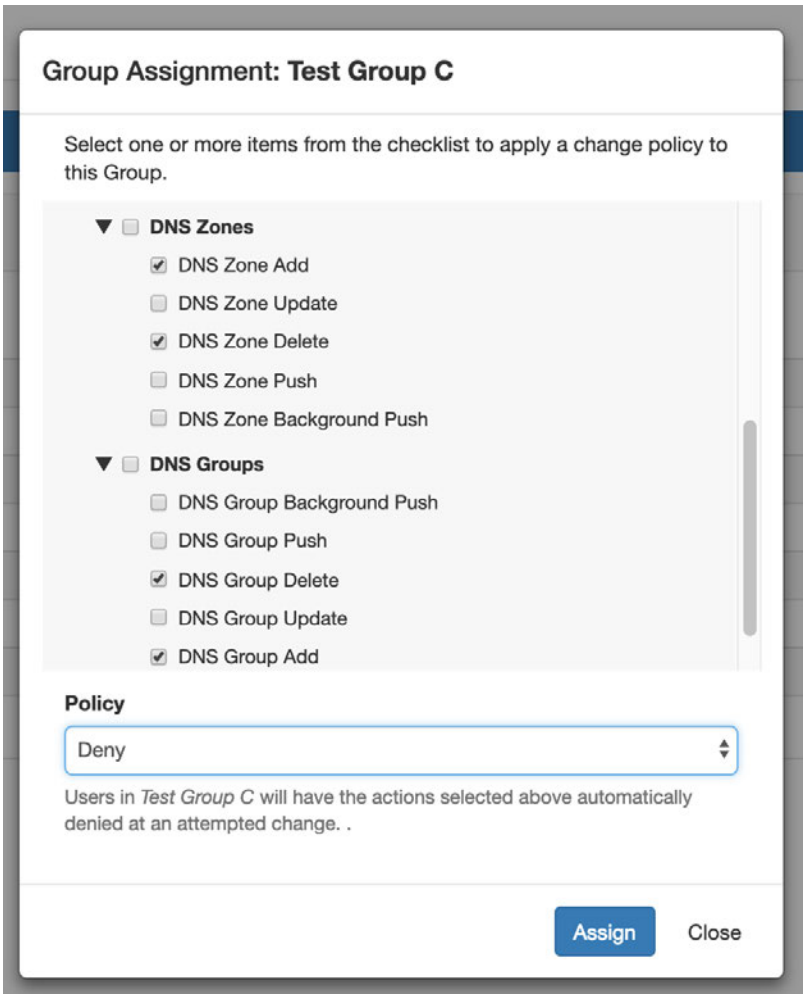
Group A:



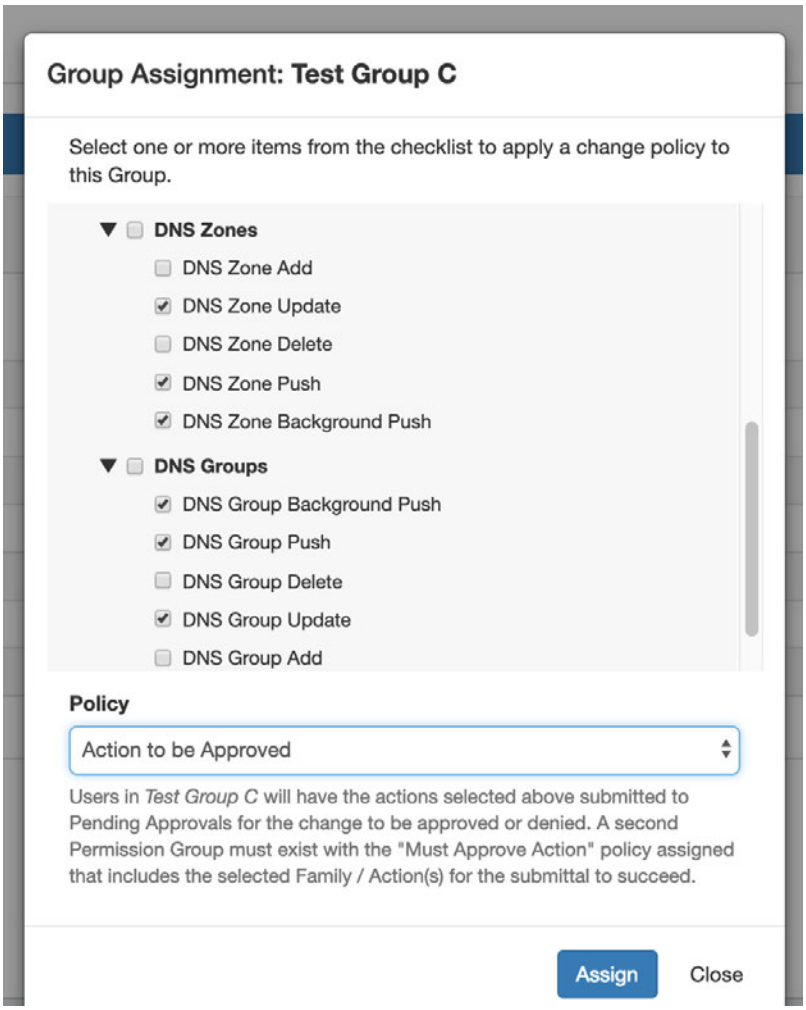

Group B:




Group C, Deny Policy:




Group C, Action to be Approved Policy:




These settings may also be set by Action Type instead of Group, from the **Approvals** **Permission Groups** sub-tab, Actions page.

## Scenario 2: Multiple Approver Groups/Specific user, with Restricted Families

Two Admin approval groups exist: One general Approver group that can approve any action type, and a second Group containing one person, Bob, who must sign off on any action taken under DNS Groups.

| Group 2A (Admin Approvers) | Group 2B (Admin Approver Bob) | Group 2C |
|---|---|---|
| • Global Admins (Full TLR User Group Perms + Admin)<br>• All Admins in this group can approve any change requests<br>• It doesn't matter which Admin user approves a request<br>• DNS Group changes require multiple levels of oversight- from both this group and Bob<br><br>**Approval Group Settings:**<br><br>• Set to policy "Must Approve" for all DNS Family / Action types<br>• Tip: Click the quick select checkbox next to each DNS Family name to select all actions under that family | • Global Admins (Full TLR User Group Perms + Admin)<br>• Only contains one user - Bob, who specifically must approve of any change to DNS Groups<br><br>**Approval Group Settings:**<br><br>• Set to policy "Action to be Approved" for "Push" and "Background Push" actions only, under each DNS Family in Group Assignment | • Full Access throughout DNS<br>• Not allowed to work with DNS Servers, even if they might have admin level access otherwise<br>• Changes to DNS Groups and DNS Records require approval<br><br>**Approval Group Settings:**<br><br>• Set to policy "Deny" after quick-selecting the DNS Servers Family; save<br>• Open again, quick-select the "DNS Groups" and "DNS Records" families, then set the policy to "Action to be Approved"; save. |

# Approval Workflows

## Initial Setup

The high level process to use when first setting up approvals is as follows:

1. Review User Groups and Approval Process Needs

### Step 1 - Review Existing User Groups and Process Needs

When setting up Approvals for the first time, review the information in the previous section under "Approvals Fundamentals" to ensure a basic understanding of how Policies, Actions, and User Groups relate together in Approvals.

Then, take a few minutes to think about the following questions to get a better sense of how to use Approvals with your specific organization:

Who are the users that perform DNS tasks, and at what level?

*Affects which users should be included in what User Groups*

What ProVision User Group(s) are they in?

*Approvals settings are applied to the User Group, not individuals - ensure users with similar oversight needs are grouped together*

What actions made by a certain user group should be automatically denied, if any?

*Assign the "Deny" policy to that Action/User Group combination*

What actions made by a certain user group should require oversight (admin approval / rejection)?

*Assign "Action to be approved" to that Action/User Group combination*

Who is the admin / User Group that will make the final approval on a change?

*Ensure the approver(s) is in a User Group with the "Must Approve" policy assigned for the actions requiring approval*

Should any changes require multiple admins / User Groups to approve it in order to execute?

*A single user from every group assigned with "Must Approve" for the action must approve the action for it to succeed*

*If two admins are required to both separately agree on a change, they should be under two separate User Groups assigned "Must Approve"*

What User Groups would need to receive email Approval Status notifications, and on what type of actions?

*Affects whether to enable notifications and set up the scheduler task to send the notifications, and to what User Groups. When enabled, all users of the relevant group(s) will receive the email(s)*

Once your User Groups are optimized for use with Approvals, you may want to write down a quick note on which Action Types and policies are planned for each group.

2. Edit User Groups / Create Approvals-Specific User Groups, if needed

### Step 2 - Add or Edit ProVision User Groups

From here, depending on the answers to the questions in step 1, you may need to do one or more of the following from the **Users** tab:

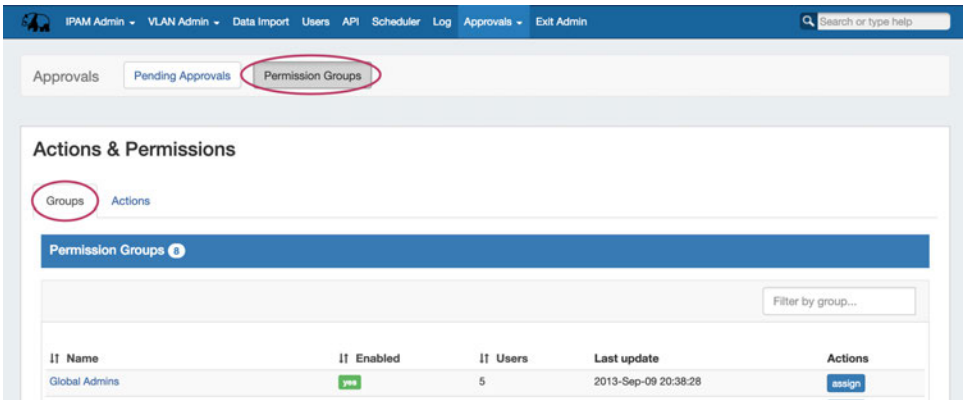
a. Edit existing User Groups to add or remove users, in order to combine users who will need similar action types approved.
b. Verify the User Groups have appropriate CRUD permissions set to perform the action(s) to be approved (e.g, you may have previously removed "Create" permissions for a group, but if the intent is now for those users to have "Add" actions approved by an Admin, the submitter will need User Group resource "Create" permissions back!)
c. Create new User Groups specifically for use with Approvals (recommended)
d. Associate users with different, or additional User Groups (remember - users can be associated with multiple groups!)

For more information on adding and editing ProVision User Groups, see Users & Permissions, Global Permissions, and Working With Users and Groups.

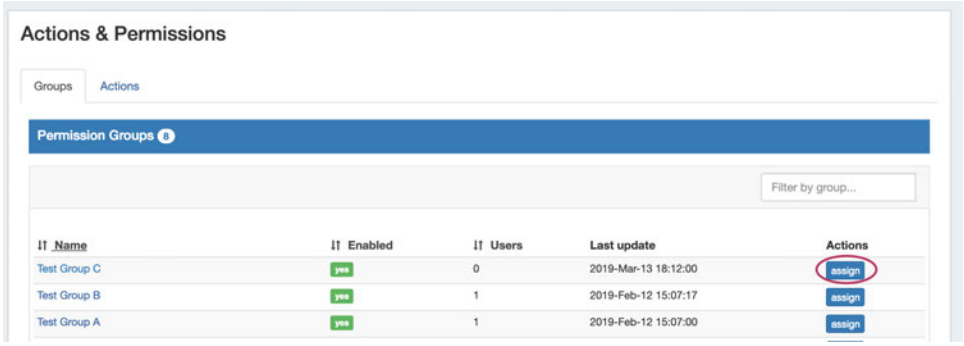
3. Assign Action and Policy Settings to User Groups

## Step 3 - Assign Approval Action Settings to Groups

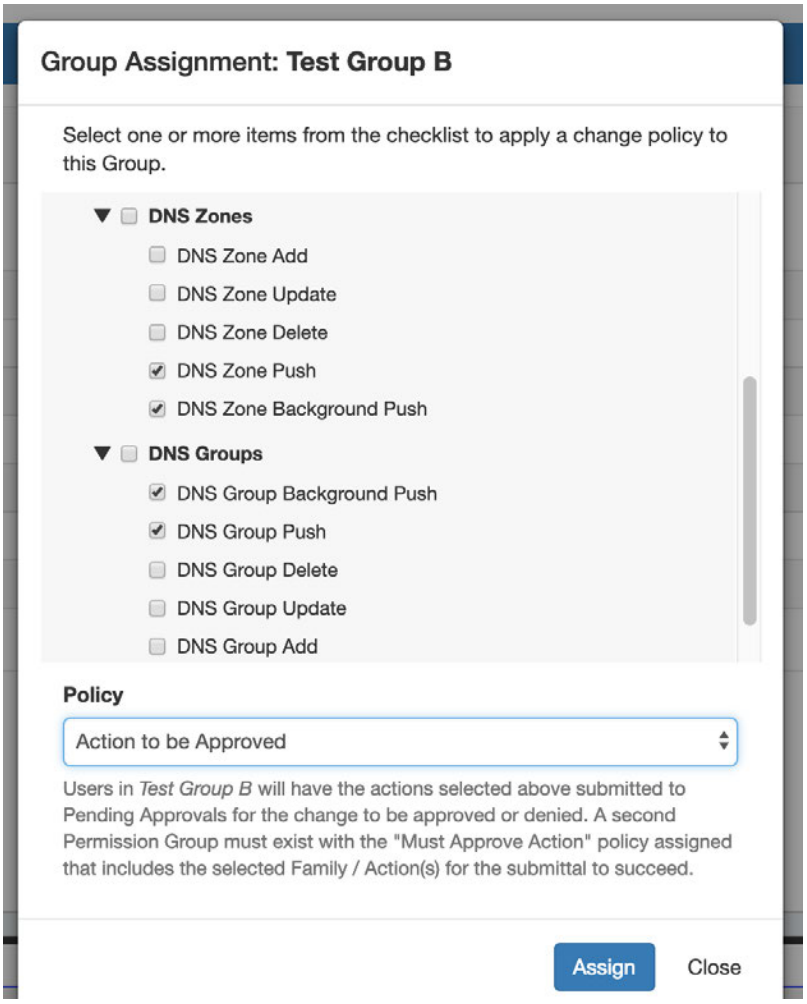
From the **Approvals** Tab, navigate to the **Permission Groups** sub-tab.




Then, under the **Groups** page tab, find the ProVision User Group you wish to want to assign a policy to and click "Assign".




Clicking the "Assign" button for a group brings up a checklist to select what policy to apply to the group for what Family and Actions (i.e. DNS Zone 'Add' or DNS Group 'Update'). You can "quick-select" all actions for a DNS Family (Severs, Groups, Zones, Records) by clicking the checkbox next to the family name, or only select individual action types for each Family.



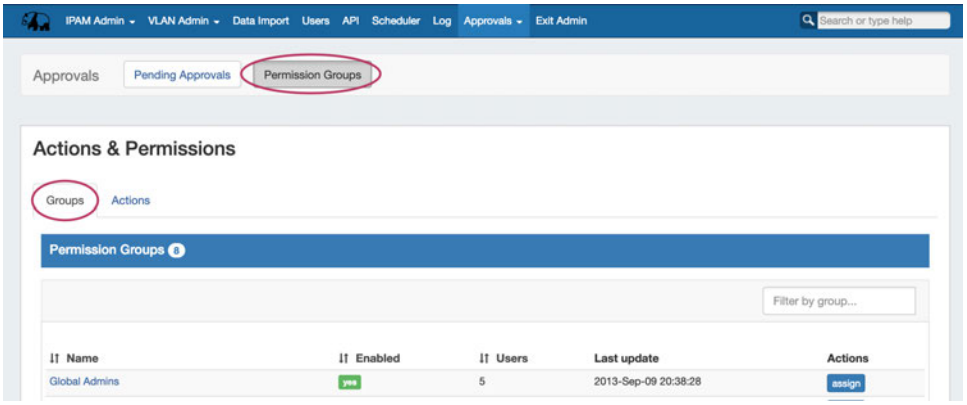

Once you've selected the applicable Family/Action combinations to apply a policy for, select either "Deny", "Action to be Approved", or "Must Approve Action" under Policy.

When done, Click "Assign", and repeat as needed for other Policy types or User Groups.

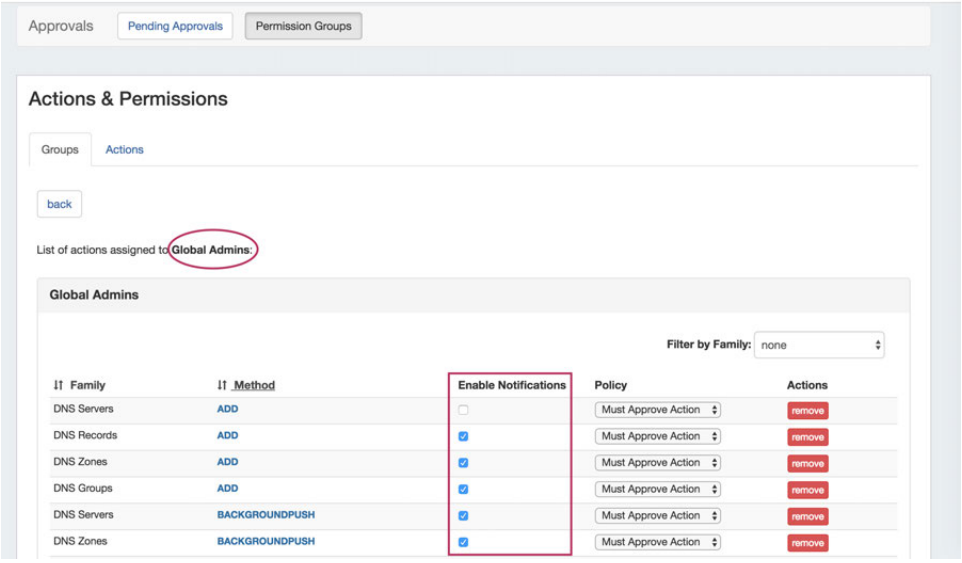
4. If using Approvals notifications, enable notifications for the appropriate Permissions Group(s)

## Step 4 - Enable Notifications (Optional)

From the **Approvals** Tab, navigate to the **Permission Groups** sub-tab **Groups** page tab.




Click on the group name for which you want to set notifications - the Group Permissions Detail page will provide additional information on the group's settings.




For any Family/Action that you want to enable notifications, click the checkbox under "Enable Notifications". All users of that group will get email notifications when a change of the selected type(s) are made.

5. If using Approvals notifications, set up a Scheduler task for "Approvals - Process Subscription"

### Step 5 - Add Scheduler Task: "Approvals - Process Subscription"

The "Approvals - Process Subscription" task processes approval request events and handles the sending of notification emails to subscribed Approvals Groups - this task must be created and running on a regular interval in order for Approval Notification emails to be sent.

In order to receive the most up to date information in the Approval Notifications, is recommended to create this task with a run time of "every 5 minutes" and no end date.

For information on setting up Scheduler Tasks, see Scheduler Tab.

6. Set up a Scheduler Task for "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month", to occasionally clear out old and obsolete Approval request events

## Step 6 - Add Scheduler Task: "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month"

The "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month" task deletes any Approvals history events older than 30 days.

It is recommended to set this task to run monthly with no end date, to clear out obsolete approvals items, reduce data storage space needs, and reduce approvals page load time.

For information on setting up Scheduler Tasks, see Scheduler Tab.

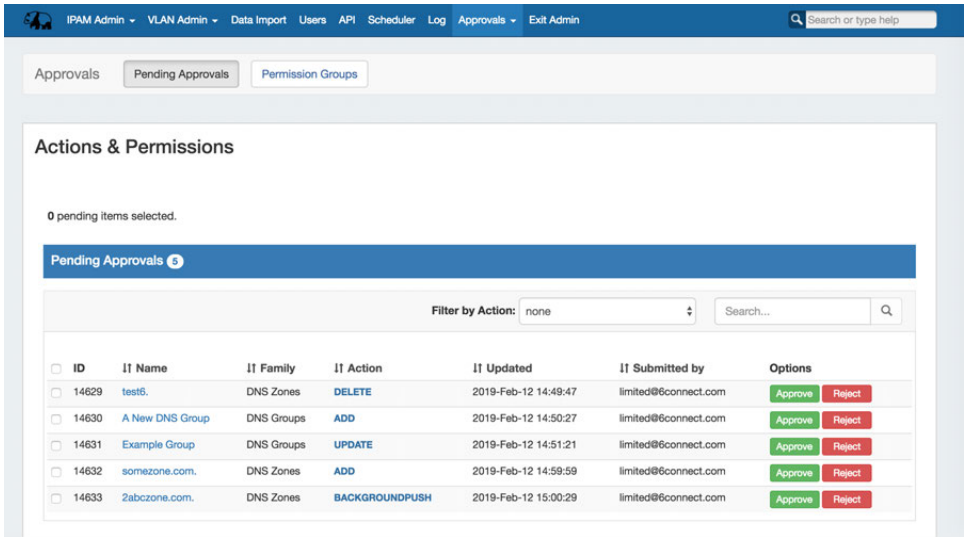
# Daily Use

On a day-to-day basis after initial setup, an Approvals Workflow will be similar to the following (with "Submitter" as the user whose actions require approval, and "Approver" as the admin with the ability to approve/reject the change):

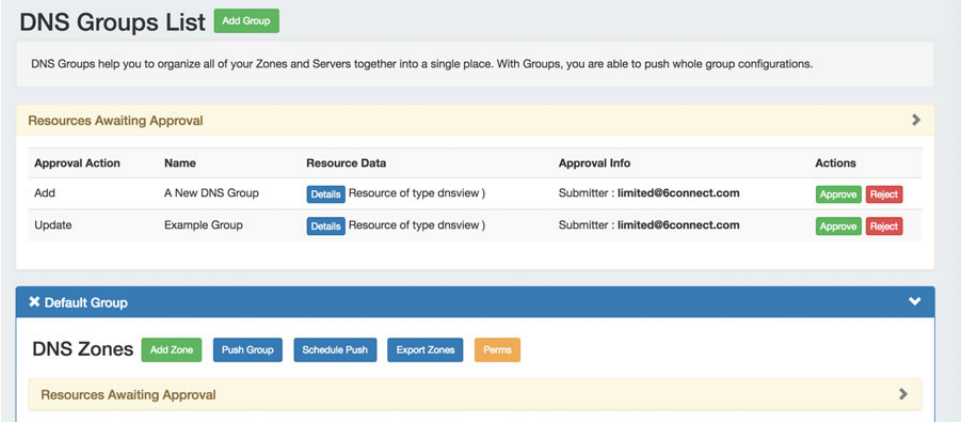
1. Submitter makes an action (either by action type or DNS Family) that requires approval
2. Submitter is notified that their action is pending approval

3. The requested change is sent to the **Approvals** Tab **Pending Approvals** list, and also to the **DNS** **Resources Awaiting Approval** module (the submitter may see their own submitted action under "Resources awaiting approval", but only Approvers can take approve /reject actions)

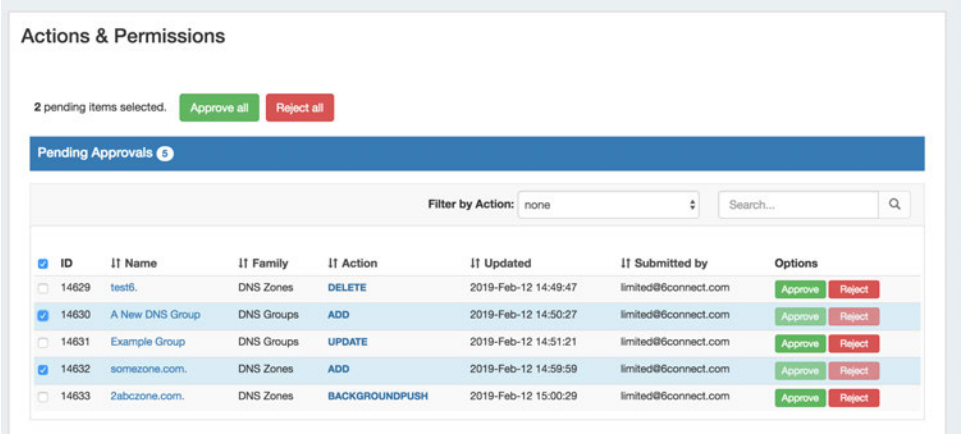
The **Pending Approvals** list is under the **Approvals** Tab. It shows Approvals events (change requests) for which the user has the ability to Approve or Deny - it does not show approval requests for all of ProVision or those for other users.




A "Resources Awaiting Approval" module will display in selected DNSv3 pages to Users with Admin / Approval permissions, if a change has been submitted on that page that is pending approval by the User's Approval Group.

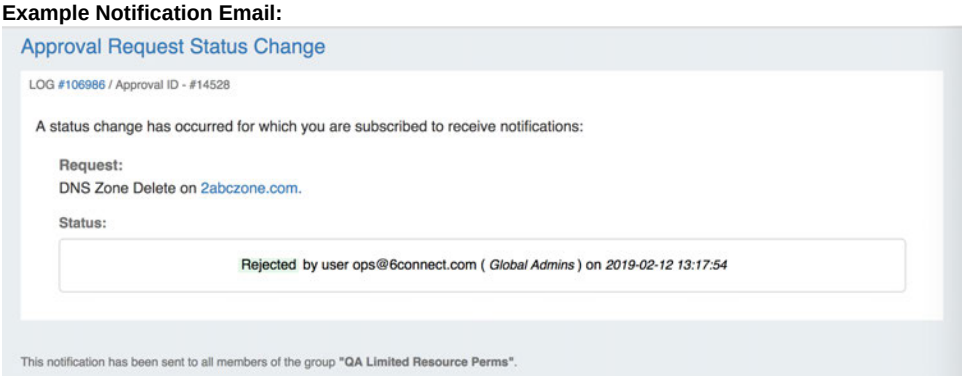



4. The Approver reviews the change in either their **Approvals** Tab **Pending Approvals** list, or the **DNS**Resources Awaiting Approval module, and chooses to Approve or Reject the change:




   a. If Approved, and no other groups need to approve it, then the change executes and is saved. A status change notification email is sent, if enabled.
   b. If Approved, and is waiting approval from an additional User Group, the change continues to be held as Pending, until the other group responds (Both groups must "Approve" for the change to execute). A status change notification email is sent, if enabled, stating that the change is awaiting another Group.
   c. If Rejected, the change is not executed. A status change notification email is sent, if enabled.

**Example Notification Email:**



Approval Request Status Change

LOG #106986 / Approval ID - #14528

A status change has occurred for which you are subscribed to receive notifications:

**Request:**
DNS Zone Delete on 2abczone.com.

**Status:**

Rejected by user ops@6connect.com ( *Global Admins* ) on *2019-02-12 13:17:54*

This notification has been sent to all members of the group **"QA Limited Resource Perms"**.

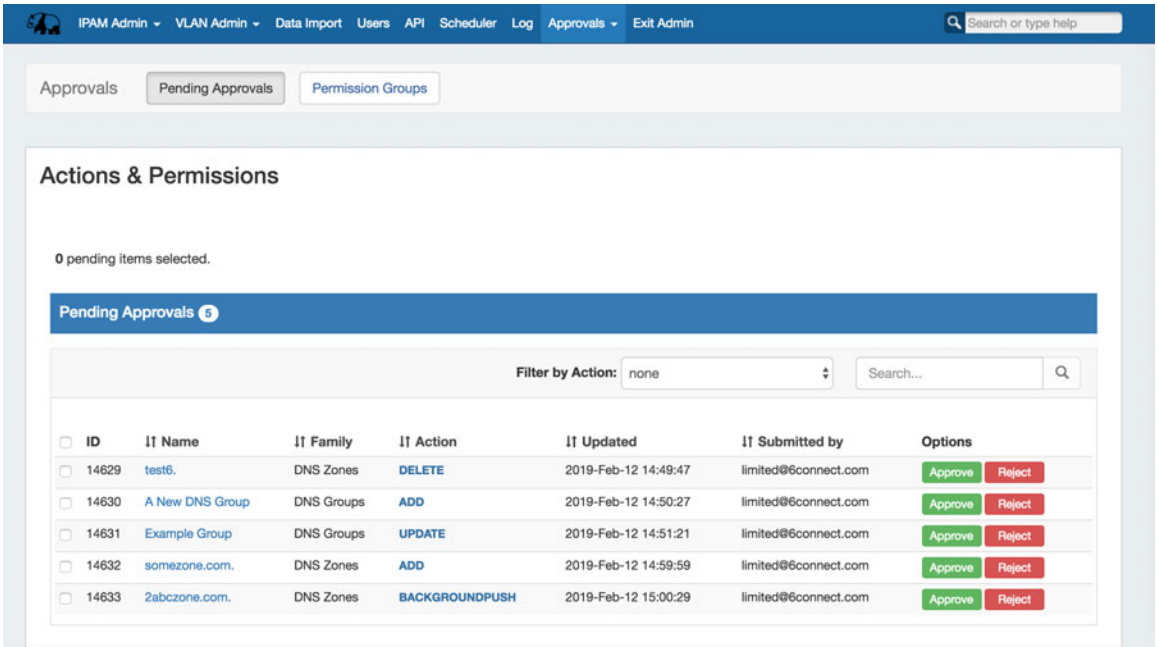
# Additional Information

See the following areas for more information on Approvals and using Approvals with DNS:

- DNS Tab
- Pending Approvals
- Permission Groups
- Scheduler Tab

# Pending Approvals

# Pending Approvals




The Approvals module stores and queues DNS actions made by selected User Groups, and sends those actions to a Pending Changes list for administrative review.  Later, an administrator (or combination of administrators) can approve or reject these stored actions.

The admin **Approvals** Tab contains two sub-tabs: **Pending Approvals** and **Permission Groups**, which are the primary areas to manage Approvals items.

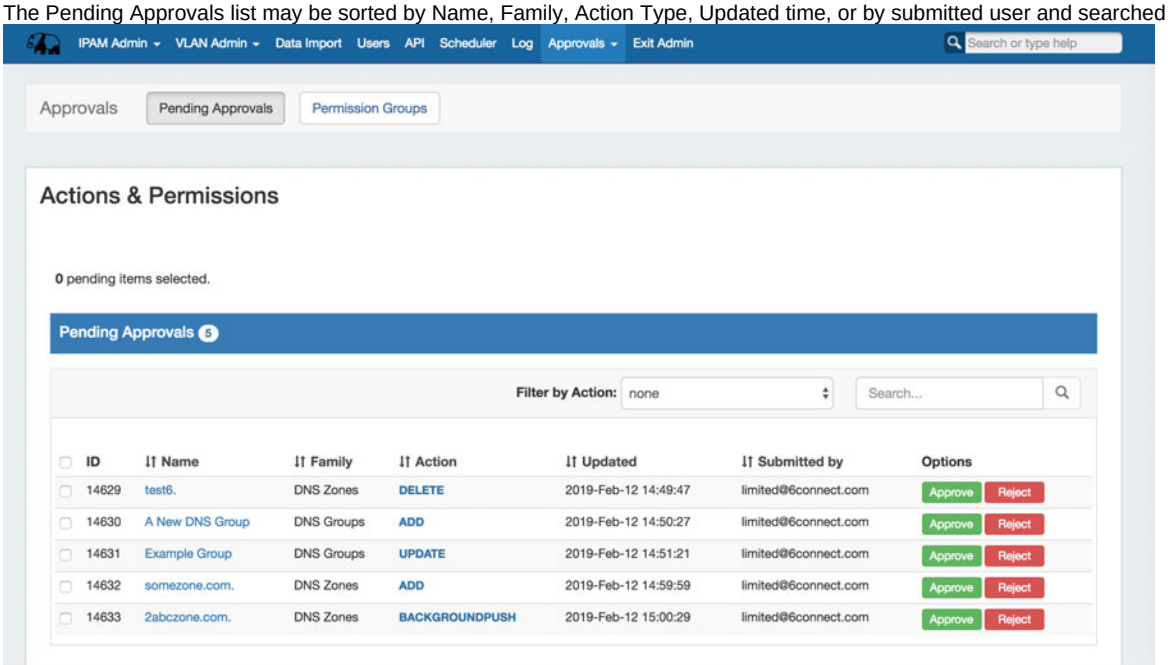
Currently, **Approvals** is available only for **DNS** related actions, while we gather feedback and use cases to inform possible future updates. If you are interested in providing feedback, a use case, or requests for future additions to the Approvals system, please contact feedback@6connect.com.


- Pending Approvals
- Pending Approvals - Overview
- Working with Pending Approvals
  - View / Sort Pending Approvals
  - View / Sort Approval History
  - Viewing Requests Pending by Other Groups
  - Viewing details on a change request
  - Approve / Reject a single change request
  - Bulk Approve / Reject
  - Resources Awaiting Approval Module (DNS Tab)
  - View / Send Request Status Change Notifications
  - Delete Old Approval Events (Scheduler)
- Additional Information


# Pending Approvals - Overview

The **Pending Approvals** sub-tab lists Pending approval requests (also referred to as change requests, approval events, or approval items) for which the current admin user has permission to "Approve" or "Reject".

The Pending Approvals list may be sorted by Name, Family, Action Type, Updated time, or by submitted user and searched by resource name.




Approving and Rejecting change requests may be done individually, or in bulk by selecting multiple item checkboxes / clicking the "select all" checkbox. Once selected, an option to Approve/Reject all selected items will appear. If notifications are enabled for the Group or Action, an email will be sent notifying the request submitter of the status change.

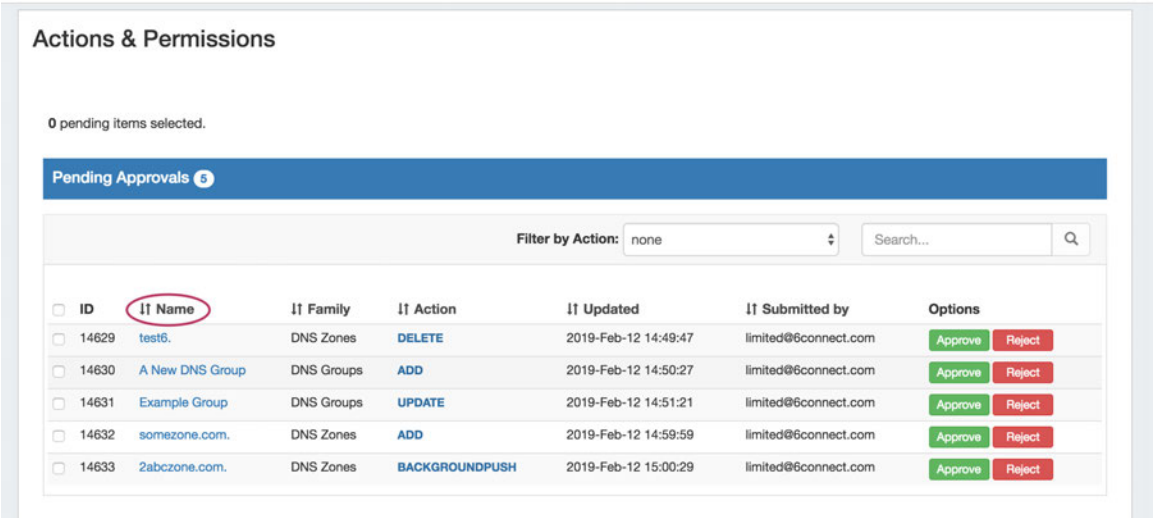
At the bottom of the page, historical approval items for the user are shown. The user may filter their previous approval items by Executed, Approved, Rejected, or Pending by Others (for items requiring multiple Groups to approve).

# Working with Pending Approvals

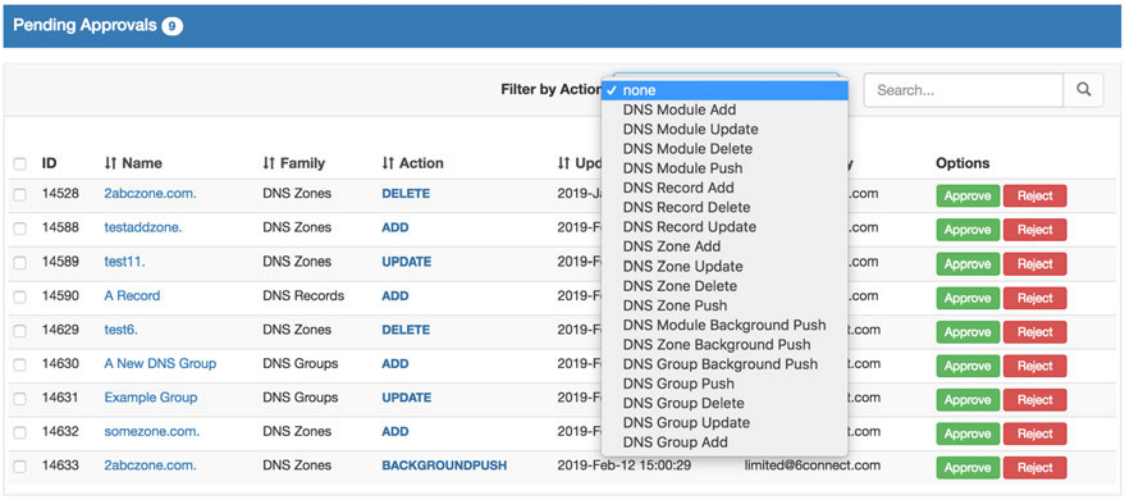
## View / Sort Pending Approvals

The Pending Approvals list may be sorted for any column with the sort arrow icon ( ).

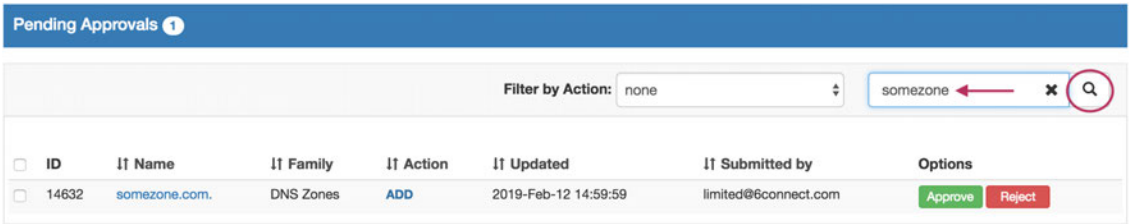
Click on the column name to toggle between ascending / descending order for that field.




Filter the Pending Approvals list to only view a certain Family/Action type by selecting an option from the "Filter by Action" dropdown.




Search the list for a specific item name by typing all or part of the name in the search box, then clicking the search icon.

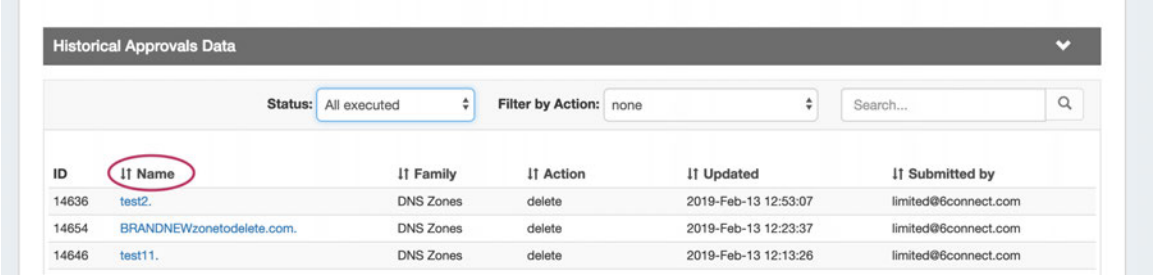



## View / Sort Approval History

Previous Approval events applicable to the current admin user are displayed under the Approvals Historical Data section, until they are deleted or removed by an archive process, such as the "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month" scheduler task process.

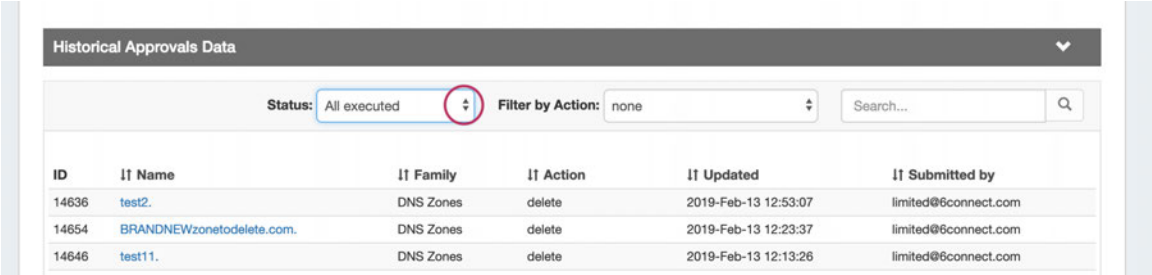
Similar to the Pending Approvals list, it may be sorted ascending / descending by field,  filtered by status, filtered by action, or searched by name.

Click on the column name to toggle between ascending / descending order for that field.

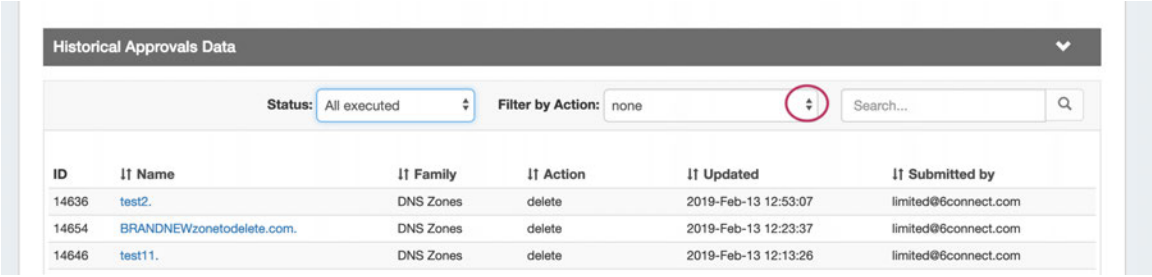



Filter the History to only view a certain status by selecting an option from the "Status" dropdown. The available options include:

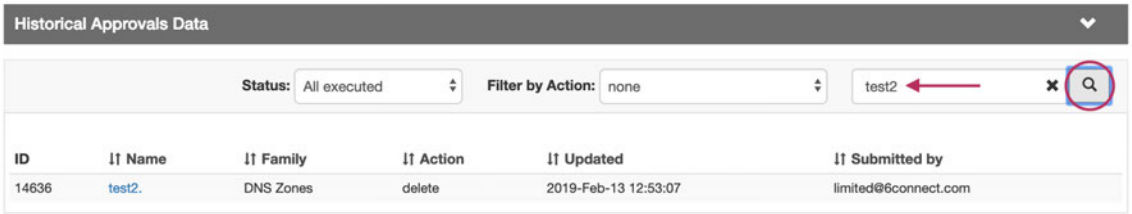
- **All Executed** - Shows historical approval events that were approved and executed.
- **Approved** - Approval change requests approved by you, the currently logged in user.
- **Rejected** - Approval change requests rejected by you, the currently logged in user.
- **Pending by others** - Approval change requests that you have already responded to with an approval or rejection, but that are awaiting responses from one or more other groups.




Filter the History to only view a certain Family/Action type by selecting an option from the "Filter by Action" dropdown.

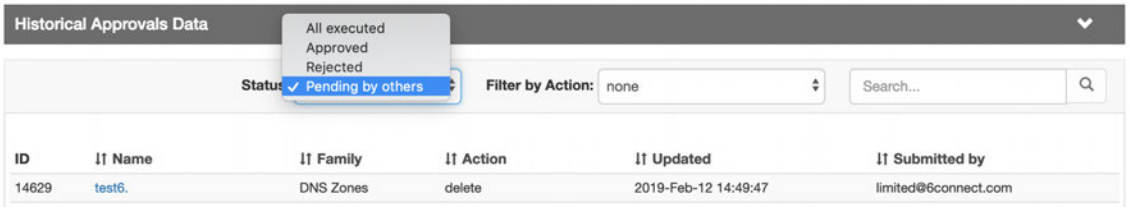



Search the list for a specific item name by typing all or part of the name in the search box, then clicking the search icon.



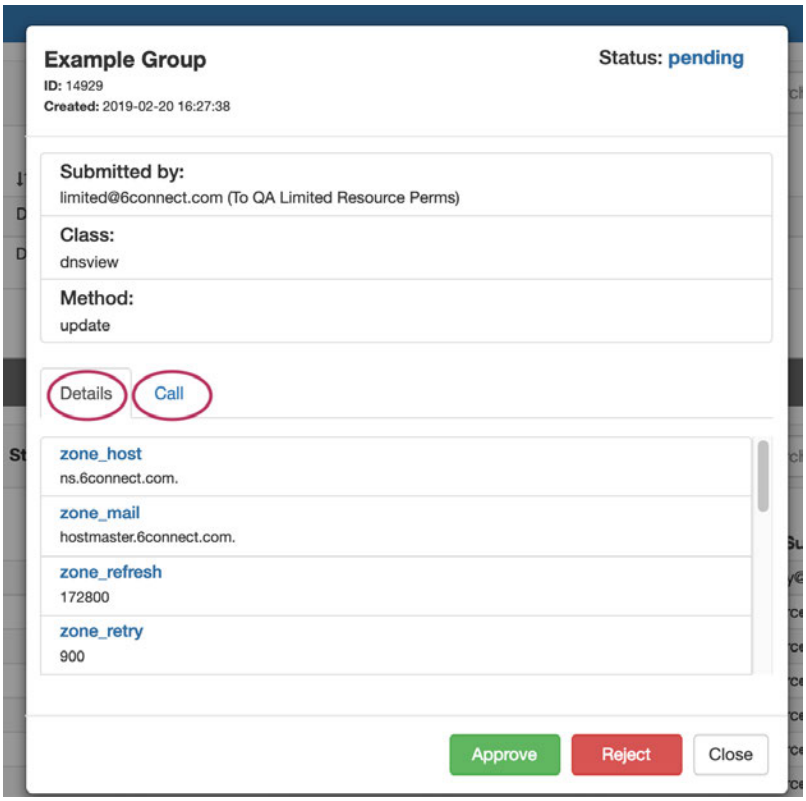

## Viewing Requests Pending by Other Groups

Approval requests that you have approved/rejected, but which are still awaiting a response from another group, may be viewed under Historical Approvals Data by setting the "status" filter to view "Pending by Others".




## Viewing details on a change request

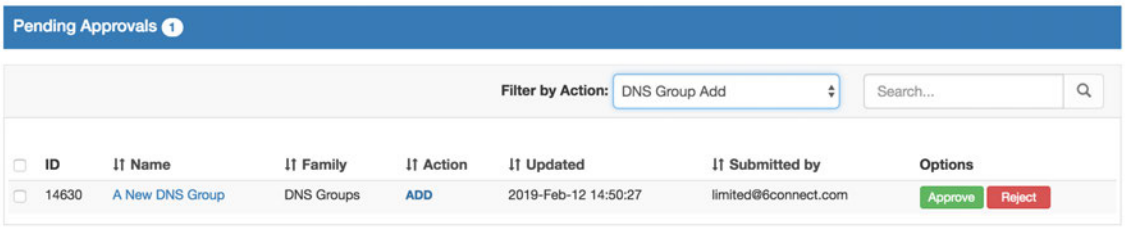
To view details on any Approvals change request, click the name for the desired item. An information box will appear with details on the change, including status, id, creation date, family, field values, and the API Call in JSON format.



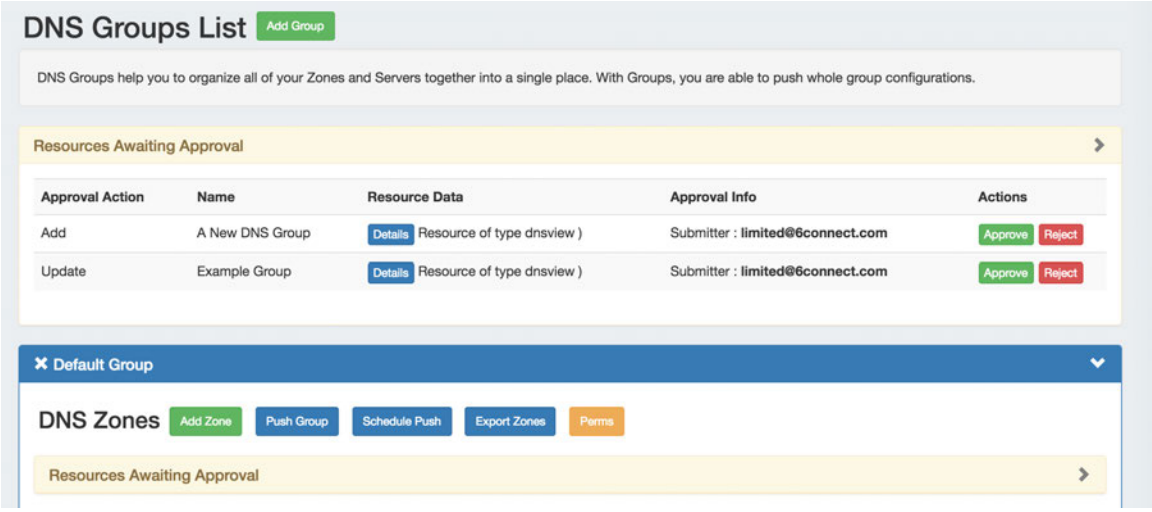

The change may be approved or rejected directly from the detail information box, or you may click "Close" to exit.

## Approve / Reject a single change request

To Approve or Reject any single change request, click either the "Approve" or "Reject" button for the pending item.



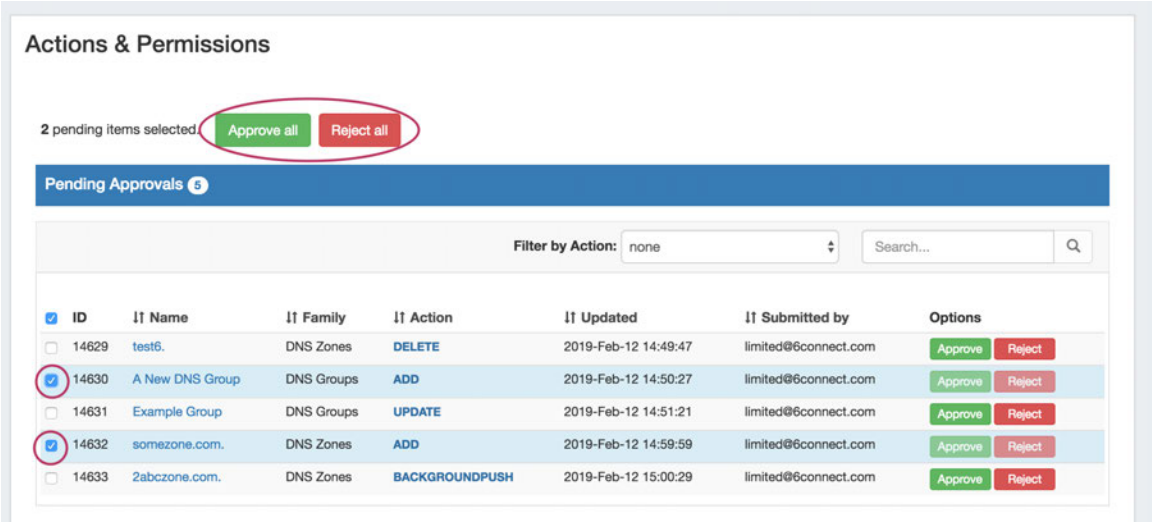

Approving or Rejecting a request may be done from the Pending Approvals list, the detail view for the item, or from the DNS "Resources awaiting approval" module.



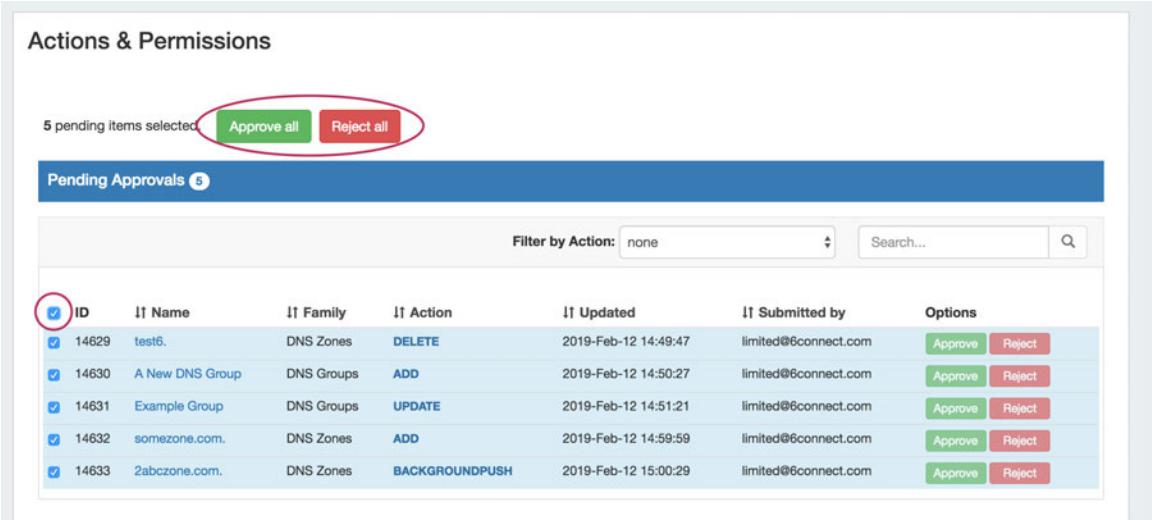

# Bulk Approve / Reject

Bulk Approve or Reject actions may only be done from the **Approvals** tab **Pending Approvals** list.

Select the checkboxes for the items that you want to bulk approve or deny, then click either "Approve All" or "Reject All" buttons to apply the response to the selected requests.



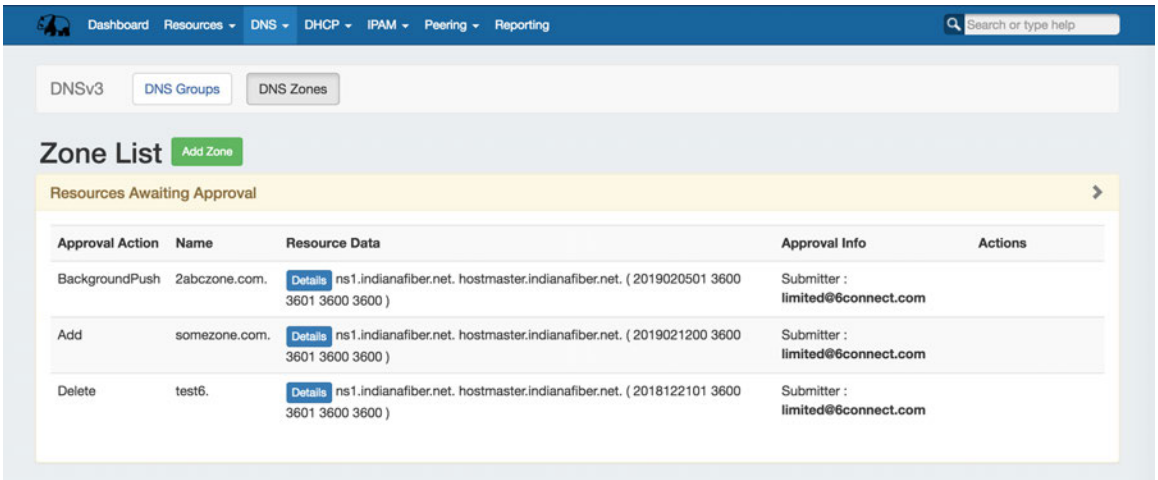

If you wish to select all items in the Pending Approvals list for the same response type, click the "select all" checkbox to the left of the "ID" column name. All of your pending items will be selected, and you may choose to "Approve All" or "Reject All" from the top of the page.



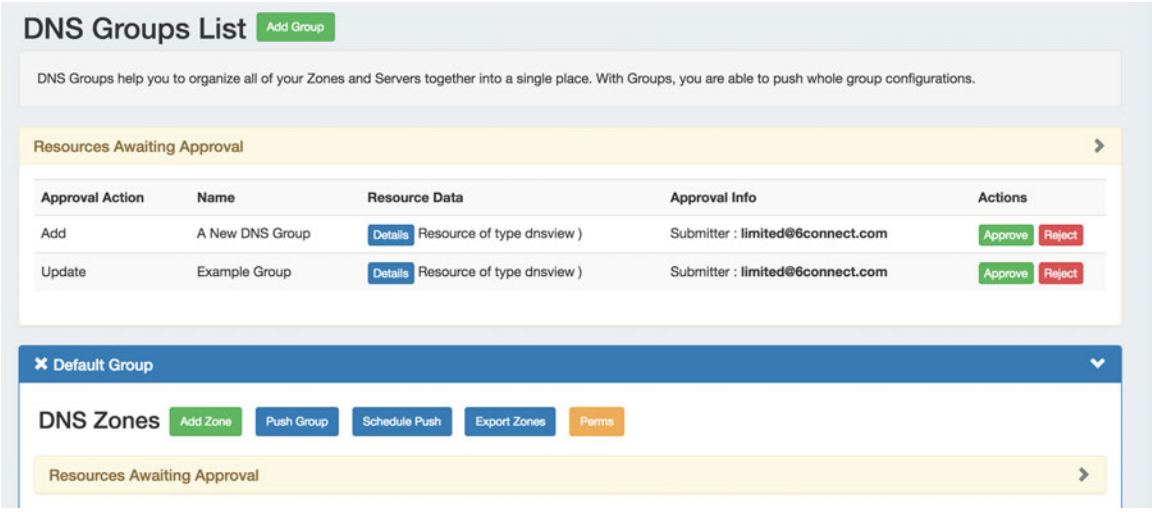

# Resources Awaiting Approval Module (DNS Tab)

A **Resources Awaiting Approval** module will display in DNSv3 areas, if a change has been submitted on that page either by the current user, or that the current user may Approve/Deny.

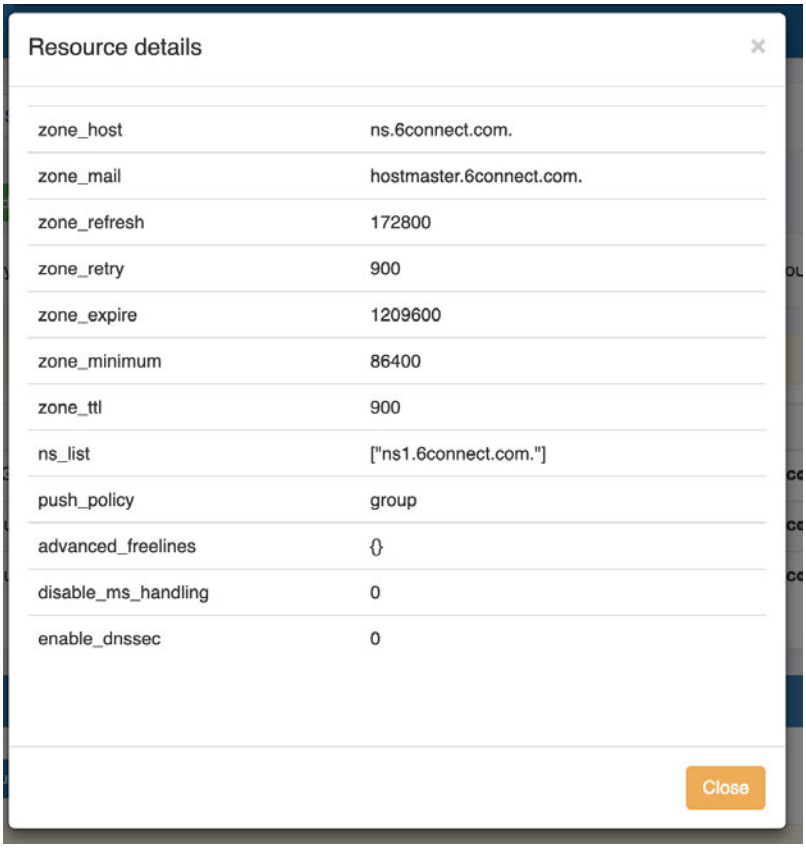
Users who submitted the request will be able to view the request details, but will be unable to take any actions on the request.




Admin users with Approve/Reject Ability will see Approve/Reject buttons available to immediately respond to the request.



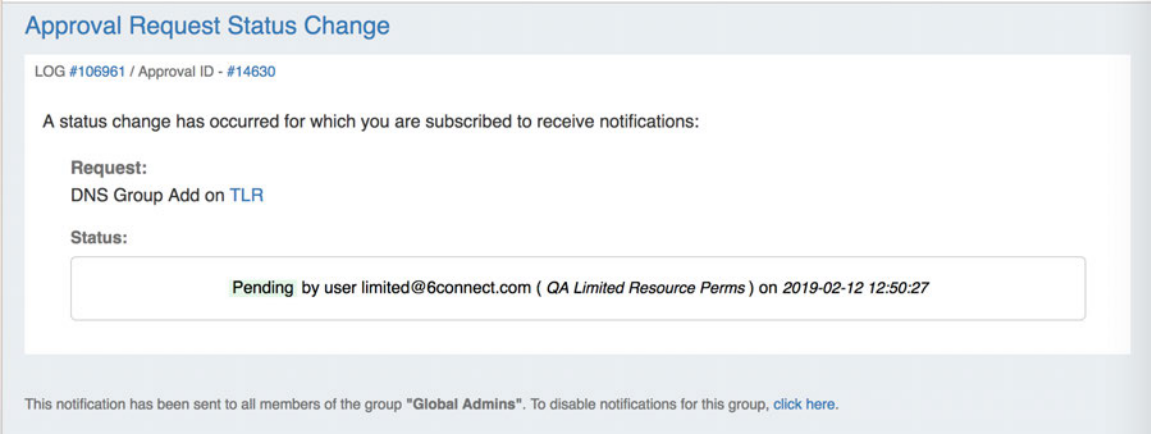
Details for the change may be viewed by clicking the "Details" button in the module.




## View / Send Request Status Change Notifications

Email notifications of changes in status are an optional feature that may be set up by Approval Permission Group for the desired action types.

The emails provide the current status, approval ID, links to the log event and change request details, and details on the user, time, and date.




In order to send email notifications to affected groups of a change in the status of an Approval event:

1. Notifications must be enabled for the Group, for the family-action type of the requested change
2. A scheduler task ("Approvals - Process Subscription") must be created and running to process the notification and send the email

Enabling notifications for approval events is done in the **Permission Groups** subtab of Approvals, see the Working with Permission Groups page for additional information on setting up notifications.

The "Approvals - Process Subscription" task processes approval request events and handles the sending of notification emails to subscribed Approvals Groups. If Approvals are in use with notifications, it is recommended to create this task with a run time of "every 5 minutes" and no end date. For details on setting up this task, see documentation for the Scheduler Tab.

## Delete Old Approval Events (Scheduler)

Old Approval events may be purged from the system by enabling and running the scheduler event "Approvals - Delete events older than 1 month". This task deletes any Approvals history events older than 30 days, and It is recommended to run this task monthly to clear out obsolete approvals items and reduce approvals page load time.

For information on setting up scheduler events, see documentation for the Scheduler Tab.

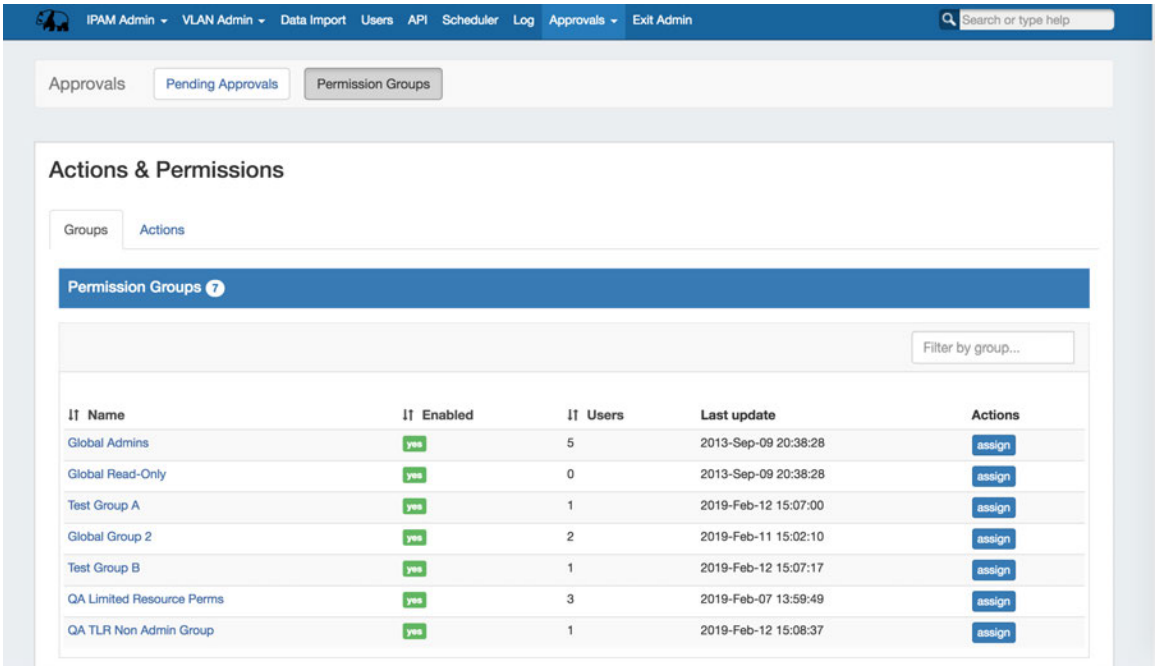
# Additional Information

See the following areas for more information on Approvals and using Approvals with DNS:

- DNS Tab
- Approvals
- Permission Groups
- Scheduler Tab

# Approval Permission Groups

# Approvals Permission Groups




The **Approvals** Tab **Permission Groups** subtab is where admins may view and manage assignments, actions, and settings for Approvals permission groups.

Currently, **Approvals** is available only for **DNS** related actions, while we gather feedback and use cases to inform possible future updates. If you are interested in providing feedback, a use case, or requests for future additions to the Approvals system, please contact feedback@6connect.com.


- Approvals Permission Groups
- Permission Groups - Overview
  - Groups
    - Group Assignment (Assign Button)
    - Group Details Page
  - Actions
    - Actions - View Groups Page
    - Actions - Assign Groups
- Working with Approval Permission Groups
  - Sort or Filter the Group List
  - View/Edit Existing Assignments
    - Groups Tab
    - Actions Tab
  - Assign a new Permission Group policy
    - Assign a Policy from the Groups Tab
    - Assign a Policy from the Actions Tab
  - Manage Approval Notifications for Groups
    - Set up the "Approvals - Process Subscription" Scheduler Task
    - Enable Notifications
- Additional Information


# Permission Groups - Overview

The **Permission Groups** sub-tab contains areas to manage a User Group's level of approval permissions ("Policy"), and on what actions they apply. By default, all existing ProVision User Groups are displayed under Approvals - Permission Groups. However, you may assign Approval policies to few or as many of the groups as you want.

There are two tabs available under Permission Groups - **Groups** and **Actions**. Both tabs provide similar levels of functionality to view and assign policies, but they differ in organization.

Use the **Groups** tab view if you want to:

- Assign a policy to a specific group that includes multiple action types
- View, edit, or remove the policies associated with any or all action types for a group
- Enable/disable a group's Notification setting

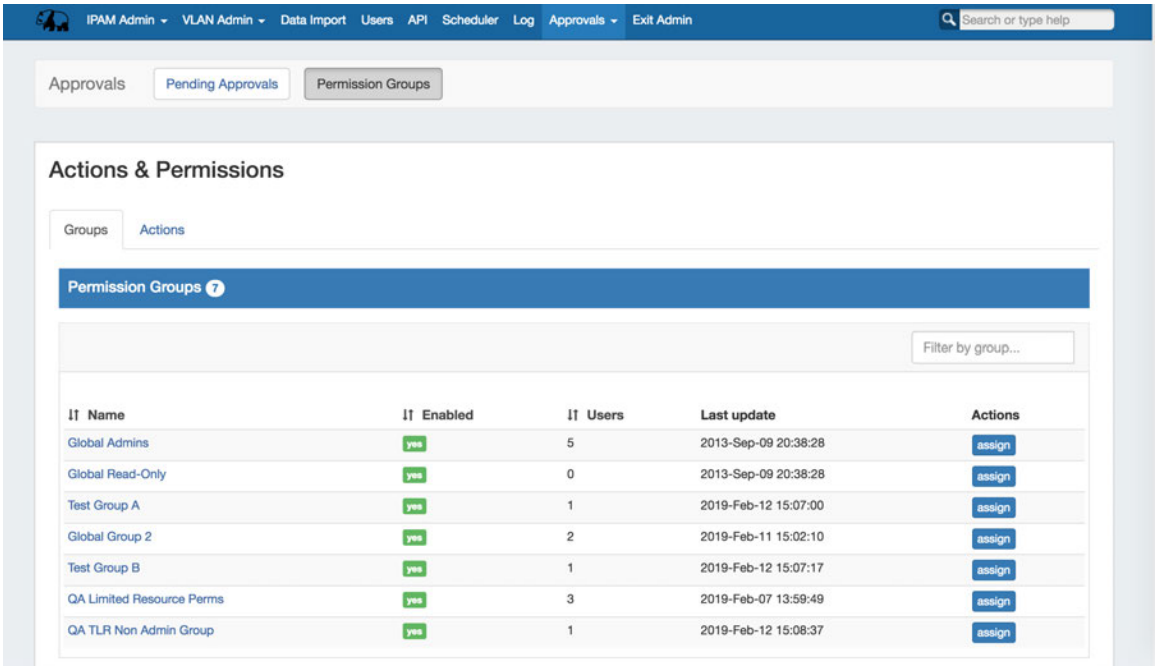
User the **Actions** tab view if you want to:

- View how many or what groups are assigned policies for a specific action type
- Want to confirm that an action type has group assignments covering both the "Action to be Approved" and "Must Approve" policies
- View, edit, or remove policies associated with a specific action family or action type
- Assign a single policy to a one or more groups for a specific family-action type

Before using the functions available from the **Permission Groups** page, you may wish to review the Approvals documentation page for information on best practices for setting up User Groups for use with Approvals, policy definitions, and workflows.

# Groups

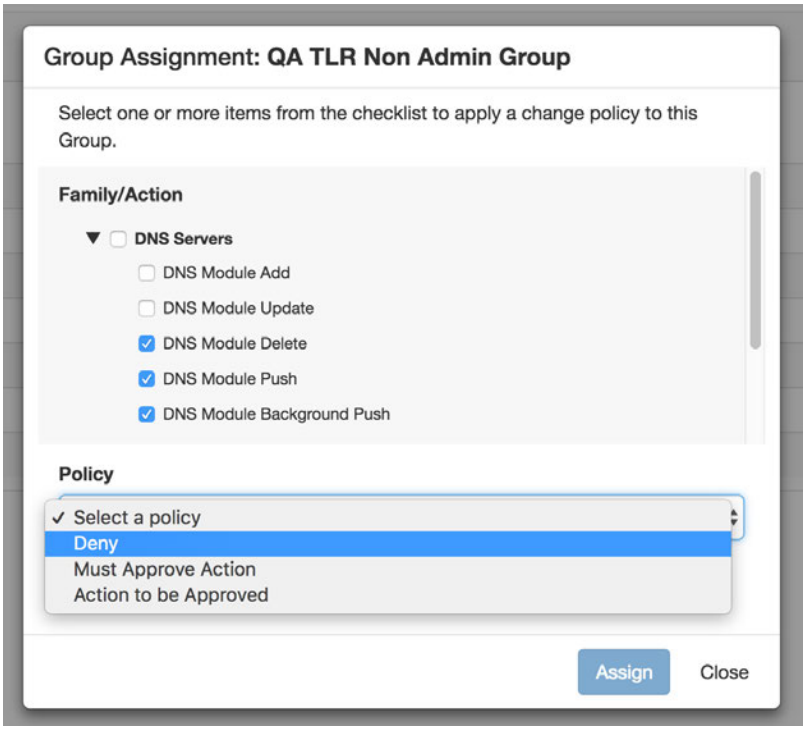
In the **Groups** tab, each ProVision User Group is listed with details on the status, number of users, and last updated time.




From here, you may either click on "Assign" to assign action policies to the Group, or view/edit existing settings by clicking on the Group Name to open the Group Details page.

## Group Assignment (Assign Button)

Clicking the "Assign" button for a group brings up a checklist to select one or more actions to apply a policy to for that Group.




Select one or more Family/Actions to apply a specific policy to, ensure that policy is selected, and then click "Assign".

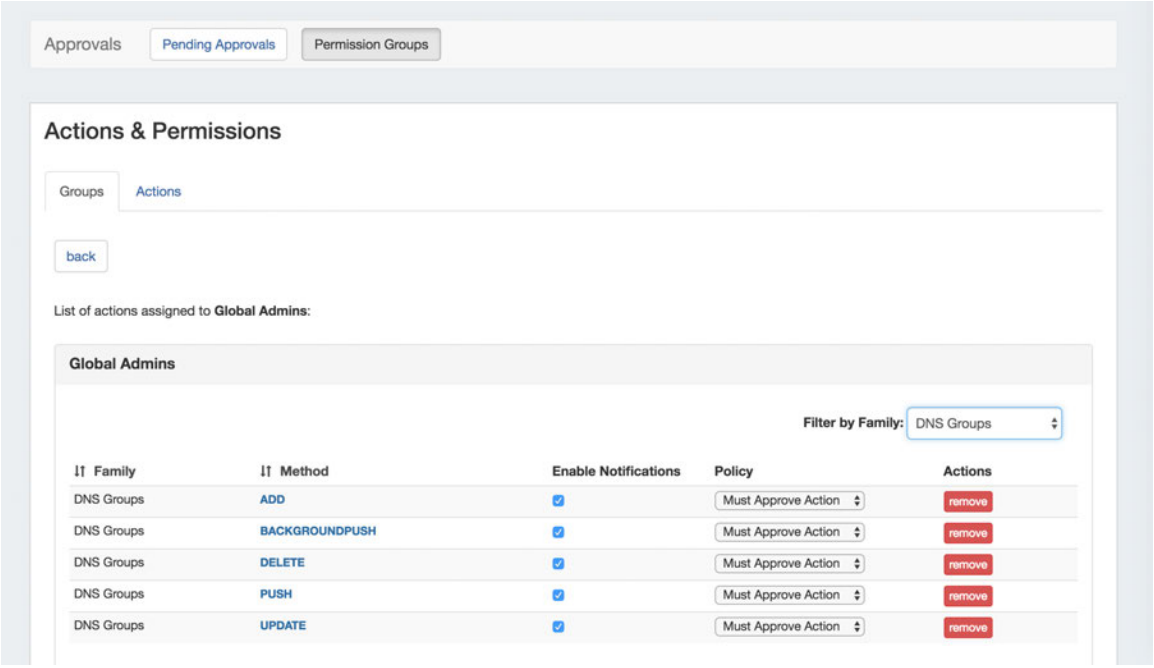
The Group assignment screen will add the new policy settings to any other existing assignments.

The Group Assignment screen does not show existing assignments or edit existing assignments - it is a quick way to add new assignments to a Group.

To view/manage existing group assignments, go to the **Group Details** page

## Group Details Page

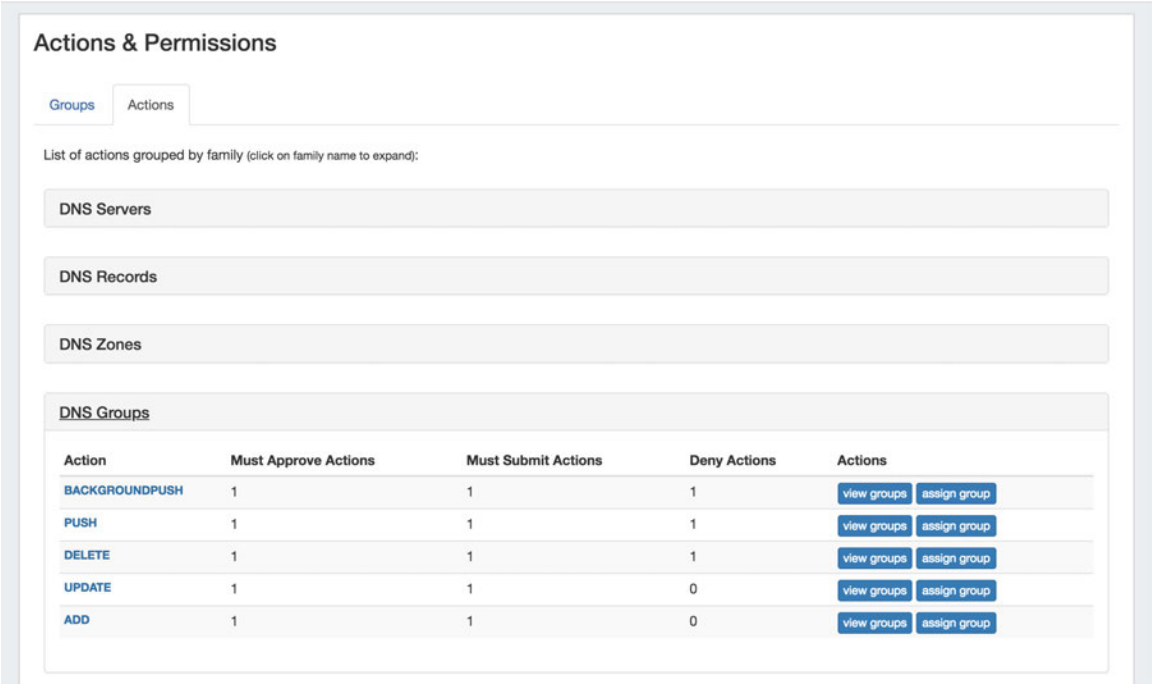
From the list of Permission Groups, click on a Group name to bring up the permission details for that Group.




Here, you may view, edit, or remove current policy assignments, and enable/disable notification emails for each action type. The list of assigned actions for the group may be sorted by Family or Method, and filtered by Family (here: "DNS Groups").

# Actions

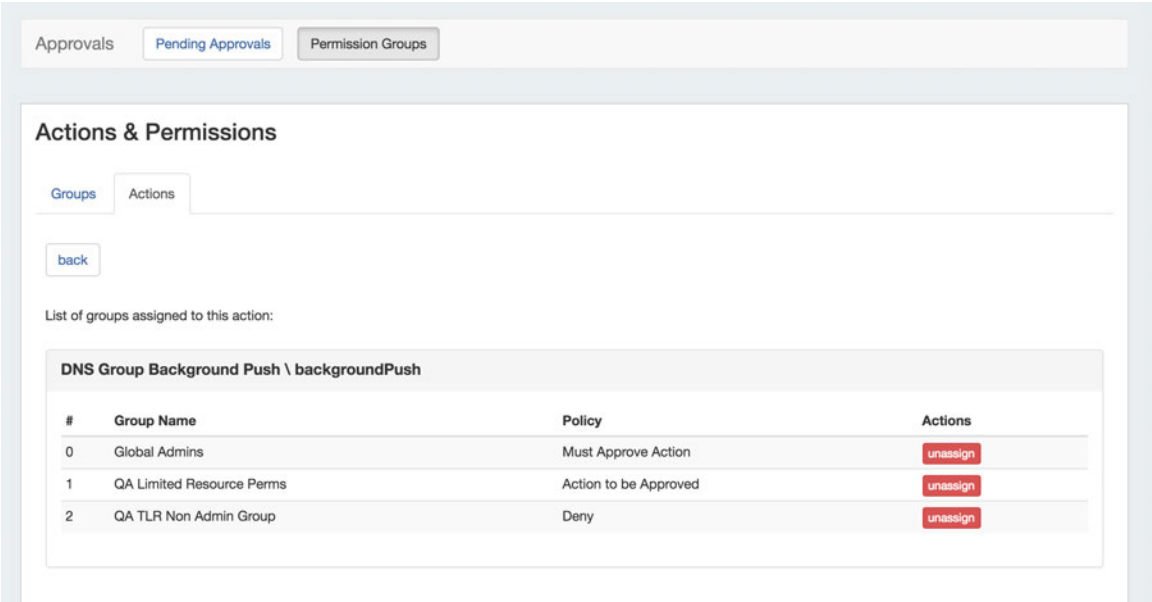
The **Actions** Tab lists the group permissions organized by Family/Action type.




Expanding a Family shows the available actions, and a matrix of how many groups are assigned under each policy.

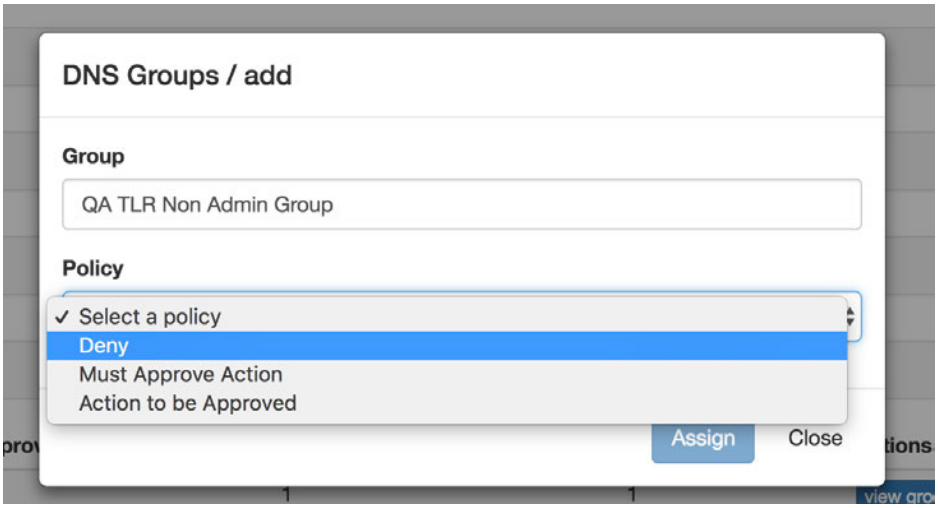
## Actions - View Groups Page

Clicking the "View Groups" button from the Actions tab shows the list of each group assigned to that action, with the option to unassign a group from that action.




## Actions - Assign Groups

The "Assign Group" button on the Actions tab lets you assign a Group and Policy to that action.

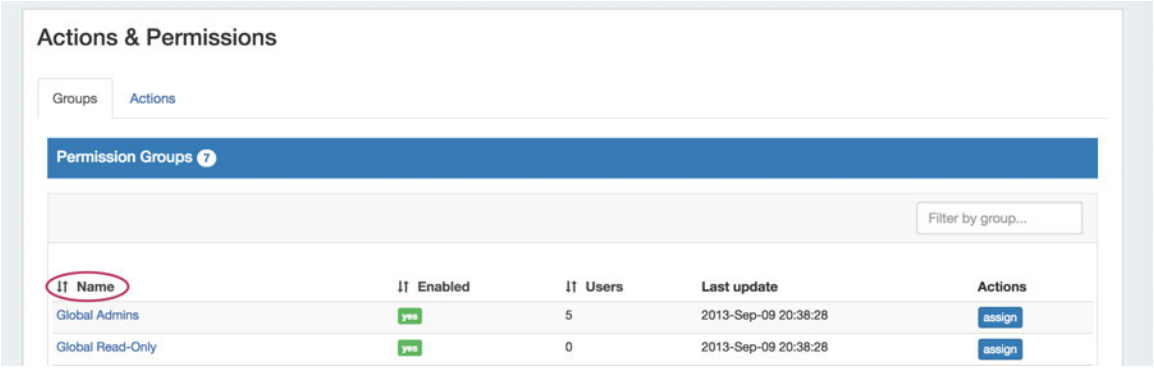



This performs the same function as the earlier assignment window, but is organized to only assign a single group/policy to that action, instead of assigning multiple actions to a group.

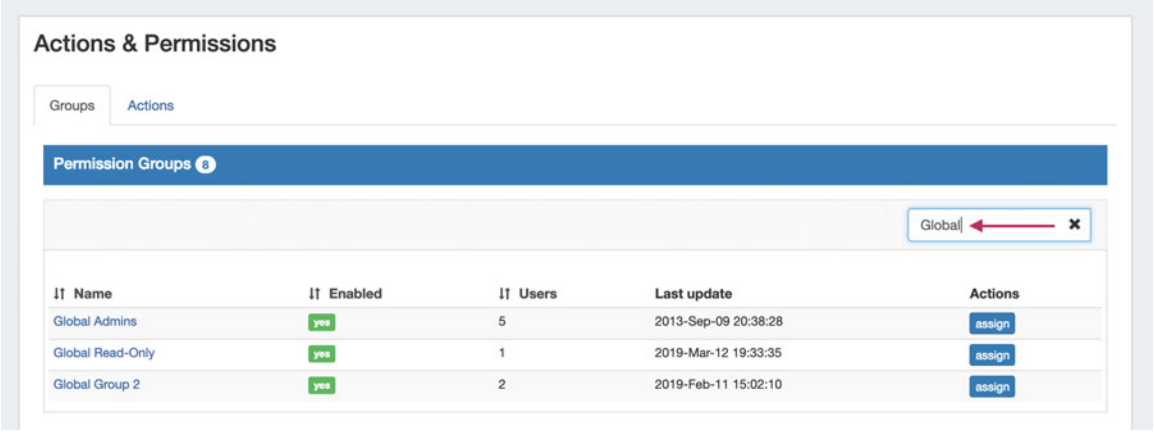
# Working with Approval Permission Groups

## Sort or Filter the Group List

Sort the Permission Groups list by Name, Enabled, or Users by clicking on the column name.




To Filter the list, type all or part of the group name into the "Filter by Group" box, and the list will automatically narrow to show results.

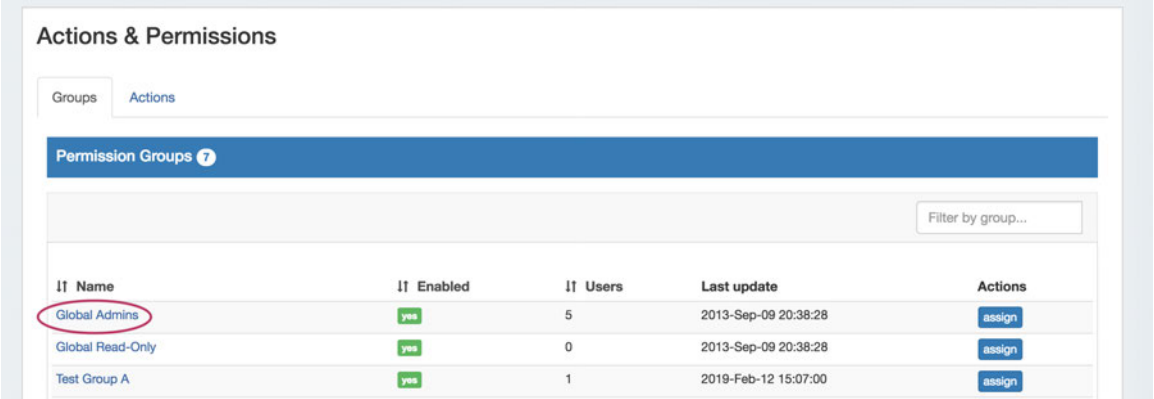


# View/Edit Existing Assignments

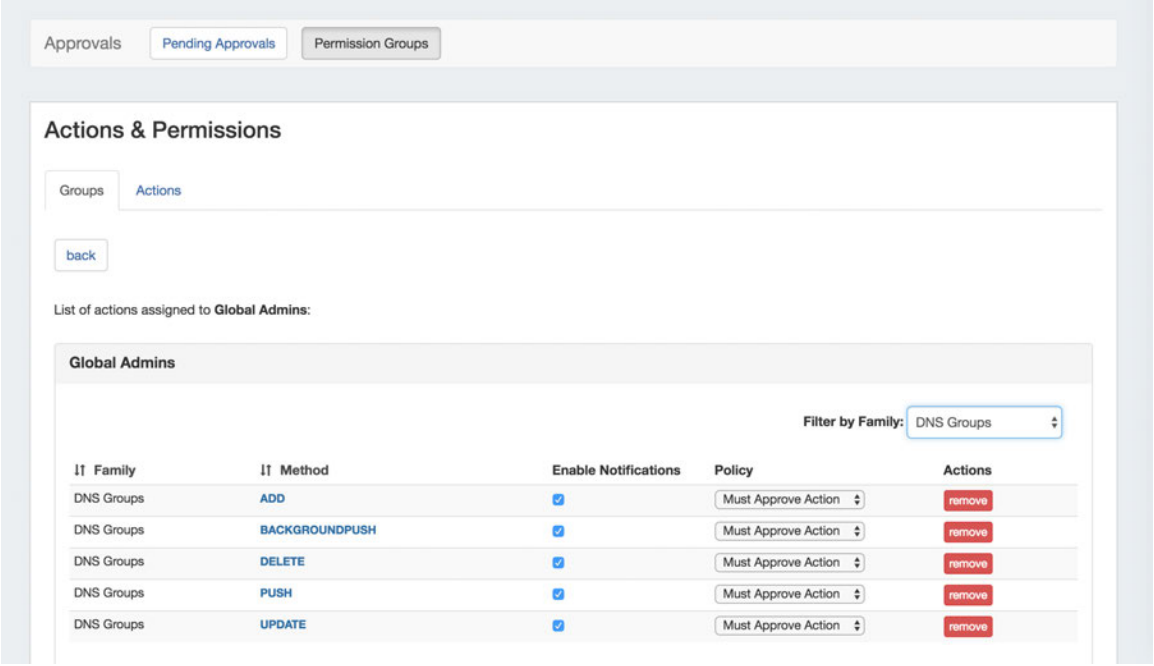
Viewing and editing existing assignments may be done from either the **Groups** tab or the **Actions** tab:

## Groups Tab

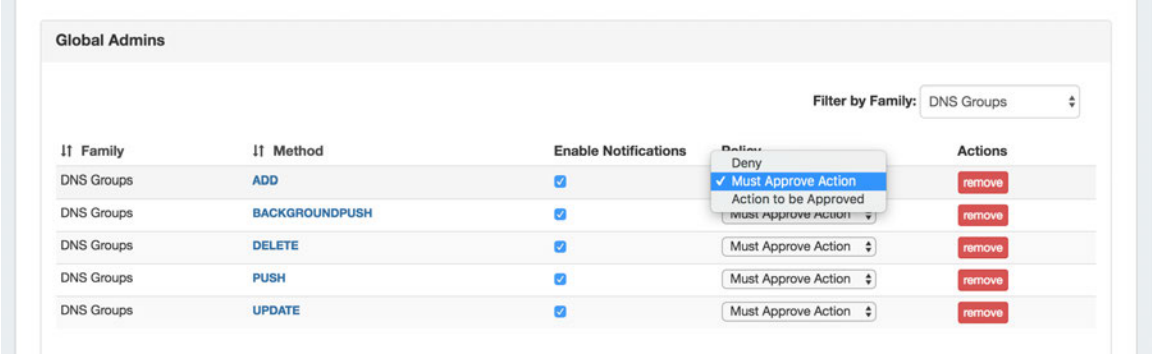
To view details for a permission group, click on the Group Name from the Permission Groups list.




The **Group Details** page will open, displaying all Family-Action types currently assigned to the Group



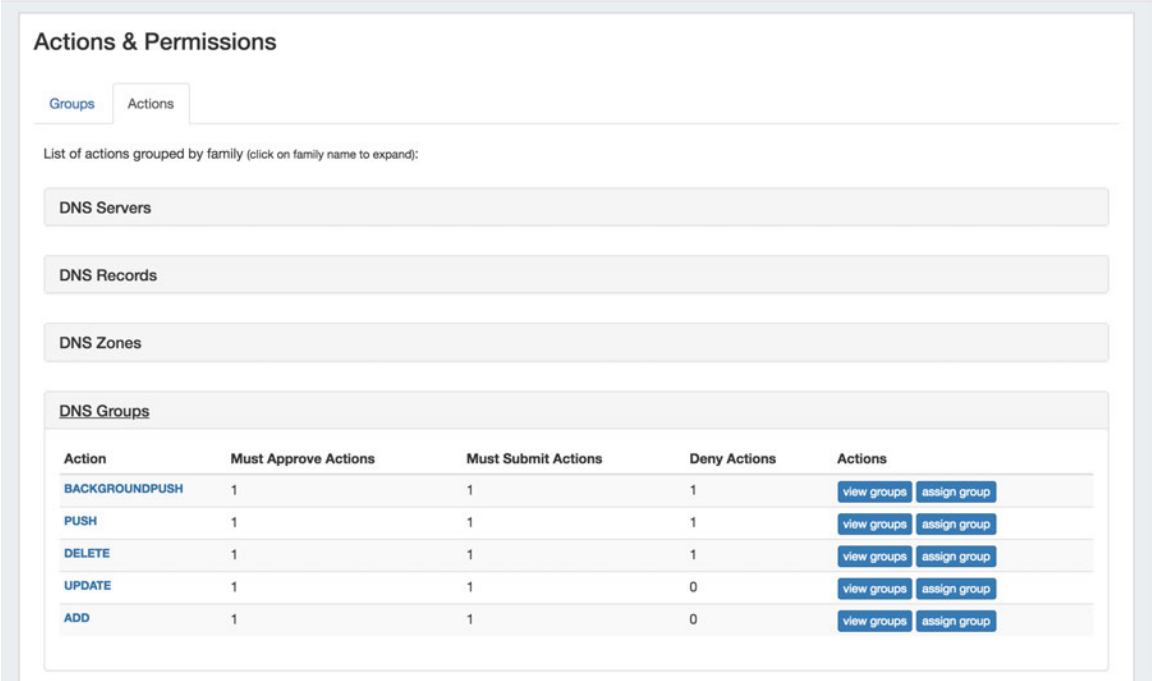

Click on the "Policy" dropdown to select a different policy to apply for the action, or click the "Remove" button to remove the policy assignment completely.  Changes will be automatically applied and saved.



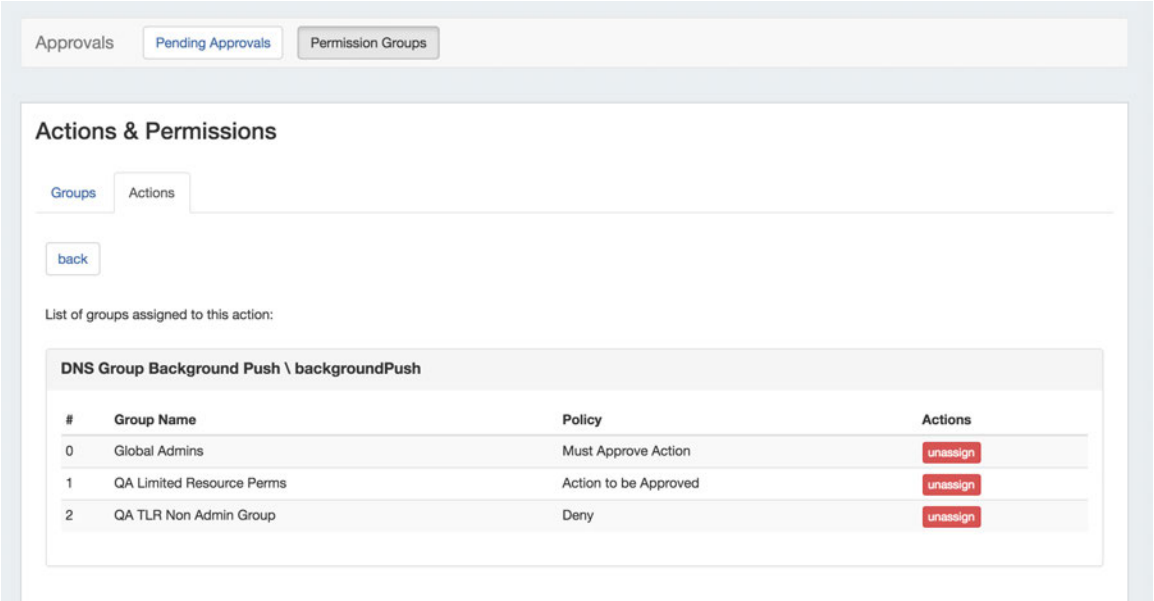

## Actions Tab

You may also view or edit current assignments as organized by action, from the **Actions** Tab.

On the Actions page, expand a Family to view the actions under each family, and how many Groups are assigned for each policy.




Click "View Groups" to view the groups assigned for each action. To remove the policy / group assignment for the action, click "Unassign".




# Assign a new Permission Group policy

Three policy settings are available to assign to a Group / Action:

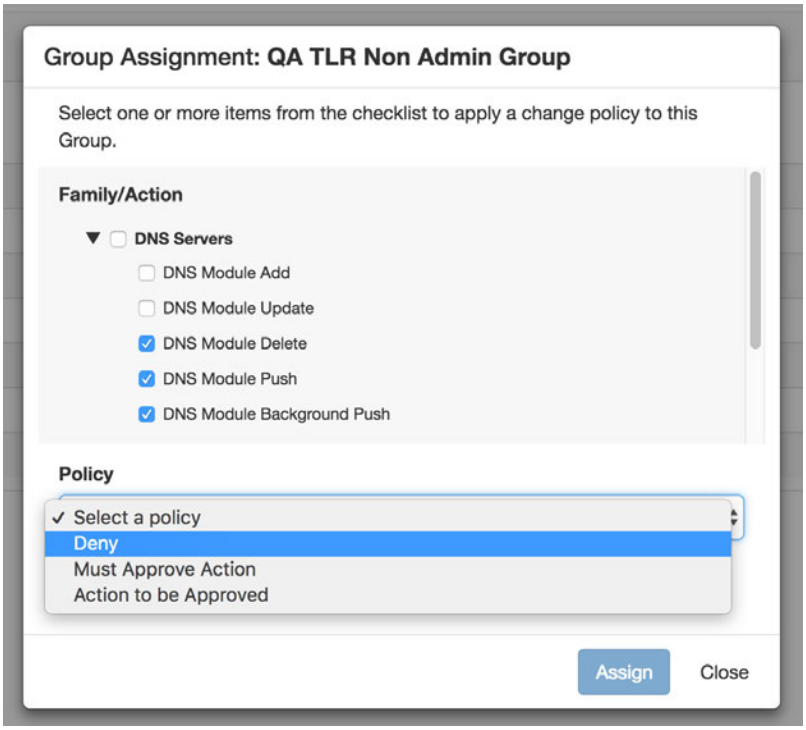
- **Deny** : All users in the group will have the selected actions automatically denied at an attempted change.
- **Must Approve Action:** A User in the group must approve or deny change requests submitted for the selected Family / Action(s), for any Group requiring "Action to be Approved" for the same action(s) in order for the change to execute. If multiple groups are set as "Must Approve Action" for the same type of change, then the change will be held as "Pending" or "Pending by Others" until a user from *each group* approves the change request.
- **Action to be Approved:** Users in the group will have the selected actions submitted to Pending Approvals for the change to be approved or denied. A second Permission Group must exist with the "Must Approve Action" policy assigned to the same action for the submittal to succeed.

Policies may be applied from either the Approvals **Groups** tab, or the **Action** tab, depending on whether you want to assign policies/actions to a specific group, or assign a group and policy to an action, respectively.

## Assign a Policy from the Groups Tab

From **Approvals** **Permission Groups** Groups tab, Click the "Assign" button.

The Group Assignment checklist opens to select one or more actions to apply a policy to for that Group.

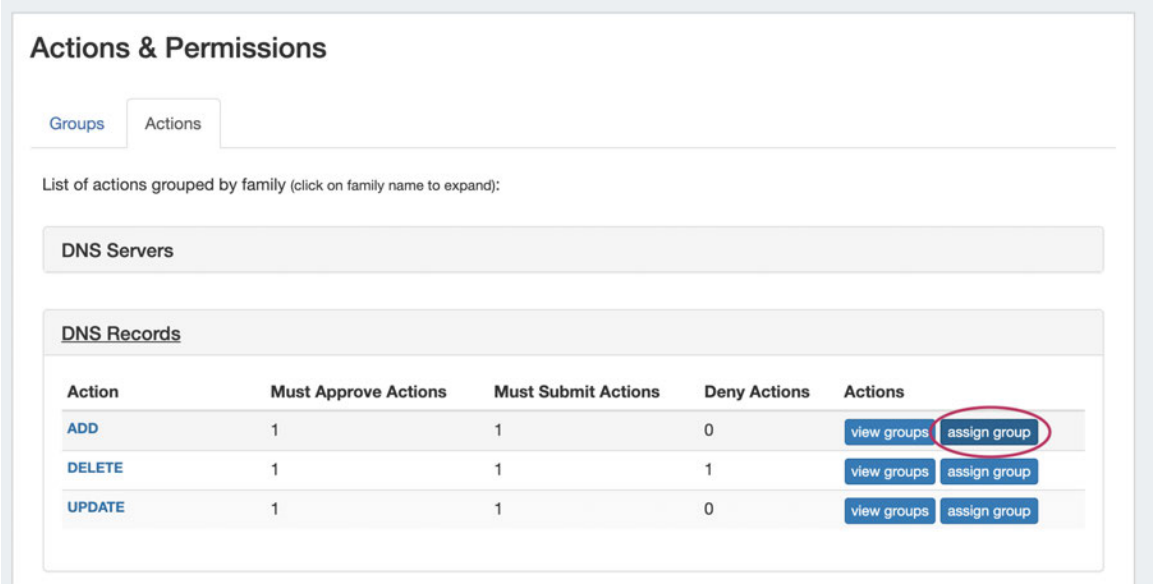



Select one or more Family/Actions, select the policy to apply, and then click "Assign".

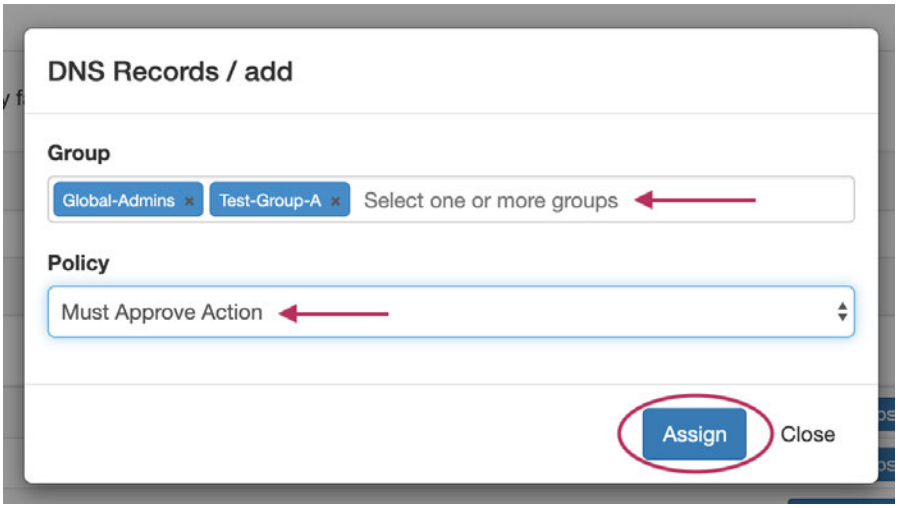
Click the checkbox next to the family name (e.g. "DNS Servers")to quickly select all actions under that family!

## Assign a Policy from the Actions Tab

From the **Approvals** **Permission Groups** Actions tab, click the "Assign Group" button for the Action you want to assign to a Group / Policy.



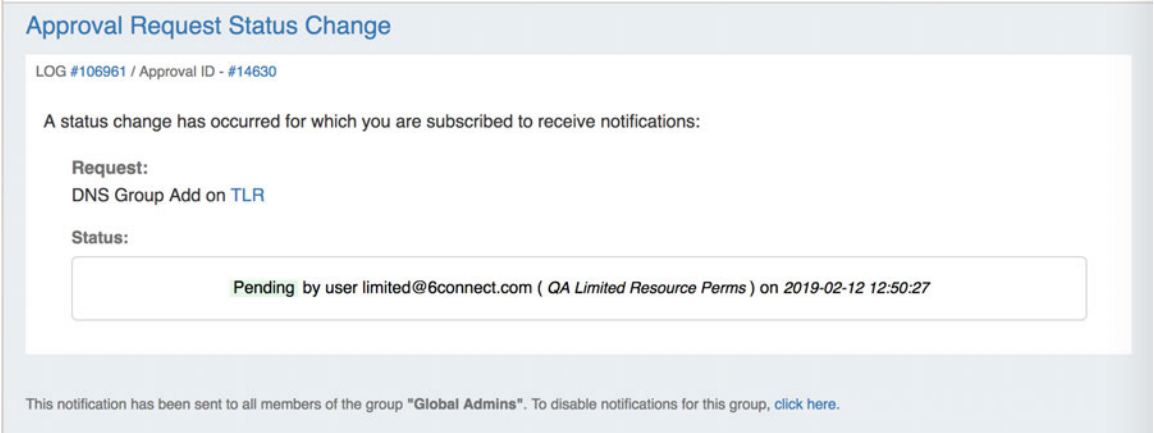

Select the Group(s) that you wish to assign, and select the policy to apply to the action. When done, click the "Assign" button to save.




# Manage Approval Notifications for Groups

Email notifications of changes in status are an optional feature that may be enabled for a Permission Group for the desired action types.

The emails provide the current status, approval ID, links to the log event and change request details, and details on the user, time, and date.




In order to send email status notifications to groups associated with an Approval event:

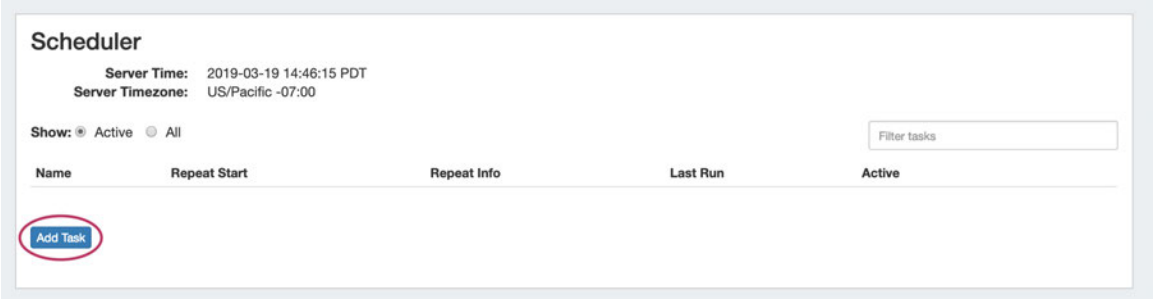
1. A scheduler task ("Approvals - Process Subscription") must be created and running to process the notification and send the email
2. Notifications must be enabled for the Group, for the family-action type of the requested change

## Set up the "Approvals - Process Subscription" Scheduler Task

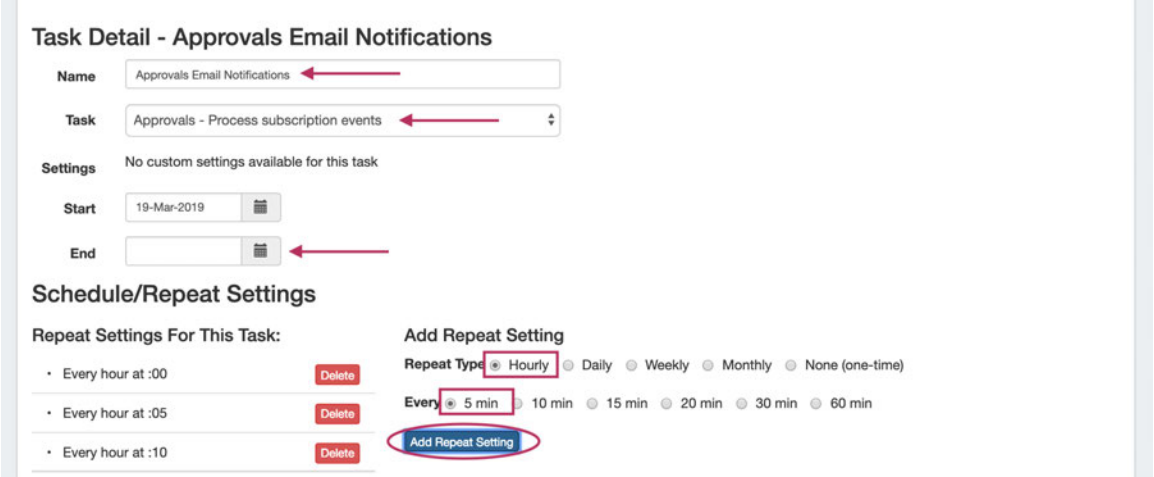
Go to the **Scheduler** Tab, and verify that the "Approvals - Process Subscription" task has been created, is enabled, and is running at short, regular intervals appropriate to the needs of the users receiving the emails (recommended to run every 5 minutes).

If the task does not yet exist:

From the **Scheduler** Tab, click "Add Task"

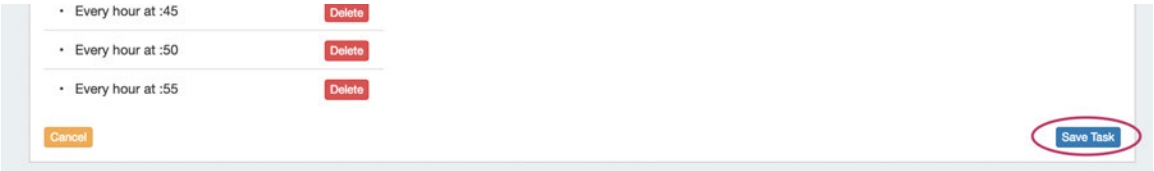



Enter a Name for the task (including a reference to "Approvals Notifications" is recommended for clarity), select the task as "Approvals - Process Subscription", and enter an End date - or leave blank to run as a 'forever' task.

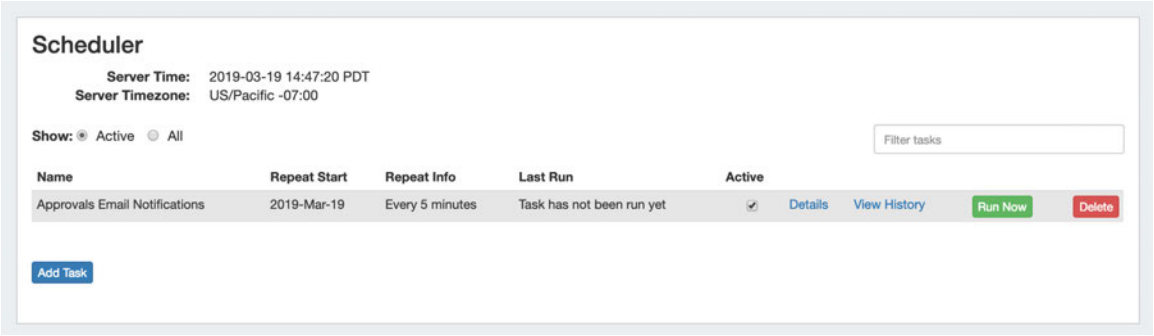



For Repeat Settings, select how often you'd like the scheduler to check for new approvals changes and send the notification emails - every 5 minutes is recommended. Select your time interval and click "Add Repeat Setting".

When done, click "Save Task".




The Approvals Email Notification task is now set up, active, and ready to process Approvals Event changes.



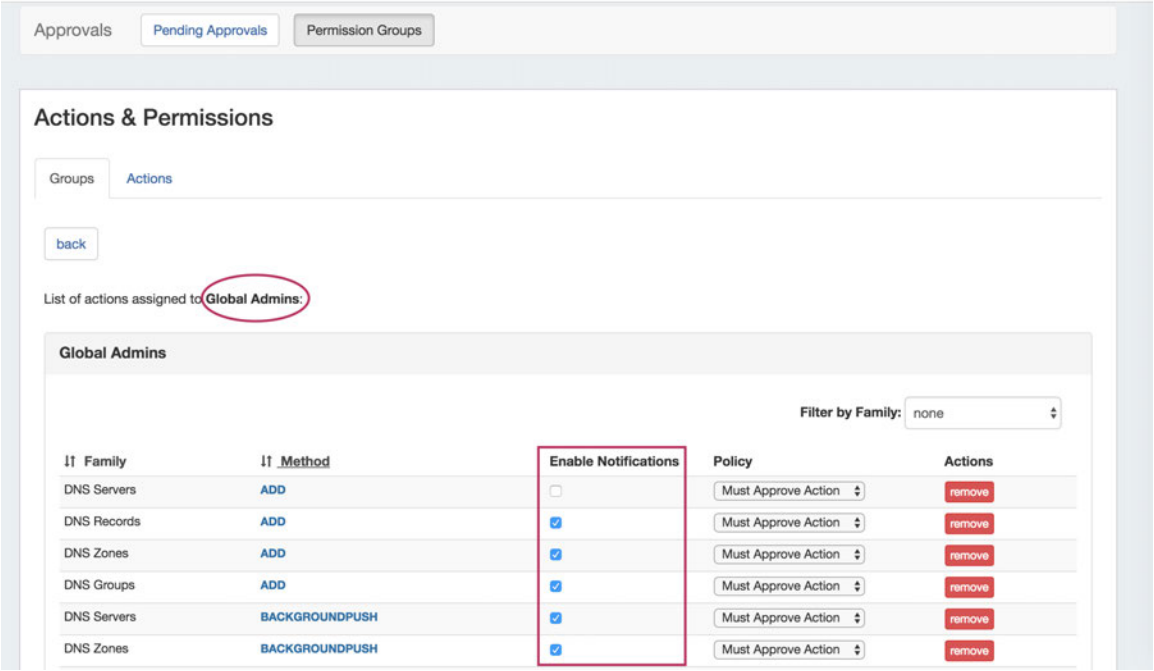

For additional information on working with the Scheduler, see Scheduler Tab documentation.

## Enable Notifications

Once the Scheduler task is verified created and active, notifications must be enabled for the desired Groups / Actions for the status changes to be emailed to the appropriate Groups.

From the **Approvals** **Permission Groups** Groups tab, Click on the Group name that you wish to enable/disable notifications for.

In the Group Details page, click the checkbox under "Enable Notifications" to enable / disable status change notifications for the Group for the selected Family/Action types.




# Additional Information

See the following areas for more information on Approvals and using Approvals with DNS:

- DNS Tab
- Approvals
- Pending Approvals
- Scheduler Tab

# ProVision Developer Tools

# Developer Tools

6connect ProVision can integrate with your existing tools and workflow through use of the API and CLI. The 6connect API allows you to access the data and functions of the 6connect web tools to run advanced commands in ProVision, and supports a wide variety of update and deletion conditions not available in the UI.

To use the API, you will need a basic understanding of object oriented programming in PHP and the right tools installed on your system.

**Table of Contents**


- Developer Tools
  - API Overview
  - API v2
  - API v1 (Deprecated)
  - Portable Gadgets
  - Reverse API
  - Toolkit
  - CLI
  - Resource Concepts


## API Overview

The 6Connect API is a RESTful API to access your data in the 6Connect tools. ReST relies on stateless, client-server communication, and is implemented using the HTTP protocol (the 6Connect APIv2 uses HTTPS). It is a simple and lightweight alternative to Web Services and can implemented in nearly any language. The 6Connect API operates similarly to other popular ReST APIs you may have worked with, such as Facebook or Twitter.

To learn more about request formatting, making requests, and the tools available, visit Making API Requests. You can also get the PHP SDK for PHP libraries and sample code.

Here are some important details about our ReST implementation:

- The API only comes with the full 6Connect IPAM product. If you would like to upgrade to the full version, contact sales@6Connect.com.
- All transactions are over HTTPS (SSL - port 443) only. Any transaction not using SSL will be rejected, and you will have potentially exposed sensitive data.
- All API results are formatted in JSON. XML support is coming soon.
- APIv2 requests use standard HTTP methods such as GET, PUT, POST, PATCH, and DELETE. We suggest using POST if the length of data in the request is over 8KB.
- You can use any language you would like to query the API. We currently have an SDK for PHP and one for Python. Looking at the sample code would probably help you implement it in any language though.

## API v2

APIv2 Quick Links

Public APIv2 documentation is located at https://cloud.6connect.com/APIv2/.

APIv2 documentation includes:

- IPAM API
  Includes actions for LIRs, IP aggregate and block management, VLAN, IP Rules, and SWIP.
- Resource API
  Includes actions for managing the ProVision Resource System.
  The resource API provides CRUD endpoints for resources, resource attributes, resource attachments and resource backups.
- DNS API
  ProVision DNS API allows you to manage DNS Zones, Records, Servers, Groups and ACLS.
- Users API
  Includes actions for ProVision Users, permissions and actions.
- Usergroups API
  Includes actions for ProVision Groups, permissions and actions

- Scheduler API
  The API Allows you to easily schedule tasks.
- API Composer Platform
  API Composer Platform (ACP) is an additional module in ProVision to help automate frequently used combinations of calls.

APIv2 is ProVision's currently supported RESTful API version. APIv2 adds new endpoints and upgraded functionality over APIv1, through use of HTTPS authentication, additional HTTP methods (GET, PUT, POST, etc.), and JSON payloads.

To test APIv2 queries, you may:

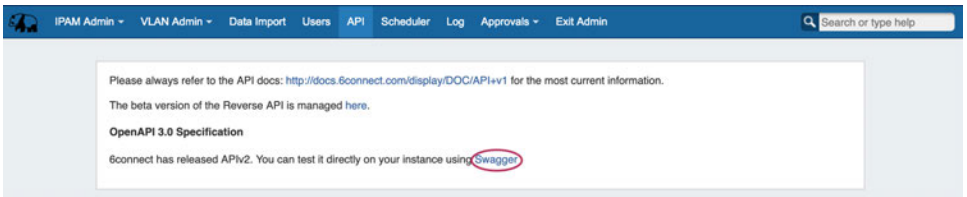
1. Use a browser extension REST client, such as Postman
2. Access ProVision's APIv2 Swagger documentation from your ProVision instance ( *instance*/dev/swagger), which provides the ability to test inputs and responses using your ProVision instance data.

## APIv2 Swagger Documentation

Public APIv2 documentation is located at https://cloud.6connect.com/APIv2/.

Existing customers may also access APIv2 Documentation from your ProVision instance (user must have Admin permissions):

1. Log into your ProVision instance.
2. Go to the Admin area of ProVision and click on the **API** Tab.
3. Under "OpenAPI 3.0 Specification" click the Swagger link provided.




# API v1 (Deprecated)

ProVision's APIv1 system has been replaced by APIv2, and is now considered deprecated.

It is highly recommended that any customer utilizing ProVision's API for custom scripting refer to APIv2 documentation instead, and consider upgrading existing APIv1 scripts to use APIv2.

However, APIv1 documentation will remain accessible from the links below in order to support legacy uses.

# Portable Gadgets

ProVision's Portable Gadgets are drop-in code snippets that use the ProVision API to bring in data to other systems or web pages. Portable Gadgets allow for quick data access and increased integration.

Currently, four Gadgets are available: Global Search, IPAM Search, DHCP Search, and Log. Each Gadget comes in various default option types for display style, number of records return, or behavior. Additional client-side style customizations may be made to further integrate the gadget with company styles.

# Reverse API

ProVision's Reverse API calls and UI elements allow for integration with outside APIs to improve workflow and create custom display content. In the ProVision user interface, the Reverse API page allows for endpoints to be built and provides a text editor to create presentation JavaScript commands. This JavaScript presentation code is then displayed in the Reverse API Gadget.

# Toolkit

6connect provides customers with additional CLI modules for ProVision power users in the /tools directory.

# CLI

Command line interface offering basic IPAM commands, such as Add, Update, Direct Assign, Smart Assign, and Unassign.

# Resource Concepts

A developer-oriented overview of ProVision's Resource System.

## Table of Contents


- APIv2
- API v1 (Deprecated)
- API SDK
- Portable Gadgets
- Reverse API
- Toolkit
- CLI (Alpha)
- Resource Concepts

# APIv2

# APIv2


- APIv2
  - API v2 Overview
  - APIv2 Swagger Documentation
    - Accessing Swagger
    - Viewing APIv2 Information
    - Testing Endpoints


## API v2 Overview

APIv2 is ProVision's currently supported RESTful API version. APIv2 improvements include:

- HTTP Basic Authentication
- Use of HTTP Methods (GET, PUT, POST, etc.)
- Supports JSON payloads
- Additional endpoints and ProVision functionality

To test APIv2 queries, you may:

1. Use a browser extension REST client, such as Postman
2. Access ProVision's APIv2 Swagger documentation from your ProVision instance ( *instance*/dev/swagger), which provides the ability to test inputs and responses using your ProVision instance data.

## APIv2 Swagger Documentation

### Accessing Swagger

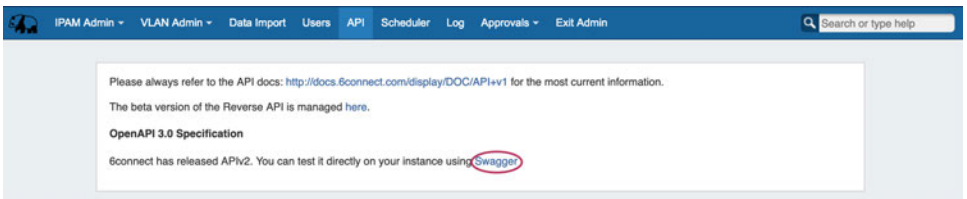
Public APIv2 documentation is located at https://cloud.6connect.com/APIv2/.

APIv2 documentation includes:

- IPAM API
  Includes actions for LIRs, IP aggregate and block management, VLAN, IP Rules, and SWIP.
- Resource API
  Includes actions for managing the ProVision Resource System.
  The resource API provides CRUD endpoints for resources, resource attributes, resource attachments and resource backups.
- DNS API
  ProVision DNS API allows you to manage DNS Zones, Records, Servers, Groups and ACLS.
- Users API
  Includes actions for ProVision Users, permissions and actions.
- Usergroups API
  Includes actions for ProVision Groups, permissions and actions
- Scheduler API
  The API Allows you to easily schedule tasks.
- API Composer Platform
  API Composer Platform (ACP) is an additional module in ProVision to help automate frequently used combinations of calls.

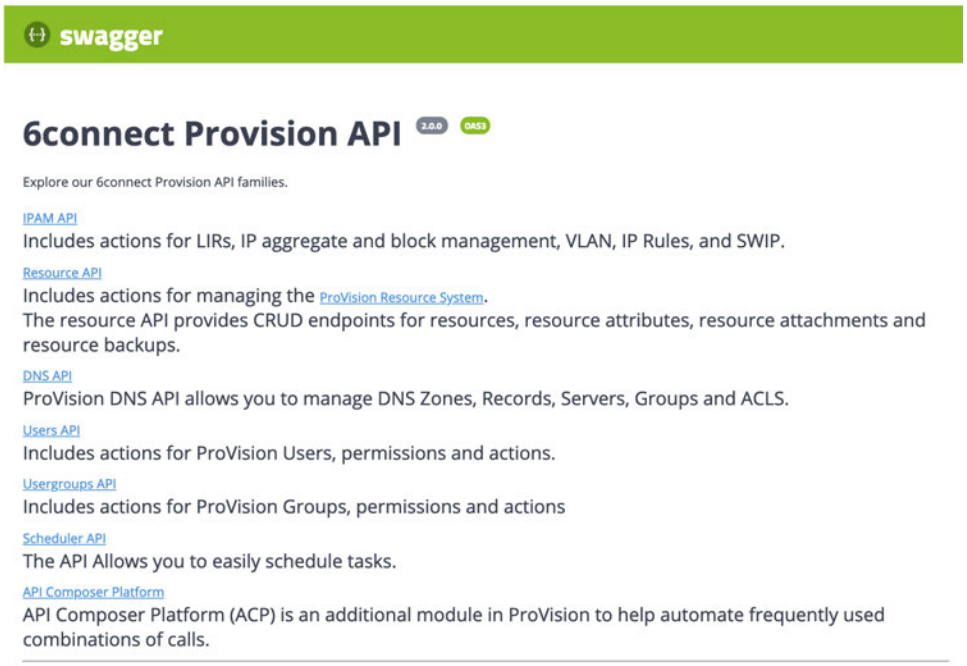
Existing customers may access APIv2 documentation from your ProVision instance (user must have Admin permissions):

1. Log into your ProVision instance.
2. Go to the Admin area of ProVision and click on the **API** Tab.
3. Under "OpenAPI 3.0 Specification" click the Swagger link provided.



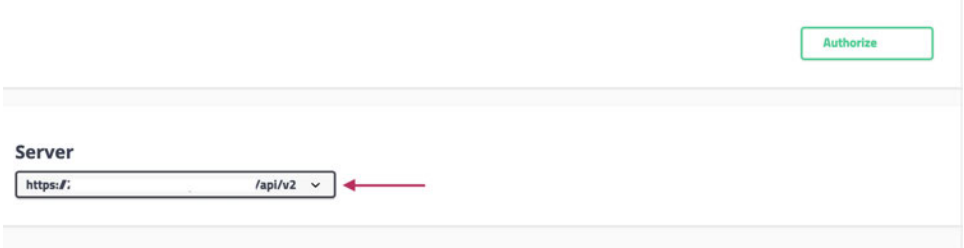
# Viewing APIv2 Information

1. On the 6connect Provision API Swagger home page, click on the name link for the API family that you wish to browse (IPAM, Resource, DNS, etc).



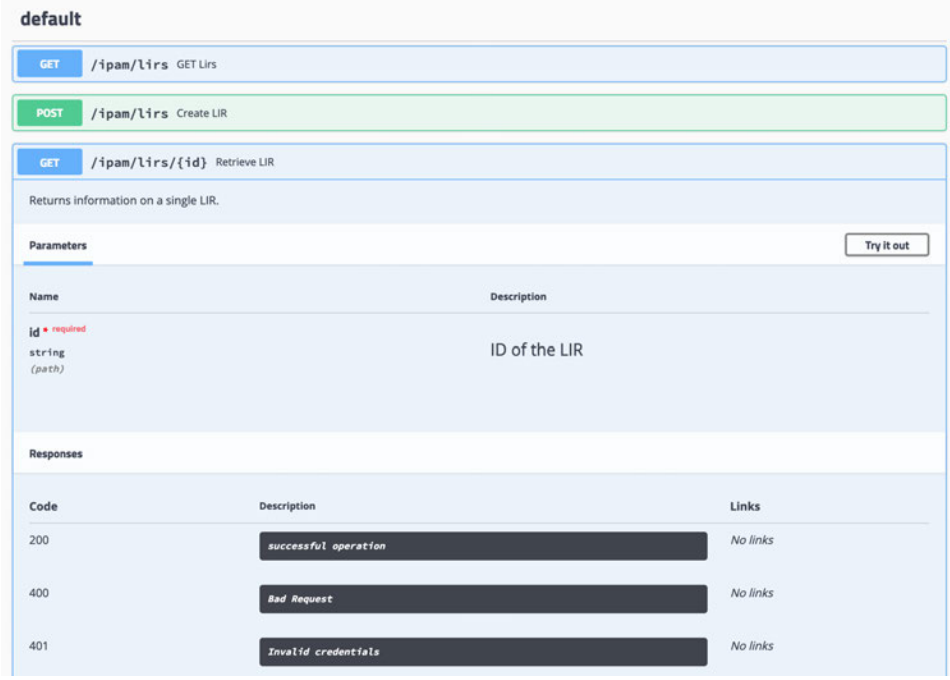

2. Once on an API Family page, verify that the displayed server name is correct for your instance/local server.

   In most situations, only one ProVision instance/server will be displayed, with authentication already provided from your ProVision login. If your ProVision session has ended, or the server changed, you may need to re-provide ProVision credentials by clicking the "Authorize" button.



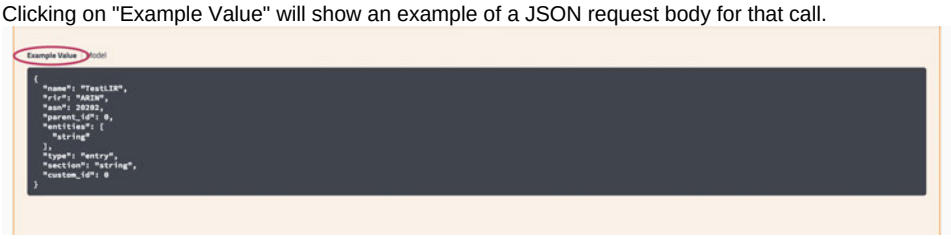

3. Scroll further down the page and begin reviewing available APIv2 calls and details. Clicking on any call will expand it to view parameter details  - you can even test call responses (using your instance data) by clicking "Try it Out"!

The detail information includes a description, parameter list (required parameters are marked with a *), and response information




4. Some calls that involve a JSON request body payload (PUT, PATCH, etc) will display "Example Value" and "Model" information under a "Request Body" section - additional parameter descriptions may be displayed under "Model" Information.

Clicking on "Example Value" will show an example of a JSON request body for that call.



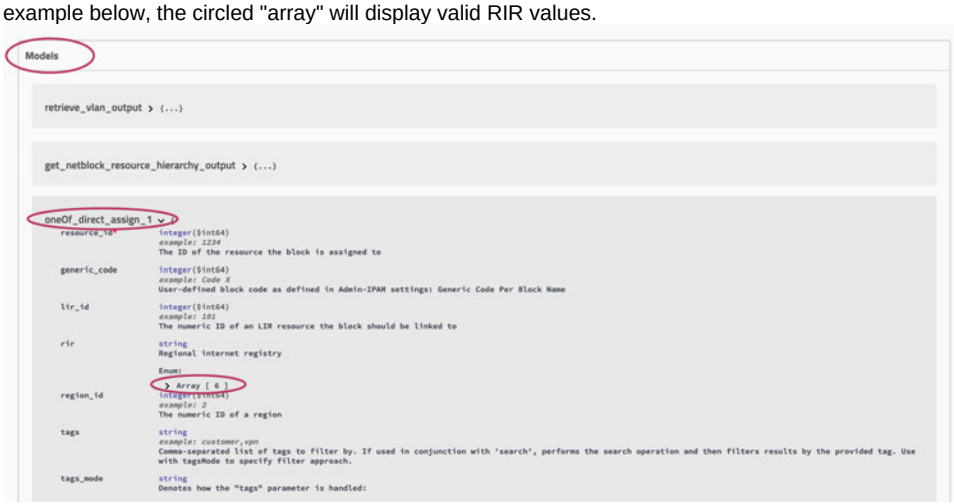

Clicking on "Model" will display details and descriptions of the request body parameters, if available.

5. Additional "Model" examples are available at the bottom of the page with additional descriptive information.

At the bottom of the page, click on "Models".

Then, click on the "Model" you

wish to view. Some models may contain additional information that you can expand to view, such as valid values for a parameter. In the example below, the circled "array" will display valid RIR values.

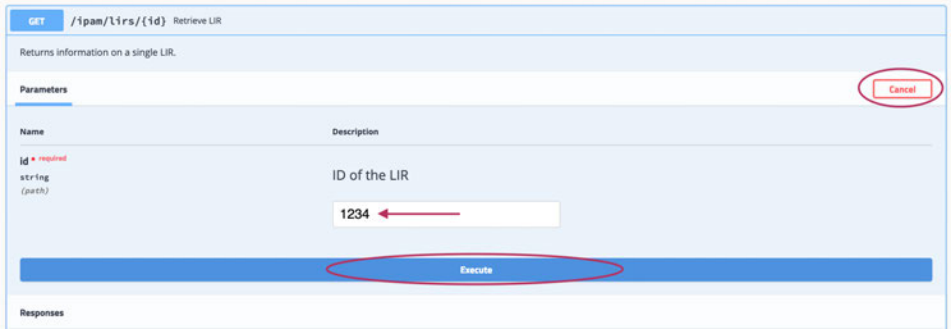



## Testing Endpoints

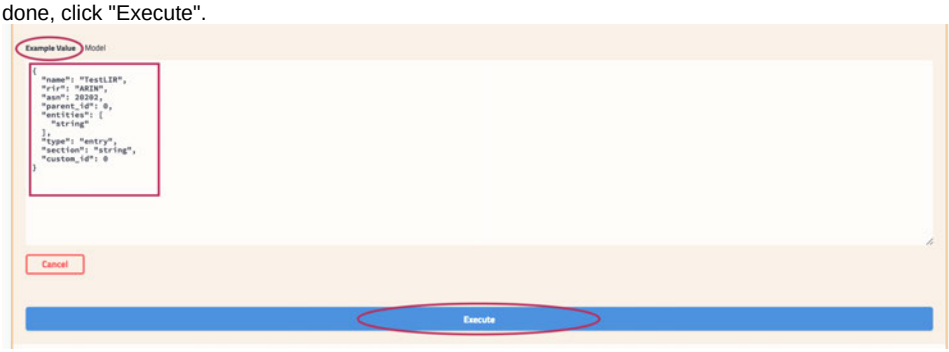
You may test queries in Swagger by using the "Try it out" button for any call.

1. Navigate to the call that you want to try out.
2. Expand the call to view its details, then click the "Try it out" button.

3. Input the desired parameters to test, and click "Execute".




If the call is a method that uses a JSON request body, you will have the option to edit the body text in the "Example Value" box - when done, click "Execute".




4. The example response will display under "Responses" after being executed.

**Responses**

**Curl**

```
curl -X GET "https://2-dev.6connect.com/qa-7.1.0-obf/api/v2/ipam/lirs/14501" -H "accept: */*"
```

**Request URL**

```
https://2-dev.6connect.com/qa-7.1.0-obf/api/v2/ipam/lirs/14501
```

**Server response**

| Code | Details |
|---|---|
| 200 | **Response body** |


```
{
  "id": "14501",
  "name": "abc",
  "slug": "abc-2",
  "rir": "1918",
  "asn": "123",
  "entities": [
    {
      "mnt_by": "abc",
      "admin_c": "abc",
      "tech_c": "abc",
      "mnt-by-password": "",
      "mnt_by_password": "**********"
    }
  ]
}
```


**Response headers**

```
access-control-allow-headers:
access-control-allow-methods: GET, PUT, POST, PATCH, OPTIONS, DELETE
access-control-allow-origin: *
access-control-expose-headers: X-Total-Count, Location
cache-control: no-store, no-cache, must-revalidate
connection: Keep-Alive
content-encoding: gzip
content-length: 135
content-type: application/json;charset=utf-8
date: Fri, 22 Mar 2019 02:25:42 GMT
expires: Thu, 19 Nov 1981 08:52:00 GMT
keep-alive: timeout=5, max=100
pragma: no-cache
server: Apache/2.4.18 (Ubuntu)
vary: Accept-Encoding
x-license-check: valid
```

# API v1

# API v1 (Deprecated)

ProVision's APIv1 system has been replaced by APIv2, and is now considered deprecated.

It is highly recommended that any customer utilizing ProVision's API for custom scripting refer to APIv2 documentation instead, and consider upgrading existing APIv1 scripts to use APIv2.

However, APIv1 documentation will remain accessible from the links below in order to support legacy uses.

## APIv1 - Overview

The 6Connect API is a RESTful API to access your data in the 6Connect tools. ReST relies on stateless, client-server communication, and is usually always implemented using the HTTP protocol (the 6Connect API uses HTTPS). It is a simple and lightweight alternative to Web Services and can implemented in nearly any language. The 6Connect API operates similarly to other popular ReST APIs you may have worked with, such as Facebook or Twitter. You simply create an HTTP GET or POST request according to our standard, send it to the server, and receive data back.

To learn more about request formatting, making requests, and the tools available, visit Making API Requests.
You can also get the PHP SDK for PHP libraries and sample code.

Here are some important details about our ReST implementation:

- The API only comes with the full 6Connect IPAM product. If you would like to upgrade to the full version, contact sales@6Connect.com.
- All transactions are over HTTPS (SSL - port 443) only. Any transaction not using SSL will be rejected, and you will have potentially exposed sensitive data.
- All API results are formatted in JSON. XML support is coming soon.
- All requests are either HTTP GET or POST requests. We suggest using POST if the length of data in the request is over 8KB.
- You can use any language you would like to query the API. We currently have an SDK for PHP. Looking at the sample code would probably help you implement it in any language though.

## Making APIv1 Requests

API requests can be generated within the web UI by the API Request Generator, or generated programmatically in any language.

An API request looks like this:
https://cloud.6connect.com/ex/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=get&type=IP&mask=24

An API response is a JSON-encoded text string, and looks like this:


```
{"success":1, "message":"1 blocks found", "data":[{"id":"7539","oct1":"1","oct2":"2","oct3":"3","oct4":"0","
mask":"24","child1":null,"child2":null,"is_assigned":"0","is_swipped":"0", "is_aggregate":"1","custid":"
holding","last_updated_time":"2012-03-20 09:49:00","description":null,"parent":null,"rir":"ARIN","notes":"
2012-03-20 09:49:00","generic_code":null,"region":null,"vlan":null,"arin_net_id":null,"arin_cust_id":null,"
arin_swip_time":"0000-00-00 00:00:00","assigned_time":"2012-03-20 09:45:12"}]}
```


Instructions on decoding this return data can be found in the API endpoint documentation pages.

**Using API Keys:**
When using the API without pre-established authentication to ProVision, you must include both your API Key and a specially-prepared query hash parameter, like so:

https://cloud.6connect.com/ex/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=get&type=IP&mask=24&apiKey=116-MX15LUYY78ZZTW5&hash=8jxj4IApYmgb5IZ0wBY4tFv+WilXb5JuVpjrwupyXQo=

API Keys can be generated from your ProVision instance by navigating to the Admin panel by using the gear icon in the upper right hand corner, then navigating to the API tab. The API tab will present the API authentication information in the following format:

API Key: 38-TMHQV8CV2XZYC2ZS

Secret Key: 6e04e5822ce90feaa8947ded46c46878

The secret key serves as an API password and is used in the creation of the API Authentication hash. The formula for creating a API query hash from an API query and a Secret Key is the following:

Hash = Base64Encode( Sha256HMACHash ( QueryString, SecretKey ) )

In PHP, this would be performed with the following line of code:

$hash = *base64_encode(hash_hmac('sha256', $_SERVER['QUERY_STRING'], $secretKey, TRUE));*

**Because the hash function is computed based on the query string, you must calculate a unique hash for every API request!**

**Example**

Lets say you wanted to create a hash for the following API request:

https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_375/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=get&type=IP&mask=24

And that your API Key and Secret Key are as follows:

API Key: 32-5DAYTJQY2TZHOFOB

Secret Key: 48b278ec873bda4738923dbc467f8669

The first step is to append your API Key to the URL. The API Key indicates which user is executing the API query.

https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_375/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=get&type=IP&mask=24&apiKey=32-5DAYTJQY2TZHOFOB

The next step is to isolate the Query String from the request URL. The Query String is everything which follows the question mark. So,

Query String: target=ipam&action=get&type=IP&mask=24&apiKey=32-5DAYTJQY2TZHOFOB

The next step is to calculate the SHA256 hash of this string with your Secret Key. In PHP, this would be:

$sha256 = hash_hmac('sha256', "target=ipam&action=get&type=IP&mask=24&apiKey=32-5DAYTJQY2TZHOFOB", "48b278ec873bda4738923dbc467f8669", TRUE);

As this value has been 256-bit hashed, it will contain many unprintable characters. The solution to this is to encode it in base 64 for transport. Again, in PHP:

$hash = *base64_encode($sha256);*

Calculating it out yields the completed hash:

$hash = yneSFMyxPPe+3W4IOkVp50K3VStatBcRRak+2ygDUWQ=

The calculated hash can then be appended to the full API Query URL to form a completed request:

https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_375/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=get&type=IP&mask=24&apiKey=32-5DAYTJQY2TZHOFOB&hash=yneSFMyxPPe+3W4IOkVp50K3VStatBcRRak+2ygDUWQ=

**A Note on False Positives**

ProVision utilizes several possible authentication schemes of which key-based API authentication is only one. Session-based, username /password authentication is used for the majority of user interaction with the ProVision front end. Because session information is stored in browsers cookies, a browser can be authenticated to execute API commands as long as the session is active.

Unfortunately, this can lead to confusion when using a machine-based API as the user might use an authenticated browser session to test API-Key based API queries. These queries will always succeed regardless of whether the API Query Hash was calculated correctly as the system defaults to Session-based authentication when it is available.

To ensure that session-based authentication is not polluting your API-Key based testing, always use a separate browser which is not logged in to your ProVision instance to test API queries.

**Other Languages**

The 6Connect API can be used in just about any scripting or programming language. We have a PHP SDK that provides example code, and several useful functions for interacting with the API. Even if you don't want to use PHP, the samples will help you create code in other languages

# APIv1 - Getting Started with the SDK

The 6connect API allows you to access to data and functions of the 6connect web tools. The SDK for PHP or Python will help you get this setup quickly by outlining the requirements, prerequisites and provide sample code.

## SDK for PHP

## Prerequisites

The API only comes with a licensed 6connect ProVision application. If you would like access to a ProVision license please contact sales@6connect.com.

**Create Your API Credentials**

To use the 6connect SDK for PHP, you will need a 6connect API Key and Secret Key.

**To create your API Key and Secret Key:**

- Log into your 6connect instance (hosted or local)
- Click on the Admin icon, and go into the Administration section.
- Click on the "API" tab.
- Select the user from the drop down you want to enable API access for, and click "Generate Keys".
- The API Key and the Secret Key will now appear directly below that.

*Note that generating a new API will automatically revoke an older API Key.

6connect recommends that each user accessing the API have their own API key configured. However, you can alternatively setup API users by functionality or roles. While the platform is flexible, you should follow your organizations security policies.

### Important!

Your Secret Key is a secret! Only you and 6connect should ever know this information. It is important to keep it confidential to protect the privacy of your data. Store it securely and never share this key with other users or place it on other systems. Never include the secret key in requests to 6connect, support requests to 6connect, and never e-mail it to anyone. Do not share it outside your organization. No one who legitimately represents 6connect will ever ask you for your Secret Key.

## Requirements

Aside from following the prerequisites, you will need a basic understanding of object oriented programming in PHP and the right tools installed on your system to use the API.

**Minimum Requirements**

- PHP 5.5 or newer.
- PHP JSON and PCRE extensions (XML will be coming soon).
- Curl PHP extension compiled with OpenSSL libraries. Click here for more information on curl.

If you aren't sure what is running on your system, you can create a php page on your system and call phpinfo() and view this page in a browser, or run php -i on the command line.

## Install the SDK

Download the file "6connect_ProVision_PHP_SDK_5_1_4.tar" from the attachments list below:

| File | Modified |
|---|---|

**Configure the SDK Security Credentials**

- Extract the zipped tar file to a directory.
- Open the api-config.php located in the downloaded SDK files.
- Read through the file and place in your instance name (or path for local installs), API Key and Secret Key information as specified.
- Make sure all files are in the same directory (the core class looks for a config file in the same directory by default).
- Run the sample code api-examples.php!

## Important!

You must setup user API access before running the sample. See the previous section "Create Your API Credentials" for more information.

# SDK for Python

# Install the SDK

Download the file "6c-api-examples-python.zip" from the attachments list below:

| File | Modified |
|---|---|

**Configure the SDK Security Credentials**

- Extract the zipped tar file to a directory.
- Open the apiclient.py located in the downloaded SDK files.
- Read through the file and place in your instance name (or path for local installs), API Key and Secret Key information as specified.
- Make sure all files are in the same directory (the core class looks for a config file in the same directory by default).
- Run the sample code api-examples.php!

## Important!

You must setup user API access before running the sample. See the previous section "Create Your API Credentials" for more information.

# APIv1 Documentation (Deprecated)

- API Module - Admin and Audit
- API Module - DHCP
- API Module - DNS
- API Module - IPAM
- API Module - LIR
- API Module - Peering
- API Module - Resource
- API Module - VLAN
- How Do I...

# API Module - Admin and Audit

# Admin and Audit

This section covers the functions found under the Admin section of ProVision.

## Table of Contents


- Authentication Testing
- Backup
- Log Management
- Scheduler API
- Zone Templates

# Authentication Testing


- Authentication Testing
  - testSSH
  - testLDAP
  - testSecure64


# Authentication Testing

## testSSH

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=auth&action=testSSH |
| Description | Returns success or failure of a connection to an external server via SSH. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Success!"}<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| SSHServer | STRING | totally.awesome.com | IP or FQDN of server. |
| SSHPort | NUMBER | 22 | Port ssh is running on. |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| username | STRING | jsmith | Username on target server. |
| password | STRING | password123 | Password for user. |
| directory | STRING | /tmp | Directory to attempt to access after successful login. |
| | | | |

Example URL: /api/v1/api.php?target=auth&action=testSSH&username=jsmith&password=password123&directory=%2Fvar%2Fnamed%2F6connect%2Fqa4&SSHPort=22&SSHServer=myssh.awesome.com

## testLDAP

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=auth&action=testLDAP |
| Description | Test basic connectivity to an LDAP server. Does not test actual authenticaion against server. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{'success':1, 'id':'12345'}*<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'unable to add block'}>* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| ldapServer | STRING | ldap.awesome.com | IP or FQDN of the LDAP server. |
| | | | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | ldapPort | NUMBER | 389 | User-defined block code as defined in Admin-IPAM settings: Generic Code Per Block Name |
| | ldapMode | STRING | SSL | Options are: SSL, TLS, or None. |
| Optional Parameters | None | | | |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=auth&action=testLDAP&ldapPort=389&ldapServer=ldap.awesome.com&ldapMode=None | | | |

## testSecure64

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=auth&action=testSecure64 |
| Description | Returns success or failure of a connection to an Secure64 DNS appliance. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Success!"}<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| SSHServer | STRING | totally.awesome.com | IP or FQDN of server. |
| SSHPort | NUMBER | 22 | Port ssh is running on. |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| username | STRING | jsmith | Username on target server. |
| password | STRING | password123 | Password for user. |
| directory | STRING | /tmp | Directory to attempt to access after successful login. |
| | | | |

Example URL: /api/v1/api.php?target=auth&action=testSecure64&username=jsmith&password=password123&directory=%2Fvar%2Fnamed%2F6connect%2Fqa4&SSHPort=22

# Backup


- Backup
  - backup now


# Backup

## backup now

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=backup&action=now |
| Description | Performs a manual backup to the designated location. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Backup via curl complete: "}<br>ERROR: *{"success":0, "message":"Error Message"}>* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| type | STRING | curl | File transfer type. Acceptable values are 'curl' or 'scp' |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| resource | INTEGER | 2213 | The server resource id to backup to. If left blank, backs up to the 6connect cloud. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | **Backup to designated server:** /api/v1/api.php?target=backup&action=now&type=scp&resource_id=2213<br><br>**Backup to 6connect cloud:** /api/v1/api.php?target=backup&action=now&type=curl |

When specifying a backup server resource ID, that server must have the Hostname, Username, and Password fields correctly provided in ProVision.

# Log Management


- Log Management
  - Get


# Log Management

## Get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=log&action=get |
| Description | Returns a list of log entries. Use optional parameters to filter the list. |

**Returns**

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"Search Successful.","data":[{"logId":"31568","time": "2012-05-07 17:44:43", "logLevel":"INFO","userId":"39","userName": "user@6connect.com","logCategory": "User","message": "User Doe (user@6connect.com) logged in via local authentication","ip":"107.111.0.228"}]}* |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

**Data Detail**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| log_id | INTEGER | 24 | Unique log entry id. |
| time | DATETIME | 2012-05-07 22:10:07 | Date and time year to second. |
| log_level | STRING | NOTICE | Standard syslog log levels in verbose format (EMERG, ALERT, CRIT, ERR, WARNING, NOTICE, INFO, DEBUG). |
| user_id | INTEGER | 11 | The unique user id associated with the log entry. |
| username | STRING | user@6connect.com | The unique user name associated with the log entry. |
| log_category | STRING | IPAM | The 6connect category for the log entry (User, IPAM, Resource Holder, DNS, Peering, Assistant, NTP, Reporting). |
| message | STRING | Created new children from 1.0.0.0/24 | The detailed log message. |
| ip | STRING | 107.111.0.228 | The remote IP address of the user who took the action being logged. |

**Required Parameters**

None*

*There are no required parameters, but at least one optional parameter must be provided for the call to succeed.

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| block_id | INTEGER | 310 | Id of the IPAM netblocks to which the logs belong |
| get_attributes | BOOLEAN | 1 | Display the log attributes along with the log into the client's response. (The attributes for each log record). Valid values are 1 (true) and 0 (false). |
| log_id | INTEGER | 24 | Unique log entry id. |
| time_min | DATETIME | 2015-05-07 [21:00:00] | Retrieve logs starting at this Date and optional time year to second. |
| time_max | DATETIME | 2015-05-07 [22: | Retrieve logs ending at this Date and optional time year to second. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | 00:00] | |
| limit | INTEGER | 100 | Total log entries to retrieve. Default limit is 1000 records. |
| orderby | STRING | log_id | Order results by log_id, time, log_level |
| order | STRING | ASC | Order by ascending / descending (ASC / DESC). |
| offset | INTEGER | 50 | Offset from 0 to retrieve log entries |
| username | STRING | user@6connect.com | The unique user name associated with the log entry. |
| log_category | STRING | IPAM | The 6connect category for the log entry (User, IPAM, Resource Holder, DNS, Peering, Assistant, NTP, Reporting). |
| log_level | STRING | NOTICE | Standard syslog log levels in verbose format (EMERG, ALERT, CRIT, ERR, WARNING, NOTICE, INFO, DEBUG). |
| ip | STRING | 1.2.3.4 | The remote IP address of the user whose action was logged |
| search | STRING | Aggregate Added | Search for a string in the logs. It searches in 'message', 'username', 'time', 'ip' and 'log_category' |
| time | DATETIME | 2015-05-07 [21:00:00] | Search logs from a specific time. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=log&action=get&block_id=310&order_by=log_id&order=DESC |

# Scheduler 1

This API is in beta and subject to change.


- Scheduler
  - addTask
  - updateTask
  - deleteTask
  - executeTask
  - getTaskHistory
  - getTasks


# Scheduler

## addTask

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=addTask |
| Description | Add a new scheduled task. Request is POST-only. Params are a single JSON object: |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Message "}<br>ERROR: *{"success":0, "message":"Error Message"}>* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| user_id | INTEGER | 100 | User ID |
| name | STRING | Process Holding Tank | Name given to the new |
| class_name | STRING | \scheduler\Tasks\ProcessHoldingTask | PHP-namespaced name for the task class. Currently available:<br>\scheduler\Tasks\ProcessHoldingTask<br>\scheduler\Tasks\BackupTask<br>\scheduler\Tasks\DNSPushTask |
| data | | {} | |
| active | BOOL | true | |
| repeat_items | | | |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| repeat_start | STRING | 2015-05-06 | Date to start repeating task. Date must be in YYYY-MM-DD format. |
| repeat_end | STRING | null | Date to end repeating task or null. Date must be in YYYY-MM-DD format. |
| repeat_hour | INTEGER | 8 | Hour of day to repeat, from 0-23 |
| repeat_minute | INTEGER | 0 | Minute of that hour to repeat, from 0-59 |
| repeat_day | INTEGER | 1 | Day of month, from 1-31 |
| repeat_week | INTEGER | 1 | Week of month, from 1-5 |
| repeat_weekday | INTEGER | 1 | Days to repeat. Sun-Sat are from 0-6 respectively |

## updateTask

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=updateTask |
| Description | Update a scheduler task |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"*Message*"}<br>ERROR: *{"success":0, "message":"Error Message"}>* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 4 | ID of the task to be updated |
| user_id | INTEGER | 100 | User ID |
| name | STRING | Process Holding Tank | Name given to the new |
| class_name | STRING | \scheduler\Tasks\ProcessHoldingTask | PHP-namespaced name for the task class. Currently available:<br>\scheduler\Tasks\ProcessHoldingTask<br>\scheduler\Tasks\BackupTask<br>\scheduler\Tasks\DNSPushTask |
| data | | {} | |
| active | BOOL | true | |
| repeat_items | | | |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| repeat_start | STRING | 2015-05-06 | Date to start repeating task. Date must be in YYYY-MM-DD format. |
| repeat_end | STRING | null | Date to end repeating task or null. Date must be in YYYY-MM-DD format. |
| repeat_hour | INTEGER | 8 | Hour of day to repeat, from 0-23 |
| repeat_minute | INTEGER | 0 | Minute of that hour to repeat, from 0-59 |
| repeat_day | INTEGER | 1 | Day of month, from 1-31 |
| repeat_week | INTEGER | 1 | Week of month, from 1-5 |
| repeat_weekday | INTEGER | 1 | Days to repeat. Sun-Sat are from 0-6 respectively |

## deleteTask

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=deleteTask |
| Description | Delete a scheduler task |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Task \"New Task\" (2) deleted","data":null}<br>ERROR: *{"success":0, "message":"Error Message"}>* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| taskId | INTEGER | 4 | ID of the task to delete |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=deleteTask&taskId=2 |

## executeTask

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=executeTask |
| Description | Execute a task immediately |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Holding tank processed. 0 IPv4 and 0 IPv6 blocks moved to the available pool. ","data":null}<br>ERROR: *{"success":0, "message":"Error Message"}>* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| taskId | INTEGER | 4 | ID of the task to run |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=executeTask&taskId=1 |

## getTaskHistory

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=getTaskHistory |
| Description | Get history for a specific task |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: { "success": 1, "data": [ { "log_id": "1005037", "time": "2015-05-07 12:29:45", "log_level": "6", "user_id": "31", "username": "usernamehere", "log_category": "System", "message": "task_id=1 task=Process Holding Tank action=finished message=Holding tank processed. 0 IPv4 and 0 IPv6 blocks moved to the available pool.", "ip": null }, { "log_id": "1005033", "time": "2015-05-07 12:28:50", "log_level": "6", "user_id": "31", "username": "usernamehere", "log_category": "System", "message": "task_id=1 task=Process Holding Tank action=finished message=Holding tank processed. 1 IPv4 and 0 IPv6 blocks moved to the available pool.", "ip": null }, { "log_id": "1005030", "time": "2015-05-07 12:28:14", "log_level": "6", "user_id": "31", "username": "usernamehere", "log_category": "System", "message": "Task \"Process Holding Tank\" (1) added", "ip": null } ] }<br>ERROR: *{"success":0, "message":"Error Message"}>* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| taskId | INTEGER | 1 | ID of the task to view |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=getTaskHistory&taskId=1 |

## getTasks

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=getTasks |
| Description | Gets a list of scheduled tasks and their repeat settings |
| Returns | |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: { "success": 1, "data": [ { "id": "1", "user_id": "31", "name": "Process Holding Tank", "class_name": "\\scheduler\\Tasks\\ProcessHoldingTask", "active": true, "data": null, "last_run": "2015-05-07 12:29:45", "repeat_items": [ { "id": "1", "task_id": "1", "repeat_start": "2015-05-06", "repeat_end": null, "repeat_interval": null, "repeat_year": "*", "repeat_month": "*", "repeat_day": "*", "repeat_week": "*", "repeat_weekday": "4", "repeat_hour": "20", "repeat_minute": "0" }, { "id": "2", "task_id": "1", "repeat_start": "2015-05-06", "repeat_end": null, "repeat_interval": null, "repeat_year": "*", "repeat_month": "*", "repeat_day": "*", "repeat_week": "*", "repeat_weekday": "5", "repeat_hour": "20", "repeat_minute": "0" }, { "id": "3", "task_id": "1", "repeat_start": "2015-05-06", "repeat_end": null, "repeat_interval": null, "repeat_year": "*", "repeat_month": "*", "repeat_day": "*", "repeat_week": "*", "repeat_weekday": "6", "repeat_hour": "20", "repeat_minute": "0" }, { "id": "4", "task_id": "1", "repeat_start": "2015-05-06", "repeat_end": null, "repeat_interval": null, "repeat_year": "*", "repeat_month": "*", "repeat_day": "*", "repeat_week": "*", "repeat_weekday": "0", "repeat_hour": "20", "repeat_minute": "0" } ] }, { "id": "2", "user_id": "31", "name": "New Task", "class_name": "\\scheduler\\Tasks\\TestTask", "active": true, "data": null, "last_run": "2015-05-07 12:35:41", "repeat_items": [ { "id": "5", "task_id": "2", "repeat_start": "2015-05-06", "repeat_end": null, "repeat_interval": null, "repeat_year": "*", "repeat_month": "*", "repeat_day": "*", "repeat_week": "*", "repeat_weekday": "1", "repeat_hour": "21", "repeat_minute": "0" }, { "id": "6", "task_id": "2", "repeat_start": "2015-05-06", "repeat_end": null, "repeat_interval": null, "repeat_year": "*", "repeat_month": "*", "repeat_day": "*", "repeat_week": "*", "repeat_weekday": "2", "repeat_hour": "21", "repeat_minute": "0" }, { "id": "7", "task_id": "2", "repeat_start": "2015-05-06", "repeat_end": null, "repeat_interval": null, "repeat_year": "*", "repeat_month": "*", "repeat_day": "*", "repeat_week": "*", "repeat_weekday": "3", "repeat_hour": "21", "repeat_minute": "0" }, { "id": "8", "task_id": "2", "repeat_start": "2015-05-06", "repeat_end": null, "repeat_interval": null, "repeat_year": "*", "repeat_month": "*", "repeat_day": "*", "repeat_week": "*", "repeat_weekday": "4", "repeat_hour": "21", "repeat_minute": "0" }, { "id": "9", "task_id": "2", "repeat_start": "2015-05-06", "repeat_end": null, "repeat_interval": null, "repeat_year": "*", "repeat_month": "*", "repeat_day": "*", "repeat_week": "*", "repeat_weekday": "5", "repeat_hour": "21", "repeat_minute": "0" } ] } ] }<br><br>ERROR: *{"success":0, "message":"Error Message"}>* |
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=scheduler&action=getTasks |

# Zone Templates


- Zone Templates
  - Get
  - Update
  - Delete


# Zone Templates

## Get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneTemplate&action=get |
| Description | Returns success or failure of a connection to an external server via SSH. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Found 1 records for template \"Awesome Template\".","data":{"templateId":"1011","name":"Awesome Template","created":"2013-07-31 14:01:24","modified":"2013-07-31 14:01:24","userId":"112","soa":null,"refresh":"14400","retry":"3600","expire":"604800","minimum":null,"ttl":null,"userName":"joe@smith.com","records":[{"templateRecordId":"4","templateId":"1011","host":"www","type":"A","ttl":"3600","value":"1.2.3.4","ordering":"0"}]}}<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| templateId | NUMBER | 3 | ID of the specific template to get. |
| | | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneTemplate&action=get |

## Update

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneTemplate&action=update |
| Description | Create a new template or update an existing template. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Template updated","data":{"templateId":"1011","name":"Awesome Template","created":"2 23:15:52","modified":"2013-08-05 23:15:52","userId":"112","soa":"ns1.test.net hostmaster.ns1.test.net","refresh":"14400","retry":"36 604800","minimum":null,"ttl":false,"userName":"anna@6connect.com","records":"1"}}<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'Error updating template: error details'}>* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| name | STRING | Test Template | The name of the template to be created or updated. |
| | | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional | |

| Parameters | Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | soa | STRING | ns1.test.net hostmaster.ns1.test.net | A valid SOA for the template in for format |
| | ttl | INTEGER | 86400 | The TTL for the zone template, which is the default expiration time for all records witho own TTL. |
| | refresh | INTEGER | 14400 | The time period for slaves to refresh the zone. |
| | retry | INTEGER | 3600 | Time that a slave should retry refreshing the zone in case of incident. |
| | expire | INTEGER | 604800 | Time for a slave to expire a zone. |
| | mininum | INTEGER | 3600 | The maximum caching time in the event of failed lookups. |
| | count_records | INTEGER | 5 | Number of host records submitted with the update. All the following parameters names followed with their position in the count. In this example, the first record would have all parameters for the first record followed by _1, the second record _2, and so on. This w order all records in the template follow. |
| | host_1 | STRING | | The DNS record value. |
| | ttl_1 | INTEGER | 3600 | TTL of the specific host record. |
| | type_1 | STRING | A | A valid DNS record type. |
| | value_1 | IP | 1.2.3.4 | A valid IPv4 or IPv6 address. |
| Example URL | api/v1/api.php?target=zoneTemplate&action=update&templateId=1011&count_records=1&name=Awesome+Template&soa=ns1.te net+hostmaster.ns1.test.net<br><br>&refresh=14400&retry=3600&expire=604800&minimum=3600&value_0=undefined+undefined&host_1=www&ttl_1=3600&type_1=A 2.3.4 | | | |

## Delete

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneTemplate&action=delete |
| Description | Deletes a DNS template. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Template \"Test Template\" delete."}<br>ERROR: {"success":0,"message":"No template found for templateId \"1005\"."} |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| templateId | INTEGER | 3 | ID of the template to delete. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None. |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneTemplate&action=delete&templateId=1005 |

# API Module - DHCP

# DHCP Management Version 2


- DHCP Management Version 2
  - Overview
  - API Updates
  - DHCP API How-To
    - Relate with Resources
    - Create DHCP IP Aggregates
    - Subnets and Hosts
    - Linking Subnets and Hosts with DHCP Servers
    - Pushing Configurations
  - Detailed API Specification


## Overview

DHCP Management Version 2 integrates DHCP management with ProVision's resource and permissions hierarchy, as well as the IP Management system. Individual DHCP servers can be assigned via Resource Permissions to different internal user groups, to be managed by only the appropriate parties.

Under DHCPv2 there is no distinct “DHCP Server” type or section – instead there is a “DHCP Module” which, when attached as a child to an existing resource, transforms it into a DHCP-enabled device. The most common use is to take the generic “Server” Section and turn it into a DHCP Server by attaching the DHCP Module as a child. This configuration allows users to add functionality to a basic resource and provides a cleaner management interface.

## API Updates

The DHCPv1 API operated via calls to the DHCPServer and the DHCPEntry endpoint families. However, now that DHCPv2 is contained entirely within the resource system, most of the API calls to manipulate DHCP data do so using the Resource family of API endpoints to modify specific Resource attributes reserved for DHCP functionality.

## DHCP API How-To

### Relate with Resources

The DHCPv2 system builds upon the ProVision Resource API. With the exception of a few configuration commands all DHCPv2 API commands use the Resource family of API endpoints.

As described above, DHCPv2 functionality is enabled on a particular resource by attaching a DHCP Module as a child. A command to do this is as follows:

```
             [ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=add

             data:
meta[type]: dhcp_module
meta[name]: [parent resource id] DHCP Module
meta[parent_id]: [parent resource id]
```

The special resource type “dhcp_module” indicates to ProVision that the DHCP system is enabled for the parent object. The attributes associated with the “dhcp_module” resource govern the DHCP system's behavior.

Updating the attributes of a DHCP Server uses a Resource Update command:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=update&meta[id]=2178 &meta[type]=dhcp_module&fields
[_dhcp_attributes][]={"type":"ISC","notes":"notes go here","username":"username","port":"port","
config_test":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd configtest","server_stop":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd stop","server_start":"/etc/init.
d/dhcpd start","config_path":"/tmp/dhcpd.conf","option_routers":"192.168.0.0","option_domain_name_servers":"
ns1.6connect.com","option_domain_name":"6connect.com","authoritative":"1","default_lease_time":"600","
max_lease_time":"7200","local_port":"67","log_facility":"local7","password":"password","server_ip":"
192.168.0.1","freeLines":3,"freeLine1":"free line 1","freeLine2":"free line 2","freeLine3":"free line 3"}
```

This command appears rather complicated, but can be broken apart into reasonable pieces. The first section:

```
target=resource&action=update&meta[id]=2178&meta[type]=dhcp_module
```

is familiar from other parts of ProVision. We are updating a resource of type “dhcp_module” whose resource id is 2178. The second section of the command details the update values, starting with

```
 fields[_dhcp_attributes][]=
```

which contains a JSON-encoded string of all the fields specific to a DHCP server's function. When expanded into its full object form it is substantially easier to digest:

```
{
            "type":"ISC",
            "notes":"notes go here",
            "username":"username",
            "port":"port",
            "config_test":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd configtest",
            "server_stop":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd stop",
            "server_start":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd start",
            "config_path":"/tmp/dhcpd.conf",
            "option_routers":"192.168.0.0",
            "option_domain_name_servers":"ns1.6connect.com",
            "option_domain_name":"6connect.com",
            "authoritative":"1",
            "default_lease_time":"600",
            "max_lease_time":"7200",
            "local_port":"67",
            "log_facility":"local7",
            "password":"password",
            "server_ip":"192.168.0.1",
            "freeLines":3,
            "freeLine1":"free line 1",
            "freeLine2":"free line 2",
            "freeLine3":"free line 3"
}
```

This object describes all the most common DHCP server configuration options. For a full explanation of each of the fields, see the Detailed API Specification later in this document.

Please note that the object above must be passed to the DHCP system as a JSON-encoded string. It must be passed into the special “_dhcp_attributes” attribute for it to be functional, as in the example URL.

## Create DHCP IP Aggregates

For details on how to manage IP aggregates using ProVision's IPAM API, see API Module - IPAM.

Of particular interest to DHCP management is the addition of DHCP aggregates, which are sections of IP space marked as available for use by the DHCPv2 system.

An example command to add a DHCP Aggregate is:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=add&block=192.168.0.0/24&rir=
1918&vlan=&tags=&region=&resourceId=1282&allowSubAssignments=true
```

The important part to note is that the IP block is being assigned to resourceId 1282, which corresponds to the DHCP Available resource. The DHCP Available resource is a system-level resource which is used to hold all unassigned DHCP IP addresses. Every instance has its own DHCP Available resource, whose id can be found with the following command:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=get&slug=dhcp-available
```

New DHCP subnets and hosts draw their IPs from this pool. If there are no IPs in the DHCP Available pool new subnets and hosts will not be able to be created.

DHCP IP aggregates are fetched, updated, split, and deleted using the standard IPAM management API endpoints. Please see the IPAM API Documentation. for details.

## Subnets and Hosts

Every DHCP configuration file consists primarily of Subnet and Host declarations, mapping out what IP addresses are available for what purpose. In DHCPv2, DHCP Pools are reusable components that can be attached to several DHCP Servers in order to build flexible, responsive DHCP configurations.

In ProVision DHCPv2 all DHCP Pools regardless of whether they span Subnets or individual Hosts require that a “dhcp_pool” resource be created to govern them.

Similar to how the “dhcp_module” resource was created above, the command to create a DHCP Pool is as follows:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=add&meta[type]=dhcp_pool &meta[name]=New Subnet&fields
[_dhcp_type][]=subnet&fields[_dhcp_pool_attributes][]={"mac":"","rangeStart":"","rangeEnd":"","freeLines":3,"
freeLine1":"Free Line 1","freeLine2":"Free Line 2","freeLine3":"Free Line 3"}
```

The first half of this command is relatively straightforward:

```
target=resource&action=add&meta[type]=dhcp_pool&meta[name]=New Subnet
```

This section informs the API that we wish to create a new, empty “dhcp_pool” resource whose name is “New Subnet.”

```
fields[_dhcp_type][]=subnet&fields[_dhcp_pool_attributes][]={"mac":"","rangeStart":"", "rangeEnd":"","
freeLines":3,"freeLine1":"Free Line 1","freeLine2":"Free Line 2","freeLine3":"Free Line 3"}
```

The second half of the command behaves in a similar manner to the “dhcp_module.” The “_dhcp_pool_attributes” field holds a JSON-encoded string which describes the dhcp_pool resource. When expanded, the JSON string becomes the following object:

```
{
            "mac":"",
            "rangeStart":"",
            "rangeEnd":"",
            "freeLines":3,
            "freeLine1":"Free Line 1",
            "freeLine2":"Free Line 2",
            "freeLine3":"Free Line 3"
}
```

For a full explanation of each of the fields, see the Detailed API Specification.

Please note that the object above must be passed to the DHCP system as a JSON-encoded string. It must be passed into the “_dhcp_pool_attributes” attribute for it to be functional, as in the example URL.

Once a dhcp_pool resource is in the system it can be updated with IP data obtained from the IP Management system. Under DHCPv2, the DHCP system uses all the standard IPAM API endpoints and can make use of both the smartAssign and the directAssign methods. Please see the IPAM API documentation for details.
An example command for smart-assigning a DHCP IP range from the DHCP Available resource to a newly-created dhcp_pool resource is as follows:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=smartAssign&resourceId=2180&
type=ipv4&mask=31&rir=1918&assignedResourceId=1282
```

In this example we are using the IPAM API endpoint to smart-assign an IPv4 /31 from the DHCP Available resource (resource id 1282) to the newly-created dhcp_pool object (resource id 2180). This action removes this IP range from the available pool and prevents it from being used by other parts of ProVision.

Once an IP block is assigned to a dhcp_pool it should be updated with the proper range start and range end. A Resource Update command is used for this.

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=update&meta[type]=dhcp_pool& meta[name]=Another
Test&fields[_dhcp_type][]=subnet&fields[_dhcp_pool_attributes][]={"mac":"","rangeStart":"10.10.10.4","
rangeEnd":"10.10.10.5","freeLines":3,"freeLine1":"example1","freeLine2":"example2","freeLine3":"example3"}
&fields[_dhcp_ip_id][]=92430&meta[id]=2180
```

The key information here is that the “rangeStart” and the “rangeEnd” fields in the JSON-encoded '_dhcp_pool_attributes' attribute have been populated with the beginning and end of the IP range assigned by smart-assign. Also note that a new field is being populated as '_dhcp_ip_id', which contains the IPAM id of the newly-assigned IP block.

When assigning dhcp_pools covering a single host the steps are much the same, but the 'mac' field in the '_dhcp_pool_attributes' object must be populated with the MAC address of the host in question.

## Linking Subnets and Hosts with DHCP Servers

DHCP Pools exist as re-usable components which can be individually assigned to any number of DHCP Servers in order to assemble flexible DHCP Configurations. Once created, a DHCP Pool is not attached to any DHCP Server in the system. DHCP Pools must be linked to a server for the pool to be included in DHCP configuration pushes.

An example of building a link between a dhcp_pool and a DHCP Server is:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=addLink&resource_id1=2178&
resource_id2=1452&relation=dhcpPoolLink
```

The Resource Linkage system controls which DHCP Pools are associated with a given DHCP Server. In the case of linking a DHCP Pool to a DHCP Server, the relation used is “dhcpPoolLink”. This is a directional link, so it is important that resource_id1 and resource_id2 do not get confused.

```
relation:  "dhcpPoolLink"
resource_id1:  the id of the dhcp_module this pool is being linked to
resource_id2:  the id of the dhcp_pool being linked
```

It is very important that resource_id1 not be confused with resource_id2. The link will not function with the values reversed.

To undo the above and break a DHCP Pool link, use the same command but substitute “deleteLink” for the action “addLink”.

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=deleteLink&resource_id1=2178&
resource_id2=2179&relation=dhcpPoolLink
```

## Pushing Configurations

Pushing configuration files and restarting a DHCP server is a fairly straightforward process.

Once the server has been configured according to the previous sections, hitting the following API endpoint will trigger a DHCP push:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=dhcp&action=push&id=2178
```

The “id” in the above string is the id of the dhcp_module resource attached to the server you whose configuration is to be pushed. The API return payload will contain success or failure codes, as well as a description of any errors which might have occurred.

When a DHCP configuration file is pushed an SSH connection is opened to the configured server using the user, password, and port supplied to the '_dhcp_attributes' attribute on the dhcp_module resource. If the system successfully connects, it will assemble a DHCP configuration from the information given to the dhcp_module's '_dhcp_attribute' attribute and then parse and add in all linked dhcp_pool resources.

After the assembled file has been transferred to the DHCP server it will be placed in the location given by 'config_path' on the dhcp_module, and then the command described in 'config_test' will be run to determine whether or not this new file parses correctly. If 'config_test' is blank or omitted, this step is skipped.

If the file parses correctly the DHCP will be stopped and restarted according to the 'server_stop' and 'server_start' commands on the DHCP module. If there are errors at any point the system backs out, replaces old config files, and reports the errors via the 'message' return field of the API call.

# Detailed API Specification

A detailed listing of API endpoints related to DHCP Servers, Pools, and Links can be found here:

- API Module - DHCPv2

# API Module - DHCPv2


- DHCPv2 Module
  - get all DHCP-enabled resources
  - create a new DHCP-enabled resource
  - update a DHCP-enabled resource with new configuration info
  - remove DHCP functionality from a resource
  - get all DHCP Pools
  - create a new DHCP Pool resource
  - update a DHCP Pool
  - delete a DHCP Pool
  - assigning an IP address or blocks to a DHCP Pool
  - get all DHCP Pool linkages
  - add a new DHCP Pool linkage
  - delete DHCP Pool linkages
  - push a DHCP config
  - DHCP search
- Data Attributes
  - _dhcp_attributes
  - _dhcp_pool_attributes


# DHCPv2 Module

The DHCPv2 system is built upon the Resource API, so actions relating to DHCP tasks are largely expressed in terms of Resource actions.

This section describes common DHCP tasks and how they are accomplished via the DHCPv2 system.

## get all DHCP-enabled resources

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Finds all resources from section 'dhcp_module,' which indicates that their parents are DHCP-enabled. Adding in other Resource-Get API parameters can filter this list further. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=get&type=dhcp_module |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Search successful","data":[{"id":"1432", "name":"1392 DHCP Module" ,"slug":"1392-dhcp-module", "type":"dhcp_module", "parent_id":"1392", "category_id":null, "attr":{"_dhcp_attributes":"{\"type\":\"ISC\", \"notes\":\"\", \"username\":\"\", \"port\":\"\", \"config_test\":\"/etc/init.d/dhcpd configtest\", \"server_stop\":\"/etc/init.d/dhcpd stop\", \"server_start\":\"/etc/init.d/dhcpd start\", \"config_path\":\"\", \"option_routers\":\"\", \"option_domain_name_servers\":\"\", \"option_domain_name\":\"\", \"authoritative\":\"1\", \"default_lease_time\":\"600\", \"max_lease_time\":\"7200\", \"local_port\":\"67\", \"log_facility\":\"local7\", \"password\":\"\", \"server_ip\":\"10.0.0.0\", \"freeLines\":0}", "_dhcp_config_id":"33"}}], "result_count":1, "found_count":1} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | ID of the dhcp_module resource |
| name | STRING | The name of the dhcp_module |
| slug | STRING | The unique reference string for this resource |
| type | STRING | Always 'dhcp_module |
| parent_id | INTEGER | The resource to which the dhcp_module is attached |
| category_id | INTEGER | The category to which this dhcp_module is associated |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| result_count | INTEGER | How many dhcp_modules are returned in this search. |
| found_count | INTEGER | How many dhcp_modules were found in this query, without pagination. |

**Attributes:**

| Key | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| _dhcp_attributes | JSON | A JSON-encoded string containing all the specific configuration parameters which govern this DHCP server. An expansion of the JSON object is given below in the Data Attributes section. |
| _dhcp_config_id | INTEGER | A reference to the DHCP Config file written within the system. This field is maintained by the DHCPv2 system itself and should not be set externally. |

## create a new DHCP-enabled resource

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | A resource becomes a DHCP-enabled by adding a special "dhcp_module" resource as a child. This action is identical to a normal Resource Create command. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=add&meta[type]=dhcp_module&meta[name]=2163 DHCP Module&meta[parent_id]=2163 |

Returns

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Resource added","data":{"id": 2165,"name" :"2163 DHCP Module","slug": "2163-dhcp-module-2","type" :"dhcp_module","parent_id": 2163,"category_id": null,"attr":[]}} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | ID of the newly created dhcp_module |
| name | STRING | The name of the dhcp_module |
| slug | STRING | The unique reference string for this resource |
| type | STRING | Always 'dhcp_module' |
| parent_id | INTEGER | The resource to which the dhcp_module is attached |
| category_id | INTEGER | The category to which this dhcp_module is associated |

## update a DHCP-enabled resource with new configuration info

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Modifying an existing dhcp_module uses the identical commands as all other Resource-Update actions. An example of configuring a DHCP server is given below. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=update&meta[id]=2178 &meta[type]=dhcp_module&fields[_dhcp_attributes][]={"type":"ISC","notes":"notes go here","username":"username","port":"port","config_test":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd configtest","server_stop":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd stop","server_start":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd start","config_path":"/tmp/dhcpd.conf","option_routers":"192.168.0.0","option_domain_name_servers":"ns1.6connect.com","option_domain_name":"6connect.com","authoritative":"1","default_lease_time":"600","max_lease_time":"7200","local_port":"67","log_facility":"local7","password":"password","server_ip":"192.168.0.1","freeLines":3,"freeLine1":"free line 1","freeLine2":"free line 2","freeLine3":"free line 3"} |

Returns

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success": 1,"message": "Resource Updated","data": {"id":"2166" ,"name":"2163 DHCP Module", "slug":" 2163-dhcp-module-3" ,"type":"dhcp_module", "parent_id":"2163", "category_id":null ,"attr": {"_dhcp_attributes": "{\"type\":\"ISC\", \"notes\":\"notes go here\", \"username\":\"username\", \"port\":\"port\", \"config_test\":\"\\\/etc\\\/init.d\\\/dhcpd configtest\" ,\"server_stop\":\"\\\/etc\\\/init.d\\\/dhcpd stop\" ,\" server_start\":\"\\\/etc\\\/init.d\\\/dhcpd start\",\"config_path\":\"\\\/tmp\\\/dhcpd.conf\", \"option_routers\":\" 192.168.0.0\", \"option_domain_name_servers\":\"ns1.6connect.com\", \"option_domain_name\":\"6connect. com\", \"authoritative\":\"1\", \"default_lease_time\":\"600\", \"max_lease_time\":\"7200\", \"local_port\":\"67\", \" log_facility\":\"local7\" ,\"password\":\"**********\", \"server_ip\":\"192.168.0.1\", \"freeLines\":3, \"freeLine1\":\" free line 1\", \"freeLine2\":\"free line 2\", \"freeLine3\":\"free line 3\"}"}}} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | ID of the newly created dhcp_module |
| name | STRING | The name of the dhcp_module |
| slug | STRING | The unique reference string for this resource |
| type | STRING | Always 'dhcp_module' |
| parent_id | INTEGER | The resource to which the dhcp_module is attached |
| category_id | INTEGER | The category to which this dhcp_module is associated |

**Attributes:**

| Key | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| _dhcp_attributes | JSON | A JSON-encoded string containing all the specific configuration parameters which govern this DHCP server. An expansion of the JSON object is given below in the Data Attributes section. |

## remove DHCP functionality from a resource

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | To remove DHCP functionality, delete the dhcp_module child resource. This operation uses general Resource->Delete functionality. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=delete&id=2166 |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Deleted 2163-dhcp-module-3 (#2166)"} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

## get all DHCP Pools

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | As with the dhcp_module commands, the API endpoints governing DHCP IP Pools use the general Resource system. All the modifiers that can be applied to a Resource-Get can be used to filter this query. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=get&type=dhcp_pool |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Search successful","data":[{"id":"1482","name":"Blah","slug":"blah","type":" dhcp_pool","parent_id":"1","category_id":null,"attr":{"_dhcp_type":"subnet","_dhcp_pool_attributes":"{\"mac\": |

| | |
|---|---|
| | \"\",\"rangeStart\":\"13.0.0.0\",\"rangeEnd\":\"13.0.0.255\",\"freeLines\":0}","_dhcp_ip_id":"80902"}}],"result_count":1,"found_count":1} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | ID of the dhcp_pool resource |
| name | STRING | The name of the dhcp_pool |
| slug | STRING | The unique reference string for this resource |
| type | STRING | Always 'dhcp_pool' |
| parent_id | INTEGER | The resource to which the dhcp_pool is attached |
| category_id | INTEGER | The category to which this dhcp_pool is associated |
| result_count | INTEGER | How many dhcp_pools are returned in this search. |
| found_count | INTEGER | How many dhcp_pools were found in this query, without pagination. |

**Attributes:**

| Key | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| _dhcp_type | STRING | Either 'subnet' or 'host'. Determines whether this DHCP Pool is describing a Subnet or a Host. |
| _dhcp_pool_attributes | JSON | A JSON-encoded string containing all the specific configuration parameters which govern this DHCP Pool. An expansion of the JSON object is given below in the Data Attributes section. |
| _dhcp_ip_id | INTEGER | The id of the IPAM subnet or host which is assigned to this DHCP Pool |

## create a new DHCP Pool resource

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Uses the general Resource-Add endpoint to create a DHCP Pool resource. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource& action=add& meta[type]=dhcp_pool& meta[name]=New Subnet& fields[_dhcp_type][]=host& fields[_dhcp_pool_attributes][]={"mac":"aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff", "rangeStart":"", "rangeEnd":"", "freeLines":3, "freeLine1":"Free Line 1", "freeLine2":"Free Line 2", "freeLine3":"Free Line 3"} |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Resource added","data":{"id":2167,"name":"New Subnet","slug":"new-subnet","type":"dhcp_pool ","parent_id":1,"category_id":null,"attr":[]}} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | ID of the newly created dhcp_pool |
| name | STRING | The name of the dhcp_pool |
| slug | STRING | The unique reference string for this resource |
| type | STRING | Always 'dhcp_pool' |
| parent_id | INTEGER | The parent resource; by default the TLR. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| category_id | INTEGER | The category to which this dhcp_pool is associated |

## update a DHCP Pool

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Modifying an existing dhcp_pool uses the identical commands as all other Resource-Update actions. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource& action=update& meta[type]=dhcp_pool& meta[name]=Another Test& fields[_dhcp_type][]=subnet& fields[_dhcp_pool_attributes][]={"mac":"", "rangeStart":"10.10.10.4", "rangeEnd":"10.10.10.5", "freeLines":3, "freeLine1":"example1", "freeLine2":"example2", "freeLine3":"example3"}&fields[_dhcp_ip_id][]=92430&meta[id]=2165 |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1, "message":"Resource Updated", "data":{"id":"2165", "name":"Another Test", "slug":"2163-dhcp-module-2", "type":"dhcp_module", "parent_id":"2163", "category_id":null,"attr":{"_dhcp_type":"subnet" ,"_dhcp_pool_attributes":"{\"mac\":\"\", \"rangeStart\":\"10.10.10.4\", \"rangeEnd\":\"10.10.10.5\", \"freeLines\":3, \"freeLine1\":\"example1\", \"freeLine2\":\"example2\", \"freeLine3\":\"example3\"}", "_dhcp_ip_id":"92430"}}} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | ID of the newly created dhcp_module |
| name | STRING | The name of the dhcp_module |
| slug | STRING | The unique reference string for this resource |
| type | STRING | Always 'dhcp_module' |
| parent_id | INTEGER | The resource to which the dhcp_module is attached |
| category_id | INTEGER | The category to which this dhcp_module is associated |

**Attributes:**

| Key | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| _dhcp_type | STRING | Either 'subnet' or 'host'. Determines whether this DHCP Pool is describing a Subnet or a Host. |
| _dhcp_pool_attributes | JSON | A JSON-encoded string containing all the specific configuration parameters which govern this DHCP Pool. An expansion of the JSON object is given below in the Data Attributes section. |
| _dhcp_ip_id | INTEGER | The id of the IPAM subnet or host which is assigned to this DHCP Pool |

## delete a DHCP Pool

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | To delete a DHCP Pool, use the standard Resource-Delete functionality |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=delete&id=2165 |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Deleted 2165-another-subnet-3 (#2165)"} |

| | |
|---|---|
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

## assigning an IP address or blocks to a DHCP Pool

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Assigning IP addresses or blocks to a DHCP Pool resource removes them from the available pool so they cannot be assigned out again. This procedure uses all the standard IPAM assignment functions, so long as the resource assigned **from** is the DHCP Available resource. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=smartAssign&resourceId=2162&type=ipv4&mask=31&rir=1918&assignedResourceId=1282 |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Assigned 10.8.1.4\/31 to 208.39.104.106 (2162) via Smart Assign","id":94468,"data":{"id":94468,"type":"ipv4","top_aggregate":44616,"cidr":"10.8.1.4\/31","formatted_ip":"10.8.1.4\/31","address":"168296708","end_address":"168296709","mask":31,"netmask":"255.255.255.254","child1":null,"child2":null,"is_assigned":1,"is_swipped":0,"is_aggregate":1,"custid":2162,"resource_id":2162,"resource_name":null,"last_updated_time":"2015-03-15 20:17:32","description":null,"parent":80882,"rir":"1918","lir_id":null,"notes":null,"generic_code":null,"code":null,"region":"Quito","region_name":"Quito","vlan":null,"arin_net_id":null,"arin_cust_id":null,"org_id":null,"arin_swip_time":null,"assigned_time":"2015-03-15 20:17:32","asn":null,"allowSubAssignments":false,"permissions":[],"range":"10.8.1.4 - 10.8.1.5","tags":["DHCP"]}} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

For a detailed breakdown of this endpoint's return data, please see the IPAM documentation.

## get all DHCP Pool linkages

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | The association between DHCP Pools and DHCP Modules belongs to the Resource Linkage family of endpoints. The 'relation' field should be set to the 'dhcpPoolLink' type to pull only DHCP Pool linkage information. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=getLink&relation=dhcpPoolLink |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1 ,"message":"Search successful", "data":{"meta":{"totalRecords":"3", "retrieved":3}, "0":{"id":"22", "resource_id1":"1292", "resource_id2":"1302", "relation":"dhcpPoolLink"}, "1":{"id":"2", "resource_id1":"1292", "resource_id2":"1452", "relation":"dhcpPoolLink"}, "2":{"id":"12", "resource_id1":"1422", "resource_id2":"1482", "relation":"dhcpPoolLink"}}} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | Id of the pool-module linkage |
| resource_id1 | INTEGER | The id of the dhcp_module resource |
| resource_id2 | INTEGER | The id of the dhcp_pool resource |
| relation | STRING | The relation type. Always 'dhcpPoolLink' |

**Meta Attributes:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| totalRecords | INTEGER | How many records were found by this query, without pagination. |
| retrieved | INTEGER | How many records were returned by this query, with pagination. |

**Optional Attributes:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| resultsPerPage | INTEGER | How many records to include per page display.* |
| page | INTEGER | Which page to display, when used with "resultsPerPage"* |
| *Example pagination: api.php?target=resource&action=getLink&relation=dhcpPoolLink&resultsPerPage=100&page=2 | | |

## add a new DHCP Pool linkage

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Adds a new link between a DHCP Pool and a dhcp_module resource. A single pool can be linked to many dhcp_modules, and a single dhcp_module can have any number of linked pools. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=addLink&resource_id1=1292&resource_id2=2162&relation=dhcpPoolLink |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Resource link added"} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| resource_id1 | INTEGER | The id of the dhcp_module resource |
| resource_id2 | INTEGER | The id of the dhcp_pool resource |
| relation | STRING | The relation type being added. Always 'dhcpPoolLink' |

## delete DHCP Pool linkages

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Deletes a link between a dhcp_module and a dhcp_pool. Uses the standard Resource Linkage endpoints. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=deleteLink&id=22 |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Resource link(s) deleted."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

## push a DHCP config

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Builds a DHCP configuration from the attributes assigned to a dhcp_module and all of the linked dhcp_pools. Pushes that config to the configured DHCP server, tests it against the config parsing function, then restarts the server with the new configuration. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dhcp&action=push&id=1292 |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Pushes Attempted.","data":[[1,"1292","381 DHCP Module","Configuration successfully pushed."]]} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | The id of the dhcp_module resource whose configuration is to be pushed. |

## DHCP search

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Searches DHCP information by name, mac, or IP. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dhcp&action=search&searchType=name&searchValue=Blah<br><br>/api/v1/api.php?target=dhcp&action=search&searchType=mac&searchValue=22:<br><br>/api/v1/api.php?target=dhcp&action=search&searchType=ip&searchValue=13.0.0.255 |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Search Successful","data":[{"id":"1482","name":"BlahBlah","slug":"blah","type":" dhcp_pool","parent_id":"1","category_id":null,"attr":{"_dhcp_type":"subnet","_dhcp_pool_attributes":"{\"mac\": \"\",\"rangeStart\":\"13.0.0.0\",\"rangeEnd\":\"13.0.0.255\",\"freeLines\":0}","_dhcp_ip_id":"80902"," dhcp_links":["1422","3673"]}}]} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | ID of the dhcp_module resource |
| name | STRING | The name of the dhcp_module |
| slug | STRING | The unique reference string for this resource |
| type | STRING | Always 'dhcp_pool' |
| parent_id | INTEGER | The resource to which the dhcp_module is attached |
| category_id | INTEGER | The category to which this dhcp_module is associated |

**Attributes**

| Key | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| _dhcp_type | STRING | Either 'subnet' or 'host'. Determines whether this DHCP Pool is describing a Subnet or a Host. |
| _dhcp_pool_attributes | JSON | A JSON-encoded string containing all the specific configuration parameters which govern this DHCP Pool. An expansion of the JSON object is given below in the Data Attributes section. |
| _dhcp_ip_id | INTEGER | The id of the IPAM subnet or host which is assigned to this DHCP Pool. |
| _dhcp_links | INTEGER | The id of dhcp links. |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| searchType | STRING | name | Type of search performing. Valid values are 'name', 'mac', and 'ip'. |
| searchValue | STRING | Blah | If searchType is 'IP': searchValue must be a valid IP address or IP Block.<br>if searchType"is 'mac': searchValue must be a full or partial mac address.<br>Not required if searchType is 'name', but is recommended to filter results. |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| selectOffset | INTEGER | 10 | Start number for the first result to show on the page to set pagination. For example, a selectOffset=15 with a selectCount=10 would return result numbers 15 through 25 on the page. Default value is 0 if not specified. |
| selectCount | INTEGER | 5 | The number of results to return on the page, if return results exceed the number of selectCount. Default value is 10 |
| linkedTo | INTEGER | 1422 | The ID of the resource's DHCP link(s) |

# Data Attributes

## _dhcp_attributes

Description: The _dhcp_attributes data attribute holds the specific settings used to generate a DHCP configuration file, place it on a server via SCP, and restart that server via a SSH session.

Example:

{"type":"ISC", "notes":"notes here", "username":"username", "port":"22", "config_test":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd configtest", "server_stop":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd stop", "server_start":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd start", "config_path":"/tmp/dhcpd.conf", "option_routers":"", "option_domain_name_servers":"", "option_domain_name":"", "authoritative":"1", "default_lease_time":"600", "max_lease_time":"7200", "local_port":"67", "log_facility":"local7", "password":"", "server_ip":"10.0.0.0", "freeLines":0}

**Data Description**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| type | STRING | The type of DHCP server being administered. Currently only 'ISC' is supported. |
| notes | STRING | Notes associated with this DHCP server |
| server_ip | STRING | The IP address of the DHCP server |
| username | STRING | The SSH username employed when transferring the DHCP configuration file to the server. |
| password | STRING | The SSH password employed when transferring the DHCP configuration file to the server. |
| port | INTEGER | The SSH port employed when transferring the DHCP configuration file to the server. |
| config_test | STRING | The command to test if a configuration file parses correctly. ex: /etc/init.d/dhcpd configtest |
| server_stop | STRING | The command to stop the DHCP server. ex: /etc/init.d/dhcpd stop |
| server_start | STRING | The command to start the DHCP server. ex: /etc/init.d/dhcpd start |
| config_path | STRING | Where to place the configuration file on the server. |
| authoritative | BOOL | Whether or not this DHCP server is authoritative. |
| default_lease_time | INTEGER | The default lease time for IPs distributed by this DHCP server. |
| max_lease_time | INTEGER | The max lease time for IPs distributed by this DHCP server. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| local_port | INTEGER | The port on which this DHCP server listens |
| option_routers | STRING | The information which populates the "routers" option in the DHCP configuration |
| option_domain_name_servers | STRING | The information which populates the "domain_name_servers" option in the DHCP configuration |
| option_domain_name | STRING | The information which populates the "domain_name" option in the DHCP configuration |
| log_facility | STRING | The log facility to which this DHCP Server sends its logging information |
| freeLines | INTEGER | As this system cannot hope to support all the thousands of different DHCP configurations, ProVision's DHCPv2 system includes a mechanism for adding "free lines" to the end of certain DHCP config sections so that administrators can customize their DHCP config file to their needs. The "freeLines" field indicates how many of these lines exist to be inserted after the general server definition section but before the subnets and hosts are enumerated. |
| freeLine# | STRING | Free line data to be inserted after the general server definition section but before the subnets and hosts are enumerated. There can be multiple instances of this attribute, numbered appropriately. ex: "freeLine1", "freeLine2", "freeLine3", etc. The number of freeLine# entries must match the number in the "freeLines" attribute. |

## _dhcp_pool_attributes

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | A JSON-encoded string containing all the specific configuration parameters which govern this DHCP Pool. |
| Example: | {"mac":"ab:cc:de:ff:aa:bc","rangeStart":"13.0.0.0","rangeEnd":"13.0.0.255","freeLines":1,"freeLines1":"free line"} |

**Data Description**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| mac | STRING | Only used when setting up a DHCP Host-type Pool. Holds the MAC address of the system to which the IP will be associated. |
| rangeStart | STRING | Only used when setting up a DHCP Subnet-type Pool. Holds the beginning of the Subnet range being allocated. |
| rangeEnd | STRING | Only used when setting up a DHCP Subnet-type Pool. Holds the end of the Subnet range being allocated. |
| freeLines | INTEGER | As this system cannot hope to support all the thousands of different DHCP configurations, ProVision's DHCPv2 system includes a mechanism for adding "free lines" to the end of certain DHCP config sections so that administrators can customize their DHCP config file to their needs. The "freeLines" field indicates how many of these lines exist to be inserted within the DHCP Pool declaration. |
| freeLine# | STRING | Free line data to be inserted after the general server definition section but before the subnets and hosts are enumerated. There can be multiple instances of this attribute, numbered appropriately. ex: "freeLine1", "freeLine2", "freeLine3", etc. The number of freeLine# entries must match the number in the "freeLines" attribute. |

# API Module - DNS


- DNS Server Control
  - get
  - add
  - delete
  - update
  - transferServer
  - transferSingle
- DNS Zone Control
  - get
  - search
  - update
  - add
  - delete
  - getRecordTypes
  - getFile
  - getDSFile
  - checkZone
  - getArchivedZone
- DNS Record Control
  - get
  - update
  - add
  - delete
  - switch
- Server-Zone Linkage
  - get
  - add
  - delete
- Name Server Control
  - get
  - add
  - delete
  - setDefault
  - orderUp
  - orderDown


# DNS Server Control

## get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=get |
| Description | If provided with an id, fetches that DNS Server from the database. If not, fetches a list of all stored DNS Servers |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Fetch Sucessful.","data":[{"id":"10","server":"mrbomasm-dns-4.onnet.net", "username":"user", "password":"vwvddp","port":"2600","customer_name":null,"transfer_type": "SCP"," remote_directory":"zones", "named_conf_path":"\/etc\/zones","active":"1","post_command":null," pre_command":null,"dyn_DNSSEC_contact":null, "powerdns_backend":"Bind","db_username":null," db_password":("","db_port":null,"db_name":null, "server_type":"slave","SOA":null,"master_id":null,"options": "{\"customer_name\":\"\",\"server_type\":\"slave\" ,\"SOA\":\"\",\"remote_directory\":\"zones\", \" named_conf_path\":\"\\\/etc\\\/zones\", \"dyn_DNSSEC_contact\" :\"\",\"post_command\":\"\" ,\" pre_command\":\"\",\"powerdns_backend\":\"Bind\", \"db_username\":\"\",\"db_password\":\"(\",\"db_port\":\"\", \"db_name\":\"\",\"enable_views\":\"1\"}", "testID":"963","zoneCount":"8","views":"[{\"id\":\"1\", \"server_id\":\" 10\",\"name\":\"_6connectDefault\",\"extras\":\"[]\",\"description\":\"\",\"timestamp\":\"1371789181\"},{\"id\":\"3\", \"server_id\":\"10\",\"name\":\"internal\",\"extras\":\"[]\",\"description\":null,\"timestamp\":\"1374686650\"}]"}]} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | Server ID |
| server | STRING | Server Name |
| username | STRING | Login Name |
| password | CRYPT | Login Password |
| port | INTEGER | Port the Server listens on |
| zoneCount | INTEGER | The number of zones attached to this server. |
| options | JSON | The options entry is a JSON-encoded string containing a variety of server-specific configuration options.<br><br>This string will vary widely by server type and configuration. The following are a selection of common settings. |
| transfer_type | STRING | Protocol used for transfer of DNS zones and records. Valid settings include SCP, PowerDNS, Secure64, Secure64Signer |
| server_type | STRING | Whether this server is a master or a slave server |
| SOA | STRING | The SOA entry to be used for zones on this server |
| remote_directory | STRING | The directory where SCP will place the zone files. |
| named_conf_path | STRING | The path to the zone files used within the named.conf file. |
| pre_command | STRING | The command executed on the server before the zones are transferred |
| post_command | STRING | The command executed on the server after the transfer is complete |
| enable_views | INTEGER | Whether or not Views are enabled |
| views | JSON | The views entry is a JSON-encoded string containing all the information about the Views attached to this server, if any exist. |
| id | INTEGER | The View ID |
| server_id | INTEGER | The ID of the server the View is attached to |
| name | STRING | The name of the View |
| description | STRING | A description of the View |
| timestamp | INTEGER | The UNIX timestamp of when the view was created. |
| extras | JSON | A JSON-encoded array of the extra attributes printed out in the view definition in the config file. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 15 | The server id to fetch. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=get&id=15 |

## add

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=add |
| Description | Adds a new DNS Server |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Add Successful."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| server | STRING | dns.yourdomain.com | IP or FQDN of the DNS Server |
| password | STRING | password1 | Login password for Server |
| transferType | STRING | SCP | Protocol used for transfer of DNS zones and records. Valid settings include SCP, PowerDNS, Secure64, Secure64Signer |
| serverType | STRING | Master | Values are 'Master' or 'Slave' only |
| displayName | STRING | Primary NS | The name displayed representing the DNS server, can be the same as server or different |
| SOA | STRING | ns1.6connect.com. hostmaster.6connect.com. | Server of Authority record for DNS server |

Optional Parameters

These optional parameters vary according to what type of server is being configured.

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| customerName | STRING | /tmp/zones | Customer Name |
| remoteDirectory | STRING | /tmp/zones | Zone Directory on Server |
| port | INTEGER | 22 | Port for ssh or scp access to server |
| namedConfPath | STRING | /tmp | The path to the zone files used within the named.conf file. |
| preCommand | STRING | /path/to/stuff /precommand | Command to execute before zone transfer |
| postCommand | STRING | /path/to/stuff /postcommand | Command to execute after zone transfer |
| DNSSECContact | STRING | joeuser | For use with Dyn dns service |
| username | STRING | bobuser | Login name for Server |
| active | INTEGER | 0 | Values 0 or 1 only, sets the server to inactive on 0 value |
| masterId | INTEGER | 53 | Master server ID. If a server is a slave, masterId points to its master. |
| powerDNSBackend | STRING | Bind or MySQL | pDNS server backend type |
| dbDatabaseName | STRING | pdns_1 | DB name for pDNS servers with MySQL powerDNSBackend type |
| dbPort | INTEGER | 3306 | Port for for pDNS servers with MySQL powerDNSBackend type |
| dbUsername | STRING | someuser | DB username for pDNS servers with MySQL powerDNSBackend type |
| dbPassword | STRING | somepass | DB password for pDNS servers with MySQL powerDNSBackend type |

Example URL

/api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=add&server=dns.yourdomain.com&transferType=Secure64&displayName=PrimaryNS&serverType=master&password=password1&SOA=ns1.6connect.com.+hostmaster.6connect.com.

## delete

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=delete |
| Description | Deletes a DNS Server |

| | |
|---|---|
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Delete Successful."}<br>ERROR: {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 5 | ID of server to delete |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=delete&id=5 |

## update

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=update |
| Description | Updates an existing DNS Server with new information. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Update Successful."}<br>ERROR: {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 5 | ID of server |
| server | STRING | dns.yourdomain.com | IP or FQDN of the DNS Server |
| SOA | STRING | ns1.6connect.com. hostmaster.6connect. com. | Server of Authority record for DNS server |
| transferType | STRING | SCP | Protocol used for transfer of DNS zones and records. Valid settings include SCP, PowerDNS, Secure64, Secure64Signer |

Optional Parameters

These optional parameters vary according to what type of server is being configured.

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| active | INTEGER | 0 | Values 0 or 1 only, sets the server to inactive on 0 value |
| customerName | STRING | /tmp/zones | Customer Name |
| dbDatabaseName | STRING | pdns_1 | DB name for pDNS servers with MySQL powerDNSBackend type |
| dbPassword | STRING | somepass | DB password for pDNS servers with MySQL powerDNSBackend type |
| dbPort | INTEGER | 3306 | Port for for pDNS servers with MySQL powerDNSBackend type |
| dbUsername | STRING | someuser | DB username for pDNS servers with MySQL powerDNSBackend type |
| displayName | STRING | Primary NS | The name displayed representing the DNS server, can be the same as server or different |
| DNSSECContact | STRING | joeuser | For use with Dyn dns service |
| enable_views | INTEGER | 1 | Whether or not Views are enabled. Valid values are '1' for enable or '0' for do not enable |
| masterId | INTEGER | 53 | Master server ID. If a server is a slave, masterId points to its master. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| namedConfPath | STRING | /tmp | The path to the zone files used within the named.conf file. |
| password | STRING | password1 | Login password for Server |
| port | INTEGER | 22 | Port for ssh or scp access to server |
| powerDNSBackend | STRING | Bind or MySQL | pDNS server backend type |
| postCommand | STRING | /path/to/stuff /postcommand | Command to execute after zone transfer |
| preCommand | STRING | /path/to/stuff /precommand | Command to execute before zone transfer |
| remoteDirectory | STRING | /tmp/zones | Zone Directory on Server |
| serverType | STRING | Master | Values are 'Master' or 'Slave' only |
| username | STRING | bobuser | Login name for Server |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api.php?target=dnsServer&action=update&id=74&transferType=SCP&server=dns.yourdomain.com&SOA=ns1.6connect.com.+hostmaster.6connect.com. |

## transferServer

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=transferServer |
| Description | Performs a full zone push on a DNS Server, executing pre and post commands, transferring files, and restarting services. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Transfer Successful."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| push | INTEGER | 1 | The ID of the server to push zones to |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=transferServer&push=1 |

## transferSingle

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=transferSingle |
| Description | Transfers a single Zone file to all its associated DNS Servers, along with updated server configurations.<br><br>Performs pre and post commands on the target servers, transfers the zone file(s), and restarts services. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Updated Zone: $name.zone on $server via SCP"} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | 35 | The ID of the zone to push |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=dnsServer&action=transferSingle&zoneId=35 |

# DNS Zone Control

## get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=get |
| Description | Accepts search criteria to retrieve a list of all matching DNS Zones and associated Records.<br><br>Search can be performed on any combination of Zone and Record attributes. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Search Successful.","data":[{"zoneId":"932","zoneName":"185.160.209.in-addr.arpa","zoneResourceId":"81", "zoneSerial":"2013040302","zoneRefresh":"28800","zoneRetry":"7200"," zoneExpire":"604800","zoneMinimum":"86400","zoneSOA":null, "zoneTTL":"28800","zoneAutoCheck":"1"," zoneEnableDNSSEC":null,"recordId":"154110","recordZoneId":"932", "recordHost": "185.160.209.inaddr.arpa.","recordType":"NS","recordValue":"auth01.veroxity.net.","recordDescription":null,"recordTTL":"28800", "recordOrdering":"1", "recordErrors":null,"assetId":"0","userCanCreate":0,"userCanDelete":1," userCanUpdate":1}]} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | The Id of the Zone entry. A single Zone entry might have multiple Records. |
| zoneName | STRING | The Zone name. |
| zoneResourceId | INTEGER | The resource Id associated with this Zone. |
| zoneSerial | INTEGER | Zone Serial. |
| zoneRefresh | INTEGER | Zone Refresh. |
| zoneRetry | INTEGER | Zone Retry. |
| zoneExpire | INTEGER | Zone Expire. |
| zoneMinimum | INTEGER | Zone Minimum. |
| zoneSOA | STRING | Zone SOA. |
| zoneTTL | STRING | Zone TTL. |
| zoneEnableDNSSEC | BOOL | Whether or not DNSSEC is enabled for this Zone. |
| zoneAutoCheck | BOOL | Whether or not this zone is configured to be automatically validated on load/edit. |
| recordId | INTEGER | The Id of this Record Entry. It is always included with its parent Zone. |
| recordHost | STRING | The Hostname of this Record. |
| recordType | STRING | The Record Type (MX,NS,A,PTR,etc) |
| recordValue | STRING | The Value of this Record. |
| recordDescription | STRING | A short description of this Record. |
| recordTTL | STRING | The TTL of this Record. |
| recordOrdering | INTEGER | The numerical order in which the record appears in the zone. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| recordErrors | STRING | A string containing any detected problems with this record |
| userCanCreate | BOOL | Whether or not the user has DNS CREATE permissions on this zone's resource |
| userCanUpdate | BOOL | Whether or not the user has DNS UPDATE permissions on this zone's resource |
| userCanDelete | BOOl | Whether or not the user has DNS DELETE permissions on this zone's resource |
| unpagedRows | INTEGER | If pagination is used, this value will contain a total count of records had the pagination not been used. |

**Required Parameters**

None

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| likeFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, string searches are done via LIKE with wildcards at both ends. When 0, strict comparison is used. |
| generalFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, searches over the provided parameters using OR. If 0 or omitted, uses AND. |
| selectCount | INTEGER | 30 | When supplied only returns the first X entries |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone Id to search for. |
| zoneName | STRING | foo | The Zone Name to search for. |
| zoneResourceId | INTEGER | 5 | The Resource Id to search for. |
| zoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Serial to search for. |
| zoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | The Zone Refresh to search for. |
| zoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | The Zone Retry to search for. |
| zoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | The Zone Expire to search for. |
| zoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | The Zone Minimum to search for. |
| zoneSOA | STRING | 200 | The Zone SOA to search for. |
| zoneTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | The Zone TTL to search for. |
| zoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Search based on DNSSEC settings. |
| recordId | INTEGER | 123 | The Record Id to search for. |
| recordZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The parent Zone to search for. |
| recordHost | STRING | @ | The Record Host to search for. |
| recordType | STRING | NS | The Record Type to search for. |
| recordValue | STRING | ns1.dns.6connect.com. | The Record Value to search for. |
| recordDescription | STRING | Description | Search based on Record Description. |
| recordTTL | STRING | 3600 | The Record TTL to search for. |

**Example URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=get&zoneId=123

## search

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=search |
| Description | Accepts search criteria to retrieve a list of all matching DNS Zones but NO associated Records. Search can be performed on any combination of Zone and Record attributes. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Search Successful.","data":[{"zoneId":"123","zoneName":"foobs.net"," zoneResourceId":"483","zoneIpver":null,"zoneMask":null,"zoneSerial":"2012121803","zoneRefresh":null," zoneRetry":null,"zoneExpire":null,"zoneMinimum":null,"zoneSOA":null,"zoneTTL":"3600"," zoneEnableDNSSEC":"1","zoneLocalSigning":"1","assetId":"0","recordCount":"1","unpagedRows":"215"}]} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | The Id of the Zone entry. A single Zone entry might have multiple Records. |
| zoneName | STRING | The Zone name. |
| zoneResourceId | INTEGER | The resource Id associated with this Zone. |
| zoneSerial | INTEGER | Zone Serial. |
| zoneRefresh | INTEGER | Zone Refresh. |
| zoneRetry | INTEGER | Zone Retry. |
| zoneExpire | INTEGER | Zone Expire. |
| zoneMinimum | INTEGER | Zone Minimum. |
| zoneSOA | STRING | Zone SOA. |
| zoneTTL | STRING | Zone TTL. |
| zoneEnableDNSSEC | BOOL | Whether or not DNSSEC is enabled for this Zone. |
| zoneAutoCheck | BOOL | Whether or not this zone is configured to be automatically validated on load/edit. |
| recordCount | INTEGER | How many records are associated with this zone. |
| userCanCreate | BOOL | Whether or not the user has DNS CREATE permissions on this zone's resource |
| userCanUpdate | BOOL | Whether or not the user has DNS UPDATE permissions on this zone's resource |
| userCanDelete | BOOl | Whether or not the user has DNS DELETE permissions on this zone's resource |
| unpagedRows | INTEGER | If pagination is used, this value will contain a total count of records had the pagination not been used. |

Required Parameters: None

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| likeFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, string searches are done via LIKE with wildcards at both ends. When 0, strict comparison is used. |
| generalFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, searches over the provided paramenters using OR. If 0 or omitted, uses AND. |
| selectCount | INTEGER | 30 | When supplied only returns the first X entries |
| selectOffset | INTEGER | 10 | When supplied, only returns entries after record X |
| sortArray | JSON | {"zoneName":" desc"," zoneMask":" asc"} | A JSON-encoded object containing a list of columns to sort on and the direction in which to sort. Any API variable may be used for sorting. Valid sort directions are ASC and DESC. |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone Id to search for. |
| zoneName | STRING | foo | The Zone Name to search for. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneResourceId | INTEGER | 5 | The Resource Id to search for. |
| zoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Serial to search for. |
| zoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | The Zone Refresh to search for. |
| zoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | The Zone Retry to search for. |
| zoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | The Zone Expire to search for. |
| zoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | The Zone Minimum to search for. |
| zoneSOA | STRING | 200 | The Zone SOA to search for. |
| zoneTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | The Zone TTL to search for. |
| zoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Search based on DNSSEC settings. |
| recordId | INTEGER | 123 | The Record Id to search for. |
| recordZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The parent Zone to search for. |
| recordHost | STRING | @ | The Record Host to search for. |
| recordType | STRING | NS | The Record Type to search for. |
| recordValue | STRING | ns1.dns.6connect.com. | The Record Value to search for. |
| recordDescription | STRING | Description | Search based on Record Description. |
| recordTTL | STRING | 3600 | The Record TTL to search for. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=search&zoneId=123 |

## update

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=update |
| Description | First performs a search based on the submitted Zone and Record criteria, then performs an Update across those entries based on new values. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Update Successful."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| likeFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, string searches are done via LIKE with wildcards at both ends. When 0, strict comparison is used. |
| generalFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, searches over the provided parameters using OR. If 0 or omitted, uses AND. |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| searchZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone Id to search for. |
| searchZoneName | STRING | foo | The Zone Name to search for. |
| searchZoneResourceId | INTEGER | 5 | The Resource Id to search for. |
| searchZoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Serial to search for. |
| searchZoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | The Zone Refresh to search for. |
| searchZoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | The Zone Retry to search for. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| searchZoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | The Zone Expire to search for. |
| searchZoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | The Zone Minimum to search for. |
| searchZoneSOA | STRING | 200 | The Zone SOA to search for. |
| searchZoneTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | The Zone TTL to search for. |
| searchZoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Search based on DNSSEC settings. |
| searchRecordId | INTEGER | 123 | The Record Id to search for. |
| searchRecordHost | STRING | @ | The Record Host to search for. |
| searchRecordType | STRING | NS | The Record Type to search for. |
| searchRecordValue | STRING | ns1.dns.6connect.com. | The Record Value to search for. |
| searchRecordDescription | STRING | Description | Search based on Record Description. |
| searchRecordTTL | STRING | 3600 | The Record TTL to search for. |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| updateZoneName | STRING | foo | The Zone name to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Serial to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | The Zone Refresh to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | The Zone Retry to replace into the searched rows.. |
| updateZoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | The Zone Expire to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | The Zone Minimum to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneSOA | STRING | 200 | The Zone SOA to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | The Zone TTL to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Update DNSSEC Settings. |
| updateRecordHost | STRING | @ | The Record Host to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateRecordType | STRING | NS | The Record Type to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateRecordValue | STRING | ns1.dns. 6connect.com. | The Record Value to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateRecordDescription | STRING | Description | Update Record Descriptions. |
| updateRecordTTL | STRING | 3600 | The Record TTL to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneAutoCheck | BOOL | 1 | Whether or not this zone is configured to be automatically validated on load/edit. |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| recordZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The parent zone ID |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=update&searchZoneId=123&updateZoneExpire=6090000 |

## add

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=add |
| Description | Adds a new DNS Zone. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Add Successful.","data":123} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| data | INTEGER | The Id of the new Zone entry. |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneName | STRING | 254.221.67.in-addr.arpa | The name for the new Zone. |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| likeFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, string searches are done via LIKE with wildcards at both ends. When 0, strict comparison is used. |
| zoneIpver | STRING | IPv6 | The IP Version. |
| zoneLocalSigning | BOOL | 1 | Whether or not this zone should be signed by the ProVision server when DNSSEC is enabled. If set to false, ProVision will deliver the zone unsigned to the DNS server and the signing / updating process should be triggered by the post-push command |
| zoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | Serial for the new Zone. |
| zoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | Refresh for the new Zone. |
| zoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | Retry for the new Zone. |
| zoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | Expire for the new Zone. |
| zoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | Minimum for the new Zone. |
| zoneSOA | STRING | 200 | SOA for the new Zone. |
| zoneTTL | STRING | 3600 | TTL for the new Zone. |
| zoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Whether or not this new zone uses DNSSEC. |

Example URL

/api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=add&zoneName=254.221.67.in-addr.arpa&zoneSerial=2012033001

## delete

URL

/api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=delete

Description

Performs a search over the Zones and Records dataset and deletes all found Zones, plus all associated Records of those Zones.

Returns

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Zones and Associated Records Deleted."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

Required Parameters

No specific parameter is required, however, one or more optional parameters must be used for a successful return

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| deleteZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone Id to search for. |
| deleteZoneName | STRING | foo | The Zone Name to search for. |
| deleteZoneResourceId | INTEGER | 5 | The Resource Id to search for. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| deleteZoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Serial to search for. |
| deleteZoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | The Zone Refresh to search for. |
| deleteZoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | The Zone Retry to search for. |
| deleteZoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | The Zone Expire to search for. |
| deleteZoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | The Zone Minimum to search for. |
| deleteZoneSOA | STRING | 200 | The Zone SOA to search for. |
| deleteZoneTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | The Zone TTL to search for. |
| deleteZoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Search based on DNSSEC settings. |
| deleteRecordId | INTEGER | 123 | The Record Id to search for. |
| deleteRecordHost | STRING | @ | The Record Host to search for. |
| deleteRecordType | STRING | NS | The Record Type to search for. |
| deleteRecordValue | STRING | ns1.dns.6connect.com. | The Record Value to search for. |
| deleteRecordDescription | STRING | Description | Search based on Record Description. |
| deleteRecordTTL | STRING | 3600 | The Record TTL to search for. |
| deleteRecordZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The parent zone ID |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=delete&deleteZoneId=123 |

## getRecordTypes

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=getRecordTypes |
| Description | Returns a list of all Record Types allowed by the system. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Search Successful.","data":[{"recordType":"A"},{"recordType":"AAAA"},{"recordType":"MX"},{"recordType":"CNAME"},{"recordType":"PTRG"},{"recordType":"NS"},{"recordType":"TXT"},{"recordType":"DNSKEY"},{"recordType":"SRV"},{"recordType":"DS"},{"recordType":"TEST"}]} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| recordType | STRING | A Record Type |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=getRecordTypes |

## getFile

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=getFile&zoneId=50 |
| Description | Returns a fully written zone file. If one does not exist, returns false. |
| Returns | A Zone File |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | 50 | The Id of the zone to retrieve. |
| format | ENUMERATED | 'html' or '' | If html, the zone file will be formatted for display via a web browser. If blank or omitted, the zone file will be formatted for display in a file system. |
| unsigned | BOOL | 1 | For a DNSSEC-enabled zone, determines whether or not the system retrieves the signed or unsigned zone file. Ignored for non-DNSSEC zones. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=getFile&zoneId=50&zoneId=50&format=html&unsigned=1 |

## getDSFile

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=getDSFile |
| Description | Returns a fully written zone DS key file. If one does not exist, returns false. |
| Returns | A Zone DS Key File |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | 50 | The Id of the zone whose DS keys are to be retrieved. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=getDSFile&zoneId=50 |

## checkZone

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=checkZone |
| Description | Runs a zone file through Named checkzone |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"No errors found."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0,"message":"21: ignoring out-of-zone data (veggie.com) 22: ignoring out-of-zone data (veggie.com) dns_rdata_fromtext: 23: near '2001:db8:': bad IPv6 address dns_rdata_fromtext: 24: near '1.2.3.': bad dotted quad dns_rdata_fromtext: 25: near '2001::db8::\/32': bad IPv6 address "} |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | 50 | The Id of the zone to check. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=checkZone&zoneId=50 |

## getArchivedZone

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=getArchivedZone |
| Description | Searches for all archived versions of the a zone. Zones are archived every time changes are pushed to their DNS Server. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Search Successful.","data":[{"zoneArchiveId" :"2768","zoneId":"1227", "zoneArchiveTimestamp":"1375298692", "zoneArchiveFingerprint":" d060e59d69606326d80b2e55b50f0bc9","zoneName":"6connect.com","zoneIpver":null, "zoneMask":null," zoneSerial": "2013073105","zoneRefresh":"14400","zoneRetry":"2000","zoneExpire":"604800", "zoneMinimum":"3600", "zoneSOA":null,"zoneTTL":"3600","zoneEnableDNSSEC":"1", "zoneResourceId":" 1013","zonePreviousViewLinkage":"[]"}]} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | The Id of the Zone entry to find archived versions of. |
| zoneArchiveId | INTEGER | The ID of the Archive Entry |
| zoneArchiveTimestamp | INTEGER | A timestamp marking when this zone was archived. |
| zoneArchiveFingerprint | STRING | A hash value identifying this zone. Used for comparing versions. |
| zoneName | INTEGER | Zone Name. |
| zoneSerial | INTEGER | Zone Serial. |
| zoneRefresh | INTEGER | Zone Refresh. |
| zoneRetry | INTEGER | Zone Retry. |
| zoneExpire | INTEGER | Zone Expire. |
| zoneMinimum | INTEGER | Zone Minimum. |
| zoneSOA | STRING | Zone SOA. |
| zoneTTL | INTEGER | Zone TTL. |
| zoneEnableDNSSEC | STRING | Whether or not this version had DNSSEC enabled. |
| zoneResourceId | STRING | Zone Resource ID |
| zonePreviousViewLinkage | JSON | A JSON-encoded array of views this zone was linked to. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone Id to search for. |
| zoneArchiveId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone Archive Id |
| zoneArchiveTimestamp | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Archive Timestamp |
| fetchArchiveFile | BOOL | 1 | Whether or not to return the full Zone file with the result set.. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zone&action=getArchivedZone&zoneId=123 |

# DNS Record Control

## get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=get |

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Accepts search criteria to retrieve a list of all matching DNS Records. Search can be performed on any combination of Zone and Record attributes. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Search Successful.","data":[{"recordId":"30894","recordZoneId":"229","recordHost":"@","recordType":"NS","recordValue":"ns1.domain.com.","recordDescription":"","recordTTL":""}]} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| recordId | INTEGER | The ID of this Record Entry. It is always included with its parent Zone. |
| recordZoneId | INTEGER | The ID of this Record's parent Zone. |
| recordHost | STRING | The Hostname of this Record. |
| recordType | STRING | The Record Type (MX,NS,A,PTR,etc) |
| recordValue | STRING | The Value of this Record. |
| recordDescription | STRING | A short description of this Record. |
| recordTTL | STRING | The TTL of this Record. |

Required Parameters: None

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| likeFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, string searches are done via LIKE with wildcards at both ends. When 0, strict comparison is used. |
| selectCount | INTEGER | 30 | When supplied only returns the first X entries |
| selectOffset | INTEGER | 10 | When supplied, only returns entries after record X |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| recordId | INTEGER | 123 | The Record ID to search for. |
| recordZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The parent Zone to search for. |
| recordHost | STRING | @ | The Record Host to search for. |
| recordType | STRING | NS | The Record Type to search for. |
| recordValue | STRING | ns1.dns.6connect.com. | The Record Value to search for. |
| recordDescription | STRING | Description | Search based on Record Description. |
| recordTTL | STRING | 3600 | The Record TTL to search for. |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone Id to search for. |
| zoneName | STRING | foo | The Zone Name to search for. |
| zoneResourceId | INTEGER | 5 | The Resource Id to search for. |
| zoneCustName | STRING | foo | The Customer Name to search for. |
| zoneIpver | STRING | IPv6 | The IP Version to search for. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| zoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Serial to search for. |
| zoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | The Zone Refresh to search for. |
| zoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | The Zone Retry to search for. |
| zoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | The Zone Expire to search for. |
| zoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | The Zone Minimum to search for. |
| zoneSOA | STRING | 200 | The Zone SOA to search for. |
| zoneTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | The Zone TTL to search for. |
| zoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Search based on DNSSEC settings. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=get&selectCount=30&zoneId=123 |

## update

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=update |
| Description | First performs a search based on the submitted Zone and Record criteria, then performs an Update across those entries based on new values. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Update Successful."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| likeFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, string searches are done via LIKE with wildcards at both ends. When 0, strict comparison is used. |
| generalFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, searches over the provided parameters using OR. If 0 or omitted, uses AND. |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| searchZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone ID to search for. |
| searchZoneName | STRING | foo | The Zone Name to search for. |
| searchZoneCustId | INTEGER | 5 | The Customer ID to search for. |
| searchZoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Serial to search for. |
| searchZoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | The Zone Refresh to search for. |
| searchZoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | The Zone Retry to search for. |
| searchZoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | The Zone Expire to search for. |
| searchZoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | The Zone Minimum to search for. |
| searchZoneSOA | STRING | 200 | The Zone SOA to search for. |
| searchZoneTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | The Zone TTL to search for. |
| searchZoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Search based on DNSSEC settings. |
| searchRecordId | INTEGER | 123 | The Record ID to search for. |
| searchRecordHost | STRING | @ | The Record Host to search for. |
| searchRecordType | STRING | NS | The Record Type to search for. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| searchRecordValue | STRING | ns1.dns.6connect.com. | The Record Value to search for. |
| searchRecordDescription | STRING | Description | Search based on Record Description. |
| searchRecordTTL | STRING | 3600 | The Record TTL to search for. |
| searchZoneResourceId | INTEGER | 5 | The Resource Id to search for. |
| searchRecordZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone ID of the Record to search for. |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| updateZoneName | STRING | foo | The Zone name to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Serial to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | The Zone Refresh to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | The Zone Retry to replace into the searched rows.. |
| updateZoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | The Zone Expire to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | The Zone Minimum to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneSOA | STRING | 200 | The Zone SOA to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | The Zone TTL to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Update DNSSEC Settings. |
| updateRecordHost | STRING | @ | The Record Host to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateRecordType | STRING | NS | The Record Type to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateRecordValue | STRING | ns1.dns. 6connect.com. | The Record Value to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateRecordDescription | STRING | Description | Update Record Descriptions. |
| updateRecordTTL | STRING | 3600 | The Record TTL to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneResourceId | INTEGER | 5 | The Resource Id to replace into the searched rows. |
| updateZoneAutoCheck | BOOL | 1 | Whether or not this zone is configured to be automatically validated on load/edit. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=update&searchZoneId=123&updateZoneTTL=3600 |

## add

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=add |
| Description | Adds a new Record to a supplied Zone. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Add Successful.","data":123} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| data | INTEGER | The ID of the new Record entry. |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| newRecordZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone ID of the new Record. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| newRecordHost | STRING | @ | New Host Name. |
| newRecordType | STRING | PTR | New Record Type. |
| newRecordValue* | STRING | 123 | New Record Value. |
| *newRecordValue required only for certain Record Types | | | |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| likeFlag | BOOL | 1 | When 1, string searches are done via LIKE with wildcards at both ends. When 0, strict comparison is used. |
| newRecordDescription | STRING | Description. | Notes for the Record. |
| newRecordTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | Record TTL. |

Example URL: /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=add&newRecordZoneId=123&newRecordHost=@host&newRecordType=PTR&newRecordTTL=3600

## delete

URL: /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=delete

Description: Performs a search over the Zones and Records dataset and deletes all found Records, but leaves their parent Zones intact.

Returns:

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Deletion Successful."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

Required Parameters: None

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| deleteZoneId | INTEGER | 123 | The Zone ID to search for. |
| deleteZoneName | STRING | foo | The Zone Name to search for. |
| deleteZoneCustId | INTEGER | 5 | The Customer ID to search for. |
| deleteZoneIpver | STRING | IPv6 | The IP Version to search for. |
| deleteZoneSerial | INTEGER | 2012033001 | The Zone Serial to search for. |
| deleteZoneRefresh | INTEGER | 36000 | The Zone Refresh to search for. |
| deleteZoneRetry | INTEGER | 800 | The Zone Retry to search for. |
| deleteZoneExpire | INTEGER | 6090000 | The Zone Expire to search for. |
| deleteZoneMinimum | INTEGER | 10 | The Zone Minimum to search for. |
| deleteZoneSOA | STRING | 200 | The Zone SOA to search for. |
| deleteZoneTTL | INTEGER | 3600 | The Zone TTL to search for. |
| deleteZoneEnableDNSSEC | INTEGER | 1 | Search based on DNSSEC settings. |
| deleteRecordId | INTEGER | 123 | The Record ID to search for. |
| deleteRecordHost | STRING | @ | The Record Host to search for. |
| deleteRecordType | STRING | NS | The Record Type to search for. |
| deleteRecordValue | STRING | ns1.dns.6connect.com. | The Record Value to search for. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| deleteRecordDescription | STRING | Description | Search based on Record Description. |
| deleteRecordTTL | STRING | 3600 | The Record TTL to search for. |
| deleteZoneResourceId | INTEGER | 5 | The Resource Id to search for. |
| deleteZoneCustName | STRING | foo | The Customer Name to search for. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=delete&deleteZoneName=foo |

## switch

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=switch |
| Description | Switches the order of two record entries. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Record Moved."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| moveWhichId | INTEGER | 123 | The Record Id to be moved. |
| moveAfterId | INTEGER | 42 | The Id of the Record the first Record is to be moved after. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=record&action=switch&moveWhichId=123&moveAfterId=42 |

# Server-Zone Linkage

## get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneLinkage&action=get |
| Description | Searches for Server-Zone Linkages. If no search parameters are supplied, all linkages are returned. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"2 rows retrieved.","data":[{"id":"285","zoneId":"64","serverId":"1","serverName":"173.164.182.169","serverType":"SCP","serverMasterType":"master","zoneName":"bind.com","resourceId":"483"},{"id":"287","zoneId":"371","serverId":"1","serverName":"173.164.182.169","serverType":"SCP","serverMasterType":"master","zoneName":"132.235.198.in-addr.arpa","resourceId":"577"}} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | The Linkage Id. |
| zoneId | INTEGER | The ZoneId involved in this link. |
| serverId | INTEGER | The ServerId involved in this link. |
| serverName | STRING | The server name |
| serverType | STRING | The server transfer type |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| serverMasterType | STRING | Whether this server is a master or a slave. |
| zoneName | STRING | The zone name |
| resourceId | INTEGER | The Resource Id the Zone is attached to. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 15 | Fetches the linkage with the matching id. |
| serverId | INTEGER | 15 | Fetches all linkages with the matching serverId. |
| zoneId | INTEGER | 15 | Fetches all linkages with the matching zoneId. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneLinkage&action=get&id=15 |

## add

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneLinkage&action=add |
| Description | Adds a new link between a DNS Server and a Zone |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Link Added."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| serverId | INTEGER | 16 | The DNS Server Id. |
| zoneId | INTEGER | 105 | The Zone Id. |
| serverSlave | BOOL | 1 | Whether or not this zone is a master or a slave on the linked server. Values are: 1 for slave, 0 for master. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneLinkage&action=add&serverId=16&zoneId=105&serverSlave=0 |

## delete

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneLinkage&action=delete |
| Description | Deletes a link between a DNS Server and a Zone |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Link Deleted."} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | id | INTEGER | 15 | Fetches the linkage with the matching id. |
| | serverId | INTEGER | 15 | Fetches all linkages with the matching serverId. |
| | zoneId | INTEGER | 15 | Fetches all linkages with the matching zoneId. |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=zoneLinkage&action=delete | | | |

# Name Server Control

## get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=get |
| Description | Fetches a list of all stored Name Servers |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | *{"success":1,"message":"Fetch Sucessful.","data":[{"id":"1","nameserver":"ns1.dns.6connect.net","add_to_zones_default":"1","ordering":"10","uses":"34"},{"id":"10","nameserver":"ns2.dns.6connect.net","add_to_zones_default":"1","ordering":"11","uses":"46"},{"id":"9","nameserver":"ns4.dns.6connect.net","add_to_zones_default":"1","ordering":"14","uses":"12"},{"id":"3","nameserver":"ns3.dns.6connect.net","add_to_zones_default":"1","ordering":"15","uses":"46"}]}* |
| ERROR: | *{"success":0, "message":"error message"}* |

**Data Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | Server ID |
| nameserver | STRING | Server Name |
| add_to_zones_default | BOOL | Whether or not this is a default server. |
| ordering | INTEGER | Display order |
| uses | INTEGER | How many zones have been assigned to this NameServer |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| default | INTEGER | 1 | Set server as default |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=get&default=1 |

## add

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=add |
| Description | Adds a new DNS Server |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | *{"success":1,"message":"Add Successful."}* |
| ERROR: | *{"success":0, "message":"error message"}* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| newServer | STRING | ns.yourdomain.com | Name of the NameServer |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=add&newServer=ns.yourdomain.com |

## delete

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=delete |
| Description | Deletes a NameServer |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | *{"success":1,"message":"Server Deleted."}* |
| ERROR: | *{"success":0, "message":"error message"}* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 5 | ID of server to delete. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=delete&id=5 |

## setDefault

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=setDefault |
| Description | Default NameServers have all new zones added to them as they are created. Multiple NameServers can be classified as Default. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | *{"success":1, "message":"Success."}* |
| ERROR: | *{"success":0, "message":"error message"}* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 5 | ID of server to modify. |
| value | INTEGER | 1 | 1 = Default, 0 = Normal |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=setDefault&id=3&value=1 |

## orderUp

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=orderUp |
| Description | Swaps the index order of the targeted NameServer with that of the one above it. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| | SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Reordering Successful."}*<br>ERROR: *{"success":0, "message":"error message"}* |
| Required Parameters | **Name** / **Type** / **Example** / **Description**<br>id / INTEGER / 5 / ID of server to modify. |
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=orderUp&id=3 |

## orderDown

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=orderDown |
| Description | Swaps the index order of the targeted NameServer with that of the one below it. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Reordering Successful."}*<br>ERROR: *{"success":0, "message":"error message"}* |
| Required Parameters | **Name** / **Type** / **Example** / **Description**<br>id / INTEGER / 5 / ID of server to activate. |
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=nameServer&action=orderDown&id=5 |

# API Module - IPAM


- IP Address Management (IPv4 and IPv6)
  - IP Block Management
    - Get
    - Add
    - Update
    - Delete
    - Add Tag
    - Delete Tag
    - Smart Assign
    - Direct Assign
    - Unassign
    - Aggregate
    - Split
    - Scan Block
    - Get Scan Results
    - Get Options
    - Get VLAN
    - Get Resource Hierarchy
  - IP Subnets List
    - Get Subnet List
  - IP Tag List
    - Get Tags List
    - Add Tag To List
    - Delete Tag From List
  - IP Regions List
    - Get Regions List
    - Add Region To List
    - Get Utilization
    - Get Host Utilization
  - Holding Tank
    - Override Holding
    - Process Holding Tank
  - Reports
    - Mask Report
- IPAM SWIP Calls:
  - Deassign
  - Get RIR List
  - Simple Reassign
- IPAM API Calls Subject to Change:
  - Get Attribute List


# IP Address Management (IPv4 and IPv6)

## IP Block Management

### Get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=get |
| Description | Returns a list of IP blocks. Use optional parameters to filter the list.<br>If multiple parameters are specified, only blocks matching all parameters will be returned. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{ "success": 1, "message": "1 blocks found. ", "data": [ { "id": 5890, "type": "ipv4", "top_aggregate": null, "cidr": "192.168.0.0\/24", "formatted_ip": "192.168.0.0\/24", "address": "3232235520", "end_address": "3232235775", "mask": 24, "child1": null, "child2": null, "is_assigned": 0, "is_swipped": 0, "is_aggregate": 1, "custid": 81, "resource_id": 81, "resource_name": "Available", "last_updated_time": null, "description": null, "parent": null, "rir": "1918", "lir_id": null, "notes": null, "generic_code": null, "code": null, "region": "SFO", "vlan": 100, "arin_net_id": null, "arin_cust_id": null, "org_id": null, "arin_swip_time": null, "assigned_time": null, "asn": null, "allowSubAssignments": false, "permissions": { "permissionIPAMRead": "1",* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *"permissionIPAMUpdate": "1", "permissionIPAMCreate": "1", "permissionSWIP": "1", "permissionAdmin": "1" }, "range": "192.168.0.0 - 192.168.0.255", "tags": [ "Customer", "PTP" ] } ] }* |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

**Required Parameters**

None

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| address | INTEGER | 1125449728 | IP address of the block in decimal format |
| asn | INTEGER | 1000 | Filters blocks based on their ASN |
| allowSubAssignments | BOOL | true | Filters blocks based on wether they allow sub-assignments or not. Acceptable values: "true" or "false" |
| block | STRING | 213.37.29.0 /24 | CIDR block description |
| code | STRING | Code X | User-defined block code as defined in Admin-IPAM settings: Generic Code Per Block Name |
| endAddress | INTEGER | 1125453823 | End IP address of the block in decimal format |
| id | INTEGER | 1234 | The ID of the block |
| includeAttributes | BOOL | true | Allows loading and display of the attributes for all of the blocks in the collection. |
| isAggregate | BOOL | true | Indicates if the block has been split into children or not. A value of 'true' will return blocks with no children. |
| isAssigned | BOOL | true | Acceptable values: "true" or "false" |
| isSwipped | BOOL | true | Acceptable values: "true" or "false" |
| lastUpdateTime | DATETIME | =2015-8-19 21:08:54 | SQL Datetime format, prefaced by an "=" for exact time updated, "=>" for blocks updated after the given time, or "=<" for blocks updated before the given time. |
| lirId | INTEGER | 101 | The numeric ID of an LIR resource the block should be linked to |
| mask | INTEGER | 24 | Integer bitmask |
| notes | STRING | note123 | Returns blocks with exact matches in the notes field against the provided "notes" string. |
| region | STRING | SFO | The value from the list of name/value pairs which make up the list of available regions |
| resourceHolderId | STRING | `cust-001` | (**Deprecated**: Use resourceQuery instead)<br><br>A custom ID which can be used to link resources in the 6Connect database back to your organization. |
| resourceId | INTEGER | 1234 | The ID of the resource the block is assigned to |
| resourceQuery | JSON | {"parent_id": 15} | A JSON object representing a valid resource query. Any parameters that can be used for a Resource GET API call can be used. Use of the resourceQuery parameter will return blocks assigned to any of the resources returned by that query. |
| rir | STRING | ARIN | Acceptable values: ARIN, RIPE, APNIC, AfriNIC, LACNIC, 1918 |
| search | STRING | 192.168 | If a search term is provided, all IPAM fields including assigned Resource Holder name will be checked with a LIKE comparison to find matching blocks |
| selectCount | INTEGER | 50 | # of blocks to get |
| selectOffset | INTEGER | 25 | Offset for results set; useful for paging (e.g. selectCount = 50, selectOffset = 100 would return the 3rd page of 50 results) |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sortField | STRING | cidr | Attribute to sort blocks by. Accepable values: cidr, mask, rir, vlan, code, updateTime |
| sortOrder | INTEGER | ASC | ASC or DESC |
| tags | STRING | customer,vpn | Comma-separated list of tags to filter by. If used in conjunction with 'search', performs the search operation and then filters results by the provided tag. Use with tagsMode to specify filter approach. |
| tagsMode | STRING | "strict"," exclude", "intersection", or "union". | Denotes how the "tags" parameter is handled:<br><br>"strict" - matches only blocks that have the exact set of tags of specified.<br><br>"exclude" - matches only blocks which are note tagged with any of the blocks specified.<br><br>"intersection" - matches any blocks which has all of the tags.<br><br>"union" - matches all blocks which has any one of the tags.<br><br>If not otherwise specified, tagsMode defaults to "intersection". |
| topAggregateId | INTEGER | 1234 | The ID of the aggregate block to which the block belongs |
| type | STRING | "ipv4" or "ipv6" | IP type |
| vlan | INTEGER | 123 | VLAN for the block |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=get&rir=ARIN&tags=customer,vpn |

## Add

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=add |
| Description | Adds an IPv4 or IPv6 block |

Returns

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"Block 192.168.0.0/24 (12345) added", "id":12345, "data":{ "id":12345, "cidr": 192.168.0.0/24", ...} }* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| block | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block description |
| rir | STRING | ARIN | Acceptable values: ARIN, RIPE, APNIC, AfriNIC, LACNIC, 1918 |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| allowDuplicate | BOOL | true | Allow the creation of duplicate blocks. The default behavior is to reject duplicates. |
| allowSubAssignments | BOOL | true | Does the block allow sub-assignments? If the block is assigned and allowSubAssignments is "true", children split from this block will be able to be assigned to different resources.<br>Acceptable values: "true" or "false" |
| asn | INTEGER | 1000 | ASN for the block |
| code | STRING | Code X | User-defined block code as defined in Admin-IPAM settings: Generic Code Per Block Name |
| region | STRING | SFO | The value from the list of name/value pairs which make up the list of available regions |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| resourceId | INTEGER | 1234 | The ID of the resource the block is assigned to |
| tags | STRING | customer, vpn | Comma-separated list of tags |
| vlan | INTEGER | 123 | VLAN for the block |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=add&block=213.37.29.0/24&rir=ARIN |

## Update

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=update |
| Description | Updates detail data about an IP block. |

Returns

**Examples:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | SINGLE BLOCK | *{"success":1,"message":"Block 192.168.0.0/24 (12345) updated", "data":{ "id":12345, "cidr": 192.168.0.0/24", ...} }* |
| SUCCESSFUL | MULTIPLE BLOCKS | *{"success":1,"message":"3 blocks updated", "data":[ { "id":12345, "cidr":192.168.0.0/24", ...}, {"id":12346, "cidr", "192.168.0.1/32", ...} ] }* |
| ERROR | | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Allow Multiple | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | Yes | ID of the IP block. Multiple block IDs can be specified in a comma-separated list. |
| block* | STRING | 192.0.0.0 /24 | Yes | CIDR or the block. Multiple CIDRs can be specified in a comma-separated list. |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | | |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| allowSubAssignments | BOOL | true | Does the block allow sub-assignments? If the block is assigned and allowSubAssignments is "true", children split from this block will be able to be assigned to different resources.<br>Acceptable values: "true" or "false" |
| asn | INTEGER | 1000 | ASN for the block |
| code | STRING | Code X | Arbitrary user-defined block code |
| lirId | INTEGER | 101 | The numeric ID of an LIR resource the block should be linked to |
| notes | STRING | Words | Misc. Notes |
| region | STRING | Chicago, IL | The region this IP block is assigned to. |
| propagate | BOOL | true | Propagates all attribute values to any smaller child blocks of the block being updated. ***Available in version 5.1.0*** |
| rir | STRING | ARIN | Acceptable values: ARIN, RIPE, APNIC, AfriNIC, LACNIC, 1918 |
| tags | STRING | Customer, vpn | Comma-separated list of tags |
| tags_action | STRING | replace | What action to take on the supplied tags. This action must be taken in conjunction with the tags parameter. Valid settings for tags_action are: replace, add, delete. When tags_action is set to 'replace', all tags on |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | an IP block are replaced with those |
| | vlan | NUMERIC | 123 | VLAN for the block |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=update&block=192.0.0.0/24&notes=Notes_here |

## Delete

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=delete |
| Description | Deletes an aggregate block |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"Aggregate deleted: 192.168.0.0/24", "data":{ "id":12345, "cidr":192.168.0.0/24", ...} }* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| block* | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block description |
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| force | BOOL | true | Forces the aggregate block to be deleted even if the block is split or contains sub blocks which are assigned. The default behavior is to reject attempts to delete blocks which have been split or are assigned. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=delete&block=213.37.29.0/24 |

## Add Tag

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=addTag |
| Description | Adds a tag to an IP block. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{ "success":1,"message":"Tag Added.", "data":{ "id":12345, "cidr":192.168.0.0/24", ...} }* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the block |
| block* | STRING | 192.0.0.0/24 | CIDR of the block |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |
| tag | STRING | Customer | The tag to add |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=addTag&id=125&tag=Customer |

## Delete Tag

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=deleteTag |
| Description | Removes a tag from an IP block. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{ "success":1,"message":"Tag Removed.", "data":{ "id":12345, "cidr":192.168.0.0/24", ...} }*<br>ERROR: *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the block |
| block* | STRING | 192.0.0.0/24 | CIDR of the block |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |
| tag | STRING | Customer | The tag to delete |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=deleteTag&id=125&tag=Customer |

## Smart Assign

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=smartAssign |
| Description | Selects a block based on supplied parameters (rir, tags, mask size, etc.) and assigns it to a Resource Holder. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{ "success":1,"message":"Assigned 192.168.0.0/24 to Resource (1234) via Smart Assign", "id":12345, "data": { "id":12345, "cidr":192.168.0.0/24", ...} }*<br>ERROR: *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| mask | INTEGER | 24 | The size of the block to be assigned |
| rir | STRING | ARIN | Acceptable values: ARIN, RIPE, APNIC, AfriNIC, LACNIC, 1918 |
| resourceId* | INTEGER | 1234 | Integer ID of the resource to assign the block to |
| resourceQuery* | JSON | `{"custom_id":"cust-001"}` | A JSON object representing a valid resource query. Any parameters that can be used for a Resource GET API call can be used. Use of the resourceQuery parameter will return blocks assigned to any of the resources returned by that query. |
| *Either resourceId or resourceQuery can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |
| resourceHolderId | STRING | `cust-001` | (**Deprecated**: Use resourceQuery instead)<br>A custom ID which can be used to link resources in the 6Connect database back to your organization. |
| type | STRING | "IPv4" or "IPv6" | The type of block to assign |

Optional Parameters*

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| assignedResourceId | STRING | "123" or "ignore" | The ID of the resource the block is assigned to, or the string "ignore". If assignedResourceId is set to "ignore", then a matching IP block is selected from the Available pool or any sub-assignable block on any resource. |
| code | STRING | Code X | Arbitrary user-defined block code |
| lirId | INTEGER | 101 | The ID of an LIR resource |
| region | STRING | Ashburn | Region to assign from |
| tags | STRING | customer,vpn | Comma separated string of tags. Matches blocks which have at least the set of tag specified by this parameter |
| tagsMode | STRING | "strict"," exclude", "intersection", or "union". | Denotes how the "tags" parameter is handled:<br><br>"strict" - matches only blocks that have the exact set of tags of specified.<br><br>"exclude" - matches only blocks which are note tagged with any of the blocks specified.<br><br>"intersection" - matches any blocks which has all of the tags.<br><br>"union" - matches all blocks which has any one of the tags.<br><br>If not otherwise specified, tagsMode defaults to "intersection". |
| vlan | INTEGER | 1023 | VLAN designated to a given block |

*Additional or fewer "optional" parameters may be required in order to result in a successful assignment, depending on the attributes of available blocks.

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=smartAssign&mask=24&type=IPv4&resourceId=250&rir=ARIN |

## Direct Assign

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=directAssign |
| Description | Assigns a block to an Resource Holder |

Returns

**Examples:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | SINGLE BLOCK | *{ "success":1,"message":"Assigned 192.168.0.0/24 to Resource (1234)", "id":12345, "data": { "id":12345, "cidr":192.168.0.0/24", ...} }* |
| SUCCESSFUL | MULTIPLE BLOCKS | *{ "success":1,"message":"Assigned 5 blocks to Resource (1234) via Direct Assign", "data":{ "ids":[12345, 12346, 12347, ...] } }* |
| ERROR | | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| block* | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block description |
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block, comma separated list of ids, or json encoded array of ids |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |
| resourceHolderId** | STRING | `cust-001` | (**Deprecated**: Use resourceQuery instead)<br><br>A custom ID which can be used to link resources in the 6Connect database back to your organization. |
| resourceId** | INTEGER | 1234 | Integer ID of the resource to assign the block to |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| resourceQuery** | JSON | `{"custom_id":"cust-001"}` | A JSON object representing a valid resource query. Any parameters that can be used for a Resource GET API call can be used. Use of the resourceQuery parameter will return blocks assigned to any of the resources returned by that query. |

**Either resourceId, resourceQuery, or resourceHolderId can be used, but only one must be provided

**Optional Parameters***

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| code | STRING | Code X | Arbitrary user-defined block code |
| lirId | INTEGER | 101 | The ID of an LIR resource |
| region | STRING | Ashburn | Region to assign from |
| rir | STRING | ARIN | Acceptable values: ARIN, RIPE, APNIC, AfriNIC, LACNIC, 1918 |
| tags | STRING | customer,vpn | Comma separated string of tags. Matches blocks which have at least the set of tag specified by this parameter |
| tagsMode | STRING | "strict","exclude", "intersection", or "union". | Denotes how the "tags" parameter is handled:<br>"strict" - matches only blocks that have the exact set of tags of specified.<br>"exclude" - matches only blocks which are note tagged with any of the blocks specified.<br>"intersection" - matches any blocks which has all of the tags.<br>"union" - matches all blocks which has any one of the tags.<br>If not otherwise specified, tagsMode defaults to "intersection". |
| vlan | INTEGER | 1023 | VLAN designated to a given block |

*Additional or fewer "optional" parameters may be required in order to result in a successful assignment, depending on the attributes of available blocks.

**Example URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=directAssign&block=213.37.29.0/24&resourceId=1234

## Unassign

**URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=unassign

**Description**

Reclaims the specified block to be reassigned in the future

**Returns**

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{ "success":1,"message":"192.168.0.0/24 unassigned", "id":12345, "data":{ "id":12345, "cidr":192.168.0.0/24", ...} }* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| block* | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block description |
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block |

*Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | skipHolding | BOOL | true | If set to true (skipHolding=true) then the holding tank is skipped. If set to false, or not included, normal holding tank rules apply.<br><br>Acceptable values: "true" or "false" |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=unassign&block=213.37.29.0/24 |

## Aggregate

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=aggregate |
| Description | Aggregates a selected block to the mask specified. If no mask specified, re-aggregates blocks to next parent. IE. calling aggregate on a /25 will aggregate both children back to the parent /24. All child blocks must be Available for aggregation to succeed. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | `{"success":1,"message":"10.2.0.128\/25 aggregated into 10.2.0.0\/24","id": 16326}` |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block. |
| block* | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block. |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| autoAggregateToMask | INTEGER | 24 | All blocks and IPs smaller than this netmask will be aggregated. |
| ignoreAssignments | BOOL | TRUE | If the ignoreAssignment flag is not set the aggregation operation will fail if any children beneath the supplied autoAggregateToMask are assigned or otherwise unavailable. If this option is set, it will unassign blocks prior to reaggregation. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=aggregate&id=125&autoAggregateToMask=24 |

## Split

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=split |
| Description | Splits a selected block to the mask specified. If no mask specified, it split blocks to next child. IE. calling aggregate on a /24 will split both parent to the child /25s. All parent blocks must be Available, or have Allow Sub Assignments on for a split to succeed. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | `{"success":1,"message":"10.1.0.0\/24 split into 10.1.0.0\/25 and 10.1.0.128\/25","data":{"child1":23441 ,"child2":23451}}` |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block. |
| block* | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block. |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| autoSplitToMask | INTEGER | 24 | Auto aggregate the block back to this mask size. Note all blocks up this mask size must be Available or call will fail. |
| autoSplitLimit | INTEGER | 4 | A number the power of 2 (^2). |

**Example URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=split&block=213.37.29.0/24&autoSplitLimit=4

## Scan Block

**URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=scanBlock

**Description**

Initiates an asynchronous ping (ICMP) scan of the target block specified. Results of the scan can be checked with get.

**Returns**

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | `{"success":1,"message":"Ping scan started for 8.8.8.0\/27"}` |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block. |
| block* | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block. |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |

**Optional Parameters**

None

**Example**

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=scanBlock&block=213.37.29.0/24

## Get Scan Results

**URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getScanResults

**Description**

Initiates an asynchronous ping (ICMP) scan of the target block specified. Results of the scan can be checked with get

**Returns**

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | `{"success":1,"data":{"block":"8.8.8.0\/27","date":"07\/14\/2014 11:07:10",`<br>`"data":[{"address":"8.8.8.8","host":"google-public-dns-a.google.com","status":"Up"}],"status":"completed","hostsScanned":4,"activeHosts":4}}` |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| block | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block. |

**Optional**

None

| | |
|---|---|
| Parameters | |
| Example | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getScanResults&block=213.37.29.0/24 |

## Get Options

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getOptions |
| Description | Returns a list of options available for the block |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"Options for 14.0.0.0\/25 (125)","options":{"actions":["aggregate"],"templates":[{"name":"Auto Split","masks":[26,27,28,29,30,31,32]}]}} |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getOptions&id=125 |

## Get VLAN

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getVlan |
| Description | Returns the VLAN for the block |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"Found VLAN 1002 (14.0.0.0\/25)","data":{"id":125,"type":"ipv4","top_aggregate":81532,"cidr":"14.0.0.0\/25","formatted_ip":"14.0.0.0\/25","address":"234881024","end_address":"234881151","mask":25,"netmask":"255.255.255.128","child1":null,"child2":null,"is_assigned":0,"is_swipped":0,"is_aggregate":1,"custid":402,"resource_id":402,"resource_name":"6connect Labz","last_updated_time":"2015-01-22 12:30:37","description":null,"parent":81532,"rir":"ARIN","lir_id":"1062","notes":"Test Notes","generic_code":"Datacenter2","code":"Datacenter2","region":"ATL","region_name":"Atlanta, GA","vlan":1002,"arin_net_id":null,"arin_cust_id":null,"org_id":null,"arin_swip_time":null,"assigned_time":"2015-01-14 10:30:31","asn":"143","allowSubAssignments":true,"permissions":{"permissionIPAMRead":"1","permissionIPAMUpdate":"1","permissionIPAMCreate":"1","permissionIPAMDelete":"1","permissionSWIP":"1","permissionAdmin":"1"},"range":"14.0.0.0 - 14.0.0.127","tags":["Customer"]}} |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block |
| block* | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block. |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getVlan&id=125 |

## Get Resource Hierarchy

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getResourceHierarchy&id=79124 |
| Description | Returns the Parent Resource and Parent Resource id for the provided block. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":"1","data":[{"id":"4208","name":"a6connectEntry"}]}<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |
| Required Parameters | **Name** / **Type** / **Example** / **Description**<br>id / INTEGER / 125 / ID of the IP block |
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getResourceHierarchy&id=79124 |

# IP Subnets List

## Get Subnet List

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getSizes |
| Description | Returns the IPv4 or IPv6 Subnet Lists |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Lookup was successful","data":["36","48","56","64","126","127","128"]}*<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |
| Required Parameters | **Name** / **Type** / **Example** / **Description**<br>size / INTEGER / "4" or "6" / The IP Subnet list to return - "4" for IPv4 subnets, or "6" for IPv6 subnets. |
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getSizes&size=6 |

# IP Tag List

## Get Tags List

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getTagList |
| Description | Returns a list of all valid IP Tags in the database. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Tags Retrieved. ","data":["ActiveE DIA","Colo DIA","Customer","DSL","Fiber DIA","GPON DIA","Infra","Inhouse","LAN","LBIntf","POP","PTP","Prod","VPN","WEBHOST","Cable","Internal"]}*<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

## Add Tag To List

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=addTagToList |
| Description | Adds a tag to the IPAM tag list |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Tag Added."}*<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| newTag | STRING | Loopback C | The value to add to the list of name/value pairs which make up the list of available regions |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=addTagToList&newTag=Loopback C |

## Delete Tag From List

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=deleteTagFromList |
| Description | Deletes a tag from the IPAM tag list |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Tag Deleted."}*<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| tag | STRING | tag123 | The name of the tag to be deleted. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=deleteTagFromList&tag=tag123 |

# IP Regions List

## Get Regions List

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getRegionList |
| Description | Returns a list of all valid Regions in the database. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"Regions Retrieved.","data":[{"value":"ANY","name":"Any Region"},{"value":"ASH1","name":"Ashburn, VA"},{"value":"BOS","name":"Boston, MA"},{"value":"CHI","name":"Chicago, IL"},{"value":"DAL","name":"Dallas, TX"},{"value":"DEN","name":"Denver, CO"},{"value":"FRKT","name":"Frankfurt, DE"},{"value":"LON1","name":"London, UK"},{"value":"MIA","name":"Miami, FL"},{"value":"PAR","name":"Paris, FR"},{"value":"SFO","name":"San Francisco, CA"},{"value":"SEA","name":"Seattle, WA"},{"value":"Tokyo","name":"Tokyo"},{"value":"Singapore","name":"Singapore"},{"value":"Jakarta","name":"Jakarta"}]}* |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

## Add Region To List

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=addRegionToList |
| Description | Adds a region to the IPAM region list. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Region Added."}*<br>ERROR: *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| newRegion | STRING | SFO | The value to add to the list of name/value pairs which make up the list of available regions |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=addRegionToList&newRegion=SFO |

# Utilization

## Get Utilization

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=utilization |
| Description | Gets the utilization percentages for a specific ip block or ip block and mask combination. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

SUCCESSFUL


```
{
"success": 1,
"totalBlocks": 1,
"totalHosts": "256",
"hostsAssigned": 0,
"hostsAllocated": "256",
"hostsAvailable": "256",
"hostsInHolding": 0,
"availablePercentage": "100.00",
"assignedPercentage": "0.00",
"allocatedPercentage": "100.00",
"inHoldingPercentage": "0.00",
"resources": [{
"id": 351,
"name": "Customer 1",
"type": "entry",
"hosts": "256",
```

| | |
|---|---|
| | "blocks": "1",<br>"percentage": "100.00"<br>}],<br><br>"blocksAssigned":0,<br>"blocksAllocated": 1,<br>"blocksAvailable": "1",<br>"blocksInHolding": null,<br>"blocksAssignedPercentage": "0.00",<br>"blocksAllocatedPercentage": "100.00",<br>"blocksAvailablePercentage": "100.00",<br>"blocksInHoldingPercentage": "0.00"<br>} |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| block* | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block description |
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| mask | INTEGER | 24 | The specific mask size to retrieve utilization for. If using this parameter, the id parameter should be the id of the aggregate. |

**Example URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=utilization&id=125

## Get Host Utilization

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getHostUtilization |
| Description | Gets the host utilization statistics with support for filters. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {<br>"success": 1,<br>"totalHosts": "256",<br>"hostsAssigned": 0,<br>"hostsAllocated": "256",<br>"hostsAvailable": "256",<br>"hostsInHolding": 0,<br>"availablePercentage": "100.00",<br>"assignedPercentage": "0.00", |

| | |
|---|---|
| | "allocatedPercentage": "100.00",<br>"inHoldingPercentage": "0.00",<br>"resources": [{<br>"id": 351,<br>"name": "Customer 1",<br>"type": "entry",<br>"hosts": "256",<br>"blocks": "1",<br>"percentage": "100.00"<br>} ]<br>} |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| type | STRING | "ipv4" or "ipv6" | IP type |

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Multiple Values | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| code | STRING | "code-1" | Yes | User-defined block code as defined in Admin-IPAM settings: Generic Code Per Block Name |
| region | STRING | "SFO" | Yes | Region to assign from |
| rir | STRING | ARIN | No | Acceptable values: ARIN, RIPE, APNIC, AfriNIC, LACNIC, 1918 |
| tags | STRING | "Customer" | Yes | Comma separated string of tags |
| vlan | INTEGER | 1000 | Yes | VLAN designated to a given block |

NOTE: to filter using multiple values, pass the values as a JSON-encoded string representation of an array.

For example, to get utilization data for multiple tags, you could use the following URL:

*/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getHostUtilization&type=ipv4&tags=["Customer","PTP"]*

**Example URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getHostUtilization&type=ipv4&tags=["Customer","PTP"]&region=SMF

# Holding Tank

## Override Holding

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=processHoldingTank |
| Description | Overrides holding for a specific block, returning the block to available status |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"15.15.15.128\/30 unassigned and returned to resource a6connectEntry","id":79134,"data":{"id":79134,"type":"ipv4","top_aggregate":79121,"cidr":"15.15.15.128\/30","formatted_ip":"15.15.15.128\/30","address":"252645248","end_address":"252645251","mask":30,"netmask":"255.255.255.252","child1":null,"child2":null,"is_assigned":0,"is_swipped":0,"is_aggregate":1,"custid":4208,"resource_id":4208,"* |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *resource_name":"a6connectEntry","last_updated_time":"2017-11-20 12:35:08","description":null,"parent":79132,"rir":"ARIN","lir_id":null,"notes":null,"generic_code":null,"code":null,"region":"STL","region_name":"St. Louis","vlan":null,"arin_net_id":null,"arin_cust_id":null,"org_id":null,"arin_swip_time":null,"assigned_time":"2017-11-20 12:35:08","asn":null,"allowSubAssignments":true,"permissions":{"permissionIPAMRead":"1","permissionIPAMUpdate":"1","permissionIPAMCreate":"1","permissionIPAMDelete":"1","permissionSWIP":"1","permissionAdmin":"1"},"range":"15.15.15.128 - 15.15.15.131","tags":[],"attributes":{"custody_chain":"[]"}}}* |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| block* | STRING | 213.37.29.0/24 | CIDR block description |
| id* | INTEGER | 125 | ID of the IP block |
| *Either block or id can be used, but only one must be provided | | | |

**Optional Parameters**: None.

**Example URL**: /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=overrideHolding&block=213.37.29.0/24&preview=true

## Process Holding Tank

**URL**: /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=processHoldingTank

**Description**: Processes the Holding Tank, returning held blocks to available status

**Returns**

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"1 IPv4 and 0 IPv6 blocks would be moved to the available pool. ","data":[{"id":77712,"type":"ipv4","top_aggregate":77552,"cidr":"23.92.0.64\/26","formatted_ip":"23.92.0.64\/26","address":"391905344","end_address":"391905407","mask":26,"netmask":"255.255.255.192","child1":null,"child2":null,"is_assigned":0,"is_swipped":0,"is_aggregate":1,"custid":188,"resource_id":188,"resource_name":"6connect holding","last_updated_time":"2014-10-29 11:25:41","description":null,"parent":77682,"rir":"ARIN","lir_id":"451","notes":null,"generic_code":null,"code":null,"region":"PHX","region_name":"Phoenix, AZ","vlan":null,"arin_net_id":null,"arin_cust_id":null,"org_id":null,"arin_swip_time":null,"assigned_time":"2014-10-29 11:20:34","asn":null,"allowSubAssignments":false,"permissions":{"permissionIPAMRead":"1","permissionIPAMUpdate":"1","permissionIPAMCreate":"1","permissionIPAMDelete":"1","permissionSWIP":"1","permissionAdmin":"1"},"range":"23.92.0.64 - 23.92.0.127","tags":["Customer","DSL"]}]} |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

**Required Parameters**: None

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| preview | BOOL | true | Acceptable values: "true" or "false"<br><br>If set to "true", returns a list of blocks that would be removed from the holding tank, but does not complete the process holding tank action.<br><br>If set to "false", processes the holding tank and returns a list of blocks returned to available status. |

**Example URL**: /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=processHoldingTank&preview=true

# Reports

## Mask Report

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=maskReport |
| Description | Returns a JSON report breakdown of by-mask use statistics |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"data":{"IPv4":{"total":576,"available":21,"assigned":555,"holding":0,"allocated":446,"prefixes":{"32":{"assigned_percentage":91.666666,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":8.333333,"allocated_percentage":0,"total":12,"available":1,"assigned":11,"holding":0,"allocated":0},"31":{"assigned_percentage":100,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":0,"allocated_percentage":30,"total":20,"available":0,"assigned":20,"holding":0,"allocated":6},"30":{"assigned_percentage":50,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":50,"allocated_percentage":0,"total":8,"available":4,"assigned":4,"holding":0,"allocated":0},"29":{"assigned_percentage":100,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":0,"allocated_percentage":20,"total":40,"available":0,"assigned":40,"holding":0,"allocated":8},"28":{"assigned_percentage":66.666666,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":33.333333,"allocated_percentage":33.333333,"total":48,"available":16,"assigned":32,"holding":0,"allocated":16},"27":{"assigned_percentage":100,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":0,"allocated_percentage":50,"total":64,"available":0,"assigned":64,"holding":0,"allocated":32},"26":{"assigned_percentage":100,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":0,"allocated_percentage":100,"total":128,"available":0,"assigned":128,"holding":0,"allocated":128},"25":{"assigned_percentage":100,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":0,"allocated_percentage":100,"total":256,"available":0,"assigned":256,"holding":0,"allocated":256}},"assigned_percentage":96.354166,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":3.645833,"allocated_percentage":77.430555},"IPv6":{"total":16777216,"available":0,"assigned":16777216,"holding":0,"allocated":0,"prefixes":{"41":{"assigned_percentage":100,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":0,"allocated_percentage":0,"total":16777216,"available":0,"assigned":16777216,"holding":0,"allocated":0}},"assigned_percentage":100,"holding_percentage":0,"available_percentage":0,"allocated_percentage":0}}} |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| resource_id | INTEGER | 1234 | Integer value of a Resource ID. If provided, the system will display an IPAM Mask Usage report limited to blocks associated with a single resource. |
| tags | STRING | "Customer" | Comma separated list of tags. If provided, limits the IPAM Mask Usage report to certain tags (standard tag mode). |
| regions | STRING | "DEN" | Comma separated list of regions. If provided, limits the IPAM Mask Usage Report to blocks associated with the provided region(s). |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=maskReport&regions=DEN |

# IPAM SWIP Calls:

## Deassign

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=deassign |
| Description | Performs a SWIP deassignment for the indicated IPAM block. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{ "success":1,"message":"success message" }* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| blockId | INTEGER | 1234 | ID of the block to deassign |
| block | STRING | 67.221.241.0/24 | the CIDR of the block being de-assigned |
| resourceId | INTEGER | 1234 | ID of resource representing the customer to deassign |
| lirId | INTEGER | 1234 | The ProVision id of the LIR which is performing the de-assignment |
| entityHandle | STRING | CONNE-81 | The Org ID for the LIR. |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| netName | STRING | 6CONN-67-221-241-0-24 | Optional name for the network to override the default. The default net name will be created using the Net Name Prefix and IP address for the block. |

Example URL

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=deassign&resourceId=1234&blockId=1234&lirId=1234&entityHandle=CONNE-81&block=67.221.241.0/24&netName=6CONN-67-221-241-0-24

## Get RIR List

URL

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getRIRList

Description

Returns a list of all valid RIRs in the database.

Returns

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"RIRs Retrieved.","data":[{"value":"ARIN","name":"ARIN"},{"value":"1918","name":"1918"},{"value":"AfriNIC","name":"AfriNIC"},{"value":"APNIC","name":"APNIC"},{"value":"LACNIC","name":"LACNIC"},{"value":"RIPE","name":"RIPE"},{"value":"1918-SJC","name":"1918-SJC"}]}* |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

## Simple Reassign

URL

/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=simpleReassign

Description

ARIN SWIP - simple reassign. Creates an ARIN customer record for the assigned resource and reassigns the block to the ARIN customer record.

Returns

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{ "success":1,"message":"Sent ARIN SWIP with action simpleReassign for 67.221.244.0/28 for Acme, Message: Success" }* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| blockId | INTEGER | 1234 | ID of the block to reassign |
| resourceId | INTEGER | 1234 | ID of resource representing the customer to reassign to |
| lirId | INTEGER | 1234 | The ProVision id of the LIR to use for reassignment |
| entityHandle | STRING | CONNE-81 | The Org ID for the LIR. |

Optional

| | |
|---|---|
| Parameters | <table><tr><th>Name</th><th>Type</th><th>Example</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>netName</td><td>STRING</td><td>NET-ACME-67-221-244-0-28</td><td>Optional name for the network to override the default. The default net name will be created using the Net Name Prefix and IP address for the block.</td></tr></table> |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=simpleReassign&resourceId=121&blockId=31559&lirId=95&entityHandle=CONNE-81&&netName=NET-ACME-67-221-244-0-28 |

# IPAM API Calls Subject to Change:

Calls below this point are subject to change, and are not recommended for use in production code.

## Get Attribute List

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getAttributeLists |
| Description | Returns a list of attributes |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br><table><tr><td>SUCCESSFUL</td><td>{"asns":[],"masks":["24"],"rirs":["1918"],"lirs":[],"tags":["DHCP"],"codes":[],"vlans":[],"regions":["Quito"],"resources":[{"id":"1302","name":"Quito Lab 1","slug":"quito-lab-1","type":"dhcp_pool","parent_id":"1","category_id":null,"attr":{"_dhcp_type":"subnet","_dhcp_pool_attributes":"{\"mac\":\"\",\"rangeStart\":\"10.8.0.0\",\"rangeEnd\":\"10.8.0.255\",\"freeLines\":0}","_dhcp_ip_id":"125"}}]}</td></tr><tr><td>ERROR</td><td>{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}</td></tr></table> |
| Required Parameters | <table><tr><th>Name</th><th>Type</th><th>Example</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>id</td><td>INTEGER</td><td>125</td><td>ID of the IP block</td></tr></table> |
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=getAttributeLists&id=125 |

# API Module - LIR


- LIR Management
  - Get
  - Delete
  - Add
  - Update


# LIR Management

## Get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=get |
| Description | Returns a list of LIRs |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

SUCCESSFUL

```
{
    "success": 1,
    "message": "2 objects found",
    "data": [
        {
            "id": "100",
            "name": "RIPE Test LIR",
            "slug": "ripe-test-lir",
            "entities": [
                {
                    "mnt_by": "mntner@email.com"
                    "mnt_by_password": "password",
                    "admin_c": "test-admin-c",
                    "tech_c": "test-tech-c",
                    "api_key": null
                }
            ],
            "rir": "RIPE"
        },
        {
            "id": "101",
            "name": "ARIN Test LIR",
            "slug": "arin-test-lir",
            "entities": [
                {
                    "org_handle": "TEST-10",
                    "admin_poc": "TEST-ARIN",
                    "net_poc": "TEST-ARIN",
                    "abuse_poc": "",
                    "net_name_prefix": "PRFX",
                    "api_key": "API-XXXX-YYYY-ZZZZ-1234"
                }
            ],
            "rir": "ARIN",
            "asn": "1000"
        }
    ]
}
```

ERROR

```
{
    "success":0,
    "message":"error message"
}
```

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=get |

## Delete

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=delete&id=<ID> |
| Description | Deletes an LIR |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | `{ "success": 1, "message": "LIR deleted." }` |
| ERROR | `{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }` |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=delete&id=100 |

## Add

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=add |
| Description | Adds a new LIR.<br>LIR creation utilizes the Resource system - see API Module - Resource - Add for details on adding a resource via the API. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | `{ "success":1, "message":"Resource added", "data": { "id":14063, "name":"TestLIR", "slug":"testlir", "type":"entry", "parent_id":1, "category_id":null, "date":1517513319, "modified":1517513319, "attr": { "_section":"94", "rir":"ARIN", "asn":"20202", "org-handle":"org1", "admin-poc":"admin1",` |

```
"net-poc":"tech1",
"abuse-poc":"abuse1",
"net-name-prefix":"test-",
"api-key":10,
"mnt-by":"",
"admin-c":"",
"tech-c":"",
"_gadget_data":false
},
"section":
{
"id":"94",
"name":"LIR",
"slug":"lir",
            "type":"section",
            "parent_id":"1",
            "category_id":null,
            "date":1375846025,
            "modified":1375846025,
            "attr":[]
         },
         "gadgets":false
    }
}
```


ERROR


```
{
    "success":0,
    "message":"error message"
}
```


Required Parameters

( meta[ ] =)

| Name | Type | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| meta[name] | STRING | TestLIR | Name of the new LIR resource. |
| meta[type] | STRING | entry | Type of resource - Adding a LIR will **always** be "entry". |
| meta[section] | STRING | lir | Section of the resource object. - Adding a LIR will **always** have "lir" as the section. |

Fields Information

**Detail on the "fields" array:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| fields [] | ARRAY | Entry field values (for fields that have already been assigned to the section) can be populated when the entry is created.<br><br>The format is field[field-slug][field-instance]. If the field instance is left blank, it will simply be the next value in the instance array. For example:<br><br>*fields[network-fqdn][]=example.com&fields[network-fqdn][]=test.com*<br><br>would be written in JSON as |

```
var fields = {
     "network-fqdn": [
          "example.com",
          "test.com"
     ]
}
```

**Please note that the Field Slug might differ from the Field Name!** To find the correct slug to use in adding resources with field values go the Section of the Resource you are adding, click 'Edit', then click the name of the Fields you will be populating. An Edit Field box will pop up which displays the Field's slug.

A field can be added to a section multiple times. The field instance is used to keep track of which field occurrence we are referring. In this example, the network-fqdn field had been added twice to the section so we were able to store two values for it.

Required Parameters

( fields[ ][] =)

| Name | Type | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| fields[rir][] | STRING | ARIN | The RIR for the LIR. Accepted values are "ARIN", "RIPE", "LACNIC", "AfriNIC", "APNIC", and "1918". |
| fields[asn][] | STRING | 20202 | The ASN (Autonomous System Number) for the LIR. |

Optional Parameters

( fields[ ][] =)

**For LIRs with RIR = "ARIN":**

| Name | Type | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| fields[org-handle][] | STRING | org1 | Organization Handle.<br><br>**NOTE:** When providing field information, Organization handle is **required** in order for the remaining fields to populate. |
| fields[admin-poc][] | STRING | admin1 | The admin point of contact object name. |
| fields[net-poc][] | STRING | tech1 | The network point of contact for this object. |
| fields[abuse-poc][] | STRING | abuse1 | The abuse point of contact object name. |
| fields[net-name-prefix][] | STRING | test- | The network name prefix. |
| fields[api-key][] | STRING | akakakakakaka | API key used to interface with RIR services |

**For LIRs with RIR = "RIPE", "LACNIC", "AfriNIC", "APNIC", and "1918". :**

| Name | Type | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| fields[mnt-by][] | STRING | maint1 | The name of the maintainer object.<br><br>**NOTE:** When providing field information, Maintainer name is **required** in order for the remaining fields to populate. |
| fields[mnt-by-password][] | STRING | passwordabcd | The maintainer password. |
| fields[admin-c][] | STRING | admin1 | Administrative contact for this object. |
| fields[tech-c][] | STRING | tech1 | Technical contact for this object |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | **ARIN example with only minimum required information:**<br><br>/api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=add&meta[name]=TestLIR1&meta[type]=entry&meta[section]=lir&fields[rir][]=ARIN&fields[asn][]=20202<br><br>**ARIN example with full Organization field details:**<br><br>/api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=add&meta[name]=TestLIR2&meta[type]=entry&meta[section]=lir&fields[rir][]=ARIN&fields[asn][]=20202&fields[org-handle][]=org1&fields[admin-poc][]=admin1&fields[net-poc][]=tech1&fields[abuse-poc][]=abuse1&fields[net-name-prefix][]=test-&fields[api-key][]=akakakakakaka<br><br>**Non-ARIN example with only minimum required information:**<br><br>/api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=add&meta[name]=TestLIR3&meta[type]=entry&meta[section]=lir&fields[rir][]=RIPE&fields[asn][]=20202<br><br>**Non-ARIN example with full Organization field details:**<br><br>/api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=add&meta[name]=TestLIR4&meta[type]=entry&meta[section]=lir&fields[rir][]=1918&fields[asn][]=20202&fields[mnt-by][]=maint1&fields[mnt-by-password][]=passwordabcd&fields[admin-c][]=admin1&fields[tech-c][]=tech1 |

## Update

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=update |
| Description | Updates a LIR.<br><br>LIR updates utilize the Resource system - see API Module - Resource - Update for details on editing a resource via the API. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {<br>"success":1,<br>"message":"Resource Updated",<br>"data":<br>{<br>"id":"206",<br>"name":"TestName",<br>"slug":"dstl-reserved",<br>"type":"entry",<br>"parent_id":"191",<br>"category_id":null,<br>"date":1470755920,<br>"modified":1517513903,<br>"attr":<br>{<br>"mnt-by-password":11,<br>"rir":"RIPE",<br>"asn":"30303",<br>"mnt-by":"Maint2",<br>"admin-c":"admin4",<br>"tech-c":"Tech5",<br>"_section":"162", |

```
"_custom_id":"",
"_gadget_data":[]
},
"section":
{
"id":"162",
"name":"4BCH",
"slug":"4bch",
"type":"section",
"parent_id":"1",
"category_id":null,
"date":1468356788,
"modified":1468356788,
"attr":[]
},
"gadgets":[]
}
}
```


ERROR


```
{
    "success":0,
    "message":"error message"
}
```


Required Parameters

( meta[ ] =)

| Name | Type | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| meta[id] | INTEGER | 1234 | ID of the LIR resource to update. |
| meta[type] | STRING | entry | Type of resource - Updating a LIR will **always** be "entry". |

Optional Parameters

( meta[ ] =)

| Name | Type | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| meta[name] | STRING | TestLIR | Name of the LIR resource. |

Required Parameters

( fields[ ][] =)

None.

Optional Parameters

( fields[ ][] =)

**For LIRs with RIR = "ARIN":**

| Name | Type | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| fields[rir][] | STRING | ARIN | The RIR for the LIR. Accepted values are "ARIN", "RIPE", "LACNIC", "AfriNIC", "APNIC", and "1918". |
| fields[asn][] | STRING | 20202 | The ASN (Autonomous System Number) for the LIR. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fields[org-handle][] | STRING | org1 | Organization Handle.<br><br>**NOTE:** When providing field information, Organization handle is **required** in order for the remaining Org. object fields to populate. |
| fields[admin-poc][] | STRING | admin1 | The admin point of contact object name. |
| fields[net-poc][] | STRING | tech1 | The network point of contact for this object. |
| fields[abuse-poc][] | STRING | abuse1 | The abuse point of contact object name. |
| fields[net-name-prefix][] | STRING | test- | The network name prefix. |
| fields[api-key][] | STRING | akakakakakaka | API key used to interface with RIR services |

**For LIRs with RIR = "RIPE", "LACNIC", "AfriNIC", "APNIC", and "1918". :**

| Name | Type | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| fields[rir][] | STRING | RIPE | The RIR for the LIR. Accepted values are "ARIN", "RIPE", "LACNIC", "AfriNIC", "APNIC", and "1918". |
| fields[asn][] | STRING | 20202 | The ASN (Autonomous System Number) for the LIR. |
| fields[mnt-by][] | STRING | maint1 | The name of the maintainer object.<br><br>**NOTE:** When providing field information, Maintainer name is **required** in order for the remaining maintainer object fields to populate. |
| fields[mnt-by-password][] | STRING | passwordabcd | The maintainer password. |
| fields[admin-c][] | STRING | admin1 | Administrative contact for this object. |
| fields[tech-c][] | STRING | tech1 | Technical contact for this object |

Example URL

**Update example with only the minimum required information:**

This sends only the meta data required for a success response, but it does not actually change any values.

/api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=update&meta[id]=14068&meta[type]=entry

**Update example with changing RIR, ASN, and updating all field information:**

This example changes a non-ARIN LIR to an ARIN LIR, and provides all updated information for the new RIR type.

/api/v1/api.php?target=lir&action=update&meta[id]=14068&meta[type]=entry&meta[name]=TestLIR4b&fields[rir][]=ARIN&fields[asn][]=30303&fields[org-handle][]=OrgABC&fields[admin-poc][]=AdminABC&fields[tech-c][]=TechABC&fields[abuse-poc][]=AbuseABC&fields[net-name-prefix][]=TestABC-&fields[api-key][]=abcdabcd

# API Module - Peering


- Peering
  - getCommunications
  - getPeers
  - getRequests
  - getSessions
  - addSession
  - configureSession
  - deleteSession
  - updateSession
  - resestPeerStatus
  - sendRequest
  - sendEmail
  - updatePeer


# Peering

## getCommunications

| | |
|---|---|
| Base URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=getCommunications |
| Description | Returns all communication data on peers at a particular exchange. |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"8 records found.","data":[{"name":"1&1 Internet","asn":"8560","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"262","log_data":[]},{"name":"Akamai Technologies","asn":"20940","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"2","log_data":[]},{"name":"Amazon.com","asn":"16509","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"1418","log_data":[]},{"name":"Atrato IP Networks","asn":"5580","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"2283","log_data":[]},{"name":"OVH","asn":"16276","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"1264","log_data":[]},{"name":"Verisign","asn":"7342","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"873","log_data":[]},{"name":"Walmart.com","asn":"17374","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"627","log_data":[]},{"name":"Windstream Communications","asn":"7029","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"1820","log_data":[]},{"name":"Yahoo!","asn":"10310","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"27","log_data":[]},{"name":"Zayo","asn":"19092","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"3611","log_data":[]},{"name":"Zayo (Abovenet Communications Inc.)","asn":"6461","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"541","log_data":[]},{"name":"tw telecom","asn":"4323","request_status":null,"qualified":null,"is_peer":false,"id":"540","log_data":[]}]} |
| ERROR | *{'success':0, 'message':'error message'}* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| public_id | INTEGER | 1 | The unique numerical identifier of the exchange to retrieve peering communicaiton records for. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=getCommunications&public_id=1 |

## getPeers

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=getPeers |
| Description | Returns a list of all peers available at an exchange |

| | |
|---|---|
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"184 peers found.","data":[{"id":"262","public_id":"1","asn":"8560","name":"1&1 Internet","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":"sent","info_prefixes":"150","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},"id":"286","public_id":null,"asn":"3856","name":"Packet Clearing House","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"100","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},{"id":"890","public_id":null,"asn":"13768","name":"PEER 1 Hosting","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"3000","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},{"id":"1676","public_id":null,"asn":"3737","name":"PenTeleData","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"80","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},{"id":"1560","public_id":null,"asn":"23265","name":"Pocketinet Communications, Inc.","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"200","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},{"id":"576","public_id":null,"asn":"32787","name":"Prolexic","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"500","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},"id":"353","public_id":null,"asn":"27524","name":"Xeex Communications","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"3000","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},{"id":"27","public_id":null,"asn":"10310","name":"Yahoo!","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"500","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},{"id":"1751","public_id":null,"asn":"13238","name":"Yandex LLC","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"60","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},{"id":"4078","public_id":null,"asn":"19468","name":"YieldBuild Inc","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"5","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},{"id":"541","public_id":null,"asn":"6461","name":"Zayo (Abovenet Communications Inc.)","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":"20000","public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]},{"id":"2351","public_id":null,"asn":"14824","name":"Zynga Game Network, Inc.","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":null,"info_prefixes":null,"public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[]}}}<br>ERROR: {"success":1,"message":"No peers found."} |
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| public_id | INTEGER | 1 | The unique numerical identifier of the exchange to retrieve peering communication records for. |
| id | INT | 1 | The unique numerical identifier of the peer in peeringDB. |
| asn | INT | 4436 | |
| name | STRING | GTT | |
| aka | STRING | nLayer | |
| website | STRING | http://www.gt-t.net | |
| notes_public | STRING | | |
| notes_private | STRING | | |
| irr_as_set | STRING | AS-NLAYER | |
| info_traffic | ENUM | 1 Tbps+ | enum('Not Disclosed','0-20 Mbps','20-100Mbps','100-1000Mbps','1-5Gbps','5-10Gbps','10-20Gbps','20-50 Gbps','50-100 Gbps','100+ Gbps','100-200 Gbps','200-300 Gbps','300-500 Gbps','500-1000 Gbps','1 Tbps+') DEFAULT 'Not Disclosed' |
| info_ratio | ENUM | Mostly Outbound | enum('Not Disclosed','Heavy Outbound','Mostly Outbound','Balanced','Mostly Inbound','Heavy Inbound') DEFAULT 'Not Disclosed' |
| info_scope | ENUM | Global | enum('Not Disclosed','Regional','North America','Asia Pacific','Europe','Africa','South America','Global') DEFAULT NULL |
| info_type | ENUM | NSP | enum('Not Disclosed','NSP','Content','Cable/DSL /ISP','Enterprise','Educational/Research','Non-Profit') DEFAULT 'Not Disclosed' |
| info_prefixes | INT | 10000 | |
| info_lookingglass | STRING | http://lg.nlayer.net/ | |
| info_routeserver | STRING | telnet://route-server.nlayer.net | |
| info_unicast | CHAR | 1 | |
| info_multicast | CHAR | | |
| info_ipv6 | CHAR | 1 | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| policy_url | STRING | http://www.gt-t.net/Peering_policies.aspx | |
| policy_general | ENUM | Selective | enum('Open','Selective','Restrictive','No') DEFAULT NULL |
| policy_locations | ENUM | Required - International | enum('Not Required','Preferred','Required - US','Required - International') DEFAULT NULL |
| policy_ratio | ENUM | No | enum('Yes','No') DEFAULT NULL |
| policy_contracts | ENUM | Not Required | enum('Not Required','Private Only','Required') DEFAULT NULL |
| policy_nopublic | ENUM | N | enum('Y','N') NOT NULL DEFAULT 'N' |
| policy_noprivate | ENUM | N | enum('Y','N') NOT NULL DEFAULT 'N' |
| date_created | DATETIME | 2013-03-21 15:36:42 | Date the peeringdb entry was created |
| date_lastupdated | DATETIME | 2013-03-21 15:36:42 | Date the peeringdb entry was last updated |
| include_public_ips | BOOL | TRUE | Returns a list of all public facing IPs |
| include_contacts | BOOL | TRUE | Returns a list of all contacts associated with peer(s) |
| include_log_data | BOOL | TRUE | Returns a list of all log data associated with the peer(s) (use with care) |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=getPeers&public_id=1 |

## getRequests

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=getRequests |
| Description | Returns a list of all peering requests issued |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"1 request found.","data":[{"id":"131","public_id":"5","source_participant_id":"2335","source_asn":"8038","peer_participant_id":"1418","peer_asn":"16509","peer_name":"Amazon.com","email_type":"text","email_from":"ops@6connect.com","email_to":"nalinmk@gmail.com","subject":"Peering request from 6connect, Inc.","body":"Peering,\r\n\r\n6connect, Inc., 8038, would like to peer with Amazon.com at our common locations.\r\n\r\nFacility, IP Address\r\nEquinix Ashburn - 206.126.236.68\r\nEquinix Palo Alto - 198.32.176.36\r\nEquinix Ashburn - 206.126.236.35\r\nEquinix San Jose - 206.223.116.177\r\nLINX Juniper LAN - 195.66.225.175\r\n\r\nSincerely,\r\nOperations\r\nops@6connect.com\r\n\r\n\r\n6connect, Inc. information:\r\nEquinix Palo Alto, 2001:504:d::33\r\nEquinix Palo Alto, 198.32.176.51\r\n\r\nPeeringDB: http:\/\/as8038.peeringdb.com\/\r\n","status":null,"created":"2014-04-23 10:31:33","modified":"2014-04-23 10:31:33"}]}<br><br>ERROR: {"success":1,"message":"No request found.","data":[]} |
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| peer_participant_id | INTEGER | 1 | The numerical id of the peer |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=getRequests&peer_participant_id=1 |

## getSessions

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=getSessions |
| Description | Returns a list of all bgp peering sessions |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"1 sessions found.","data":[{"id":"51","source_asn":"32787","source_ipaddr":"1.2.3.4"," |

resource_id":"422","resource_name":"ar1.inoc.com","peer_asn":"20940","peer_name":"Akamai Technologies"," peer_participant_id":"2","peer_ipaddr":"206.126.236.102","peer_hostname":null,"peer_group":"group b","public_id":"1"," public_name":"Equinix Ashburn","ip_type":"ipv4","type":"Peer","state":"not configured","prfx_max":"20","prfx_received":null," password":"0","note":null},]}

ERROR: {"success":1,"message":"No peers found."}

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| public_id | INTEGER | 1 | The unique numerical identifier of the exchange to retrieve peering communicaiton records for. |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 41 | |
| public_id | INTEGER | | |
| source_asn | INTEGER | | |
| source_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| resource_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_asn | INTEGER | | |
| peer_name | STRING | | |
| peer_participant_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| peer_hostname | STRING | | |
| peer_group | STRING | | |
| password | INTEGER | | |
| type | STRING | | |
| state | STRING | | |
| prfx_max | INTEGER | | |
| prfx_received | INTEGER | | |
| ip_type | ENUM | | enum('ipv4','ipv6') NOT NULL DEFAULT 'ipv4' |
| note | STRING | | |
| created | TIMESTAMP | | |
| modified | TIMESTAMP | | |
| deleted | INTEGER | | |
| public_id | INTEGER | | |

Example URL

/api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=getPeers&public_id=1

## addSession

URL

/api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=addSession

Description

Adds a bgp session

Returns

**Examples:**

SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Session added: Amazon.com (AS8038\/1.2.3.5) - (AS16509\/206.126.236.68)","data": {"id":111,"source_asn":"8038","source_ipaddr":"1.2.3.5","resource_id":"422","resource_name":null,"peer_asn":"16509","

| | |
|---|---|
| | peer_name":"Amazon.com","peer_participant_id":"1418","peer_ipaddr":"206.126.236.68","peer_hostname":null,"peer_group":"LAME-PEERS","public_id":"1","public_name":null,"ip_type":"ipv4","type":"Peer","state":"not configured","prfx_max":"200","prfx_received":null,"password":"ace12345","note":"I'm a fancy note."}}<br><br>ERROR: {"success":1,"message":"No request found.","data":[]} |
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| source_asn | INTEGER | 1 | The numerical id of the peer |
| source_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| resource_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_asn | INTEGER | | |
| peer_name | STRING | | |
| peer_participant_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| peer_hostname | STRING | | |
| peer_group | STRING | | |
| public_id | | | |
| type | STRING | | |
| ip_type | ENUM | | enum('ipv4','ipv6') |
| state | STRING | | |
| prfx_max | INTEGER | | |
| note | STRING | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=getRequests&peer_participant_id=1 |

## configureSession

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=configureSession |
| Description | Configure a BGP session on the router |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL:<br><br>ERROR: {"success":0,"message":"Unable to authenticate "} |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| session_id | INTEGER | 1 | |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| session_id | INTEGER | 1 | The numerical id of the peer |
| source_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| resource_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_asn | INTEGER | | |
| peer_name | STRING | | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| peer_participant_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| peer_hostname | STRING | | |
| peer_group | STRING | | |
| public_id | | | |
| type | STRING | | |
| ip_type | ENUM | | enum('ipv4','ipv6') |
| state | STRING | | |
| prfx_max | INTEGER | | |
| note | STRING | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=configureSession&session_id=51&username=&config=conf+t%0A%0Arouter+bgp+32787%0A%0Ano+neighbor+206.126.236.102%0A%0Aneighbor+206.126.236.102+remote-as+20940%0Aneighbor+206.126.236.102+peer-group+group+b%0Aneighbor+206.126.236.102+description+Akamai+Technologies%0Aneighbor+206.126.236.102+maximum-prefix+20+%0Aneighbor+206.126.236.102+password+0+0%0A%0Aend%0Awrite |

## deleteSession

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=deleteSession |
| Description | Delete sessions matching criteria |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"1 sessions deleted."}<br><br>ERROR: {"success":0,"message":"No sessions found to delete."} |
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 41 | |
| public_id | INTEGER | | |
| source_asn | INTEGER | | |
| source_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| resource_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_asn | INTEGER | | |
| peer_name | STRING | | |
| peer_participant_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| peer_hostname | STRING | | |
| peer_group | STRING | | |
| password | INTEGER | | |
| type | STRING | | |
| state | STRING | | |
| prfx_max | INTEGER | | |
| prfx_received | INTEGER | | |
| ip_type | ENUM | | enum('ipv4','ipv6') NOT NULL DEFAULT 'ipv4' |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| note | STRING | | |
| created | TIMESTAMP | | |
| modified | TIMESTAMP | | |
| deleted | INTEGER | | |
| public_id | INTEGER | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=deleteSession&id=171 |

## updateSession

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=updateSession |
| Description | Updates session values with any new values specified |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL:{"success":1,"message":"Session updated: 123.net (AS32787\/1.2.3.4) - (AS12129\/206.126.236.70)","data":{"id":"41","source_asn":"32787","source_ipaddr":"1.2.3.4","resource_id":"422","resource_name":"ar1.inoc.com","peer_asn":"12129","peer_name":"123.net","peer_participant_id":"3899","peer_ipaddr":"206.126.236.70","peer_hostname":null,"peer_group":"group a","public_id":"1","public_name":"Equinix Ashburn","ip_type":"ipv4","type":"Peer","state":"not configured","prfx_max":"10","prfx_received":null,"password":"0","note":"Adding an awesome note."}}<br><br>ERROR: |
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 41 | |
| public_id | INTEGER | | |
| source_asn | INTEGER | | |
| source_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| resource_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_asn | INTEGER | | |
| peer_name | STRING | | |
| peer_participant_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_ipaddr | STRING | | |
| peer_hostname | STRING | | |
| peer_group | STRING | | |
| password | INTEGER | | |
| type | STRING | | |
| state | STRING | | |
| prfx_max | INTEGER | | |
| prfx_received | INTEGER | | |
| ip_type | ENUM | | enum('ipv4','ipv6') NOT NULL DEFAULT 'ipv4' |
| note | STRING | | |
| created | TIMESTAMP | | |
| modified | TIMESTAMP | | |
| deleted | INTEGER | | |
| public_id | INTEGER | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=updateSession&note=Adding+an+awesome+note.&peer_group=group+a |

## resestPeerStatus

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=resetPeerStatus |
| Description | |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"1&1 Internet status reset","data":{"id":"262","public_id":"1","asn":"8560","name":"1&1 Internet","qualified":true,"is_peer":0,"request_status":"none","info_prefixes":null,"public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data": [{"message":"Peer status reset","time":"2014-05-22 23:14:54","request_id":null,"session_id":null,"public_id":"1"},{"message":"Peer status reset","time":"2014-05-22 23:14:18","request_id":null,"session_id":null,"public_id":"1"},{"message":"Session deleted: 1&1 Internet (AS32787\/1.2.3.4) - (AS8560\/206.126.236.200)","time":"2014-05-22 22:39:43","request_id":null,"session_id":"71"," public_id":"1"},{"message":"Request sent: ","time":"2014-04-12 13:24:43","request_id":"121","session_id":null,"public_id":"1"}, {"message":"Session added: 1&1 Internet (AS32787\/1.2.3.4) - (AS8560\/206.126.236.200)","time":"2014-04-07 11:32:37"," request_id":null,"session_id":"71","public_id":"1"}]}}<br><br>ERROR: {"success":0,"message":"Could not find peer matching parameters"} |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| participant_id | INTEGER | 262 | The id of the peer in from the peeringDB peerParticipants table. |
| public_id | INTEGER | 1 | The id of the exchange point from the peeringDB mgmtPublics table. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=resetPeerStatus&participant_id=262&public_id=1 |

## sendRequest

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=sendRequest |
| Description | Send a peering request (email) to a prospective peer. This will be deprecated in the next version for a simpler call, strongly suggest |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Request sent","data":{"id":"922","public_id":"1","asn":"10933","name":"ATX Communicatio is_peer":0,"request_status":"sent","info_prefixes":null,"public_ips":[],"contacts":[],"log_data":[{"message":"Request sent to ","time":"2 request_id":"181","session_id":null,"public_id":"1"},{"message":"Request sent to ","time":"2014-05-27 16:49:30","request_id":"171","s public_id":"1"}]}}<br><br>ERROR: {"success":0,"message":"Internal error"} |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| public_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_participant_id | INTEGER | | |
| source_participant_id | INTEGER | | |
| peer_name | STRING | | |
| peer_asn | INTEGER | | |
| email_from | STRING | 262 | |
| email_to | STRING | 1 | |
| subject | STRING | | |
| body | STRING | | |
| | | | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | type | ENUM | html | enum('text','html') |
| | status | ENUM | sent | enum('sent','accepted','rejected') |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | https://ops.6connect.com/peering-demo/api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=sendRequest&peer_participant_id=1909&peer_asn=28929&peer_name=ASDASD+srl&source_participant_&public_id=1&type=text&email_from=ops%406connect.com&email_to=operations%40as28929.net&cc=&bcc=&subject=Peering+re 2C+Inc. &body=%0D%0APeering%2C%0D%0A%0D%0A6connect%2C+Inc.%2C+8038% 2C+would+like+to+peer+with+ASDASD+srl+at+our+common+locations.%3A%0D%0APeeringDB%3A+http%3A%2F%2Fas8038.p 0A |

## sendEmail

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=sendEmail |
| Description | Send a peering request (email) to a prospective peer. This will be deprecated in the next version for a simpler call, strongly suggest against using. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL:<br><br>ERROR: |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| participant_id | INTEGER | 262 | |
| public_id | INTEGER | 1 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | |

## updatePeer

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=peering&action=updatePeer |
| Description | |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL:<br><br>ERROR: |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| participant_id | INTEGER | 262 | |
| public_id | INTEGER | 1 | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | |

# API Module - Resource


- Resources
  - get
  - add
  - update
  - delete
  - get resource link
  - get resource search


# Resources

## get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=get |
| Description | Get a resource or resources |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Search successful","data":[{"id":"57","name":"2nd Email","slug":"6c-contact-email2","type":"field","parent_id":"1","category_id":null,"attr":[]}]}*<br>ERROR: *{"success":0,"message":"Search failed"}* |
| Optional Parameters | |

**General Parameters:**

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| name | STRING | Name of the resource. Example: 6Connect, Inc. |
| slug | STRING | The unique URL friendly name of the resource. Example: 6connect-inc |
| type | STRING | Type of resource (eg. *entry*, *field*, *category, dnsmodule*) |
| search | STRING | Search the resource system for the provided term. Performs a "LIKE" search to return similar results. Similar to GET Resource SEARCH call. |
| search_column | STRING | Column to perform a 'search' on. |
| permissions__true | STRING | Set the permissions that must be true. Typically only used for UI / Gadget permissions. |
| permissions__false | STRING | Set the permissions that must be false. Typically only used for UI / Gadget permissions. |
| getFromBackup | INTEGER | Use data from the resource_archive table instead of the standard resource table, used with "orig_id" identifying parameter. |

**Limit Results by ID:**

At most, one of the following:

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | Get the resource which has this ID |
| orig_id | INTEGER | The resource id from the standard resource table, used in conjunction with 'getFromBackup'. |
| custom_id | INTEGER | The resource custom id provided by the user for the resource. |
| resource__in | ARRAY | Get any resource which has any of these IDs<br><br>Syntax: &resource__in[]=1771&resource__in[]=14238 (Each resource id you wish to search over gets its own phrase.) |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| resource__not_in | ARRAY | Get all the resources which do not have any of these IDs<br><br>Syntax: &resource__not_in[]=1771&resource__not_in[]=14238 (Each resource id you wish to exclude gets its own phrase.) |

At most, one of the following:

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| parent_id | INTEGER | Get the resources whose parent has this ID |
| parent__in | ARRAY | Get any resource whose parents have any of these IDs.<br><br>Syntax: &parent__in[]=162&parent__in[]=299 (Each parent id you wish to search over gets its own phrase.) |
| parent__not_in | ARRAY | Get all resources whose parents do not have any of these IDs<br><br>Syntax: &parent__not_in[]=1771&parent__not_in[]=14238 (Each parent id you wish to exclude gets its own phrase.) |

At most, one of the following:

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| category_id | INTEGER | Get the resources of the category that has this ID |
| category__in | ARRAY | Get any resources whose categories have any of these IDs.<br><br>Syntax: &category__in[]=11002&category__in[]=11003 (Each category id you wish to search over gets its own phrase.) |
| category __not_in | ARRAY | Get the resources of all the categories that do not have any of these IDs<br><br>Syntax: &parent__not_in[]=11002&parent__not_in[]=11003 (Each category id you wish to exclude gets its own phrase.) |

### Limit Results by Resource Link:

For resources for which exist a Resource Link, you may limit by resource link data:

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| resource_link_type | STRING | The resource linkage relation name. Valid values include:<br><br>For *type* = *dnsmodule:*<br><br>**Valid Value** / **Notes**<br>dnsViewACL — Links a ACL and a Group. The View (Group) must be resource1, resource id and the ACL resource must be resource2 in the linkage table<br>dnsViewServer — Links a View (Group) with Server (DNS Connector), and the Group resource must be as resource1 and DNS Module as resource2. Used for attaching DNS servers to DNS Groups.<br>dnsZoneMaster — Links a DNS Zone resource with the Server that will be exported as Master. The DNS Zone must be in resource1 and the server as resource2. Used for Directly attaching zones to servers.<br>dnsZoneSlave — Links a DNS Zone resource with the Server that will be exported as Slave. The DNS Zone must be in resource1 and the server as resource2. Used for Directly attaching zones to servers.<br>dnsZoneServer |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | Links a DNS Zone resource with a Server resource. The DNS Zone must be in resource1 and the server as resource2. Used to directly attach servers to zones. |
| | | dnsZoneView: Links a DNS Zone resource with a Group. The DNS Zone must be resource1, the Group resource as resource 2. |
| resource_link_column | INTEGER | The column to be used for the parameter in "resource_link_value". Valid integer values are:<br>'1' = to use resource1 in the first column<br>'2' = to use resource2 in the second column |
| resource_link_value | INTEGER | The resource id for the resource_linkage table to search (Example: "10697") |

### Limit Results by Attributes:

You can further limit the results based on attributes the resources may have:

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| attributes | ARRAY | You can search on multiple attributes by including an array of attribute options:<br>`var data = {`<br>`"type: "entry",`<br>`"attributes": [`<br>`{`<br>`"attr_key": "_section",`<br>`"attr_value": "105",`<br>`},`<br>`{`<br>`"attr_key": "address-mail-state",`<br>`"attr_value": "CA",`<br>`}`<br>`],`<br>`"resources_per_page: 10`<br>`}` |
| attr_key | STRING | The name of the attribute. Example: network-fqdn |
| attr_value | STRING | The value of any attribute, or if attr_key is specified, the value of the attribute defined in attr_key. |
| attr_compare | STRING | If both attr_key and attr_value are given, the results are by default compared based on the value given as attr_value being equal to the value stored in the database. You can optionally change this by setting the STRING value of attr_compare to one of the following:<br>• = *(default)*<br>• !=<br>• >=<br>• <<br>• <=<br>• LIKE<br>• NOT LIKE<br>• IN<br>• NOT IN<br>• BETWEEN<br>• NOT BETWEEN |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | When attr_compare is set to IN, NOT IN, BETWEEN, NOT BETWEEN, then attr_value must either be an array or a comma separated string. |
| attr_load | BOOL | Load resource attributes along with the resource entry |

**Result Ordering:**

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| order | STRING | Set the direction of the ordering of the results by ascending or descending order. Valid values are:<br>• ASC *(default)*<br>• DESC |
| orderby | STRING | The parameter to order results by. Valid values include:<br>• none<br>• id<br>• name *(default)*<br>• slug<br>• type<br>• parent_id<br>• date<br>• resource__in *(preserve order given in the resource__in array)* |

**Range Selection / Paging:**

You can restrict the range of the resources returned.

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| resources_per_page | INTEGER | How many resources to return per page, e.g.: '10' . |
| offset | INTEGER | How many resources to offset from the initial resource, to use as the first resource provided in the return list (the initial resource is 0, not 1). |
| paged | INTEGER | The page to return (starts at 1, not 0). This parameter is provided for convenience and is used to calculate the offset where: offset=(paged-1)*resources_per_page |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=get&id=7 |

## add

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=add |
| Description | Add a resource. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br><br>*/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=add&meta[name]=apitest&meta[type]=entry&meta[section]=firewall&fields[network-fqdn][]=www.example.com*<br><br>SUCCESSFUL: {"success":1,"message":"Resource added","data":{"id":1077,"name":"apitest","slug":"apitest","type":"entry","parent_id":1,"category_id":"NULL","attr":{"_section":"70","network-fqdn":"www.example.com"},"section":{"id":"70","name":"Firewall","slug":"firewall","type":"section","parent_id":"1","category_id":null,"attr":{}}}}<br><br>*/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=add&meta[name]=apitest&meta[type]=entry&fields[network-fqdn][]=www.example.com*<br><br>ERROR:{"success":0,"message":"Entries must be assigned to a section"} |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| meta[name] | STRING | Name of the resource |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| meta[type] | STRING | Type of resource (entry, section, field, etc.) |

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| meta[parent_id] | INTEGER | ID of the parent resource |
| meta[category_id] | INTEGER | ID of the category |

**Required Parameters**

(meta [type] = entry)

One of the following:

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| meta[section_id] | INTEGER | ID of the section that the entry will be assigned to |
| meta[section] | STRING | Slug of the section that the entry will be assigned to |

**Optional Parameters**

(meta [type] = entry)

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| fields[] | ARRAY | Entry field values (for fields that have already been assigned to the section) can be populated when the entry is created.<br><br>The format is field[field-slug][field-instance]. If the field instance is left blank, it will simply be the next value in the instance array. For example:<br><br>*fields[network-fqdn][]=example.com&fields[network-fqdn][]=test.com*<br><br>would be written in JSON as<br><br>`var fields = {`<br>`"network-fqdn": [`<br>`"example.com",`<br>`"test.com"`<br>`]`<br>`}`<br><br>**Please note that the Field Slug might differ from the Field Name!** To find the correct slug to use in adding resources with field values go the Section of the Resource you are adding, click 'Edit', then click the name of the Fields you will be populating. An Edit Field box will pop up which displays the Field's slug.<br><br>A field can be added to a section multiple times. The field instance is used to keep track of which field occurrence we are referring. In this example, the network-fqdn field had been added twice to the section so we were able to store two values for it. |
| meta [custom_id] | STRING | A custom ID for the entry. In the past this has been called the Resource Holder ID or Customer ID. Most recently it was implemented as a text field with the slug "6c-resourceholder-id." Now it is a fundamental part the entry type resources. |

**Required Parameters**

(meta [type] = field)

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| meta[field_type] | STRING | Type of field<br><br>• text<br>• textarea<br>• radios<br>• checkboxes<br>• choicebox |

Optional Parameters

(meta [type] = field)

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| meta [help_block] | STRING | Fields can have a line of text under them with instructions |
| meta [options] | ARRAY | Fields of type radios, checkboxes, or choicebox can have multiple options. This could be multiple radio buttons or a choicebox (dropdown) with several options. For example:<br><br>meta[type]=field&meta[name]=Colors&meta[field_type]=choicebox&meta[options][]=Blue&meta [options][]=Green<br><br>Will create a choicebox with dropdown options of Blue and Green. |

Required Parameters

(meta [type] = gadgets)

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| gadgets[x][uuid] | INTEGER | x: The nth gadget being described in the call ('0' for the first gadget, '1' for the second, and so on).<br><br>uuid: User-generated ID of the gadget to be created. |
| gadgets[x] [code] | STRING | x: The nth gadget being described in the call ('0' for the first gadget, '1' for the second, and so on).<br><br>code: Slug of the gadget code to be created.<br><br>List of valid Gadget codes:<br><br>• Contact Info: "_contact_info"<br>• Contacts: "_contacts"<br>• DHCP Server: "_dhcp_server"<br>• DNS: "_dns"<br>• Document Storage: "_document_storage"<br>• IPAM: "_ipam"<br>• Peer Groups: "_peering_peer_groups"<br>• Peering Sessions: "_peering_sessions"<br>• VRFs: "_peering_vrfs"<br>• Resource Linkage: "_resource_linkage"<br>• Resource View: "_resource_view"<br>• Reverse API Console: "_reverse_api"<br>• Tech Info: "_tech_info" |

Example - Adding the IPAM Gadget to a Section:

api.php?target=resource&action=add&meta[type]=section&meta[name]=TestSection_1&meta[parent_id]=1&gadgets[0][uuid] =uuid-586dbd260d6ef&gadgets[0][code]=_ipam

## update

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=update |
| Description | Update a resource. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Resource Updated","data":{"id":"1055","name":"87-child-1","slug":"87-child-1","type":" entry","parent_id":"87","category_id":"65","attr":{"_section":"70"},"section":{"id":"70","name":"Firewall","slug":"firewall","type":" section","parent_id":"1","category_id":null,"attr":{}}}}*<br><br>ERROR: *{"success":0,"message":"No resource found with ID: 1079"}* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| meta[id] | INTEGER | ID of resource |
| meta[type] | STRING | Type of resource (entry, section, field, ect) |

Optional Parameters

| | |
|---|---|
| (meta [type] = entry) | |

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| fields[] | ARRAY | See "add" documentation |

Optional Parameters

(meta [type] = section)

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| fields [] | ARRAY | The fields value should be all the fields that are assigned to the section. Giving an empty array as the fields value will remove all fields from the section.<br><br>The format is:<br><br>fields[position][key]<br><br>The position value is the position that the field will appear in (0 is first). The position value must always be included. An example field format for an existing field could be:<br><br>fields[0][id]=2<br>fields[0][slug]=asset-serial-number<br>fields[0][help_block]=something<br>fields[0][new]=false<br><br>▪ Either the id or the slug is required, not both.<br>▪ When the "new" parameter is not included, FALSE is assumed<br><br>If you want to create a new field and assign it to the section, use a format like this:<br><br>fields[10][name]=TextArea<br>fields[10][field_type]=textarea<br>fields[10][new]=true |

## delete

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=delete |
| Description | Delete a resource. |
| Returns | **Examples:**<br>SUCCESSFUL: *{"success":1,"message":"Resource deleted."}*<br>ERROR: *{"success":0,"message":"No resource found with ID: 57"}* |
| Required Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | ID of the resource |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Notes/Example |
|---|---|---|
| recursive | BOOL | When 1, deletes parent and child entries for the resource |

A recursive delete will delete all resources, which are permitted to be deleted, from the bottom up.

Imagine the following hierarchy:

```
                A
     B1                  B2
 C11     C12         C21     C22
```

If a recursive delete is performed on A, but C21 is not deletable, the following

resources would still be deleted: (B1, C11, C12, C22).

B2 would not be deleted because it depends on C21 and A would not be deleted because it depends on B2.

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=delete&id=57 |

## get resource link

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Get available resource links. If no resource links exist for the given resource, an empty object is returned. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=getLink |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1 ,"message":"Search successful", "data":{"meta":{"totalRecords":"3", "retrieved":3}, "0":{"id":"22", "resource_id1":"1292", "resource_id2":"1302", "relation":"dhcpPoolLink"}, "1":{"id":"2", "resource_id1":"1292", "resource_id2":"1452", "relation":"dhcpPoolLink"}, "2":{"id":"12", "resource_id1":"1422", "resource_id2":" 1482", "relation":"dhcpPoolLink"}}} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | Id of the resource linkage |
| resource_id1 | INTEGER | The id of the parent resource |
| resource_id2 | INTEGER | The id of the linked resource |
| relation | STRING | The relation type. Relation types include:<br>contact, dhcpPoolLink, dnsViewACL, dnsViewServer, dnsZoneMaster, dnsZoneServer, dnsZoneView |

**Meta Attributes:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| totalRecords | INTEGER | How many records were found by this query, without pagination. |
| retrieved | INTEGER | How many records were returned by this query, with pagination. |

**Optional Attributes:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| resultsPerPage | INTEGER | How many records to include per page display.* |
| page | INTEGER | Which page to display, when used with "resultsPerPage"* |
| *Example pagination: api.php?target=resource&action=getLink&relation=dhcpPoolLink&resultsPerPage=100&page=2 | | |

## get resource search

| | |
|---|---|
| Description | Search the resource system for the provided term. Performs a "LIKE" search to return similar results. |
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=get&search= |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL: | {"success":1,"message":"Search successful","data":[{"id":"11011","name":"a6connectchildentry","slug":" a6connectchildentry","type":"entry","parent_id":"4210","category_id":null,"date":1499106555,"modified": 1499106555,"attr":{"_section":"4214"},"section":{"id":"4214","name":"aQA Section","slug":"aqa-section"," type":"section","parent_id":"1","category_id":null,"date":1498775688,"modified":1499106630,"attr":[]}," gadgets":[]}],"result_count":1,"found_count":1} |
| ERROR: | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | Id of the resource linkage |
| name | STRING | The resource name |
| slug | STRING | The resource slug |
| type | STRING | The resource type. |
| parent_id | INTEGER | ID of the parent resource |
| category_id | INTEGER | ID of the resource category type |
| date | INTEGER | Resouce creation date |
| modified | INTEGER | Resource last modified date |
| attr | JSON | A JSON list of resource attributes |

**Required Attributes:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| search | STRING | The search term |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=get&search=6connect |

# API Module - VLAN


- getById
- getDomains
- enable
- addDomain
- getAvailable
- get
- deleteDomain
- updateDomain
- update
- removeTags
- addTags
- smartAssign


## getById

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=getById |
| Description | get information of a vlan |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"1 VLAN found. ","data":[{"id":"11190","vlan":"176","domain_id":"1","resource_id":null,"name":"","domain_name":"DefaultDomain","tags":[],"tagsString":[]}]} |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 11190 | ID of the VLAN |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=getById&id=11190 |

## getDomains

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=getDomains |
| Description | get list and info of all domains or a specific domain. When specifying the domain the results will include tag info |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"6 Domains found. ","data":[{"id":"1","domain":"DefaultDomain","attr_6c":{"range":"S","restricted":[1,1002,1003,1004,1005]},"vlans":[{"id":"22866","vlan":"10","name":""},{"id":"1","vlan":"101","name":""},{"id":"3","vlan":"102","name":""},{"id":"22865","vlan":"104","name":""},{"id":"4","vlan":"105","name":"NewName"},{"id":"5","vlan":"106","name":"ThisIsAName"},{"id":"2","vlan":"107","name":""},{"id":"11189","vlan":"175","name":"SomeWhoCallMeTim"},{"id":"11190","vlan":"176","name":""},{"id":"11191","vlan":"177","name":""},{"id":"11192","vlan":"178","name":""},{"id":"7","vlan":"996","name":""},{"id":"8","vlan":"997","name":""},{"id":"9","vlan":"998","name":""},{"id":"10","vlan":"999","name":"CORP-DMZ"},{"id":"6","vlan":"1021","name":""}],"vlans_unnamed":null,"type":"domain","util":{"S":{"used":15,"total":1000}}},{"id":"2","domain":"6connect.com","attr_6c":{"range":"S","restricted":[1,1002,1003,1004,1005]},"vlans":[{"id":"19","vlan":"10","name":""},{"id":"20","vlan":"11","name":""},<br><br>...<br><br>{"id":"12755","vlan":"70","name":""},{"id":"12756","vlan":"71","name":""},{"id":"12757","vlan":"72","name":""},{"id":"12758","vlan":"73","name":""},{"id":"12759","vlan":"74","name":""},{"id":"12760","vlan":"75","name":""}],"vlans_unnamed":null,"type":"domain","util":{"S":{"used":38,"total":1000},"E":{"used":0,"total":3089}}}]} |

| | |
|---|---|
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 2 | ID of the domain |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=getDomains&id=2 |

## enable

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=enable |
| Description | enable vlans in a domain |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"Success. ","data":"3 in request (0 were found already named\/available and 3 found as unavailable). 3 VLANs have been updated to unnamed available entries."} |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| domainId | INTEGER | 1 | the domain ID in the domain table |
| vlan | INTEGER or STRING | 18,19,20 | vlan for this domain that we want enabled |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=enable&domainId=1&vlan=18,19,20 |

## addDomain

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=addDomain |
| Description | add a domain |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"domain 10 added","id":10,"data":[{"id":"10","domain":"sdfasfaf","attr_6c":{"range":"S","restricted":[1,1002,1003,1004,1005]},"vlans":[],"vlans_unnamed":{"1":null,"2":null,"3":null,"4":null,"5":null,"6":null,"7":null,"8":null,"9":null,"10":null,"11":null,"12":null,"13":null,"14":null,"15":null,"16":null,"17":null,"18":null,"19":null,"20":null,"21":null,"22":null,"23":null,"24":null,"25":null,"26":null,"27":null,"28":null,"29":null,"30":null,"31":null,"32":null,"33":null,"34":null,"35":null,"36":null,"37":null,"38":null,"39":null,"40":null,"41":null,"42":null,"43":null,"44":null,"45":null,"46":null,"47":null,"48":null,"49":null,"50":null,"51":null,"52":null,"53":null,"54":null,"55":null,"56":null,"57":null,"58":null,"59":null,"60":null,"61":null,"62":null,"63":null,"64":null,"65":null,"66":null,"67":null,"68":null,"69":null,"70":null,"71":null,"72":null,"73":null,"74":null,"75":null,"76":null,"77":null,"78":null,"79":null,"80":null,"81":null,"82":null,"83":null,"84":null,"85":null,"86":null,"87":null,"88":null,"89":null,"90":null,"91":null,"92":null,"93":null,"94":null,"95":null,"96":null,"97":null,"98":null,"99":null,"100":null,"101":null,"102":null,"103":null,"104":null,"105":null,"106":null,"107":null,"108":null,"109":null,"110":null,"111":null,"112":null,"113":null,"114":null,"115":null,"116":null,"117":null,"118":null,"119":null,"120":null,"121":null,"122":null,"123":null,"124":null,"125":null,"126":null,"127":null,"128":null,"129":null,"130":null,"131":null,"132":null,"133":null,"134":null,"135":null,"136":null,"137":null,"138":null,"139":null,"140":null,"141":null,"142":null,"143":null,"144":null,"145":null,"146":null,"147":null,"148":null,"149":null,"150":null,"151":null,"152":null,"153":null,"154":null,"155":null,"156":null,"157":null,"158":null,"159":null,"160":null,"161":null,"162":null,"163":null,"164":null,"165":null,"166":null,"167":null,"168":null,"169":null,"170":null,"171":null,"172":null,"173":null,"174":null,"175":null,"176":null,"177":null,"178":null,"179":null,"180":null,"181":null,"182":null,"183":null,"184":null,"185":null," |

186":null,"187":null,"188":null,"189":null,"190":null,"191":null,"192":null,"193":null,"194":null,"195":null,"196":
null,"197":null,"198":null,"199":null,"200":null,"201":null,"202":null,"203":null,"204":null,"205":null,"206":null,"
207":null,"208":null,"209":null,"210":null,"211":null,"212":null,"213":null,"214":null,"215":null,"216":null,"217":
null,"218":null,"219":null,"220":null,"221":null,"222":null,"223":null,"224":null,"225":null,"226":null,"227":null,"
228":null,"229":null,"230":null,"231":null,"232":null,"233":null,"234":null,"235":null,"236":null,"237":null,"238":
null,"239":null,"240":null,"241":null,"242":null,"243":null,"244":null,"245":null,"246":null,"247":null,"248":null,"
249":null,"250":null,"251":null,"252":null,"253":null,"254":null,"255":null,"256":null,"257":null,"258":null,"259":
null,"260":null,"261":null,"262":null,"263":null,"264":null,"265":null,"266":null,"267":null,"268":null,"269":null,"
270":null,"271":null,"272":null,"273":null,"274":null,"275":null,"276":null,"277":null,"278":null,"279":null,"280":
null,"281":null,"282":null,"283":null,"284":null,"285":null,"286":null,"287":null,"288":null,"289":null,"290":null,"
291":null,"292":null,"293":null,"294":null,"295":null,"296":null,"297":null,"298":null,"299":null,"300":null,"301":
null,"302":null,"303":null,"304":null,"305":null,"306":null,"307":null,"308":null,"309":null,"310":null,"311":null,"
312":null,"313":null,"314":null,"315":null,"316":null,"317":null,"318":null,"319":null,"320":null,"321":null,"322":
null,"323":null,"324":null,"325":null,"326":null,"327":null,"328":null,"329":null,"330":null,"331":null,"332":null,"
333":null,"334":null,"335":null,"336":null,"337":null,"338":null,"339":null,"340":null,"341":null,"342":null,"343":
null,"344":null,"345":null,"346":null,"347":null,"348":null,"349":null,"350":null,"351":null,"352":null,"353":null,"
354":null,"355":null,"356":null,"357":null,"358":null,"359":null,"360":null,"361":null,"362":null,"363":null,"364":
null,"365":null,"366":null,"367":null,"368":null,"369":null,"370":null,"371":null,"372":null,"373":null,"374":null,"
375":null,"376":null,"377":null,"378":null,"379":null,"380":null,"381":null,"382":null,"383":null,"384":null,"385":
null,"386":null,"387":null,"388":null,"389":null,"390":null,"391":null,"392":null,"393":null,"394":null,"395":null,"
396":null,"397":null,"398":null,"399":null,"400":null,"401":null,"402":null,"403":null,"404":null,"405":null,"406":
null,"407":null,"408":null,"409":null,"410":null,"411":null,"412":null,"413":null,"414":null,"415":null,"416":null,"
417":null,"418":null,"419":null,"420":null,"421":null,"422":null,"423":null,"424":null,"425":null,"426":null,"427":
null,"428":null,"429":null,"430":null,"431":null,"432":null,"433":null,"434":null,"435":null,"436":null,"437":null,"
438":null,"439":null,"440":null,"441":null,"442":null,"443":null,"444":null,"445":null,"446":null,"447":null,"448":
null,"449":null,"450":null,"451":null,"452":null,"453":null,"454":null,"455":null,"456":null,"457":null,"458":null,"
459":null,"460":null,"461":null,"462":null,"463":null,"464":null,"465":null,"466":null,"467":null,"468":null,"469":
null,"470":null,"471":null,"472":null,"473":null,"474":null,"475":null,"476":null,"477":null,"478":null,"479":null,"
480":null,"481":null,"482":null,"483":null,"484":null,"485":null,"486":null,"487":null,"488":null,"489":null,"490":
null,"491":null,"492":null,"493":null,"494":null,"495":null,"496":null,"497":null,"498":null,"499":null,"500":null,"
501":null,"502":null,"503":null,"504":null,"505":null,"506":null,"507":null,"508":null,"509":null,"510":null,"511":
null,"512":null,"513":null,"514":null,"515":null,"516":null,"517":null,"518":null,"519":null,"520":null,"521":null,"
522":null,"523":null,"524":null,"525":null,"526":null,"527":null,"528":null,"529":null,"530":null,"531":null,"532":
null,"533":null,"534":null,"535":null,"536":null,"537":null,"538":null,"539":null,"540":null,"541":null,"542":null,"
543":null,"544":null,"545":null,"546":null,"547":null,"548":null,"549":null,"550":null,"551":null,"552":null,"553":
null,"554":null,"555":null,"556":null,"557":null,"558":null,"559":null,"560":null,"561":null,"562":null,"563":null,"
564":null,"565":null,"566":null,"567":null,"568":null,"569":null,"570":null,"571":null,"572":null,"573":null,"574":
null,"575":null,"576":null,"577":null,"578":null,"579":null,"580":null,"581":null,"582":null,"583":null,"584":null,"
585":null,"586":null,"587":null,"588":null,"589":null,"590":null,"591":null,"592":null,"593":null,"594":null,"595":
null,"596":null,"597":null,"598":null,"599":null,"600":null,"601":null,"602":null,"603":null,"604":null,"605":null,"
606":null,"607":null,"608":null,"609":null,"610":null,"611":null,"612":null,"613":null,"614":null,"615":null,"616":
null,"617":null,"618":null,"619":null,"620":null,"621":null,"622":null,"623":null,"624":null,"625":null,"626":null,"
627":null,"628":null,"629":null,"630":null,"631":null,"632":null,"633":null,"634":null,"635":null,"636":null,"637":
null,"638":null,"639":null,"640":null,"641":null,"642":null,"643":null,"644":null,"645":null,"646":null,"647":null,"
648":null,"649":null,"650":null,"651":null,"652":null,"653":null,"654":null,"655":null,"656":null,"657":null,"658":
null,"659":null,"660":null,"661":null,"662":null,"663":null,"664":null,"665":null,"666":null,"667":null,"668":null,"
669":null,"670":null,"671":null,"672":null,"673":null,"674":null,"675":null,"676":null,"677":null,"678":null,"679":
null,"680":null,"681":null,"682":null,"683":null,"684":null,"685":null,"686":null,"687":null,"688":null,"689":null,"
690":null,"691":null,"692":null,"693":null,"694":null,"695":null,"696":null,"697":null,"698":null,"699":null,"700":
null,"701":null,"702":null,"703":null,"704":null,"705":null,"706":null,"707":null,"708":null,"709":null,"710":null,"
711":null,"712":null,"713":null,"714":null,"715":null,"716":null,"717":null,"718":null,"719":null,"720":null,"721":
null,"722":null,"723":null,"724":null,"725":null,"726":null,"727":null,"728":null,"729":null,"730":null,"731":null,"
732":null,"733":null,"734":null,"735":null,"736":null,"737":null,"738":null,"739":null,"740":null,"741":null,"742":
null,"743":null,"744":null,"745":null,"746":null,"747":null,"748":null,"749":null,"750":null,"751":null,"752":null,"
753":null,"754":null,"755":null,"756":null,"757":null,"758":null,"759":null,"760":null,"761":null,"762":null,"763":
null,"764":null,"765":null,"766":null,"767":null,"768":null,"769":null,"770":null,"771":null,"772":null,"773":null,"
774":null,"775":null,"776":null,"777":null,"778":null,"779":null,"780":null,"781":null,"782":null,"783":null,"784":
null,"785":null,"786":null,"787":null,"788":null,"789":null,"790":null,"791":null,"792":null,"793":null,"794":null,"
795":null,"796":null,"797":null,"798":null,"799":null,"800":null,"801":null,"802":null,"803":null,"804":null,"805":
null,"806":null,"807":null,"808":null,"809":null,"810":null,"811":null,"812":null,"813":null,"814":null,"815":null,"
816":null,"817":null,"818":null,"819":null,"820":null,"821":null,"822":null,"823":null,"824":null,"825":null,"826":
null,"827":null,"828":null,"829":null,"830":null,"831":null,"832":null,"833":null,"834":null,"835":null,"836":null,"
837":null,"838":null,"839":null,"840":null,"841":null,"842":null,"843":null,"844":null,"845":null,"846":null,"847":
null,"848":null,"849":null,"850":null,"851":null,"852":null,"853":null,"854":null,"855":null,"856":null,"857":null,"
858":null,"859":null,"860":null,"861":null,"862":null,"863":null,"864":null,"865":null,"866":null,"867":null,"868":
null,"869":null,"870":null,"871":null,"872":null,"873":null,"874":null,"875":null,"876":null,"877":null,"878":null,"
879":null,"880":null,"881":null,"882":null,"883":null,"884":null,"885":null,"886":null,"887":null,"888":null,"889":
null,"890":null,"891":null,"892":null,"893":null,"894":null,"895":null,"896":null,"897":null,"898":null,"899":null,"
900":null,"901":null,"902":null,"903":null,"904":null,"905":null,"906":null,"907":null,"908":null,"909":null,"910":
null,"911":null,"912":null,"913":null,"914":null,"915":null,"916":null,"917":null,"918":null,"919":null,"920":null,"
921":null,"922":null,"923":null,"924":null,"925":null,"926":null,"927":null,"928":null,"929":null,"930":null,"931":
null,"932":null,"933":null,"934":null,"935":null,"936":null,"937":null,"938":null,"939":null,"940":null,"941":null,"
942":null,"943":null,"944":null,"945":null,"946":null,"947":null,"948":null,"949":null,"950":null,"951":null,"952":
null,"953":null,"954":null,"955":null,"956":null,"957":null,"958":null,"959":null,"960":null,"961":null,"962":null,"
963":null,"964":null,"965":null,"966":null,"967":null,"968":null,"969":null,"970":null,"971":null,"972":null,"973":

| | |
|---|---|
| | null,"974":null,"975":null,"976":null,"977":null,"978":null,"979":null,"980":null,"981":null,"982":null,"983":null,"984":null,"985":null,"986":null,"987":null,"988":null,"989":null,"990":null,"991":null,"992":null,"993":null,"994":null,"995":null,"996":null,"997":null,"998":null,"999":null,"1000":null,"1001":null,"1002":null,"1003":null,"1004":null,"1005":null},"type":"domain","util":{"S":{"used":0,"total":1000}}}]} |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| domain | STRING | 6connect.com | Name to call new domain |
| range | STRING | S | 'S' or 'E', depending on VLAN range: extended or standard |

Optional Parameters: None

Example URL: api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=addDomain&domain=6connect.com&range=S

## getAvailable

URL: api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=getAvailable

Description: get VLANs in a domain that have not been named yet (even names that are '', or just uses their number as a name)

Returns: Examples

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"16 VLANs found. ","data":{"1":{"2":null,"3":null,"4":null,"5":null,"6":null,"7":null,"8":null,"9":null,"12":null,"13":null,"15":null,"16":null,"17":null,"21":null,"22":null,"23":null}}} |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| domainId | INTEGER or STRING | '1,2' | ID of the domains to search for |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| tags | INTEGER or STRING | '111,112' | ID of the tags to search for |
| min | INTEGER | 24 | VLAN to start search |
| max | INTEGER | 200 | VLAN to end search |

Example URL: api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=getAvailable&domainId=1&tags=111,112&min=2&max=23

## get

URL: api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=get

Description: Searches enabled VLANs. When not given options, returns all enabled VLANs. Note: an optional parameter, unavailable, is used to get available (un-enabled) VLANs as well

Returns: Examples

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"2 domains found. ","data":{"1":{"id":"1","domain":"DefaultDomain","attr_6c":null,"attr_custom":null,"vlans":[{"id":"4","vlan":"105","name":"NewName"}]},"2":{"id":"2","domain":"6connect.com","attr_6c":null,"attr_custom":null,"vlans":[{"id":"20","vlan":"11","name":""}]}}} |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Required Parameters | None |
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| unavailable | STRING | true | Will return available, instead of enabled, VLANs |
| domainId | INTEGER | 1 | domain ID |
| id | INTEGER | 21 | VLAN ID in the vlan table |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=get&id=4&unavailable=true |

## deleteDomain

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=deleteDomain |
| Description | Deletes a VLAN domain. |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"Domain #7 successfully deleted."}* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| domainId | INTEGER | 7 | domain ID |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=deleteDomain&domainId=7 |

## updateDomain

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=updateDomain |
| Description | Updates a VLAN domain. |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"Domain 2 updated","id":"2","data":[{"id":"2","domain":"44.6connect.com","attr_6c":{"range":"S","restricted":[1,1002,1003,1004,1005]},"vlans":[{"id":"19","vlan":"10","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"20","vlan":"11","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"21","vlan":"12","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"22","vlan":"13","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"23","vlan":"14","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"24","vlan":"15","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"25","vlan":"16","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"26","vlan":"17","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"27","vlan":"18","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"29","vlan":"20","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"30","vlan":"21","name":"","tags":["105"]},{"id":"3286","vlan":"3281","name":"Bob","tags":["105"]},{"id":"3287","vlan":"3282","name":""},{"id":"3288","vlan":"3283","name":""},{"id":"3289","vlan":"3284","name":""},{"id":"3290","vlan":"3285","name":""},{"id":"3291","vlan":"3286","name":""},{"id":"3292","vlan":"3287","name":""},{"id":"3293","vlan":"3288","name":""},{"id":"3294","vlan":"3289","name":""}],"vlans_unnamed":{"1":null,"2":{"tags":["105"]},"3":{"tags":["105"]},<br>....<br>"1002":null,"1003":null,"1004":null,"1005":null},"type":"domain","util":{"S":{"used":11,"total":1000}}}]} |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| domain | STRING | 6connect.com | Name of VLAN Domain |
| range | STRING | E | VLAN range. E for Extended or S for Standard |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None. |
| Example URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=updateDomain&domain=DefaultDomainnn&range=S&id=1 |

## update

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=update |
| Description | Update properties of a VLAN: name, tags, or both. |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"VLAN (table ID 11735) updated","id":"11735","data":[{"id":"11735","vlan":"50","domain_id":"7","resource_id":null,"name":"","domain_name":"lax.com","tags":[],"tagsString":[]}]}* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 11735 | VLAN record ID (which is “id” of the VLANs in “get” action results) |

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| name | STRING or empty string | HQ | name of the VLAN |
| tags | INTEGER or STRING or empty string | 111,112 | ID of tags to be assigned to this VLAN. Multiple tags IDs are assignable with a comma delimiter.<br><br>Empty parameter will result in no tags being assigned. |
| enabled | BOOLEAN | false | Set the VLAN as enabled (true) or disabled (false). |

**Example URL**

api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=update&id=11735&name=OReilly&tags=156,159

api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=update&id=11735&name=OReilly

api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=update&id=11735&tags=156,159

api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=update&id=11735&name=

api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=update&id=11735&tags=

## removeTags

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=removeTags |
| Description | Remove tags from a domain's VLAN(s). |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"VLAN tags for VLANs updated","id":"1","data":[]}* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| domainId | INTEGER | 1 | domain ID for domain whose VLANs will be un-tagged |
| vlan | INTEGER or STRING | 500 | a single VLAN (not the record ID from the get action results, but actual VLAN ID), OR |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | 500-510 | range of VLANs (using hyphen for minimum through maximum), OR comma-delimited list of VLANs and/or VLAN ranges |
| tagId | INTEGER or STRING | 150,99 | a single tag ID or comma-delimited list of tag ID's |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=removeTags&domainId=1&vlan=500-510&tagId=159<br><br>api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=removeTags&domainId=1&vlan=400,406,500-510&tagId=159,160 |

## addTags

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=addTags |
| Description | Add tags to a domain's VLAN(s). |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | *{"success":1,"message":"VLAN tags for VLANs updated","id":"1","data":[]}* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| domainId | INTEGER | 1 | domain ID for domain whose VLANs will be un-tagged |
| vlan | INTEGER or STRING | 515<br><br>500-510 | a single VLAN (not the record ID from the get action results, but actual VLAN ID), OR<br><br>range of VLANs (using hyphen for minimum through maximum), OR comma-delimited list of VLANs and/or VLAN ranges |
| tagId | INTEGER or STRING | 150,99 | a single tag ID or comma-delimited list of tag ID's |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | None |
| Example URL | api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=addTags&domainId=1&vlan=500-510&tagId=159<br><br>api/v1/api.php?target=vlan&action=addTags&domainId=1&vlan=400,406,500-510&tagId=159,160 |

## smartAssign

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | api.php?target=vlan&action=smartAssign |
| Description | Finds and enables an unassigned VLAN matching the provided search parameters and optionally renames it. |
| Returns | Examples |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | Return Data: the full domain description, plus the chosen VLAN with its new name (optional)<br><br>*{"success":1,"message":"VLAN enabled. ","data":{"21":{"id":"21","domain":"Swisscom Demo","attr_6c":"{\"range\":\"E\"}","attr_custom":null,"vlans":[{"id":"46183","vlan":"1808","name":"RESERVED_DEV"}]}}}* |
| ERROR | *{ "success":0, "message":"error message" }* |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| domainId | INTEGER | 15 | The Id number of the domain you would like to Smart Assign from. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Optional Parameters | |

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| tags | INTEGER | 5,7,12 | A comma-separated list of the Tag Ids being used for the Smart Assign. |
| name | STRING | CustomerName_13 , RESERVED_DEV | The name that will be assigned to the VLAN matching the given search parameters. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | api.php?target=vlan&action=smartAssign&domainId=21&name=RESERVED_DEV&tags=5,7,12 |

# How Do I...

# How Do I... (Use Cases)

If you want to get a jumpstart on common API use cases, you came to the right place! Expand the text areas below for walkthroughs and code samples of API calls...


- How Do I... (Use Cases)
    - IP Blocks - Update Fields
    - IP Blocks - Assign / Subassign
    - DNS
    - DHCP
- Python SDK:
    - IP Blocks


## IP Blocks - Update Fields

Context: How do I update the notes field of an IP block using the API in PHP?

1) Start with providing instance information, API key, Secret Key, and DNS Server IP; set up the connection

```
<?php
//
// This file walks through an example of how to look up a block id number
// in ProVision, and then use it to attach a notes field
//
// supply the URL of your ProVision instance, your API key and your Secret key.
$proVisionURL = "https://ops.6connect.com/qa-4.2.2";
$apiKey = "32-5DAYTJEE2TZHOFOB";
$apiSecretKey = "48b278ec873bda473a323dbc467f8669";
// this example uses 6connect's PHP APIClient
require_once("APIClient.php");
// set up the connection
$apiClient = new APIClient($proVisionURL, $apiKey, $apiSecretKey);
```

2) Split the metadata you want to have showing in the notes, and find the block with which it should associate

```
// lets imagine we have some metadata in the following format:
//
$string = "10.1.245.5||DFW7|HP a5820x|its-erp.dfw7.us.corp||";
//
// And we want to insert the Colo, Server type, and hostname into the Notes field of the IP block

// first we split everything up
$pieces = explode("|", $string);
$ip = $pieces[0];
$colo = $pieces[2];
$type = $pieces[3];
$host = $pieces[4];

// then we pull the IP block using the API.
$params = array();
$params['block'] = "$ip/32";                                // the IP block we're looking for, with netmask
// make the call to the IPAM-GET endpoint
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('ipam', 'get', $params);
if ($apiResponse->status != 1) {
        echo "Could not pull information for block: $ip/32 !\n";
        die();
}
if (trim($apiResponse->message) == "No blocks found.") {
```

```
        echo "IP block $ip/32 not found in ProVison!\n";
    die();
}

// we now have the ipObject associated with this IP block.  Lets get its block id.
$blockId = $apiResponse->data[0]['id'];
echo "IP block id: $blockId \n";
```

3) Update the block with the notes

```
// it is time to update the block with the new notes.
$notes = "$colo,$type,$host";
$params = array();
$params['id'] = $blockId;
$params['notes'] = $notes;
// make the call to the IPAM-UPDATE endpoint
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('ipam', 'update', $params);

// and done!
echo $apiResponse->message . "\n";
```

## IP Blocks - Assign / Subassign

Context: I unassigned an IP address and now it's in the Holding Tank. Now I want to assign an IP from the Holding Tank. I don't want to unassign an IP randomly, in case it is allocated to a Resource. What are my options?

There are 3 options:

1) If you know the specific IP, you can use use the ipam-get api call to determine if it is in Holding:

```
/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=get&cidr=1.2.3.4/32

{
  id:1234,
  cidr:"1.2.3.4",
  ...
  resource_name:"Holding"
}
```

2) If you want to show all blocks/IPs in Holding, you can use the following ipam-get API call:

```
/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=get&resourceQuery={"name":"Holding"}
```

3) If you know the block is in Holding, you can issue another ipam-unassign API call to move it from Holding to Available:

```
/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=unassign&block=1.2.3.4/32
```

Context: I need to create a Resource Holder, assign them an IP block, then subassign some IPs out of that block to two new Resource Holders. What does this look like in Python?

We broke this up in a few steps so it's easier to link together.

1) Let's create a Resource Holder called "Ned"

```
query_string    = 'target=resource&action=add&meta[type]=entry&meta[section]=resource-holder&meta[name]=Ned'
query_string    += '&apiKey=' + api_key
hash            = base64.b64encode( hmac.new(api_secret_key, query_string, hashlib.sha256).digest() )
url                = base_url + '?' + query_string + '&hash=' + hash
print 'Create Ned resource holder'
print url, "\n"
data = json.load(urllib2.urlopen(url))
ned_resource_id = data['data']['id']
```

2) Now let's add the 213.29.27.0/24 IP block

```
query_string =    'target=ipam&action=add&rir=RIPE&block=213.29.27.0/24'
query_string    += '&apiKey=' + api_key
```

```
hash            = base64.b64encode( hmac.new(api_secret_key, query_string, hashlib.sha256).digest() )
url                = base_url + '?' + query_string + '&hash=' + hash
print 'Create 213.29.27.0/24 block'
print url, "\n"
data = json.load(urllib2.urlopen(url))
```

3) With the block in the system, we can assign 213.29.27.0/24 to "Ned" the Resource Holder

```
query_string =    "target=ipam&action=directAssign&block=213.29.27.0/24&resourceId=%d" % (ned_resource_id)
query_string    += '&apiKey=' + api_key
hash            = base64.b64encode( hmac.new(api_secret_key, query_string, hashlib.sha256).digest() )
url                = base_url + '?' + query_string + '&hash=' + hash
print 'Assign 213.29.27.0/24 block to Ned'
print url, "\n"
data = json.load(urllib2.urlopen(url))
```

4) Since we plan on assigning IPs out of this block, we should enable subassignments for 213.29.27.0/24

```
query_string =    'target=ipam&action=update&block=213.29.27.0/24&allowSubAssignments=true'
query_string    += '&apiKey=' + api_key
hash            = base64.b64encode( hmac.new(api_secret_key, query_string, hashlib.sha256).digest() )
url                = base_url + '?' + query_string + '&hash=' + hash
print 'Update 213.29.27.0/24 to allow sub assignments'
print url, "\n"
data = json.load(urllib2.urlopen(url))
```

5) Now let's create a Resource Holder "Tara"

```
query_string =    "target=resource&action=add&meta[type]=entry&meta[section]=resource-holder&meta[name]
=Tara&meta[parent_id]=%d" % (ned_resource_id)
query_string    += '&apiKey=' + api_key
hash            = base64.b64encode( hmac.new(api_secret_key, query_string, hashlib.sha256).digest() )
url                = base_url + '?' + query_string + '&hash=' + hash
print 'Create Tara resource holder'
print url, "\n"
data = json.load(urllib2.urlopen(url))
tara_resource_id = data['data']['id']
```

6) To keep it interesting, let's create another Resource Holder "Una"

```
query_string =    "target=resource&action=add&meta[type]=entry&meta[section]=resource-holder&meta[name]
=Una&meta[parent_id]=%d" % (ned_resource_id)
query_string    += '&apiKey=' + api_key
hash            = base64.b64encode( hmac.new(api_secret_key, query_string, hashlib.sha256).digest() )
url                = base_url + '?' + query_string + '&hash=' + hash
print 'Create Una resource holder'
print url, "\n"
data = json.load(urllib2.urlopen(url))
una_resource_id = data['data']['id']
```

7) Assign a /28 block from Ned's 213.29.27.0/24 to Tara

```
query_string =    "target=ipam&action=smartAssign&type=ipv4&rir=RIPE&mask=28&&resourceId=%
d&assignedResourceId=%d" % (tara_resource_id, ned_resource_id)
query_string    += '&apiKey=' + api_key
hash            = base64.b64encode( hmac.new(api_secret_key, query_string, hashlib.sha256).digest() )
url                = base_url + '?' + query_string + '&hash=' + hash
print 'Assign block from Ned\'s 213.29.27.0/24 to Tara'
print url, "\n"
data = json.load(urllib2.urlopen(url))
```

8) Then assign another /28 block from Ned's 213.29.27.0/24 to Una

```
query_string =    "target=ipam&action=smartAssign&type=ipv4&rir=RIPE&mask=28&&resourceId=%
d&assignedResourceId=%d" % (una_resource_id, ned_resource_id)
query_string    += '&apiKey=' + api_key
hash            = base64.b64encode( hmac.new(api_secret_key, query_string, hashlib.sha256).digest() )
url                = base_url + '?' + query_string + '&hash=' + hash
```

```
print 'Assign block from Ned\'s 213.29.27.0/24 to Una'
print url, "\n"
data = json.load(urllib2.urlopen(url))
```

## DNS

Context: I need to set up a DNS server using ProVision's API in PHP, create a zone with a few simple records, and push it to the server.

1) Start with providing instance information, API key, Secret Key, and DNS Server IP

```
<?php
//
//
// supply the URL of your ProVision instance, your API key and your Secret key.
$proVisionURL = "https://ops.6connect.com/qa-4.2.2";
$apiKey = "Nnvz8xKZDQUWke6gDxb";
$apiSecretKey = "2YojRbrHnToPZ7cDeFBzcTAvcfMbPVmX";
// this example uses 6connect's PHP APIClient
require_once("APIClient.php");
// set up the connection
$apiClient = new APIClient($proVisionURL, $apiKey, $apiSecretKey);

// save this.  IP of the DNS Server we're creating.
$serverIp = "208.39.106.184";
```

2) Add a DNS server

```
// begin making api calls.  We begin by adding a simple DNS server.
$params = array();
$params['displayName'] = "Example Server";                                                    // the
pretty name of the DNS server
$params['server'] = "208.39.106.184";                                                            // the
IP of the DNS Server
$params['active'] =
1;                                                                                            // whether
or not this server is currently enabled
$params['transferType'] = "SCP";                                    // we are using an ISC Bind server which
we will communicate with via SCP
$params['username'] = "6connect";                                                                    //
the username used to SCP zones to this server
$params['password'] = "password";                                                                    //
the password used to SCP zones to this server
$params['port'] = 22;                                               // the port used to SCP zones to this
server
$params['serverType'] = "master";                                                                    //
whether this server is a master or a slave
$params['SOA'] = "ns1.dns.6connect.net. hostmaster.6connect.net.";         // the default SOA
$params['remoteDirectory'] = "/tmp/";                                                            //
where to place the zone files on the server
$params['namedConfPath'] = "/tmp/";
// the path to the zones within the configuration file.  Usually the same as 'remoteDirectory'
$params['postCommand'] = "touch /tmp/allFinished";                                        // the command to
execute on the server after the transfer is complete.
// add the server
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('dnsServer', 'add', $params);
if ($apiResponse->status == 1) {
        echo "Successfully added DNS Server '" . $params['displayName'] . "'\n";
} else {
        echo "Could not add DNS Server '" . $params['displayName'] . "' !\n";
        die();
}

// now we fetch the id of our newly created server
$params = array();
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('dnsServer', 'get', $params);
$data = $apiResponse->data;
for ($i = 0; $i < count($data); $i++) {
        if ($data[$i]['server'] == $serverIp) {
                        // we save the id for later.
                        $serverId = $data[$i]['id'];
                        break;
```

```
        }
}
echo "Server Id is: $serverId \n";
```

3) Create a zone

```
// okay, DNS server is set up -- time to create a zone.
$params = array();
$params['zoneName'] = "atestzone.com";                                // zone name
$params['zoneResourceId'] = 1;                                                // the owner of the zone; 1 is
default
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('zone', 'add', $params);
if ($apiResponse->status == 1) {
    echo "Successfully added DNS Zone '" . $params['zoneName'] . "'\n";
} else {
    echo "Could not add DNS Zone '" . $params['zoneName'] . "' !\n";
    die();
}
// snag the zoneId for later.
$zoneId = $apiResponse->data;
```

4) Add Zone records

```
// Lets add some records to our new zone!
$params = array();
$params['newRecordZoneId'] = $zoneId;                           // parent zone id
$params['newRecordType'] = 'A';                                       // record type
$params['newRecordHost'] = "www";                      // the host field of the record
$params['newRecordValue'] = "1.2.3.4";                 // the value field of the record
$params['newRecordTTL'] = "3600";                      // the value of the TTL field
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('record', 'add', $params);
if ($apiResponse->status == 1) {
    echo "Successfully added Record to zone #$zoneId\n";
} else {
    echo "Could not add Record to zone #$zoneId!\n";
    die();
}

$params = array();
$params['newRecordZoneId'] = $zoneId;                   // parent zone id
$params['newRecordType'] = 'A';                         // record type
$params['newRecordHost'] = "dev";                       // the host field of the record
$params['newRecordValue'] = "2.3.4.5";                      // the value field of the record
$params['newRecordTTL'] = "3600";                                       // the value of the TTL field
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('record', 'add', $params);
if ($apiResponse->status == 1) {
    echo "Successfully added Record to zone #$zoneId\n";
} else {
    echo "Could not add Record to zone #$zoneId!\n";
    die();
}

$params = array();
$params['newRecordZoneId'] = $zoneId;                  // parent zone id
$params['newRecordType'] = 'A';                        // record type
$params['newRecordHost'] = "cloud";                    // the host field of the record
$params['newRecordValue'] = "3.4.5.6";                 // the value field of the record
$params['newRecordTTL'] = "3600";                      // the value of the TTL field
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('record', 'add', $params);
if ($apiResponse->status == 1) {
    echo "Successfully added Record to zone #$zoneId\n";
} else {
    echo "Could not add Record to zone #$zoneId!\n";
    die();
}
```

4) Link the Zone to the new DNS server and push

```
// Okay, we have some zones with records.  Time to link this zone to the new DNS Server
$params = array();
```

```
$params['serverId'] = $serverId;                                                    // the server id
$params['zoneId'] = $zoneId;                                                            // the zone id
$params['serverSlave'] = 0;                                                                    // not a slave
zone
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('zoneLinkage', 'add', $params);
if ($apiResponse->status == 1) {
    echo "Successfully linked Zone #$zoneId to server #serverId\n";
} else {
    echo "Could not link Zone #$zoneId to server #serverId!\n";
    die();
}
// now we can push the zone to the server
$params = array();
$params['zoneId'] = $zoneId;                            // the zone id to push
$apiResponse = $apiClient->sendRequest('dnsServer', 'transferSingle', $params);
if ($apiResponse->status == 1) {
    echo "Zone pushed!\n";
} else {
    echo "Could not push zone!\n";
    die();
}
?>
```

## DHCP

Context: I need to attach the DHCP module as a child

DHCPv2 functionality is enabled on a particular resource by attaching a DHCP Module as a child.  A command to do this is as follows:

```
             [ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=add

             data:
meta[type]: dhcp_module
meta[name]: [parent resource id] DHCP Module
meta[parent_id]: [parent resource id]
```

The special resource type “dhcp_module” indicates to ProVision that the DHCP system is enabled for the parent object.  The attributes associated with the “dhcp_module” resource govern the DHCP system's behavior.

Updating the attributes of a DHCP Server uses a Resource Update command:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=update&meta[id]=2178 &meta[type]=dhcp_module&fields
[_dhcp_attributes][]={"type":"ISC","notes":"notes go here","username":"username","port":"port","
config_test":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd configtest","server_stop":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd stop","server_start":"/etc/init.
d/dhcpd start","config_path":"/tmp/dhcpd.conf","option_routers":"192.168.0.0","option_domain_name_servers":"
ns1.6connect.com","option_domain_name":"6connect.com","authoritative":"1","default_lease_time":"600","
max_lease_time":"7200","local_port":"67","log_facility":"local7","password":"password","server_ip":"
192.168.0.1","freeLines":3,"freeLine1":"free line 1","freeLine2":"free line 2","freeLine3":"free line 3"}
```

This command appears rather complicated, but can be broken apart into reasonable pieces.  The first section:

```
target=resource&action=update&meta[id]=2178&meta[type]=dhcp_module
```

is familiar from other parts of ProVision.  We are updating a resource of type “dhcp_module” whose resource id is 2178.  The second section of the command details the update values, starting with

```
fields[_dhcp_attributes][]=
```

which contains a JSON-encoded string of all the fields specific to a DHCP server's function. When expanded into its full object form it is substantially easier to digest:


```
{
            "type":"ISC",
            "notes":"notes go here",
            "username":"username",
            "port":"port",
            "config_test":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd configtest",
            "server_stop":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd stop",
            "server_start":"/etc/init.d/dhcpd start",
            "config_path":"/tmp/dhcpd.conf",
            "option_routers":"192.168.0.0",
            "option_domain_name_servers":"ns1.6connect.com",
            "option_domain_name":"6connect.com",
            "authoritative":"1",
            "default_lease_time":"600",
            "max_lease_time":"7200",
            "local_port":"67",
            "log_facility":"local7",
            "password":"password",
            "server_ip":"192.168.0.1",
            "freeLines":3,
            "freeLine1":"free line 1",
            "freeLine2":"free line 2",
            "freeLine3":"free line 3"
}
```


This object describes all the most common DHCP server configuration options. For a full explanation of each of the fields, see the Detailed API Specification later in this document.

Please note that the object above must be passed to the DHCP system as a JSON-encoded string. It must be passed into the special "_dhcp_attributes" attribute for it to be functional, as in the example URL.

Context: I need to add a DHCP aggregate

An example command to add a DHCP Aggregate is:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=ipam&action=add&block=192.168.0.0/24&rir=
1918&vlan=&tags=&region=&resourceId=1282&allowSubAssignments=true
```

The important part to note is that the IP block is being assigned to resourceId 1282, which corresponds to the DHCP Available resource. The DHCP Available resource is a system-level resource which is used to hold all unassigned DHCP IP addresses. Every instance has its own DHCP Available resource, whose id can be found with the following command:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=get&slug=dhcp-available
```

New DHCP subnets and hosts draw their IPs from this pool. If there are no IPs in the DHCP Available pool new subnets and hosts will not be able to be created.

DHCP IP aggregates are fetched, updated, split, and deleted using the standard IPAM management API endpoints. Please see the IPAM API Documentation. for details.

Context: I need to add a DHCP Pool

Similar to how the “dhcp_module” resource was created above, the command to create a DHCP Pool is as follows:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=add&meta[type]=dhcp_pool &meta[name]=New Subnet&fields
[_dhcp_type][]=subnet&fields[_dhcp_pool_attributes][]={"mac":"","rangeStart":"","rangeEnd":"","freeLines":3,"
freeLine1":"Free Line 1","freeLine2":"Free Line 2","freeLine3":"Free Line 3"}
```

The first half of this command is relatively straightforward:

```
target=resource&action=add&meta[type]=dhcp_pool&meta[name]=New Subnet
```

This section informs the API that we wish to create a new, empty “dhcp_pool” resource whose name is “New Subnet.”

```
fields[_dhcp_type][]=subnet&fields[_dhcp_pool_attributes][]={"mac":"","rangeStart":"", "rangeEnd":"","
freeLines":3,"freeLine1":"Free Line 1","freeLine2":"Free Line 2","freeLine3":"Free Line 3"}
```

The second half of the command behaves in a similar manner to the “dhcp_module.” The “_dhcp_pool_attributes” field holds a JSON-encoded string which describes the dhcp_pool resource. When expanded, the JSON string becomes the following object:

```
{
            "mac":"",
            "rangeStart":"",
            "rangeEnd":"",
            "freeLines":3,
            "freeLine1":"Free Line 1",
            "freeLine2":"Free Line 2",
            "freeLine3":"Free Line 3"
}
```

For a full explanation of each of the fields, see the Detailed API Specification.

Please note that the object above must be passed to the DHCP system as a JSON-encoded string. It must be passed into the “_dhcp_pool_attributes” attribute for it to be functional, as in the example URL.

Once a dhcp_pool resource is in the system it can be updated with IP data obtained from the IP Management system. Under DHCPv2, the DHCP system uses all the standard IPAM API endpoints and can make use of both the smartAssign and the directAssign methods. Please see the IPAM API documentation for details.

Context: I need to link a DHCP pool to a DHCP server

An example of building a link between a dhcp_pool and a DHCP Server is:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=addLink&resource_id1=2178&
resource_id2=1452&relation=dhcpPoolLink
```

The Resource Linkage system controls which DHCP Pools are associated with a given DHCP Server. In the case of linking a DHCP Pool to a DHCP Server, the relation used is “dhcpPoolLink”. This is a directional link, so it is important that resource_id1 and resource_id2 do not get confused.

```
relation:  "dhcpPoolLink"
resource_id1:  the id of the dhcp_module this pool is being linked to
resource_id2:  the id of the dhcp_pool being linked
```

It is very important that resource_id1 not be confused with resource_id2.  The link will not function with the values reversed.

To undo the above and break a DHCP Pool link, use the same command but substitute “deleteLink” for the action “addLink”.

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=deleteLink&resource_id1=2178&
resource_id2=2179&relation=dhcpPoolLink
```

Context: I need to push a DHCP config file

Once the server has been configured according to the previous sections, hitting the following API endpoint will trigger a DHCP push:

```
[ProVision root]/api/v1/api.php?target=dhcp&action=push&id=2178
```

The “id” in the above string is the id of the dhcp_module resource attached to the server you whose configuration is to be pushed.  The API return payload will contain success or failure codes, as well as a description of any errors which might have occurred.

When a DHCP configuration file is pushed an SSH connection is opened to the configured server using the user, password, and port supplied to the '_dhcp_attributes' attribute on the dhcp_module resource. If the system successfully connects, it will assemble a DHCP configuration from the information given to the dhcp_module's '_dhcp_attribute' attribute and then parse and add in all linked dhcp_pool resources.

After the assembled file has been transferred to the DHCP server it will be placed in the location given by 'config_path' on the dhcp_module, and then the command described in 'config_test' will be run to determine whether or not this new file parses correctly.  If 'config_test' is blank or omitted, this step is skipped.

If the file parses correctly the DHCP will be stopped and restarted according to the 'server_stop' and 'server_start' commands on the DHCP module. If there are errors at any point the system backs out, replaces old config files, and reports the errors via the 'message' return field of the API call.

# Python SDK:

## IP Blocks

Context: How do I create aggregates, get block information, and delete aggregates using the API / python SDK?

```
#!/usr/bin/python
from apiclient import APIClient, APIResponse

# REPLACE WITH CORRECT VALUES FOR YOUR INSTANCE

base_url                = 'https://<ProVision Instance URL>'

api_key                         = '00-ABCDEFGHIJ123456'

api_secret_key        = '0123456789abcdef0123456789abcdef'


# create the APIClient

client = APIClient(base_url, api_key, api_secret_key)



# create aggregate 1.2.3.0/24
```

```
target = 'ipam'

action = 'add'

params = {'block': '1.2.3.0/24', 'rir':'ARIN'}

url = client.get_request_url(target, action, params)

print url

response = client.make_api_call(target, action, params)

print response


# get block 1.2.3.0/24

target = 'ipam'

action = 'get'

params = {'block': '1.2.3.0/24'}

url = client.get_request_url(target, action, params)

print url

response = client.make_api_call(target, action, params)

print response



# delete aggregate 1.2.3.0/24

target = 'ipam'

action = 'delete'

params = {'block': '1.2.3.0/24'}

url = client.get_request_url(target, action, params)

print url

response = client.make_api_call(target, action, params)

print response
```

# 3 - SDK

# 6connect API - Getting Started with the SDK

The 6connect API allows you to access to data and functions of the 6connect web tools. The SDK for PHP or Python will help you get this setup quickly by outlining the requirements, prerequisites and provide sample code.


- 6connect API - Getting Started with the SDK
  - SDK for PHP
    - Prerequisites
    - Requirements
    - Install the SDK
  - SDK for Python
    - Install the SDK
  - Need More Information?


## SDK for PHP

### Prerequisites

The API only comes with a licensed 6connect ProVision application. If you would like access to a ProVision license please contact sales@6connect.com.

**Create Your API Credentials**

To use the 6connect SDK for PHP, you will need a 6connect API Key and Secret Key.

**To create your API Key and Secret Key:**

- Log into your 6connect instance (hosted or local)
- Click on the Admin icon, and go into the Administration section.
- Click on the "API" tab.
- Select the user from the drop down you want to enable API access for, and click "Generate Keys".
- The API Key and the Secret Key will now appear directly below that.

*Note that generating a new API will automatically revoke an older API Key.

6connect recommends that each user accessing the API have their own API key configured. However, you can alternatively setup API users by functionality or roles. While the platform is flexible, you should follow your organizations security policies.

### Important!

Your Secret Key is a secret! Only you and 6connect should ever know this information. It is important to keep it confidential to protect the privacy of your data. Store it securely and never share this key with other users or place it on other systems. Never include the secret key in requests to 6connect, support requests to 6connect, and never e-mail it to anyone. Do not share it outside your organization. No one who legitimately represents 6connect will ever ask you for your Secret Key.

### Requirements

Aside from following the prerequisites, you will need a basic understanding of object oriented programming in PHP and the right tools installed on your system to use the API.

**Minimum Requirements**

- PHP 5.5 or newer.
- PHP JSON and PCRE extensions (XML will be coming soon).
- Curl PHP extension compiled with OpenSSL libraries. Click here for more information on curl.

If you aren't sure what is running on your system, you can create a php page on your system and call phpinfo() and view this page in a browser, or run php -i on the command line.

## Install the SDK

Download the file "6connect_ProVision_PHP_SDK_5_1_4.tar" from the attachments list below:

| File | Modified |
|---|---|

#### Configure the SDK Security Credentials

- Extract the zipped tar file to a directory.
- Open the api-config.php located in the downloaded SDK files.
- Read through the file and place in your instance name (or path for local installs), API Key and Secret Key information as specified.
- Make sure all files are in the same directory (the core class looks for a config file in the same directory by default).
- Run the sample code api-examples.php!

### Important!

You must setup user API access before running the sample. See the previous section "Create Your API Credentials" for more information.

# SDK for Python

In Progress

This section is in progress. More information will be added as we improve and refine our new Python SDK!

## Install the SDK

Download the file "6c-api-examples-python.zip" from the attachments list below:

| File | Modified |
|---|---|

#### Configure the SDK Security Credentials

- Extract the zipped tar file to a directory.
- Open the apiclient.py located in the downloaded SDK files.
- Read through the file and place in your instance name (or path for local installs), API Key and Secret Key information as specified.
- Make sure all files are in the same directory (the core class looks for a config file in the same directory by default).
- Run the sample code api-examples.php!

### Important!

You must setup user API access before running the sample. See the previous section "Create Your API Credentials" for more information.

# Need More Information?

If you need more general information on the API, try the API Overview.
If you need information on methods available via the API, look at the API Reference.
The SDK also contains a README file with other useful information particular to php.

# Portable Gadgets

# Portable Gadgets


- Portable Gadgets
  - Overview
    - Global Search:
      - Global Search Option Types:
    - IPAM Search:
      - IPAM Option Types:
    - DHCP Search:
      - DHCP Option Types:
    - Log:
      - More Options:
  - Additional Information:

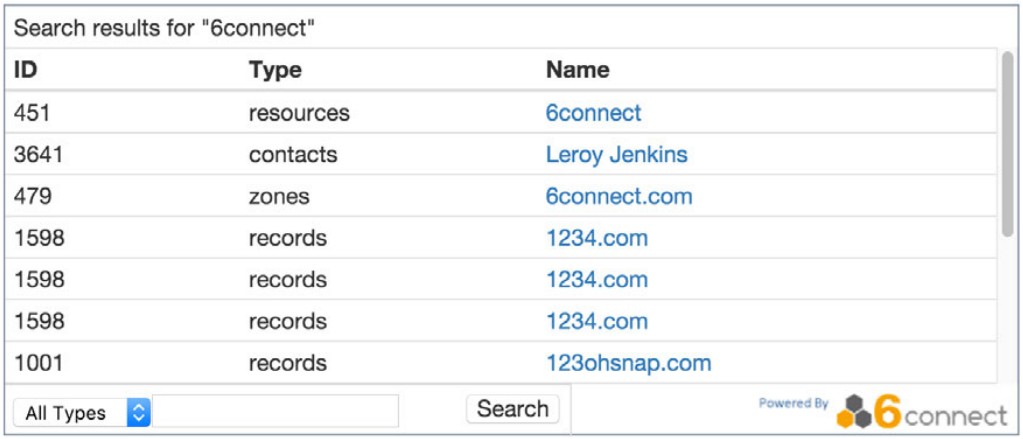

## Overview

ProVision's Portable Gadgets are drop-in code snippets that use the ProVision API to bring in data to other systems or web pages. Portable Gadgets allow for quick data access and increased integration.

Currently, four Gadgets are available: Global Search, IPAM Search, DHCP Search, and Log. Each Gadget comes in various default option types for display style, number of records return, or behavior. Additional client-side style customizations may be made to further integrate the gadget with company styles.

## Global Search:

The Global Search Gadget utilizes ProVision's global search API to searching by name string and return ID, Type, and the Name. The search may be limited to specific types (IPAM, Resources, Zones, Records, Contacts, or All Types) if desired.




### Global Search Option Types:

**Type I.**

Search results for "6connect"

| ID | Type | Name |
|---|---|---|
| 451 | resources | 6connect |
| 3641 | contacts | Leroy Jenkins |
| 479 | zones | 6connect.com |
| 1598 | records | 1234.com |
| 1598 | records | 1234.com |
| 1598 | records | 1234.com |
| 1001 | records | 123ohsnap.com |

All Types Search Powered By 6connect

- Returns 5 records per Type
- Auto Width, height set to 300px

**Type II.**

Search results for "6connect"

| ID | Type |
|---|---|
| 451 | resources |
| 3641 | contacts |
| 479 | zones |
| 1598 | records |
| 1598 | records |
| 1598 | records |
| 1001 | records |

Powered By 6connect

- Returns 5 records per Type
- No search input provided
- Fixed size ( 400px wide x 300px high)

**Type III.**

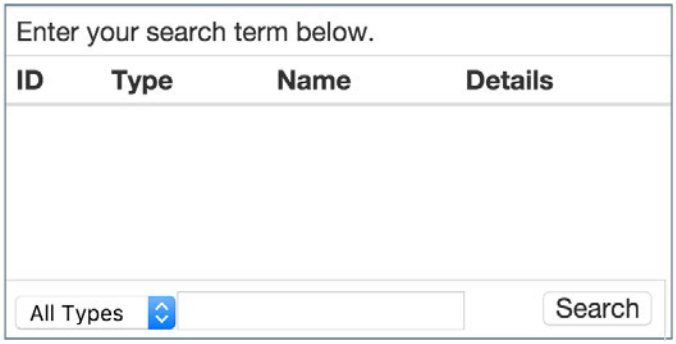
Search results for "6connect"

| ID | Type | Name |
|---|---|---|
| 451 | resources | 6connect |
| 3641 | contacts | Leroy Jenkins |
| 479 | zones | 6connect.com |
| 1598 | records | 1234.com |

All Types Search Powered By 6connect

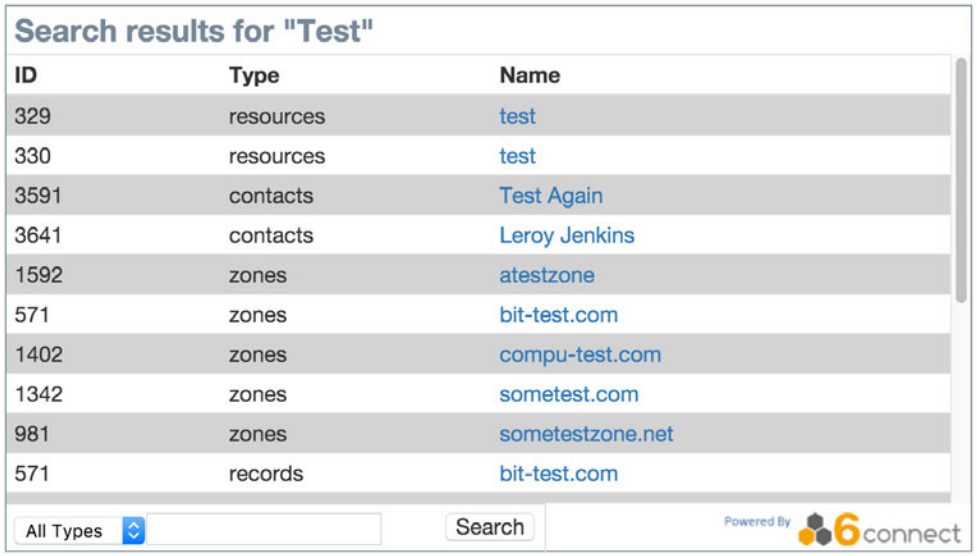
- Returns 3 records per Type
- Auto Width, height set to 200px

**Type IV.**




- No search on load
- Links stay in current window
- Fixed size (400px wide x 200px high)

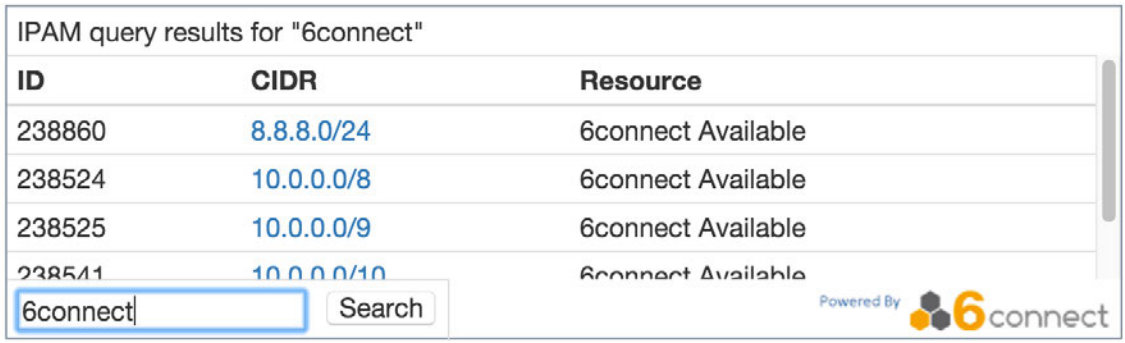
**Type V.**




- Type I functionality restyled with CSS

## IPAM Search:

The IPAM Search Gadget utilizes ProVision's IPAM API to return ID, CIDR, and Resource Name results searching by an IPAM Resource name string.




## IPAM Option Types:

**Type I.**

IPAM query results for "6connect"

| ID | CIDR | Resource |
|---|---|---|
| 233414 | 10.0.0.0/16 | 6connect Available |
| 233709 | 10.0.0.0/16 | 6connect Available |
| 233824 | 10.0.0.0/16 | 6connect Available |
| 234708 | 10.0.0.0/16 | 6connect Available |

Search

Powered By 6connect

- Returns 5 records per Type
- Auto Width, height set to 200px

**Type II.**

IPAM query results for "6connect"

| ID | CIDR |
|---|---|
| 233414 | 10.0.0.0/16 |
| 233709 | 10.0.0.0/16 |
| 233824 | 10.0.0.0/16 |

Powered By 6connect

- Returns 3 records per Type
- No search input provided
- Fixed size ( 400px wide x 200px high)

**Type III.**

Enter your search term below.

| ID | CIDR | Resource |
|---|---|---|

Search

Powered By 6connect

- No search on load
- Links stay in current window
- Auto Width, height set to 300px

**Type IV.**

IPAM query results for "6connect"

| ID | CIDR | Resource |
|---|---|---|
| 233414 | 10.0.0.0/16 | 6connect Available |
| 233709 | 10.0.0.0/16 | 6connect Available |
| 233824 | 10.0.0.0/16 | 6connect Available |
| 234708 | 10.0.0.0/16 | 6connect Available |
| 234950 | 10.0.0.0/16 | 6connect Available |

Search

Powered By 6connect

- Type I functionality restyled with CSS
- Auto Width, height set to 400px

**Type V.**

IPAM query results for "6connect"

| CIDR | updated | RIR |
|---|---|---|
| 10.0.0.0/16 | 2016-02-29 14:57:20 | 1918 |
| 10.0.0.0/16 | 2016-03-09 14:17:26 | 1918 |
| 10.0.0.0/16 | 2015-10-01 09:26:54 | 1918 |
| 10.0.0.0/16 | 2016-01-28 09:21:03 | 1918 |
| 10.0.0.0/16 | 2016-03-09 13:57:40 | ARIN |

Search

Powered By 6connect

- Customizable Fields
- Auto Width, height set to 300px

## DHCP Search:

The DHCP Search Gadget utilizes ProVision's DHCP API to return results of varying types when searching for a name string. The search may be limited to specific types if desired.

DHCP query results for "test"

| Name | DHCP Type | IP Assigned |
|---|---|---|
| RegionTest1 | subnet | IP block ID 230785 (record not found) |
| RegionTest2 | subnet | no IP |
| RegionTest4 | subnet | IP block ID 230250 (record not found) |
| 6connectTest | subnet | IP block ID 231193 (record not found) |
| QATest | subnet | IP block ID 231194 (record not found) |

All Types test Search Powered By 6connect

## DHCP Option Types:

**Type I.**

DHCP query results for "test2"

| Name | DHCP Type | IP Assigned |
|---|---|---|
| Test2 | subnet | 198.0.0.0/32 |

All Types Search Powered By 6connect

- Returns 5 records per Type
- Auto Width, height set to 300px

**Type II.**

No results found for "6connect"

| Name | DHCP Type | IP Assigned |
|---|---|---|

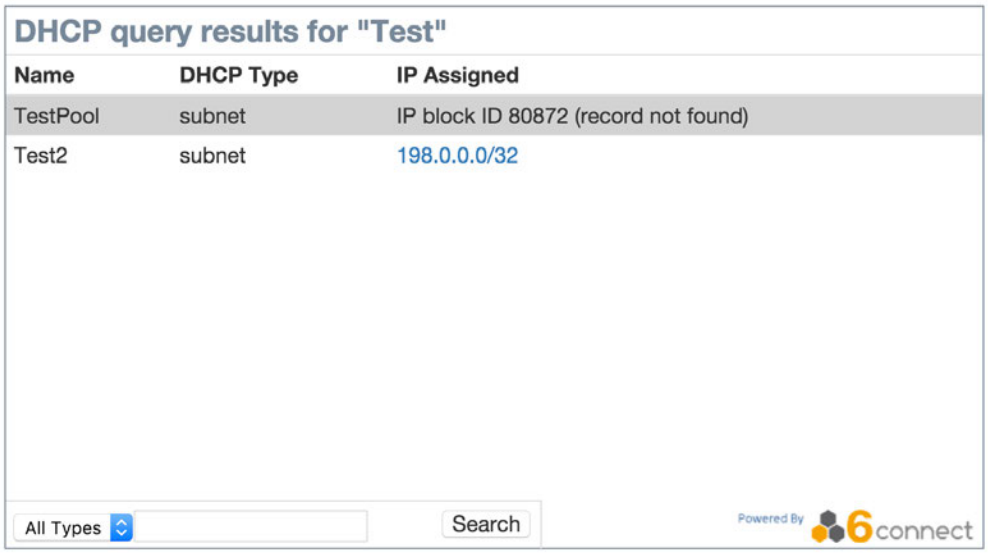
Powered By 6connect

- Returns 3 records per Type
- No search input provided
- Fixed size ( 400px wide x 200px high)

**Type III.**

- No search on load
- Links stay in current window
- Returns 5 records per Type
- Auto Width, height set to 300px

**Type IV.**

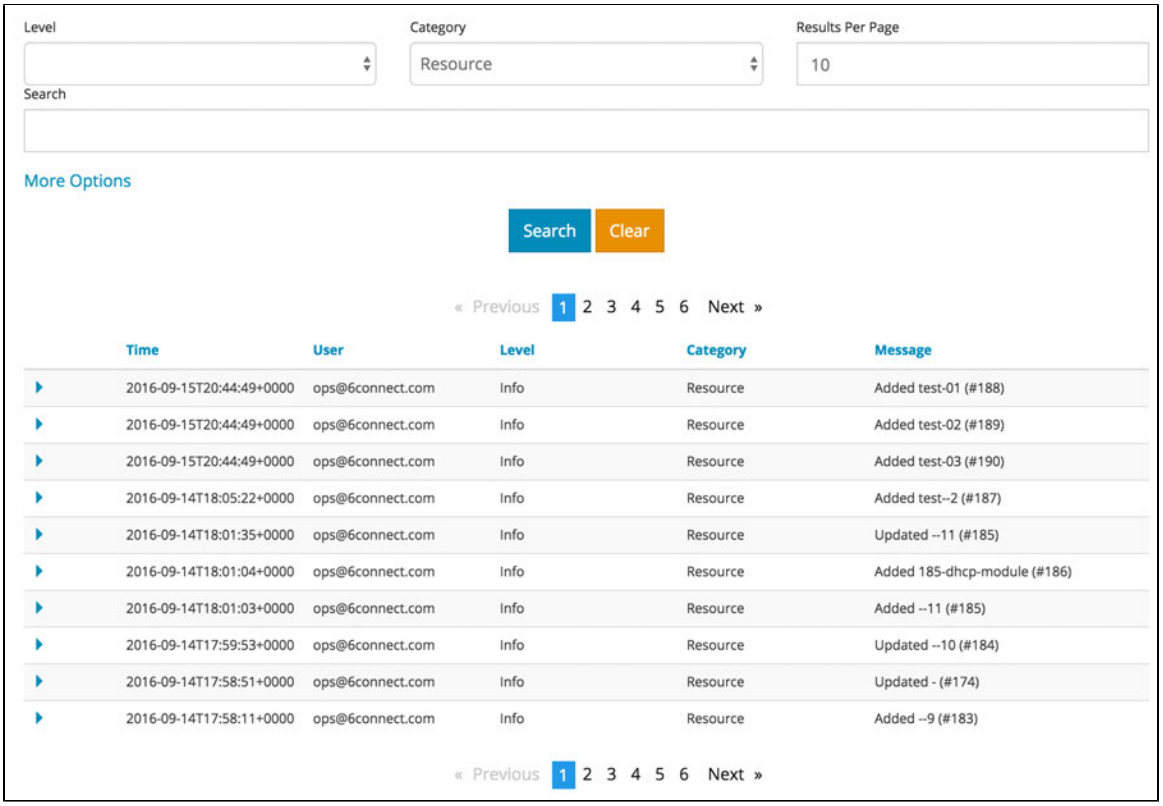



- Type I functionality restyled with CSS
- Returns 5 records per Type
- Auto Width, height set to 300px

## Log:

The Log Gadget provides detailed information on actions performed in ProVision. Actions may be filtered by Level, Category, Log ID, User, and Time (specific or a range), as well as results-per-page option set. Additional filtering options allow targeting of specific log entries.

Clicking on the blue arrow at the beginning of each log entry shows additional details about that log item.




The following filters and options are available:

**Level:** Under the "Level" dropdown box, select "All Levels", "Emergency", "Alert", "Critical", "Error", "Warning", "Notice", "Info", or "Debug".

**Category:** Under the "Category" dropdown box, select "All Categories", "User", "IPAM", "Resource", "Resource Holder", "DNS", "Peering", "Assistant", "API", "NTP", "Device", or "Reporting".

**Results per page:** In the "Results per page" text box, type the desired number of log entries to see per page. By default, this value is set to 100.

**Search:** Type a search string, such as the name of a resource, then click the "Search" button.

## More Options:

Additional detailed filter and search options are available under the "More Options" link.

**Log ID:** Retrieve a specific log entry from its log_id parameter.

**IP:** Search by IP of the machine that created the event in the log.

**Username:** Filter logs by ProVision username, or by "Unknown" user.

**Time:** Filter log entries by exact time created. Must be in datetime format (2016-08-14 16:41:18).

**Time Minimum:** The earliest day and time of log entries to show in results. Must be in datetime format (2016-08-14 16:41:18).

**Time Maximum:** The latest day and time of log entries to show in results. Must be in datetime format (2016-08-14 16:41:18).

# Additional Information:

- Getting Started With Portable Gadgets
- Portable Gadget Customization

# Getting Started With Portable Gadgets

# Getting Started


- Getting Started
  - Adding a Portable Gadget to a Web Page
    - Requirements
    - Before You Begin
    - Step 1: Reference dependency files
    - Step 2: Create Gadget 
    - Step 3: Initialize the Gadget
      - a) Preparing the settings
      - b) Initialize the gadget HTML element
    - Basic Page Example


## Adding a Portable Gadget to a Web Page

### Requirements

Setting up Portable Gadgets requires a ProVision instance URL and valid API credentials (API key and secret key), as well as some familiarity with HTML, CSS, and Javascript.

### Before You Begin

Before you begin, make sure you have access to the source code for the web page on which you want the portable gadget to appear, or create a simple new web page for testing purposes with minimal tags like this (with the location of steps included as comments):

```
<html>
        <head>
                <!-- STEP 1 WILL GO HERE -->

                <!-- STEP 3a WILL GO HERE -->
                <!-- STEP 3b WILL GO HERE -->
        </head>
        <body>
                <!-- STEP 2 WILL GO HERE -->
        </body>
</html>
```

### Step 1: Reference dependency files

Include the following two scripts the <HEAD> block. They should reference your provision installation.

In this example, "https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_123" is the root folder of a 6connect installation, so replace that with your own 6connect instance URL.

```
<script type='text/javascript' src="https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_123/portable/init.js"></script>
<link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" href="https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_123/portable/css/provision-
portable.css">
```

### Step 2: Create Gadget 

Place the html  tag for your gadget where you want it to appear in the page <body>, and give it a unique id.

Your gadget should be an html element in your page body (any contents inside the element will be removed). This example has a div referred to as "gadget" (as the ID).

```
<!-- provision gadget -->
<div id="gadget"></div>
```

# Step 3: Initialize the Gadget

## a) Preparing the settings

First, a settings variable must be prepared with the details of the gadget.

It must have the following keys for the provision url and api keys:

- provision_location
- provision_api_key
- provision_secret_key

...as well as the name of one of the gadget to load:

- search -- does a search with the global search API
- dhcp -- does a search with the DHCP API
- ipam -- does a search with the IPAM API
- pv-logs – details actions taken in ProVision.

Here is an example for a search gadget, loading with the search term "6connect". By default it will load up to five results per type.

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
var settings = {
provision_location: "https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_123",
provision_api_key: "00-ABCDEFGHIJKLMN00",
provision_secret_key: "00abcd11ef22ghij3300klmno123",

search: "6connect",
};
</script>
```

Here is an example to load as an IPAM gadget, with an option to limit results to 10 records:

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
var settings = {
provision_location: "https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_123",
provision_api_key: "00-ABCDEFGHIJKLMN00",
provision_secret_key: "00abcd11ef22ghij3300klmno123",

ipam: "6connect",
limit: 10
};
</script>
```

An example with the DHCP gadget:

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
var settings = {
provision_location: "https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_123",
provision_api_key: "00-ABCDEFGHIJKLMN00",
provision_secret_key: "00abcd11ef22ghij3300klmno123",

dhcp: "Test",
};
</script>
```

## b) Initialize the gadget HTML element

The gadget will initialize when scripted to do so with the provision() command. For the example html in section II, we can instantiate this gadget by running the following (as long as settings was prepared):

```
<script type='text/javascript'>
provision('#gadget', settings)
</script>
```

The first parameter targets the html element that is the gadget, using jQuery's selector format. In this case, it is an element with the ID "gadget".

## Basic Page Example

Here is a simple example html page with a search gadget. In this example, a default search term of "6connect" is included, and the return limited 10 records.

```
<html>
        <head>
                <script type='text/javascript' src="https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_123/portable/init.js"><
/script>
                <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" href="https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_123/portable/css
/provision-portable.css">
                <script type='text/javascript'>
                        var settings = {
                                provision_location: "https://cloud.6connect.com/6c_123",
                                provision_api_key: "00-ABCDEFGHIJKLMN00",
                                provision_secret_key: "00abcd11ef22ghij3300klmno123",

                                search: "6connect",
                                limit: 10
                        };
                        provision('#search_gadget', settings);
                </script>
        </head>
        <body>
                <div id="search_gadget"></div>
        </body>
</html>
```

# Portable Gadget Customization

## Customizing Portable Gadgets


- Customizing Portable Gadgets
- Customization Options
  - Required Settings:
  - Optional Settings:
- Sample CSS Customization
  - Alternating Row Formatting:


## Customization Options

Portable Gadgets come with both built-in customization options as well as the ability to edit styles locally through CSS.

### Required Settings:

The required fields are:

provision_location: the location of the provision installation
provision_api_key: available from the Admin API Tab in ProVision
provision_secret_key: available from the Admin API Tab in ProVision

Other required fields (by gadget)

Search:
  search: "string"
IPAM:
  ipam:  "string"
DHCP:
  dhcp:  "string"

Where, in each case, "string" is the search term used on the initial loading of the gadget. If it is an empty string (literally, ""), then gadget will load without a pre-defined search.

### Optional Settings:

These settings must be included as parameters when initializing the gadget. See Getting Started With Portable Gadgets.

limit:  positive integer, or -1

The record return limit of the gadget. In some gadgets (search and DHCP) there are multiple types, so it limits per type.  The default limit, if this option is not provided, is 5.  If you specify limit a -1 (or basically any negative number), it will not enforce a limit.

links_change_window:  true

setting this to true (not string "true" but actual true type in javascript) will make links change the current window. The default behavior (not having this option or false), would have links open a new tab.

interact:  false

By default, there will be a search box on all these gadgets. But with this option set to false (again, using false not string "false") will remove that box so search cannot be changed.

## Sample CSS Customization

## Alternating Row Formatting:

```
<style>
.pg-subtitle {
    color: lightslategrey;
    font-size:1.4em;
    font-weight: bold;
}

.pg-field-name a:hover {
    text-decoration: none;
    color: white;
    background-color: gray;
}

.pg-results tr:nth-child(2n+1) {
    background: white;
}
.pg-results tr:nth-child(2n+0) {
    background: lightgray;
}
</style>
```

# Reverse API

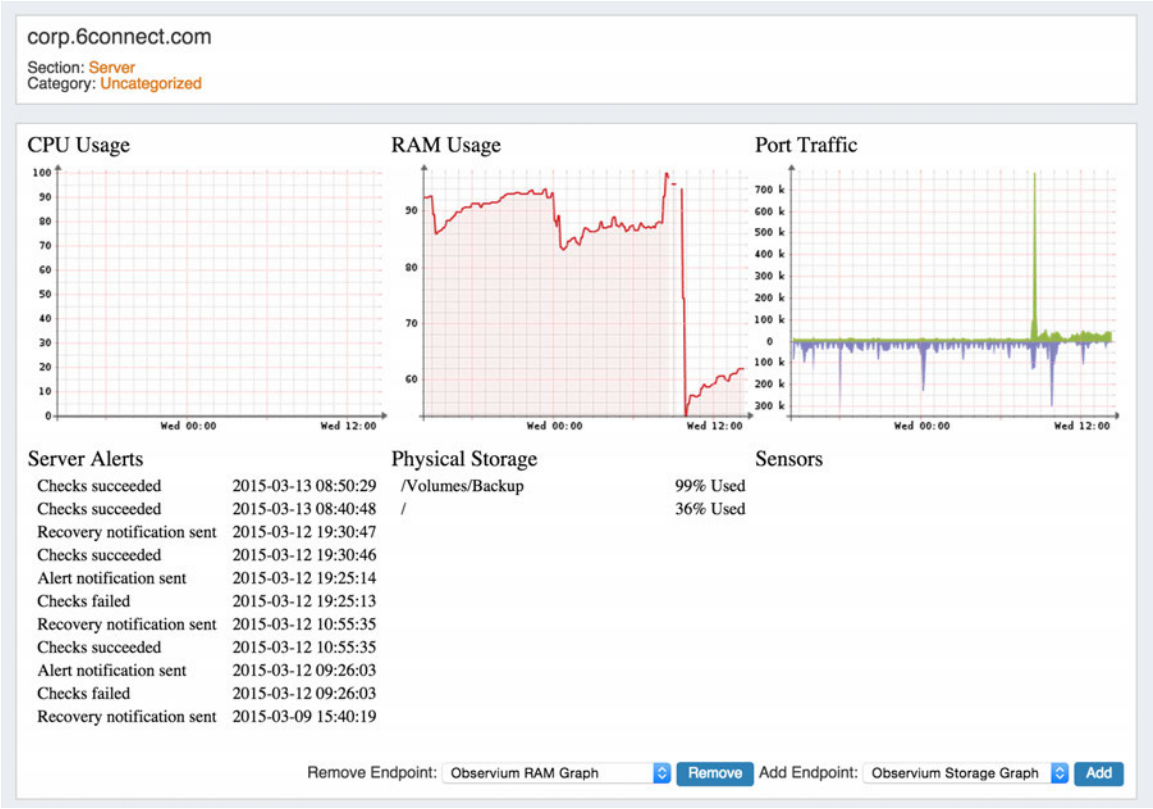
# Reverse API


- Reverse API
  - Overview
  - API Call Formatting
  - Reverse API Detail:


## Overview

**Reverse API Tools - Beta**

ProVision's Reverse API calls and UI elements allow for integration with outside APIs to improve workflow and create custom display content. In the ProVision user interface, the Reverse API page allows for endpoints to be built and provides a text editor to create presentation JavaScript commands. This JavaScript presentation code is then displayed in the Reverse API Gadget.




Using the ProVision Reverse API (rAPI), you can perform these same actions and customize to meet your specific needs outside of the ProVision UI.

## API Call Formatting

Reverse API (rAPI) calls are made to hit a user-defined URL or command line program. If the rAPI type is set to 'external,' the system makes a HTTP request. If the rAPI type is set to 'local', it executes the call on the command line of the local machine. In both cases the call is first customized with the attributes of the resource supplied to the execute function. This allows a single rAPI endpoint to serve a wide array of individual resources, fetching only information relevant to that particular resource without having to store anything locally.

rAPI calls are formatted thusly:

```
http://observium.tcp0.com/graph.php?
height=200&width=265&type=device_bits&legend=no&username=api&password=password&device={observium-id}
```

The interesting part about this URL is the bit in curly-braces: {observium-id}. When this call is made, the system decodes the URL by searching for everything within curly-braces and replaces it with data pulled from a resource. A rAPI call may have as many or as a few curly-brace replacement targets as is needed. Each curly-brace target will be replaced with exactly one resource attribute. All targets must be successfully replace for the command to succeed.

For example, when this rAPI call is decoded with information from the 1-dev resource, the decoded call is as follows:

```
http://observium.tcp0.com/graph.php?
height=200&width=265&type=device_bits&legend=no&username=api&password=password&device=21
```

The rAPI service then pulls the data from that URL, pairs it with its presentation code, and returns it via the execute endpoint. If a user attempted to execute the above call on a resource which did not have the “observium-id” property, the execute endpoint would return the following error: "Reverse API Call references token 'observium-id', which does not exist in resource."

All curly-brace calls reference a resource attribute by their unique resource slugs. The list of available resource attributes can be customized using the existing resource system endpoints.
Curly-brace targets may take the form {parent.observium-id}. The “parent.” prefix indicates that in decoding this particular brace, the attributes of the resource's parent are to be used.

## Reverse API Detail:

For detail on the Reverse API calls and parameters, proceed to Reverse API - Detail.

# Reverse API - Detail


- Reverse API Module
  - reverseAPI_add
  - reverseAPI_get
  - reverseAPI_delete
  - reverseAPI_update
  - reverseAPI_execute


# Reverse API Module

## reverseAPI_add

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=add |
| Description | Add a Reverse API Endpoint |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | performs ResourceAPI->Get operation to return the newly-created entry, thus will appear similar to a "Get" return:<br><br>{"success":1,"message":"Reverse API endpoint added","data":{"id":"1","name":"TestPoint2","type":"local"," created_by":"user","last_modified":"2015-04-01 12:24:57","call":"http:\/\/www.test.com?api.php"," presentation":null}} |
| ERROR | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| name | STRING | TestPoint2 | The name of the rAPI object |
| type | STRING | local | The type of the rAPI object. Valid settings are 'local' and 'external'. |
| call | STRING | http://www.test.com?api.php&server={serverId} | The URL or the system path which is first decoded against a resource and then hit when this rAPI endpoint is invoked. |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| presentation | STRING | endpoint = function(data, outputDiv) {console.log(outputDiv);}; | The Javascript code used to display this endpoint on a resource page. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=add&name=TestPoint2&type=local&call=http://www.test.com?api.php&server={serverId} |

## reverseAPI_get

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=get |
| Description | Fetches one or more Reverse API endpoints |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | An array of ReverseAPI objects:<br><br>{"id":"535","name":"Observium RAM Graph","type":"external","created_by":"user","last_modified":"2015-03-18 09:16:49","call":"http:\/\/observium.tcp0.com\/graph.php?height=200&width=265&type=device_ucd_memory&legend=no&username=api&password=password&device={observium-id}","presentation":"endpoint = function(data, outputDiv) {\n\n  outputDiv.css('font-family','Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;');\n\n\toutputDiv.append(\" RAM Usage<\/div>\");\n\n\tif (data == \"\") {\n\t\toutputDiv.append(\" No data returned<\/div>\");\n\t\treturn;\n\t}\n\n\toutputDiv.append('<div style=\"margin-left:-18px;margin-top:-3px;\"><img src=\"data:image\/png; base64,' + btoa(data) + '\" \/><\/div>');\n};"} |
| ERROR | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | The id of the rAPI objectSt |
| name | STRING | The name of the rAPI object |
| type | STRING | The type of the rAPI object |
| created_by | STRING | What user created the rAPI object |
| last_modified | DATETIME | When this rAPI object was last changed |
| call | STRING | The URL or the system path which is first decoded against a resource and then hit when this rAPI endpoint is invoked. |
| presentation | STRING | The Javascript code used to display this endpoint on a resource page. |

**Required Parameters**

None

**Optional Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 535 | The id of the rAPI objectSt |
| name | STRING | TestPoint2 | The name of the rAPI object |
| type | STRING | external | The type of the rAPI object. Valid settings are 'local' and 'external'. |
| created_by | STRING | user | The user who created the rAPI object |

**Example URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=get&name=TestPoint2

## reverseAPI_delete

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=delete |
| Description | Delete a rAPI endpoint |

**Returns**

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | {"success":1,"message":"Reverse API endpoint deleted"} |
| ERROR | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 535 | The id of the rAPI objectSt |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | name | STRING | TestPoint2 | The name of the rAPI object |
| Optional Parameters | None | | | |
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=delete&id=535&name=TestPoint2 | | | |

## reverseAPI_update

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=update |
| Description | Update an existing rAPI endpoint |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | ResourceAPI->Get updated object, thus will appear the same as a "Get" return:<br><br>{"id":"535","name":"Observium RAM Graph","type":"external","created_by":"user","last_modified":"2015-03-18 09:16:49","call":"http:\/\/observium.tcp0.com\/graph.php?height=200&width=265&type=device_ucd_memory&legend=no&username=api&password=password&device={observium-id}","presentation":"endpoint = function(data, outputDiv) {\n\n outputDiv.css('font-family','Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;');\n\n\toutputDiv.append(\" RAM Usage<\/div>\");\n\n\tif (data == \"\") {\n\t\toutputDiv.append(\" No data returned<\/div>\");\n\t\treturn;\n\t}\n\n\toutputDiv.append('<div style=\"margin-left:-18px;margin-top:-3px;\"><img src=\"data:image\/png; base64,' + btoa(data) + '\" \/><\/div>');\n};"} |
| ERROR | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

Required Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 535 | The id of the rAPI objectSt |

Optional Parameters

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| name | STRING | TestPoint2 | The name of the rAPI object |
| type | STRING | external | The type of the rAPI object. Valid settings are 'local' and 'external'. |
| call | STRING | http://www.test.com?api.php&server={serverId}&action=12 | The URL or the system path which is first decoded against a resource and then hit when this rAPI endpoint is invoked. |
| presentation | STRING | endpoint = function(data, outputDiv) {console.log (outputDiv);}; | The Javascript code used to display this endpoint on a resource page. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Example URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=update&id=535&name=TestPoint2 |

## reverseAPI_execute

| | |
|---|---|
| URL | /api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=execute |
| Description | Decodes a rAPI call against a Resource, executes the resulting string, returns the result along with the presentation code |
| Returns | **Examples:** |

| | |
|---|---|
| SUCCESSFUL | The result of a rAPI call customized for the supplied resource |

| | |
|---|---|
| | {“data”:”\u0017\u00fbD","presentation":"endpoint = function(data, outputDiv) {\n\n\toutputDiv.css('font-family','Helvetica, Arial, sans-serif;');\n\n\toutputDiv.append(\" Port Traffic<\/div>\");\n\n\tif (data == \"\") {\n\t\toutputDiv.append(\" No data returned<\/div>\");\n\t\treturn;\n\t}\n\n\toutputDiv.append('<div style=\"margin-left:-15px;margin-top:-3px;\"><img src=\"data:image\/png; base64,' + btoa(data) + '\" \/><\/div>');\n};"}} |
| ERROR | {"success":0, "message":"error message"} |

**Return Detail:**

| Name | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| data | MIXED | The result of the reverse API call. Could be binary data, could be JSON. |
| presentation | STRING | The presentation javascript which pairs with this rAPI call |

**Required Parameters**

| Name | Type | Example | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | INTEGER | 537 | The id of the rAPI objectSt |
| resource_id | INTEGER | 2245 | ID of the resource |

**Optional Parameters**

None

**Example URL**

/api/v1/api.php?target=reverseAPI&action=execute&id=537&resource_id=2245

# Toolkit

# Toolkit Modules

6connect provides customers with additional CLI modules for ProVision power users in the /tools directory. These tools are outlined below.


- Toolkit Modules
  - Users / Permissions
    - Add User
    - Rebuild Permissions
  - DNS
    - Audit Forward DNS
    - Audit Reverse DNS
  - Database
    - Database Analyzer
    - Database Reset
  - Import
    - IPPlan Importer:
    - PHPIPAM Importer:
  - Internal 6connect Tools
  - Additional Information:


## Users / Permissions

### Add User

**File:** add-user.php

**Description:** Adds a new user to 6connect Provision. Especially useful if an admin has locked themselves out and has access to the local server, or for adding additional credentials to a new local installation. The tool walks through the required information.

**Command:** “php add-user.php"

### Rebuild Permissions

**File:** rebuild-permissions.php

**Description:** Will rebuild the cached permissions for the specified resource id. Should not be used outside of a db reset, or a corruption of the permissions cache.

**Command:** “php rebuild-permissions.php"

## DNS

### Audit Forward DNS

**File:** audit_forward_dns.php

**Description:** Audits the forward DNS for a specified IP block, comparing the DNS records in 6connect to a publicly facing server. Will provide detail output showing resolved records, if records conflict and why.

**Command:** “php audit_forward_dns.php”

**Options:**

-v Sets verbose mode to print debug information

-a <message key> run as asycronous request (note: you should not use this, it is for the GUI)

-b <ip block> IP block in cird notation to audit dns for.

-n <name server> FQDN or IP address of specific name server to resolve records against. Defaults to 8.8.8.8.

-h print help

## Audit Reverse DNS

**File:** audit_reverse_dns.php

**Description:** Audits the reverse DNS for a specified IP block, comparing the DNS records in 6connect to a publicly facing server. Will provide detail output showing resolved records, if records conflict and why.

**Command:** "php audit_reverse_dns.php"

**Options:**

-v Sets verbose mode to print debug information

-a <message key> run as asycronous request (note: you should not use this, it is for the GUI)

-b <ip block> IP block in cird notation to audit dns for.

-n <name server> FQDN or IP address of specific name server to resolve records against. Defaults to 8.8.8.8.

-h print help

# Database

## Database Analyzer

**File:** databaseAnalyzer.php

**Description:** Takes two MySQL dump files for input, one thought to be the “good” database, and one the “bad” to compare against each other for differences. Is used internally to audit database changes after an upgrade to ensure all changes for the upgrade were committed by comparing against the template database for that release. Can be useful for diagnosing missed upgrades, or other database issues. Could be used on any set of databases, and is not 6connect specific.

**Command:** "php databaseAnalyzer.php"

**Options:**

-v Sets verbose mode to print debug information

-a <database name> Required - the 'good' database to comapre against.

-b <database name> Required - the 'bad' database to check for incorrect information.

-g <globals file> Optional - The script will automatically look to the globals.php file for database connection information. This option can be used to specify and alternate file, or file location.

-h print help

### Database Reset

**File:** dbReset.php

**Description:** This tool resets portions or all of the database to factory defaults. Can reset only IP, DNS, or Resource information or all all three. If erasing resource information, you need to enter a user to assume global admin permission to log back in with. Even if this isn’t specified, the add-user tool can be used to add a user back after. We recommend creating a backup prior to using this tool, and only use if you are sure you know what you are doing!

**Command:**"php dbReset.php"

**Options:**

-v Sets verbose mode to print debug information

-i Erases any and all IP information. Tags, regions, and other IPAM preference settings are not changed.

-d Erases any and all DNS information including zones, records, and archive data. Does not affect DNS perference settings, or configured DNS servers.

-r Resets all resource information back to the factory defaults, and removes all associated information (user groups, files, etc).

-u <user name> User name that will have Global Admin permissions restored on the default resources

-h print help

# Import

## IPPlan Importer:

**File:** ipplan_import.php

**Description:** The IPPlan Importer is a command-line tool to import IPs from an IPPlan database into ProVision. Details on how to use this tool are available at IPPlan Importer.

**Command:** "php ipplan_import.php"

**Options:**

For options, refer to IPPlan Importer.

## PHPIPAM Importer:

**File:** phpipam_import.php

**Description:** Generates a CSV or imports data from a phpipam instance

**Command:** "php phpipam_import.php"

**Options:** Contact 6connect Support if you have any questions

# Internal 6connect Tools

The following tools contained in the /tools folder are for 6connect internal use only:

**File:** scp_wrapper.php - Internal 6connect tool, not meant for command line use.

**File:** s64_restart_master - Internal 6connect tool, not meant for command line use.

**File:** s64_restart_slave - Internal 6connect tool, not meant for command line use.

**File:** async_import.php - Internal 6connect tool, not meant for command line use.

**File:** importBigDump.php - Internal 6connect tool supporting IPPlan Importer, not meant for command line use.

**File:** ipplan_functions.php - Internal 6connect tool supporting IPPlan Importer, not meant for command line use.

**File:** dns_transfer_server.php - Internal 6connect tool, not meant for command line use.

**File:** observium_import.php - Internal 6connect tool, not meant for command line use.

**File:** digAndLookup.php

**File:** pullLAMPInfo.php

## Additional Information:

- IPPlan Importer

# IPPlan Importer

# IPPlan Importer


- IPPlan Importer
  - Overview
  - Before you begin:
  - Connector Method (Results in .csv files only):
  - Importer Method (Results in full import):
    - Run & Set the RIR:
  - Additional Run Options:
    - Load SQL Without Importing
    - Generate CSV Without Loading SQL
    - Generate CSV No Overwrite
    - Generate CSV With RIR
    - Run Only Import
    - Run Import No Overwrite


## Overview

The IPPlan Importer is a command-line tool to import IPs from an IPPlan database into ProVision. This tool can be used via two approaches: generating .csv files via the tool only, then using the ProVision IP Import UI to import the csv files (Connector), or as a full command-line import solution, bypassing the ProVision UI entirely (Importer).

**Options:**

1) Generate .csv files to use with the IP Import - Upload/Import from CSV tool through the ProVision UI.

2) Import IPs directly into ProVision without accessing the UI.

## Before you begin:

**You will need:**

- A MySQL export of IPPlan created from mysqldump, located on the same server / accessible from the IPPlan Importer tool.
- Administrative access to your ProVision instance folder

**Accessing the Tool and Showing Help Instructions:**

The tool is located in tools/ipplan_import.php. A help document is provided listing example commands and detailed situation-specific options.

To execute it, you must preface it with "php" program. From from your instance's root folder, the command would be:

"php tools/ipplan_import.php --help"

If you are in the tools folder, the command would be:

"php ipplan_import.php --help"

This will bring up the help / instruction document. It is also provided below.

**Help File Text**

```
usage: php ipplan_import.php [options] <SQL dump file>

Examples:

For creating CSV's for use in ProVision IP importer:
    php ipplan_import.php filename.SQL --csv

For creating CSV's, but do not load SQL file if one already has been:

    php ipplan_import.php filename.SQL --csv --no-overwrite
```

```
For importing data from SQL dump. Note that you must specify RIR:
    php ipplan_import.php filename.SQL --rir=1918

For importing data from SQL dump, if one hasn't been loaded already:
    php ipplan_import.php filename.SQL --rir=1918 --no-overwrite

Caution: By default, SQL dump will be loaded into database 'provision_import_ipplan'. If database already
exists it will be dropped, unless --no-overwrite option is specified.

options:

  --only-import - Skip loading SQL file. Instead, import existing data in database 'provision_import_ipplan'.

  --only-sql - Load SQL dump into database 'provision_import_ipplan'. --only-import can be run at a later
time to use loaded database.

  --rir=RIR - (required for import) RIR for IP's

  OPTIONS IF LOADING SQL FILE:

  --no-overwrite - Load SQL dump only if database 'provision_import_ipplan' is currently non-existent.
Otherwise, drop existing database.

  OPTIONS IF IMPORTING DATA:

  --csv - generate CSV's instead of importing directly to ProVision.
```

# Connector Method (Results in .csv files only):

This method creates .csv files that you can use with the IP Import - Upload/Import from CSV tool through the ProVision UI.

1. From the tools/ folder, run the tool with the --csv option. Be sure to reference your sql export file name and location:

   "php ipplan_import.php ../ipplanv6.sql --csv"

   (where '../ipplanv6.sql' is the path to your SQL file)
   This will generate two files: ipplan_aggregates.csv and ipplan_hosts.csv. Both can be used to import in the IP import section of ProVision.
2. Copy / Download the generated .csv files to a browsable directory on your local machine, to be accessed by the ProVision UI.
3. Through the ProVision UI, import the ipplan_aggregates.csv file as described in IP Import - Upload/Import from CSV.
4. Through the ProVision UI, import the ipplan_hosts.csv file as described in IP Import - Upload/Import from CSV.

Note that you must import ipplan_aggregates first. into IP Import - Upload/Import from CSV to create the aggregates ipplan_hosts.csv will use.
Then, import ipplan_hosts.csv as described in IP Import - Upload/Import from CSV.

# Importer Method (Results in full import):

This method has the tool process the import task. Using this case, you must set the RIR in the command line for all of the IP's.

## Run & Set the RIR:

1. From the tools/ folder, run the tool with the --rir option, referencing your SQL file location:

   "php ipplan_import.php ../ipplanv6.sql --rir=1918"
   (where '../ipplanv6.sql' is the path to your SQL file)

This will load your IPPlan database file into your mysql server and then import the hosts into ProVision. They will each be given the RIR you specified, as well as this text in the Notes field: 'IPPlan import'

The import may need to run for a number of minutes, depending on the size of your data. For reference, an import of 2100 hosts inside of 150 aggregates took approximately 10 minutes to complete during our testing.

# Additional Run Options:

Additional run options for various combination of conditions are detailed below. The command is the text within the quotes only.

## Load SQL Without Importing

You can load the SQL file, but NOT run an import, with the --only-sql option (feel free to include --no-overwrite option as well in case you don't want to overwrite a prior loaded SQL file):

"ipplan_import.php  ../ipplanv6.sql --only-sql"

"ipplan_import.php  ../ipplanv6.sql --only-sql --no-overwrite"

## Generate CSV Without Loading SQL

If you have already loaded the sql file previously, you can generate CSV files without having to load the SQL file:

"ipplan_import.php  --only-import --csv"

### Generate CSV No Overwrite

If you want to just generate CSV files without re-loading the database file, you can as well:

"ipplan_import.php  ../ipplanv6.sql --no-overwrite --csv"

### Generate CSV With RIR

You can also generate csv files with the rir option:

"ipplan_import.php  ../ipplanv6.sql --no-overwrite --csv --rir=1918"

### Run Only Import

If you have already loaded your IPPlan database with the tool before, you can do --only-import:

"php ipplan_import.php --rir=1918 --only-import"

### Run Import No Overwrite

If you are not sure whether you have already loaded your IPPlan database with the tool before, you can specify --no-overwrite to NOT load the sql file if it was loaded already, or do load if it wasn't:

"ipplan_import.php  ../ipplanv6.sql --rir=1918 --no-overwrite"

# CLI (Alpha)

# Command Line Interface - ALPHA


- Command Line Interface - ALPHA
  - Overview
  - CLI Commands (ALPHA)


## Overview

The command line interface for ProVision is a beta feature that has been release for feedback.

How to Access the CLI from your browser

When logged into ProVision via a web browser, use the key combination "**Control+Shift+S**" or "**Control+Shift+~**" to access/close the CLI

## CLI Commands (ALPHA)

CLI Help

When in the CLI, type:

```
ipam man
```

for sample commands and syntax

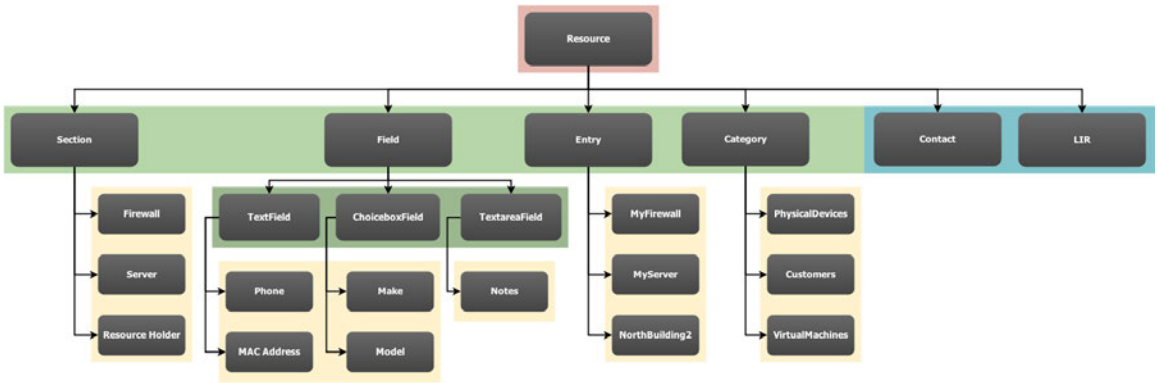
Currently, the CLI supports the following commands:

```
ipam <command> [-t] [<cidr>] [<resource name>] [<args>]

    show:     show details for a block. Examples:

                  - "ipam show 10.0.0.0/8" will show details for the block 10.0.0.0/8

                  - "ipam show holding" will show details for all blocks in the Holding Tank

                  - "ipam show "<resource name>"" will show details for all blocks assigned to <resource
name>


    add:      add a block. ex: "ipam add 192.168.0.0/24"


    update:   update attributes for a block. ex: ipam update 192.168.0.0/24 --vlan=100 tags=VM,Dev


    assign:   assign a block to a resource. ex: ipam assign 192.168.0.0/24 "<resource name>"


    assign:   smart assign a block to a resource. ex: ipam assign --mask=24 --rir=ARIN --type=ipv4
"<resource name>"


    unassign: reclaims a block from a resource and places it in the Holding Tank. If the block is already in
the holding tank, reclaims it an makes it available.
```

# Resource Concepts 1

## Overview

In Provision, the Resource System (RS) is an expression of object-oriented programming. In this context, the term “resource” is equivalent to the term “object”, where an object is an instance of a class. Traditionally in OOP, there is an Object class that is the root of the class hierarchy. In the RS, the Resource class is the root class. Every class in the system has Resource as a superclass and all resource objects implement the methods of that class.




The diagram above shows examples of resource sub-types. The items on a green or blue background are types of resources; they each have their own corresponding Class. An item on a yellow background is an example of an object that could have been instantiated from the class (resource type) that it's part of.

### Additional Information:

- Resource Classes
- The Database Layout
- Asset System

# Resource Classes Doc

# Classes

> "A class--the basic building block of an object-oriented language such as Java--is a template that describes the data and behavior associated with instances of that class. When you instantiate a class you create an object that looks and feels like other instances of the same class."
>
> *Mary Campione and Kathy Walrath, The Java Tutorial: Object-Oriented Programming for the Internet, The Java Series (Reading, Mass.: Addison Wesley, 1996)*


- Classes
  - Class Resource
    - Properties
  - Examples
    - 1 - PHP
    - 2 - API request


## Class Resource

```
class Resource {
    public int    $id;
    public string $name;
    public string $slug;
    public string $type;
    public int    $parent_id;
    public int    $category_id;

    protected array $attr   = array();
    protected bool  $loaded = FALSE;

    public object get_attr( string $key );
    public void   set_attr( string $key, object $value );
    public bool   loaded();
}
```

### Properties

As you can see from the database layout, the public properties of the Resource class are all part of the main **resource** table. The two protected properties **attr** and **loaded** are created at runtime. There are many situations where only the core information is required. To improve performance, attribute data is ignored when it is not required. Attributes are stored in the database as longtext; non-primitive types (such as arrays) are serialized and stored as a string.

```
$attr
A key-value store of the attributes that exist in the resource_attr table.

$loaded
A boolean value which is used to indicate whether or not the attributes have been loaded.
```

**Why do some attributes have names that start with an underscore?**

This is the convention for storing metadata. Most attributes are for storing data that is created by the user and is available to be directly edited by the user. When we want to store system data, configuration options, or just data that isn't meant for human consumption - we store it as metadata. An attribute is identified as being metadata by the convention of starting the name/key of the attribute with an underscore character (e. g. _meta). If you are interfacing with the API, you will frequently come across metadata. You're welcome to modify the metadata of a resource (if you know what you're doing) or add metadata attributes for known metadata keys, but you shouldn't create your own attributes with keys that begin with an underscore. Future versions of ProVision will use new metadata keys without warning, and if there is a naming conflict, your data could be lost.

# Examples

These examples show the different methods that can be used to find and load a Resource object. They also show different data structures that are used to represent the object.

## 1 - PHP

Internal code example

To help users better understand how ProVision works, some of the examples in this documentation are of internal processes. They can contain code that only works when used as part of the core system and thus is not applicable to 3rd party development. The API is currently the only way for external tools to integrate with ProVision. Any example that contains internal code should be clearly labeled. Some common characteristics of these examples are  code that doesn't use the API and code written in PHP (most example code will be in JavaScript).

This example uses the ResourceQuery class to find a resource object and then prints the result. It is included to show the similarity between finding a resource via the API and what happens under the hood.

```
$params = array(
    'slug' => 'tlr'
);
$resourceQuery = new ResourceQuery();
$resource = $resourceQuery->query($params);

var_dump($resource);
/*
array (size=1)
  0 =>
    object(Resource)[27]
      protected 'id' => string '1' (length=1)
      protected 'name' => string 'TLR' (length=3)
      protected 'slug' => string 'tlr' (length=3)
      protected 'type' => string 'resource' (length=8)
      protected 'parent_id' => null
      protected 'category_id' => null
      protected 'attr' =>
        array (size=0)
          empty
      protected 'loaded' => boolean true
*/
```

## 2 - API request

This is a standard API request, the request data is urlencoded and the result is JSON

**/api/v1/api.php?target=resource&action=get&slug=TLR**

```
{
  "success": 1,
  "message": "Search successful",
  "data": [
    {
      "id": "1",
      "name": "TLR",
      "slug": "tlr",
      "type": "resource",
      "parent_id": null,
      "category_id": null,
      "attr": {}
    }
  ]
}
```

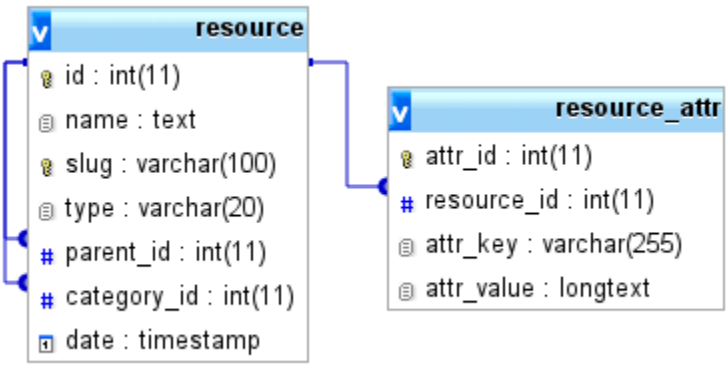
# Database Layout 1

# Database Layout

Details of the database and tables used by the RS are not necessary and should have no bearing on usage or API based development. However, a visualization of these tables may help some users better understand how the RS works, so they are provided below.


- Database Layout
  - Figure
  - Relations
  - Structure in SQL


## Figure




## Relations

`resource`.`category_id` -> `resource`.`id`

`resource`.`parent_id` -> `resource`.`id`

`resource_attr`.`resource_id` -> `resource`.`id`

## Structure in SQL

**resource**

```
--
-- Table structure for table `resource`
--
CREATE TABLE IF NOT EXISTS `resource` (
`id` int(11) NOT NULL,
  `name` text NOT NULL,
  `slug` varchar(100) NOT NULL,
  `type` varchar(20) NOT NULL,
  `parent_id` int(11) DEFAULT NULL,
  `category_id` int(11) DEFAULT NULL,
  `date` timestamp NOT NULL DEFAULT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
) ENGINE=InnoDB  DEFAULT CHARSET=utf8 AUTO_INCREMENT=1115 ;
--
-- RELATIONS FOR TABLE `resource`:
--   `category_id`
--       `resource` -> `id`
--   `parent_id`
```

```
--       `resource` -> `id`
--
--
-- Indexes for dumped tables
--
--
-- Indexes for table `resource`
--
ALTER TABLE `resource`
 ADD PRIMARY KEY (`id`), ADD UNIQUE KEY `slug` (`slug`), ADD KEY `category_id` (`category_id`), ADD KEY
`parent_id` (`parent_id`);
--
-- AUTO_INCREMENT for dumped tables
--
--
-- AUTO_INCREMENT for table `resource`
--
ALTER TABLE `resource`
MODIFY `id` int(11) NOT NULL AUTO_INCREMENT,AUTO_INCREMENT=1115;
--
-- Constraints for dumped tables
--
--
-- Constraints for table `resource`
--
ALTER TABLE `resource`
ADD CONSTRAINT `resource_ibfk_1` FOREIGN KEY (`category_id`) REFERENCES `resource` (`id`) ON DELETE SET NULL
ON UPDATE CASCADE,
ADD CONSTRAINT `resource_ibfk_2` FOREIGN KEY (`parent_id`) REFERENCES `resource` (`id`) ON DELETE SET NULL
ON UPDATE CASCADE;
```

**resource_attr**

```
--
-- Table structure for table `resource_attr`
--
CREATE TABLE IF NOT EXISTS `resource_attr` (
`attr_id` int(11) NOT NULL,
  `resource_id` int(11) NOT NULL,
  `attr_key` varchar(255) NOT NULL,
  `attr_value` longtext NOT NULL
) ENGINE=InnoDB  DEFAULT CHARSET=utf8 AUTO_INCREMENT=6744 ;
--
-- RELATIONS FOR TABLE `resource_attr`:
--   `resource_id`
--       `resource` -> `id`
--
--
-- Indexes for dumped tables
--
--
-- Indexes for table `resource_attr`
--
ALTER TABLE `resource_attr`
 ADD PRIMARY KEY (`attr_id`), ADD KEY `item_id` (`resource_id`);
--
-- AUTO_INCREMENT for dumped tables
--
--
-- AUTO_INCREMENT for table `resource_attr`
--
ALTER TABLE `resource_attr`
MODIFY `attr_id` int(11) NOT NULL AUTO_INCREMENT,AUTO_INCREMENT=6744;
--
-- Constraints for dumped tables
--
--
-- Constraints for table `resource_attr`
--
ALTER TABLE `resource_attr`
ADD CONSTRAINT `resource_attr_ibfk_1` FOREIGN KEY (`resource_id`) REFERENCES `resource` (`id`) ON DELETE
CASCADE ON UPDATE CASCADE;
```

# Asset System

# The Asset System

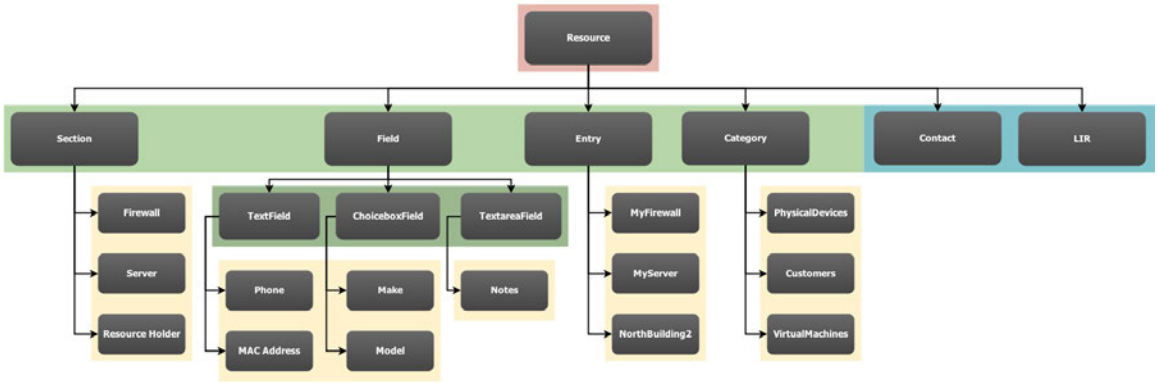

- The Asset System
  - Prerequisites
  - Overview
  - Introduction
  - Components
    - Section
    - Entry
    - Field
    - Category
    - Gadgets


## Prerequisites

Some knowledge of object orientated programming (OOP) is recommend to understand the following description of the Asset System. If you are unfamiliar with OOP concepts, I would recommend reading a tutorial such as this one (http://docs.oracle.com/javase/tutorial/java/concepts/index.html) provided by Oracle or this one (http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ca22fyhc(v=vs.90).aspx) provided by Microsoft, to help you understand terms like class, object, instantiate, property, method, and others.

## Overview

The asset system is a content management system (CMS) that is built as an extension to the resource system. It's the main use of the resource system, and to many, the terms "asset system" and "resource system" can seem synonymous. In the diagram below, the Resource class is at the top in red. The child-classes that make up the asset system are in green. Yellow is used for examples of objects (not classes) that could/would have been instantiated from their Class. And the items in blue are examples of resource child-classes (resource types) that exist outside of the asset system.




## Introduction

When writing software, the developer creates classes. A class is like a blueprint for objects. The class defines the properties and methods that the future objects will have, and like blueprints, multiple objects can be created from a single class. The Resource Class is a class, and each resource "type" (e.g. Section, Field, Contact, ect.) has a class, something which has been written in core code and cannot be changed by the user. The purpose of the asset system is to reproduce this fundamental low-level class-object system in such a way that the user can create their own classes, properties, methods, and objects without needing to dive into the code.

# Components

## Section

Sections are like classes, they are the templates/blueprints of the asset system. To create the structure of the blueprint, the user assigns fields (i.e. properties) and sometimes gadgets (i.e. methods) to the section.

## Entry

Entries are the objects of the asset system. An entry cannot be created without a section to use as its blueprint. Creating an entry from a section is like instantiating an object from a class.

## Field

Fields are the properties of the class. Field has its own child-classes; this is to accommodate the different types of fields. For example, when creating a class *Car*, the developer might give the *Car* class the property *String color*. In a similar fashion, a user of the Asset System could create a Section called *Truck*, a TextField called *color*, and then assign that textfield to the section. When the user goes to create an entry from the section *Truck*, they'll be given the option to include a text value for the field *color*.

Fields also have a use beyond acting as properties for classes. The field object (in this case *color*) is a resource object in it's own right. This means it can be modified independently of the sections that have assigned it and the entries that are using it. For example, a field which shows a dropdown box of several options could be modified to include more options; any entry which is using that field would automatically receive those new changes. Or consider a simple textfield object called "MAC Address" that is used by several sections and entries. If that field was modified to include a filter that checks the input for a valid MAC string, any entry using that field would get those improved validation checks.

Also, because the same field object can be assigned to multiple sections, it's easier to find entries by their values because they're all using the exact same field object. The alternative would have to be a blind text search to try and find different objects but with contextually similar values, and that method is notoriously unreliable.**This is why it's encouraged to assign the same field object to different sections as opposed to just making new fields each time.**

Fields are like what you might call class properties or class variables, but they've also got a lot more functionality available for when you need it.

## Category

Categories are just an organizational tool. There is a clearly defined relationship between Sections, Entries, and Fields, but Categories exist on their own. If you look on the Classes page, you'll see that every Resource has the same 6 fundamental properties and 3 of them are ID values. The first is the ID that belongs to the resource itself, the second is the ID of the resource's parent, and the third is the ID of the Category that the resource belongs to (if any). There isn't a strict hierarchy here, how you use categories is entirely up to you. You can create categories, child categories, and careful plan exactly how you want the resources in your system to be organized. Or you can ignore the whole thing completely and just let every resource have the default category of "uncategorized." Many user find that the ability to create hierarchal parent-child relationships with entries, and then filter down results even further by Section, leaves the use of Categories unnecessary. But if you want to use them, it's there.

## Gadgets

Gadgets are not resources, which is why they're not included in the chart at the top of the page. Gadgets are self contained applications and are limited to only using HTML, CSS, and JavaScript. All they know about the page that they're loaded on is the ID of the resource. However, because gadgets can interact with the API via JavaScript/AJAX, they're the perfect way to add new features to the asset system in a maintainable and modular way. At it's core, the asset system just allows users to create entries and then modify their text based attributes through a simple form. The ability for gadgets (such as the IPAM-Gadget) to interact with the API, is what makes the asset system so powerful.

Currently, the only gadgets that can be assigned to sections are gadgets that have been created by 6Connect. However our API is robust enough that almost anything you can do through ProVision could be recreated in the form of an isolated gadget. And because they're just made from html and javascript, it shouldn't be too strenuous for anyone to write a gadget of their own. If you want to create your own gadgets, it would be recommended to email us first with an outline of what you're trying to do. Then the recommended procedure would be to first create it as a standalone HTML/Javascript webpage that connects to our API (you may need to disable cross domain request security in your browser to make the AJAX connections work). Once you have your standalone page working, the process to turn that into an embeddable gadget is trivial.

Note: Gadgets are initialized as AngularJS applications. Both the AngularJS and jQuery libraries will be loaded on the page and available to use, but it is highly recommend to make the entire gadget in the form of an AngularJS app. But as noted above, it's best to contact us first so we can help you in the right direction.

# Help & Support

# Help & Support

For setup assistance or additional information, you can contact our support team at support@6connect.com.

For tutorials, frequently asked questions, feedback, or additional resources such as import templates and previous documentation versions, please follow the links listed below.

## Table of Contents


- Tutorials
- FAQ
- Additional Resources
- Feedback and Feature Requests

# Tutorials

# Tutorials

Here we have grouped together video tutorials for various tasks and UI components. We link to these in the Getting Started area in the documentation, but you can also browse them individually depending on your needs. If you have suggestions for content - please send them to support@6connect.com.

## Table of Contents


- Common Tasks
- UI Tours

# Common Tasks

Here is a list of shortcuts to walkthroughs and information on performing common tasks in ProVision:

## IPAM

**IP Blocks**

Adding/Editing blocks

Aggregating/Splitting blocks

SWIP configuration and use

RPSL configuration and use

**IP Import**

Import Aggregate Blocks

IP Import from CSV

## DNS

**Importing DNS Data**

Import DNS Zones:

BIND DNS Zone Upload / Import

PowerDNS Zone Import

## Peering

**Peering Common Tasks**

Adding routers

Adding sessions

Importing sessions

## Resources

**Importing Resource Data**

Resource Import from CSV

Resource Importer Walkthrough

# UI Tours


- General
  - Getting to know ProVision: First Steps - Part1
    - ProVision v5.1.x
  - Getting to know ProVision: First Steps - Part2
    - ProVision v5.1.x
- Administration
  - Admin Preferences Page Overview
    - ProVision v6.0.x
    - Previous Versions:
    - ProVision v5.1.x
  - Managing Group and User Permissions
    - ProVision v5.1.x
  - DNS BIND Zone Importing
    - ProVision v5.1.x


## General

### Getting to know ProVision: First Steps - Part1

#### ProVision v5.1.x

### Getting to know ProVision: First Steps - Part2

#### ProVision v5.1.x

## Administration

### Admin Preferences Page Overview

#### ProVision v6.0.x

#### Previous Versions:

#### ProVision v5.1.x

### Managing Group and User Permissions

#### ProVision v5.1.x

# DNS BIND Zone Importing

## ProVision v5.1.x

# FAQ

# FAQ

From the command line in your ProVision instance, you can get a manual SQL backup using the following way:

```
mysqldump -uUSER -pPASSWORD DATABASE > bkup.sql
```

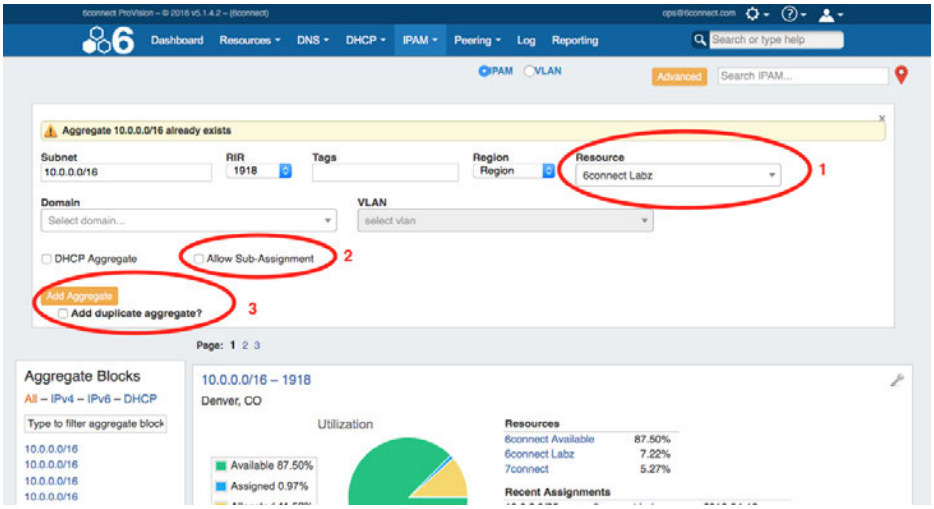
You can get the values for USER, PASSWORD, and DATABASE by reading them from the following file:

```
[ProVision Root]/data/globals.php
```

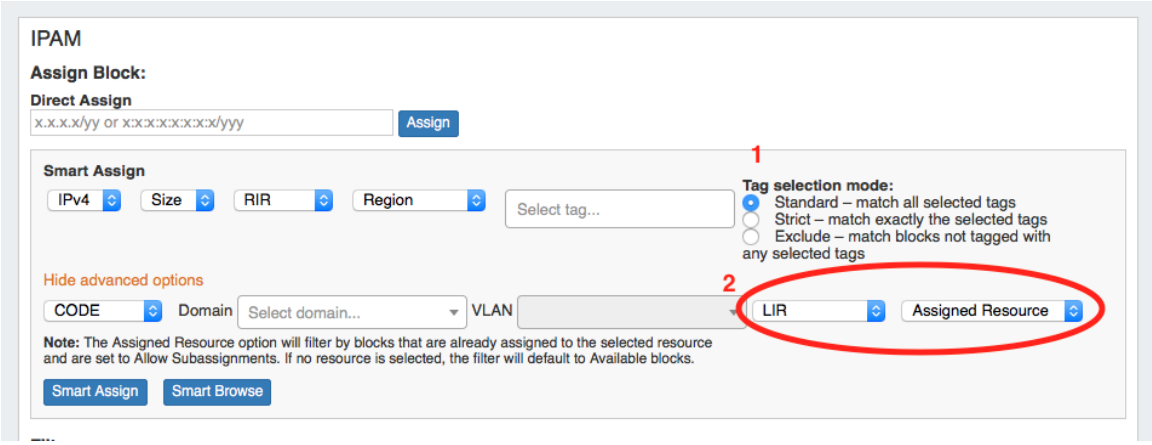
An example of a completed command:

```
mysqldump -uroot -p6connect_DBPSWD qa_5_1_5 > bkup.sql
```

You can then use this .sql file to restore the old version should you need to revert the installation.
When managing duplicate/overlapping IP ranges withing ProVision, there are several methods you can use to ensure that blocks are "unique" and still leverage functions like Smart Assign. The easiest approach is to use metadata for the aggregate (LIR, Region, Resource, etc.). From the ProVision GUI, you can use the "Add Aggregate" function on the IPAM tab (image below) to add a duplicate aggregate. By assigning the new Aggregate to a Resource (#1) you will tie the block and a Resource together. You most likely wish to make assignments out of this new aggregate, so you can enable subassignments (#2) before adding the aggregate (#3).




Now the block will be assigned to a Resource, and you can still provision smaller blocks out of these duplicate parent blocks. When using the IPAM gadget from the Resource screen, just go the Advanced section and you will have more options available for assigning IP data. If you have "strict" enabled, your Smart Assign function should work as expected when you use the LIR or Assigned Resource fields for blocks.




Yes - in DNS Admin, simple specify the DNS Servers like normal and then attach the zones as needed with the desired SOA.
The users list includes a "system user" that is only used by ProVision internally in the application.
In the case when a user already has SWIPped blocks to ARIN, 6connect checks prior to actually performing a SWIP. In the process, if the IP block is already SWIPped, it will check for existing ARIN customer data and update the 6connect data to reflect what ARIN has on file. Once that is complete, the user can then perform a de-SWIP function using ProVision.
When you make an API request to assign a block, if the block is already assigned to another resource, you will receive an error. If your process is to search for and then assign blocks, the Smart Assign API call may be very helpful. That call combines the search and assignment into one action.
Please make sure that URL rewriting is enabled in your instance (apache mod_rewrite)
In some legacy instances we have seen zone record-view linkages come out of alignment and result in unexpected behavior.

BACKUP YOUR DATABASE

⚠️
Please note that the following mysql commands modify your database! Please take a backup copy of your database before performance any database modifications.

First, verify the error with the following mysql commands:

```
SELECT count(*) FROM `zone_server_linkage` as t1
INNER JOIN `records` as t2 ON t1.`zoneid` = t2.`zone_id`
INNER JOIN `dns_views` as t3 ON t1.`serverid` = t3.`server_id` AND
`name` = '_6connectDefault'
LEFT JOIN `dns_view_record_linkage` as t4 ON t2.`id` = t4.`record_id`
AND t3.`id` = t4.`view_id`
WHERE t4.`id` IS NULL;
```

If the reply comes back non-zero, then your database is most likely exhibiting unexpected behavior.

The following mysql commands will re-align all the record-view linkages:

```
INSERT INTO `dns_view_record_linkage` SELECT '', t2.`id` as `record_id`,
t3.`id` as `view_id` FROM `zone_server_linkage` as t1
INNER JOIN `records` as t2 ON t1.`zoneid` = t2.`zone_id`
INNER JOIN `dns_views` as t3 ON t1.`serverid` = t3.`server_id` AND
`name` = '_6connectDefault'
LEFT JOIN `dns_view_record_linkage` as t4 ON t2.`id` = t4.`record_id`
AND t3.`id` = t4.`view_id`
WHERE t4.`id` IS NULL;
```

Contact support(support@6connect.com) if you have any additional questions or this does not resolve the issue.

To create a reserved pool of IP space, you can create a Section called "Reserved", add the IPAM gadget to it, then create an Entry with that Section to be the address group. From there, use the IPAM gadget and the IPAM Manage page to assign and unassign IP space from that pool.

The workflow for this would be:

1. Assign IP space to the "Reserved" Section.
2. When you are ready to pull space from "Reserved", unassign the desired block. This moves it to the holding tank.
3. Override the holding tank to make the space "available". This can be done in the IPAM manager via the "Override Holding" wrench option, or a manual 'pull out of holding' API call.
4. Assign the block to the desired Resource.

Depending on your version of ProVision, you may need both steps. Edit the file <6connect web root>/data/globals.php and:

1) Change the $hostname variable to the new value

2) Change the $base_url to the new value

Please note that you may also need to update the SSL certs, httpd settings, etc.

# Additional Resources

- Import Templates
- List of Abbreviations

# Import Templates

# Import Templates

## Downloadable Import Templates

Below you can find  CSV templates for uploading Resource, Contact and IP data.

For DNS Import examples and a walkthrough, visit the DNS Import page.

| File | Modified |
|---|---|
| File IP-import-sample_v1.csv | Feb 21, 2017 by The Force |
| File import-zone-assign.csv | Feb 21, 2017 by The Force |
| Text File customer-import-sample.csv | Feb 21, 2017 by The Force |
| File contact-import-sample_v1.csv | Feb 21, 2017 by The Force |

Drag and drop to upload or browse for files
Download All

# List of Abbreviations

# List of Abbreviations:

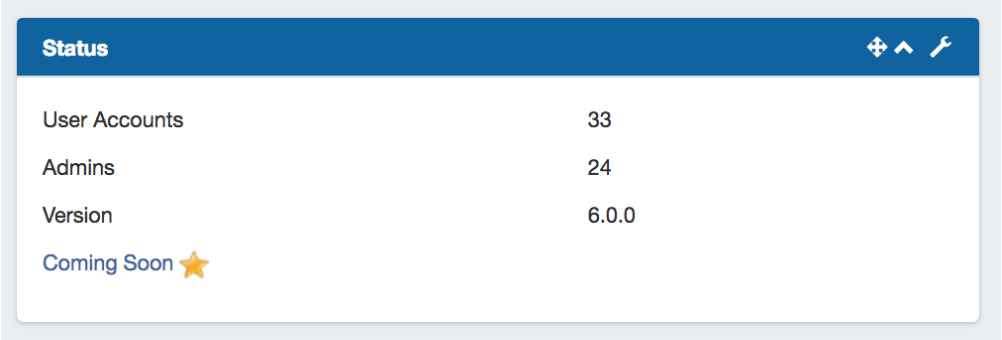
| | |
|---|---|
| **API** | Application Program Interface |
| **CLI** | Command-line interface |
| **DHCP** | Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol |
| **DNS** | Domain Name System |
| **DNSSec** | Domain Name System Security Extensions |
| **IP address** | Internet Protocol address |
| **IPAM** | Internet Protocol address management |
| **LDAP** | Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) |
| **SDK** | software development kit |
| **SSH** | Secure Shell |

Abbreviation List.xlsx

# Feedback and Feature Requests

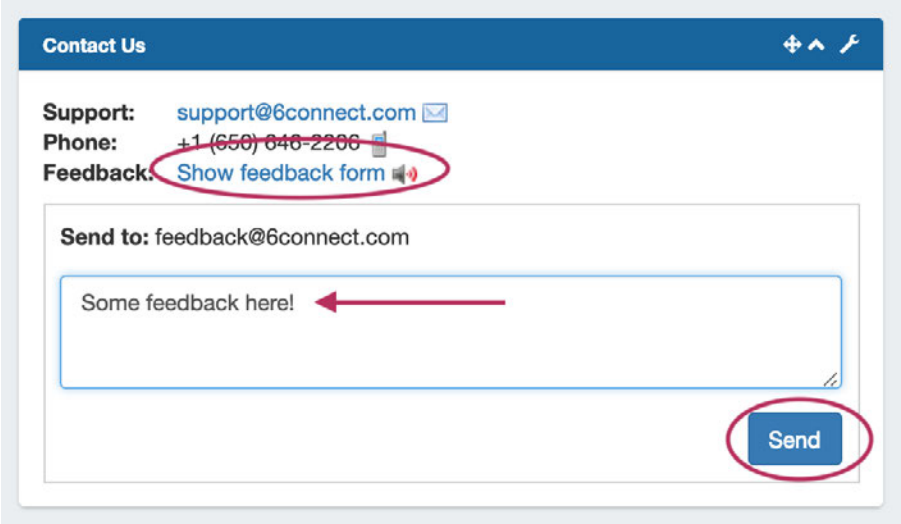
## Upcoming Features

For information on future releases, click on the "Coming Soon" link on the Dashboard Status Widget - it will direct you to the "Coming Soon" feature Roadmap (subject to change).




## Support or Feedback

From the dashboard "Contact Us" Widget, you may click the support link to email a support request to support@6connect.com, or click "show feedback form" to open a form to send a short feedback message to feedback@6connect.com.




Of course, you may aways email support@6connect.com or feedback@6connect.com directly.